Source: **TSG SA WG2**
Title: **CRs on 03. 60 v.6.6.0 and v.7.3.0, CRs on 23.060 v 3.2.1**
Agenda Item: **5.2.3**

The following Change Requests (CRs) have been approved by TSG SA WG2 and are requested to be approved by TSG SA plenary #7.
Note: the source of all these CRs is now S2, even if the name of the originating company(ies) is still reflected on the cover page of all the attached CRs.

CR on 03.60 v.6.6.0

spec	CR #	Title	cat	rel	S2 TDoc #
03.60	A184	Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm	F	R97	S2-000045

This CR has an equivalent for R98 in CRA183 and for R99 in 23.060 in CR094.

CRs on 03.60 v.7.3.0

spec	CR #	Title	cat	rel	S2 TDoc #
03.60	A183	Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm	F	R98	S2-000046
03.60	A185	Extension of Maximum N-PDU size in case of PDP type = PPP	F	R98	S2-000280

CRA183 has an equivalent for R97 in CRA184 and for R99 in 23.060 in CR094.
CRA185 has an equivalent for R99 in 23.060 in CR119.

CRs on 23.060 v.3.2.1

spec	CR #	Title	release	cat	S2 TDoc #
23.060	052r2	QoS Related Updates	R99	B	S2-000209
23.060	080r2	GPRS Interworking With CAMEL	R99	D	S2-000229
23.060	085	Storage of Aggregated BSS QoS Profile in the SGSN	R99	B	S2-000013
23.060	086	Modification to selective routing area update procedure	R99	C	S2-000028
23.060	088r1	QoS delay budget in CN and RAN.	R99	B	S2-000292
23.060	089r1	Release of RABs Without PDP Context Modification	R99	B	S2-000293
23.060	090	NSAPI as RAB identifier for packet	R99	F	S2-000251
23.060	091	Correction to GPRS/CAMEL interworking.	R99	F	S2-000035
23.060	092	IP Multicast support in GPRS.	R99	B	S2-000036
23.060	*094*[1]	*Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm from 23.60*	*R99*	*F*	*S2-000047*
23.060	096	Removal of PDP Type X.25 support	R99	B	S2-000100
23.060	097r1	AAL5 description	R99	F	S2-000221
23.060	098	Removal of Anonymous Access support	R99	B	S2-000102
23.060	099	Removal of TCP support in the packet domain PLMN backbone network	R99	B	S2-000103
23.060	100r1	IPv6 as optional Iu and Gn protocol	R99	F	S2-000215
23.060	101r1	Common GPRS and UMTS PS attach procedure	R99	F	S2-000216
23.060	103r1	UMTS Authentication	R99	F	S2-000219
23.060	104r3	Hard handover with switching in CN	R99	F	S2-000540

[1] CR094 has an equivalent for R97 in CRA184 and for R98 in CR A183.

23.060	105r1	Transfer of present RA information from UTRAN to SGSN	R99	F	S2-000277
23.060	106r2	Service Request	R99	F	S2-000504
23.060	107	Correction to Address allocation procedure for PDP Type IPv 6	R99	F	S2-000133
23.060	108r1	Aligning SRNC relocation procedure	R99	F	S2-000225
23.060	109r1	PDCP sequence numbers in SRNC relocation	R99	F	S2-000226
23.060	110r1	RAB Assignment Description	R99	D	S2-000227
23.060	112r1	Removing NSAPI from GTP-C response messages	R99	F	S2-000518
23.060	114r1	Clarification of RANAP and GTP procedures in SRNS relocation	R99	C	S2-000228
23.060	116	Subscriber and equipment trace for PS domain	R99	D	S2-000197
23.060	*119*[2]	*Extension of Maximum N-PDU size in case of PDP type = PPP*	*R99*	*F*	*S2-000236*
23.060	121	User control screening in R99	R99	F	S2-000278
23.060	122	Improving charging efficiency	R99	F	S2-000290
23.060	123	Removal of P-TMSI Signature in Service Request	R99	F	S2-000354
23.060	125r1	Clarification of unsuccessful RAB assignment	R99	F	S2-000512
23.060	127r1	Volume based charging	R99	F	S2-000513
23.060	128	PDCP sequence numbers in SRNC relocation and inter-system handover	R99	F	S2-000387
23.060	129r2	Combined Cell Update/URA Update and SRNS Relocation	R99	F	S2-000541
23.060	130r2	Serving RNC Relocation Procedure	R99	F	S2-000542
23.060	131r1	Support for combined procedures also at UMTS<->GSM Inter System Change	R99	F	S2-000520
23.060	*133r1*[3]	*PDP Type to RNC Context*	*R99*	*B*	*S2-000523*
23.060	134r1	PDP Context modification on RAB Release	R99	F	S2-000566
23.060	135	Clarification on Iu interface	R99	D	S2-000433
23.060	136r1	Adaptation of 23.060 terminology with the N1 agreement	R99	D	S2-000528
23.060	138	Deletion of GGSN TEID in the update PDP context request message	R99	F	S2-000473
23.060	139	Action upon reception of GTP-u PDU in the case of SGSN/GGSN failure	R99	F	S2-000474
23.060	140	Clarification of intra-SGSN inter-system change to GPRS	R99	F	S2-000475
23.060	141r1	Clarification of intra-SGSN inter-system change to UMTS	R99	F	S2-000564
23.060	142	Clarification of inter-SGSN inter-system change to GPRS	R99	F	S2-000477
23.060	144r1	Clarification of MS information procedure in UMTS	R99	F	S2-000531
23.060	145	Change to the IP-V6 address allocation	R99	D	S2-000484
23.060	146r1	Correction to stateless address autoconfiguration procedure for PDP Type IPv6	R99	F	S2-000610

Note: CR095 was approved at SA2#11, but SA2 came back on this decision and finally rejected CR095 at SA2#12 (see tdocs S2-000528 and S2-000611)

[2] CR119 has an equivalent for R98 in CRA185.
[3] CR133r1 agreed at SA2 with one objection from Lucent

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #zz
Puerto Vallarte, Mexico, 29 Jan – 2 Feb 2000

Document ***S2-000045_correctCRnumber***
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

03.60	CR	~~A182~~A184	Current Version:	6.5.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: TSG SA2					
list expected approval meeting # here ↑	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic	X	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [ ]

Source: France Telecom **Date:** 11.01.00

Subject: Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm from GSM 03.60

Work item: GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96
B	Addition of feature			Release 97 X
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98
D	Editorial modification			Release 99
				Release 00

Reason for change:

- Cell reselection algorithm should not be described in this recommendation but rather in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.
- Misinterpretation of this clause would affect the cell reselection and cause radio interference in the network.

Clauses affected: 8.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

8.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. ~~This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.~~

If the MS is in idle mode, see GSM 03.22, then it shall use cell selection and reselection procedures as described in GSM 03.64 and specified in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.~~behave as described below:~~

~~When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:~~

- ~~If the currently camped-on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.~~
- ~~If the currently camped-on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.~~

~~If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see GSM 03.22.~~

~~The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.~~

~~If the MS is in dedicated mode, see GSM 04.08, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network-controlled handover procedures.~~

~~There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit-switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI-attached and GPRS-attached.~~

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #zz
Puerto Vallarte, Mexico, 29 Jan – 2 Feb 2000

***Document* S2-000046**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

03.60	CR	A183	Current Version:	7.2.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA2	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic	X	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	

Source: France Telecom **Date:** 11.01.00

Subject: Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm from GSM 03.60

Work item: GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	X
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

- Cell reselection algorithm should not be described in this recommendation but rather in GSM 03.22.
- Misinterpretation of this clause would affect the cell reselection and cause radio interference in the network.

Clauses affected: 8.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

8.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. ~~This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.~~

If the MS is in idle mode, see GSM 03.22, then it shall use cell selection and reselection procedures as described in GSM 03.64 and specified in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.~~behave as described below:~~

~~When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:~~

- ~~If the currently camped on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.~~
- ~~If the currently camped on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.~~

~~If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see GSM 03.22.~~

~~The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.~~

~~If the MS is in dedicated mode, see GSM 04.08, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network-controlled handover procedures.~~

~~There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI attached and GPRS attached.~~

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 January, 2000

***Document* S2-000280**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

03.60	CR	A185	Current Version:	7.3.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic	X	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Drafting group (NTT DoCoMo) **Date:** 28. Jan. 2000

Subject: Extension of Maximum N-PDU size in case of PDP type = PPP

Work item: QoS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked With an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	X
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	
				Release 00	

Reason for change:
Most PDP-PDUs from outside of the PLMN, e.g. ISP, are transferred as data units up to 1,500 octets. In case of PDP type = PPP, it is needed to add 2 octets as a header in PPP frame format. Totally the N-PDU length is 1,502 octets within the PLMN. This CR is to extend N-PDU size up to 1502 octets.

Without this correction for PDP type = PPP, IP packets of length 1500 octets will not reach the MS for the cases when the path MTU discovery mechanism cannot be used, which happens when the IP DF bit is not set.

Clauses affected: 9.3

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;
- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and
- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. In case of PDP type = PPP, the maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 502 octets. In other cases, ~~T~~the maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that results in an N-PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that results in an N-PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with the SNDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel identifier (TID) and a GSN address.

To support roaming GPRS subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24.-28.01.2000

Document S2-000209

e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

9 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functionality

9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States

A GPRS subscription contains the subscription of one or more PDP addresses. Each PDP address is described by one or more PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. Each PDP context may be associated with a TFT. At most one PDP context associated with the same PDP address may exist at any time with no TFT assigned to it. Every PDP context exists independently in one of two PDP states. The PDP state indicates whether data transfer is enabled for that PDP address and TFT or not. In case all PDP contexts associated with the same PDP address are deactivated, data transfer for that PDP address is disabled. Activation and deactivation are described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions". All PDP contexts of a subscriber are associated with the same MM context for the IMSI of that subscriber.

9.1.1 INACTIVE State

The INACTIVE state characterises the data service for a certain PDP address of the subscriber as not activated. The PDP context contains no routeing or mapping information to process PDP PDUs related to that PDP address. No data can be transferred. A changing location of a subscriber causes no update for the PDP context in INACTIVE state even if the subscriber is PS-attached.

Mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state by the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure if the GGSN is allowed to initiate the activation of the PDP context for that PDP address. Otherwise, mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state invoke error procedures in the GGSN relevant to the external network protocol, for example, an IP packet is discarded and an ICMP (see RFC 792 [41]) packet (error notification) is returned to the source of the received packet. Other error procedures may be introduced on the application level, but this is outside the scope of the present document.

The MS initiates the movement from INACTIVE to ACTIVE state by initiating the PDP Context Activation procedure.

9.1.2 ACTIVE State

In ACTIVE state, the PDP context for the PDP address in use is activated in MS, SGSN and GGSN. The PDP context contains mapping and routeing information for transferring PDP PDUs for that particular PDP address between MS and GGSN. The PDP state ACTIVE is permitted only when the mobility management state of the subscriber is STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. The Iu interface radio access bearer may or may not be established for an active PDP context.

An active PDP context for an MS is moved to INACTIVE state when the deactivation procedure is initiated.

All active PDP contexts for an MS are moved to INACTIVE state when the MM state changes to IDLE or PMM-DETACHED.

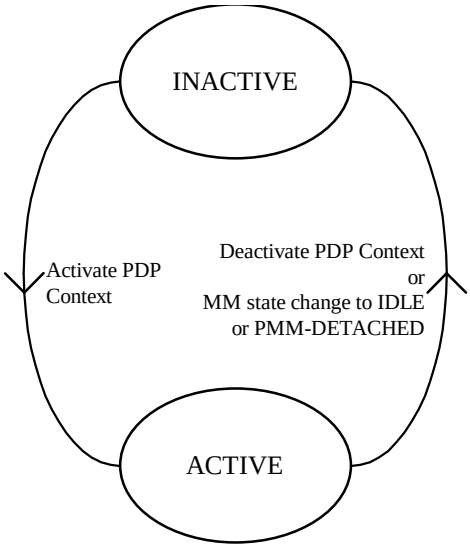


Figure 1: Functional PDP State Model

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions

A PS-attached MS can initiate these functions at any time in order to activate, modify, or deactivate a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a PS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

NOTE: If the MS is in PMM-IDLE state, it needs to perform a service request procedure to enter the PMM-CONNECTED state before initiating these procedure.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP address but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts are managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be initiated.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every NSAPI.

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

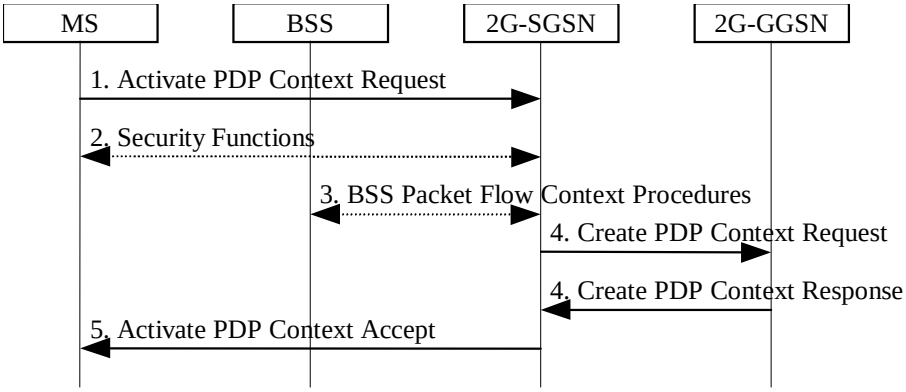


Figure 2: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

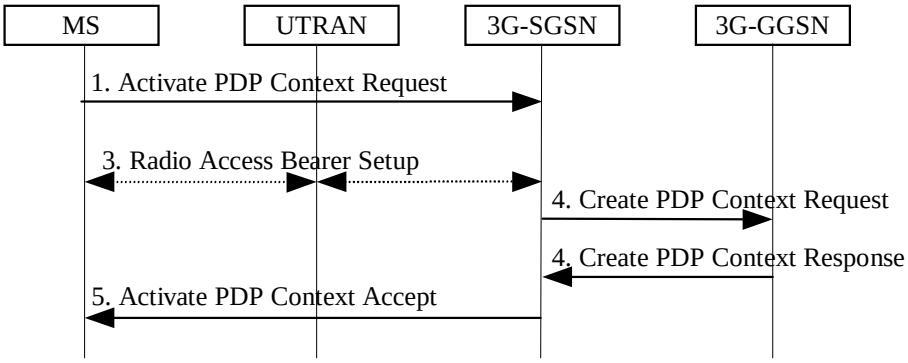


Figure 3: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

   For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

[TEID is studied under N2. The impact should be clarified in 23.060.]

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TID, PDP Address, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. BB Protocol indicates whether TCP or UDP shall be used to transport user data on the backbone network between the SGSN and GGSN. Reordering Required indicates whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated ~~(e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type)~~, then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

5) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement

is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. All PDP contexts sharing the same PDP address are identified by one and the same TI but a unique NSAPI value.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure associates a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address. The procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

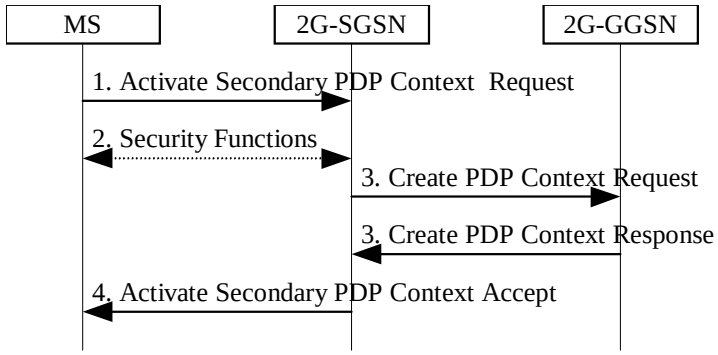


Figure 4: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

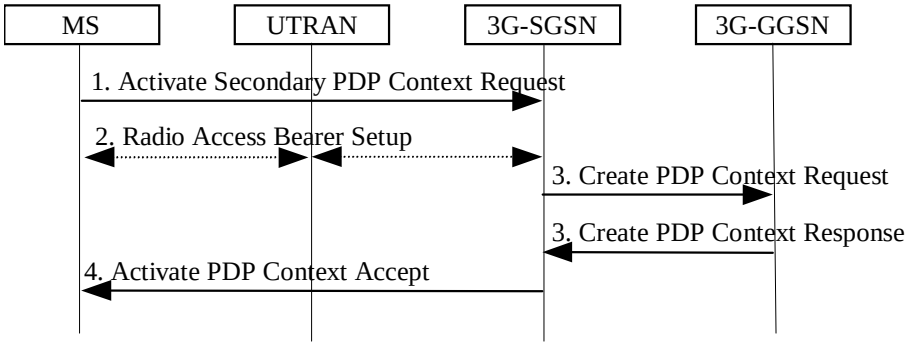


Figure 5: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI is the same TI used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, and NSAPI contains a value not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

   For UMTS, , the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to the UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

3) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TID, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TID, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

9.2.2.2 Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure allows the GGSN to initiate the activation of a PDP context. When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN checks if a PDP context is established for that PDP address. If no PDP context has been previously established the GGSN may try to deliver the PDP PDU by initiating the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure. The criteria used by the GGSN to determine whether trying to deliver the PDP PDU to the MS may be based on subscription information and are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

To support Network-Requested PDP Context Activation the GGSN has to have static PDP information about the PDP address. To determine whether Network-Requested PDP Context Activation is supported for a PDP address the GGSN checks if there is static PDP information for that PDP address.

Once these checks have been performed the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure.

The network operator may implement the following techniques to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR:

- Implementation of the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG) technique in GGSN, SGSN, and HLR (see subclause "Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure").

- The GGSN may reject or discard PDP PDUs after a previous unsuccessful delivery attempt. This systematic rejection of PDP PDUs would be performed during a certain time after the unsuccessful delivery.

- The GGSN may store the address of the SGSN with which the GGSN established the last PDP context. This would prevent an enquiry to the HLR. This SGSN address would be considered as valid during a certain time.

9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

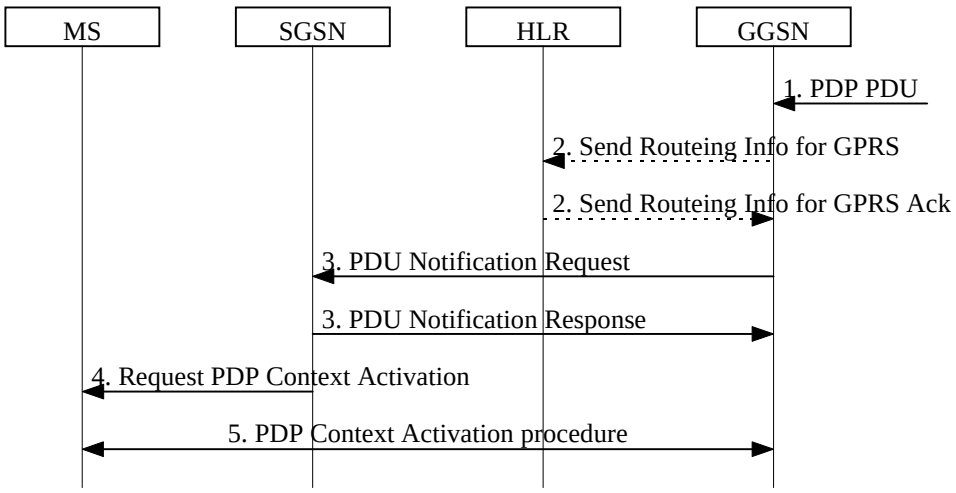


Figure 6: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN determines if the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure has to be initiated. The GGSN may store subsequent PDP PDUs received for the same PDP address.

2) The GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. If the HLR determines that the request can be served, it returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason) message to the GGSN. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter is included if the MNRG flag is set in the HLR. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter indicates the reason for the setting of the MNRG flag as stored in the MNRR record (see GSM 03.40). If the MNRR record indicates a reason other than 'No Paging Response', the HLR shall include the GGSN number in the GGSN-list of the subscriber.

   If the HLR determines that the request cannot be served (e.g., IMSI unknown in HLR), the HLR shall send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, MAP Error Cause) message. Map Error Cause indicates the reason for the negative response.

3) If the SGSN address is present and either Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason is not present or Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason indicates 'No Paging Response', the GGSN shall send a PDU Notification Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to the SGSN indicated by the HLR. Otherwise, the GGSN shall set the MNRG flag for that MS. The SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN in order to acknowledge that it shall request the MS to activate the PDP context indicated with PDP Address.

4) The SGSN sends a Request PDP Context Activation (TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to request the MS to activate the indicated PDP context.

5) The PDP context is activated with the PDP Context Activation procedure (see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure").

9.2.2.2.2 Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

If the PDP context requested by the GGSN cannot be established, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Response (Cause) or a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN depending on if the context activation fails before or after the SGSN has sent a Request PDP Context Activation message to the MS. Cause indicates the reason why the PDP context could not be established:

- 'IMSI Not Known'. The SGSN has no MM context for that IMSI (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS GPRS Detached'. The MM state of the MS is IDLE (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS Not GPRS Responding'. The MS is GPRS-attached to the SGSN but the MS does not respond. This may be due to the lack of a response to a GPRS Paging Request, due to an Abnormal RLC condition, or due to no Activate PDP Context Request message received within a certain time after the Request PDP Context Activation message was delivered to the MS (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

- 'MS Refuses'. The MS refuses explicitly the network-requested PDP context (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

When receiving the PDU Notification Response or the PDU Notification Reject Request message the GGSN may reject or discard the PDP PDU depending on the PDP type.

After an unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure the network may perform some actions to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR. The actions taken depend on the cause of the delivery failure.

- If the MS is not reachable or if the MS refuses the PDP PDU (Cause value 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'), then the SGSN shall not change the setting of MNRG for this MS. The GGSN may refuse any PDP PDU for that PDP address during a certain period. The GGSN may store the SGSN address during a certain period and send subsequent PDU Notification Request messages to that SGSN.

- If the MS is GPRS-detached or if the IMSI is not known in the SGSN (Cause value 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known'), then the SGSN, the GGSN, and the HLR may perform the Protection and Mobile User Activity procedures.

The Protection procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

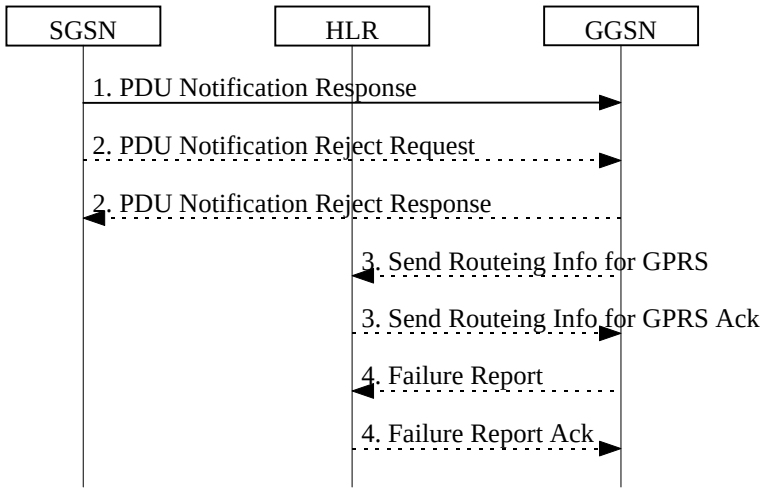


Figure 7: Protection Procedure

1) If the MM context of the mobile is IDLE or if the SGSN has no information about that user, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known', otherwise the Cause shall be 'Activation Proceeds'. If the Cause is 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known' and if the SGSN has an MM context for that user, the SGSN sets MNRG to indicate the need to report to the HLR when the next contact with that MS is performed.

2) If the MS does not respond or refuses the activation request, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'. The GGSN returns a PDU Notification Reject Response message to the SGSN.

3) If Cause equals 'IMSI Not Known' the GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. The HLR returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Cause) message to the GGSN indicating the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. If SGSN Address is different from the one previously stored by the GGSN, then steps 3, 4, and 5 in **Error! Reference source not found.** are followed.

4) If SGSN Address is the same as the one previously stored in the GGSN, or if the Cause value returned in step 1 equals 'MS GPRS Detached', then the GGSN sets MNRG for that PDP address and sends a Failure Report (IMSI,

GGSN Number, GGSN Address) message to the HLR to request MNRG to be set in the HLR. The HLR sets (if not already set) MNRG for the IMSI and adds GGSN Number and GGSN Address to the list of GGSNs to report to when activity from that IMSI is detected. GGSN Number is either the number of the GGSN, or, if a protocol-converting GSN is used as an intermediate node, the number of the protocol-converting GSN. GGSN Address is an optional parameter that shall be included if a protocol-converting GSN is used.

The Mobile User Activity procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

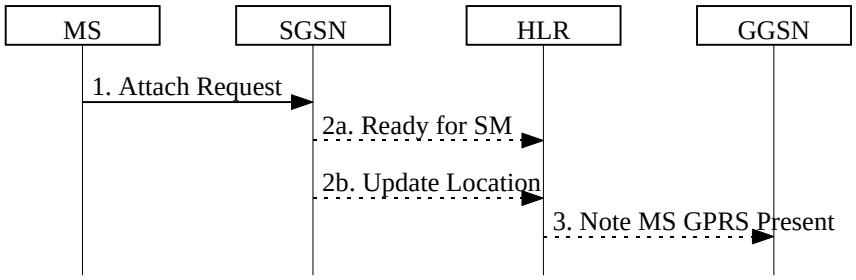


Figure 8: Mobile User Activity Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an indication that an MS is reachable, e.g., an Attach Request message from the MS.

2a) If the SGSN contains an MM context of the MS and MNRG for that MS is set, the SGSN shall send a Ready for SM (IMSI, MS Reachable) message to the HLR and clears MNRG for that MS.

2b) If the SGSN does not keep the MM context of the MS, the SGSN shall send an Update Location message (see subclause "Attach Function") to the HLR.

3) When the HLR receives the Ready for SM message or the Update Location message for an MS that has MNRG set, it clears MNRG for that MS and sends a Note MS GPRS Present (IMSI, SGSN Address) message to all the GGSNs in the list of the subscriber. (The Ready for SM message also triggers the SMS alert procedure as described in subclause "Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer".) SGSN Address contains the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. Upon reception of Note MS Present, each GGSN shall clear MNRG.

9.2.2.3 Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

The MS can anonymously initiate PDP Context Activation in IDLE, STANDBY, and READY states. An existing MM context in the SGSN is neither required nor used in this case. Only dynamic PDP addressing is applicable.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

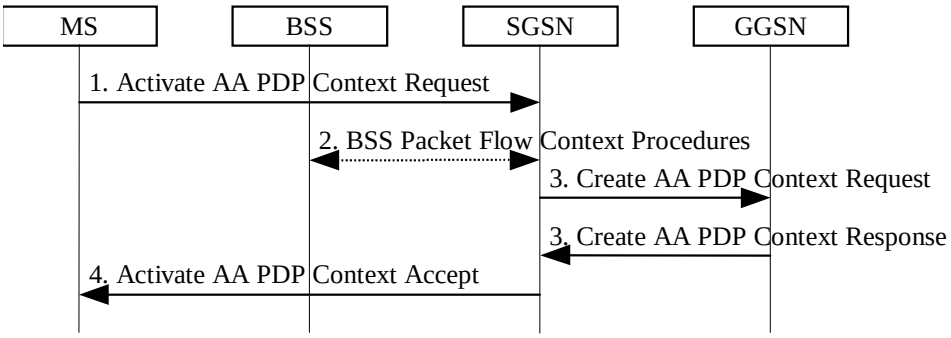


Figure 9: Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate AA PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use a Random TLLI at the RLC/MAC layer for identification purposes. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate that it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network that provides anonymous services. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration

Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

3) The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS value given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN assigns an Auxiliary TLLI and creates an AA-TID for the PDP-Context. The SGSN sends a Create AA PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, AA-TID, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the GGSN indicated by Access Point Name in the Activate AA PDP Context Request message. Selection Mode indicates how the APN was selected. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the server(s) that provide services for anonymous MSs, and to start charging. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network that provides anonymous services. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then allocates a dynamic PDP Address and returns a Create AA PDP Context Response (AA-TID, PDP Address, BB Protocol, Reordering Required, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. BB Protocol indicates whether TCP or UDP shall be used to transport user data on the backbone network between the SGSN and GGSN. Reordering Required indicates whether the SGSN shall reorder N-PDUs before delivering the N-PDUs to the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The GGSN shall check the source and destination address in all subsequent anonymous MO PDP PDUs received from the SGSN. If the GGSN detects a not allowed address in an MO PDP PDU, then the PDP PDU shall be discarded and the MM and PDP contexts shall be deleted in the GGSN, SGSN, and MS, as defined in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated ~~(e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type)~~, then the GGSN rejects the Create AA PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

4) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the PDP address received from the GGSN in its PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated and returns an Activate AA PDP Context Accept (A-TLLI, PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route anonymous PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS and to start charging.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the MM and PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the AA PDP Context Activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate AA PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same GGSN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id; and
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

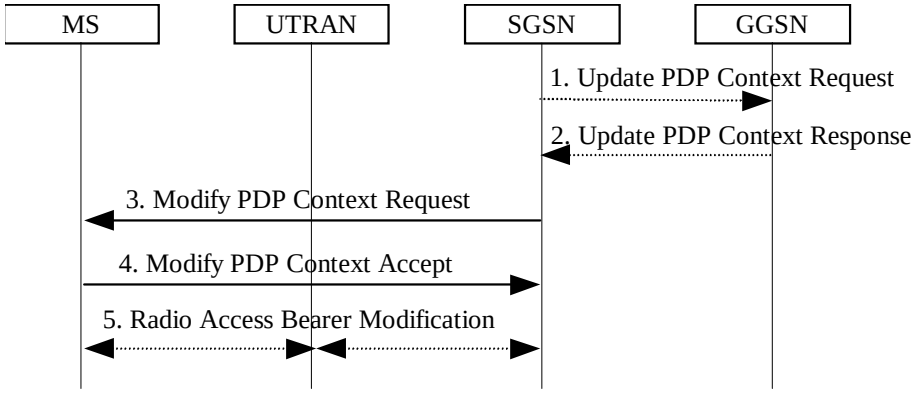


Figure 10: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified ~~(e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type)~~, then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) The radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

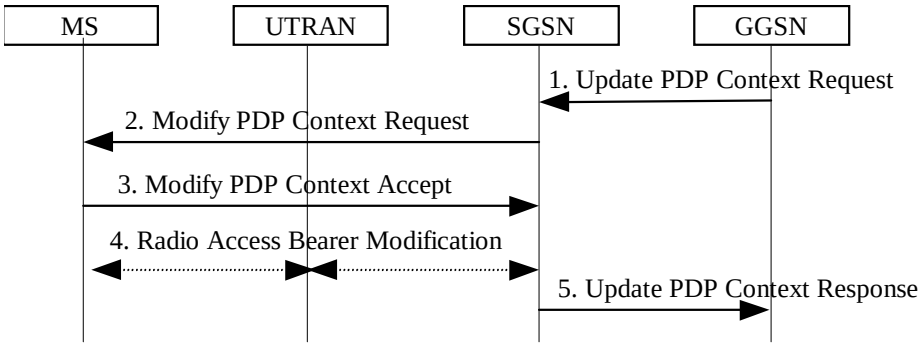


Figure 11: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TID, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated,

and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

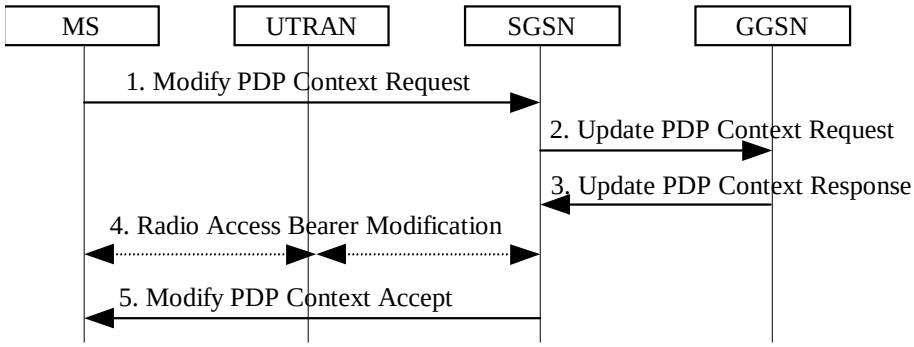


Figure 12: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified ~~(e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type)~~, then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

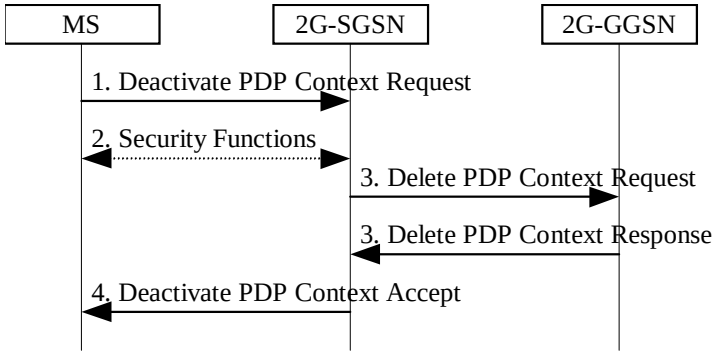


Figure 13: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GPRS

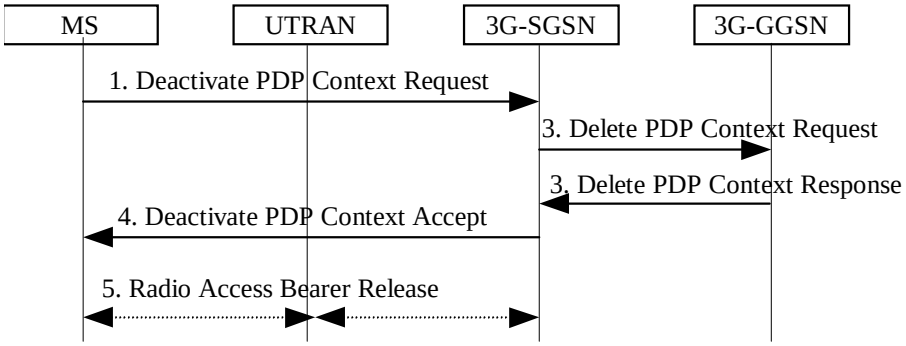


Figure 14: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI) message to the SGSN.

2) For GPRS security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If NSAPI was not included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this TI and PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI) message to the MS.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

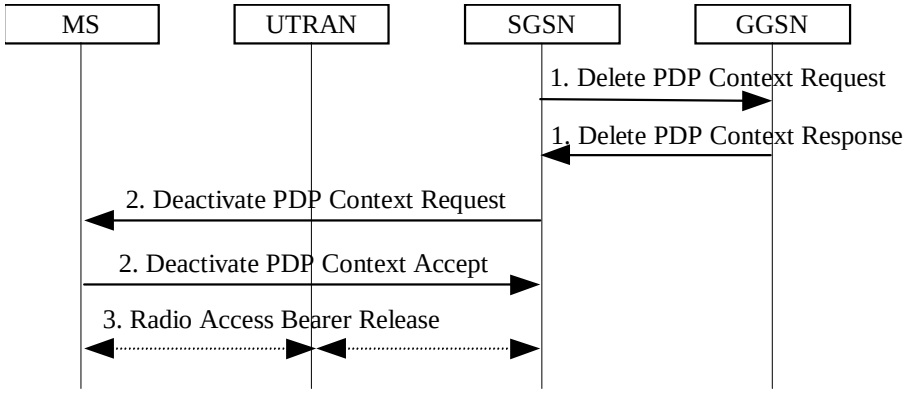


Figure 15: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI) message to the MS. If NSAPI is not included, then all PDP contexts associated with this TI and PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI) message to the SGSN. NSAPI is included if received from the SGSN.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

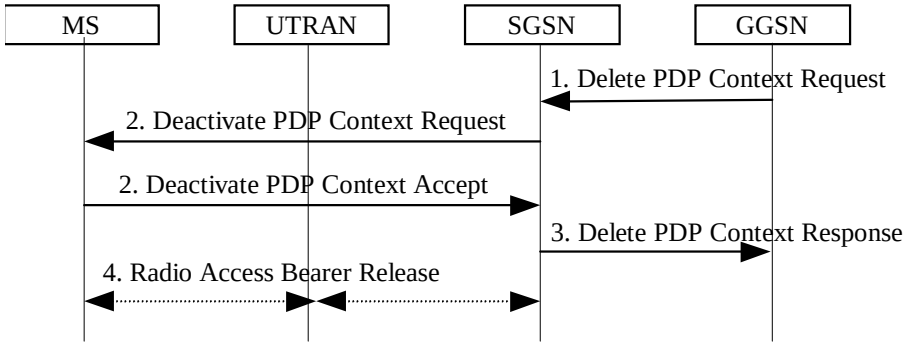


Figure 16: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, NSAPI) message to the MS. If NSAPI was not included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this TI and PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes

the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, NSAPI) message to the SGSN. NSAPI is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

9.2.4.4 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS shall not issue explicit deactivation request messages to delete anonymous contexts in the network. Instead, the READY timer shall be used as an implicit deactivation timer to save signalling traffic on the radio interface.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

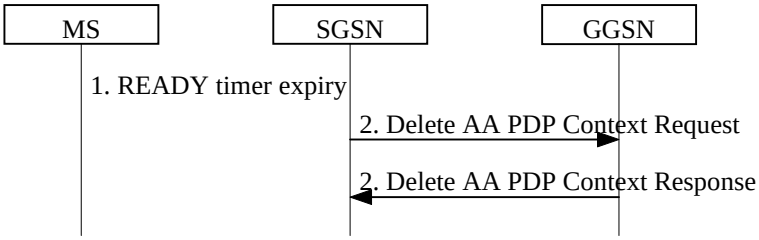


Figure 17: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The READY timer expires in the MS and SGSN.

2) The SGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TID) message. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TID) message to the SGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent anonymous activation by other MSs.

9.2.4.5 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

If the GGSN detects a misuse or fraud of the anonymous context as described in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure", step 2, it shall initiate the deactivation independently of the READY timer expiry.

If the anonymous server detects a misuse or fraud, it may request the GGSN to deactivate the AA context. The method that the anonymous server uses to inform the GGSN is outside the scope of the GSM specifications.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

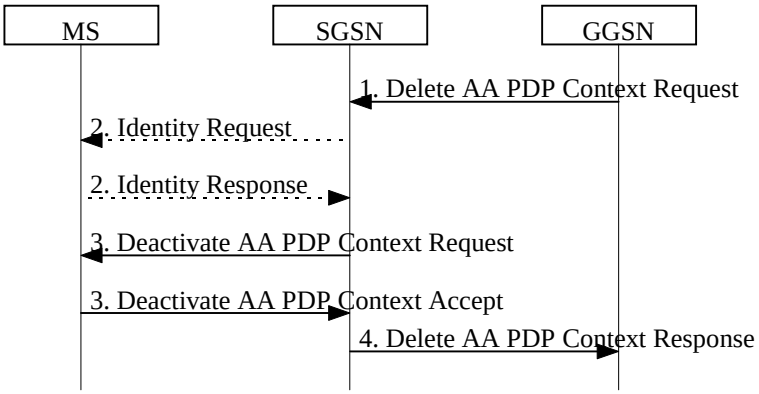


Figure 18: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TID) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may send an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI or IMEI) message to the MS. The MS shall respond with an Identity Response (IMSI or IMEI) message.

3) The SGSN sends a Deactivate AA PDP Context Request (TI) message to the MS. The MS removes the PDP context and returns a Deactivate AA PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete AA PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the accept from the MS before sending the Delete AA PDP Context Response message.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;

- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and

- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. The maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets [FFS]. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel identifier (TID) and a GSN address.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

9.4 Relay Function

The relay function of a network node transfers the PDP PDUs received from the incoming link to the appropriate outgoing link. At the RNC, the SGSN, and the GGSN the relay function stores all valid PDP PDUs until they are forwarded to the next network node or until the maximum holding time of the PDP PDUs is reached. The PDP PDUs are discarded when buffering is longer than their maximum holding time. This maximum holding time is implementation dependent and can be influenced by the PDP type, the QoS of the PDP PDU, the resource load status, and by buffer conditions. The discarding protects resources from useless transfer attempts, especially the radio resource. Impacts on user protocol operation by too short holding time shall be avoided.

In GPRS, the SGSN and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from SNDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively. In UMTS, the RNC and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from PDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively. The SGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to SNDCP for GPRS. The GGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to the Gi reference point. The RNC may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to PDCP.

9.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

The Packet Terminal Adaptation function adapts packets received from and transmitted to the Terminal Equipment to a form suitable for transmission within the PLMN.

A range of MT versions providing different standard interfaces towards the TE can be used, e.g.:

- MT with asynchronous serial interface and PAD (Packet Assembly / Disassembly) support (e.g., AT command set PAD, X.28 [35] / X.29 [36] / X.3 [33] PAD). In the case when the PAD function does not exist in the MT, it exists in the TE.
- "Embedded MT" integrated with the TE, possibly via an industry-standard application program interface.
- MT with synchronous serial interface.

9.6 Encapsulation Function

The packet domain transparently transports PDP PDUs between external networks and MSs. All PDP PDUs are encapsulated and decapsulated for routeing purposes. Encapsulation functionality exists at the MS, at the RNC, at the SGSN, and at the GGSN. Encapsulation allows PDP PDUs to be delivered to and associated with the correct PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, or the GGSN. Two different encapsulation schemes are used; one for the backbone network between two GSNs and between an SGSN and an RNC, and one for the GPRS connection between the SGSN and the MS or for the UMTS RRC connection between the RNC and the MS.

Encapsulation requires that the MS is attached to GPRS, and that the PDP Context Activation procedure has been executed. If the PS Attach or PDP Context Activation procedures cannot be successfully executed, then uplink PDP PDUs are discarded in the MS. If these procedures have not been executed when a downlink PDP PDU arrives in the GGSN, then the downlink PDP PDU shall be discarded, rejected, or the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated.

9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs

The packet domain PLMN backbone network encapsulates a PDP PDU with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header, and inserts this GTP PDU in a TCP PDU or UDP PDU that again is inserted in an IP PDU. The IP and GTP PDU headers contain the GSN addresses and tunnel endpoint identifier necessary to uniquely address a GSN PDP context.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC

On the Iu interface, a PDP PDUs is encapsulated with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS

Between a 2G-SGSN and an MS, an SGSN or MS PDP context is uniquely addressed with a temporary logical link identity and a network layer service access point identifier pair. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI. An NSAPI is assigned when the MS initiates the PDP Context Activation function. The relationship between TLLI / NSAPI and LLC / SNDCP is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. TLLI and NSAPI are described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

9.6.3 Encapsulation Between RNC and MS

On the Uu interface, a PDP PDU is encapsulated with PDCP.

12 Transmission

12.1 Transmission Modes

For GPRS, the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC transmission modes define the QoS ~~reliability classes (see subclause "Reliability Class")~~attributes SDU error ratio and residual bit error ratio.

For UMTS, the GTP-U and RLC protocols provide various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS.

The RLC protocol for GPRS and the RLC protocol for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the GTP-U layer are supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP) and acknowledged (TCP/IP). The GTP-U layer shall support both modes simultaneously. In UMTS, GTP-U is also used on the Iu interface for user data transport. Only the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported on the Iu interface.

[Check the Gn TCP support in UMTS.]

12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes for GPRS

Two modes of operation of the LLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The LLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

- In acknowledged mode, the receipt of LL-PDUs are confirmed. The LLC layer retransmits LL-PDUs if confirmation has not been received within a timeout period.
- In unacknowledged mode, there is no confirmation required for LL-PDUs.

Signalling and SMS shall be transferred in unacknowledged mode.

In unacknowledged mode, the LLC layer shall offer the following two options:

- transport of "protected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field result in the frame being discarded; and
- transport of "unprotected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field do not result in the frame being discarded.

The LLC layer shall support several different ~~QoS delay classes~~ QoS traffic classes with different transfer delay characteristics.

12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the RLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The RLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

The RLC for GPRS is described in GSM 04.60, and for UMTS in UMTS 25.322.

12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality for GPRS

The Logical Link Control (LLC) protocol provides a reliable logical link between the MS and its SGSN. As shown in subclause "User and Control Planes", the LLC layer is situated below the SNDC layer.

12.2.1 Addressing

TLLI is used for addressing at the LLC layer. TLLI is described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

12.2.2 Services

LLC provides the services necessary to maintain a ciphered data link between an MS and an SGSN. The LLC layer does not support direct communication between two MSs.

The LLC connection is maintained as the MS moves between cells served by the same SGSN. When the MS moves to a cell being served by a different SGSN, the existing connection is released and a new logical connection is established with the new SGSN.

LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols. In order to allow LLC to operate with a variety of different radio interface protocols, and to ensure optimum performance, it may be necessary to adjust e.g., the maximum LLC PDU length and the LLC protocol timer values. Such adjustments can be made through negotiation between the MS and the SGSN. The maximum length of an LLC PDU shall not be greater than 1 600 octets minus the BSSGP protocol control information.

12.2.3 Functions

The Logical Link Control layer supports:

- service primitives allowing the transfer of SNDCP Protocol Data Units (SN-PDUs) between the Subnetwork Dependent Convergence layer and the Logical Link Control layer;
- procedures for transferring LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN, including:
  - procedures for unacknowledged delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
  - procedures for acknowledged, reliable delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN;
- procedures for detecting and recovering from lost or corrupted LL-PDUs;
- procedures for flow control of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
- procedures for ciphering of LL-PDUs. The procedures are applicable to both unacknowledged and acknowledged LL-PDU delivery.

The layer functions are organised in such a way that ciphering resides immediately above the RLC/MAC layer in the MS, and immediately above the BSSGP layer in the SGSN.

12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality for GPRS

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence (SNDC) protocol is situated below the network layer and above the Logical Link Control layer in the MS and the SGSN, as shown in subclause "User and Control Planes". A variety of network layers are supported, e.g., IP and X.25. The network-layer packet data protocols share the same SNDCP, that then performs multiplexing of data coming from the different sources to be sent across LLC. This is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**.

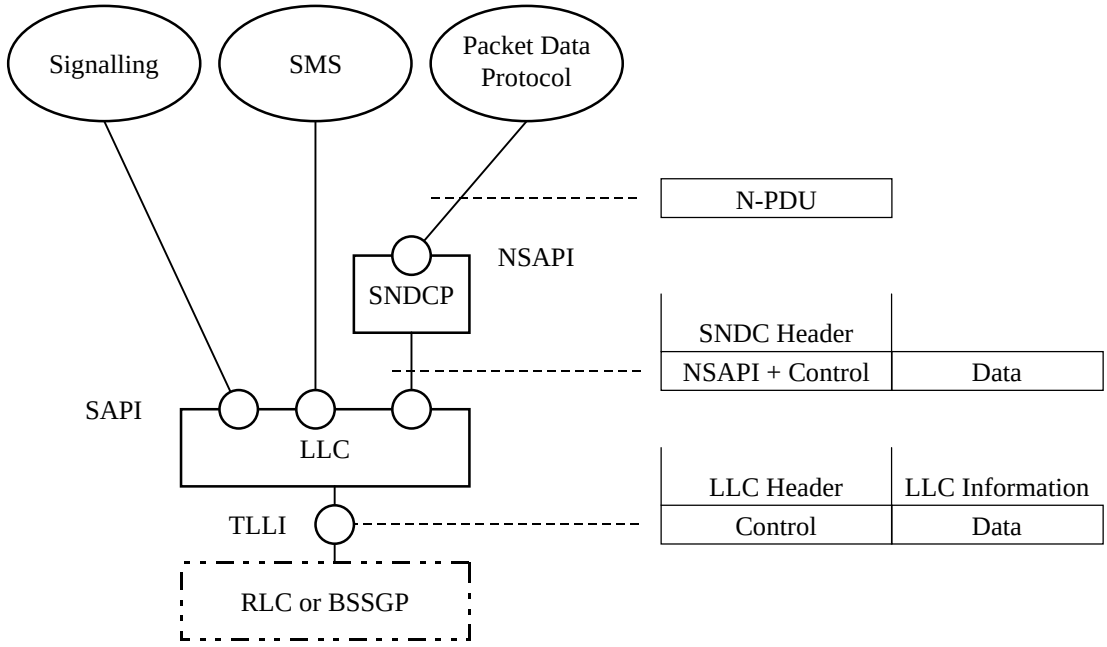


Figure 19: Multiplexing of Network Protocols

The following identities and control information is needed:

- NSAPI identifies the network layer. The SNDCP control part contains compression information.
- TLLI identifies the MS. The LLC control part contains the rest of the LLC protocol header including ciphering information.

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence function is defined in terms of offered services and sub-functions.

12.3.1 Services

The SNDC function provides the following services to the network layer:

- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs in acknowledged and unacknowledged LLC mode. In acknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall be confirmed at the LLC layer, and the data shall be transmitted and received in order per NSAPI. In unacknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall not be confirmed at the SNDCP layer nor at the LLC layer.
- Transmission and reception between the MS and SGSN of variable-length N-PDUs.
- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs between the SGSN and MS according to the negotiated QoS profile.
- Transfer of the minimum amount of data possible between the SGSN and MS through compression techniques.

The SNDC function requires the following services from the LLC layer:

- Acknowledged and unacknowledged data transfer.
- Ciphered transmission of SN-PDUs.

- In-order delivery of SN-PDUs per LLC SAPI.
- Support for variable-length SN-PDUs.

12.3.2 Subfunctions

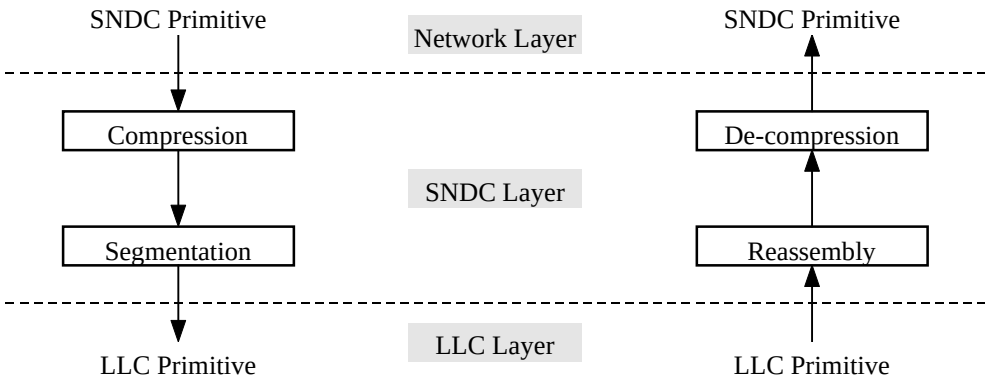


Figure 20: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority level~~, QoS delay class, and precedence class~~, QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for ~~each QoS delay class and precedence class~~QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class. If several network layers use the ~~same QoS delay class and precedence class~~ QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

12.4 PDCP for UMTS

The Packet Data Compatibility Protocol (PDCP) transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. PDCP can support several network layer protocols by providing protocol transparency for the users of the service. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is located in the MS and the UTRAN and described in UMTS 25.323.

12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP types IP and X.25, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly

function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD) function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layers below SNDCP and GTP.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Error! Reference source not found. illustrates the OSP user plane for GPRS, and **Error! Reference source not found.** for UMTS.

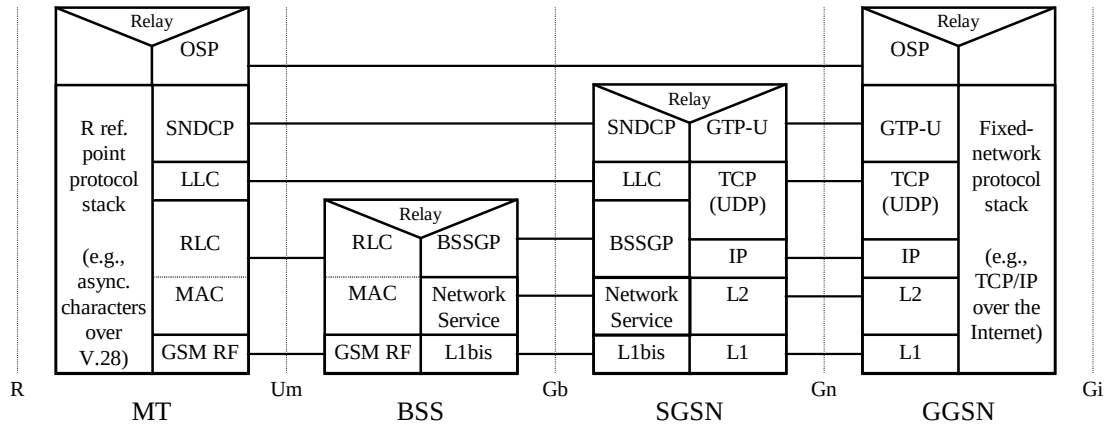


Figure 21: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

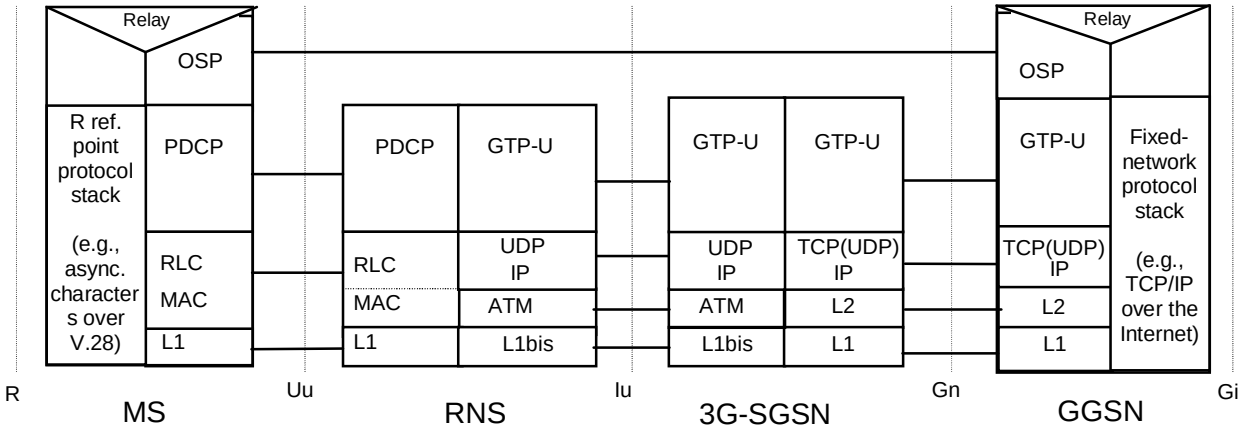


Figure 22: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.5.1 PAD Function

In order to make efficient use of the network resources, particularly the radio resource, octets received from the OSP user are not forwarded immediately but are placed in a buffer. When some forwarding criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer are forwarded in the payload of an N-PDU to the underlying layer. At the receiving end, the payload of an N-PDU received from the underlying layer is placed in a buffer and the octets are delivered to the OSP user as an octet stream.

The PAD is used only when OSP operates in octet mode. It is not used when OSP operates in block mode.

12.5.1.1 Packet Assembler

The packet assembler shall be able to detect the following forwarding criteria. When any one criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer shall be forwarded in an N-PDU to the underlying layer, subject to any flow control condition.

12.5.1.1.1 Buffer Full

The buffer contents are forwarded when the number of octets in the buffer reaches the value of the maximum buffer size parameter.

12.5.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry

The inactivity timer shall be started whenever an octet is placed in the buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. The inactivity timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry

A maximum buffer delay timer may be started when the first octet is placed in the (empty) buffer,. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. This optional timer ensures that no octet is delayed in the buffer for longer than the specified time. The maximum buffer delay timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.4 Special Character

Whenever an octet has been placed in the buffer, its least significant 7 bits shall be compared with a list of 7-bit special characters. If the bits match, the buffer shall be forwarded. The possible characters and combinations of characters shall be the same as specified for the X.3 PAD access to X.25.

12.5.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State

The buffer may be forwarded when there is a need to signal a change in the ready to receive condition.

12.5.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request

When the OSP receives an immediate forward request from its user, it shall immediately forward the buffer unless it is empty.

12.5.1.2 Packet Disassembler

The packet disassembler shall forward the contents of the N-PDU payload to the OSP user, subject to any local flow control condition.

12.5.2 Quality of Service

The QoS provided by the OSP layer is determined by that provided by the underlying protocol layers. However, the PAD functions introduce an additional variable delay into the transmission path. This delay can be limited at the risk of making less efficient use of network resources, in particular the radio resources.

12.6 Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality

[This subclause has not been checked against UMTS.]

The PPP protocol is specified in RFC 1661 [44].

12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP

The user plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GPRS or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS, and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

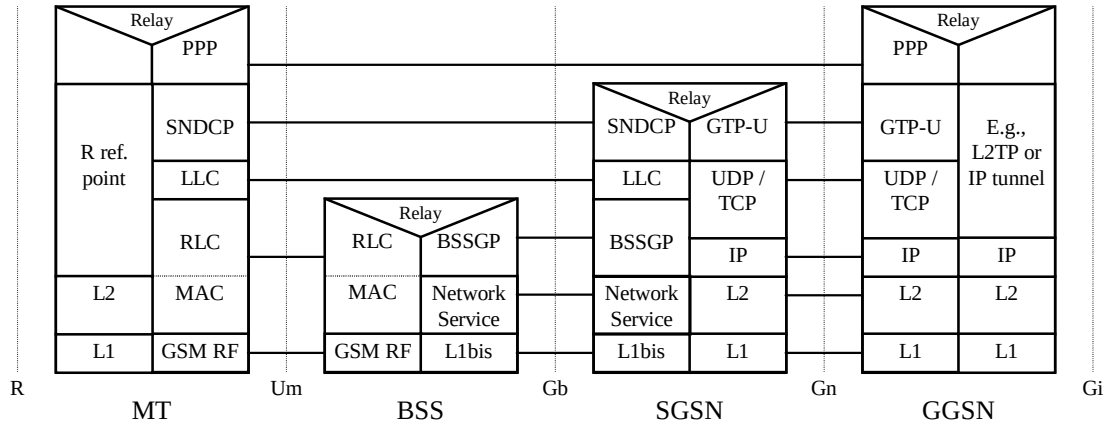


Figure 23: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

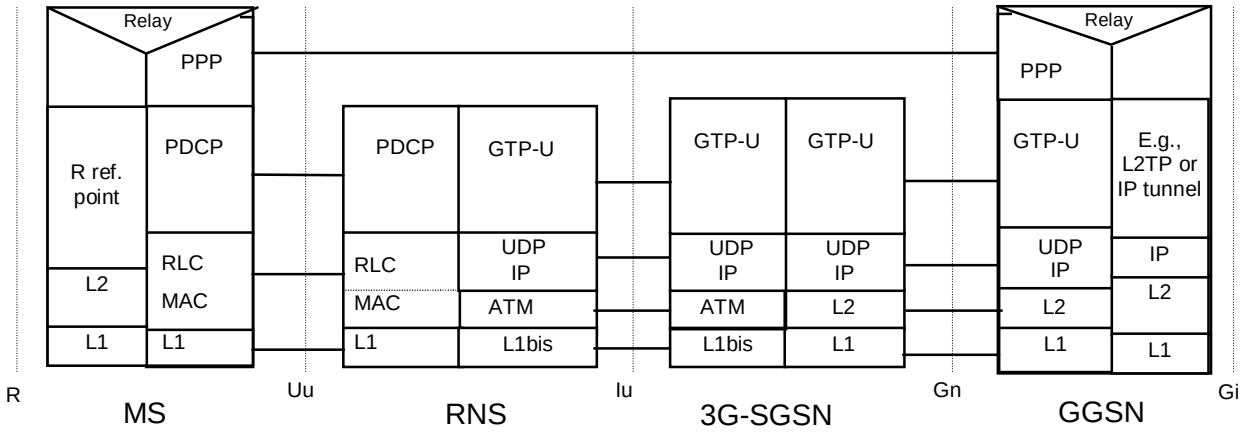


Figure 24: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

12.6.2 Functions

The PPP peers at the MS and GGSN handle the PPP protocol as specified in RFC 1661. PPP requires in-sequence packet delivery by the underlying protocols. Concerning GTP, this shall be achieved by enabling Reordering Required upon GTP tunnel establishment. For GPRS, concerning SNDCP, out-of-sequence packets, that may be present if LLC operates in unacknowledged mode, shall be discarded. SNDCP for GPRS, and PDCP for UMTS, shall not use TCP/IP header compression because PPP may not carry IP packets at all, or because PPP may carry IP packets with already compressed TCP/IP headers. These PPP options are negotiated during the RFC 1661 Network Control Protocol establishment phase.

12.7 Gb Interface for GPRS

The Gb interface connects the BSS and the SGSN, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The Gb interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter. This is in contrast to the A interface where a single user has the sole use of a dedicated physical resource throughout the lifetime of a call irrespective of activity.

GPRS signalling and user data are sent in the same user plane. No dedicated physical resources are required to be allocated for signalling purposes.

Access rates per user may vary without restriction from zero data to the maximum possible line rate (e.g., 1 984 kbit/s for the available bitrate of an E1 trunk).

12.7.1 Physical Layer Protocol

Several physical layer configurations and protocols are possible, as defined in GSM 08.14 [19].

The physical resources shall be allocated by O&M procedures.

12.7.2 Link Layer Protocols

The Gb interface link layer is based on Frame Relay, as defined in GSM 08.16. Frame Relay virtual circuits are established between SGSN and BSS. LLC PDUs from many users are multiplexed on these virtual circuits. The virtual circuits may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. Frame Relay shall be used for signalling and data transmission.

The following characteristics apply for the Frame Relay connection:

- The maximum Frame Relay information field size shall be 1 600 octets.
- The Frame Relay address length shall be 2 octets.

- The BSS and the SGSN shall both implement Frame Relay DTE functionality. The SGSN may optionally also implement DCE functionality.
- Frame Relay PVCs shall be used.
- The Frame Relay layer offers detection of but no recovery from transmission errors.
- One or more Frame Relay PVCs shall be used between one SGSN and one BSS to transport BSSGP PDUs.

12.7.3 BSS GPRS Protocol

The primary function of BSSGP is to provide the radio-related, QoS, and routeing information that is required to transmit user data between a BSS and an SGSN. In the BSS, it acts as an interface between LLC frames and RLC/MAC blocks. In the SGSN, it forms an interface between RLC/MAC-derived information and LLC frames. A secondary function is to enable two physically distinct nodes, the SGSN and BSS, to operate node management control functions.

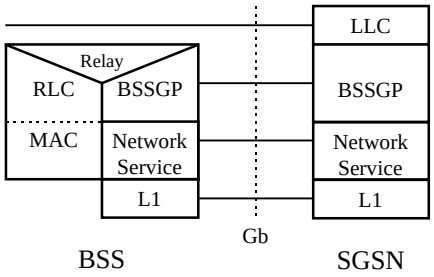


Figure 25: BSSGP Protocol Position

There is a one-to-one relationship between the BSSGP protocol in the SGSN and in the BSS. If one SGSN handles multiple BSSs, the SGSN has to have one BSSGP protocol machine for each BSS.

The main functions for the BSSGP protocol are to:

- provide a connection-less link between the SGSN and the BSS;
- transfer data unconfirmed between the SGSN and the BSS;
- provide tools for bi-directional control of the flow of data between the SGSN and the BSS;
- handle paging requests from the SGSN to the BSS;
- give support for flushing of old messages in the BSS e.g., when an MS changes BSS; and
- support multiple layer 2 links between the SGSN and one BSS.

BSSGP is defined in GSM 08.18.

12.7.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions

The functions of the BSSGP shall be defined in the context of the LLC function in order to avoid duplication of functions and information flows. The following functional model indicates each layer's functional responsibilities.

Table 1: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture

Network Node and Function	MS	BSS	SGSN
LLC: GSM 04.64	Same as for the SGSN.		Provides transfer of frames between the SGSN and MS.
BSSGP: GSM 08.18		MS←PLMN: Using BSSGP information, RLC/MAC operations are invoked. MS→PLMN: Using RLC/MAC-derived information, a BSSGP PDU is constructed. An identifier of the cell including RAC and LAC in which an LLC frame was received is inserted into the BSSGP PDU. Same as for SGSN.	Individual MS radio-related information is used by the BSS to transfer LLC frames across the Gb and Um. Provides flow control and unconfirmed data delivery services across the Gb interface (not the Um – this is the function of the LLC and RLC/MAC function). Provides SGSN-BSS node management functions.
Network Service: GSM 08.16		Same as for SGSN	Provides a multiplexing, variable-bandwidth, frame-based, link layer transport mechanism across the Gb interface, and load balancing.

12.7.3.2 BSSGP Addressing

For information transfer between the SGSN and the BSS the BSSGP is using a BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier (BVCI) for addressing. Additionally, QoS profile, and the MS identification, e.g., TLLI, may be used to create queues and contexts in both the SGSN and the BSS. The flow control mechanism is then based on these queues and contexts.

12.7.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN

A BVCI context in the BSS consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and of the available radio resource capacity.

The BVCI context in the BSS is allocated for each cell supporting GPRS. For each new GPRS cell introduced in the BSS area, a new BVCI context shall be allocated.

In the SGSN the BVCI context consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and the allowed throughput on BSSGP. The allowed throughput is updated by BSSGP flow control messages.

12.7.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface

The flow control mechanism controls the loading of the BSS LLC PDU queues per BVCI and per MS between the SGSN and the BSS in the downlink direction. No flow control is performed in the uplink direction. Buffers and link capacity shall be dimensioned to avoid loss of uplink data.

The downlink flow control mechanism is based on the following principles:

- In the SGSN, queues for LLC PDUs are provided per BVCI. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per ~~QoS delay class or precedence class~~ QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class. The SGSN shall pass LLC PDUs to LLC via BSSGP to the BSS as long as the allowed BSSGP throughput is not exceeded. The allowed BSSGP throughput is given per BVCI and for a single MS on that BVCI. The SGSN schedules the BSSGP downlink traffic of all MSs of a BVCI according to ~~both throughput parameters~~ the maximum and guaranteed bitrate attributes and to the QoS profile related to each LLC PDU. The scheduling algorithm is implementation dependent.

- In the BSS, queues per BVCI are provided at the BSSGP level. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per ~~QoS delay class or precedence class~~ QoS traffic handling priority and traffic class. Depending on the queuing conditions and the available radio resource capacity in the cell the BSS indicates the allowed BSSGP throughput per BVCI and the default allowed BSSGP throughput for each individual MS of that BVCI by BSSGP flow control messages to the SGSN. Additionally, the BSS may change the allowed BSSGP throughput for an individual MS by a BSSGP flow control message.

12.7.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Two packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by two reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, and one is used for SMS. The SGSN can assign the SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context, and the BSS shall in this case handle the packet flow for this PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

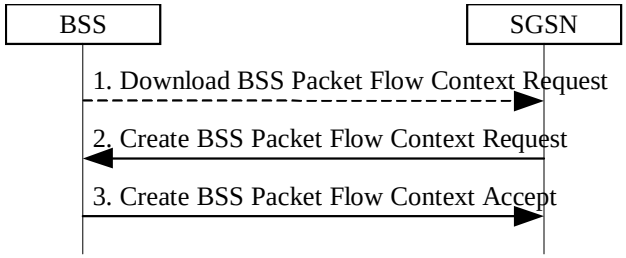


Figure 26: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as

defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS.

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.7.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context.

The SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

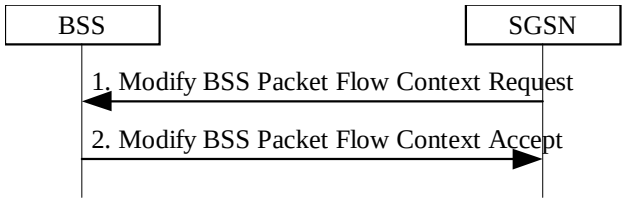


Figure 27: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS.

2) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN.

12.7.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

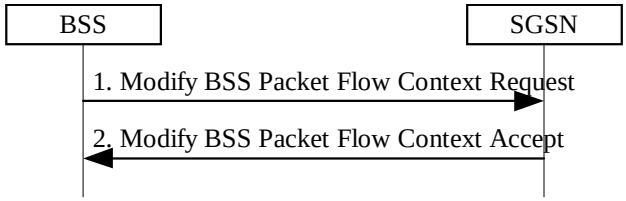


Figure 28: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS

Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.7.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

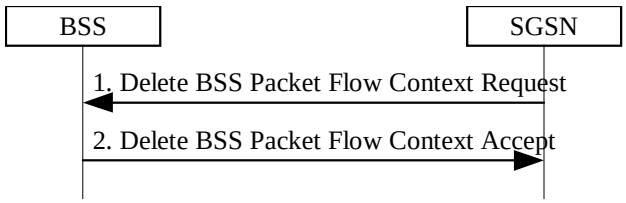


Figure 29: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.

2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

12.8 Iu Interface for UMTS

[The level of detail of this Iu description chapter is still under discussion.]

The Iu interface connects the UTRAN and the Core Network packet domain, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The user plane of Iu interface shall allow user data from many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter.

In UMTS only user data is transmitted on this shared physical medium. Signalling data is transferred via an SCCP connection. A reference configuration for Iu interface user plane is given in **Error! Reference source not found.**.

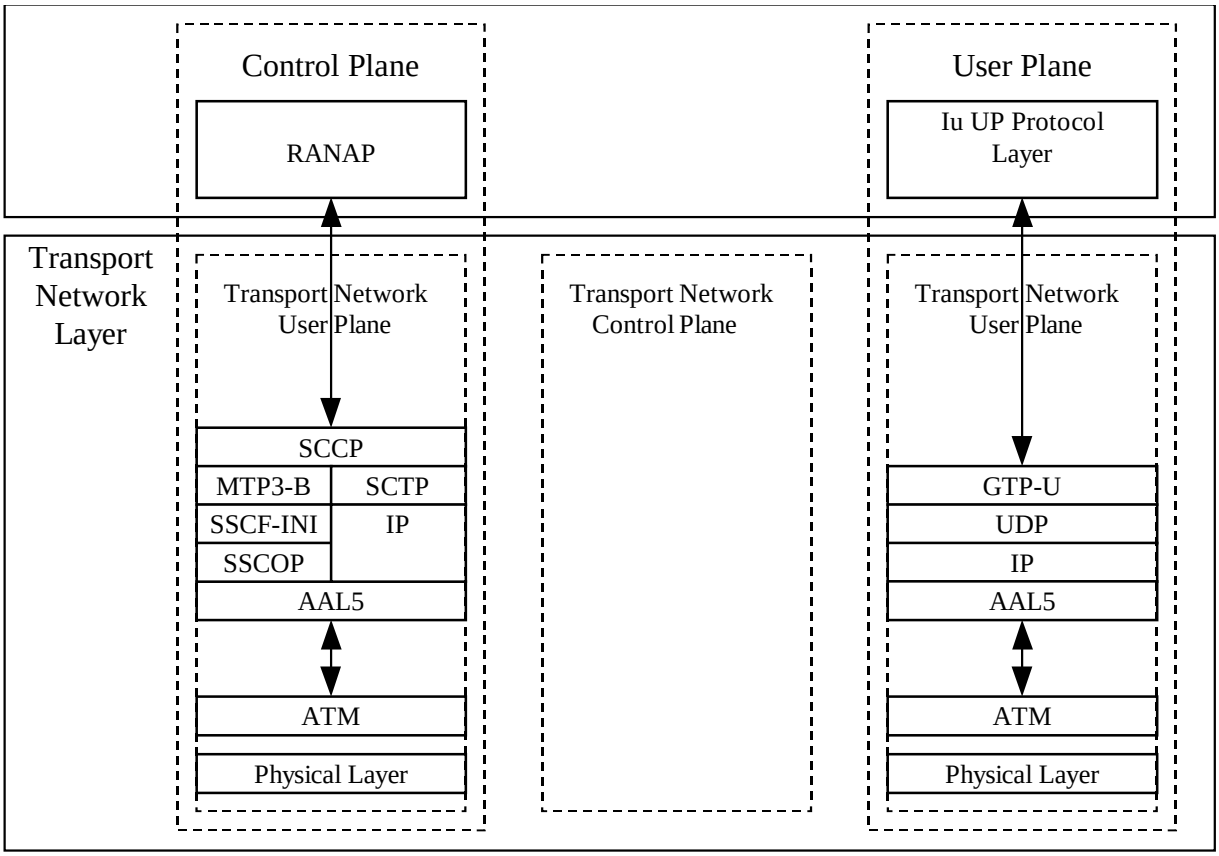


Figure 30: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic

12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols

The physical layer shall comply with one of a wide range of standards, according to UMTS 25.411. Services provided to the upper layer shall be independent from the used underlying technology.

12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport

The GTP-U protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, as specified in RFC 768. Both the IPv4 (RFC 791) and IPv6 (RFC 2460) IP protocols shall be supported, IPv6 support is FFS.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core network domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the Iu interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in RFC 1483.

The Iu interface protocol stack is described in more detailed in UMTS 25.414.

12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces

The GTP-U PDU sequence numbers allocated by the GGSN (downlink) and SRNS (uplink) are kept unchanged irrespective of the number of GTP tunnels the PDU is transferred over. Therefore, SGSN shall use on the Iu interface for downlink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the GGSN, and shall use on the Gn interface for uplink

PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the SRNS. In case of SRNS relocation and intersystem handover, the SRNS and SGSN shall tunnel PDUs without changing the GTP-U seqeuence numbers.

12.8.2.2 Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport

The protocol stack for signalling transport is based on ATM/AAL5. Two AAL5 signalling transport services options are available to provide services for the SCCP layer.

The first option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses SSCOP for reliability reasons. SSCF provides the adaptation to upper layers. MTP3-B is the network layer protocol.

The second option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses IP as the network layer. SCTP performs the adaptation of the IP layer and provides services to the SCCP layer.

12.8.3 Iu Release Procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and changes the 3G-SGSN PMM state to PMM-IDLE. Both RNC-initiated and SGSN-initiated Iu release procedures are showed in the figure below.

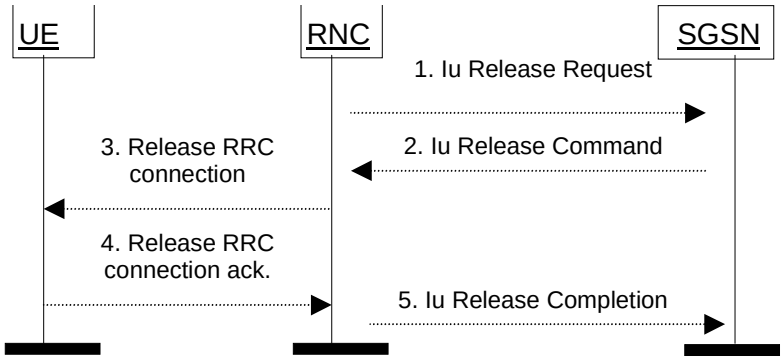


Figure 31: Iu Release Procedure

NOTE 1: Message 1 is only sent when the RNC-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

NOTE 2: Message 1 is not sent but message 2 is sent when the SGSN-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

1) The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources. It sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN. Cause indicates the reason for the release (O&M Intervention, Equipment Failure, Implicit Release, or Resource Optimisation). Implicit Release means that the periodic URA update timer expired. Resource Optimisation means that RNC decided to release an MS with only a non real-time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC-Connection-Release timer expired.

2) The SGSN releases the Iu by sending the Iu Release Command (Cause) message to the RNC. This message may be triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to send the Iu Release Command message after an Iu Release Request message with Cause set to Resource Optimisation is received from the RNC.

3) If the RRC connection is not already released (Cause = Resource Optimisation), then the RNC sends a Release RRC Connection message to the MS. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS]

4) The MS returns a Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message to the RNC.

5) The RNC confirms the Iu release by returning an Iu Release Completion message to the SGSN.

If the RNC does not receive the Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message and if Cause is different from Authentication Failure or Detach, then it should send a failure message to the SGSN, and the SGSN should stay in the MM-CONNECTED state.

12.8.4 Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the MS is currently located, or to report when the MS moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in LCS stage 2 specification (add reference FFS).

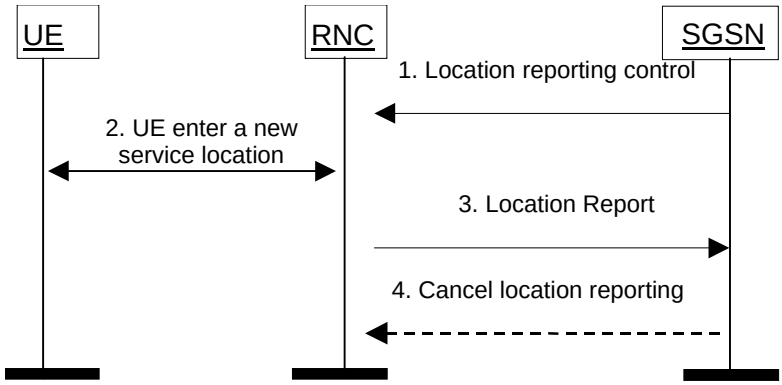


Figure 32: Location Reporting Procedure

1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area an MS in the MM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this MS. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the MS.

2) The SRNC detects that the MS moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the MS if this was requested by the SGSN.

3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the MS is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the MS is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the MS, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a MS entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).

4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given MS. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

12.9 Abis Interface for GPRS

When the GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GPRS Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the GPRS RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in **Error! Reference source not found.**) or at the SGSN site (option C in **Error! Reference source not found.**). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in **Error! Reference source not found.**).

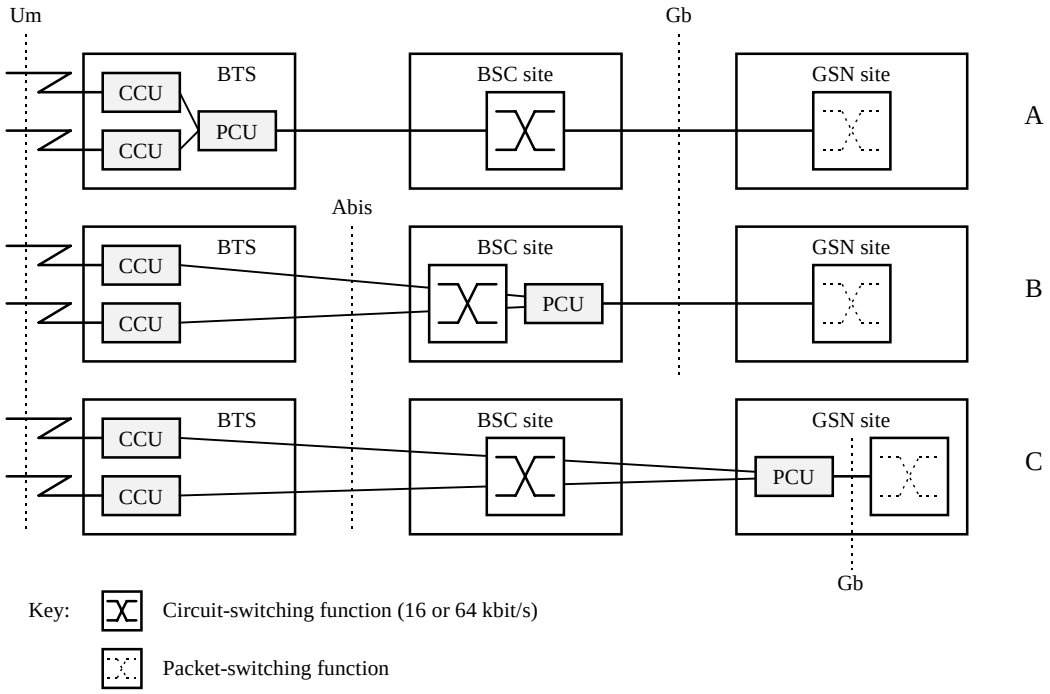


Figure 33: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

B.1 Direction of Connection Setup

This service shall be mobile-originated only.

B.2 Bearer

The IHOSS shall use the unstructured Octet Stream Protocol as its bearer service.

The MT end of the IHOSS connection shall use the octet mode interface to the OSP as a Packet Assembler / Disassembler function is necessary.

The GGSN end of the IHOSS connection shall use the block mode interface to the OSP to remove the need for two back-to-back PAD functions.

B.3 Setup Data

The following data items are required before an octet stream can be initiated.

B.3.1 Protocol Type – TCP or UDP

This refers to the protocol used over IP on the GGSN to Internet host segment of the connection. The options available are TCP or UDP.

If no protocol is specified for a given context, TCP shall be used.

B.3.2 Host Name

This refers to the Internet host to which the connection is made. It shall be a fully formed domain name extended host name.

There shall be no default host name. If no host name is specified, the context activation shall fail.

B.3.3 Port Number

This refers to the TCP or UDP port on the host name, which forms the endpoint of the Internet side of the connection.

If no port number is specified for a given context, a default value of 23 decimal shall be used.

B.3.4 PAD Parameters

The Packet Assembler / Disassembler parameters determine how to fill the outgoing packets. If the user requires interactive terminal style behaviour then the PAD shall be able to act in this way. If the user requires a streaming data link then a different setup is necessary.

The default values for the PAD parameters are defined in GSM 07.60.

B.4 Flow Control

The service shall use the flow control features provided by the OSP to provide simple start / stop flow control.

B.5 Break Signal

The OSP break signals are mapped onto the appropriate break signals at the R and Gi interfaces.

B.6 Connection Establishment Procedure

Establishing an IHOSS connection involves setting up two segments, the PLMN segment (using the OSP) between the MS and the GGSN, and the fixed-network segment between the GGSN and the Internet host. Establishing the PLMN segment shall be as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". Figure B.2 illustrates the overall procedure.

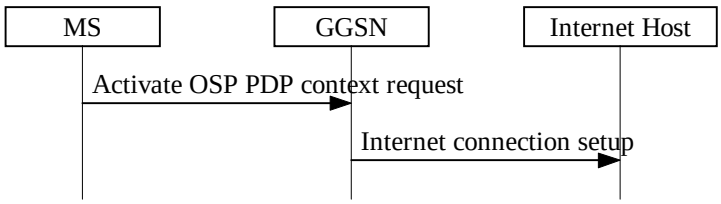


Figure B.2: IHOSS Connection Establishment

The MS requests that an OSP PDP context be activated by transmitting an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN with the following parameter values:

- NSAPI is selected by the MS.
- TI is selected by the MS.
- PDP Type shall have a two-part value. The first part shall identify the protocol as OSP, and the second part shall identify the service being used and thereby allow the SGSN to select a GGSN that can provide this service. For IHOSS PDP Type shall be set to OSP:IHOSS.
- PDP Address shall be empty.
- APN is selected by the MS, may be empty.
- QoS Requested is selected by the MS.
- PDP Configuration Options may contain an Internet host name, a port number, a protocol type, and possibly other parameters in order to enable the GGSN to set up a connection to the Internet host, or it may be empty.

The Activate PDP Context Accept message shall be returned to the MS only after the connection to the Internet host has been established.

The activation parameters shall be provided as either interactive commands or via a system-default value. The following subclauses describe how these parameters shall be derived for a number of different scenarios.

B.6.1 Fully User-Specified Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying the PAD parameters, the host name, the port, and the protocol (UDP or TCP) in PDP Configuration Options.

The SGSN shall select an appropriate GGSN for the outgoing connection.

The GGSN shall attempt to establish a connection with the specified host. Connection failure shall be signalled back to the MS and the session terminated. A successful connection establishment enables data transmission over the connection.

B.6.2 Default Internet Endpoint Parameters Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying only PAD parameters that deviate from the system defaults.

The SGSN shall connect to the GGSN indicated by the APN in the HLR subscription record.

The GGSN shall use the APN to further select the host name, the port number, and the protocol. The method used to select these parameters is manufacturer specific and outside of the scope of the specifications.

B.7 Connection Termination

Either the MS or the Internet host may request that a connection be cleared.

B.7.1 MS-initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

The MS clears the connection by sending a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN. This shall result in the TCP session closure procedures being executed by the GGSN. Once this is complete, the GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.2 MS-initiated UDP IHOSS Connection Termination

No further action is required by the GGSN towards the Internet endpoint, as the User Datagram Protocol is connectionless. The GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.3 Internet Host Initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

When the GGSN receives a TCP clear request from the fixed network it shall follows the procedure described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

~~B.8 Quality of Service~~

~~The QoS profile shall be negotiated to the following QoS attribute values:~~

- ~~Precedence: as required.~~
- ~~Delay: as required, but consistent with PAD forwarding strategy.~~
- ~~Reliability: Class 1 for TCP. Class 3 for UDP.~~
- ~~Peak throughput: as required.~~
- ~~Mean throughput: as required.~~

B.8~~9~~ Security

B.8~~9~~.1 Authentication of the GPRS User

Identification and authentication of the subscriber by the GPRS network is carried out as described elsewhere in this document. The GPRS network shall not provide any identification of the GPRS subscriber to the Internet host. End-to-end security is provided at the application layer and is outside of the scope of this document.

B.89.2 Malicious Reconfiguration of the GPRS Device

An MS that can not hold protocol, host name, and port information, would render it impossible to gain unauthorised access and subvert the system by providing alternative protocol, host name, or port information. This information would have to be provided by the GGSN, which is potentially more physically secure than the embedded MT, and it would make "man in the middle" type security breaches considerably more complex.

B.910 Maintenance

Configuring the Internet endpoint by accepting a mandatory default endpoint from the GGSN enables a GPRS user to effect system reconfiguration without the requirement for a site visit for each GPRS MS. The association between the APN and the host name, port number and protocol in the GGSN would be updated to give a new host name and/or port number and/or protocol.

TSG SA WG2 #11
24.1.-28.1.2000, Puerto Vallarta, Mexico

Document S2-000229
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	080R2	Current Version:	3.2.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic	X	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source:	Siemens AG		**Date:**	25.1.2000	
Subject:	GPRS Interworking With CAMEL				
Work item:	GPRS				
Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*	F Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
	A Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
	B Addition of feature			Release 97	
	C Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
	D Editorial modification	X		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

Removal of the word “cost” in the first sentence, the control is mainly about cost controlling but that is not the only issue. The intention is to make it more general.

The sentence “This also applies if the SGSN node does not support CAMEL interaction” is meaningless and shall be deleted. If a SGSN does not support CAMEL it does not care about any CAMEL requirement!

Clauses affected: 5.4.1

Other specs affected:			
	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes

A GPRS Support Node (GSN) contains functionality required to support GPRS and/or to support UMTS packet domain functionality. In one PLMN, there may be more than one GSN.
The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) is the node that is accessed by the packet data network due to evaluation of the PDP address. It contains routeing information for attached GPRS users. The routeing information is used to tunnel N-PDUs to the MS's current point of attachment, i.e., the Serving GPRS Support Node. The GGSN may request location information from the HLR via the optional Gc interface. The GGSN is the first point of PDN interconnection with a GSM PLMN supporting GPRS (i.e., the Gi reference point is supported by the GGSN). GGSN functionality is common for GPRS and for the UMTS packet domain.
The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) is the node that is serving the MS. The SGSN supports GPRS (i.e., the Gb interface is supported by the SGSN) and/or UMTS (i.e., the Iu interface is supported by the SGSN). At GPRS attach, the SGSN establishes a mobility management context containing information pertaining to e.g., mobility and security for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routeing purposes, with the GGSN that the subscriber will be using.
The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC) routeing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.
The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.
The SGSN interfaces with the GSM-SCF for optional CAMEL ~~cost~~ control. Depending on the result from the CAMEL interaction, the session and packet data transfer may proceed normally. ~~This also applies if the SGSN does not support CAMEL interaction.~~ Otherwise, interaction with the GSM-SCF continues as described in 3G TS 23.078 [8b]. Only the GSM-SCF interworking points are indicated in the signalling procedures in this specification.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000013**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	085	Current Version:	3.2.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Motorola **Date:** 6 Jan., 2000

Subject: Storage of Aggregated BSS QoS Profile in the SGSN

Work item: Involvement of BSS in QoS provisioning

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*			**Release:**	
F	Correction		Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature	X	Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			Release 00	

Reason for change: The SGSN can initiate a BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure in order to change e.g., the aggregate BSS QoS profile used for the packet flow. To allow the SGSN to decide when and whether to initiate the modification procedure, it needs to have the current ABQP available. This CR proposes that the ABQP be stored in the SGSN PDP contexts.

Clauses affected: 13.2.

Other specs affected:			
Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. Table 1 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 1: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X

VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for the packet flow that this PDP context belongs to.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS.		X
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. Table 2 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 2: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for the packet flow.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
GTP-SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000028**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	086	Current Version:

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	Strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*

(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Lucent Technologies **Date:** 21 Oct. 99

Subject: Optimisation to selective routing area update procedure

Work item: UMTS R99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature	X		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: In order to preserve battery life, and avoid unnecessary signalling, during a power off detach, the MS should not carry out a RA update procedure regardless of the criteria of the selective routing area update procedure.
Note that it is however not an error condition for the mobile to do so -

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.
Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routeing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.
If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.
If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling. The RA update procedure need not be performed if the signalling message is a power off detach.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.
If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GPRS cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.
If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico 24-28 Jan 2000

Document S2-000292
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	088r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 14.1.2000

Subject: Handling of QoS budget in CN and BSS.

Work item: Enhanced QoS support in GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature	X		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: This CR clarifies the handling of the QoS budget between CN and RAN. The concept has previously been presented in Tdoc S2-99865, and agreed as such by the QoS ad-hoc group at the S2 meeting #8 in Bonn.

Clauses affected: 12.7.3.5.1

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN. The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.
The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

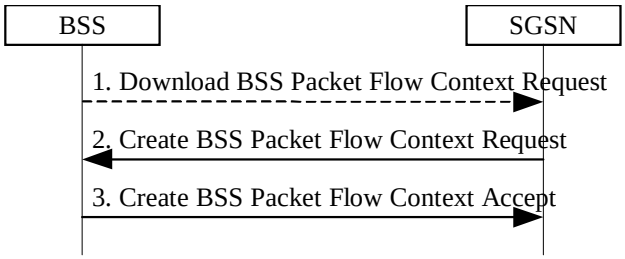


Figure 1: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS. The SGSN derives the Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested from the QoS profile negotiated for PDP contexts sharing a packet flow. The SGSN shall divide the transfer delay attribute in the QoS profile in one core network part and one BSS part. The SGSN estimates the transfer delay in the core network and subtracts this from the UMTS bearer service transfer delay. The result shall be used as transfer delay attribute in the Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, which will only cover the delay in the MS to SGSN segment of the GPRS PLMN. Maximum SDU size, SDU format information and transfer delay may also need to be corrected to accommodate for segmentation introduced by SNDCP. All other attributes in the Aggregate BSS QoS Profile shall be the same as the corresponding UMTS bearer service attribute, see TS 23.107 [58].

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

TSG SA WG2 #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000293**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	089r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-01-14

Subject: Release of RABs Without PDP Context Modification

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*				**Release:**	
	F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
	B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
	C	Functional modification of feature	~~X~~	Release 98	
	D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: Definition of the procedures for keeping PDP contexts without modification when RABs are released.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:			
Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, ~~and~~ Deactivation and Preservation ~~Procedures~~~~Functions~~Functions

A PS-attached MS can initiate the~~se functions~~ activation, modification and deactivation functions ~~procedures~~ at any time ~~in order to activate, modify, or deactivate~~for a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a PS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

NOTE: If the MS is in PMM-IDLE state, it needs to perform a service request procedure to enter the PMM-CONNECTED state before initiating these procedure.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP address but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts that share the same PDP address and APN shall be managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be initiated. When the MS performs an RA update procedure to change from a release 99 to a release 97 or 98 system, only one active PDP context per PDP address and APN shall be preserved. This PDP context is selected taking the QoS profile and NSAPI value into account.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every TI.

By sending a RAB Release Request or Iu Release Request message to the SGSN, UTRAN ~~may~~ initiates the release of one or more RABs ~~by sending a RAB Release Request or Iu Release Request message to the SGSN~~. The preservation function allows the active PDP contexts ~~The Active PDP Contexts~~ associated to the released RABs ~~may~~ to be preserved without modification in the CN and the RABs can then be re-established at a later stage.

********* Next modified section *******

9.2.5 Preservation Procedures

~~UTRAN may initiate the release of one or more RABs. The Active PDP Contexts associated to the released RABs may be preserved without modification in the CN and the RABs can then be re-established at a later stage~~

By sending a RAB Release Request or Iu Release Request message to the SGSN, UTRAN initiates the release of one or more RABs. The preservation procedure allows the active PDP contexts associated to the released RABs to be preserved without modification in the CN and the RABs can then be re-established at a later stage.

UTRAN use the Iu Release Request to request release of all RABs to a MS and the RAB Release Request in other cases.~~:~~

Release of RABs Triggered by UTRAN

RAB Release Procedure

UTRAN ~~may~~ initiates a RAB release procedure to release one or several RABs~~. If all of the RABs are to be released, UTRAN shall use the Iu Release procedure.~~. The RAB Release procedure is illustrated in Figure XX. Each step is explained in the following list.

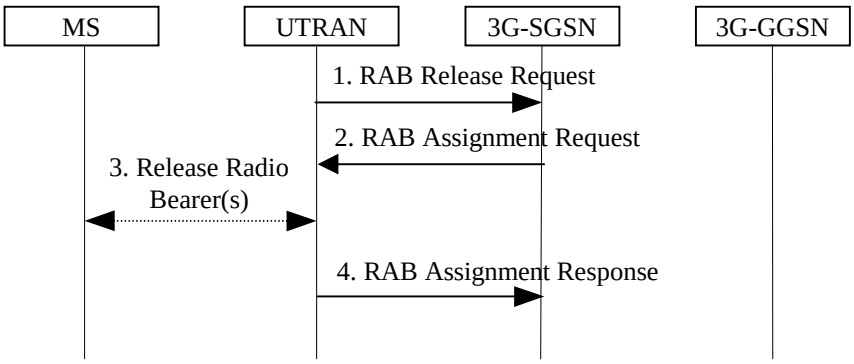


Figure XX: RAB Release Procedure

1) UTRAN initiates the procedure by sending a RAB Release Request(For each RAB to be released: RAB ID, Cause) message to SGSN.

2) The SGSN sends a RAB Assignment Request (For each RAB to be released: RAB ID, Cause) to UTRAN.

3) The Radio Bearer(s) are released if still existing.

4) UTRAN sends a RAB Assignment Response(For each released RAB: RAB ID, GTP SND, GTP SNU) to SGSN. The GTP SND and GTP SNU are included to enable the SGSN to restore the values in case that the PDP context is maintained and the RAB is re-established at a later stage.

Iu Release Procedure

UTRAN ~~may~~ initiates an Iu release procedure to release all RABs to an MS and the Iu connection. ~~of the Iu connection.~~ The Iu Release procedure is illustrated in Figure XX. Each step is explained in the following list.

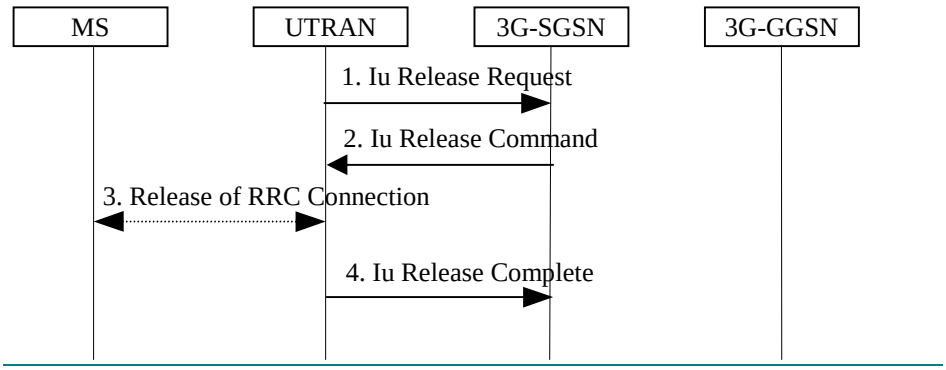


Figure XX: Iu Release Procedure

1) UTRAN sends an Iu Release Request(Cause) to SGSN.

2) The SGSN sends an Iu Release Command(Cause) to UTRAN.

3) The RRC connection is released if still existing.

4) UTRAN confirms the Iu release by sending an Iu Release Complete(For each released RAB: RAB ID, GTP SND, GTP SNU) to SGSN. The GTP SND and GTP SNU are included to enable the SGSN to restore the values in case that the PDP context is maintained and the RAB is re-established at a later stage.

Re-establishment of RABs

~~The SGSN may re-establish RABs for active PDP Contexts that don't have any associated RAB.~~ The procedure for Re-establishment of RABs allows SGSN to re-establish RABs for active PDP contexts that don't have any associated RAB.

The MS initiates the re-establishment of RABs by using the Service Request message, service type=data. This is described in section 6.12.1.

~~If the CN needs to re-establish RABs for an MS that has no RRC connection,~~When RABs for an MS that has no RRC connection needs to be re-established, the CN must first page the MS. This is described in section 6.12.2.

TSG SA WG2 #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico

Document S2-000251
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	090	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]

Source: Ericsson, NTT Communicationware **Date:** 2000-01-26

Subject: NSAPI as RAB identifier for packet

Work item: UMTS R99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	[X]	**Release:**	Phase 2	[ ]
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	[ ]		Release 96	[ ]
B	Addition of feature	[ ]		Release 97	[ ]
C	Functional modification of feature	[ ]		Release 98	[ ]
D	Editorial modification	[ ]		Release 99	[X]
				Release 00	[ ]

Reason for change:

This CR clarifies the use of the NSAPI, RB Identity and RAB ID for UMTS, as well as the TEID.

It also removes the duplication of identifiers in NSAPI, NAS Binding IE and RAB ID. The NSAPI value is carried in the RAB ID IE in RANAP and RRC signalling. The RAB ID used in the RNC is identical to the NSAPI value.

Furthermore, the message sequence charts on serving RNC relocation procedure and GSM to UMTS intra/inter SGSN change is clarified by showing the parameters, RAB ID and the QoS profile of the RAB, in the RAB Assignment Request message and the SRNC Relocation Request messages.

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2, 6.13.1.2, 6.13.2.2, 14.4, 14.6

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.
The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.
Figure 39 shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN.
Figure 40 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

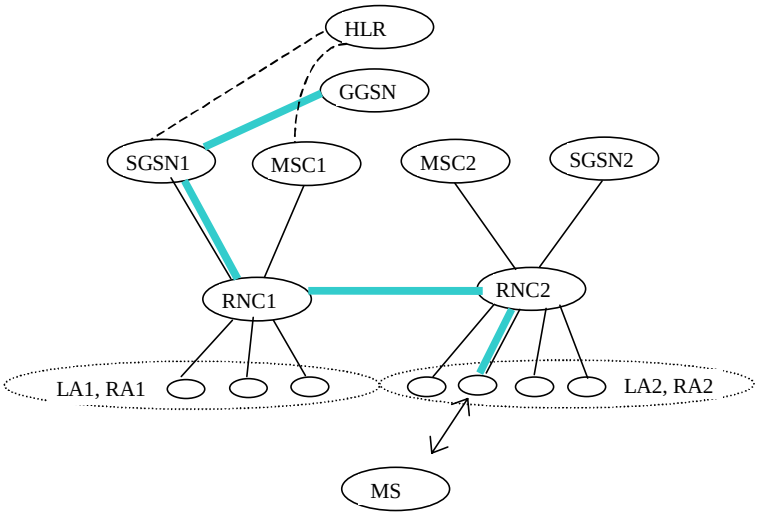


Figure 39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

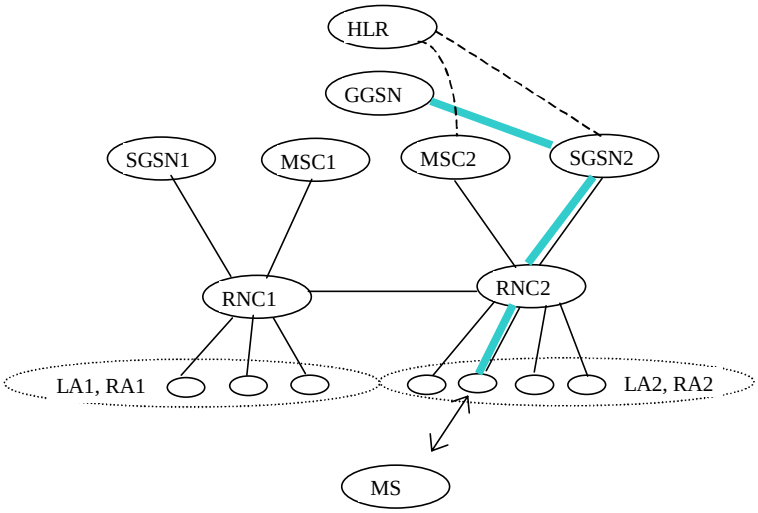


Figure 40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.
The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 41. Each step is explained in the following list.

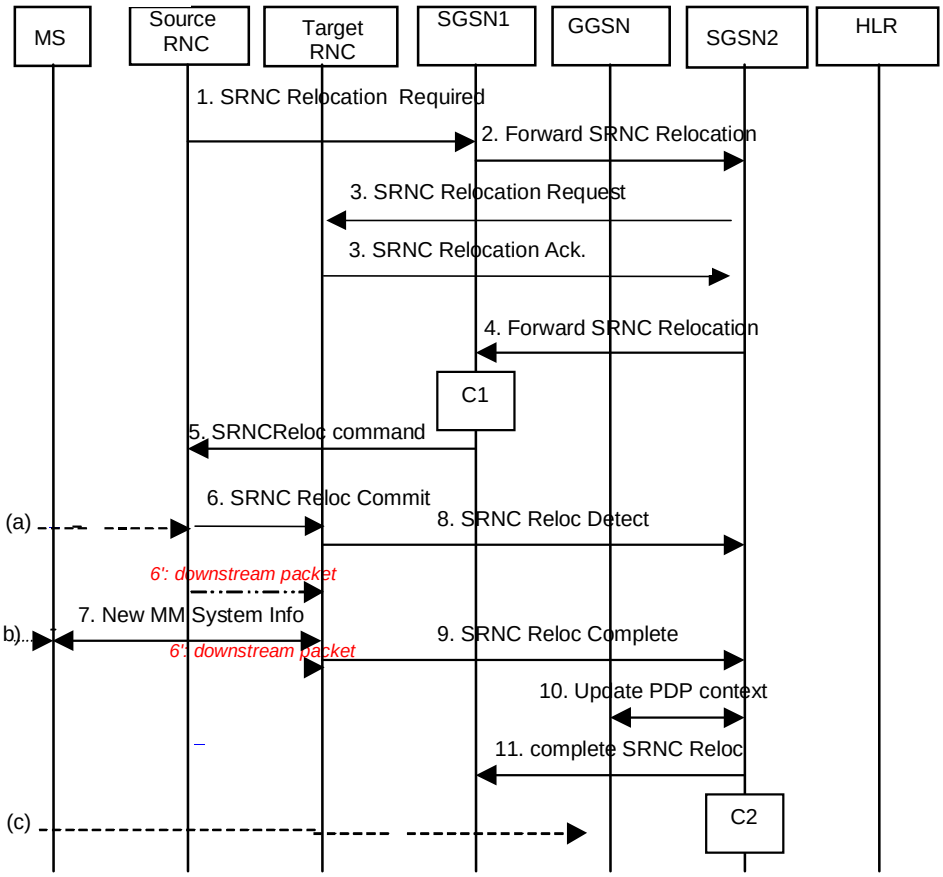


Figure 41: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, RAB ID(s), QoS Profile(s)) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

NOTE: The NSAPI value is carried in the RAB ID IE.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.2 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.
When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures.
The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.

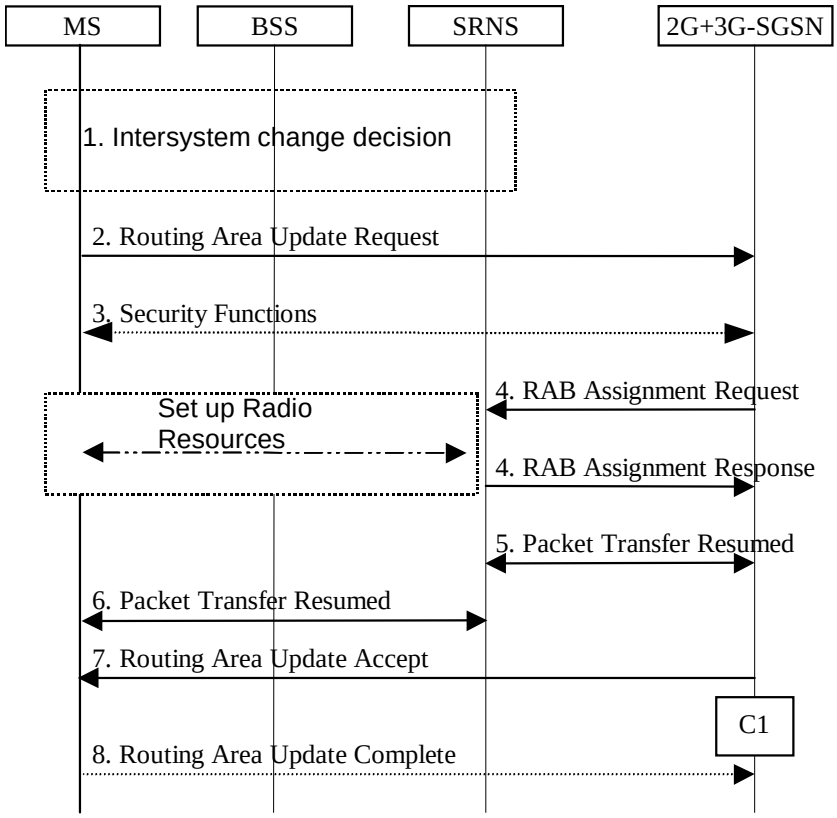


Figure 50: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (RAB ID(s), QoS Profile(s), GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The RLC sequence numbers shall be derived (shifted left 4 times) from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

NOTE: The NSAPI value is carried in the RAB ID IE.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. If this is not the case, then the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

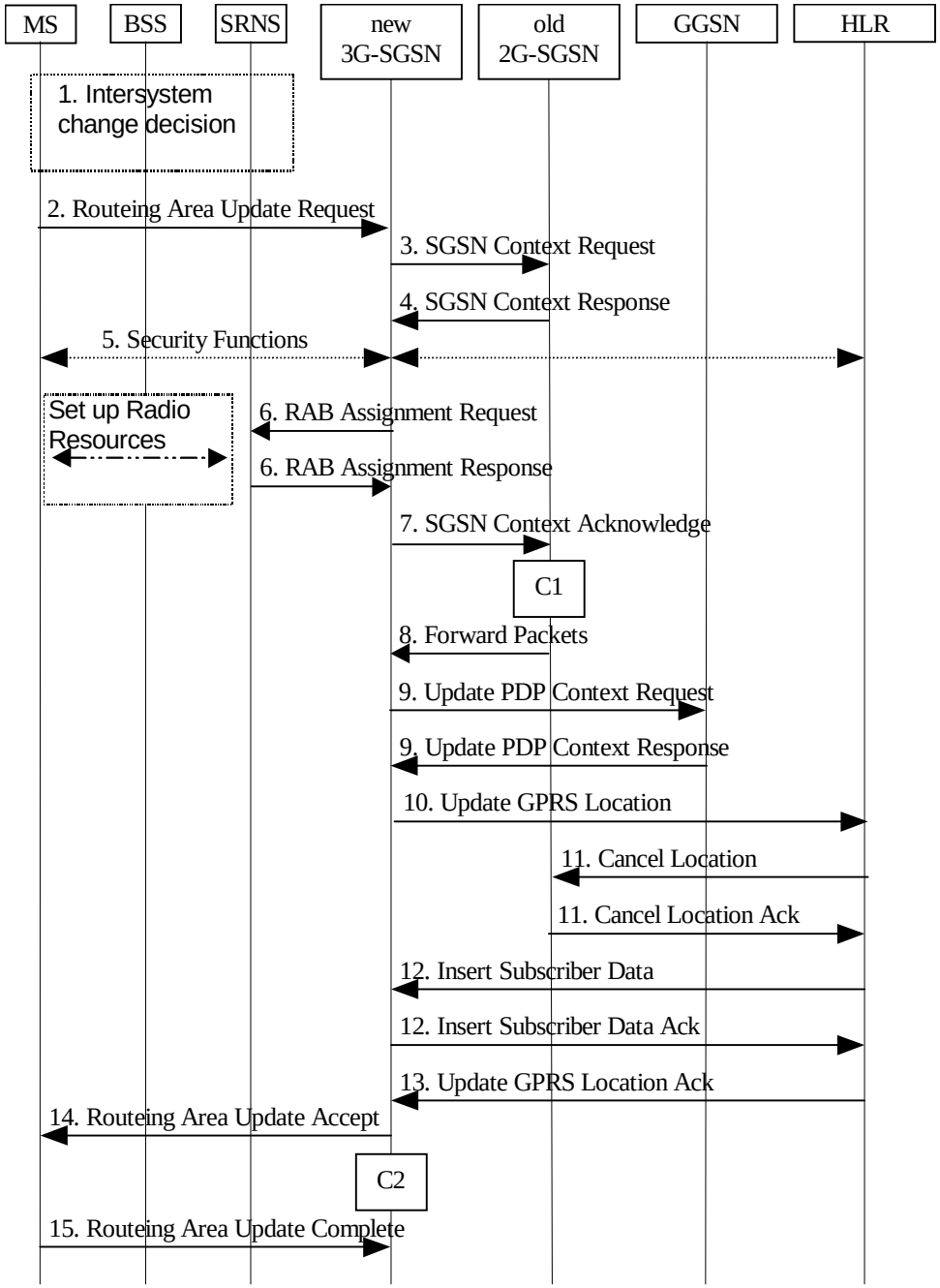


Figure 52: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in

acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface. The new 3G-SGSN converts the SNDCP sequence numbers to RLC sequence numbers by shifting them left 4 times.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (RAB ID(s), QoS Profile(s), GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNDs received from the MS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNUs received from the SRNS. If this is not the case, the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

NOTE: The NSAPI value is carried in the RAB ID IE.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. Table 15 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 15: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
~~NSAPI~~RAB ID	~~Network layer Service Access Point Identifier~~Radio Access Bearer Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence number to be sent to the MS
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence Number expected from the MS

14.4 NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) and IMSI ~~is~~ are used for network layer routeing. An NSAPI/IMSI pair is used to assign a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID).

In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context associated with an MM context. ~~, and i~~

In communication with RNC across the Iu PS and Uu interfaces the RAB ID is used to identify the radio access bearer and that IE shall be set identical to the NSAPI value. In the RNC, ~~NSAPI~~ RAB ID identifies the RNC RAB context. Radio Bearer Identity (RB Identity) is used to identify the Uu interface radio bearer(s) ~~logical channel~~ associated with the radio access bearer. ~~Radio Access Bearer Identifier (RAB ID) is used to identify the Iu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer.~~The RAB ID shall uniquely identify the RAB for a specific CN domain and a particular MS.

~~In the packet domain, a network allocates one radio access bearer for one PDP context. In addition, one Uu interface logical radio bearer is allocated for one radio access bearer.~~

There is a one-to-one relation between NSAPI, Radio Access Bearer and PDP Context. In the packet domain, it is also a one-to-one relationship to Radio Bearer Identity.

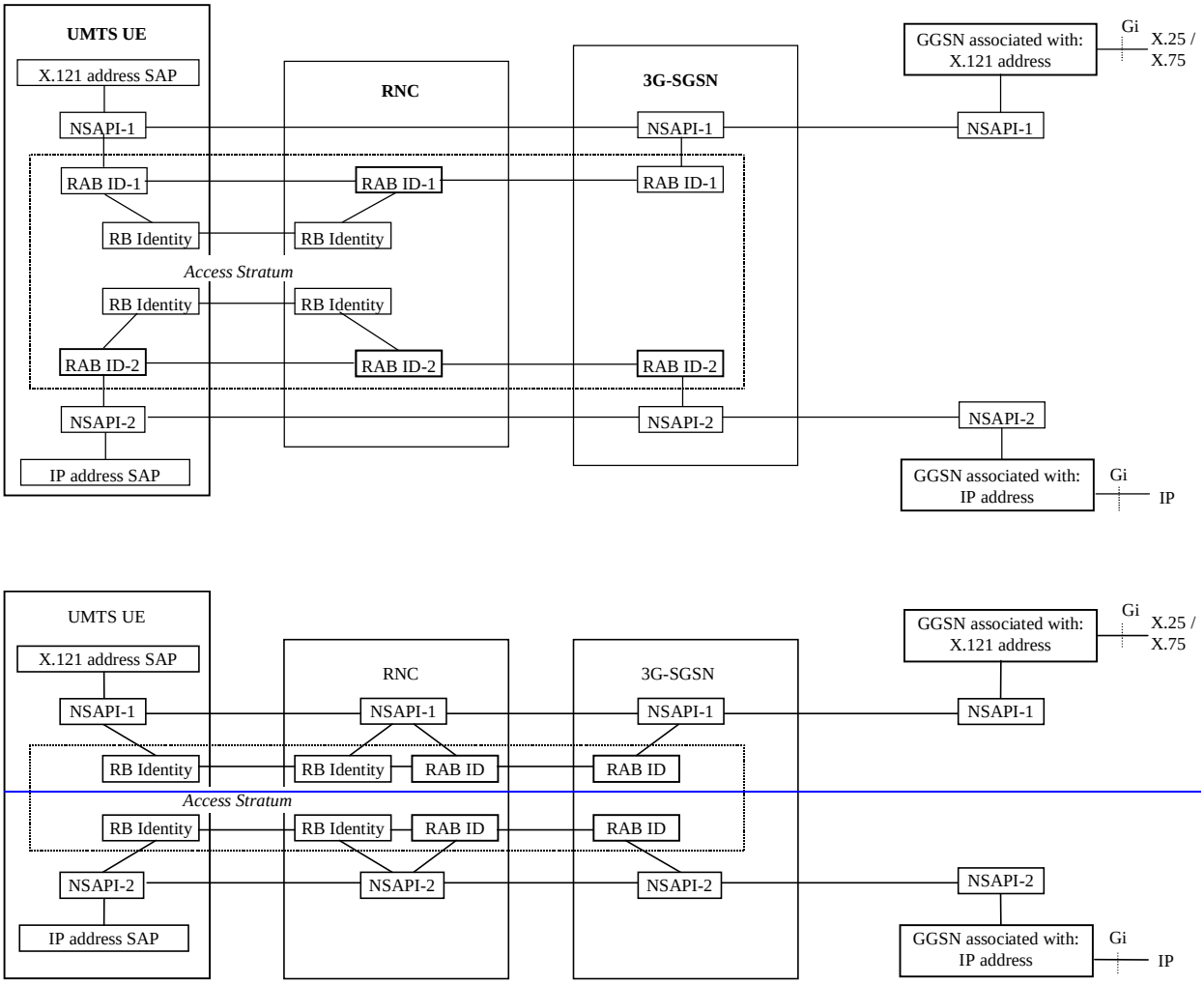


Figure 92: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID

When the MS initiates activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs. When the SGSN initiates a RAB assignment procedure, the SGSN shall ~~allocate RAB ID(s) in which~~ include the NSAPI(s) in the RAB ID IE(s)~~are used as those values in order to recognise them in the RNC~~.

14.6 TEID

A Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID) is used by the GPRS tunnelling protocol between GSNs, and between RNCs and SGSNs, to identify a tunnel endpoint in the receiving GTP-C or GTP-U protocol entity and to identify a PDP context (or in the Iu case a Radio Access Bearer). The receiving end side of a GTP tunnel locally assigns the TEID value that the transmitting side has to use. The TEID values are exchanged between tunnel endpoints using GTP-C (or RANAP in the Iu case) messages.

The TEID is assigned based on the NSAPI and the IMSI (or in the Iu case the RAB ID and the IMSI). It is a unique identifier within one IP address of a logical node i.e. RNC, SGSN or GGSN.

The TEID is forwarded to the GGSN upon PDP Context Activation and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the GGSN and the SGSN to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and GGSN. The TEID is also used to forward N-PDUs from the old SGSN to the new SGSN at and after an inter SGSN routeing area update. In UMTS, the TEID is also forwarded to the RNC upon RAB assignment and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the 3G-SGSN and the RNC in order to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and the MS's RNC RAB contexts in the RNC. It is also used to forward N-PDUs from the SRNC to the target RNC at SRNS relocation.

In the anonymous access case, AA-TEID is allocated locally by the SGSN. An AA-TEID consists of an A-TLLI and an NSAPI similar to TEID. Since the IMSI is longer than A-TLLI, the unused digits shall be used to create a unique identity within one PLMN. The allocated AA-TEID shall not collide with the TEID address space.

3GPP TSG SA2 #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000035**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	091	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA2	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source:	Ericsson		**Date:**	Jan. 13, 2000	
Subject:	Correction to GPRS/CAMEL interwork				
Work item:	N2 WPA GPRS/CAMEL				

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*				**Release:**		
	F	Correction	X		Phase 2	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
	B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
	C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
	D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
					Release 00	

Reason for change:	The approved CR 048r1 proposes CAMEL interaction also for Service Request Procedures, which may not be invoked due to attach, but for other reasons than user initiated. Those interaction points are therefore removed for UMTS, MS and Network initiated Service Request procedures.
Clauses affected:	6.12.1, 6.12.2

Other specs affected:			
	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:	

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

******First Modified Section ******

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP contexts. After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

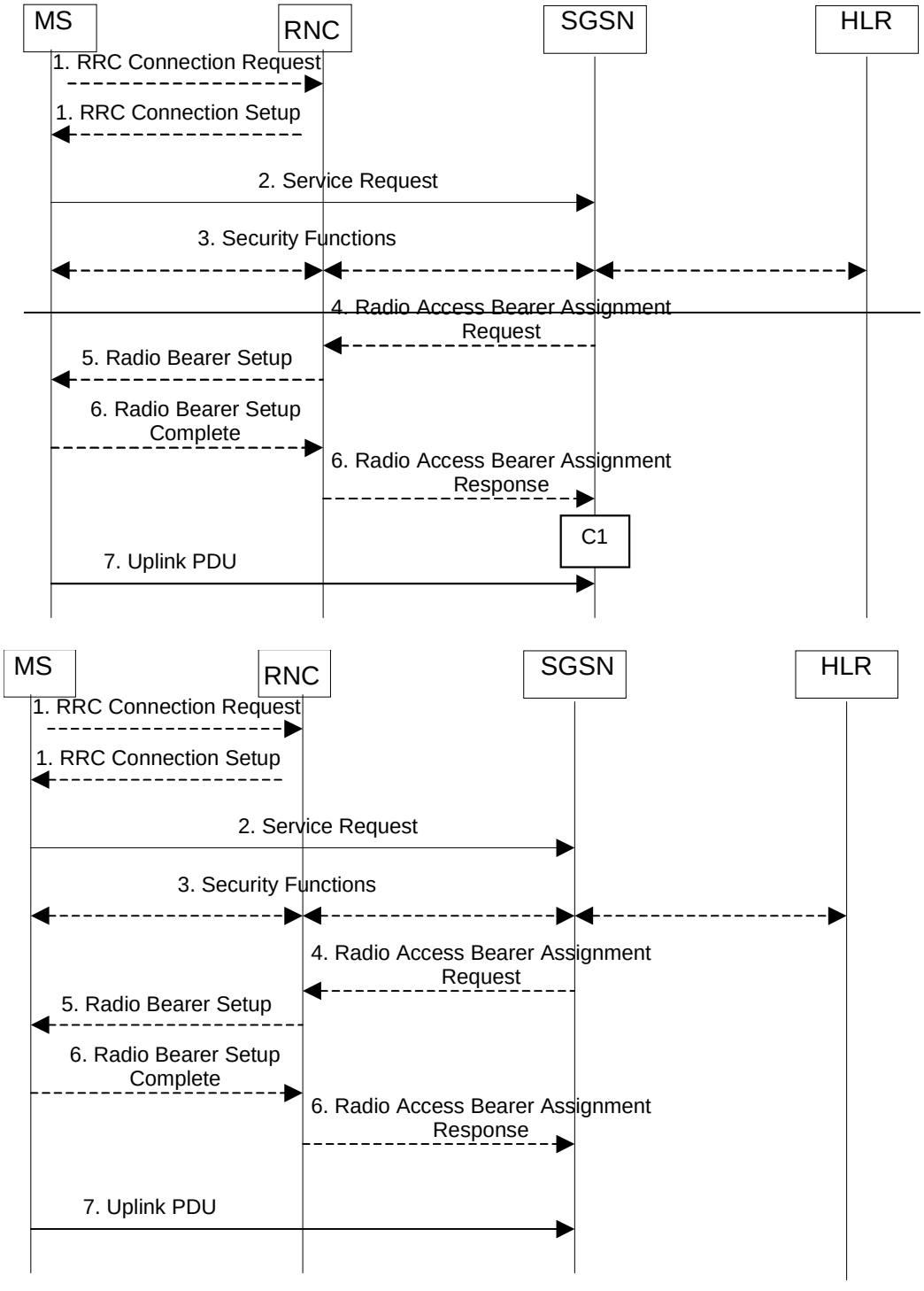


Figure 1: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are requested allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not requested allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The MS sends the uplink packet.

The MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating Service Type = Data is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases, the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

~~For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:~~

~~C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.~~

****** Next Modified Section ******

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

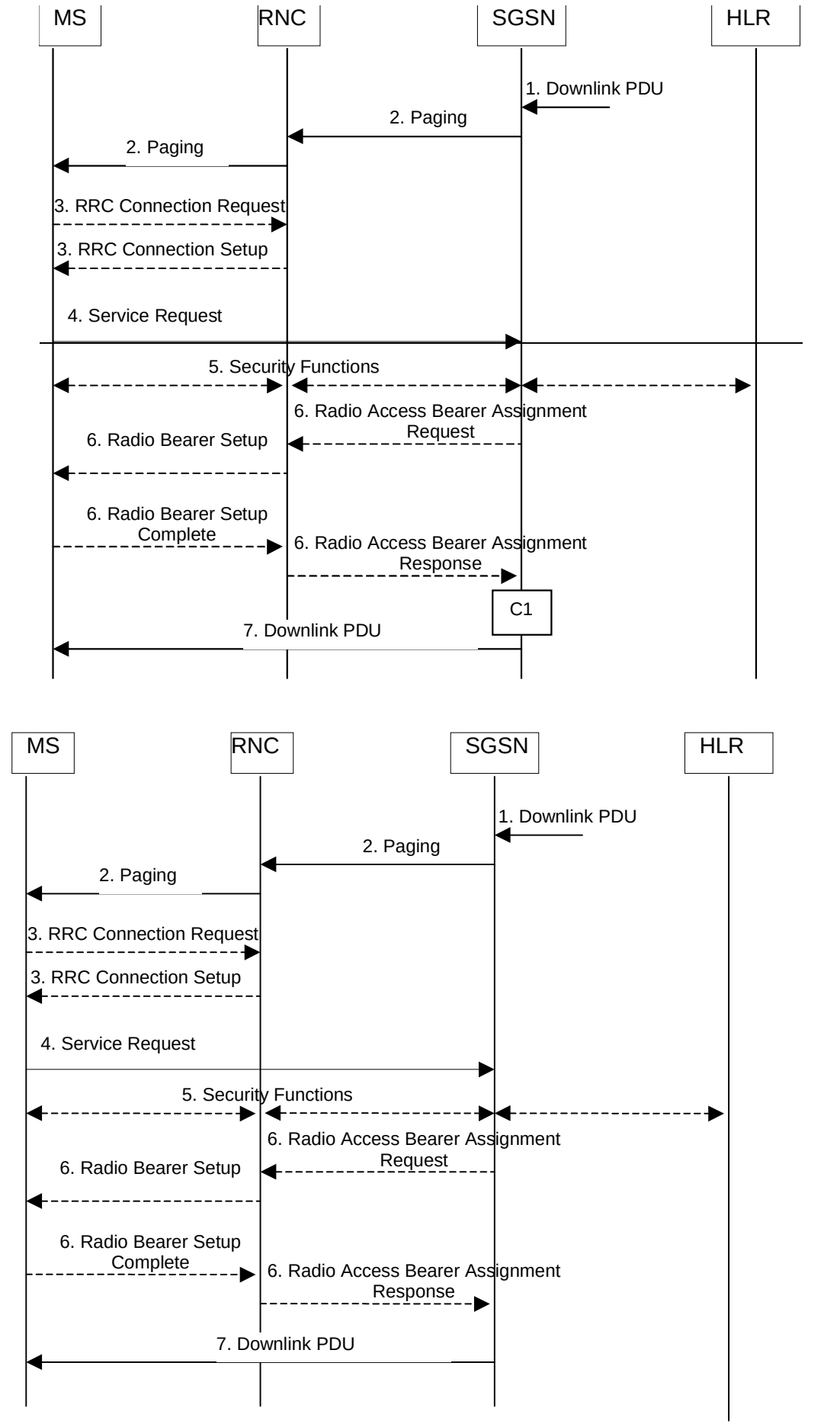


Figure 2: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the MS.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

~~For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:~~

~~C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.~~

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico 24-28 Jan 2000

Document S2-000036
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	092	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 14.1.2000

Subject: IP Multicast support in GGSN

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature	X		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The GGSN supports only the IP protocol, but there's no way to route Multicast packets when they reach the GGSN. We are proposing an optional support for the IP-Multicast protocol in the GGSN.
A discussion paper (S2-99B85) has been presented and the IP-M concept has been agreed onto at the S2 meeting in London (25th-29th of October 1999).

Clauses affected: 9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	29-061
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments: A CR for 29-061 is also submitted on this subject giving more details.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;

- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and

- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

- Optionally support the IP Multicast routing of packets via a relay function in the GGSN.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. The maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets [FFS]. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

The GGSN could also optionally support IP Multicast: this will allow the TEs to join Multicast groups and start receiving Multicast packets. The GGSN will duplicate those incoming Multicast packets and relay them to the already active TEID. These TEID will be those of TEs that have joined a Multicast group.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #zz
Puerto Vallarte, Mexico, 29 Jan – 2 Feb 2000

***Document* S2-000047**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	094	Current Version:	3.2.0

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: TSG SA2					
list expected approval meeting # here ↑	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic	X	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [ ]

Source: France Telecom **Date:** 11.01.00

Subject: Removal of the description of the cell reselection algorithm from 3G TS 23.060

Work item: GPRS

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

- Cell reselection algorithm should not be described in this recommendation but rather in GSM 03.22.
- Misinterpretation of this clause would affect the cell reselection and cause radio interference in the network.
- Correction of a wrong reference to 3G TS 03.022 replaced by a reference to GSM 03.22

Clauses affected: 8.1.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. ~~This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.~~

If the MS is in idle mode, see GSM 03.22~~3G TS 23.022~~, then it shall use cell selection and reselection procedures as described in GSM 03.64 and specified in GSM 03.22 and GSM 05.08.~~behave as described below:~~

~~When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:~~

~~— If the currently camped on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.~~

~~— If the currently camped on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.~~

~~If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see 3G TS 23.022.~~

~~The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.~~

~~If the MS is in dedicated mode, see 3G TS 24.008, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network controlled handover procedures.~~

~~There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI attached and GPRS attached.~~

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000100**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**096**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Motorola **Date:** 18 Jan., 2000

Subject: Removal of PDP Type X.25 support

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	
B	Addition of feature	X
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Release:

Phase 2	
Release 96	
Release 97	
Release 98	
Release 99	X
Release 00	

Reason for change: S1 has decided that X.25 shall not be supported as an end-user protocol from release 99 onwards, see Tdoc S1-991001. This CR removes the X.25 material from 23.060.

Clauses affected: Many.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

1 Scope

The present document defines the stage-2 service description for the packet domain, which includes the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) in GSM, and the packet side of UMTS. CCITT I.130 [29] describes a three-stage method for characterisation of telecommunication services, and CCITT Q.65 [31] defines stage 2 of the method.

This document does not cover the Access Network functionality. GSM 03.64 [11] contains an overall description of the GSM GPRS Access Network. 3G TS 25.301 contains an overall description of the UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network.

2 References

[All references need to be checked once release 99 stabilises.]

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- A non-specific reference to an ETS shall also be taken to refer to later versions published as an EN with the same number.

[1] GSM 01.04: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Abbreviations and acronyms".

[2] GSM 01.61: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); GPRS ciphering algorithm requirements".

[3] 3G TS 22.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Service description; Stage 1".

[4] 3G TS 23.003: "Numbering, addressing and identification".

[5] 3G TS 23.007: "Restoration procedures".

[5b] 3G TS 23.016: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Subscriber Data Management; Stage 2".

[6] GSM 03.20: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Security related network functions".

[7] 3G TS 23.022: "Functions related to Mobile Station (MS) in idle mode and group receive mode".

[8] 3G TS 23.040: "Technical realisation of the Short Message Service (SMS); Point-to-Point (PP)".

[8b] 3G TS 23.078: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Customised Applications for Mobile Network Enhanced Logic (CAMEL) Phase 3 – Stage 2".

[11] GSM 03.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Overall description of the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) Radio interface; Stage 2".

[12] 3G TS 24.007: "Mobile radio interface signalling layer 3; General aspects".

[13] 3G TS 24.008: "Mobile radio interface layer 3 specification; Core Network Protocols – Stage 3".

[14] GSM 04.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) - Base Station System (BSS) interface; Radio Link Control / Medium Access Control (RLC/MAC) protocol".

[15] GSM 04.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station – Serving GPRS Support Node (MS - SGSN) Logical Link Control (LLC) layer specification".

[16] GSM 04.65: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) – Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP)".

[17] 3G TS 27.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) supporting GPRS".

[18] GSM 08.08: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Switching Centre - Base Station System (MSC - BSS) interface: Layer 3 specification".

[19] GSM 08.14: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Gb interface layer 1".

[20] GSM 08.16: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Network Service".

[21] GSM 08.18: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); BSS GPRS Protocol (BSSGP)".

[22] GSM 08.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Inband control of remote transcoders and rate adaptors for Enhanced Full Rate (EFR) and full rate traffic channels."

[23] 3G TS 29.002: "Mobile Application Part (MAP) specification".

[24] 3G TS 29.016: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface network service specification".

[25] 3G TS 29.018: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface layer 3 specification".

[26] 3G TS 29.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Tunnelling Protocol (GTP) across the Gn and Gp Interface".

[27] 3G TS 29.061: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Interworking between the Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) supporting GPRS and Packet Data Networks (PDN)".

[27b] 3G TS 29.078: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Customised Applications for Mobile Network Enhanced Logic (CAMEL) Phase 3; CAMEL Application Part (CAP) Specification".

[28] GSM 11.11: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Specification of the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface".

[28a] GSM 12.15: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Charging".

[29] CCITT Recommendations I.130: "General modelling methods – Method for the characterisation of telecommunication services supported by an ISDN and network capabilities of an ISDN".

[30] CCITT Recommendation E.164: "Numbering plan for the ISDN era".

[31] CCITT Recommendation Q.65: "Methodology – Stage 2 of the method for the characterization of services supported by an ISDN".

[32] CCITT Recommendation V.42 bis: "Data communication over the telephone network – Data compression procedures for data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) using error correction procedures".

[33] CCITT Recommendation X.3: "Packet assembly disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network".

[34] CCITT Recommendation X.25: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit".

~~[35] CCITT Recommendation X.28: "DTE / DCE interface for a start-stop mode data terminal equipment accessing the packet assembly / disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network situated in the same country".~~

~~[36] CCITT Recommendation X.29: "Procedures for the exchange of control information and user data between a packet assembly / disassembly (PAD) facility and a packet mode DTE or another PAD".~~

~~[37] CCITT Recommendation X.75: "Packet-switched signalling system between public networks providing data transmission services".~~

~~[38] CCITT Recommendation X.121: "International Numbering Plan for Public Data Networks".~~

[39] IETF RFC 768 (1980): "User Datagram Protocol" (STD 6).

[40] IETF RFC 791 (1981): "Internet Protocol" (STD 5).

[41] IETF RFC 792 (1981): "Internet Control Message Protocol" (STD 5).

[42] IETF RFC 793 (1981): "Transmission Control Protocol" (STD 7).

[43] IETF RFC 1034 (1987): "Domain Names – Concepts and Facilities" (STD 7).

[44] IETF RFC 1661 (1994): "The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)" (STD 51).

[45] IETF RFC 1542 (1993): "Clarification and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol".

[46] IETF RFC 2002 (1996): "IPv4 Mobility Support".

[47] IETF RFC 2131 (1997): "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol".

~~[48] Bellcore GR-000301 Issue 2 December 1997: "Public Packet Switched Network Generic Requirements (PPSNGR)".~~

[49] TIA/EIA-136 (1999): "TDMA Cellular / PCS"; Arlington: Telecommunications Industry Association.

[50] 3G TS 25.301: "Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".

[51] 3G TS 25.303: "UE Functions and Interlayer Procedures in Connected Mode".

[52] 3G TS 25.331: "RRC Protocol Specification".

[53] 3G TS 25.401: "UTRAN Overall Description".

[54] 3G TS 23.121: "Architectural Requirements for Release 1999".

[55] 3G TS 25.322: "RLC Protocol Specification".

[56] 3G TS 25.412: "UTRAN Iu Interface Signalling Transport".

[56b] 3G TS 25.413: "3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP); UTRAN Iu Interface RANAP Signalling".

[57] 3G TS 25.323: "FFS".

[58] 3G TS 23.107: "FFS".

[59] ITU-T Recommendation I.361: "B-ISDN ATM Layer Specification".

[60] 3G TS 25.321: "FFS".

[61] 3G TS 33.102: "FFS".

[62] 3G TS 22.102: "FFS".

[63] 3G TS 25.411: "FFS".

[64] 3G TS 25.414: "FFS".

[65] 3G TS 23.171: "FFS".

[66] 3G TS 33.007: "FFS".

3 Definitions, abbreviations and symbols

3.1 Definitions

Refer to 3G TS 22.060 and 3G TS 25.401.

2G- / 3G- The prefixes 2G- and 3G- refers to functionality that supports only GSM GPRS or UMTS, respectively, e.g., 2G-SGSN refers only to the GSM GPRS functionality of an SGSN. When the prefix is omitted, reference is made independently from the GSM GPRS or UMTS functionality.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

AA	Anonymous Access
APN	Access Point Name
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
AUTN	Authentication Token
BG	Border Gateway
BSSAP+	Base Station System Application Part +
BSSGP	Base Station System GPRS Protocol
BVCI	BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier
CCU	Channel Codec Unit
CDR	Call Detail Record
CGF	Charging Gateway Functionality
CGI	Cell Global Identification
CK	Cipher Key
CS	Circuit Switched
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
EGPRS	Enhanced GPRS
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
GEA	GPRS Encryption Algorithm
GGSN	Gateway GPRS Support Node
GMM/SM	GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management
GPRS-SSF	GPRS Service Switching Function
GPRS-CSI	GPRS CAMEL Subscription Information
GSM-SCF	GSM Service Control Function
GSIM	GSM Service Identity Module
GSN	GPRS Support Node
GTP	GPRS Tunnelling Protocol
GTP-C	GTP Control Plane
GTP-U	GTP User Plane
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IHOSS	Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service
IK	Integrity Key
IP	Internet Protocol
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
IPX	Internet Packet eXchange

ISP	Internet Service Provider
KSI	Key Set Identifier
L2TP	Layer-2 Tunnelling Protocol
LL-PDU	LLC PDU
LLC	Logical Link Control
MAC	Medium Access Control
MIP	Mobile IP
MNRF	Mobile station Not Reachable Flag
MNRG	Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag
MNRR	Mobile station Not Reachable Reason
MTP2	Message Transfer Part layer 2
MTP3	Message Transfer Part layer 3
NGAF	Non-GPRS Alert Flag
NS	Network Service
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier
NSS	Network SubSystem
OSP	Octet Stream Protocol
P-TMSI	Packet TMSI
PCU	Packet Control Unit
PDCH	Packet Data CHannel
PDCP	Packet Data Convergence Protocol
PDN	Packet Data Network
PDP	Packet Data Protocol, e.g., IP~~ or X.25 [34]~~
PDU	Protocol Data Unit
PPF	Paging Proceed Flag
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PTM	Point To Multipoint
PTP	Point To Point
PVC	Permanent Virtual Circuit
RA	Routeing Area
RAB	Radio Access Bearer
RAC	Routeing Area Code
RAI	Routeing Area Identity
RANAP	Radio Access Network Application Protocol
RLC	Radio Link Control
RNS	Radio Network Subsystem
RNTI	Radio Network Temporary Identity
RRC	Radio Resource Control
SGSN	Serving GPRS Support Node
SM	Short Message
SM-SC	Short Message service Service Centre
SMS-GMSC	Short Message Service Gateway MSC
SMS-IWMSC	Short Message Service Interworking MSC
SN-PDU	SNDCP PDU
SNDC	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence
SNDCP	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol
SPI	Security Parameter Index
TCAP	Transaction Capabilities Application Part
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TFT	Traffic Flow Template
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint IDentifier
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity
TOM	Tunnelling Of Messages
TOS	Type of Service
TRAU	Transcoder and Rate Adaptor Unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UEA	UMTS Encryption Algorithm
UIA	UMTS Integrity Algorithm
URA	UTRAN Registration Area
USIM	User Service Identity Module
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network

3.3 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

Ga	Charging data collection interface between a CDR transmitting unit (e.g., an SGSN or a GGSN) and a CDR receiving functionality (a CGF).
Gb	Interface between an SGSN and a BSS.
Gc	Interface between a GGSN and an HLR.
Gd	Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN.
Gf	Interface between an SGSN and an EIR.
Gi	Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network.
Gn	Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN.
Gp	Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs.
Gr	Interface between an SGSN and an HLR.
Gs	Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR.
Iu	Interface between the RNS and the core network. It is also considered as a reference point.
kbit/s	Kilobits per second.
Mbit/s	Megabits per second. 1 Mbit/s = 1 million bits per second.
R	Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface.
Reporting Area	The service area for which an MS's location shall be reported.
Service Area	The location accuracy level needed for service management purposes in the 3G-SGSN, e.g., a routeing area or a cell. The 3G-SGSN can request the SRNC to report: i) the MS's current service area; ii) when the MS moves into a given service area; or iii) when the MS moves out of a given service area.
Um	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the GPRS fixed network part. The Um interface is the GPRS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services through this interface.
Uu	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the UMTS fixed network part. The Uu interface is the UMTS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the UMTS services through this interface.

4 Main Concepts

The packet domain uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. The packet domain optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies.

A common packet domain Core Network is used for both GPRS and UMTS. This common Core Network provides packet-switched (PS) services and is designed to support several quality of services levels in order to allow efficient transfer of non real-time traffic (e.g., intermittent and bursty data transfers, occasional transmission of large volumes of data) and real-time traffic (e.g., voice, video). Applications based on standard data protocols and SMS are supported, and interworking is defined with IP networks~~ and X.25 networks~~. Charging should be flexible and allow to bill according to the amount of data transferred, the QoS supported, and the duration of the connection.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) keeps track of the individual MSs' location and performs security functions and access control. The SGSN is connected to the GPRS base station system through the Gb interface and/or to the UMTS Radio Access Network through the Iu interface. The SGSN also interfaces via the GPRS Service Switching Function with the GSM Service Control Function for optional CAMEL session and cost control service support.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) provides interworking with external packet-switched networks, and is connected with SGSNs via an IP-based packet domain PLMN backbone network.

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) collects charging records from SGSNs and GGSNs.

The HLR contains GPRS and UMTS subscriber information.

The SMS-GMSCs and SMS-IWMSCs support SMS transmission via the SGSN.

Optionally, the MSC/VLR can be enhanced for more-efficient co-ordination of packet-switched and circuit-switched services and functionality: e.g., combined GPRS and non-GPRS location updates.

In order to access the PS services, an MS shall first make its presence known to the network by performing a PS attach. This makes the MS available for SMS over PS, paging via the SGSN, and notification of incoming PS data.

In order to send and receive PS data, the MS shall activate the Packet Data Protocol context that it wants to use. This operation makes the MS known in the corresponding GGSN, and interworking with external data networks can commence.

User data is transferred transparently between the MS and the external data networks with a method known as encapsulation and tunnelling: data packets are equipped with PS-specific protocol information and transferred between the MS and the GGSN. This transparent transfer method lessens the requirement for the PLMN to interpret external data protocols, and it enables easy introduction of additional interworking protocols in the future.

4.1 Main GPRS Concepts

New GPRS radio channels are defined, and the allocation of these channels is flexible: from 1 to 8 radio interface timeslots can be allocated per TDMA frame, timeslots are shared by the active users, and up and downlink are allocated separately. The radio interface resources can be shared dynamically between speech and data services as a function of service load and operator preference. Various radio channel coding schemes are specified to allow bitrates from 9 to more than 150 kbit/s per user. EGPRS is an enhancement of GPRS allowing higher bitrates on the radio interface. The higher bitrates are achieved by using a new modulation and new coding schemes in the MS and the BSS.

Three GPRS MS modes of operation are supported: An MS in class-A mode of operation operates GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously. An MS in class-B mode of operation monitors control channels for GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously, but can only operate one set of services at one time. An MS in class-C mode of operation exclusively operates GPRS services.

User data can be compressed and protected with retransmission protocols for efficiency and reliability.

GPRS security functionality is equivalent to the existing GSM security. The SGSN performs authentication and cipher setting procedures based on the same algorithms, keys, and criteria as in existing GSM. GPRS uses a ciphering algorithm optimised for packet data transmission. A GPRS ME can access the GPRS services with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware, and with GPRS-aware SIMs.

Cell selection may be performed autonomously by an MS, or the base station system instructs the MS to select a certain cell. The MS informs the network when it re-selects another cell or group of cells known as a routeing area.

4.2 Main UMTS Concepts

In UMTS, radio resources are allocated to MSs in a very flexible manner. Depending on the level of activity, MSs are allocated shared contention-based radio resources or dedicated radio resources for user packet transmission.

Three UMTS MS modes of operation are supported in UMTS: The PS/CS mode of operation corresponds to class-A mode operation in GPRS. The PS mode of operation corresponds to class-C mode operation in GPRS. The CS mode of operation is the outside the scope of this specification.

UMTS security functionality is equivalent to or of higher functionality than the existing GSM GPRS security. UMTS may use a security algorithm different from GSM GPRS. The 3G-SGSN performs the authentication procedure, and the RNC performs the ciphering procedure based on the algorithm for UMTS.

In UMTS, different levels of mobility procedures are executed depending upon the MS state. When an MS has an active RRC connection to UTRAN, the MS performs either UTRAN Registration Area updating procedures or handover or cell update procedures depending on the level that UTRAN is tracking the MS position. When an MS does not have an active RRC connection (i.e., it is in idle mode), the MS performs RA updating procedures. In all the procedures, the cell selection is controlled by the network by setting cell selection parameters and/or restriction information.

5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism

5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

Each PLMN has two access points, the radio interface (labelled Um in GPRS and Uu in UMTS) used for mobile access and the R reference point used for origination or reception of messages. The R reference point for the MSs is defined in 3G TS 27.060 [17].

An interface differs from a reference point in that an interface is defined where specific information is exchanged and needs to be fully recognised.

There is an inter PLMN interface called Gp that connects two independent packet domain networks for message exchange.

There is also a PLMN to fixed network (typically a packet data network) reference point called Gi. Gi is defined in 3G TS 29.061 [27].

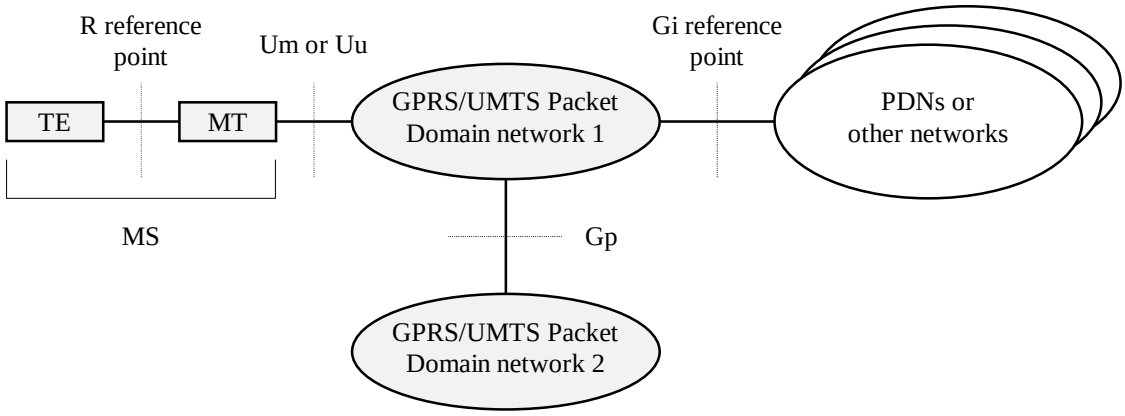


Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

There may be more than a single network interface to several different packet data (or other) networks. These networks may both differ in ownership as well as in communications protocol (e.g., ~~X.25,~~ TCP/IP etc.). The network operator should define and negotiate interconnect with each external (PDN or other) network.

5.2 Network Interworking

Network interworking is required whenever a packet domain PLMN and any other network are involved in the execution of a service request. With reference to Figure 1, interworking takes place through the Gi reference point and the Gp interface.

The internal mechanism for conveying the PDP PDU through the PLMN is managed by the PLMN network operator and is not apparent to the data user. The use of the packet domain data service may have an impact on and increase the transfer time normally found for a message when communicated through a fixed packet data network.

~~5.2.1 PSPDN Interworking~~

~~The packet domain shall support interworking with PSPDN networks. The interworking may be either direct or through a transit network (e.g., ISDN). GPRS shall support both X.121 [38] and E.164 [30] addresses.~~

~~The packet domain shall provide support for X.25 virtual circuits and X.25 fast select. X.75 [37] or X.75' [48] may be used for interworking with X.25 PDNs.~~

~~The packet domain TEs have addresses provided by the packet domain service operator and belong to the packet domain. The PSPDN TE sends data to the packet domain TE by use of the packet domain PLMN DNIC (Data Network Identification Code) or equivalent that uniquely identifies the packet domain network.~~

5.2.1~~2~~ Internet (IP) Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with networks based on the internet protocol (IP). IP is defined in RFC 791 [40]. The packet domain may provide compression of the TCP/IP header when an IP-datagram is used within the context of a TCP connection.

~~In a similar way to the PSPDN X.25 case, t~~The packet domain PLMN service is an IP domain, and mobile terminals offered service by a service provider may be globally addressable through the network operator's addressing scheme.

5.3 High-Level Functions

The following list gives the logical functions performed within the packet domain network. Several functional groupings (meta-functions) are defined which each encompasses a number of individual functions:

- Network Access Control Functions.
- Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions.
- Mobility Management Functions.
- Logical Link Management Functions (GPRS only).
- Radio Resource Management Functions.
- Network Management Functions.

5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions

Network access is the means by which a user is connected to a telecommunication network in order to use the services and/or facilities of that network. An access protocol is a defined set of procedures that enables the user to employ the services and/or facilities of the network.

User network access may occur from either the mobile side or the fixed side of the network. The fixed network interface may support multiple access protocols to external data networks, for example ~~X.25 or~~ IP. The set of access protocols to be supported is determined by the PLMN operator.

Individual PLMN administrations may require specific access-control procedures in order to limit the set of users permitted to access the network, or to restrict the capabilities of individual users, for example by limiting the type of service available to an individual subscriber. Such access control procedures are beyond the scope of the specifications.

In addition to the standard data transfer, the packet domain may support anonymous access to the network. The service allows an MS to exchange data packets with a predefined host that can be addressed by the supported interworking protocols. Only a limited number of destination PDP addresses can be used within this service. IMSI or IMEI shall not be used when accessing the network thus guaranteeing a high level of anonymity. Therefore, no authentication and ciphering functionalities are foreseen for anonymous access.

[S1 has decided that anonymous access shall not be supported in UMTS.]

5.3.1.1 Registration Function

Registration is the means by which a user's Mobile Id is associated with the user's packet data protocol(s) and address(es) within the PLMN, and with the user's access point(s) to the external PDP network. The association can be static, i.e., stored in an HLR, or dynamic, i.e., allocated on a per need basis.

5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function

This function performs the identification and authentication of the service requester, and the validation of the service request type to ensure that the user is authorised to use the particular network services. The authentication function is performed in association with the Mobility Management functions.

5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function

The purpose of admission control is to calculate which network resources are required to provide the quality of service (QoS) requested, determine if those resources are available, and then reserve those resources. Admission control is performed in association with the Radio Resource Management functions in order to estimate the radio resource requirements within each cell.

5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function

A screening function concerned with filtering out unauthorised or unsolicited messages is required. This should be supported through packet filtering functions. [It is FFS if/how user-controlled screening can be provided by utilising TFTs.]

5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

This function adapts data packets received / transmitted from / to terminal equipment to a form suitable for transmission across the packet domain network.

5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function

This function collects data necessary to support subscription and/or traffic fees.

5.3.2 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions

A route is an ordered list of nodes used for the transfer of messages within and between the PLMN(s). Each route consists of the originating node, zero or more relay nodes and the destination node. Routeing is the process of determining and using, in accordance with a set of rules, the route for transmission of a message within and between the PLMN(s).

5.3.2.1 Relay Function

The relay function is the means by which a node forwards data received from one node to the next node in the route.

5.3.2.2 Routeing Function

The routeing function determines the network node to which a message should be forwarded and the underlying service(s) used to reach that GPRS Support Node (GSN), using the destination address of the message. The routeing function selects the transmission path for the "next hop" in the route.

Data transmission between GSNs may occur across external data networks that provide their own internal routeing functions, for example X.25 [34], Frame Relay or ATM networks.

5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function

Address translation is the conversion of one address to another address of a different type. Address translation may be used to convert an external network protocol address into an internal network address that can be used for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s).

Address mapping is used to map a network address to another network address of the same type for the routeing and relaying of messages within and between the PLMN(s), for example to forward packets from one network node to another.

5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function

Encapsulation is the addition of address and control information to a data unit for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s). Decapsulation is the removal of the addressing and control information from a packet to reveal the original data unit.

Encapsulation and decapsulation are performed between the support nodes of the packet domain PLMN(s), and between the serving support node and the MS.

5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function

Tunnelling is the transfer of encapsulated data units within and between the PLMN(s) from the point of encapsulation to the point of decapsulation. A tunnel is a two-way point-to-point path. Only the tunnel endpoints are identified.

5.3.2.6 Compression Function

The compression function optimises use of radio path capacity by transmitting as little of the SDU (i.e., the exterior PDP PDU) as possible while at the same time as preserving the information contained within it. Only IP header compression is supported in UMTS.

5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function

The ciphering function preserves the confidentiality of user data and signalling across the radio channels and inherently protects the PLMN from intruders.

5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function

The Domain Name Server function resolves logical GSN names to GSN addresses. This function is standard Internet functionality according to RFC 1034 [43], which allows to resolve any name for GSNs and other nodes within the packet domain PLMN backbone networks.

5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions

The mobility management functions are used to keep track of the current location of an MS within the PLMN or within another PLMN.

5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions for GPRS

Logical link management functions are concerned with the maintenance of a communication channel between an individual MS and the PLMN across the radio interface. These functions involve the co-ordination of link state information between the MS and the PLMN as well as the supervision of data transfer activity over the logical link.

Refer to GSM 04.64 [15] for further information.

5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function

Logical link establishment is performed when the MS attaches to the PS services.

5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions

Logical link maintenance functions supervise the logical link status and control link state changes.

5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function

The logical link release function is used to de-allocate resources associated with the logical link connection.

5.3.5 Radio Resource Management Functions

Radio resource management functions are concerned with the allocation and maintenance of radio communication paths, and is performed by the Access Network. Refer to GSM 03.64 for further information on the GSM GPRS radio. Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the UMTS radio.

5.3.6 Network Management Functions

Network management functions provide mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

5.4 Logical Architecture

The packet domain Core Network functionality is logically implemented on two network nodes, the Serving GPRS Support Node and the Gateway GPRS Support Node. The GPRS support nodes originating from GPRS evolve to UMTS network nodes. Therefore, the name GPRS Support Node is used even if the node provides UMTS functionality only. It is necessary to name a number of new interfaces. No inference should be drawn about the physical configuration on an interface from Figure 2.

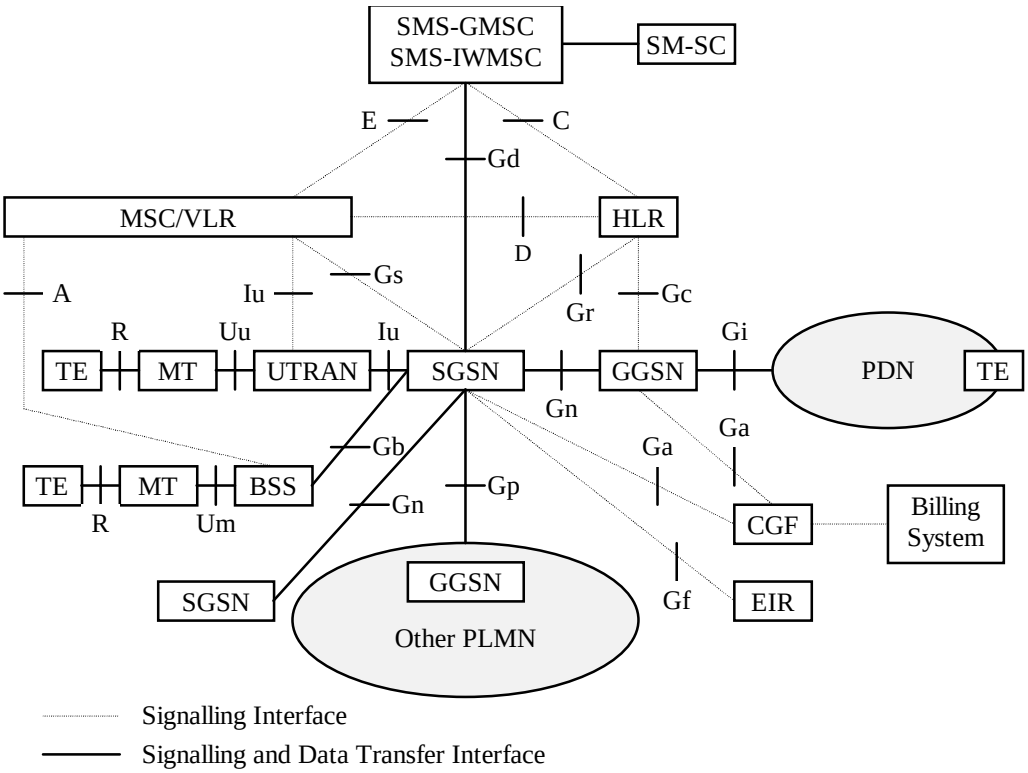


Figure 2: Overview of the Packet Domain Logical Architecture

5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes

A GPRS Support Node (GSN) contains functionality required to support GPRS and/or to support UMTS packet domain functionality. In one PLMN, there may be more than one GSN.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) is the node that is accessed by the packet data network due to evaluation of the PDP address. It contains routeing information for attached GPRS users. The routeing information is used to tunnel N-PDUs to the MS's current point of attachment, i.e., the Serving GPRS Support Node. The GGSN may request location information from the HLR via the optional Gc interface. The GGSN is the first point of PDN interconnection with a GSM PLMN supporting GPRS (i.e., the Gi reference point is supported by the GGSN). GGSN functionality is common for GPRS and for the UMTS packet domain.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) is the node that is serving the MS. The SGSN supports GPRS (i.e., the Gb interface is supported by the SGSN) and/or UMTS (i.e., the Iu interface is supported by the SGSN). At GPRS attach, the SGSN establishes a mobility management context containing information pertaining to e.g., mobility and security

for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routeing purposes, with the GGSN that the subscriber will be using.

The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC) routeing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.

The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.

The SGSN interfaces with the GSM-SCF for optional CAMEL cost control. Depending on the result from the CAMEL interaction, the session and packet data transfer may proceed normally. This also applies if the SGSN does not support CAMEL interaction. Otherwise, interaction with the GSM-SCF continues as described in 3G TS 23.078 [8b]. Only the GSM-SCF interworking points are indicated in the signalling procedures in this specification.

5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks

There are two kinds of backbone networks. These are called:

- intra-PLMN backbone network; and
- inter-PLMN backbone network.

The intra-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs within the same PLMN.

The inter-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs and intra-PLMN backbone networks in different PLMNs.

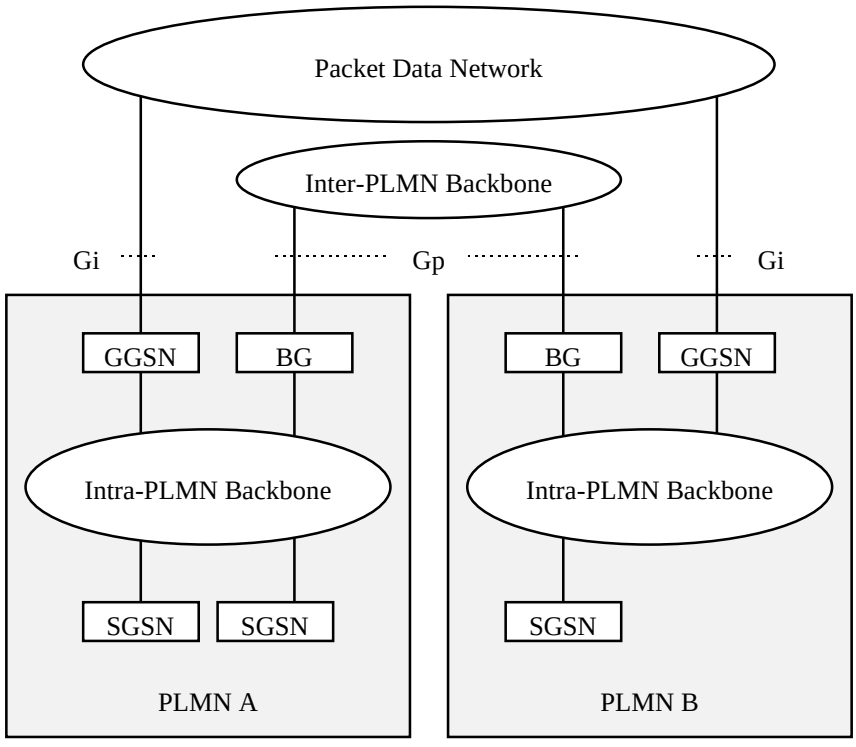


Figure 3: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks

Every intra-PLMN backbone network is a private IP network intended for packet domain data and signalling only. A private IP network is an IP network to which some access control mechanism is applied in order to achieve a required level of security. Two intra-PLMN backbone networks are connected via the Gp interface using Border Gateways (BGs) and an inter-PLMN backbone network. The inter-PLMN backbone network is selected by a roaming agreement that includes the BG security functionality. The BG is not defined within the scope of the packet domain. The inter-PLMN backbone can be a Packet Data Network, e.g., the public Internet or a leased line.

5.4.3 HLR

The HLR contains packet domain subscription data and routeing information. The HLR is accessible from the SGSN via the Gr interface and from the GGSN via the Gc interface. For roaming MSs, HLR may be in a different PLMN than the current SGSN.

5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC

The SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC are connected to the SGSN via the Gd interface to enable the SGSN to support SMS.

5.4.5 GPRS Mobile Stations

A GPRS MS can operate in one of three modes of operation. The mode of operation depends on the services that the MS is attached to, i.e., only GPRS or both GPRS and other GSM services, and upon the MS's capabilities to operate GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously.

- Class-A mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, and the MS supports simultaneous operation of GPRS and other GSM services.

- Class-B mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, but the MS can only operate one set of services at a time.

- Class-C mode of operation: The MS is exclusively attached to GPRS services.

The three modes of operation are defined in 3G TS 22.060.

NOTE: Other GSM technical specifications may refer to the MS modes of operation as GPRS class-A MS, GPRS class-B MS, and GPRS class-C MS.

5.4.6 UMTS Mobile Stations

A UMTS mobile station can operate in one of three modes of operation. However, these operation modes are different from the ones in GPRS due to the capabilities of UTRAN to multiplex CS and PS connections, due to paging co-ordination for PS services and CS services that are offered by the CN or the UTRAN (as defined in subclause "Paging Co-ordination for UMTS"), etc. The different UMTS mobile station operation modes are defined as follows:

- PS/CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to both the PS domain and CS domain, and the MS is capable of simultaneously operating PS services and CS services. This mode of operation is equivalent to the GPRS class-A mode of operation.

- PS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the PS domain only and may only operate services of the PS domain. However, this does not prevent CS-like services to be offered over the PS domain (e.g., VoIP). This mode of operation is equivalent to the GPRS class-C mode of operation.

- CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the CS domain only and may only operate services of the CS domain. However, this does not prevent PS-like service to be offered over the CS domain. The CS mode of operation is outside the scope of this specification.

All combinations of different operation modes as described for GPRS and UMTS MSs shall be allowed for GSM GPRS and UMTS multisystem terminals.

5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) is described in GSM 12.15 [28a].

5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture

The functions identified in the functional model are assigned to the logical architecture.

Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture

Function	2G-MS	3G-MS	BSS	UTRAN	2G-SGSN	3G-SGSN	GGSN	HLR
Network Access Control:								
Registration								X
Authentication and Authorisation	X	X			X	X		X
Admission Control	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Message Screening							X	
Packet Terminal Adaptation	X	X						
Charging Data Collection					X	X	X	
Packet Routeing & Transfer:								
Relay	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Routeing	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Address Translation and Mapping	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Encapsulation	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Tunnelling				X	X	X	X	
Compression	X	X		X	X			
Ciphering	X	X		X	X			X
Mobility Management:	X	X			X	X	X	X
Logical Link Management:								
Logical Link Establishment	X				X			
Logical Link Maintenance	X				X			
Logical Link Release	X				X			
Radio Resource Management:	X	X	X	X	X			

5.6 User and Control Planes

5.6.1 User Plane for GPRS

5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN

The user plane consists of a layered protocol structure providing user information transfer, along with associated information transfer control procedures (e.g., flow control, error detection, error correction and error recovery). The user plane independence of the Network Subsystem (NSS) platform from the underlying radio interface is preserved via the Gb interface. The following user plane is used in GPRS:

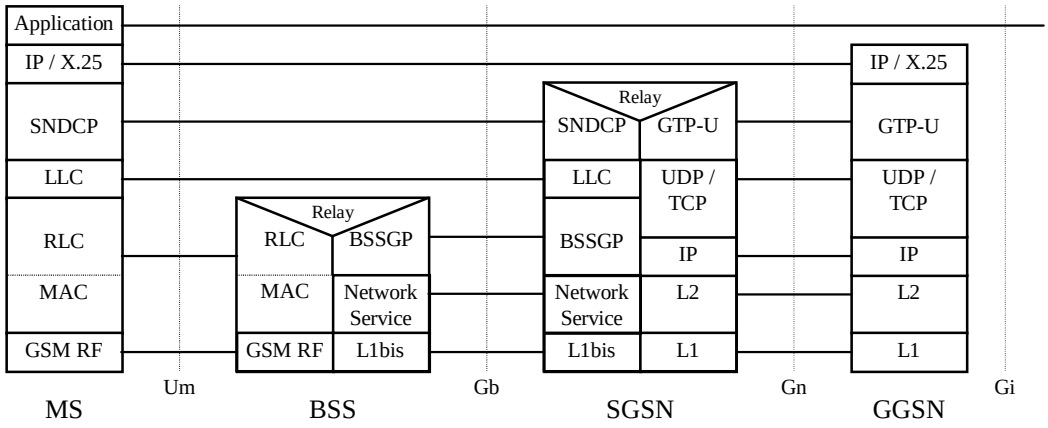


Figure 4: User Plane for GPRS

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between GPRS Support Nodes in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by the GPRS Tunnelling Protocol. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060 [26].

- TCP carries GTP PDUs in the backbone network for protocols that need a reliable data link ~~(e.g., X.25)~~, and UDP carries GTP PDUs for protocols that do not need a reliable data link (e.g., IP). TCP provides flow control and protection against lost and corrupted GTP PDUs. UDP provides protection against corrupted GTP PDUs. TCP is defined in RFC 793 [42]. UDP is defined in RFC 768 [39].

- IP: This is the backbone network protocol used for routeing user data and control signalling. The backbone network may initially be based on the IP version 4 protocol. Ultimately, IP version 6 shall be used. IP version 4 is defined in RFC 791.

- Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. SNDCP is specified in GSM 04.65 [16].

- Logical Link Control (LLC): This layer provides a highly reliable ciphered logical link. LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols in order to allow introduction of alternative GPRS radio solutions with minimum changes to the NSS. LLC is specified in GSM 04.64.

- Relay: In the BSS, this function relays LLC PDUs between the Um and Gb interfaces. In the SGSN, this function relays PDP PDUs between the Gb and Gn interfaces.

- Base Station System GPRS Protocol (BSSGP): This layer conveys routeing- and QoS-related information between BSS and SGSN. BSSGP does not perform error correction. BSSGP is specified in GSM 08.18 [21].

- Network Service (NS): This layer transports BSSGP PDUs. NS is based on the Frame Relay connection between BSS and SGSN, and may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. NS is specified in GSM 08.16 [20].

- RLC/MAC: This layer contains two functions: The Radio Link Control function provides a radio-solution-dependent reliable link. The Medium Access Control function controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel, and the mapping of LLC frames onto the GSM physical channel. RLC/MAC is defined in GSM 04.60 [14].

- GSM RF: As defined in GSM 05 series.

5.6.1.2 GSN – GSN

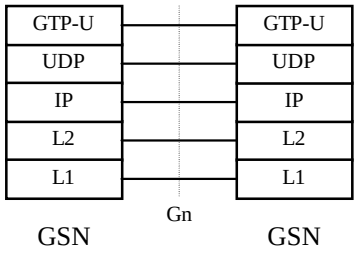


Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers user data between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.2 User Plane for UMTS

5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN

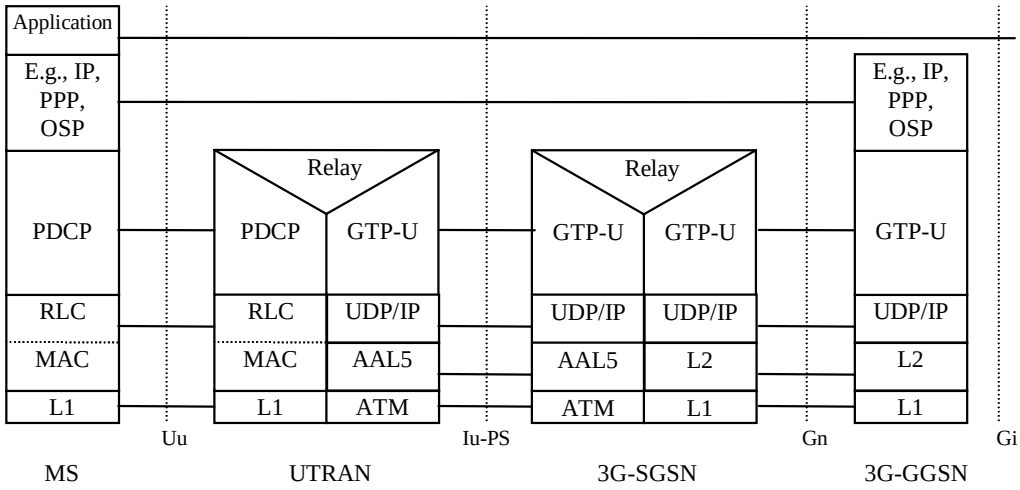


Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS

Legend:

- Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps higher-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol transparency for higher-layer protocols. PDCP supports e.g., IPv4, PPP, OSP, and IPv6. Introduction of new higher-layer protocols shall be possible without any changes to the radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is specified in 3G TS 25.323.

NOTE: Unlike in GPRS, user data compression is not supported in UMTS, because the data compression efficiency depends on the type of user data, and because many applications compress data before transmission. It is difficult to check the type of data in the PDCP layer, and compressing all user data requires too much processing.

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between UTRAN and the 3G-SGSN, and between the GSNs in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by GTP. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060.

- UDP/IP: These are the backbone network protocols used for routeing user data and control signalling.

- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM): The information to be transmitted is divided into fixed-size cells (53 octets), multiplexed, and transmitted. ATM is specified in I.361 [59]. [FFS: add AAL5 description.]

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol provides logical link control over the radio interface. There may be several simultaneous RLC links per MS. Each link is identified by a Bearer Id. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

- Medium Access Control (MAC): The MAC protocol controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel. MAC is specified in 3G TS 25.321.

5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN

This user plane is the same as for GPRS, see subclause "GSN – GSN" above.

5.6.3 Control Plane

The control plane consists of protocols for control and support of the user plane functions:

- controlling the packet domain network access connections, such as attaching to and detaching from the packet domain network;

- controlling the attributes of an established network access connection, such as activation of a PDP address;

- controlling the routeing path of an established network connection in order to support user mobility; and

- controlling the assignment of network resources to meet changing user demands.

The following control planes are used in both GPRS and UMTS unless specifically indicated:

5.6.3.1 MS – SGSN for GPRS

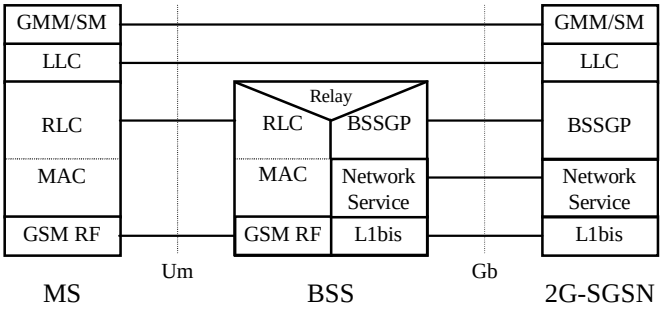


Figure 7: Control Plane MS – 2G-SGSN

Legend:

- GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): This protocol supports mobility management functionality such as GPRS attach, GPRS detach, security, routeing area update, location update, PDP context activation, and PDP context deactivation, as described in clauses "Mobility Management Functionality" and "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

5.6.3.2 MS – SGSN for UMTS

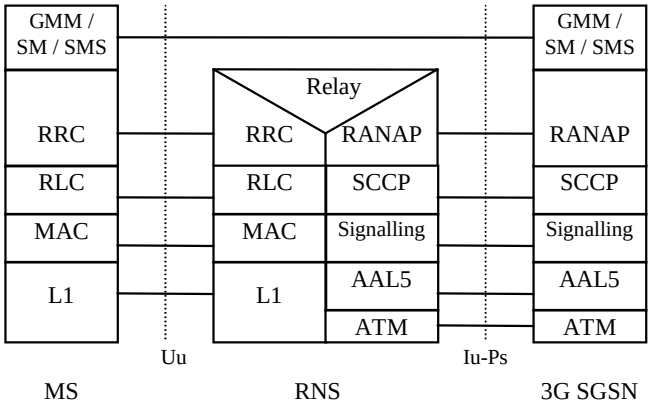


Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN

Legend:

- UMTS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): GMM supports mobility management functionality such as attach, detach, security, and routeing area update, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality". SM supports PDP context activation and PDP context deactivation, as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

- SMS supports the mobile-originated and mobile-terminated short message service described in 3G TS 23.040.

- Radio Access Network Application Protocol (RANAP): This protocol encapsulates and carries higher-layer signalling, handles signalling between the 3G-SGSN and UTRAN, and manages the GTP connections on the Iu interface. RANAP is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The layers below RANAP are defined in 3G TS 23.121.

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol offers logical link control over the radio interface for the transmission of higher layer-signalling messages and SMS. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

5.6.3.3 SGSN - HLR

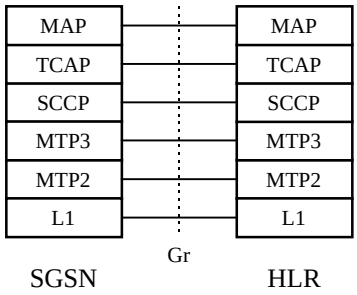


Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as defined in 3G TS 29.002 [23], with enhancements for GPRS as described in the present document.

- TCAP, SCCP, MTP3, and MTP2 are the same protocols as used to support MAP in CS PLMNs.

5.6.3.4 SGSN - MSC/VLR

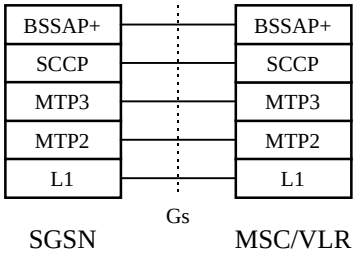


Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR

Legend:

- Base Station System Application Part + (BSSAP+): A subset of BSSAP procedures supports signalling between the SGSN and MSC/VLR, as described in subclause "Mobility Management Functionality" and in 3G TS 29.018 [25]. The requirements for the lower layers are specified in 3G TS 29.016 [24].

5.6.3.5 SGSN - EIR

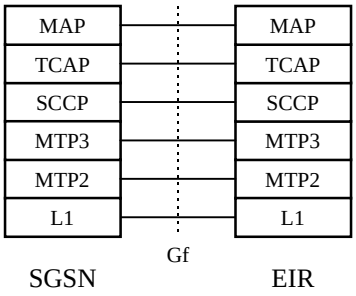


Figure 11: Control Plane SGSN - EIR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and the EIR, as described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

5.6.3.6 SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC

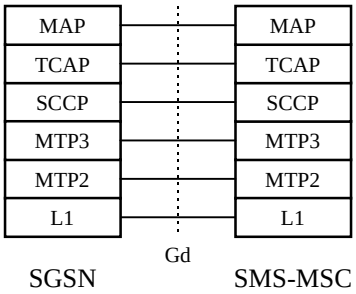


Figure 12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IWMSC

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC, as described in subclause "Point-to-point Short Message Service".

5.6.3.7 GSN - GSN

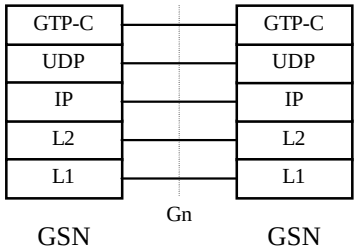


Figure 13: Control Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers signalling messages between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.3.8 GGSN - HLR

This optional signalling path allows a GGSN to exchange signalling information with an HLR. There are two alternative ways to implement this signalling path:

- If a SS7 interface is installed in the GGSN, the MAP protocol can be used between the GGSN and an HLR.
- If a SS7 interface is not installed in the GGSN, any GSN with a SS7 interface installed in the same PLMN as the GGSN can be used as a GTP-to-MAP protocol converter to allow signalling between the GGSN and an HLR.

5.6.3.8.1 MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

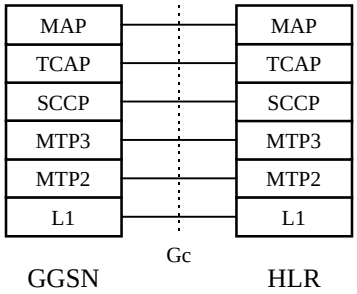


Figure 14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as described in subclause "Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure".

5.6.3.8.2 GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

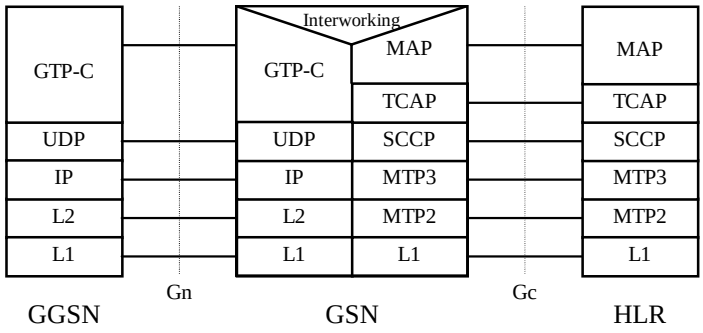


Figure 15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between the GGSN and the protocol-converting GSN in the backbone network.
- Interworking: This function provides interworking between GTP and MAP for GGSN - HLR signalling.

5.7 Functionality Needed for Mobile IP Using IPv4

To support the optional Mobile IP services, see 3G TS 23.121 [54], efficiently in the packet domain, Foreign Agent (FA) functionality needs to be provided in the GGSN. The interface between the GGSN and FA, including the mapping between the care of IP address and the GTP tunnel in the PLMN is assumed not be standardized as the GGSN and FA are considered to be one integrated node.

Mobile IP services need a Home Agent (HA). The HA is a router that tunnels datagrams to an FA. The FA de-tunnels the datagrams and sends them towards the MS that is in a PLMN. The HA maintains current location information for each of the departed users. The location of the HA is outside the scope of the 3GPP specifications.

The FA and HA functionality is specified in RFC 2002 [46].

6 Mobility Management Functionality

6.1 Definition of Mobility Management States

The Mobility Management (MM) activities related to a subscriber are characterised by one of three different MM states. The MM states for a GPRS subscriber are IDLE, STANDBY, and READY, and the MM states for a UMTS subscriber are PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED. Each state describes a certain level of functionality and information allocated. The information sets held at the MS and the SGSN are denoted MM context.

In the non-anonymous access case, the MM state relates only to GPRS MM activities of a subscriber. The MM state is independent of the number and state of PDP contexts for that subscriber.

In the anonymous access case, the MM state relates to GPRS MM activities of an MS represented only by an Auxiliary TLLI.

6.1.1 Mobility Management States for GPRS

6.1.1.1 IDLE (GPRS) State

In GPRS IDLE state, the subscriber is not attached to the GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routeing information for the subscriber. The subscriber-related mobility management procedures are not performed.

PLMN selection and GPRS cell selection and re-selection processes are performed by the MS.

Data transmission to and from the mobile subscriber as well as the paging of the subscriber are not possible. The GPRS MS is seen as not reachable in this case.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the GPRS Attach procedure.

6.1.1.2 STANDBY State

In STANDBY state, the subscriber is attached to GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

Pages for data or signalling information transfers may be received. It is also possible to receive pages for the CS services via the SGSN. Data reception and transmission are not possible in this state.

The MS performs GPRS Routeing Area (RA) and GPRS cell selection and re-selection locally. The MS executes mobility management procedures to inform the SGSN when it has entered a new RA. The MS does not inform the SGSN on a change of cell in the same RA. Therefore, the location information in the SGSN MM context contains only the GPRS RAI for MSs in STANDBY state.

The MS may initiate activation or deactivation of PDP contexts while in STANDBY state. A PDP context shall be activated before data can be transmitted or received for this PDP context.

The SGSN may have to send data or signalling information to an MS in STANDBY state. The SGSN then sends a Paging Request in the routeing area where the MS is located if PPF is set. If PPF is cleared, then paging is not done. The MM state in the MS is changed to READY when the MS responds to the page, and in the SGSN when the page response is received. Also, the MM state in the MS is changed to READY when data or signalling information is sent from the MS and, accordingly, the MM state in the SGSN is changed to READY when data or signalling information is received from the MS.

The MS or the network may initiate the GPRS Detach procedure to move to the IDLE state. After expiry of the mobile reachable timer the SGSN may perform an implicit detach in order to return the MM contexts in the SGSN to IDLE state. The MM and PDP contexts may then be deleted.

6.1.1.3 READY State

In READY state, the SGSN MM context corresponds to the STANDBY MM context extended by location information for the subscriber on cell level. The MS performs mobility management procedures to provide the network with the actual selected cell. GPRS cell selection and re-selection is done locally by the MS, or may optionally be controlled by the network.

An identifier of the cell, the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC, is included in the BSSGP header of the data packet from the MS, see GSM 08.18.

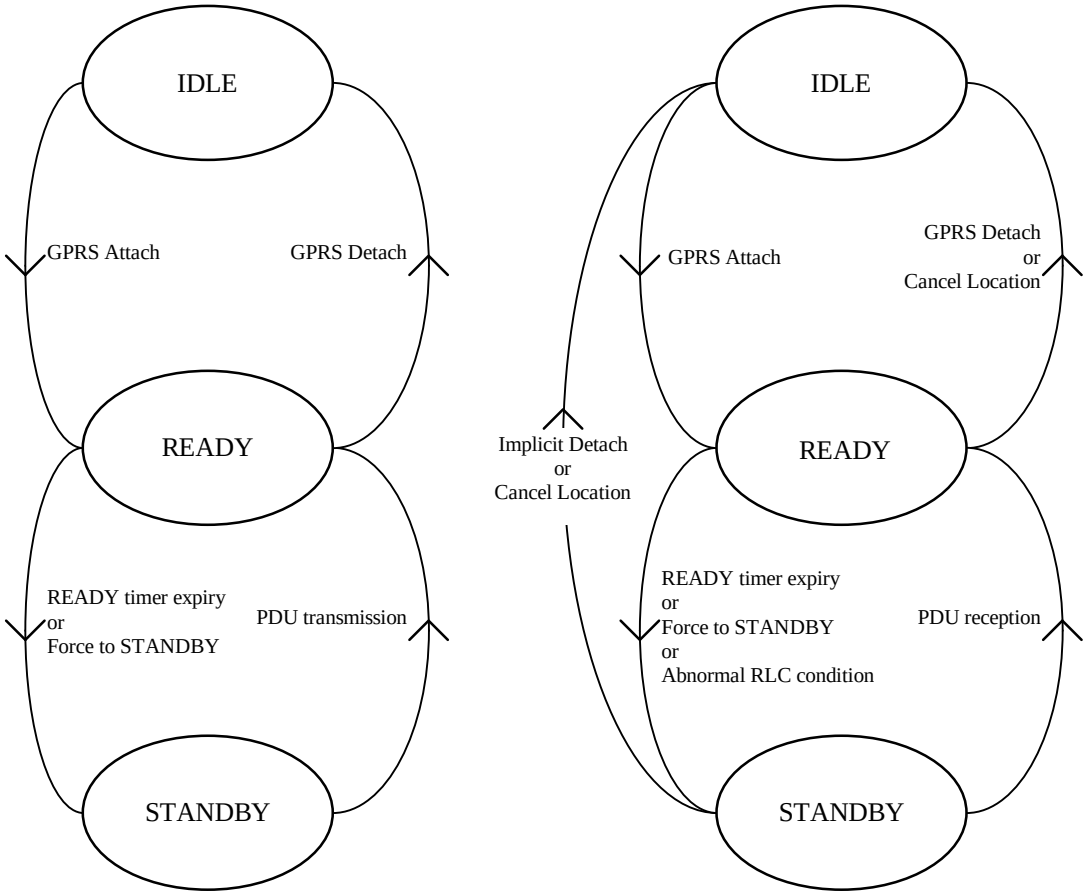
The MS may send and receive PDP PDUs in this state. The network initiates no GPRS pages for an MS in READY state, pages for other services may be done via the SGSN. The SGSN transfers downlink data to the BSS responsible for the subscriber's actual GPRS cell.

The MS may activate or deactivate PDP contexts while in READY state.

Regardless if a radio resource is allocated to the subscriber or not, the MM context remains in the READY state even when there is no data being communicated. The READY state is supervised by a timer. An MM context moves from READY state to STANDBY state when the READY timer expires. In order to move from READY state to IDLE state, the MS initiates the GPRS Detach procedure.

6.1.1.4 State Transitions and Functions

The movement from one state to the next is dependent on the current state (IDLE, STANDBY, or READY) and the event occurred (e.g., GPRS attach).



MM State Model of MS MM State Model of SGSN

Figure 16: Functional Mobility Management State Model

Figure 16 describes the following state transitions:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- GPRS Attach: The MS requests access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN.

Moving from STANDBY to IDLE:

- Implicit Detach: The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN shall return to IDLE and INACTIVE state. The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN may be deleted. The GGSN PDP contexts shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

Moving from STANDBY to READY:

- PDU transmission: The MS sends an LLC PDU to the SGSN, possibly in response to a page.

- PDU reception: The SGSN receives an LLC PDU from the MS.

Moving from READY to STANDBY:

- READY timer expiry: The MS and the SGSN MM contexts return to STANDBY state.

- Force to STANDBY: The SGSN indicates an immediate return to STANDBY state before the READY timer expires.

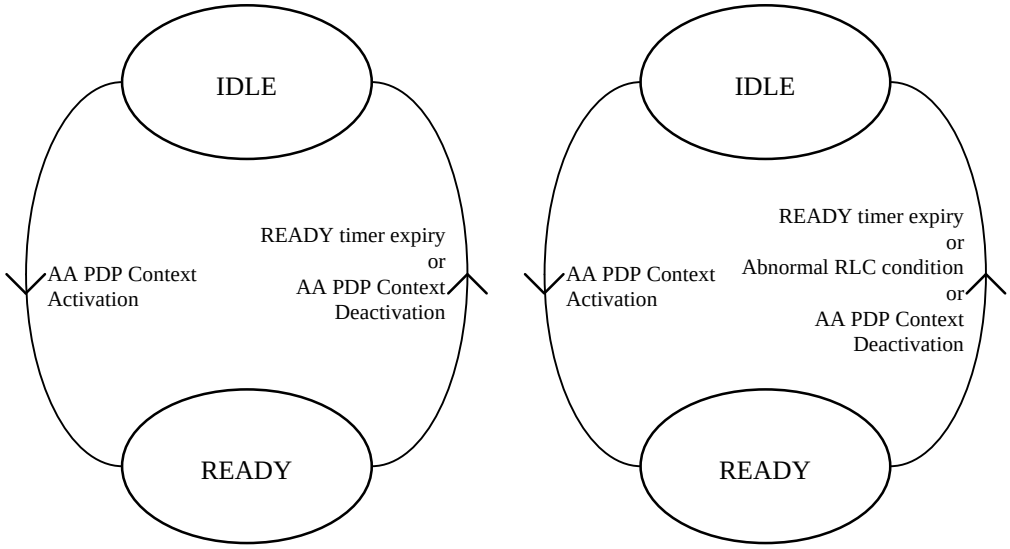
- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context returns to STANDBY state in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- GPRS Detach: The MS or the network requests that the MM contexts return to IDLE state and that the PDP contexts return to INACTIVE state. The SGSN may delete the MM and PDP contexts. The PDP contexts in the GGSN shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

For anonymous access, a reduced Mobility Management State Model consisting of IDLE and READY states is used. The AA MM state machine is independently handled by the MS and the network and may coexist with an IMSI-based MM state machine. Several AA MM state machines may coexist in the same MS and SGSN simultaneously.



AA MM State Model of MS AA MM State Model of SGSN

Figure 17: Functional Anonymous Access Mobility Management State Model

Figure 17 describes the following state transitions for anonymous access:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- AA PDP Context Activation: The MS requests an anonymous access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN, and PDP contexts are established at the MS, the SGSN, and a GGSN.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- READY timer expiry: The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN are deleted.

- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context shall be deleted in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

- AA PDP Context Deactivation: The network (either the SGSN or the GGSN) initiates the AA PDP Context Deactivation procedure, e.g., due to malicious usage of the anonymous service. The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN shall be deleted.

6.1.2 Mobility Management States for UMTS

6.1.2.1 PMM-DETACHED State

In the PMM-DETACHED state there is no communication between the MS and the 3G-SGSN. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routeing information for the MS. The MS MM state machine does not react on system information related to the 3G-SGSN. The MS is not reachable by a 3G-SGSN, as the MS location is not known.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the PS Attach procedure. When the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing the PS attach, the state changes to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN and in the MS. The PS signalling connection is made up of two parts; an RRC connection and an Iu connection.

6.1.2.2 PMM-IDLE State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a routeing area. Paging is needed in order to reach the MS, e.g., for signalling. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

The MS shall perform a routeing area update if the RA changes. Signalling towards the HLR is needed if the 3G-SGSN does not have an MM context for this MS.

The MS and 3G-SGSN shall enter the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

PS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED. The 3G-SGSN may perform an implicit PS detach any time after the MS reachable timer expiry. The MS's MM context is deleted, preferably after a certain (implementation dependent) time. The HLR may be informed about the deletion (see subclause "Purge Function").

6.1.2.3 PMM-CONNECTED State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a serving RNC. In the PMM-CONNECTED state, the location of the MS is tracked by the serving RNC. The MS performs the routeing area update procedure when RAI in the MM system information changes.

When an MS and a 3G-SGSN are in the PMM-CONNECTED state, a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

In the 3G-SGSN, PS signalling connection release or failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC" changes the state to PMM-IDLE.

The MS shall enter the PMM-IDLE state when its PS signalling connection to the 3G-SGSN has been released or broken. This release or failure is explicitly indicated by the RNC to the MS or detected by the MS (RRC connection failure). The radio connection shall also be released if a URA update fails because of "RRC connection not established", or if the URA update timer expires while the MS is out of coverage.

After a signalling procedure (e.g., routeing area update), the 3G-SGSN may decide to release the PS signalling connection, after which the state is changed to PMM-IDLE.

PS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED.

6.1.2.4 State Transitions and Functions

The figure below introduces the MM states for a UMTS subscriber (PMM). The states and activations are further described below.

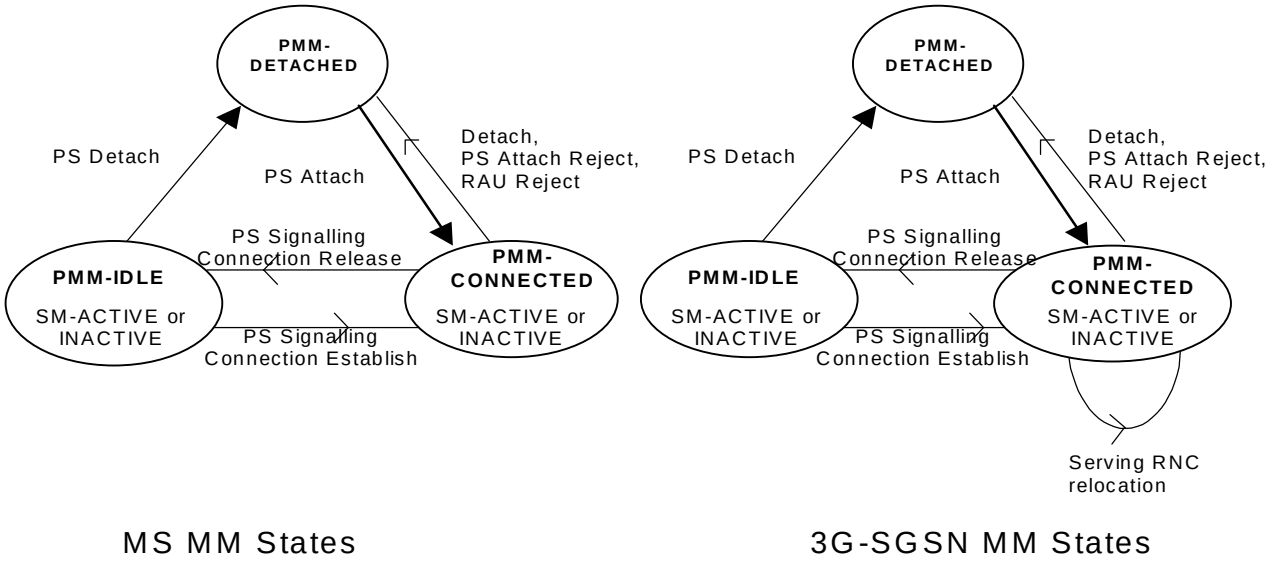


Figure 18: PMM State Model

NOTE: In both the PMM-IDLE and the PMM-CONNECTED states, session management may or may not have activated a PDP context. The consequence is that in PMM-CONNECTED state, only a signalling connection may be established. In PMM-IDLE state, a PDP context may be established, but no corresponding connection over the Iu interface nor the radio are established.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- PS Attach: Th MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing a PS attach. If the PS attach is accepted an MM context is created in MS.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- PS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a PS detach or after the network-initiated PS detach is performed. The MM context in the MS may be deleted.

- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

- PS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a PS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- Implicit PS Detach: The MM context shall locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state, e.g., in the case of removal of the battery, the USIM, or the GSIM from the TE.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Attach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and 3G-SGSN for performing a PS attach. If the PS attach is accepted, an MM context is created in 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a PS detach or after the network-initiated PS detach is performed. The MM context in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted.

- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected.

- PS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when a PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a PS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- Implicit PS Detach: The MM context may locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state after expiry of the MS Reachable timer. The MM and PDP context(s) in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted, preferably after an implementation-dependent time.

6.1.2.4.1 Error Cases

In case of an error, the PMM state of the MS and the 3G-SGSN may lose synchronisation. In this case the MS may be in the PMM-IDLE state while the 3G-SGSN is in the PMM-CONNECTED state.

NOTE: The opposite (MS in the PMM-CONNECTED state and SGSN in the PMM-IDLE state) shall never happen because the 3G-SGSN may not have the RAI where the MS is really located, so downlink transfer is impossible until the periodic URA update timer expires.

This situation is recovered by a successful RAU moving the MS to the PMM-CONNECTED state, or by a failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC", triggering a paging procedure from the 3G-SGSN.

NOTE: An RNC shall not release the Iu connection if it could not inform the MS that the radio connection was released.

6.2 Mobility Management Timer Functions

6.2.1 READY Timer Function for GPRS

The READY timer function maintains the READY timer in the MS and SGSN. The READY timer controls the time an MS remains in READY state in the MS and the SGSN. The READY timer shall be reset and begin running in the MS when an LLC PDU is transmitted, and in the SGSN when an LLC PDU is correctly received. When the READY timer expires, the MS and SGSN MM contexts shall return to STANDBY state. In case of anonymous access the MM context shall be deleted.

The length of the READY timer shall be the same in the MS and SGSN. The initial length of the READY timer shall be defined by a default value. The SGSN, and only the SGSN, may change the length of the READY timer by transmitting a new value in the Attach Accept, Routeing Area Update Accept, or AA PDP Context Accept messages.

If the READY timer length is set to zero, the MS shall immediately be forced into STANDBY state. If the timer length is set to all 1s (binary), then the READY timer function shall be deactivated, i.e., the timer no longer runs and the MS remains in READY state.

6.2.2 Periodic RA Update Timer Function

The Periodic RA Update Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the MS. The length of the periodic RA update timer is sent in the Routeing Area Update Accept or Attach Accept message. The periodic RA update timer is unique within an RA. Upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall start a periodic routeing area update procedure.

NOTE: An MS is said to be in packet domain coverage if it can access packet domain services. These services may be provided by GPRS or by UMTS.

If the MS is in coverage but out of packet domain coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires, then, if the MS is CS-attached to a network in network operation mode I, the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started immediately. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was CS-attached, regardless of the network operation mode, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet domain coverage.

If the MS is out of coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires then:

- if the MS is both CS and PS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode I, then the combined RA / LA update procedure with CS attach requested shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage;

- if the MS is both CS- and PS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode II or III, or if a PS only-attached MS returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services, then the periodic RA update procedure shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage; or

- if the MS returns to coverage in a cell that does not support packet-domain services, and if the MS is CS-attached, then the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage in that cell. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was CS-attached, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost packet-domain coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of packet-domain coverage, then, the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of coverage, then the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to coverage.

6.2.3 Mobile Reachable Timer Function

The Mobile Reachable Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the SGSN. The mobile reachable timer shall be slightly longer than the periodic RA update timer used by an MS.

The mobile reachable timer is stopped when the READY state or PMM-CONNECTED state is entered. The mobile reachable timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY or PMM-IDLE.

If the mobile reachable timer expires, the SGSN shall clear PPF. Typically, in GPRS, this causes the SGSN to stop sending GPRS paging or CS paging messages to the MS, but other features (e.g., MSC/VLR-based call forwarding) may happen immediately. PPF is set when the next activity from the MS is detected. The MM and PDP contexts shall be kept in the SGSN.

When an MS first registers in an SGSN, then PPF is set.

6.3 Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR

The interactions described in this subclause shall be supported if the optional Gs interface is installed.

An association is created between SGSN and MSC/VLR to provide for interactions between SGSN and MSC/VLR. The association is created when the VLR stores the SGSN number and the SGSN stores the VLR number. The association is used for co-ordinating MSs that are both PS-attached and CS-attached.

The association supports the following actions:

- IMSI attach and detach via SGSN. This makes combined PS / CS attach and combined PS / CS detach possible, thus saving radio resources.
- Co-ordination of LA update and RA update, including periodic updates, thus saving radio resources. A combined RA / LA update is sent from the MS to the SGSN. SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR.
- Paging for a CS connection via the SGSN.
- Alert procedures for non-PS services.
- Identification procedure.
- MM Information procedure.

6.3.1 Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is created at the following occasions:

- Combined CS / PS attach.
- GPRS attach when the MS is already CS-attached.
- Combined RA / LA update when the MS performs CS attach and is already PS-attached.

  Combined RA / LA update when an CS and PS-attached MS changes from an area of network operation mode II or III to an area of network operation mode I.

The association is initiated by the SGSN. The SGSN creates an association by sending a BSSAP+ message concerning a particular MS to the VLR. To get the VLR number, the SGSN translates the current RAI to a VLR number via a translation table. During a CS connection, an MS in class-B mode of operation (GPRS only) cannot perform PS attach nor routeing area updates, only MSs in class-A mode of operation can perform these procedures. If a PS attach was made during a CS connection, the association shall be initiated by a combined RA / LA update after the CS connection has been released.

The association is updated on the following occasions:

- When an MS changes VLR.
- When an MS changes SGSN.

The association is not updated during a CS connection.

When the MS is in idle mode (see GSM 03.22), the association is updated with the combined RA / LA updates procedure.

In relation with a CS connection, the association is managed in the following way:

MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation:

An MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation makes RA updates but no combined RA / LA updates during the CS connection. In the case when the MS changes SGSN, the SGSN (according to normal RA update procedures, see subclause "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update") updates the HLR and the GGSN, but not the VLR, about the new SGSN number.

In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection is released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. The association is also not updated during the CS connection.

After the CS connection has been released, a combined RA / LA update is performed (if there has been a change of RA, or if a PS attach was performed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I), and the association is updated according to combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". If the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, then the MS performs an LA update.

MS in class-B mode of operation (GPRS only):

An MS in class-B mode of operation does not make any RA updates during a CS connection. The SGSN number therefore remains the same during the CS connection and needs not be updated in the VLR. In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection has been released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. Therefore, the VLR number remains the same during the CS connection. After the CS connection has been released, the MS shall perform an RA update and an LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, or a combined RA / LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I. The association is updated according to the combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclauses "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update" and "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure".

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is removed at the following occasions:

- At IMSI detach.
- At GPRS detach.

When the MSC/VLR receives an LA update via the A or Iu interface from an MS for which an association exists, then the MSC/VLR shall remove the association without notifying the SGSN. When the SGSN receives a (non-combined) RA update from an MS for which an association exists, then the SGSN shall remove the association without notifying the MSC/VLR. When the MSC/VLR receives a BSSAP+ MS Unreachable message from the SGSN indicating that PPF is cleared, then the state of the association shall not be changed at the MSC/VLR.

6.3.2 Combined RA / LA Updating

When the MS is both CS and PS-attached, the LA and RA updating is done in a co-ordinated way to save radio resources if supported by the network operation mode. When the MS enters a new RA in network operation mode I, then the MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". The LA update is included in the RA update. The SGSN then forwards the LA update to the MSC/VLR. The MSC/VLR optionally returns a new VLR TMSI that is sent to the MS via the SGSN.

An MS in class-A mode of operation involved in a CS connection makes only RA updates and no combined RA / LA updates to the SGSN.

An MS in class-B mode of operation involved in a CS connection does not make any updates during the CS connection.

An MS in class-C mode of operation never makes combined RA / LA updates.

6.3.3 CS Paging for GPRS

When an MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. If the MS is in STANDBY state, then it is paged in the routeing area and in the null routeing area (see subclause "Routeing Area Identity "). If the MS is in READY state, then it is paged in the cell. The paging procedure is supervised in the MSC by a paging timer. The SGSN converts the MSC paging message into an SGSN paging message.

The CS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 19. Each step is explained in the following list.

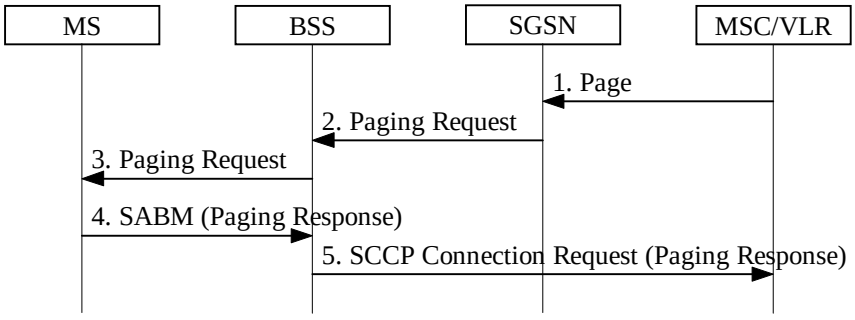


Figure 19: CS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a Page (IMSI, VLR TMSI, Channel Needed, Priority, Location Information) message from the MSC. Channel Needed is defined in GSM 08.08 [18] and indicates to the MS which type of CS channel is

needed to be requested in the response. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are optional parameters. Priority is the circuit-switched paging priority parameter as defined in GSM 08.08. The SGSN maps Priority to QoS.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, TLLI, VLR TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS) message to the BSS serving the MS. Area is derived from either the MS's MM context in the SGSN or, if no such information is available, from the Location Information received from the MSC/VLR. Area indicates a single cell for a READY state MS or a routeing area for a STANDBY state MS. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are included if received from the MSC. If Channel Needed was not received from the MSC, then a default Channel Needed parameter indicating circuit-switched paging is included by the SGSN. QoS indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. If the location area where the MS was last known to be located has an associated null routeing area, then the SGSN shall send an additional BSSGP Paging Request message to each BSS serving this null RA.

3) The BSS translates the incoming BSSGP Paging Request message into one radio Paging Request message per cell. If a dedicated radio resource is assigned to the MS in a cell, then the BSS transmits one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on this radio resource, without stopping possibly ongoing data transfers for the MS. Otherwise, the BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on the appropriate paging channel in each addressed cell. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a Paging Request message for a circuit-switched service the MS may accept to respond to this request and shall then follow the CS procedures for paging response (random access, immediate assignment, and paging response) as specified in GSM 04.08 [13].

5) When received at the BSS, the Paging Response message is sent to the MSC which shall then stop the paging response timer.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GPRS paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GPRS traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 2: Network Operation Modes for GPRS

Mode	Circuit Paging Channel	GPRS Paging Channel	Paging co-ordination
I	Packet Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	Yes
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	
	Packet Data Channel	Not Applicable	
II	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	No
III	CCCH Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	No
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or
- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

6.3.4 CS Paging for UMTS

When an MS is both CS- and PS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. Paging is defined in subclause "Paging Initiated by CN".

6.3.4.1 Network Operation Modes for UMTS

The network operation mode is used to indicate whether the Gs interface is installed or not. When the Gs interface is present, MT can initiate combine procedures.

Table 3: Network Operation Modes for UMTS

Mode	Network configuration	Combined procedure by MT
I	Gs interface is present	Yes
II	Gs interface is not present	No

The network operation mode (mode I or II) shall be indicated as system information to the MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to CS domain services, to PS domain services, or to both. Furthermore, based on the mode of operation, the MS can choose whether it can initiate combine update procedures or separate update procedures, according to its capabilities.

NOTE: Network operation modes I and II for UMTS correspond to modes I and II, respectively, for GPRS. Mode III applies to GPRS and not to UMTS.

6.3.5 Non-PS Alert

The MSC/VLR may request an SGSN to report activity from a specific MS. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall send a BSSAP+ Alert Request (IMSI) message to the SGSN where the MS is currently GPRS-attached.

Upon reception of the Alert Request (IMSI) message, the SGSN shall set NGAF. If NGAF is set for an MS, the SGSN shall inform the MSC/VLR when the next activity from that MS (and the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached) is detected, and shall clear NGAF.

If the activity detected by the SGSN leads to a procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall just follow this procedure. If the activity detected by the SGSN does not lead to any procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall send an MS Activity Indication (IMSI) message towards the MSC/VLR.

6.3.6 MS Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both CS and PS attached, the VLR may perform the MS Information procedure via the SGSN. If the information requested by the VLR in the MS Information procedure is known by the SGSN, then the SGSN shall return this information to the VLR without interrogating the MS.

If the information requested is MS identity information (e.g., IMEI) that is not known by the SGSN but is known by the MS, then the SGSN shall interrogate the MS in a similar manner to that described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

The MS Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 20. Each step is explained in the following list.

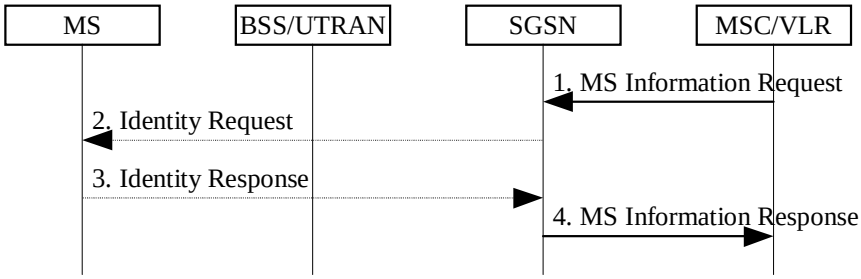


Figure 20: MS Information Procedure

1) The MSC/VLR sends an MS Information Request (IMSI, Information Type) message to the SGSN. Information Type indicates the information that the MSC/VLR is requesting for that IMSI.

2) If the information requested is not known by the SGSN but should be known by the MS, then the SGSN interrogates the MS in a similar manner to that described in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". The SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type) message to the MS.

3) The MS responds with an Identity Response (Mobile Identity) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN sends an MS Information Response (IMSI, Information) message to the MSC/VLR. Information contains the information requested by the MSC/VLR.

6.3.7 MM Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both CS and PS attached, the VLR may perform the MM Information procedure via the SGSN. The MM Information procedure is typically used to inform the MS about such things as the network name and the local timezone of the mobile.

The MM Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 21. Each step is explained in the following list.

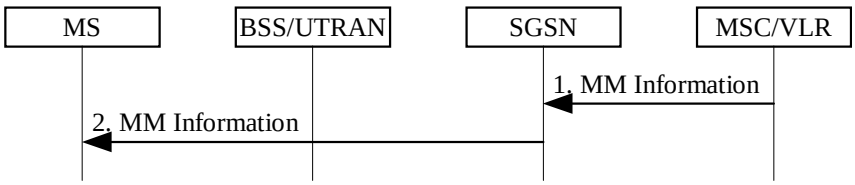


Figure 21: MM Information Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an MM Information (IMSI, Information) message from the MSC/VLR. Information is the information that the MSC/VLR is sending to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends an MM Information (Information) message to the MS including the information received by the MSC/VLR.

6.4 MM Procedures

For GPRS, the MM procedures shall use the LLC and RLC/MAC protocols for message transmission across the Gb and Um interfaces. The MM procedures shall provide information to the underlying layers to enable reliable transmission of MM messages on the Um interface. GSM 03.64 defines the mapping between LLC and the radio channels used.

For UMTS, the MM procedures shall use the RANAP and RRC protocols for message transmission across the Iu and Uu interfaces, respectively.

Furthermore, the MM procedures use MAP interfaces between SGSN and HLR (Gr), and between SGSN and EIR (Gf), and a BSSAP+ interface between SGSN and MSC/VLR (Gs).

User data can in general be transmitted during MM signalling procedures. User data transmitted during attach, authentication, and routeing area update procedures may be lost and may therefore have to be retransmitted. In order to minimise the need for retransmission, the MS and SGSN should not transmit user data during the attach, authentication, and routeing area update procedures.

6.5 PS Attach Function

An MS shall perform a PS Attach to the SGSN in order to obtain access to the PS services. If the MS is connected via a GPRS radio, it shall perform a GPRS Attach procedure. If the MS is connected via a UMTS radio access network, it shall perform a UMTS PS Attach procedure.

6.5.1 GPRS Attach Function

A GPRS attach is made to the SGSN. A GPRS-attached MS makes IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operation mode is I. In network operation modes II and III, or if the MS is not GPRS-attached, then the MS makes IMSI attach as already defined in GSM. An IMSI-attached MS in class-A mode of operation engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a GPRS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are GPRS attach and combined GPRS / IMSI attach.

At the RLC/MAC layer, the MS shall identify itself with a Local or Foreign TLLI if the MS is already GPRS-attached and is performing an IMSI attach. Otherwise, the MS shall identify itself with a Foreign TLLI, or a Random TLLI if a valid P-TMSI is not available. The Foreign or Random TLLI is used as an identifier during the attach procedure until a new P-TMSI is allocated.

After having executed the GPRS attach, the MS is in READY state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An IMSI-attached MS that can only operate in class-C mode of operation shall follow the normal IMSI detach procedure before it makes a GPRS attach. A GPRS-attached MS in class-C mode of operation shall always perform a GPRS detach before it makes an IMSI attach.

If the network operates in mode I (see subclause "Paging Co-ordination"), then an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

If the network operates in mode II or III, then a GPRS-attached MS that has the capability to be simultaneously GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the (non-combined) Routeing Area Update procedures, and either:

- access the non-GPRS common control channels for CS operation (the way that CS operation is performed in parallel with GPRS operation is an MS implementation issue outside the scope of the present document); or
- if CS operation is not desired, depending on system information that defines whether or not explicit detach shall be used, either:
  - avoid all CS signalling (in which case the MS may be implicitly IMSI detached after a while); or
  - perform an explicit IMSI detach via the non-GPRS common control channels (if the MS was already IMSI-attached).

The Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 22. Each step is explained in the following list.

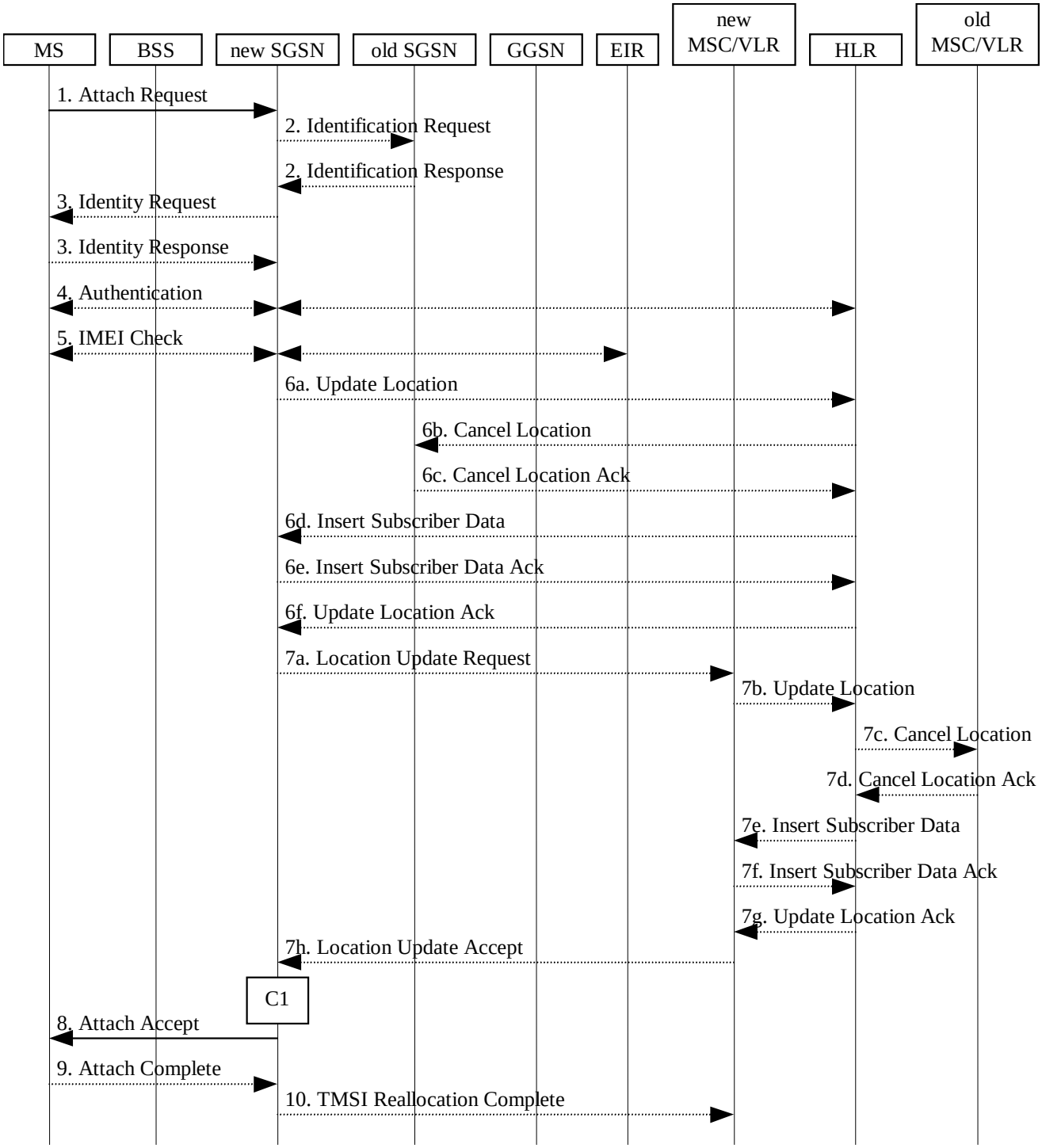


Figure 22: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure

1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Classmark, CKSN, Attach Type, DRX Parameters, old P-TMSI Signature) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. Classmark contains the MS's GPRS multislot capabilities and supported GPRS ciphering algorithms in addition to the existing classmark parameters defined in GSM 04.08. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests and channel assignments. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message.

2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication Triplets). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Attach Type indicated combined GPRS / IMSI attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

   b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

   c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.5.2 UMTS PS Attach Function

[It is an outstanding task to merge this subclause with "GPRS Attach Function".]

A PS-attached MS makes a CS attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operates in mode I. In network operates in mode II, or if the MS is not PS-attached, then the MS makes a normal CS attach. A CS-attached MS engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) PS Attach procedure when it performs a PS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are PS attach and combined PS / CS attach.

After having executed the PS attach, the MS is in the PMM-CONNECTED state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An CS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall follow the normal CS detach procedure before it makes a PS attach. A PS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall perform a PS detach before it makes a CS attach.

The Combined PS / CS Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 22. Each step is explained in the following list.

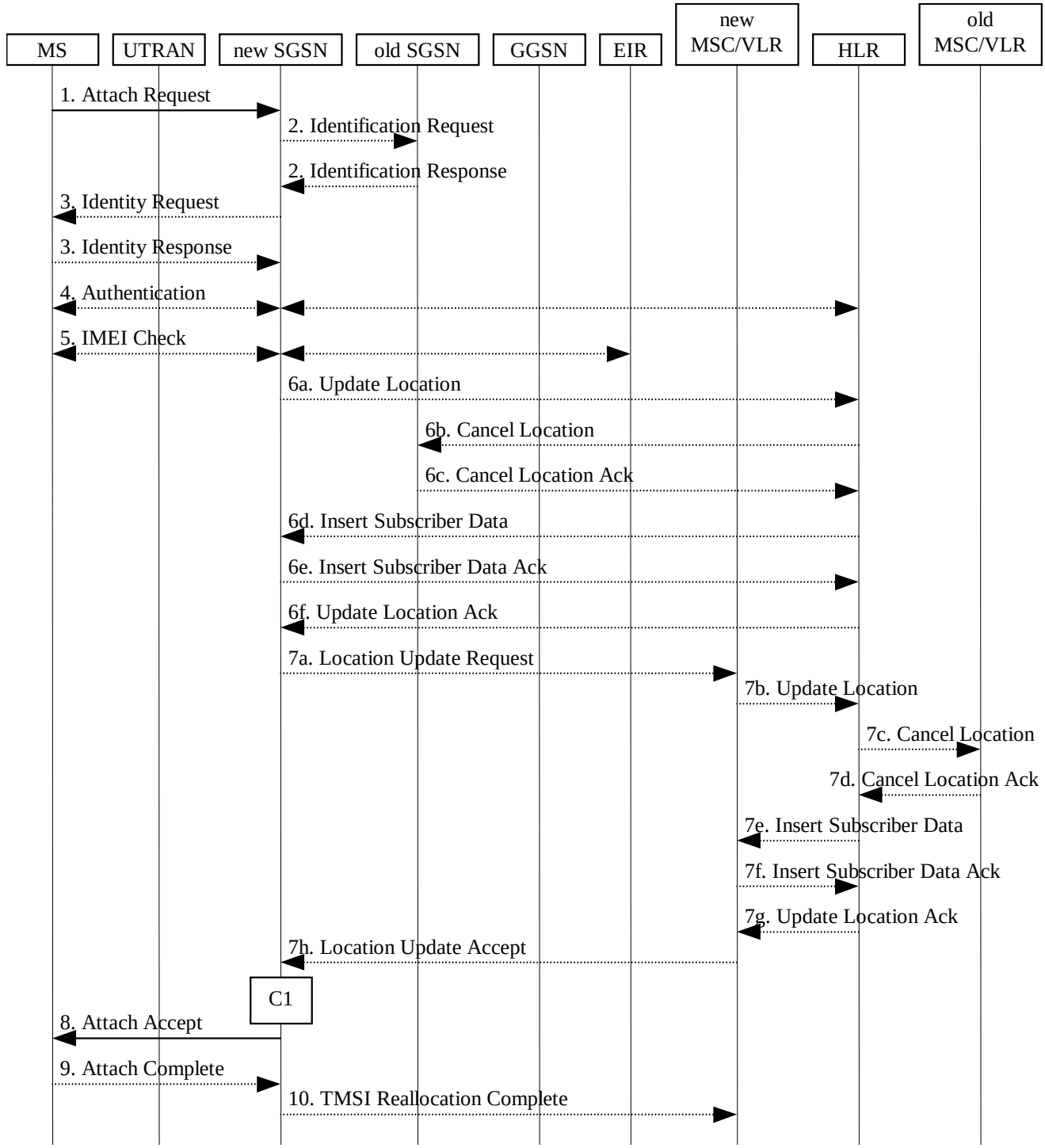


Figure 23: Combined PS / CS Attach Procedure

1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Core Network Classmark, KSI, Attach Type, old P-TMSI Signature, Follow on request) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. KSI shall be included if the MS has valid security parameters. Core Network Classmark is describe in subclause "Core Network Classmark". Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the PS Attach procedure. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., PS attach only, PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach.

If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication vector). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate CS attach if Attach Type indicated combined PS / CS attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

   b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

   c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

   h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.6 Detach Function

The PS Detach procedure allows:

- an MS to inform the network that it does not want access the SGSN-based services any longer; and
- the network to inform an MS that it does not have access to the SGSN-based services any more.

The Detach function allows an MS to inform the network that it wants to make a PS and/or CS detach, and it allows the network to inform an MS that it has been PS-detached or CS-detached by the network.

The different types of detach are:

- CS detach;
- PS detach; and
- combined PS / CS detach (MS-initiated only).

The MS is detached either explicitly or implicitly:

- Explicit detach: The network or the MS explicitly requests detach.
- Implicit detach: The network detaches the MS, without notifying the MS, a configuration-dependent time after the mobile reachable timer expired, or after an irrecoverable radio error causes disconnection of the logical link.

In the explicit detach case, a Detach Request (Cause) is sent by the SGSN to the MS, or by the MS to the SGSN.

The MS can make a CS detach in one of two ways depending on if it is PS-attached or not:

- A PS-attached MS sends a Detach Request message to the SGSN, indicating a CS detach. This can be made in combination with PS detach.
- An MS that is not PS-attached makes the CS detach as already defined in GSM or UMTS.

In the MO Detach Request message there is an indication to tell if the detach is due to switch off or not. The indication is needed to know whether a Detach Accept message should be returned or not.

In the network-originated Detach Request message there may be an indication to tell the MS that it is requested to initiate PS Attach and PDP Context Activation procedures for the previously activated PDP contexts.

6.6.1 MS-Initiated Detach Procedure

The MS-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the MS is illustrated in Figure 24. Each step is explained in the following list.

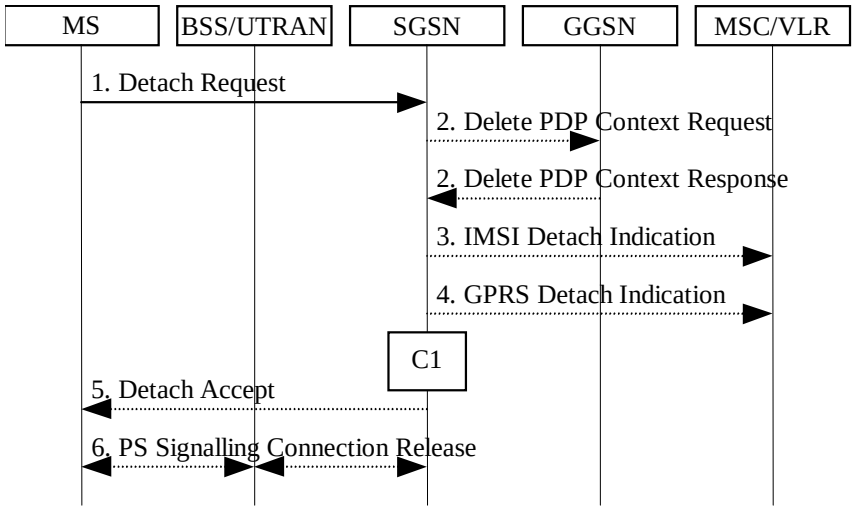


Figure 24: MS-Initiated Combined PS / CS Detach Procedure

1) The MS detaches by sending Detach Request (Detach Type, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Switch Off) to the SGSN. Detach Type indicates which type of detach that is to be performed, i.e., PS Detach only, CS Detach only or combined PS and CS Detach. Switch Off indicates whether the detach is due to a switch off situation or not. For UMTS, the Detach Request message includes P-TMSI and P-TMSI Signature. P-TMSI Signature is used to check the validity of the Detach Request message. If P-TMSI Signature is not valid or is not included, then authentication procedure should be performed.

2) If PS detach, the active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID).

3) If CS detach, the SGSN sends an IMSI Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR.

4) If the MS wants to remain CS-attached and is doing a PS detach, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) If Switch Off indicates that the detach is not due to a switch off situation, the SGSN sends a Detach Accept to the MS.

6) If the MS was PS detached, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2 Network-Initiated Detach Procedure

6.6.2.1 SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the SGSN is illustrated in Figure 25. Each step is explained in the following list.

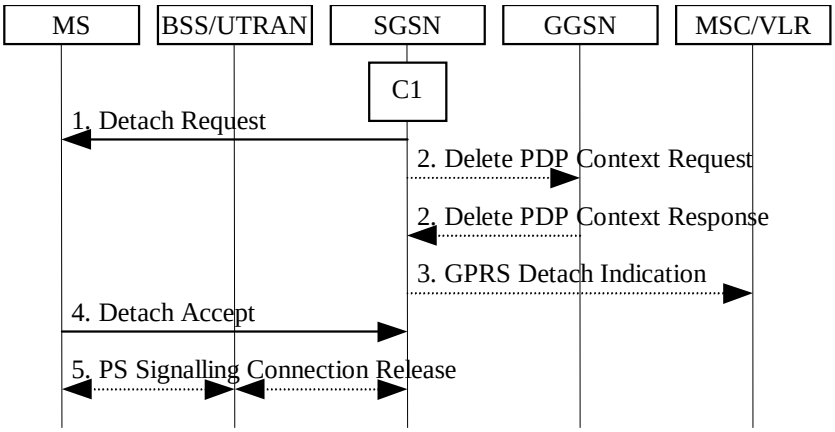


Figure 25: SGSN-Initiated PS Detach Procedure

1) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type indicates if the MS is requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation for the previously activated PDP contexts. If so, the attach procedure shall be initiated when the detach procedure is completed.

2) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

3) If the MS was both CS- and PS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

4) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 1.

5) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2.2 HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure

The HLR-Initiated Detach procedure is initiated by the HLR. The HLR uses this procedure for operator-determined purposes to request the removal of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts at the SGSN. The HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure is illustrated in Figure 26. Each step is explained in the following list.

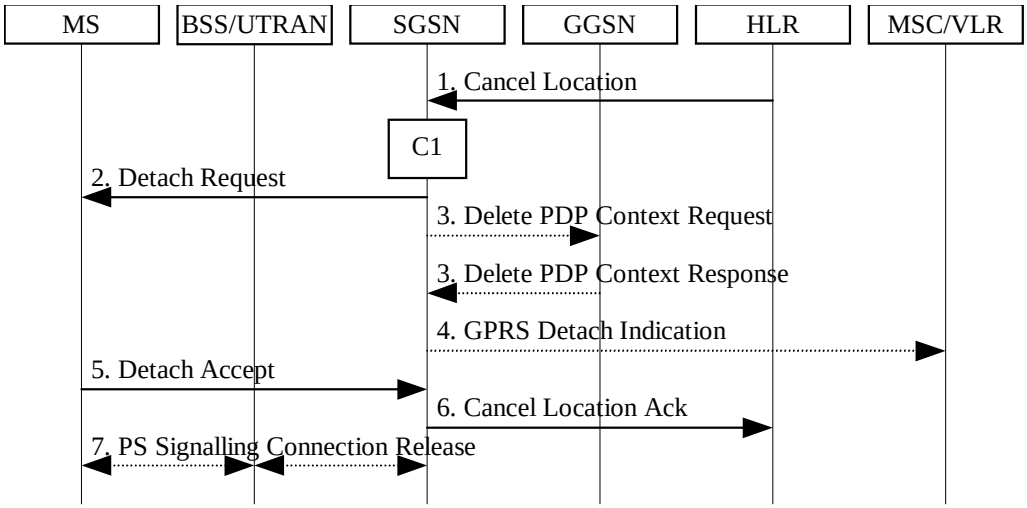


Figure 26: HLR-Initiated PS Detach Procedure

1) If the HLR wants to request the immediate deletion of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts from the SGSN, the HLR shall send a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Subscription Withdrawn.

2) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type shall indicate that the MS is not requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation.

3) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

4) If the MS was both CS- and PS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 2.

6) The SGSN shall confirm the deletion of the MM and PDP contexts with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

7) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.7 Purge Function

The Purge function allows an SGSN to inform the HLR that it has deleted the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS. The SGSN may, as an implementation option, delete the MM and PDP contexts of an MS immediately after the implicit or explicit detach of the MS. Alternatively, the SGSN may keep for some time the MM and PDP contexts and the authentication triplets of the detached MS, so that the contexts can be reused at a later PS attach without accessing the HLR.

When the SGSN deletes the MM and PDP contexts, it shall initiate the Purge procedure as illustrated in Figure 27. Each step is explained in the following list.

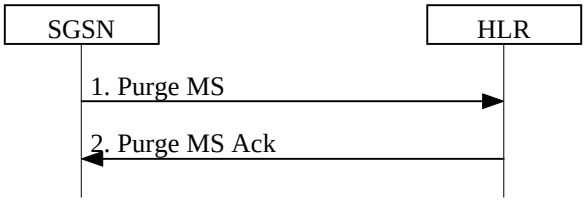


Figure 27: Purge Procedure

1) After deleting the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS, the SGSN sends a Purge MS (IMSI) message to the HLR.

2) The HLR sets the MS Purged for GPRS flag and acknowledges with a Purge MS Ack message.

6.8 Security Function

The Security function:

- Guards against unauthorised packet-domain service usage (authentication and service request validation).
- Provides user identity confidentiality (temporary identification and ciphering).
- Provides user data and signalling confidentiality (ciphering).
- Provides, for UMTS only, data integrity and origin authentication of signalling data (integrity protection).
- Provides, for UMTS only, authentication of the network by the MS.

Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 for GPRS and in UMTS 33.102 for UMTS.

6.8.1 Authentication

6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM

Authentication procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN. The GPRS Authentication procedure performs subscriber authentication, or selection of the ciphering algorithm and the synchronisation of the start of ciphering, or both. Authentication triplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment. Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6].

The Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 28. Each step is explained in the following list.

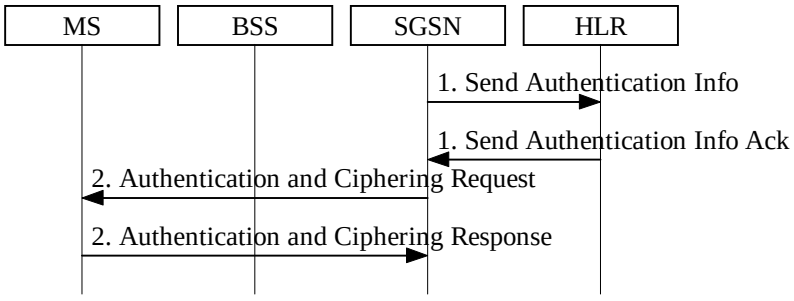


Figure 28: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM Procedure

1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored authentication triplets, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) The SGSN sends an Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, CKSN, Ciphering Algorithm) message to the MS. The MS responds with an Authentication and Ciphering Response (SRES) message.

The MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the Authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

[Conversion functions to be defined by TSG SA3.]

6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS

The UMTS authentication procedure is described in UMTS 33.102. The UMTS authentication procedure executed from the SGSN performs both the mutual authentication and security keys agreement. Authentication quintuplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon CS attach nor upon location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment.

The Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS procedure (USIM) is illustrated in Figure 29. Each step is explained in the following list.

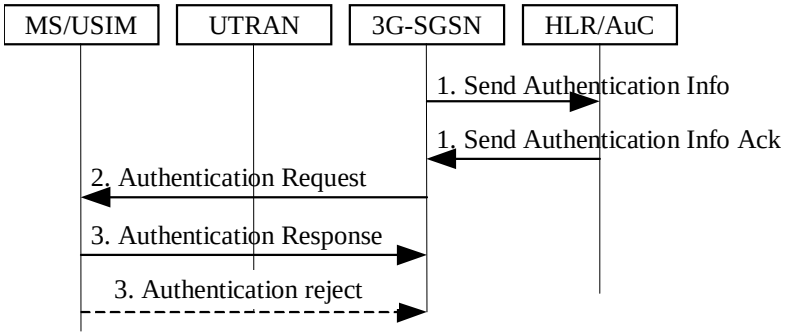


Figure 29: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not have previously stored UMTS Authentication Vectors (quintuplets), a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. Upon receipt of this message for a UMTS user, the HLR/AuC responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack message including an ordered array of quintuplets to the 3G-SGSN. Each quintuplet contains RAND, XRES, AUTN, CK, and IK. The generation of quintuplets in HLR/AuC for a UMTS user is performed as specified in UMTS 33.102.

2) At authentication of a UMTS user, the 3G-SGSN selects the next in-order quintuplet and transmits the RAND and AUTN, that belong to this quintuplet, to the MS in the Authentication Request (RAND, AUTN, KSN) message. The 3G-SGSN also selects a key sequence number, KSN, and includes this in the message.

3) At reception of this message, the USIM in the MS verifies AUTN and, if accepted, the USIM computes the signature of RAND, RES, in accordance with UMTS 33.102. If the USIM considers the authentication being successful the MS returns an Authentication Response (RES) message to the 3G-SGSN. The USIM in the MS computes then also a new Ciphering Key, CK, and a new Integrity Key, IK. These keys are stored together with the KSN until KSN is updated at the next authentication.

   If the USIM considers the authentication being unsuccessful, i.e., in case of an authentication synchronisation failure, the MS returns the Authentication Reject message to the 3G-SGSN. The actions then taken are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the used IK and CK are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a GSM system the USIM and the SGSN shall generate from the UMTS security keys IK and CK the GSM Kc by using the standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the old 3G-SGSN should generate the GSM Kc as described above and transfer this to the new SGSN. This will then give support for a change of SGSN without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplets are transferred in this case.

6.8.1.3 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS

GSM users roaming in a UMTS network are authenticated with the GSM authentication procedure.

The UMTS Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 30. Each step is explained in the following list.

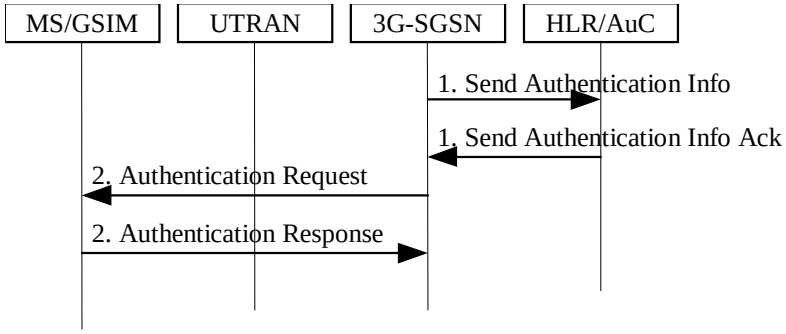


Figure 30: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not contain previously stored authentication parameters, then a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) At authentication in UMTS mode the 3G-SGSN selects an unused triplet and sends an Authentication Request (RAND) message to the MS. The GSIM then calculates the SRES and the GSM Kc. The MS returns an Authentication Response (SRES) message to the 3G-SGSN.

The 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

The MS shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102, i.e., the same algorithm as in the 3G-SGSN.

When changing SGSN the used Kc (i.e., the Kc of last used authentication triplet) is sent from the old 3G-SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused triplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

6.8.1.4 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in GSM

For authentication of a UMTS subscriber (USIM) in a GSM system three cases are possible:

a) The SGSN supports the GSM authentication procedure but not the UMTS authentication procedure.

b) The SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure.

c) Both the SGSN and the MS support the UMTS authentication procedure.

[It is an open issue whether it shall be possible to make a UMTS authentication also in GSM release 99.]

Case a)

When the SGSN supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber is performed using an authentication triplet produced by the HLR/AuC. The authentication of a UMTS subscriber by using a GSM authentication triplet is performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for HLR/AuC and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a UMTS system a new authentication using a UMTS authentication quintuplet is required.

[The requirements for this system change case need to be clarified.]

Case b)

When the SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber shall be performed using an authentication quintuplet produced by HLR/AuC. In this case the SGSN derives a GSM triplet from a UMTS quintuplet originally produced by HLR/AuC. The authentication procedure of the UMTS subscriber will then be performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for SGSN and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the IK and CK of the last used quintuplet are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

When changing to a UMTS system the UMTS CK and IK from the last used authentication quintuplet shall be used.

When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the used GSM Kc is transferred from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. This supports SGSN change without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplet is transferred in this case.

Case c)

FFS.

6.8.2 User Identity Confidentiality

6.8.2.1 User Identity Confidentiality for GPRS

A Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) identifies a GPRS user. The relationship between TLLI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN or built by the MS as described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

6.8.2.2 User Identity Confidentiality for UMTS

A Radio Network Temporary Identity (RNTI) identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the UTRAN. The relationship between RNTI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the UTRAN. A P-TMSI identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the SGSN. The relationship between P-TMSI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN.

6.8.2.3 P-TMSI Signature

P-TMSI Signature is optionally sent by the SGSN to the MS in Attach Accept and Routeing Area Update Accept messages. If the P-TMSI Signature has been sent by the SGSN to the MS since the current P-TMSI was allocated, then the MS shall include the P-TMSI Signature in the next Routeing Area Update Request, Detach Request, Service Request, and Attach Request for identification checking purposes. If the P-TMSI Signature was sent, then the SGSN shall compare the P-TMSI Signature sent by the MS with the signature stored in the SGSN. If the values do not match, the SGSN should use the security functions to authenticate the MS. If the values match or if the P-TMSI Signature is missing, the SGSN may use the security functions to authenticate the MS. The P-TMSI Signature parameter has only local significance in the SGSN that allocated the signature.

If ciphering is supported by the network, the SGSN shall send the P-TMSI Signature ciphered to the MS. Routeing Area Update Request and Attach Request, into which the MS includes the P-TMSI Signature, are not ciphered.

6.8.2.4 P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

The SGSN may reallocate the P-TMSI at any time. The reallocation procedure can be performed by the P-TMSI Reallocation procedure, or it can be included in the Attach or Routeing Area Update procedures.

The P-TMSI Reallocation procedure is illustrated in Figure 31. Each step is explained in the following list.

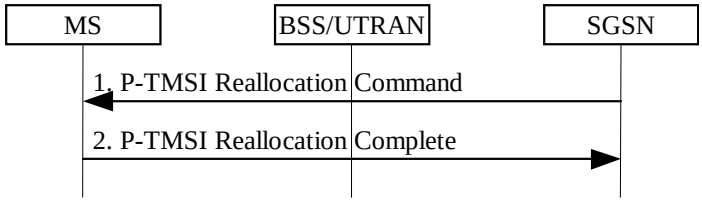


Figure 31: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a P-TMSI Reallocation Command (new P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI) message to the MS. P-TMSI Signature is an optional parameter that the MS, if received, shall return to the SGSN in the next Attach and Routeing Area Update procedures.

2) The MS returns a P-TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the SGSN.

6.8.3 User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality

6.8.3.1 Scope of Ciphering

The scope of GPRS ciphering is from the ciphering function in the SGSN to the ciphering function in the MS. Ciphering is done in the LLC layer, and from the perspective of the existing GSM MS-BTS radio path, an LLC PDU is transmitted as plain text.

The scope of UMTS ciphering is from the ciphering function in the UTRAN to the ciphering function in the MS.

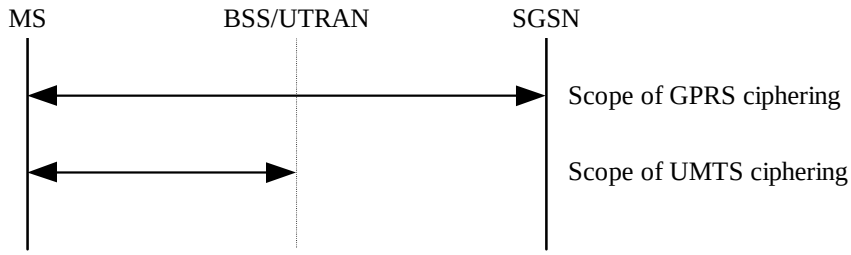


Figure 32: Scope of Ciphering

6.8.3.2 Ciphering Algorithm

GSM 01.61 [2] contains the requirements for the GPRS Encryption Algorithm (GEA). The GPRS ciphering key Kc is an input to the algorithm.. The standard key management procedures for the Kc shall be used.

UMTS ciphering is performed with the UMTS Encryption Algorithm (UEA). The UMTS Ciphering Key CK is an input to the algorithm.

6.8.3.3 Start of Ciphering

In GPRS, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response message is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in UMTS 33.102.

6.8.4 Identity Check Procedures

The Identity Check procedure is illustrated in Figure 33. Each step is explained in the following list.

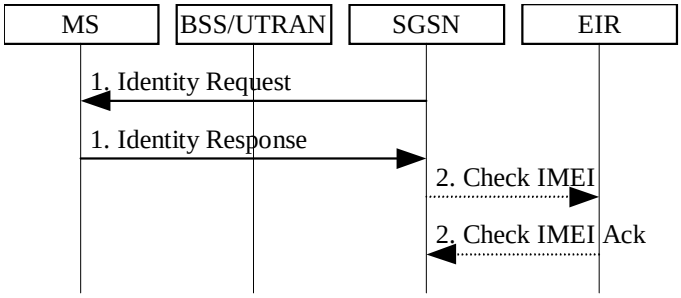


Figure 33: Identity Check Procedure

1) The SGSN sends Identity Request (Identity Type) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (Mobile Identity). In UMTS, the MS may choose to send its IMSI encrypted (FFS).

2) If the SGSN decides to check the IMEI against the EIR, it sends Check IMEI (IMEI) to EIR. The EIR responds with Check IMEI Ack (IMEI).

6.8.5 Data Integrity Procedure for UMTS

The Data Integrity procedure is performed between the MS and the UTRAN. It is applicable only to radio signalling. The UMTS integrity check is made with the UMTS Integrity Algorithm (UIA). The UMTS Integrity Key IK is an input to the algorithm. The start of the data integrity procedure is controlled by the security mode procedure as described in UMTS 33.102.

6.9 Location Management Function

The Location Management function:

- provides mechanisms for cell and PLMN selection;
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the Routeing Area for MSs in STANDBY, PMM-IDLE, READY, and PMM-CONNECTED states;
- provides a mechanism for the 2G-SGSN to know the cell identity for MSs in READY state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to know the URA identity or cell identity for MSs in PMM-CONNECTED state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to indicate to an MS in RRC Connected mode when a Routeing Area Update procedure shall be perform by providing the RAI; and
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the address of the Serving RNC handling a MS in PMM-CONNECTED state. This mechanism is the Serving RNC relocation procedure.

NOTE: The SGSN may not know the Routeing Area where the UMTS MS is physically located for an MS is in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-CONNECTED state is necessarily in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-IDLE state is in RRC Connected mode only if the MS is in CS MM-CONNECTED state.

In UMTS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on three levels (cell, URA, or RA), see 3G TS 23.121.

In GPRS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on two levels (cell or RA).

Routeing Area (RA) is defined in subclause "Routeing Area Identity".

6.9.1 Location Management Procedures for GPRS

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

The MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS's MM context. The MS detects that a new RA has been entered by periodically comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with that received from the new cell. The MS shall consider hysteresis in signal strength measurements.

When the MS camps on a new cell, possibly in a new RA, this indicates one of three possible scenarios:

- a cell update is required;
- a routeing area update is required; or
- a combined routeing area and location area update is required.

In all three scenarios the MS stores the cell identity in its MM context.

If the MS enters a new PLMN, the MS shall either perform a routeing area update, or enter IDLE state.

In network mode of operation II and III, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall perform the LA update first.

Routeing Area Update Request messages shall be sent unciphered, since in the inter SGSN routeing area update case the new SGSN shall be able to process the request.

6.9.1.1 Cell Update Procedure

A cell update takes place when the MS enters a new cell inside the current RA and the MS is in READY state. If the RA has changed, a routeing area update is executed instead of a cell update.

The MS performs the cell update procedure by sending an uplink LLC frame of any type containing the MS's identity to the SGSN. In the direction towards the SGSN, the BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC to all BSSGP frames, see GSM 08.18. A cell update is any correctly received and valid LLC PDU carried inside a BSSGP PDU containing a new identifier of the cell.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the new cell.

6.9.1.2 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when a PS-attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA, when the periodic RA update timer has expired, or, for GPRS, when a suspended MS is not resumed by the BSS (see subclause "Suspension of GPRS Services"). The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update.

An MS in READY state due to anonymous access shall not perform routeing area updates for the AA MM context. If the MS has entered a new routeing area, a new Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated. The old context is implicitly deleted upon expiry of the READY timer.

6.9.1.2.1 Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 34. Each step is explained in the following list.

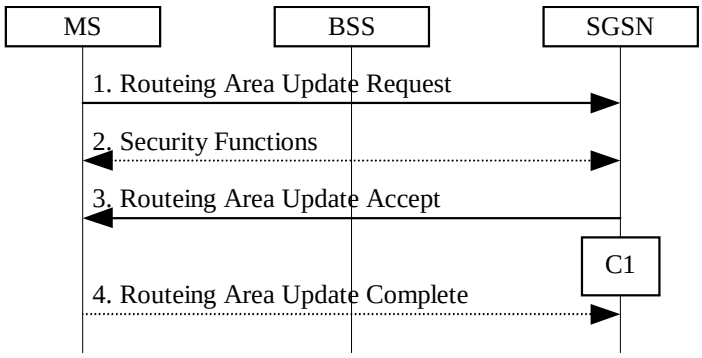


Figure 34: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN, see GSM 08.18.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) is returned to the MS.

4) If P-TMSI was reallocated, the MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.2.2 Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 35. Each step is explained in the following list.

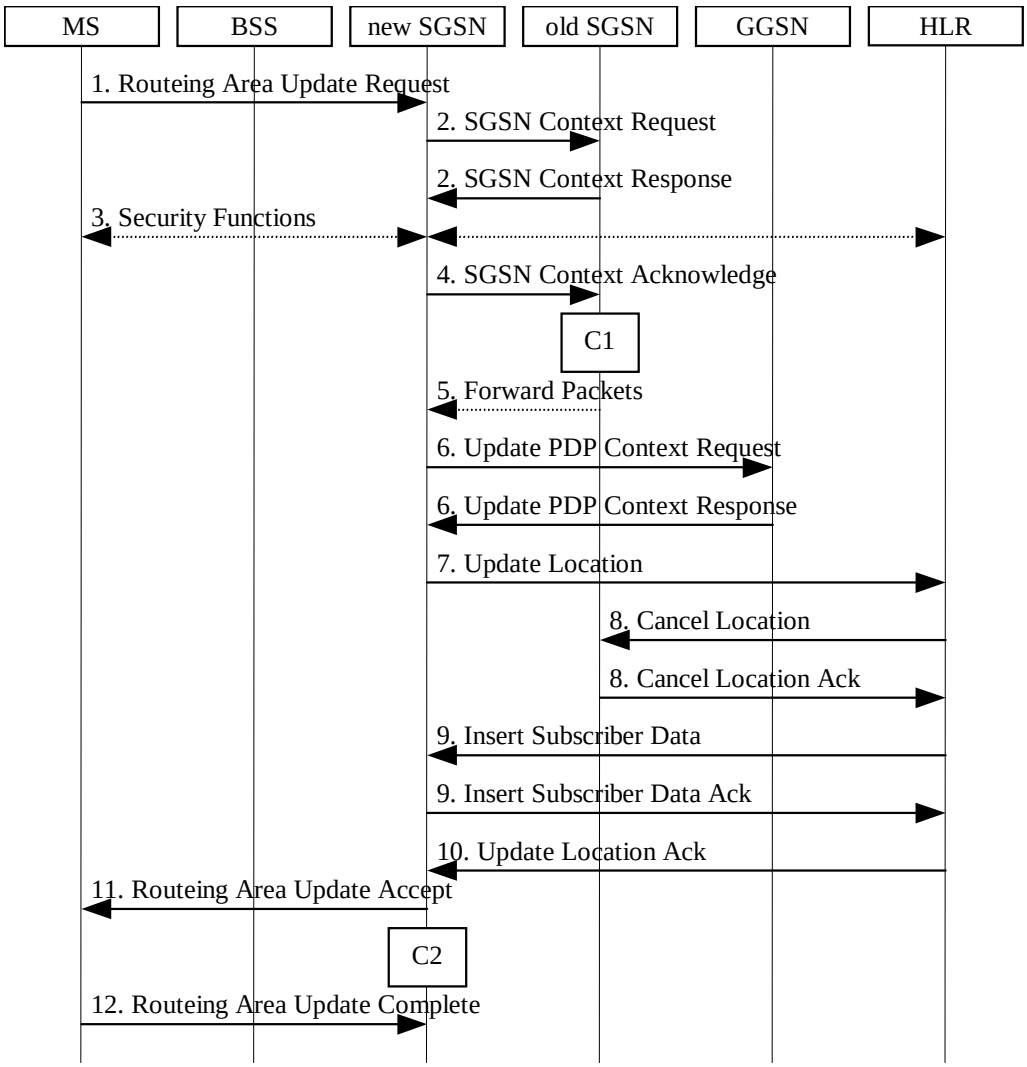


Figure 35: Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return Update PDP Context Response (TEID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

12) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3 Combined RA / LA Update Procedure

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see GSM 03.22), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

6.9.1.3.1 Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (intra SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 36. Each step is explained in the following list.

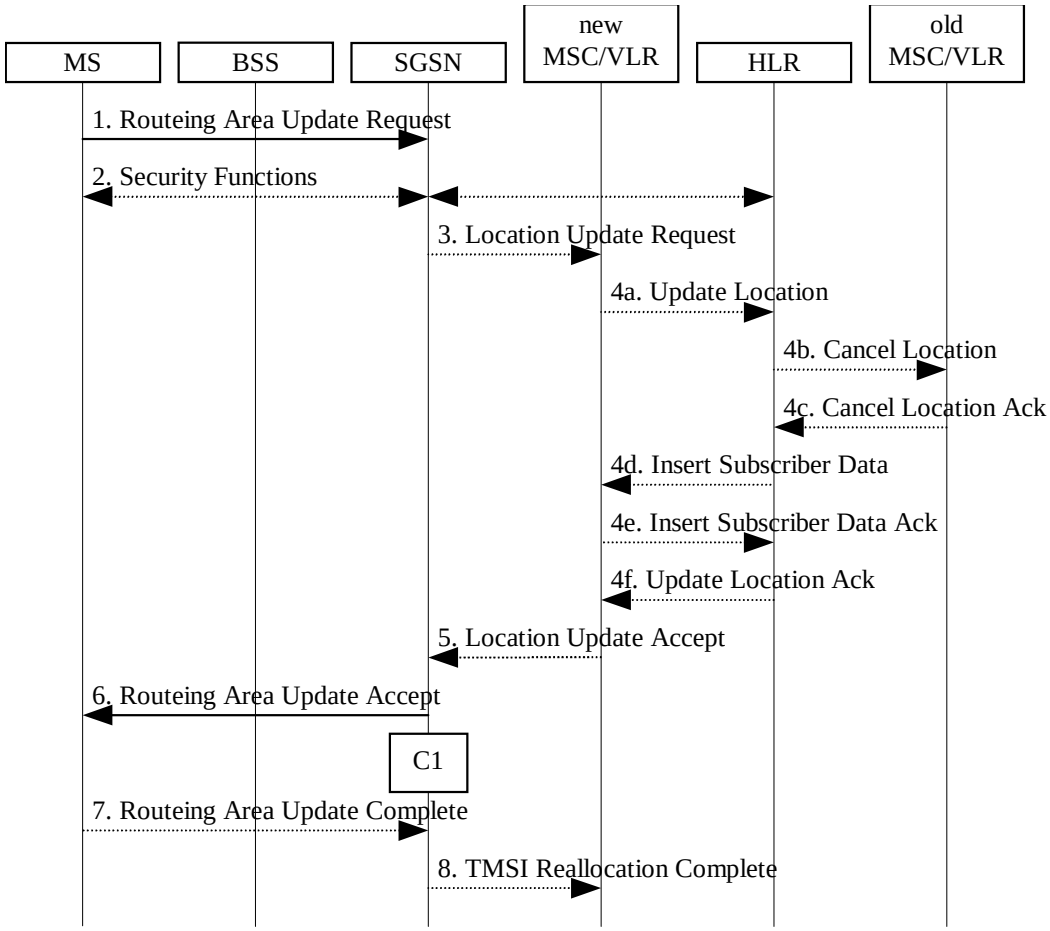


Figure 36: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. This procedure is defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

4) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

5) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

6) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. The SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

7) If a new P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was received, then the MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful Location Update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3.2 Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (inter SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 37. Each step is explained in the following list.

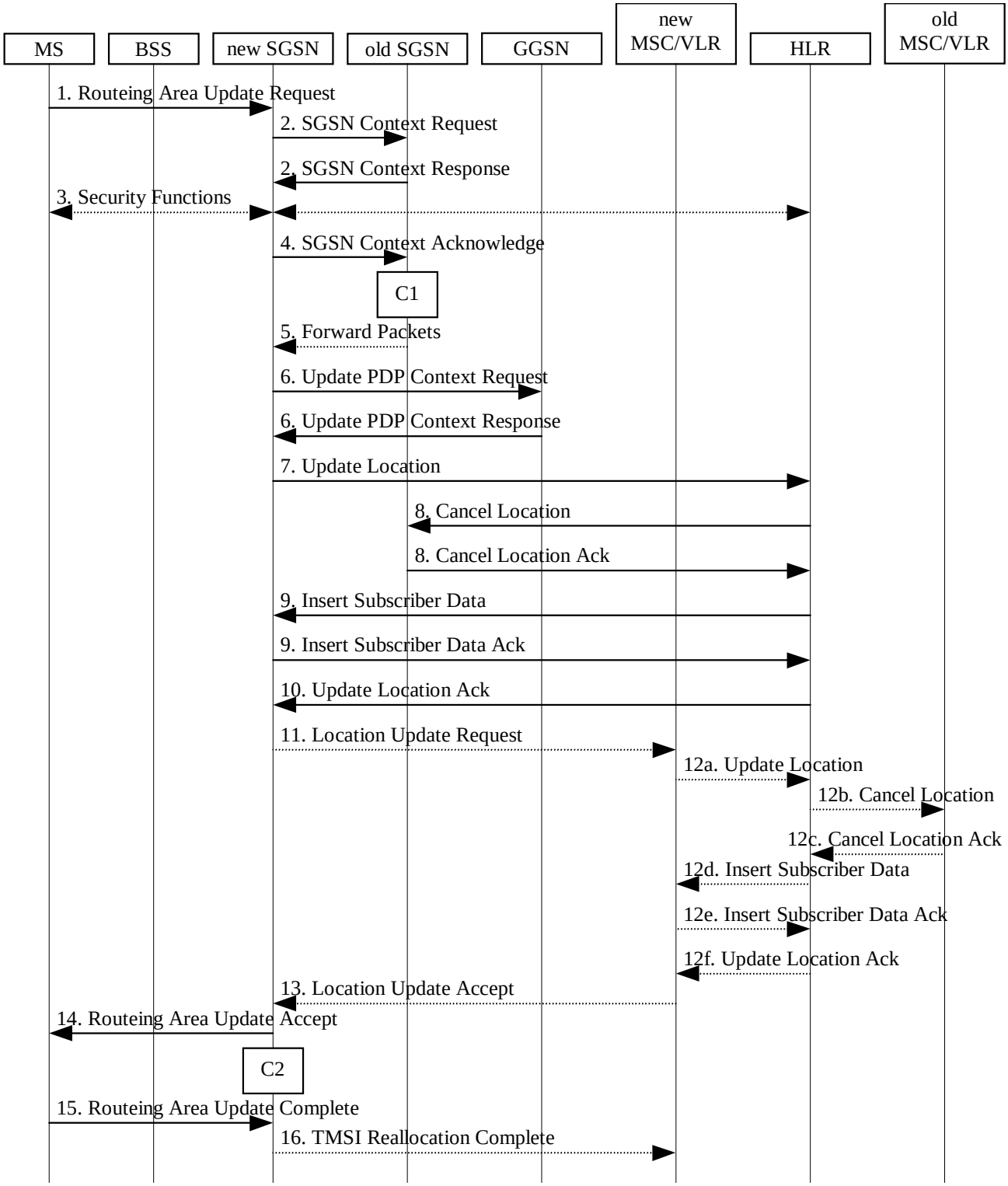


Figure 37: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address until the old MM context is cancelled, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the downlink transfer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon

receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 9). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

12) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

13) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

14) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

15) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

16) The new SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2 Location Management Procedures for UMTS

Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

In this specification, only the Location Management procedures related to the CN are described. These procedures are:

- a routeing area update procedure; and
- SERVING RNC relocation procedure.

An MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS. The MS detects that a RA Update shall be performed by comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with the RAI received from the network. In RRC-CONNECTED mode (PMM-CONNECTED state or CS MM CONNECTED state), the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the Serving RNC via an "MM information" message at the RRC layer. In RRC-IDLE state, the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the broadcasted system information at the RRC layer.

In network mode of operation II, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall start the LA update first. The MS should start RA Update procedure before the LA update is completed.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, an RA Update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA Update, either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the RA Update cases are contained in the procedure illustrated in Figure 38. Each step is explained in the following list.

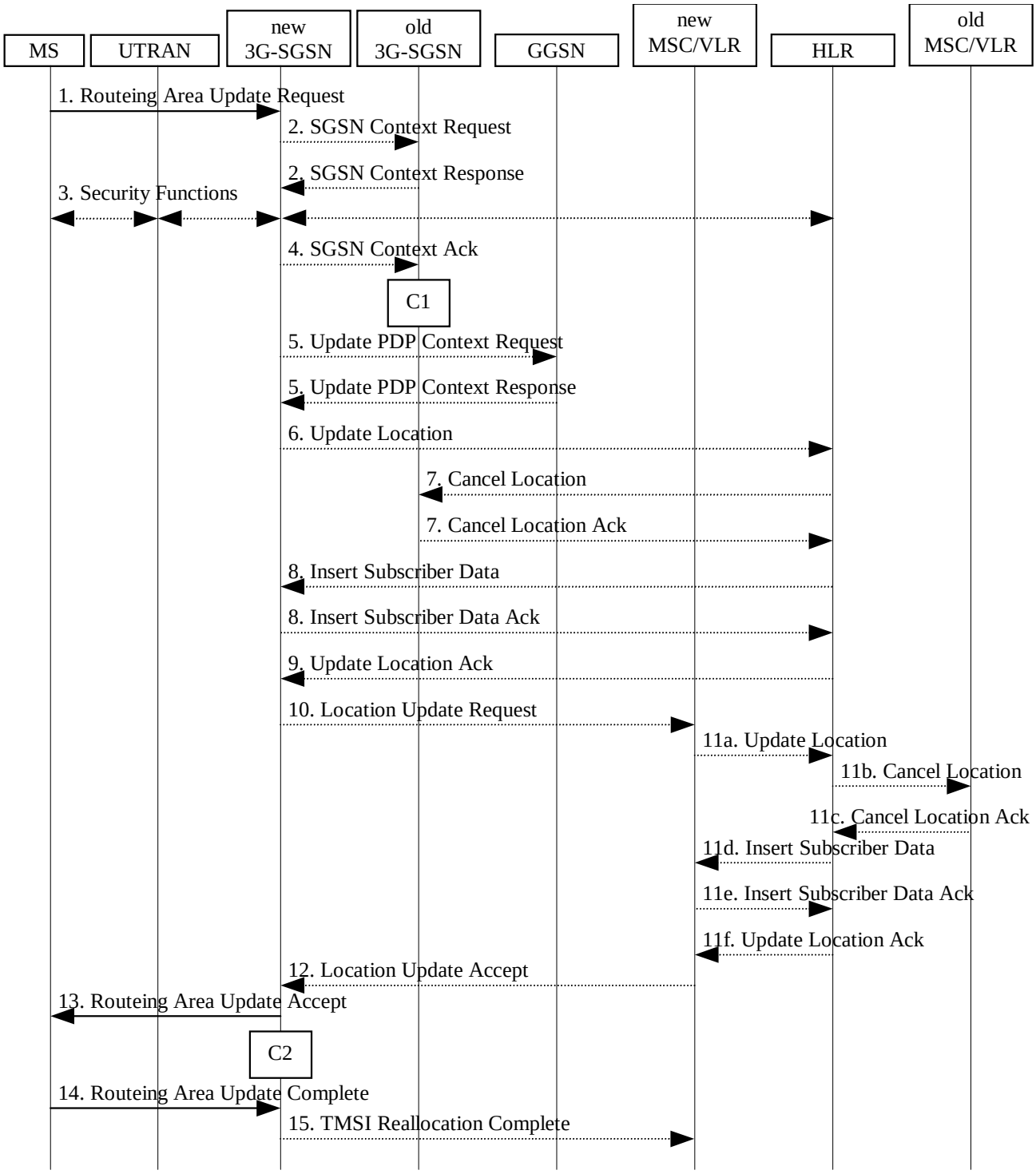


Figure 38: UMTS RA Update Procedure

1) The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:

   - RA Update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA;

- Periodic RA Update if the RA update is triggered by the expiry of the Periodic RA Update timer;
- Combined RA / LA Update if the MS is also CS attached and the LA update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR"); or
- Combined RA / LA Update with CS attach requested if the MS wants to perform an CS attach in network operation mode I.

The UTRAN shall add the Routeing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN [FFS].

NOTE: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

2) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old PTMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

4) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update, the new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

5) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier). Note: If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, the update PDP Context Request is sent as described in subclause "SRNC relocation".

6) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

7) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM context. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. It also ensures that the MM context is kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

8) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

9) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

10) If Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the association has to be established, and the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate CS attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 8). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

11) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

12) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

13) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM context for the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

14) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

15) The new SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

NOTE: Steps 11, 12, and 15, are performed only if step 9 is performed.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered up.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter PMM-DETACHED state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-PS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is

connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Figure 39 shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. Figure 40 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

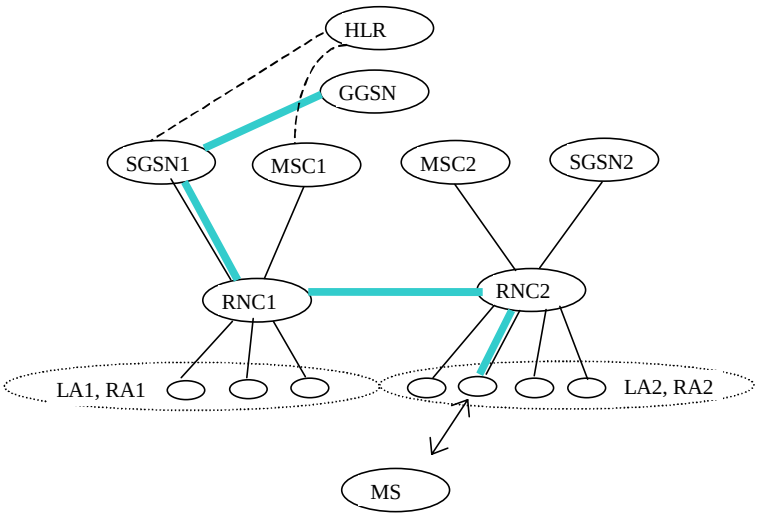


Figure 39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

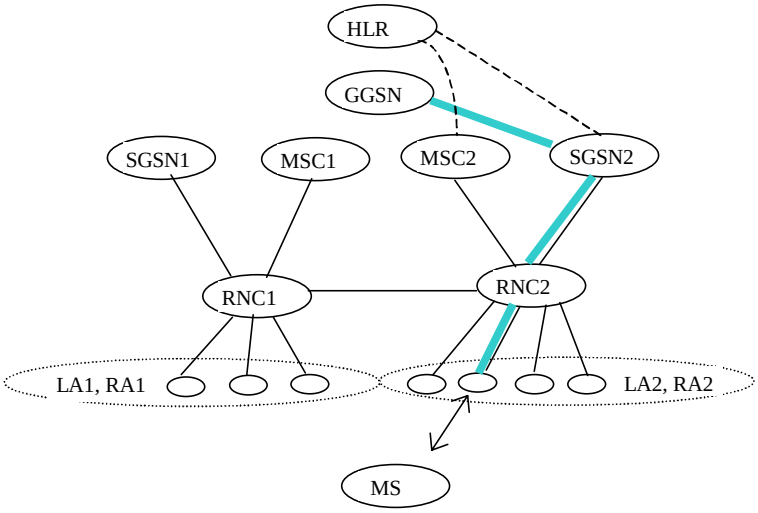


Figure 40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 41. Each step is explained in the following list.

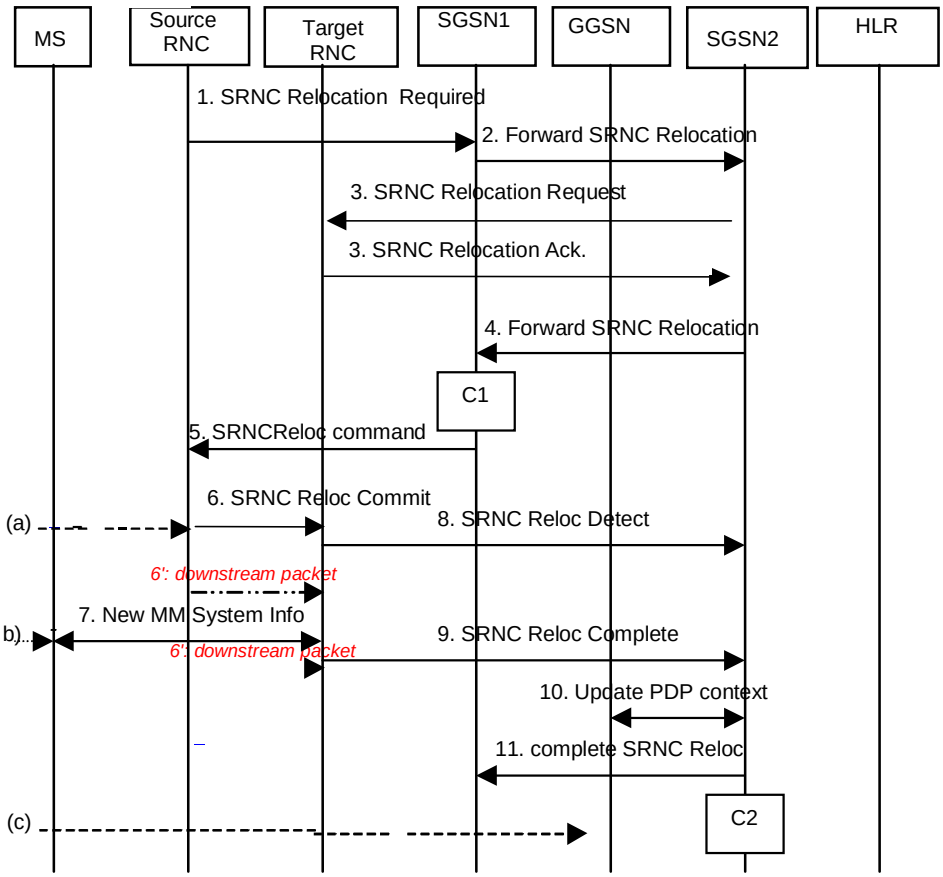


Figure 41: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.3 Periodic RA and LA Updates

All PS-attached MSs, except GPRS MSs in class-B mode of operation engaged in CS communication, shall perform periodic RA updates. MSs that are CS-attached and not PS-attached shall perform periodic LA updates. Periodic RA updates are equivalent to intra SGSN routeing area updates as described in subclause "Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update", with Update Type indicating periodic RA update. For MSs that are both CS-attached and PS-attached, the periodic updates depend on the mode of operation of the network:

- If the network operates in mode I, periodic RA updates shall be performed, and periodic LA updates shall not be performed. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall disable implicit detach for PS-attached MSs and instead rely on the SGSN to receive periodic RA updates. If periodic RA updates are not received in the SGSN and the SGSN detaches the MS, the SGSN shall notify the MSC/VLR by sending an IMSI Detach Indication message.

- If the network operates in mode II or mode III, both periodic RA updates and periodic LA updates shall be performed independently. RA updates are performed towards the SGSN, and LA updates are performed towards the MSC/VLR.

For GPRS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when an LLC PDU is sent since all sent LLC PDUs set the MM context state to READY. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY.

For UMTS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when the MM context enters the PMM-CONNECTED state. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to PMM-IDLE state.

If the MS could not successfully complete the periodic RA update procedure after a retry scheme while the MS was in PS coverage, then the MS shall wait a backoff time equal to the periodic LA update timer broadcast by the network before re-starting the periodic RA update procedure.

6.10 Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Function

This subclause applies to GPRS only.

Tunnelling of Messages (TOM) is an optional protocol layer that uses the LLC unacknowledged mode procedures to tunnel messages between the MS and the SGSN (see GSM 04.64). TOM uses two LLC SAPs for communication between the MS and the SGSN; one for high-priority messages and one for low-priority messages. A network that supports TIA/EIA-136 [49] shall support the TOM protocol and the Gs interface.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from an MS via the TOM protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a non-GSM MSC/VLR using the BSSAP+ protocol (see GSM 09.18). The specific Gs interface used by the SGSN is determined by the:

- RAI associated with the current location of the MS; and

- information in the TOM protocol header.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from a non-GSM MSC/VLR via the BSSAP+ protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a specific MS using the TOM protocol. The specific MS is determined by the SGSN based on the content of the BSSAP+ header.

The control plane between an MS and a non-GSM MSC/VLR that uses tunnelling procedures for non-GSM signalling is shown in Figure 42:

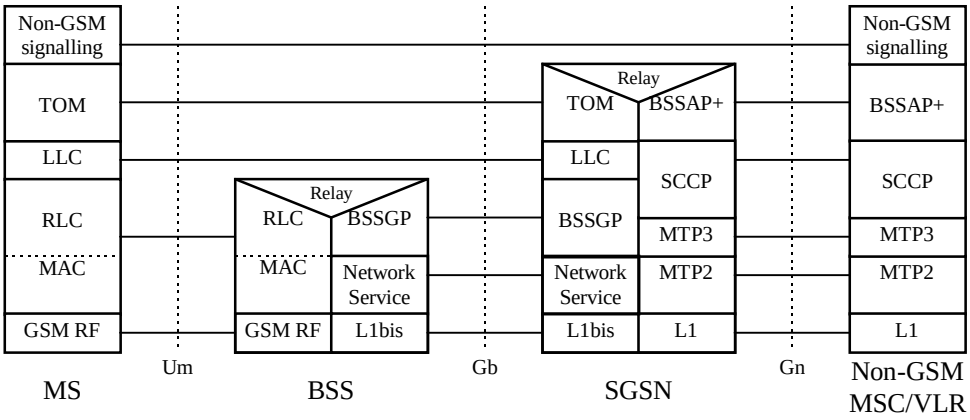


Figure 42: Control Plane MS - Non-GSM MSC/VLR

6.10.1 Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 43. Each step is explained in the following list.

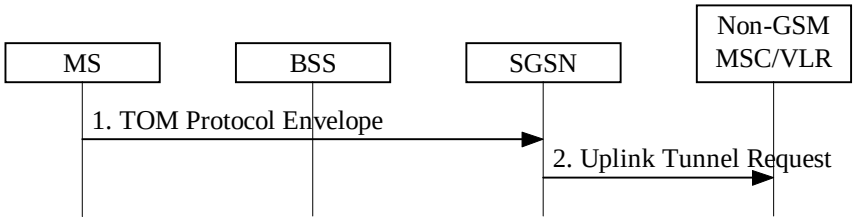


Figure 43: Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

1) The MS sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the SGSN either in ciphered or clear mode. The TOM protocol header contains information about the application using the TOM facility and any other TOM Protocol Discriminator-specific information. The TOM Protocol Envelope is received on one of the two LLC SAPs used for tunnelling of messages.

2) The SGSN identifies the non-GSM MSC/VLR to which to forward the non-GSM signalling message. It then sends a BSSAP+ Uplink Tunnel Request (IMSI, SGSN Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the identified non-GSM MSC/VLR. The Cipher parameter is set to cipher if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received by the LLC layer in ciphered form, otherwise it is set to not cipher. TOM Priority is set to high priority if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received on the high-priority LLC SAP, otherwise it is set to low priority.

6.10.2 Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 44. Each step is explained in the following list.

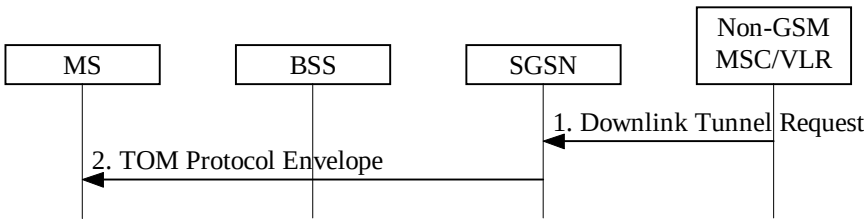


Figure 44: Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

1) The non-GSM MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Downlink Tunnel Request (IMSI, VLR Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the SGSN associated with the MS. TOM Priority indicates whether the SGSN shall select the high-priority or low-priority LLC SAP when forwarding the non-GSM signalling message to the MS. Cipher indicates whether or not the SGSN shall cipher the non-GSM signalling message before forwarding it to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the MS using the selected LLC SAP.

6.11 Subscriber Management Function

The Subscriber Management function provides a mechanism to inform the nodes about changes of the PS subscription data for a specific PS subscriber.

6.11.1 Subscriber Management Procedures

Whenever the PS subscription data is changed for a PS subscriber in the HLR, and the changes affect the PS subscription data stored in the SGSN, then the SGSN node shall be informed about these changes by means of the following procedures:

- Insert Subscriber Data procedure, used to add or modify PS subscription data in the SGSN; or
- Delete Subscriber Data procedure, used to remove PS subscription data in the SGSN.

6.11.1.1 Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the insertion and modification of general PS subscription data for a PS subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the insertion or modification of one or several new or existing PDP contexts in the SGSN. It should be noted that the modification may trigger a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". In particular, the following PDP context parameters may be modified by the HLR:

- QoS Profile Subscribed; and
- VPLMN Address Allowed.

The Insert Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 45. Each step is explained in the following list.

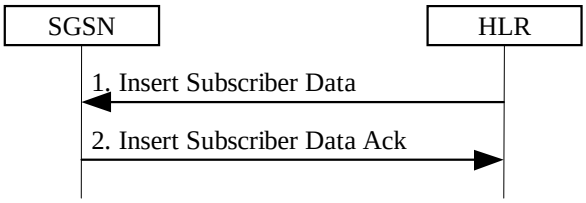


Figure 45: Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

1) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, PS Subscription Data) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN updates its PS subscription data and acknowledges the Insert Subscriber Data message by returning an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context that is included in PS Subscription Data the SGSN shall check whether it is a new, an active, or an inactive PDP context:

   - For a new or inactive PDP context, no further action is required except storage in the SGSN.
   - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall in addition compare the new QoS Subscribed with QoS Negotiated and shall, if necessary, initiate a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". Furthermore, if VPLMN Address Allowed is changed, the SGSN shall, if necessary (e.g., if the PDP context is currently routed via a GGSN in the VPLMN and VPLMN Address Allowed is changed to not allowed), initiate a PDP Context Deactivation procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures".

6.11.1.2 Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the deletion of general PS subscription data for a subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the deletion of one or several PDP contexts from the SGSN.

The Delete Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 46. Each step is explained in the following list.

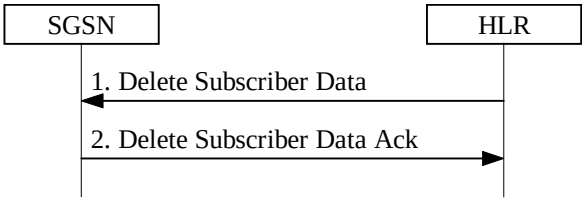


Figure 46: Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

1) The HLR sends a Delete Subscriber Data (IMSI, PDP Context Identifiers List) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN acknowledges the Delete Subscriber Data message by returning a Delete Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context identifier included in PDP Context Identifiers List, the SGSN shall check whether it belongs to an active or an inactive PDP context:

   - For an inactive PDP context no further action is required except deletion of the PDP context.

   - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall initiate the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures" before the PDP context is deleted.

6.12 Service Request Procedure for UMTS

The Service Request procedure is used by a 3G-MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signalling messages (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request) or user data. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request resource reservation for active PDP contexts.

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP contexts. After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

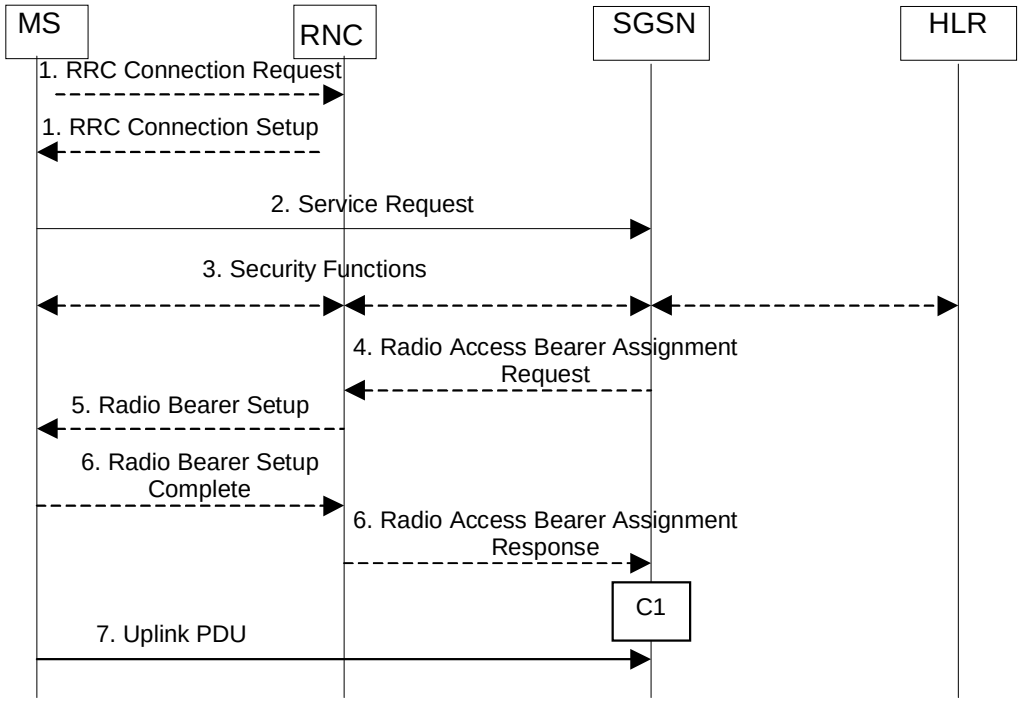


Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are requested allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not requested allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The MS sends the uplink packet.

The MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating Service Type = Data is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases, the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

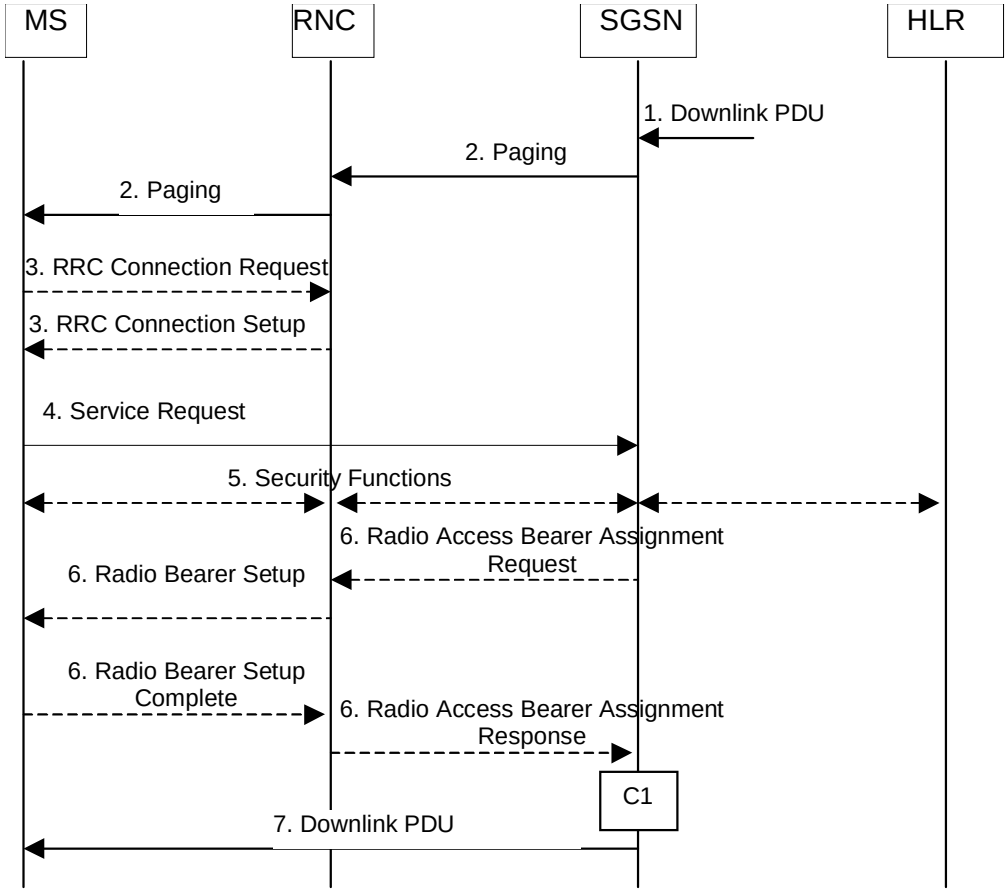


Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the MS.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change

The UMTS-GPRS intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS moves to a cell where the radio technology that the MS was using is not any longer supported. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

The UMTS RLC Sequence Number parameters, RLC-SND and RLC-SNU, are not relevant for the intersystem change of real-time PDP contexts (because these contexts use RLC transparent mode).

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces can support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the old and the new cells are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state enters a new GSM GPRS cell. In this case the MS shall perform a routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in PMM-IDLE state enters a new GSM GPRS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.

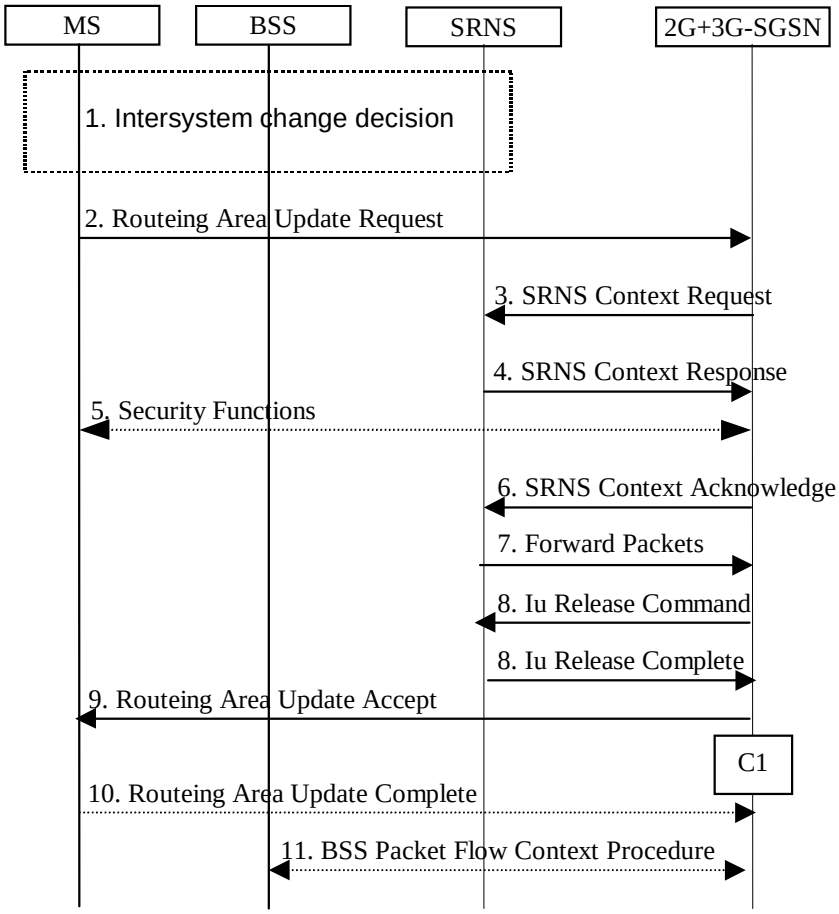


Figure 49: UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.

3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS, starts a timer and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink RLC sequence number (RLC-SNU) and the downlink RLC sequence number (RLC-SND). RLC-SNU shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS. RLC-SND shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets.

7) The partly transmitted and transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the downlink RLC sequence number of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs before sending them to the MS.

8) When the timer described under 3 has expired, the 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

9) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

10) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from RLC-SND by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC-SND of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

11) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.1 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.

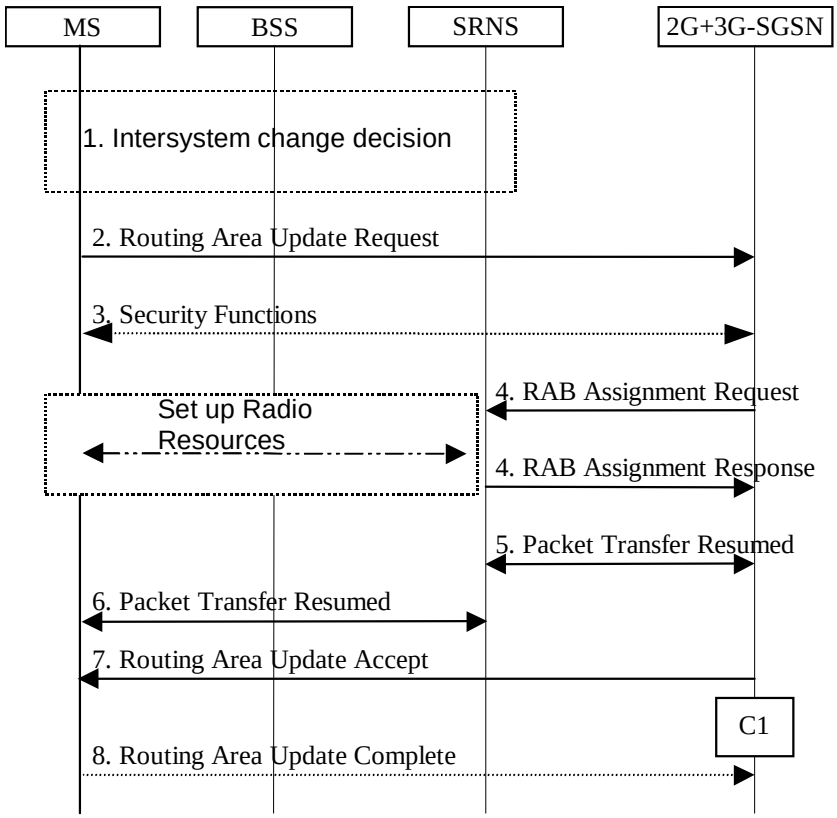


Figure 50: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The RLC sequence numbers shall be derived (shifted left 4 times) from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. If this is not the case, then the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.

Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routeing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.

If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.

If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.

If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GPRS cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.

If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state moves to a new GSM GPRS cell and this cell is served by a different SGSN. In this case the MS shall initiate a GPRS RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN change case is shown in .

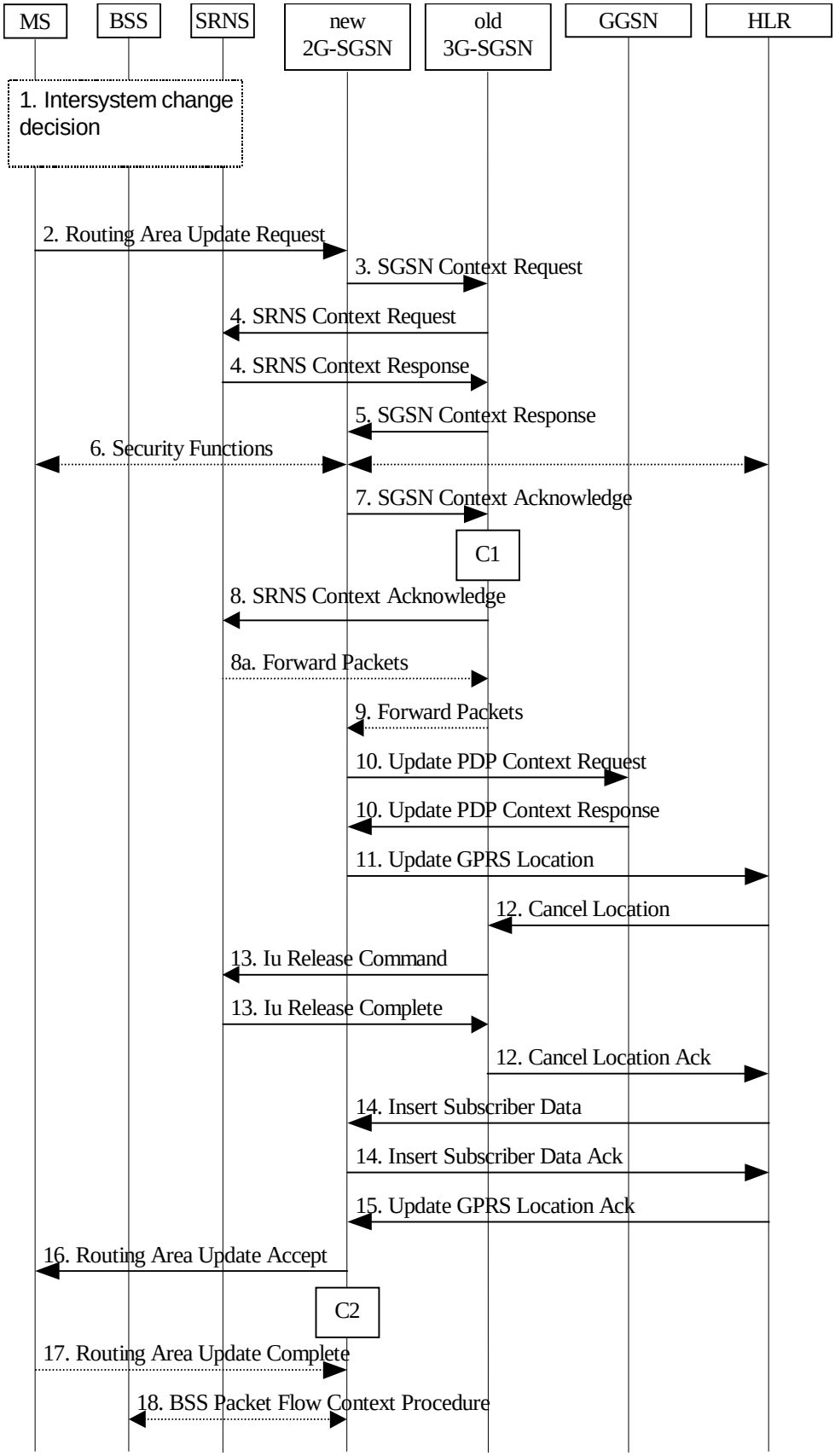


Figure 51: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell

Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes RLC-SNU and RLC-SND. The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the partly transmitted and the transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the RLC downlink sequence number (the four most significant bits shall be stripped off) of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU, and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The SNDCP sequence numbers shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The

new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from the downlink RLC sequence number by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence number of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

18) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

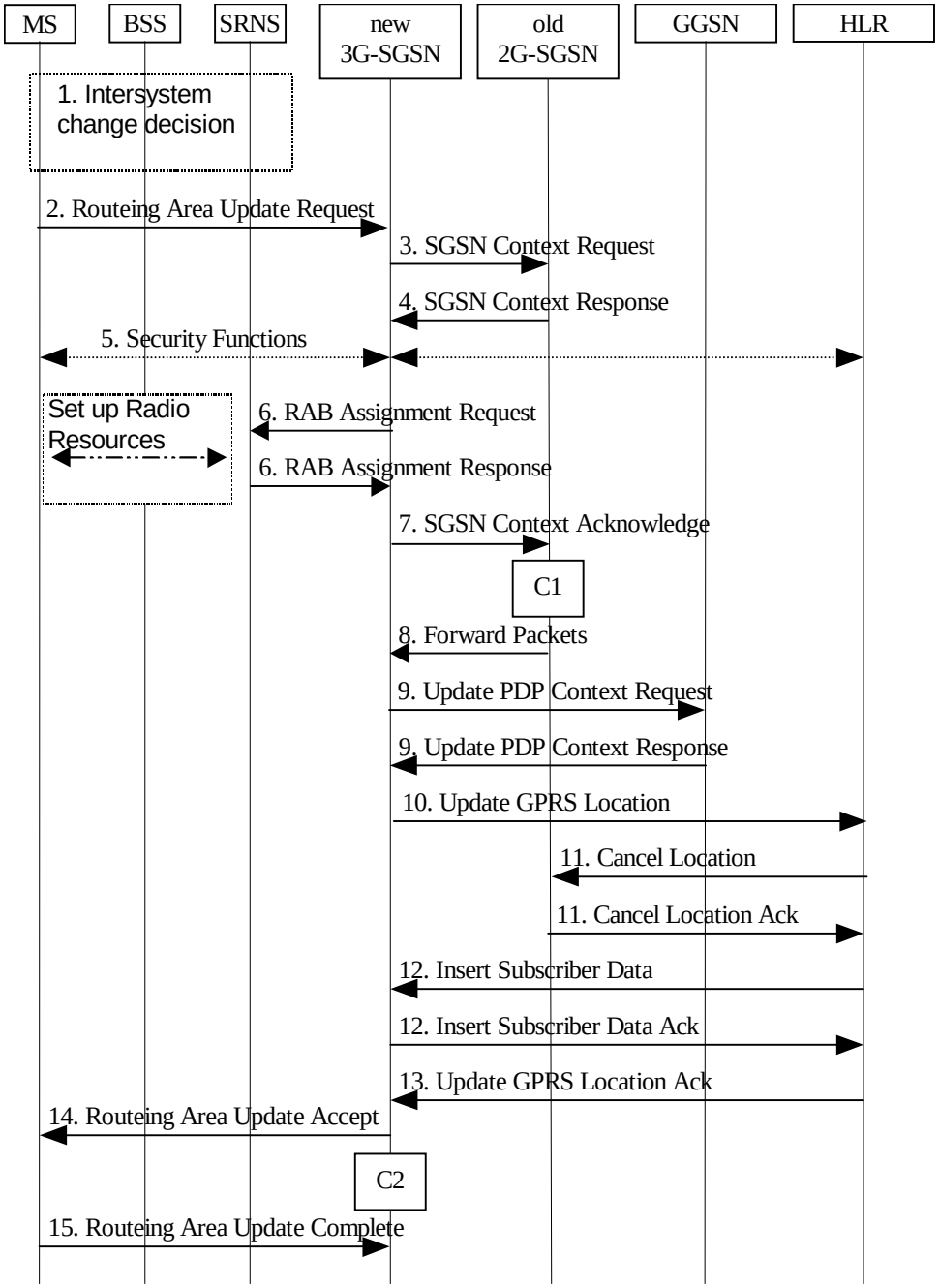


Figure 52: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface.

The new 3G-SGSN converts the SNDCP sequence numbers to RLC sequence numbers by shifting them left 4 times.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNDs received from the MS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNUs received from the SRNS. If this is not the case, the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.14 Classmark Handling

To support efficient radio interface usage in GPRS, the MS classmark is handled differently for SGSN-based services than for MSC-based services. In particular, the classmark is sent in MM messages to the network and stored in the network as long as the MS is GPRS-attached, avoiding redundant classmark retransmissions over the radio interface. This is sometimes called the "idle-mode classmark" principle.

In order to allow introduction of new radio access technologies in the future, the MS classmark is split into two distinct and independent information elements, the radio access classmark, and the SGSN classmark.

6.14.1 Radio Access Classmark

The radio access classmark contains the radio capabilities of the MS (e.g., multislot capability, power class), and more generally all the information that should be known by the BSS in order to handle radio resources for that MS.

The radio access classmark is a container for a multiplicity of radio access technology-dependent information, i.e., within the radio access classmark there are independent sub-fields for various technologies such as GSM 900, GSM 1800, Satellite, UMTS, etc. The coding shall allow a BSS to extract only the sub-fields relevant to it without interpreting the other sub-fields. This ensures that the radio classmark does not need to be interpreted by the NSS, and the full radio classmark is always sent by the MS to the SGSN, and thereafter provided to the BSS irrespective of the actual BSS capabilities.

The SGSN shall provide the radio access classmark as an information element on the Gb interface. It is the responsibility of the SGSN to provide the BSS with the most recent classmark received from the MS. The classmark information element can be included in a downlink transfer request, or be sent in a specific message that updates the radio classmark information in the BSS. The BSS may at any time request the radio classmark for a given MS to be transmitted from the SGSN to the BSS.

A specific optimisation allows the BSS to receive a reduced radio access classmark at initial access directly from the MS. This enables the BSS not to wait for the full radio access classmark to be provided by the SGSN, and is therefore quicker for the initial MS-originated transmission. The reduced classmark can be carried is several RR messages depending on the access method, e.g., in the initial random access message, or in the first uplink radio block. Details are provided in GSM 04.08 and GSM 04.60.

6.14.2 SGSN Classmark

The SGSN classmark contains non radio-related capabilities, e.g., the ciphering capability. The SGSN stores the SGSN classmark which is used both locally by the SGSN and for transfer to the new SGSN at all types of inter SGSN RA update.

7 Network Management Functionality

The Network Management function provides mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

8 Radio Resource Functionality

8.1 Radio Resource Functionality for GPRS

8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.

If the MS is in idle mode, see 3G TS 23.022, then it shall behave as described below:

When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:

- If the currently camped-on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.
- If the currently camped-on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.

If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see 3G TS 23.022.

The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.

If the MS is in dedicated mode, see 3G TS 24.008, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network-controlled handover procedures.

There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit-switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI-attached and GPRS-attached.

8.1.2 Discontinuous Reception

A GPRS MS may be able to choose if it wants to use discontinuous reception (DRX) or not. If using DRX, the MS shall also be able to specify other DRX parameters that indicate the delay for the network to send a page request or a channel assignment to the MS (see GSM 03.64).

The DRX parameters shall be indicated by the MS in the attach procedure. The SGSN shall then in each page request send these parameters to the BSS that uses this information and the IMSI to calculate the correct paging group.

DRX usage is independent of the MM states IDLE, STANDBY and READY. As DRX can be used by a GPRS MS in READY state, DRX has to be considered also when assigning a packet data channel for downlink transfer. The SGSN shall therefore indicate the DRX parameters for the MS in all packet transmission requests to the BSS.

A GPRS MS shall not apply DRX in READY state during the GPRS attach and routeing area update procedures.

8.1.3 Radio Resource Management

GSM Radio Resource Management functions are defined in GSM 04.07 [12]. The radio interface layer 3 protocol is specified in 3G TS 24.008.

8.1.3.1 Layer Functions

GPRS radio resource management procedures are required for the following functions:

- allocation and release of physical resources (i.e., timeslots) associated with a GPRS channel;
- monitoring GPRS channel utilisation to detect under-utilised or congested GPRS channels;
- initiating congestion control procedures; and
- distribution of GPRS channel configuration information for broadcasting to the MSs.

8.1.3.2 Model of Operation

8.1.3.2.1 Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources

A cell may or may not support GPRS.

A cell supporting GPRS may have GPRS radio resources allocated at a given instance. If no GPRS radio resources are allocated, an MS can request allocation of such resources. MSs may then use these radio resources. The PLMN may dynamically increase, to a PLMN operator-defined maximum, or, decrease to an operator-defined minimum, the radio resources allocated.

The network broadcasts GPRS system information on the common control channels.

GSM radio resources are dynamically shared between GPRS and other GSM services.

8.1.4 Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer

An MS in STANDBY state is paged by the SGSN before a downlink transfer to that MS. The paging procedure shall move the MM state to READY to allow the SGSN to forward downlink data to the radio resource. Therefore, any uplink data from the MS that moves the MM context at the SGSN to READY state is a valid response to paging.

The SGSN supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the SGSN receives no response from the MS to the Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent.

The MS shall accept pages also in READY state if no radio resource is assigned. This supports recovery from inconsistent MM states in MS and SGSN.

The GPRS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 53. Each step is explained in the following list.

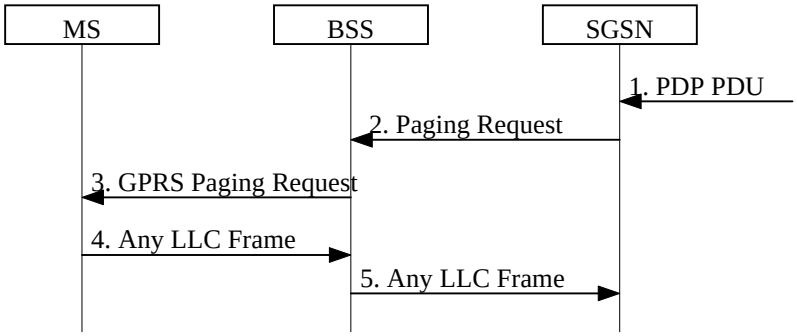


Figure 53: GPRS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in STANDBY state. Downlink signalling to a STANDBY state MS initiates paging as well.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS, DRX Parameters) message to the BSS serving the MS. IMSI is needed by the BSS in order to calculate the MS paging group. P-TMSI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. Channel Needed indicates GPRS paging. QoS is the negotiated QoS for the PDP context that initiates the paging procedure, and indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests.

3) The BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (P-TMSI, Channel Needed) message in each cell belonging to the addressed routeing area. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a GPRS Paging Request message, the MS shall respond with either any single valid LLC frame (e.g., a Receive Ready or Information frame) that implicitly is interpreted as a page response message by the SGSN. When responding, the MS changes MM state to READY. The response is preceded by the Packet Channel Request and Packet Immediate Assignment procedures as described in GSM 03.64.

5) Upon reception of the LLC frame, the BSS adds the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell and sends the LLC frame to the SGSN. The SGSN shall then consider the LLC frame to be an implicit paging response message and stop the paging response timer.

8.2 Radio Resource Functionality for UMTS

8.2.1 Radio Resource Management

UTRAN functions are defined in 3G TS 25.401. The radio interface protocol architecture is specified in 3G TS 25.301, and the Radio Resource Control protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

8.2.2 RRC State Machine

The RRC state machine is a description model of how the MS and the UTRAN co-operate regarding RRC functionality. The RRC state describes the MS state in the UTRAN. This subclause contains a brief description of the RRC state machine, for more information see 3G TS 25.303.

The RRC state machine exists as two peer entities, one in the MS and one in UTRAN. Apart from transient situations and error cases the two peer entities are synchronised. Figure 54 illustrates the main modes and states of the RRC state machine.

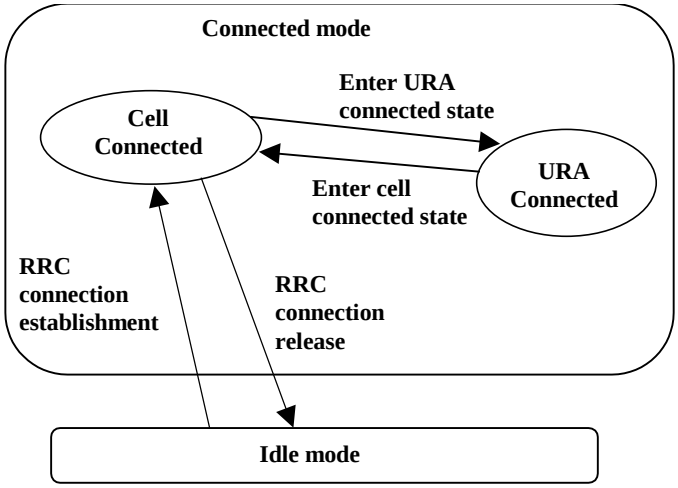


Figure 54: RRC Modes, Main RRC States and Main Mode and State Transition

RRC Idle mode: In the Idle mode there is no connection established between the MS and UTRAN. There is no signalling between UTRAN and the MS except for system information that is sent from UTRAN on a broadcast channel to the MS. The MS can also receive paging messages with a CN identity on the PCH. There is no information of the MS stored in UTRAN in this mode.

RRC Connected mode: In the Connected mode the main states are Cell Connected state and URA Connected state. In this mode there is one RNC that is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC), and an RRC connection is established between the MS and this SRNC.

- When the MS position is known at the cell level, the MS is in the Cell Connected state. When in Cell Connected state, the RRC connection mobility is handled by handover and cell update procedures.
- When the MS position is known at the URA level, the MS is in the URA Connected state. URA updating procedures provides the mobility functionality in this state. No dedicated radio resources are used in the URA Connected state.

8.2.3 Paging Initiated by CN

A CN node requests paging only for MSs in CMM-IDLE state or PMM-IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independently from the state of the MS in the other CN service domain.

In this alternative with paging co-ordination in the UTRAN, the MS does not need to listen to the PCH (Paging Channel) in the RRC Connected mode, at least not when MS is allocated a dedicated channel.

For each paging request received from a CN node, the RNC determines whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In order to achieve this, the context that is prepared within the SRNC for MS in RRC Connected mode must contain the IMSI, which is the common MS identity for the two CN domains.

If no context is found for the MS, "normal PCH paging" is performed. The paging message is transferred on the paging channel, and it includes the MS paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

If a context is found, a "CN paging message" is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message includes a CN service domain type indication.

8.2.3.1 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN Without RRC Connection for CS

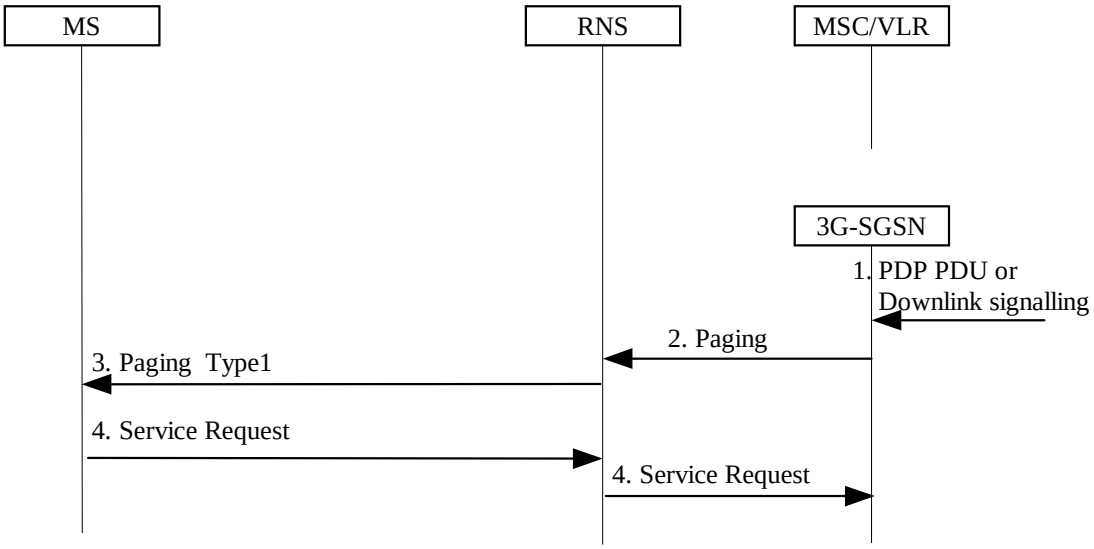


Figure 55: PS Paging Without RRC Connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a PDP PDU or downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group, and to identify the paged MS. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is also included. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) initiated the paging message, and it represents "SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has no RRC connection, so a "normal PCH paging" is performed. Paging Type 1(IMSI or P-TMSI, Paging originator, CN domain ID) is transferred on the Paging channel, IMSI or P-TMSI identifies the MS. Paging originator indicates whether this is core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "CN" in this case. And CN domain ID indicates whether this paging message is for CS-service or PS-service, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure for UMTS".

Optionally, 3G-SGSN may include "Non Searching Indication" in RANAP Paging message in this case. If a "Non Searching Indication" parameter is present, the RNC will not search the established RRC connection, and just initiate "normal PCH paging".

8.2.3.2 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN With RRC Connection for CS

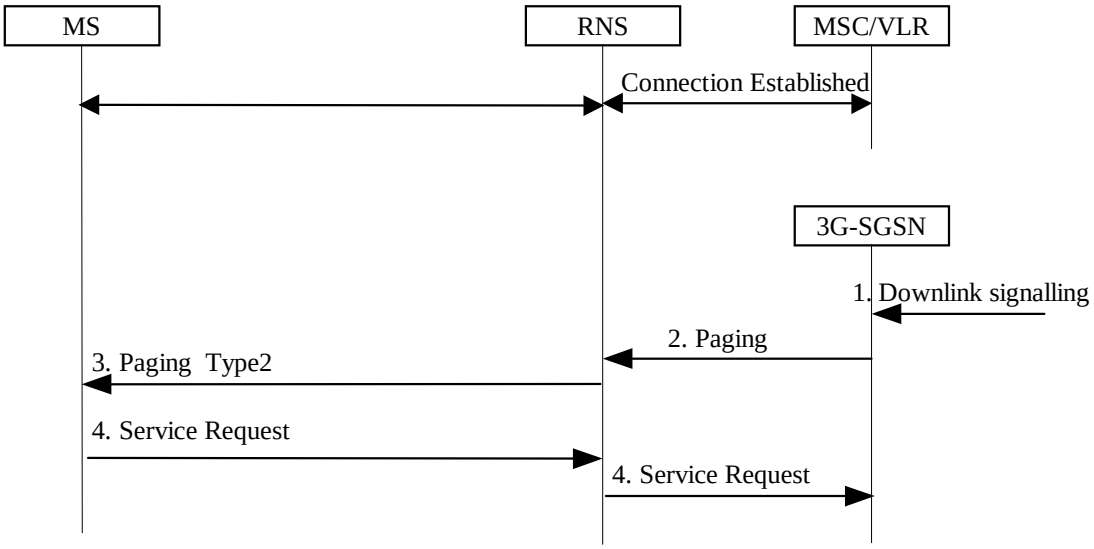


Figure 56: PS Paging With RRC Connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS is located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is included, and it identifies the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates to which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) the paging was initiated, and it represents "3G-SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has an established RRC connection for CS service, so RNS sends a RRC Paging Type 2(CN domain ID) message to the MS on established RRC connection. CN Domain ID indicates to which domain (CS or PS) the paging shall be directed, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure for UMTS".

8.2.4 Paging Initiated by UTRAN

An MS in RRC URA connected state is paged by the RNC before a downlink transfer to that MS. The URA paging procedure shall move the RRC state to Cell Connected to allow the RNC to forward downlink data or signalling message to the radio resource. Therefore, RRC: Cell Update message from the MS that moves the RRC State at the RNC to Cell Connected state is a valid response to URA paging.

The RNC supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the RNC receives no response from the MS to the URA Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent. For more information see TS 25.303.

The Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 42. Each step is explained in the following list.

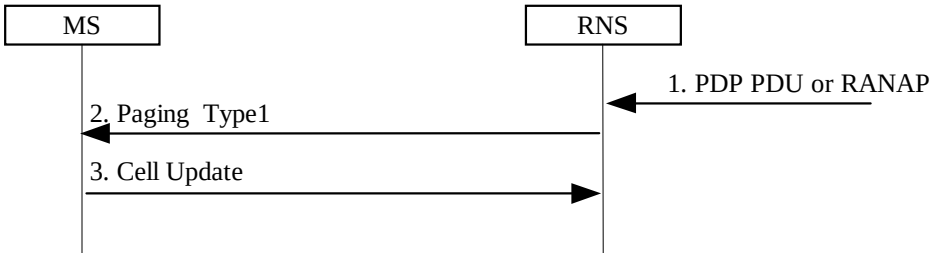


Figure 57: URA Paging Procedure

1) The RNS receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in RRC URA connected state. Downlink signalling to a MS in RRC URA connected state initiates URA paging as well.

2) The RNS pages the MS with one Paging Type 1 (RNTI, Paging originator) message in each cell belonging to the UTRAN routeing area where the MS exists. RNTI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Paging originator indicates whether this is the core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "UTRAN" in this case.

3) The paging request triggers the Cell Update procedures in the MS. The Cell Update procedures are described in TS 25.331.

9 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functionality

9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States

A GPRS subscription contains the subscription of one or more PDP addresses. Each PDP address is described by one or more PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. Each PDP context may be associated with a TFT. At most one PDP context associated with the same PDP address may exist at any time with no TFT assigned to it. Every PDP context exists independently in one of two PDP states. The PDP state indicates whether data transfer is enabled for that PDP address and TFT or not. In case all PDP contexts associated with the same PDP address are deactivated, data transfer for that PDP address is disabled. Activation and deactivation are described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions". All PDP contexts of a subscriber are associated with the same MM context for the IMSI of that subscriber.

9.1.1 INACTIVE State

The INACTIVE state characterises the data service for a certain PDP address of the subscriber as not activated. The PDP context contains no routeing or mapping information to process PDP PDUs related to that PDP address. No data can be transferred. A changing location of a subscriber causes no update for the PDP context in INACTIVE state even if the subscriber is PS-attached.

Mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state by the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure if the GGSN is allowed to initiate the activation of the PDP context for that PDP address. Otherwise, mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state invoke error procedures in the GGSN relevant to the external network protocol, for example, an IP packet is discarded and an ICMP (see RFC 792 [41]) packet (error notification) is returned to the source of the received packet. Other error procedures may be introduced on the application level, but this is outside the scope of the present document.

The MS initiates the movement from INACTIVE to ACTIVE state by initiating the PDP Context Activation procedure.

9.1.2 ACTIVE State

In ACTIVE state, the PDP context for the PDP address in use is activated in MS, SGSN and GGSN. The PDP context contains mapping and routeing information for transferring PDP PDUs for that particular PDP address between MS and GGSN. The PDP state ACTIVE is permitted only when the mobility management state of the subscriber is STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. The Iu interface radio access bearer may or may not be established for an active PDP context.

An active PDP context for an MS is moved to INACTIVE state when the deactivation procedure is initiated.

All active PDP contexts for an MS are moved to INACTIVE state when the MM state changes to IDLE or PMM-DETACHED.

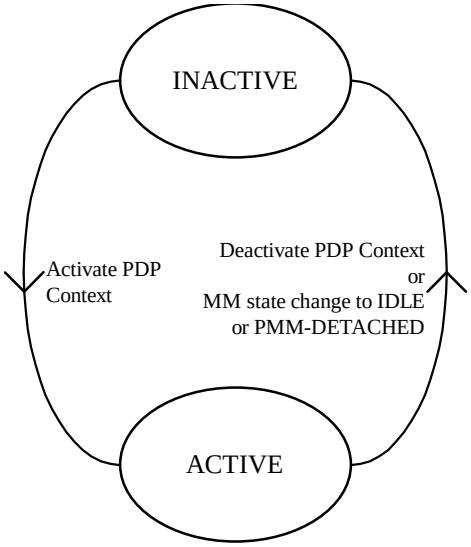


Figure 58: Functional PDP State Model

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions

A PS-attached MS can initiate these functions at any time in order to activate, modify, or deactivate a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a PS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

NOTE: If the MS is in PMM-IDLE state, it needs to perform a service request procedure to enter the PMM-CONNECTED state before initiating these procedure.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGS shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP addr but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts that share the same PDP address and APN shall be managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure be initiated. When the MS performs an RA update procedure to change from a release 99 to a release 97 or 98 system, only o active PDP context per PDP address and APN shall be preserved. This PDP context is selected taking the QoS profile and NS value into account.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every TI.

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 59. Each step is explained in the following list.

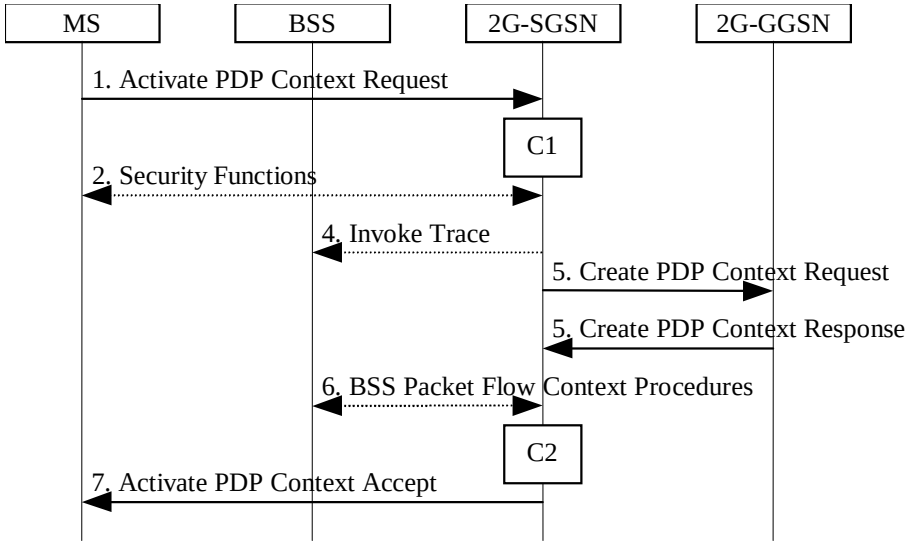


Figure 59: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

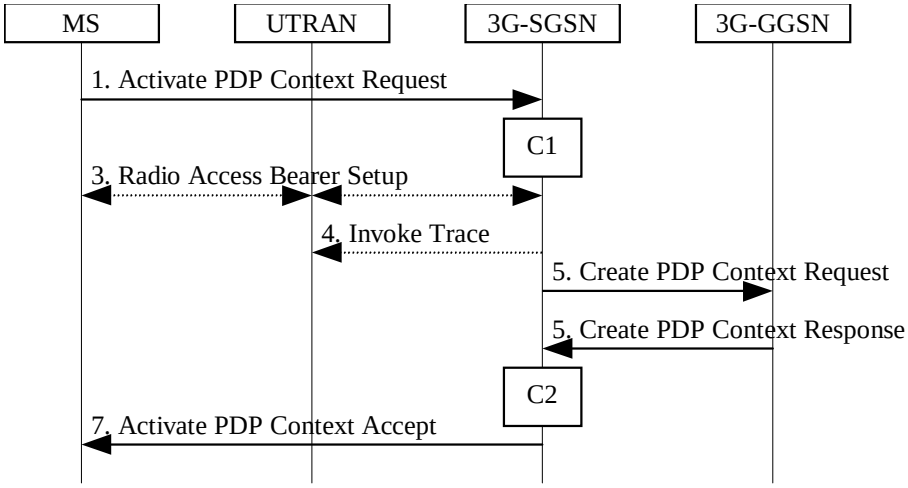


Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to

select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. Each PDP context sharing the same PDP address and APN shall be identified by a unique TI and a unique NSAPI.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be executed without providing a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context if all other active PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN already have an associated TFT, otherwise a TFT shall be provided. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address and APN. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 61. Each step is explained in the following list.

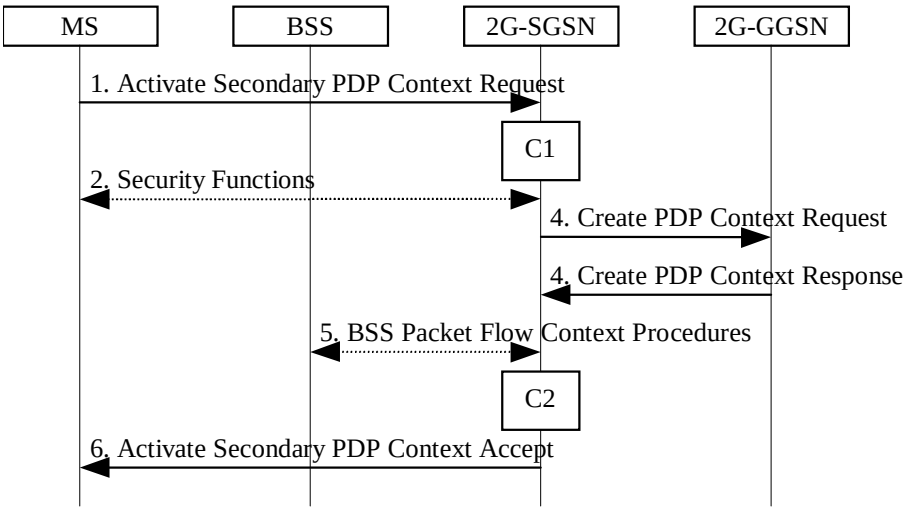


Figure 61: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

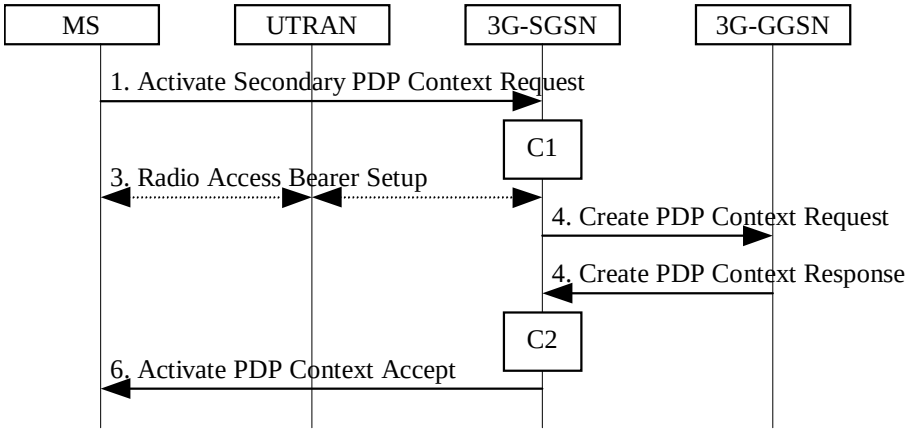


Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (Linked TI, NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Linked TI indicates the TI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI and NSAPI contain values not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to the UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI indicated by Linked TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TEID, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. TFT is included only if received in the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

5) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

6) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.2 Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure allows the GGSN to initiate the activation of a PDP context. When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN checks if a PDP context is established for that PDP address. If no PDP context has been previously established the GGSN may try to deliver the PDP PDU by initiating the Network-

Requested PDP Context Activation procedure. The criteria used by the GGSN to determine whether trying to deliver the PDP PDU to the MS may be based on subscription information and are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

To support Network-Requested PDP Context Activation the GGSN has to have static PDP information about the PDP address. To determine whether Network-Requested PDP Context Activation is supported for a PDP address the GGSN checks if there is static PDP information for that PDP address.

Once these checks have been performed the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure.

The network operator may implement the following techniques to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR:

- Implementation of the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG) technique in GGSN, SGSN, and HLR (see subclause "Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure").
- The GGSN may reject or discard PDP PDUs after a previous unsuccessful delivery attempt. This systematic rejection of PDP PDUs would be performed during a certain time after the unsuccessful delivery.
- The GGSN may store the address of the SGSN with which the GGSN established the last PDP context. This would prevent an enquiry to the HLR. This SGSN address would be considered as valid during a certain time.

9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 63. Each step is explained in the following list.

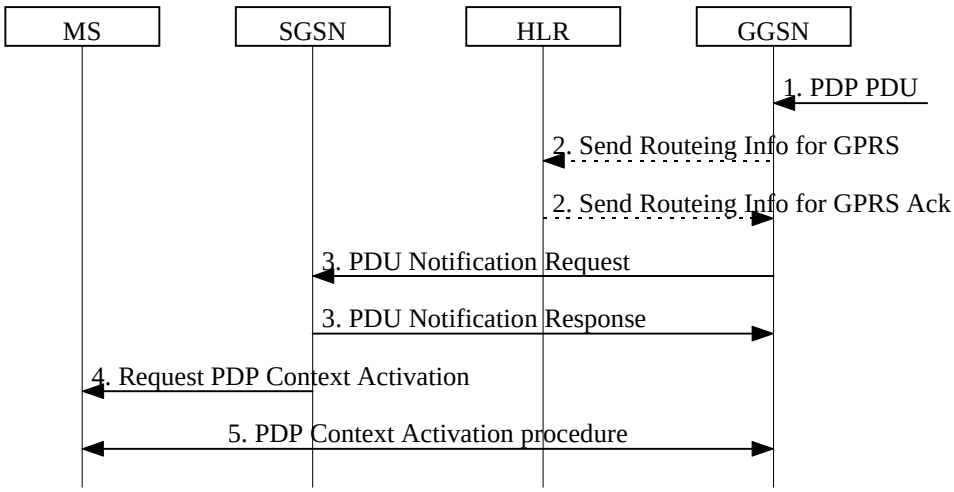


Figure 63: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN determines if the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure has to be initiated. The GGSN may store subsequent PDP PDUs received for the same PDP address.

2) The GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. If the HLR determines that the request can be served, it returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason) message to the GGSN. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter is included if the MNRG flag is set in the HLR. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter indicates the reason for the setting of the MNRG flag as stored in the MNRR record (see GSM 03.40). If the MNRR record indicates a reason other than 'No Paging Response', the HLR shall include the GGSN number in the GGSN-list of the subscriber.

   If the HLR determines that the request cannot be served (e.g., IMSI unknown in HLR), the HLR shall send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, MAP Error Cause) message. Map Error Cause indicates the reason for the negative response.

3) If the SGSN address is present and either Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason is not present or Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason indicates 'No Paging Response', the GGSN shall send a PDU Notification Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to the SGSN indicated by the HLR. Otherwise, the GGSN shall set the MNRG flag for that MS. The SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN in order to acknowledge that it shall request the MS to activate the PDP context indicated with PDP Address.

4) The SGSN sends a Request PDP Context Activation (TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to request the MS to activate the indicated PDP context.

5) The PDP context is activated with the PDP Context Activation procedure (see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure").

9.2.2.2.2 Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

If the PDP context requested by the GGSN cannot be established, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Response (Cause) or a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN depending on if the context activation fails before or after the SGSN has sent a Request PDP Context Activation message to the MS. Cause indicates the reason why the PDP context could not be established:

- 'IMSI Not Known'. The SGSN has no MM context for that IMSI (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS GPRS Detached'. The MM state of the MS is IDLE (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS Not GPRS Responding'. The MS is GPRS-attached to the SGSN but the MS does not respond. This may be due to the lack of a response to a GPRS Paging Request, due to an Abnormal RLC condition, or due to no Activate PDP Context Request message received within a certain time after the Request PDP Context Activation message was delivered to the MS (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

- 'MS Refuses'. The MS refuses explicitly the network-requested PDP context (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

When receiving the PDU Notification Response or the PDU Notification Reject Request message the GGSN may reject or discard the PDP PDU depending on the PDP type.

After an unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure the network may perform some actions to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR. The actions taken depend on the cause of the delivery failure.

- If the MS is not reachable or if the MS refuses the PDP PDU (Cause value 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'), then the SGSN shall not change the setting of MNRG for this MS. The GGSN may refuse any PDP PDU for that PDP address during a certain period. The GGSN may store the SGSN address during a certain period and send subsequent PDU Notification Request messages to that SGSN.

- If the MS is GPRS-detached or if the IMSI is not known in the SGSN (Cause value 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known'), then the SGSN, the GGSN, and the HLR may perform the Protection and Mobile User Activity procedures.

The Protection procedure is illustrated in Figure 64. Each step is explained in the following list.

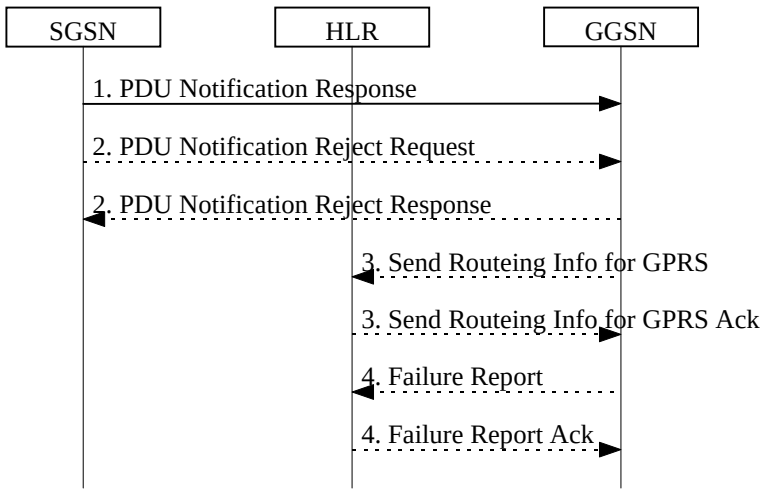


Figure 64: Protection Procedure

1) If the MM context of the mobile is IDLE or if the SGSN has no information about that user, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known', otherwise the Cause shall be 'Activation Proceeds'. If the Cause is 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI

Not Known' and if the SGSN has an MM context for that user, the SGSN sets MNRG to indicate the need to report to the HLR when the next contact with that MS is performed.

2) If the MS does not respond or refuses the activation request, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'. The GGSN returns a PDU Notification Reject Response message to the SGSN.

3) If Cause equals 'IMSI Not Known' the GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. The HLR returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Cause) message to the GGSN indicating the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. If SGSN Address is different from the one previously stored by the GGSN, then steps 3, 4, and 5 in Figure 63 are followed.

4) If SGSN Address is the same as the one previously stored in the GGSN, or if the Cause value returned in step 1 equals 'MS GPRS Detached', then the GGSN sets MNRG for that PDP address and sends a Failure Report (IMSI, GGSN Number, GGSN Address) message to the HLR to request MNRG to be set in the HLR. The HLR sets (if not already set) MNRG for the IMSI and adds GGSN Number and GGSN Address to the list of GGSNs to report to when activity from that IMSI is detected. GGSN Number is either the number of the GGSN, or, if a protocol-converting GSN is used as an intermediate node, the number of the protocol-converting GSN. GGSN Address is an optional parameter that shall be included if a protocol-converting GSN is used.

The Mobile User Activity procedure is illustrated in Figure 65. Each step is explained in the following list.

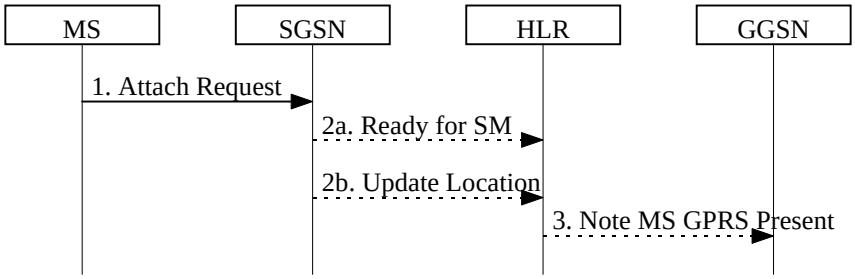


Figure 65: Mobile User Activity Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an indication that an MS is reachable, e.g., an Attach Request message from the MS.

2a) If the SGSN contains an MM context of the MS and MNRG for that MS is set, the SGSN shall send a Ready for SM (IMSI, MS Reachable) message to the HLR and clears MNRG for that MS.

2b) If the SGSN does not keep the MM context of the MS, the SGSN shall send an Update Location message (see subclause "Attach Function") to the HLR.

3) When the HLR receives the Ready for SM message or the Update Location message for an MS that has MNRG set, it clears MNRG for that MS and sends a Note MS GPRS Present (IMSI, SGSN Address) message to all the GGSNs in the list of the subscriber. (The Ready for SM message also triggers the SMS alert procedure as described in subclause "Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer".) SGSN Address contains the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. Upon reception of Note MS Present, each GGSN shall clear MNRG.

9.2.2.3 Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

The MS can anonymously initiate PDP Context Activation in IDLE, STANDBY, and READY states. An existing MM context in the SGSN is neither required nor used in this case. Only dynamic PDP addressing is applicable.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 66. Each step is explained in the following list.

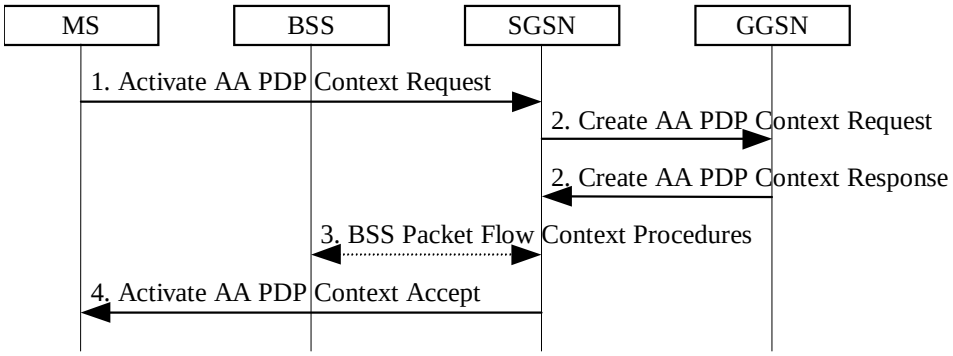


Figure 66: Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate AA PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use a Random TLLI at the RLC/MAC layer for identification purposes. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate that it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network that provides anonymous services. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS value given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN assigns an Auxiliary TLLI and creates an AA-TEID for the PDP-Context. The SGSN sends a Create AA PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, AA-TEID, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the GGSN indicated by Access Point Name in the Activate AA PDP Context Request message. Selection Mode indicates how the APN was selected. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the server(s) that provide services for anonymous MSs, and to start charging. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network that provides anonymous services. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then allocates a dynamic PDP Address and returns a Create AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The GGSN shall check the source and destination address in all subsequent anonymous MO PDP PDUs received from the SGSN. If the GGSN detects a not allowed address in an MO PDP PDU, then the PDP PDU shall be discarded and the MM and PDP contexts shall be deleted in the GGSN, SGSN, and MS, as defined in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create AA PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

4) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the PDP address received from the GGSN in its PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated and returns an Activate AA PDP Context Accept (A-TLLI, PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route anonymous PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS and to start charging.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the MM and PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the AA PDP Context Activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate AA PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same GGSN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id;
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure); and
- TFT (in case of MS-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

A trace may be activated while a PDP context is active. To enable trace activation in a GGSN, the SGSN shall send an Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN. If PDP context modification is performed only to activate a trace, then the SGSN shall not send a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 67. Each step is explained in the following list.

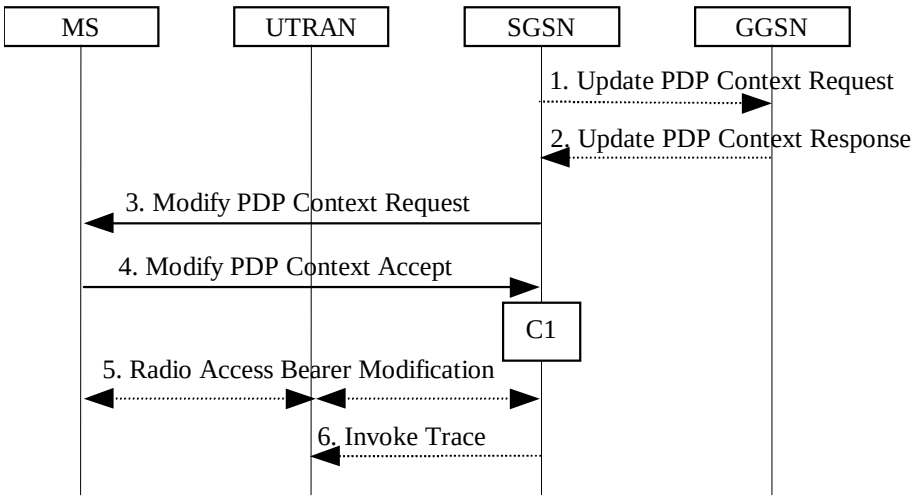


Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 68. Each step is explained in the following list.

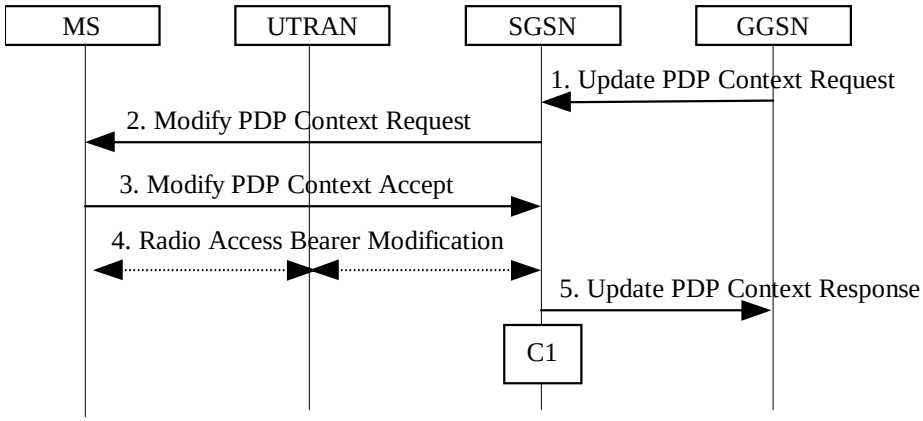


Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 69. Each step is explained in the following list.

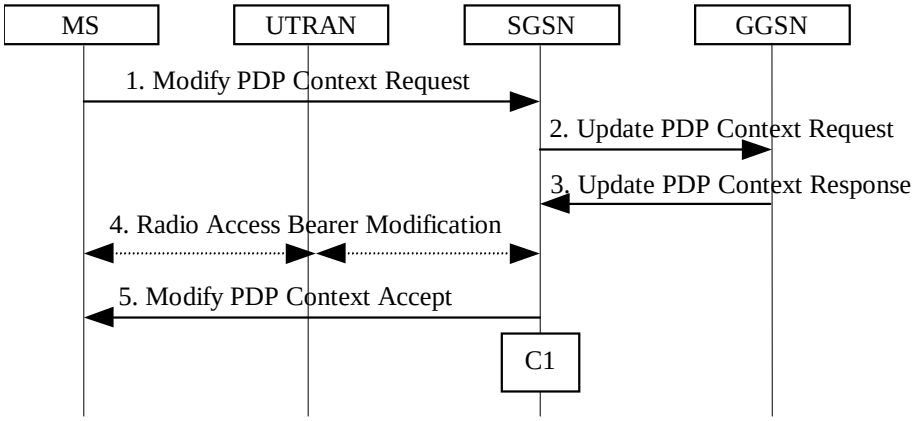


Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type or TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 70. Each step is explained in the following list.

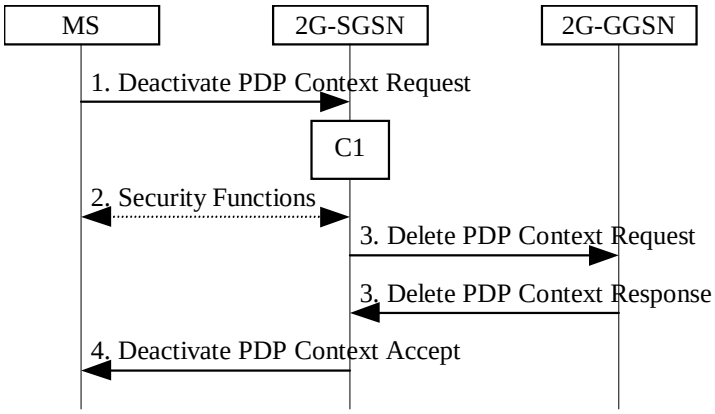


Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GPRS

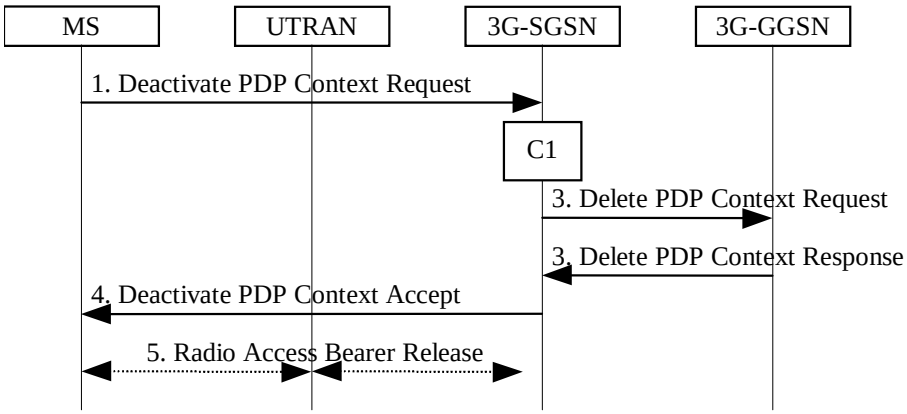


Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN.

2) For GPRS security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind was included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 72. Each step is explained in the following list.

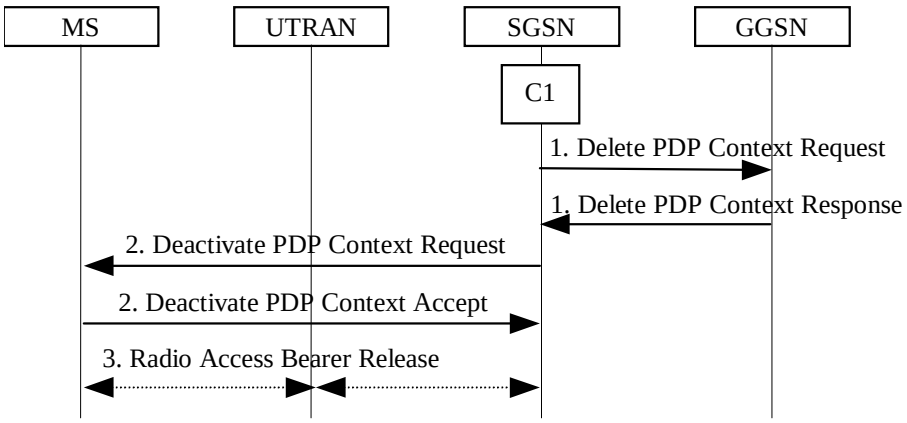


Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind is included, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 73. Each step is explained in the following list.

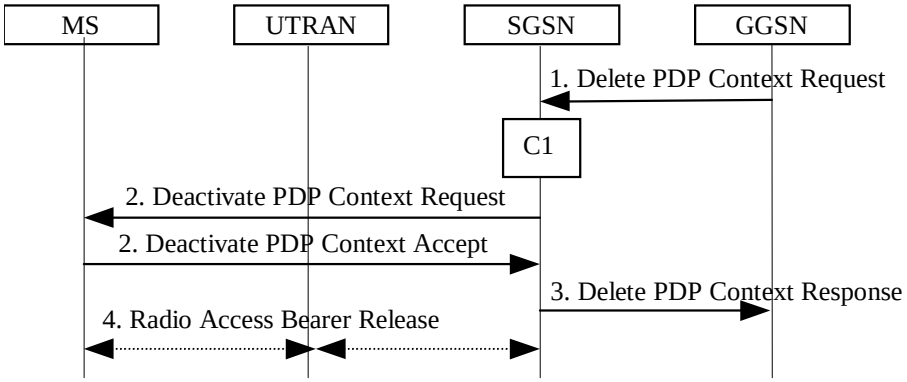


Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind was included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.4 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS shall not issue explicit deactivation request messages to delete anonymous contexts in the network. Instead, the READY timer shall be used as an implicit deactivation timer to save signalling traffic on the radio interface.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 74. Each step is explained in the following list.

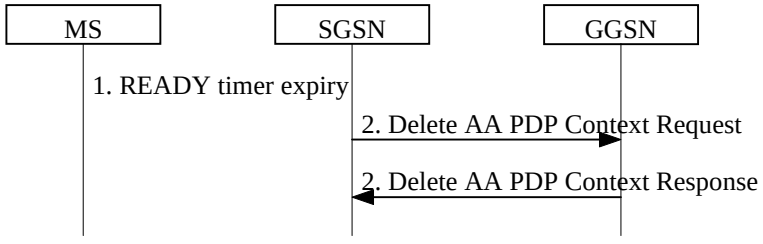


Figure 74: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The READY timer expires in the MS and SGSN.

2) The SGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TEID) message. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID) message to the SGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent anonymous activation by other MSs.

9.2.4.5 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

If the GGSN detects a misuse or fraud of the anonymous context as described in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure", step 2, it shall initiate the deactivation independently of the READY timer expiry.

If the anonymous server detects a misuse or fraud, it may request the GGSN to deactivate the AA context. The method that the anonymous server uses to inform the GGSN is outside the scope of the GSM specifications.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 75. Each step is explained in the following list.

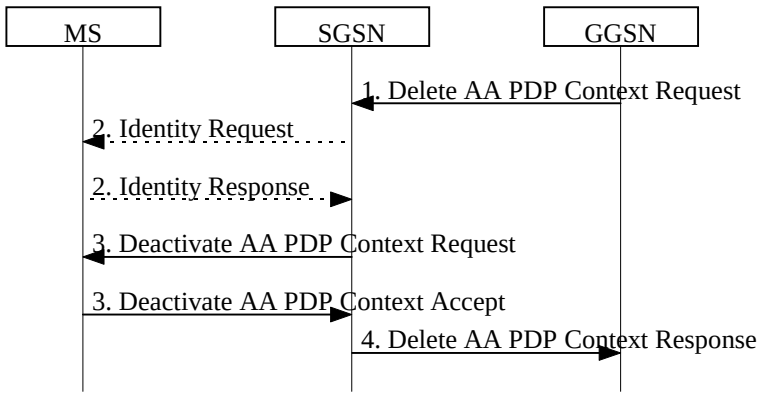


Figure 75: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TEID) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may send an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI or IMEI) message to the MS. The MS shall respond with an Identity Response (IMSI or IMEI) message.

3) The SGSN sends a Deactivate AA PDP Context Request (TI) message to the MS. The MS removes the PDP context and returns a Deactivate AA PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete AA PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the accept from the MS before sending the Delete AA PDP Context Response message.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;

- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and

- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. The maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets [FFS]. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

9.4 Relay Function

The relay function of a network node transfers the PDP PDUs received from the incoming link to the appropriate outgoing link. At the RNC, the SGSN, and the GGSN the relay function stores all valid PDP PDUs until they are forwarded to the next network node or until the maximum holding time of the PDP PDUs is reached. The PDP PDUs are discarded when buffering is longer than their maximum holding time. This maximum holding time is implementation dependent and can be influenced by the PDP type, the QoS of the PDP PDU, the resource load status, and by buffer conditions. The discarding protects resources from useless transfer attempts, especially the radio resource. Impacts on user protocol operation by too short holding time shall be avoided.

In GPRS, the SGSN and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from SNDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively. In UMTS, the RNC and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from PDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively.

PDP PDUs may be re-sequenced in the RNC, the SGSN, and/or in the GGSN depending on the setting of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile. In GPRS, the SGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to SNDCP. In UMTS, the SGSN relay function may optionally perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to Iu GTP-U and before passing the PDP PDUs to Gn GTP-U. The GGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to the Gi reference point. The RNC may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to PDCP.

9.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

The Packet Terminal Adaptation function adapts packets received from and transmitted to the Terminal Equipment to a form suitable for transmission within the PLMN.

A range of MT versions providing different standard interfaces towards the TE can be used, e.g.:

- MT with asynchronous serial interface and PAD (Packet Assembly / Disassembly) support ~~(e.g., AT command set PAD, X.28 [35] / X.29 [36] / X.3 [33] PAD)~~. In the case when the PAD function does not exist in the MT, it exists in the TE.
- "Embedded MT" integrated with the TE, possibly via an industry-standard application program interface.
- MT with synchronous serial interface.

9.6 Encapsulation Function

The packet domain transparently transports PDP PDUs between external networks and MSs. All PDP PDUs are encapsulated and decapsulated for routeing purposes. Encapsulation functionality exists at the MS, at the RNC, at the SGSN, and at the GGSN. Encapsulation allows PDP PDUs to be delivered to and associated with the correct PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, or the GGSN. Two different encapsulation schemes are used; one for the backbone network between two GSNs and between an SGSN and an RNC, and one for the GPRS connection between the SGSN and the MS or for the UMTS RRC connection between the RNC and the MS.

Encapsulation requires that the MS is attached to GPRS, and that the PDP Context Activation procedure has been executed. If the PS Attach or PDP Context Activation procedures cannot be successfully executed, then uplink PDP PDUs are discarded in the MS. If these procedures have not been executed when a downlink PDP PDU arrives in the GGSN, then the downlink PDP PDU shall be discarded, rejected, or the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated.

9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs

The packet domain PLMN backbone network encapsulates a PDP PDU with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header, and inserts this GTP PDU in a TCP PDU or UDP PDU that again is inserted in an IP PDU. The IP and GTP PDU headers contain the GSN addresses and tunnel endpoint identifier necessary to uniquely address a GSN PDP context.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC

On the Iu interface, a PDP PDUs is encapsulated with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS

Between a 2G-SGSN and an MS, an SGSN or MS PDP context is uniquely addressed with a temporary logical link identity and a network layer service access point identifier pair. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI. An NSAPI is assigned when the MS initiates the PDP Context Activation function. The relationship between TLLI / NSAPI and LLC / SNDCP is illustrated in Figure 76. TLLI and NSAPI are described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

9.6.3 Encapsulation Between RNC and MS

On the Uu interface, a PDP PDU is encapsulated with PDCP.

10 Message Screening Functionality

This screening mechanism may be performed by routers and firewalls, and performs the selection of which packets to allow and which to deny.

Only network-controlled message screening shall be supported. Network-controlled screening is used to protect the packet domain PLMN from known security problems, and the screening provided by a certain PLMN is applied independently of the MS user. Network-controlled screening is outside the scope of this specification.

11 Compatibility Issues

Non-GPRS MSs in GSM PLMNs that support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue operation.

GSM PLMNs that do not support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue interworking with GSM PLMNs that do support GPRS.

A GPRS ME shall be able to access GPRS services with GPRS-aware SIMs, and with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware. A GPRS-aware SIM is able to store information in the elementary files EF_{KcGPRS} and $EF_{LOCIGPRS}$,as defined in GSM 11.11 [28].

The compatibility of SIMs and USIMs with GPRS MEs or UMTS MEs is defined in 3G TS 22.102.

11.1 Interaction between Releases 97/98 and 99

NOTE: Unless specifically indicated, references to release 97 in this subclause refer to both release 97 and release 98.

11.1.1 Interactions between GTP v0 (R97) and GTP v1 (R99)

When a first GSN receives a GTP PDU from a second GSN using a version not supported, then the first GSN shall return a "version not supported" error message to the second GSN. The second GSN shall then fall back to the most-recent version supported by the first GSN. A GSN shall use its most-recent GTP version when initiating GTP PDU transmission to a new GSN.

When an SGSN that supports GTP v1 establishes a GTP tunnel to a GGSN that supports GTP v0, then the SGSN shall convert a release 99 QoS profile to a release 97 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the GGSN. If the MS supports the R99 QoS profile, then the SGSN shall convert the negotiated R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the MS.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v1 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v0, then the first SGSN shall convert the R99 QoS profile to an R97 QoS profile before sending the SGSN Context Response message. If several PDP contexts have been activated for the same APN and PDP address in the first SGSN (secondary PDP context activation), then all PDP contexts except the PDP context with the highest-quality QoS profile are deleted in the MS and in the first SGSN, and the first SGSN shall initiate deletion of these PDP contexts in the GGSN. 3G TS 23.107 specifies how to determine the highest-quality QoS profile. The second SGSN shall be responsible for updating the remaining PDP context in the GGSN, and the GGSN shall remove the TFT if present when it receives the GTP v0 Update PDP Context Request message.

NOTE: The conversion between an R99 QoS profile and an R97 QoS profile is defined in 3G TS 23.107.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v0 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v1, then the second SGSN shall convert the R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile, and use GTP v1 to send the Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN.

11.1.2 Interactions between MS R97 and CN R99

When an R97 MS activates a PDP context and both the SGSN and the GGSN support R99, then the QoS profile shall not be converted to R99.

11.1.3 Interactions between SM R97 and SM R99

The SM protocol shall be backward compatible.

11.1.4 Interactions between MAP R97 and MAP R99

The MAP protocol shall be backward compatible to allow interworking between HLRs and SGSNs that support different releases.

12 Transmission

12.1 Transmission Modes

For GPRS, the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC transmission modes define the QoS reliability classes (see subclause "Reliability Class").

For UMTS, the GTP-U and RLC protocols provide various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS.

The RLC protocol for GPRS and the RLC protocol for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the GTP-U layer are supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP) and acknowledged (TCP/IP). The GTP-U layer shall support both modes simultaneously. In UMTS, GTP-U is also used on the Iu interface for user data transport. Only the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported on the Iu interface.

[Check the Gn TCP support in UMTS.]

12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes for GPRS

Two modes of operation of the LLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The LLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

- In acknowledged mode, the receipt of LL-PDUs are confirmed. The LLC layer retransmits LL-PDUs if confirmation has not been received within a timeout period.
- In unacknowledged mode, there is no confirmation required for LL-PDUs.

Signalling and SMS shall be transferred in unacknowledged mode.

In unacknowledged mode, the LLC layer shall offer the following two options:

- transport of "protected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field result in the frame being discarded; and
- transport of "unprotected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field do not result in the frame being discarded.

The LLC layer shall support several different QoS delay classes with different transfer delay characteristics.

12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the RLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The RLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

The RLC for GPRS is described in GSM 04.60, and for UMTS in 3G TS 25.322.

12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality for GPRS

The Logical Link Control (LLC) protocol provides a reliable logical link between the MS and its SGSN. As shown in subclause "User and Control Planes", the LLC layer is situated below the SNDC layer.

12.2.1 Addressing

TLLI is used for addressing at the LLC layer. TLLI is described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

12.2.2 Services

LLC provides the services necessary to maintain a ciphered data link between an MS and an SGSN. The LLC layer does not support direct communication between two MSs.

The LLC connection is maintained as the MS moves between cells served by the same SGSN. When the MS moves to a cell being served by a different SGSN, the existing connection is released and a new logical connection is established with the new SGSN.

LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols. In order to allow LLC to operate with a variety of different radio interface protocols, and to ensure optimum performance, it may be necessary to adjust e.g., the maximum LLC PDU length and the LLC protocol timer values. Such adjustments can be made through negotiation between the MS and the SGSN. The maximum length of an LLC PDU shall not be greater than 1 600 octets minus the BSSGP protocol control information.

12.2.3 Functions

The Logical Link Control layer supports:

- service primitives allowing the transfer of SNDCP Protocol Data Units (SN-PDUs) between the Subnetwork Dependent Convergence layer and the Logical Link Control layer;
- procedures for transferring LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN, including:
  - procedures for unacknowledged delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
  - procedures for acknowledged, reliable delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN;
- procedures for detecting and recovering from lost or corrupted LL-PDUs;
- procedures for flow control of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
- procedures for ciphering of LL-PDUs. The procedures are applicable to both unacknowledged and acknowledged LL-PDU delivery.

The layer functions are organised in such a way that ciphering resides immediately above the RLC/MAC layer in the MS, and immediately above the BSSGP layer in the SGSN.

12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality for GPRS

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence (SNDC) protocol is situated below the network layer and above the Logical Link Control layer in the MS and the SGSN, as shown in subclause "User and Control Planes". A variety of network layers are supported, e.g., IP ~~and X.25~~. The network-layer packet data protocols share the same SNDCP, that then performs multiplexing of data coming from the different sources to be sent across LLC. This is illustrated in Figure 76.

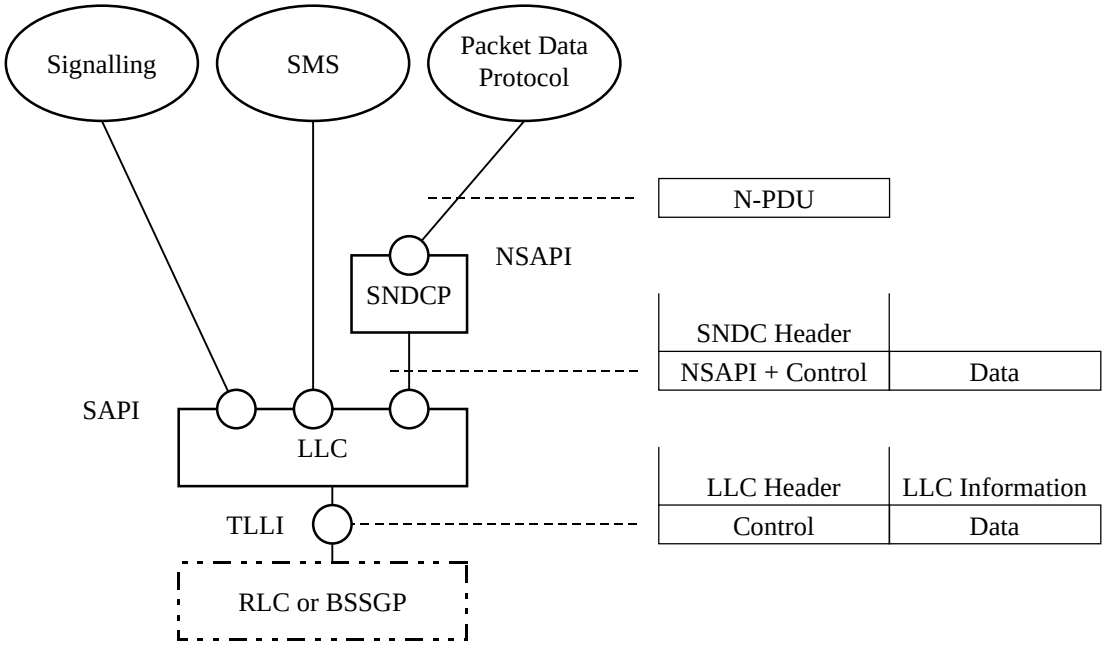


Figure 76: Multiplexing of Network Protocols

The following identities and control information is needed:

- NSAPI identifies the network layer. The SNDCP control part contains compression information.
- TLLI identifies the MS. The LLC control part contains the rest of the LLC protocol header including ciphering information.

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence function is defined in terms of offered services and sub-functions.

12.3.1 Services

The SNDC function provides the following services to the network layer:

- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs in acknowledged and unacknowledged LLC mode. In acknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall be confirmed at the LLC layer, and the data shall be transmitted and received in order per NSAPI. In unacknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall not be confirmed at the SNDCP layer nor at the LLC layer.
- Transmission and reception between the MS and SGSN of variable-length N-PDUs.
- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs between the SGSN and MS according to the negotiated QoS profile.
- Transfer of the minimum amount of data possible between the SGSN and MS through compression techniques.

The SNDC function requires the following services from the LLC layer:

- Acknowledged and unacknowledged data transfer.
- Ciphered transmission of SN-PDUs.
- In-order delivery of SN-PDUs per LLC SAPI.
- Support for variable-length SN-PDUs.

12.3.2 Subfunctions

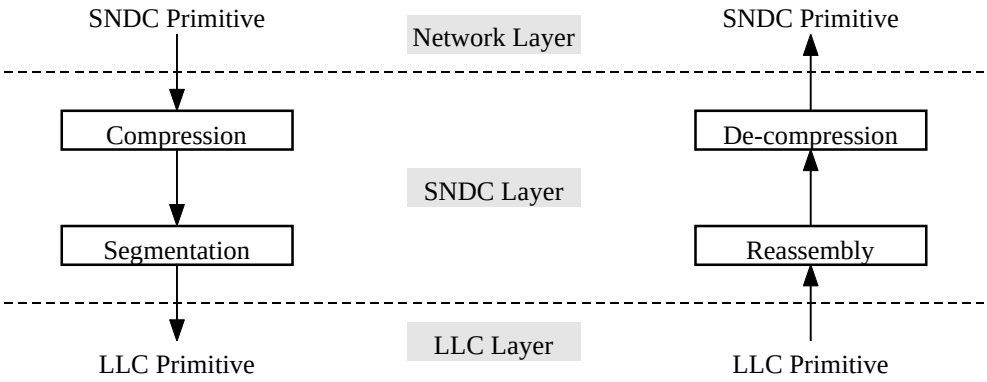


Figure 77: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority level, QoS delay class, and precedence class.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for each QoS delay class and precedence class. If several network layers use the same QoS delay class and precedence class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

12.4 PDCP for UMTS

The Packet Data Compatibility Protocol (PDCP) transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. PDCP can support several network layer protocols by providing protocol

transparency for the users of the service. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is located in the MS and the UTRAN and described in 3G TS 25.323.

12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP ~~type~~s IP ~~and X.25~~, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD) function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layers below SNDCP and GTP.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Figure 78 illustrates the OSP user plane for GPRS, and Figure 79 for UMTS.

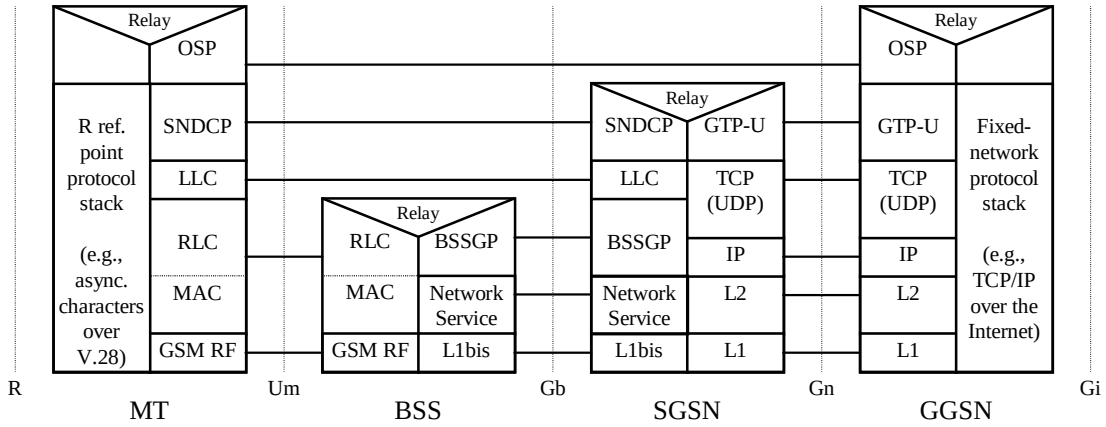


Figure 78: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

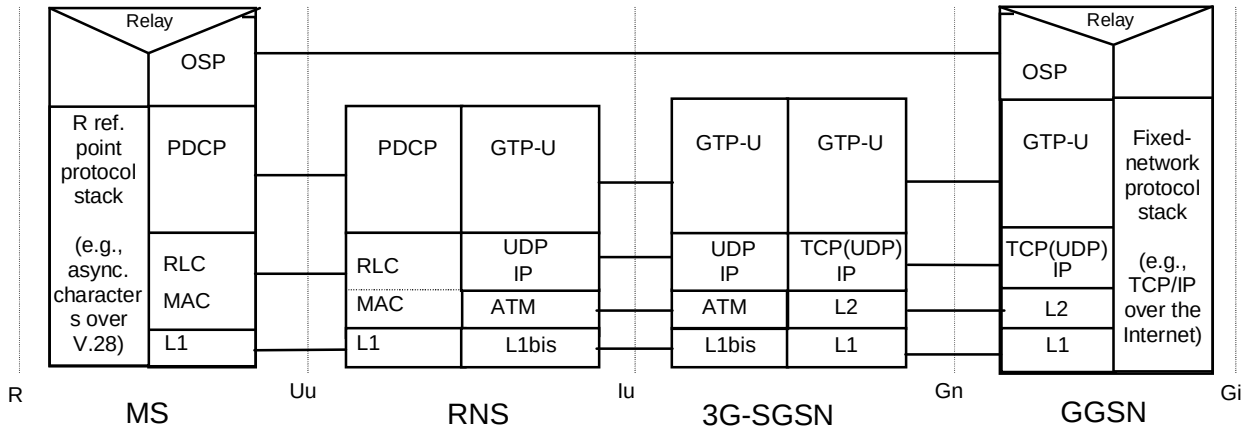


Figure 79: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.5.1 PAD Function

In order to make efficient use of the network resources, particularly the radio resource, octets received from the OSP user are not forwarded immediately but are placed in a buffer. When some forwarding criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer are forwarded in the payload of an N-PDU to the underlying layer. At the receiving end, the payload of an N-PDU received from the underlying layer is placed in a buffer and the octets are delivered to the OSP user as an octet stream.

The PAD is used only when OSP operates in octet mode. It is not used when OSP operates in block mode.

12.5.1.1 Packet Assembler

The packet assembler shall be able to detect the following forwarding criteria. When any one criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer shall be forwarded in an N-PDU to the underlying layer, subject to any flow control condition.

12.5.1.1.1 Buffer Full

The buffer contents are forwarded when the number of octets in the buffer reaches the value of the maximum buffer size parameter.

12.5.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry

The inactivity timer shall be started whenever an octet is placed in the buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. The inactivity timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry

A maximum buffer delay timer may be started when the first octet is placed in the (empty) buffer,. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. This optional timer ensures that no octet is delayed in the buffer for longer than the specified time. The maximum buffer delay timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.4 Special Character

Whenever an octet has been placed in the buffer, its least significant 7 bits shall be compared with a list of 7-bit special characters. If the bits match, the buffer shall be forwarded. The possible characters and combinations of characters shall be the same as specified for the X.3 [33] PAD access to X.25.

12.5.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State

The buffer may be forwarded when there is a need to signal a change in the ready to receive condition.

12.5.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request

When the OSP receives an immediate forward request from its user, it shall immediately forward the buffer unless it is empty.

12.5.1.2 Packet Disassembler

The packet disassembler shall forward the contents of the N-PDU payload to the OSP user, subject to any local flow control condition.

12.5.2 Quality of Service

The QoS provided by the OSP layer is determined by that provided by the underlying protocol layers. However, the PAD functions introduce an additional variable delay into the transmission path. This delay can be limited at the risk of making less efficient use of network resources, in particular the radio resources.

12.6 Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality

The PPP protocol is specified in RFC 1661 [44].

12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP

The user plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GPRS or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS, and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

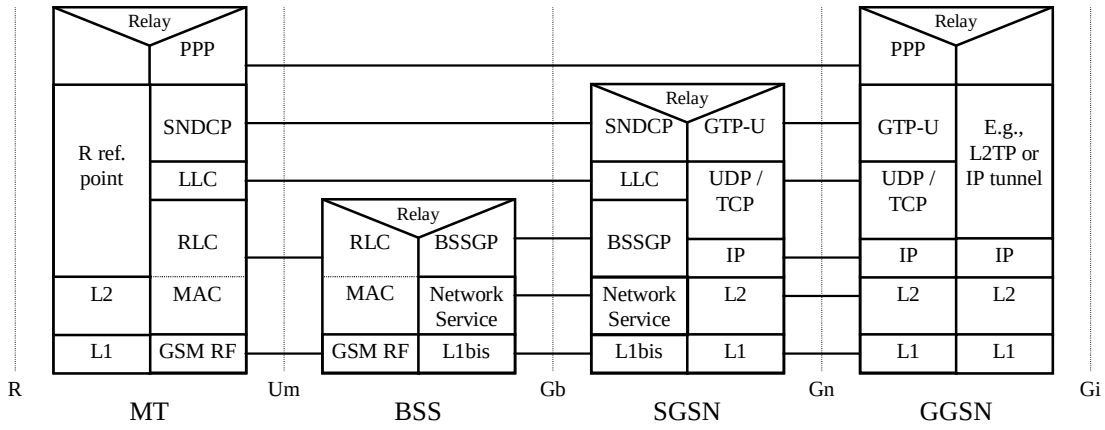


Figure 80: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

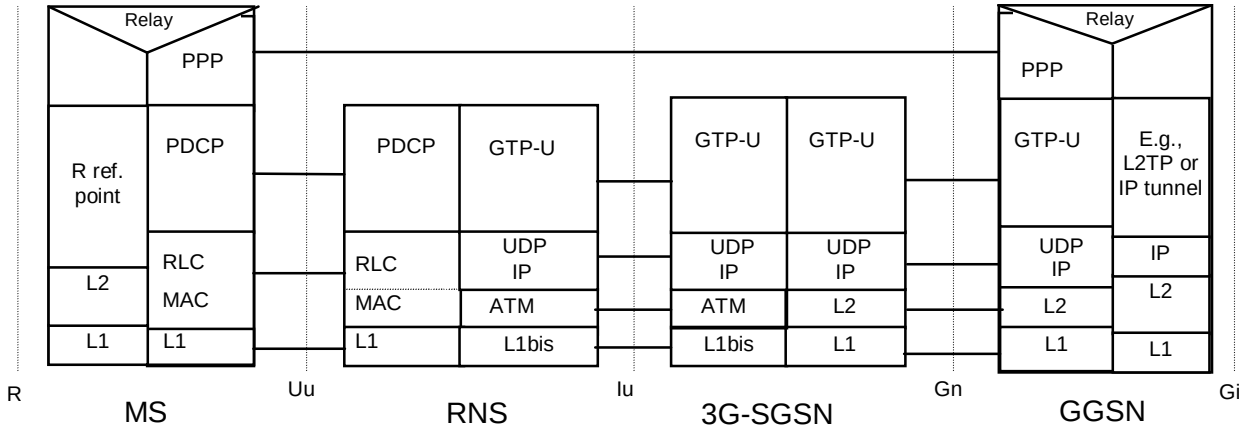


Figure 81: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

12.6.2 Functions

The PPP peers at the MS and GGSN handle the PPP protocol as specified in RFC 1661. PPP requires in-sequence packet delivery by the underlying protocols. Concerning GTP, this shall be achieved by negotiation of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile upon PDP context activation. For GPRS, concerning SNDCP, out-of-sequence packets, that may be present if LLC operates in unacknowledged mode, shall be discarded. SNDCP for GPRS, and PDCP for UMTS, shall not use TCP/IP header compression because PPP may not carry IP packets at all, or because PPP may carry IP packets with already compressed TCP/IP headers. These PPP options are negotiated during the RFC 1661 Network Control Protocol establishment phase.

12.7 Gb Interface for GPRS

The Gb interface connects the BSS and the SGSN, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The Gb interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter. This is in contrast to the A interface where a single user has the sole use of a dedicated physical resource throughout the lifetime of a call irrespective of activity.

GPRS signalling and user data are sent in the same user plane. No dedicated physical resources are required to be allocated for signalling purposes.

Access rates per user may vary without restriction from zero data to the maximum possible line rate (e.g., 1 984 kbit/s for the available bitrate of an E1 trunk).

12.7.1 Physical Layer Protocol

Several physical layer configurations and protocols are possible, as defined in GSM 08.14 [19].

The physical resources shall be allocated by O&M procedures.

12.7.2 Link Layer Protocols

The Gb interface link layer is based on Frame Relay, as defined in GSM 08.16. Frame Relay virtual circuits are established between SGSN and BSS. LLC PDUs from many users are multiplexed on these virtual circuits. The virtual circuits may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. Frame Relay shall be used for signalling and data transmission.

The following characteristics apply for the Frame Relay connection:

- The maximum Frame Relay information field size shall be 1 600 octets.
- The Frame Relay address length shall be 2 octets.

- The BSS and the SGSN shall both implement Frame Relay DTE functionality. The SGSN may optionally also implement DCE functionality.
- Frame Relay PVCs shall be used.
- The Frame Relay layer offers detection of but no recovery from transmission errors.
- One or more Frame Relay PVCs shall be used between one SGSN and one BSS to transport BSSGP PDUs.

12.7.3 BSS GPRS Protocol

The primary function of BSSGP is to provide the radio-related, QoS, and routeing information that is required to transmit user data between a BSS and an SGSN. In the BSS, it acts as an interface between LLC frames and RLC/MAC blocks. In the SGSN, it forms an interface between RLC/MAC-derived information and LLC frames. A secondary function is to enable two physically distinct nodes, the SGSN and BSS, to operate node management control functions.

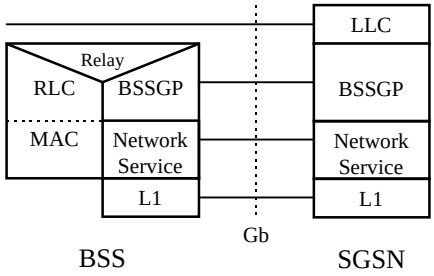


Figure 82: BSSGP Protocol Position

There is a one-to-one relationship between the BSSGP protocol in the SGSN and in the BSS. If one SGSN handles multiple BSSs, the SGSN has to have one BSSGP protocol machine for each BSS.

The main functions for the BSSGP protocol are to:

- provide a connection-less link between the SGSN and the BSS;
- transfer data unconfirmed between the SGSN and the BSS;
- provide tools for bi-directional control of the flow of data between the SGSN and the BSS;
- handle paging requests from the SGSN to the BSS;
- give support for flushing of old messages in the BSS e.g., when an MS changes BSS; and
- support multiple layer 2 links between the SGSN and one BSS.

BSSGP is defined in GSM 08.18.

12.7.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions

The functions of the BSSGP shall be defined in the context of the LLC function in order to avoid duplication of functions and information flows. The following functional model indicates each layer's functional responsibilities.

Table 4: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture

Network Node and Function	MS	BSS	SGSN
LLC: GSM 04.64	Same as for the SGSN.		Provides transfer of frames between the SGSN and MS.
BSSGP: GSM 08.18		MS←PLMN: Using BSSGP information, RLC/MAC operations are invoked. MS→PLMN: Using RLC/MAC-derived information, a BSSGP PDU is constructed. An identifier of the cell including RAC and LAC in which an LLC frame was received is inserted into the BSSGP PDU. Same as for SGSN.	Individual MS radio-related information is used by the BSS to transfer LLC frames across the Gb and Um. Provides flow control and unconfirmed data delivery services across the Gb interface (not the Um – this is the function of the LLC and RLC/MAC function). Provides SGSN-BSS node management functions.
Network Service: GSM 08.16		Same as for SGSN	Provides a multiplexing, variable-bandwidth, frame-based, link layer transport mechanism across the Gb interface, and load balancing.

12.7.3.2 BSSGP Addressing

For information transfer between the SGSN and the BSS the BSSGP is using a BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier (BVCI) for addressing. Additionally, QoS profile, and the MS identification, e.g., TLLI, may be used to create queues and contexts in both the SGSN and the BSS. The flow control mechanism is then based on these queues and contexts.

12.7.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN

A BVCI context in the BSS consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and of the available radio resource capacity.

The BVCI context in the BSS is allocated for each cell supporting GPRS. For each new GPRS cell introduced in the BSS area, a new BVCI context shall be allocated.

In the SGSN the BVCI context consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and the allowed throughput on BSSGP. The allowed throughput is updated by BSSGP flow control messages.

12.7.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface

The flow control mechanism controls the loading of the BSS LLC PDU queues per BVCI and per MS between the SGSN and the BSS in the downlink direction. No flow control is performed in the uplink direction. Buffers and link capacity shall be dimensioned to avoid loss of uplink data.

The downlink flow control mechanism is based on the following principles:

- In the SGSN, queues for LLC PDUs are provided per BVCI. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. The SGSN shall pass LLC PDUs to LLC via BSSGP to the BSS as long as the allowed BSSGP throughput is not exceeded. The allowed BSSGP throughput is given per BVCI and for a single MS on that BVCI. The SGSN schedules the BSSGP downlink traffic of all MSs of a BVCI according to both throughput parameters and to the QoS profile related to each LLC PDU. The scheduling algorithm is implementation dependent.

- In the BSS, queues per BVCI are provided at the BSSGP level. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. Depending on the queuing conditions and the available radio resource capacity in the cell the BSS indicates the allowed BSSGP throughput per BVCI and the default allowed BSSGP throughput for each

individual MS of that BVCI by BSSGP flow control messages to the SGSN. Additionally, the BSS may change the allowed BSSGP throughput for an individual MS by a BSSGP flow control message.

12.7.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Three packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by three reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, one is used for SMS, and one is used for signalling. The SGSN can assign the best-effort or SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context. In the SMS case, the BSS shall handle the packet flow for the PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 83. Each step is explained in the following list.

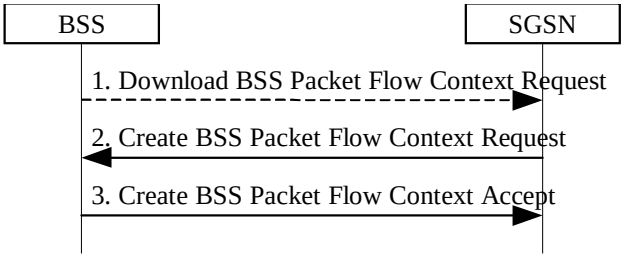


Figure 83: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS.

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.7.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context. The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure shall be used in this case, and the BSS shall instead of creating a BSS packet flow context overwrite the existing parameters with the modified parameters.

12.7.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 84. Each step is explained in the following list.

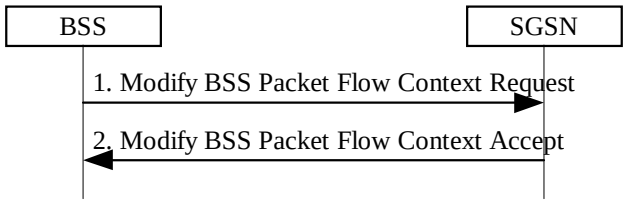


Figure 84: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.7.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in Figure 85. Each step is explained in the following list.

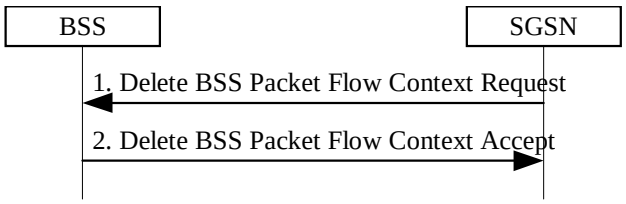


Figure 85: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.

2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

12.8 Iu Interface for UMTS

The Iu interface connects the UTRAN and the Core Network packet domain, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The user plane of Iu interface shall allow user data from many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter.

In UMTS only user data is transmitted on this shared physical medium. Signalling data is transferred via an SCCP connection. A reference configuration for Iu interface user plane is given in Figure 86.

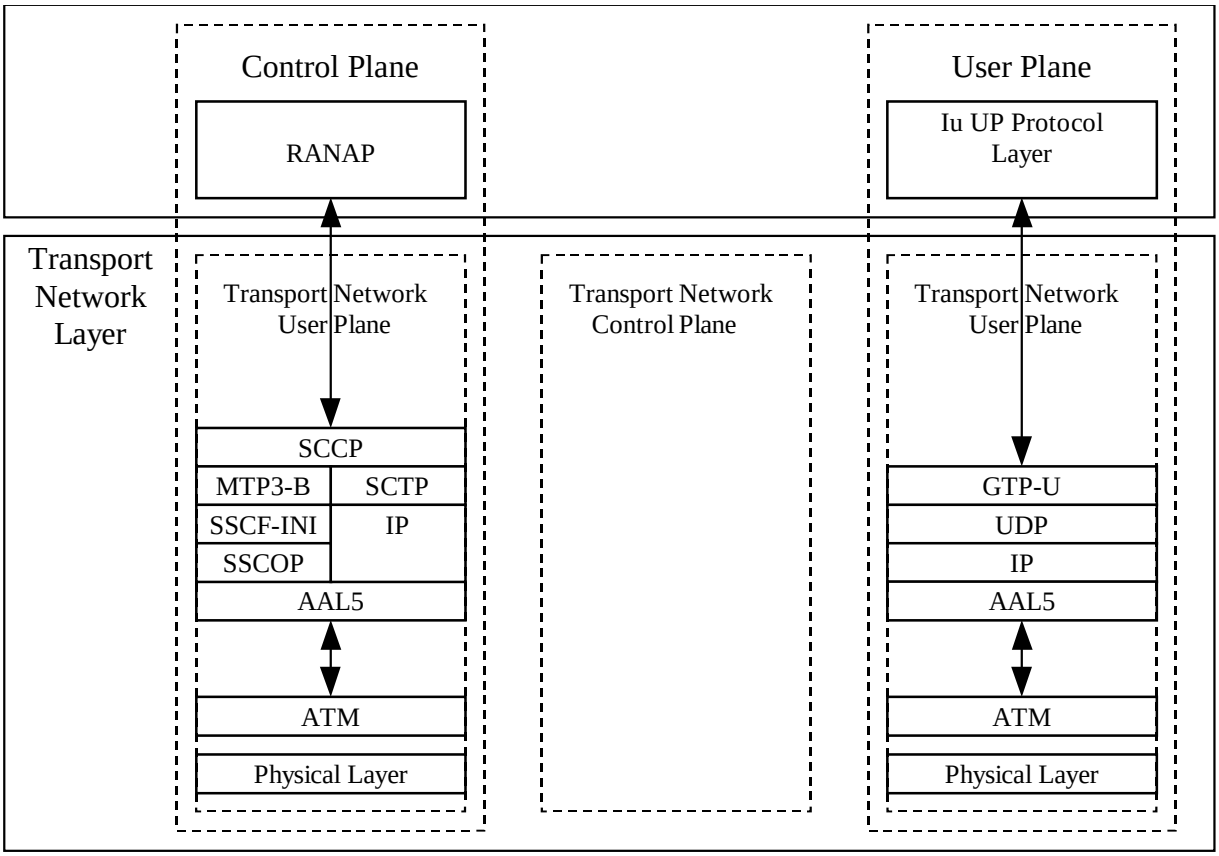


Figure 86: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic

12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols

The physical layer shall comply with one of a wide range of standards, according to 3G TS 25.411. Services provided to the upper layer shall be independent from the used underlying technology.

12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport

The GTP-U protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, as specified in RFC 768. Both the IPv4 (RFC 791) and IPv6 (RFC 2460) IP protocols shall be supported, IPv6 support is FFS.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core network domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the Iu interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in RFC 1483.

The Iu interface protocol stack is described in more detailed in 3G TS 25.414.

12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces

The GTP-U PDU sequence numbers allocated by the GGSN (downlink) and SRNS (uplink) are kept unchanged irrespective of the number of GTP tunnels the PDU is transferred over. Therefore, SGSN shall use on the Iu interface for downlink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the GGSN, and shall use on the Gn interface for uplink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the SRNS. In case of SRNS relocation and intersystem change, the SRNS and SGSN shall tunnel PDUs without changing the GTP-U sequence numbers.

12.8.2.2 Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport

The protocol stack for signalling transport is based on ATM/AAL5. Two AAL5 signalling transport services options are available to provide services for the SCCP layer.

The first option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses SSCOP for reliability reasons. SSCF provides the adaptation to upper layers. MTP3-B is the network layer protocol.

The second option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses IP as the network layer. SCTP performs the adaptation of the IP layer and provides services to the SCCP layer.

12.8.3 Iu Release Procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and changes the 3G-SGSN PMM state to PMM-IDLE. Both RNC-initiated and SGSN-initiated Iu release procedures are showed in the figure below.

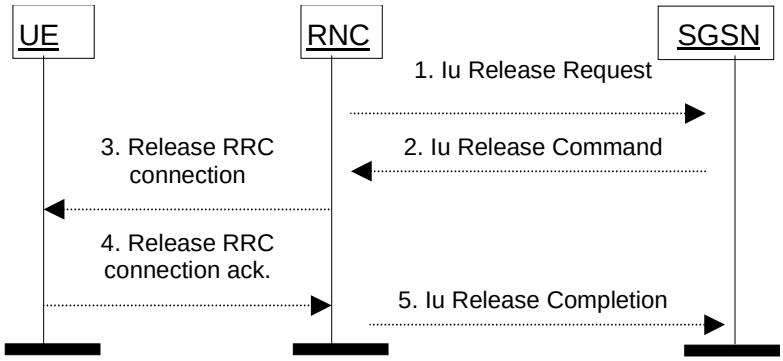


Figure 87: Iu Release Procedure

NOTE 1: Message 1 is only sent when the RNC-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

NOTE 2: Message 1 is not sent but message 2 is sent when the SGSN-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

1) The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources. It sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN. Cause indicates the reason for the release (O&M Intervention, Equipment Failure, Implicit Release, or Resource Optimisation). Implicit Release means that the periodic URA update timer expired. Resource Optimisation means that RNC decided to release an MS with only a non real-time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC-Connection-Release timer expired.

2) The SGSN releases the Iu by sending the Iu Release Command (Cause) message to the RNC. This message may be triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to send the Iu Release Command message after an Iu Release Request message with Cause set to Resource Optimisation is received from the RNC.

3) If the RRC connection is not already released (Cause = Resource Optimisation), then the RNC sends a Release RRC Connection message to the MS. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS]

4) The MS returns a Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message to the RNC.

5) The RNC confirms the Iu release by returning an Iu Release Completion message to the SGSN.

If the RNC does not receive the Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message and if Cause is different from Authentication Failure or Detach, then it should send a failure message to the SGSN, and the SGSN should stay in the MM-CONNECTED state.

12.8.4 Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the MS is currently located, or to report when the MS moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in the LCS stage-2 specification, see 3G TS 23.171.

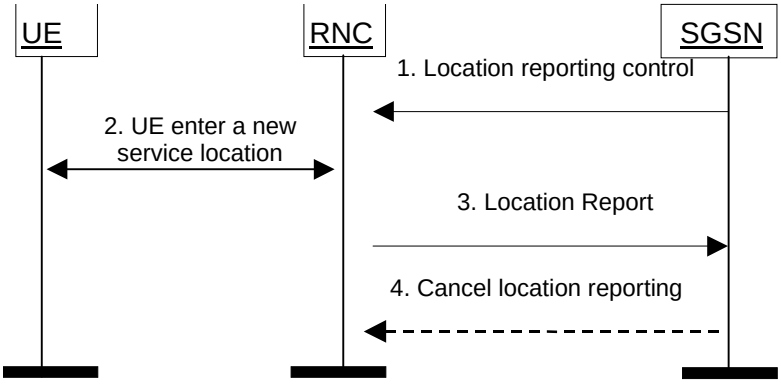


Figure 88: Location Reporting Procedure

1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area an MS in the MM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this MS. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the MS.

2) The SRNC detects that the MS moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the MS if this was requested by the SGSN.

3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the MS is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the MS is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the MS, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a MS entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).

4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given MS. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

12.9 Abis Interface for GPRS

When the GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GPRS Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the GPRS RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in Figure 89) or at the SGSN site (option C in Figure 89). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in Figure 89).

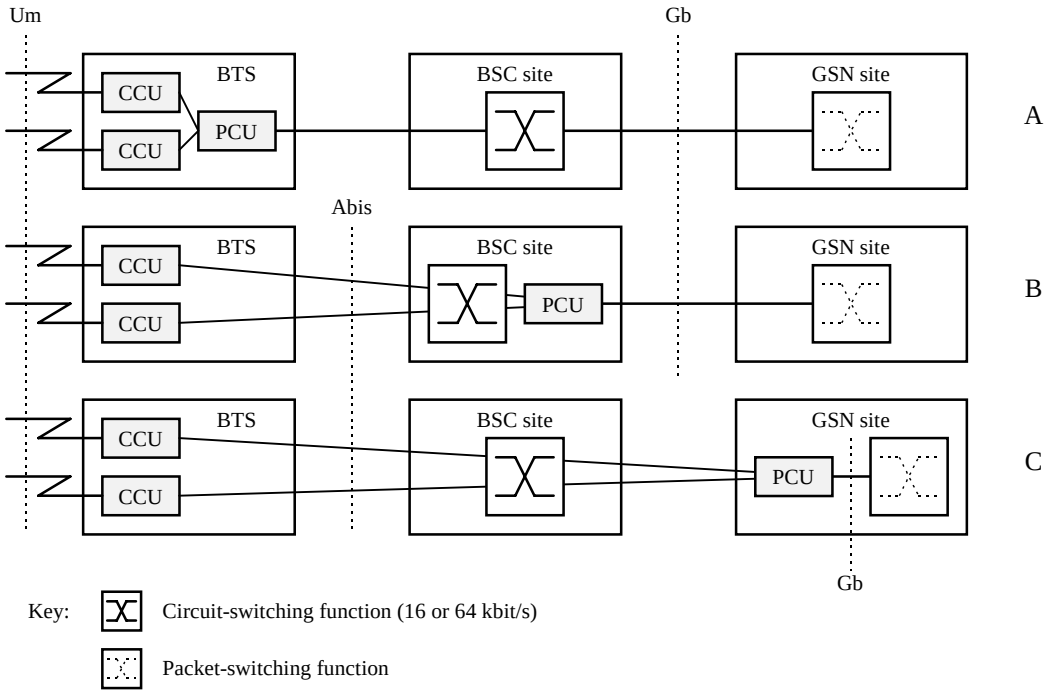


Figure 89: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in Figure 90.

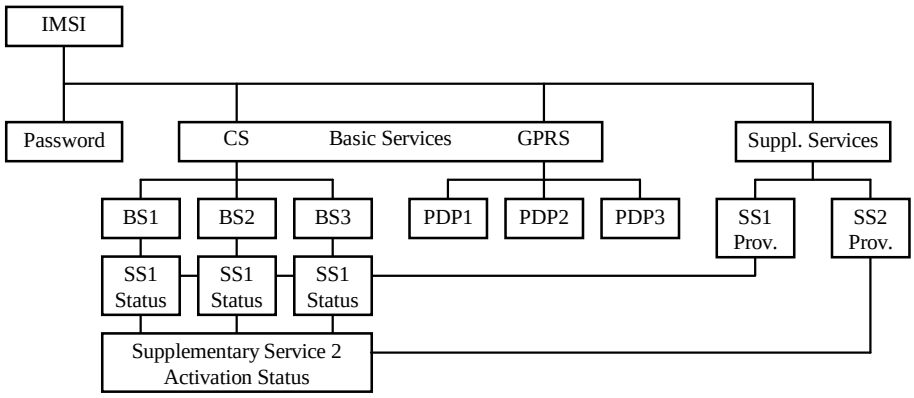


Figure 90: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As Figure 90 indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Table 5 shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 5: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
MS PS Purged for GPRS	Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN.	X	X
GGSN-list	The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling".	X	X
Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25,~~ PPP~~,~~ or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed.	X	X
Access Point Name	A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. Table 6 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 6: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25,~~ PPP~~,~~ or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain	X	X

	of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.		
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS.		X
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. Table 7 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 7: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25,~~ PPP~~,~~ or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
GTP-SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 8 shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 8: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25,~~ PPP~~,~~ or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address.	X	X
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.	X	X
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.	X	X
TFT	Traffic flow template.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.	X	X
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.	X	X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X

If a PDP context is enabled for network-requested PDP context activation, then IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, SGSN Address and MNRG contain valid information also when the PDP context is inactive and when the MS is GPRS-detached.

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 9 shows the PDP context fields for one MS.

Table 9: GGSN PDP Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25,~~ PPP~~,~~ or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address.
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN serving this MS.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

A GGSN that supports anonymous access shall have a list of server addresses that are allowed to be accessed by anonymous MSs. The method to maintain the list of the servers is outside the scope of the present document.

13.4 MS

Each packet domain MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. Table 10 shows the MS context fields.

Table 10: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	G, U	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	G, U	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	G, U	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
Routeing Area	G, U	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity		Current cell.	X	
Kc	G	Current GPRS ciphering key.	X	
CKSN / KSI	G, U	Key Set Identifier for IK Next, CK Next, and Kc.	X	X
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	X
CK		Currently used ciphering key.		X
CK Next	U	UMTS ciphering key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
IK		Currently used integrity key.		X
IK Next	U	Integrity key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
Classmark		MS classmark.	X	X
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:				
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25,~~ PPP~~,~~ or IP.	X	X
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address.	X	X
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.	X	X
APN Requested		The APN requested.	X	X
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI		Transaction Identifier.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
TFT		Traffic flow template.	X	X
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id		Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND		The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the RNC.		X
RLC-SNU		The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the RNC.		X

The information marked with a "U" in Table 10 shall be stored in the USIM.

The information marked with a "G" in Table 10:

- shall be stored in the GSIM if the connected SIM is PS-aware; and
- may be stored in the ME after PS detach if the connected GSIM is not PS-aware.

If the GSIM is packet domain service-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the GSIM shall be used for packet domain services.

If the GSIM is not packet domain service-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the GSIM is identical to the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the GSIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a PS attach. IMSI,

P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the PS attach has been successfully performed.

When using a USIM, the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, CK Next, IK Next, and CKSN / KSI stored in the USIM, and the CK and IK stored in the ME, shall be used for packet domain services.

For anonymous access (GPRS only) each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in READY state. The information may be contained in the ME and the TE. Table 11 shows the MS context fields.

Table 11: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., ~~X.25, PPP,~~ or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an IP~~X.121~~ address.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
APN Requested	The APN requested.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.

13.5 MSC/VLR

The MSC/VLR may store the SGSN number of PS-attached MSs that are also CS-attached. Table 12 shows the MSC/VLR association for one MS.

Table 12: MSC/VLR Association

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SGSN number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Table 13 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 13: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. Table 14 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 14: BSS Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. Table 15 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 15: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence number to be sent to the MS
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence Number expected from the MS

13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.8.1 HLR Failure

When an HLR restarts, it sends to each SGSN where one or more of its MSs are registered a Reset message. This causes the SGSN to mark the relevant MM contexts as invalid, and to set NGAF if an SGSN – MSC/VLR association exists. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from a marked MS, the SGSN performs an update location to the HLR as in the attach or inter SGSN RA update procedures, and, if NGAF is set, the procedure in subclause "Non-GPRS Alert" is followed. The update location procedure and the procedure towards the MSC/VLR may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator configuration-depending time period to avoid high signalling load. The periodic back-up of HLR data to non-volatile storage is mandatory as described in UMTS 33.007 [5].

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid. If there is no MM context for the MS, the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routeing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined PS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

13.8.4 VLR Failure

When a VLR fails, all its associations with SGSNs affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. Based on configuration data, the MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Reset message to each of its associated SGSNs. The SGSNs mark all associations containing the restarted VLR as invalid. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached, the SGSN shall return a Detach Request (Detach Type) message in order to request the MS to perform a combined RA / LA update. Detach Type shall be set to CS Detach. The detach procedure may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator-configuration depending time period to avoid high signalling load.

13.8.5 BSS Failure for GPRS

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

13.8.6 RNC Failure for UMTS

When an RNC fails, all its RNC contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. RNC storage of data is volatile.

14 Identities

14.1 IMSI

A unique International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) shall be allocated to each packet-domain subscriber. This is also the case for PS-only subscribers, except for anonymous-only access subscribers. IMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003 [4].

14.2 Packet TMSI

A Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity shall be allocated to each PS-attached MS. P-TMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.3 NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) and Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) are used for network layer routeing. An NSAPI / TLLI pair is unambiguous within a routeing area.

In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context associated with a PDP address. Between the MS and SGSN, TLLI unambiguously identifies the logical link.

When the MS requests the activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs.

For example (shown figuratively below), an IP~~X.25~~ packet is received by the MS from a connected TE at the IP~~X.121~~ address A SAP. The IP~~X.25~~ PDU is encapsulated and NSAPI is initialised to NSAPI-1. TLLI is set to the MS's TLLI before the encapsulated IP~~X.25~~ packet is passed to the SNDC function. After the IP PDU is received, the SGSN analyses TLLI and NSAPI-1 and determines that the IP PDU shall be sent to the GGSN associated with IP address A.

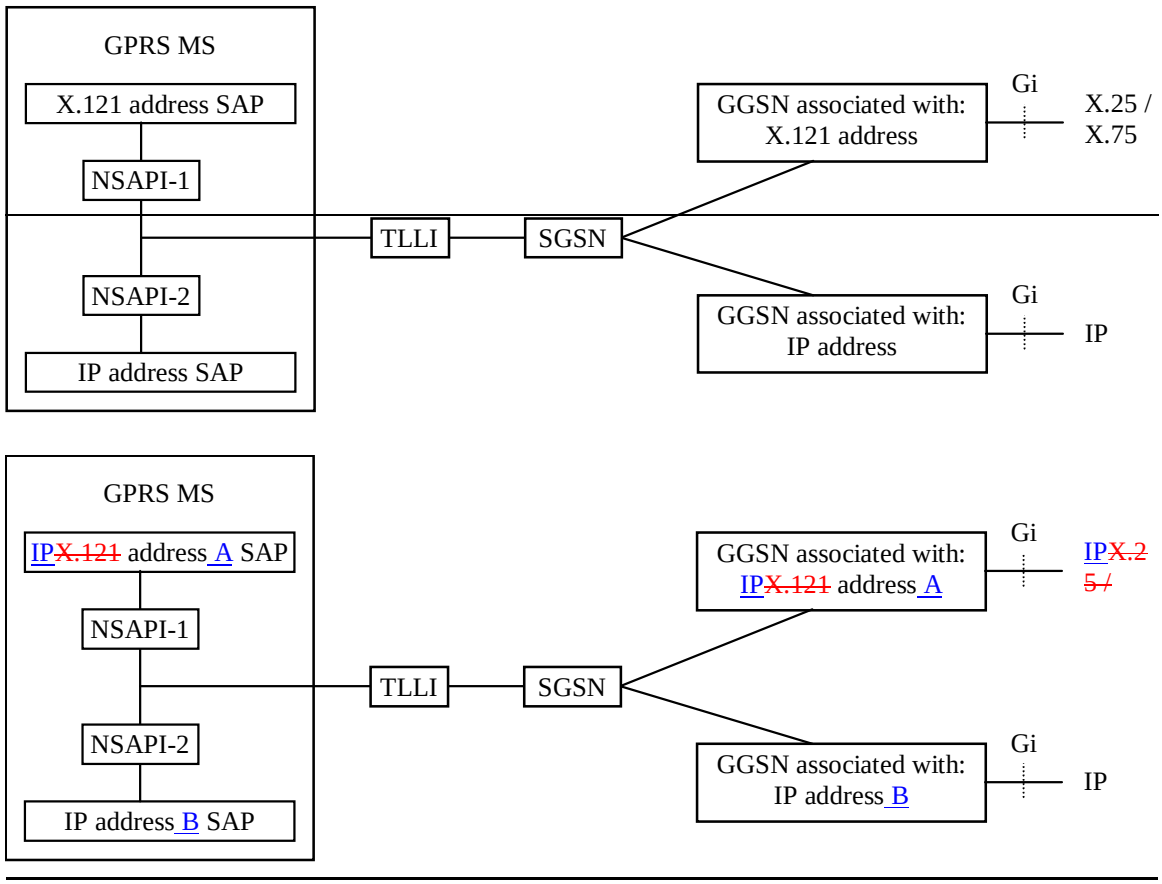


Figure 91: Use of NSAPI and TLLI

Within a routeing area, there is a one-to-one correspondence between TLLI and IMSI that is only known in the MS and SGSN. If it is not clear from the context which routeing area a TLLI belongs to, then TLLI is used together with RAI. TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI, and does then provide user identity confidentiality as described in subclause "User Identity Confidentiality".

The TLLI address range is divided into four ranges: Local, Foreign, Random, and Auxiliary. The TLLI structure allows the MS and SGSN to deduce the range that a TLLI belongs to. A Local TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN, and is valid only in the RA associated with the P-TMSI. A Foreign TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI allocated in another RA. A Random TLLI is selected randomly by the MS, and is used when the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available, or when the MS originates an anonymous access. An Auxiliary TLLI is selected by the SGSN and is used by the SGSN and MS to unambiguously identify an Anonymous Access MM and PDP Context.

If the MS has a valid P-TMSI associated with the RA where the MS is currently located, then the MS shall use a Local TLLI derived from its P-TMSI, unless the MS performs a GPRS attach.

If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI associated with the current RA, or if the MS performs a GPRS attach, then it shall derive a Foreign TLLI from its P-TMSI, or allocate a Random TLLI if no valid P-TMSI is available.

When a TLLI is exchanged between the MS and an SGSN, then the TLLI is transmitted at the RLC/MAC layer within the Um protocol stack, and at the BSSGP layer within the Gb protocol stack. NSAPI is transmitted within the SNDCP layer in the user plane, and within the GMM/SM layer in the control plane. NSAPI is represented by a transaction identifier (TI) in some SM signalling messages. The TI is dynamically allocated by the MS for MS-requested (AA) PDP context activation, and by the network for network-requested PDP context activation. The TI is deallocated when a PDP context has been deactivated. TI usage is defined in 3G TS 24.007 and 3G TS 24.008.

By default, unless explicitly specified in the procedures, the TLLI transmitted at the RLC/MAC and BSSGP layers shall be used to identify the MS.

14.4 NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) is used for network layer routeing. In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context, and in the RNC, NSAPI identifies the RNC RAB context. Radio Bearer Identity (RB Identity) is used to identify the Uu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer. Radio Access Bearer Identifier (RAB ID) is used to identify the Iu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer.

In the packet domain, a network allocates one radio access bearer for one PDP context. In addition, one Uu interface logical radio bearer is allocated for one radio access bearer.

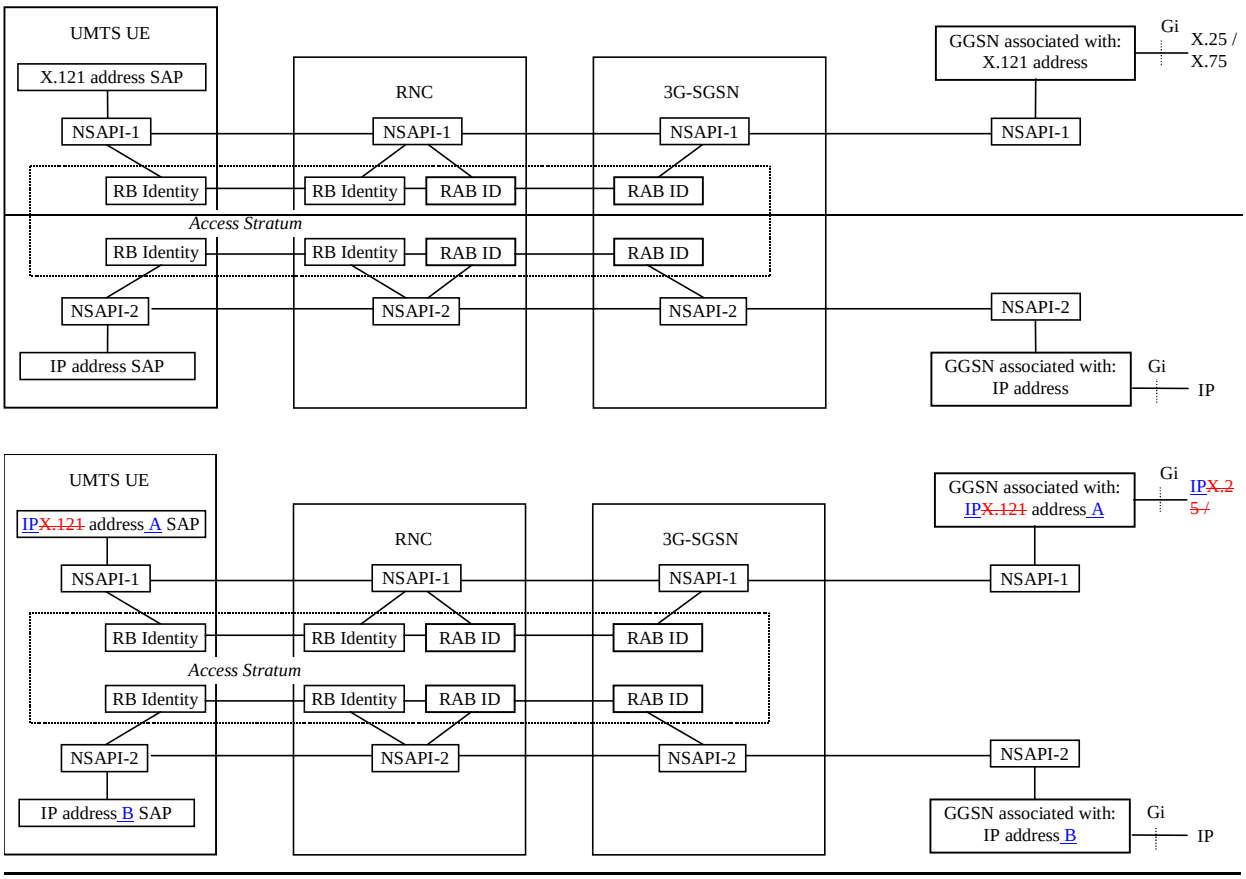


Figure 92: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID

When the MS initiates activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs. When the SGSN initiates a RAB assignment procedure, the SGSN shall allocate RAB ID(s) in which NSAPI(s) are used as those values in order to recognise them in the RNC.

14.5 PDP Address

A packet-domain subscriber identified by an IMSI, shall have one or more network layer addresses, i.e., PDP addresses, temporarily and/or permanently associated with it that conforms to the standard addressing scheme of the respective network layer service used, e.g.:

- an IP version 4 address; or
- an IP version 6 address.; ~~or~~
- ~~an X.121 address.~~

PDP addresses are activated and deactivated through MM procedures described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

14.6 TEID

A Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID) is used by the GPRS tunnelling protocol between GSNs, and between RNCs and SGSNs, to identify a tunnel endpoint in the receiving GTP-C or GTP-U protocol entity and to identify a PDP context. The receiving end side of a GTP tunnel locally assigns the TEID value that the transmitting side has to use. The TEID values are exchanged between tunnel endpoints using GTP-C (or RANAP in the Iu case) messages.

The TEID is forwarded to the GGSN upon PDP Context Activation and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the GGSN and the SGSN to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and GGSN. The TEID is also used to forward N-PDUs from the old SGSN to the new SGSN at and after an inter SGSN routeing area update. In UMTS, the TEID is also forwarded to the RNC upon RAB assignment and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between

the 3G-SGSN and the RNC in order to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and the MS's RNC RAB contexts in the RNC. It is also used to forward N-PDUs from the SRNC to the target RNC at SRNS relocation.

In the anonymous access case, AA-TEID is allocated locally by the SGSN. An AA-TEID consists of an A-TLLI and an NSAPI similar to TEID. Since the IMSI is longer than A-TLLI, the unused digits shall be used to create a unique identity within one PLMN. The allocated AA-TEID shall not collide with the TEID address space.

14.7 Routeing Area Identity

Routeing Area Identity (RAI), defined by an operator, identifies one or several cells. In GPRS, RAI is broadcast as system information. In UMTS, RAI is broadcast to MSs in RRC Idle mode, and is notified to MSs in RRC Connected mode on established RRC connections as MM system information.

The location of an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state is known in the SGSN on an RA level. Cells that do not support packet-domain services within an LA are grouped into a null RA. The MS is paged for packet services in the RA where the MS is located when mobile-terminated traffic arrives in the SGSN. The MS is paged for circuit-switched services by the SGSN in the last known RA plus in the null RA.

NOTE: Cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC without a Gb interface should not be included in the same location area as cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC with a Gb interface.

A Routeing Area is a subset of one, and only one, Location Area (LA), meaning that an RA cannot span more than one LA. An RA is served by only one SGSN.

The following rules apply for the Routeing Area Identity:

- RAC is only unique when presented together with LAI.
- CI is only unique when presented together with LAI or RAI (GPRS only).
- LAI = MCC + MNC + LAC
- RAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + RAC
- CGI = LAI + CI (GPRS only)

14.8 UTRAN Registration Area Identity

The UTRAN Registration Area Identity (URA Id) identifies a UTRAN Registration Area (URA) and is defined in 3G TS 25.331. URA Id can be used to indicate to the MS which URA it shall use in case of overlapping URAs.

14.9 Cell Identity

In GPRS, Cell Identity (CI) identifies one cell. In UMTS, Cell Identifer (C-Id) uniquely identifies a cell within an RNS. CI and C-Id are defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.10 Service Area Identity

The Service Area Identity (SAI) is used to uniquely identify an area consisting of one or more cells belonging to the same location area. Such an area is called a Service Area and can be used for indicating the location of an MS to the CN.

The Service Area Code (SAC) together with the PLMN identity and the LAC constitutes the Service Area Identity:

- SAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + SAC

14.11 GSN Addresses

14.11.1 GSN Address

Each SGSN and GGSN shall have an IP address, either of type IPv4 or IPv6, for inter-communication over the backbone network. The IP addresses of GSNs and other backbone nodes of all PLMNs build a private address space that is not accessible from the public Internet. For the GGSN and the SGSN, this IP address may also correspond to one or more DNS-type logical GSN names.

14.11.2 GSN Number

Each SGSN shall have an SGSN number for communication with e.g., HLR and EIR.

Each GGSN that supports the optional SS7-based Gc interface shall have a GGSN number for communication with HLRs.

14.12 RNC Addresses

14.12.1 RNC Address

Each RNC shall have one or more IP addresses, either of type IPv4 or IPv6, for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.12.2 RNC Number

Each RNC shall have an RNC number for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.13 Access Point Name

In the backbone, Access Point Name is a reference to the GGSN to be used. In addition, Access Point Name may, in the GGSN, identify the external network and optionally a service to be offered. Access Point Name is composed of two parts as defined in 3G TS 23.003:

- The APN Network Identifier is mandatory and is a label (for example "corporation" or "service") or a set of labels separated by dots which is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions (for example "company.com" or "service.company.com"). In order to guarantee the uniqueness of the APN, the packet-domain PLMN should allocate, to an ISP or corporation, an APN Network Identifier identical to their domain name in the public Internet. The APN Network Identifier shall not end with ".gprs". An APN Network Identifier that consists of 3 or more labels and that starts with a Reserved Service Label, or an APN Network Identifier that consists of a Reserved Service Label alone, shall indicate that for this APN the GGSN supports additional services such as external PDN address allocation or Mobile IP support. Reserved Service Labels, e.g., "dhcp" or "MIPv4FA", and the corresponding services that they stand for, e.g., external PDN address allocation via DHCP, or Mobile IP Foreign Agent support, are to be agreed among operators.

- The APN Operator Identifier is optional. It is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions, and consists of three labels. The APN Operator Identifier shall end in ".gprs". For example, it may be "MNCyyyy.MCCzzzz.gprs". The exact format is defined in 3G TS 29.060.

The APN stored in the HLR shall not contain the APN Operator Identifier. A wild card may be stored in the HLR instead of the APN. This wild card indicates that the user may select an APN that is not stored in the HLR. The use of the wild card is described in annex A.

15 Operational Aspects

15.1 Charging

Charging information for the packet domain is collected for each MS by SGSNs and GGSNs that are serving the MS. The operator can control whether charging shall be collected in the SGSN and the GGSN on an individual MS basis by appropriately setting the Subscribed Charging Characteristics in the HLR.

The information that the operator uses to generate a bill to a subscriber is operator-specific. Billing aspects, e.g., a regular fee for a fixed period, are outside the scope of the present document.

Every packet domain operator collects and processes their own charging information.

The SGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the radio network usage while the GGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the external data network usage. Both GSNs also collect charging information on usage of the network resources.

15.1.1 Charging Information

Charging information is collected for the PS subscriber.

As a minimum, the SGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs that are subject to charging:

- usage of the radio interface: the charging information shall describe the amount of data transmitted in MO and MT directions categorised with QoS and user protocols;
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the packet data protocol addresses;
- usage of the general packet domain resources: the charging information shall describe the usage of other packet domain-related resources and the MS's network activity (e.g., mobility management); and
- location of MS: HPLMN, VPLMN, plus optional higher-accuracy location information.

As a minimum, the GGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs that are subject to charging:

- destination and source: the charging information shall describe the destination and source addresses with a level of accuracy as defined by the packet domain operator;
- usage of the external data networks: the charging information shall describe the amount of data sent and received to and from the external data network; and
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the PDP addresses.

15.1.2 Reverse Charging

It shall be possible to provide reverse charging as a subscription option. However, reverse charging may not be applicable to certain external data network protocols.

15.1.3 Fair Charging for UMTS

FFS.

15.2 Quality of Service Profile

A QoS profile is associated with each PDP context. The QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes. The definition of the QoS attributes for the packet domain can be found in 3G TS 23.107, which also defines the mapping between the packet-domain QoS attributes and the QoS attributes for GPRS releases 97 and 98.

There are many possible QoS profiles defined by the combinations of the attributes. A PLMN may support only a limited subset of the possible QoS profiles.

During the QoS profile negotiation defined in subclause "Activation Procedures", it shall be possible for the MS to request a value for each of the QoS attributes, including the HLR-stored subscribed default values. The network shall negotiate each attribute to a level that is in accordance with the available GPRS resources. The network shall always attempt to provide adequate resources to support the negotiated QoS profiles.

15.2.1 Radio Priority Levels for GPRS

The RLC/MAC layer supports four radio priority levels and an additional level for signalling messages as defined in GSM 03.64 and GSM 04.60. Upon uplink access the MS can indicate one of the four priority levels, and whether the cause for the uplink access is user data or signalling message transmission. This information is used by the BSS to determine the radio access precedence (i.e., access priority) and the service precedence (i.e., transfer priority under congested situation), see GSM 04.60. The radio priority levels to be used for transmission of MO SMS shall be determined by the SGSN and delivered to the MS in the Attach Accept message. The radio priority level to be used for user data transmission shall be determined by the SGSN based on the negotiated QoS profile and shall be delivered to the MS during the PDP Context Activation and PDP Context Modification procedures.

15.3 Traffic Flow Template

A TFT consists of from one and up to eight packet filters, each identified by a unique packet filter identifier. A packet filter also has an evaluation precedence index that is unique within all TFTs associated with the PDP contexts that share the same PDP address. This evaluation precedence index is in the range of 255 (lowest evaluation precedence) down to 0 (highest evaluation precedence). The MS manages packet filter identifiers and their evaluation precedence indexes, and creates the packet filter contents.

A TFT is always associated with a PDP context during the Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure. A TFT may be added to a PDP context that was created with the PDP Context Activation Procedure by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure. By means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure any TFT can be modified. A PDP context can never have more than one TFT associated with it.

15.3.1 Rules for Operations on TFTs

The MS shall use the TFT and packet filter identifiers in each operation for handling of the TFTs and packet filters.

When the MS creates a new TFT, or modifies an existing TFT, it has to include at least one valid packet filter. If no valid packet filter is included in the newly created or modified TFT, then the procedure used for the creation or modification of the TFT shall fail, and an error code shall be returned to the MS.

During the modification of a TFT, one or more existing packet filters can be modified or deleted, or a new packet filter can be created. In order to modify an existing packet filter, the new values for the packet filter attributes along with the packet filter identifier is sent from the MS to the GGSN. The MS may also modify the evaluation precedence index only of one or several packet filters by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure.

A TFT is deleted when the associated PDP context is deactivated. A TFT can also be deleted by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure. At any time there may exist only one PDP context with no associated TFT amongst all the PDP contexts associated with one PDP address. An attempt by the MS to delete a TFT, which would violate this rule, shall be rejected by the GGSN.

15.3.2 Packet Filter Attributes

Each valid packet filter contains a unique identifier within a given TFT, an evaluation precedence index that is unique within all TFTs for one PDP address, and at least one of the following attributes:

- Source Address and Subnet Mask.
- Protocol Number (IPv4) / Next Header (IPv6).
- Destination Port Range.
- Source Port Range.

- IPSec Security Parameter Index (SPI).
- Type of Service (TOS) (IPv4) / Traffic class (IPv6) and Mask.
- Flow Label (IPv6).

Some of the above-listed attributes may coexist in a packet filter while others mutually exclude each other. In Table 16 below, the possible combinations are shown. Only those attributes marked with an "X" may be specified for a single packet filter. All marked attributes may be specified, but at least one shall be specified.

If the parameters of the header of a received PDP PDU match all specified attribute values in a packet filter, then a match is considered to be found for this packet filter. In this case the evaluation procedure is aborted. Other packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index are evaluated until such a match is found.

There may be potential conflicts if attribute values are combined in such a way that the defined filter can never achieve a match to a valid IP packet header. However, the determination of such conflicts are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

Table 16: Valid Packet Filter Attribute Combinations

	Valid combination types		
Packet filter attribute	**I**	**II**	**III**
Source Address and Subnet Mask	X	X	X
Protocol Number (IPv4) / Next Header (IPv6)	X	X	
Destination Port Range	X		
Source Port Range	X		
IPSec SPI		X	
TOS (IPv4) / Traffic Class (IPv6) and Mask	X	X	X
Flow Label (IPv6)			X

15.3.2.1 Source Address and Subnet Mask

The Source Address and Subnet Mask attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain an IPv4 or IPv6 address along with a subnet mask.

As an example, the source address and subnet mask attribute to classify packets coming from all hosts within the IPv4 domain A.B.C.0/24 is {A.B.C.0 [255.255.255.0]}.

15.3.2.2 Protocol Number / Next Header

The Protocol Number / Next Header attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain either an IPv4 Protocol Number or an IPv6 Next Header value. The value range is from 0 to 255.

15.3.2.3 Port Numbers

The Destination Port Range and Source Port Range attributes of a valid packet filter shall each contain one port number, or a range of port numbers. Port numbers range between 0 and 65535.

15.3.2.4 IPSec Security Parameter Index

The IPSec SPI attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain one SPI which is a 32-bit field.

15.3.2.5 Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask

The Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain either an IPv4 TOS octet or an IPv6 Traffic Class octet along with a mask defining which of the 8 bits should be used for matching.

15.3.2.6 Flow Label

The Flow Label attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain an IPv6 flow label which is a 20-bit field.

15.3.3 Example Usage of Packet Filters

Based on the type of traffic or the external-network QoS capabilities, different types of packet filters can be used to classify a given PDP PDU in order to determine the right PDP context. Some examples are given below.

15.3.3.1 IPv4 Multi-field Classification

In the case of multi-field classification, the packet filter consists of a number of packet header fields. For example, to classify TCP/IPv4 packets originating from 172.168.8.0/24 destined to port 5003 at the TE, the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 1;
- IPv4 Source Address = {172.168.8.0 [255.255.255.0]};
- Protocol Number for TCP = 6; and
- Destination Port = 5003.

15.3.3.2 IPv4 TOS-based Classification

In the case of TOS-based classification, the packet filter consists of only the TOS octet coding. For example to classify IPv4 packets marked with TOS coding 001010xx, the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 3;
- Type of Service / Traffic Class = 00101000 and Mask = 11111100.

NOTE: The TOS-based classification can always be augmented with the source address attribute if it is known that different source domains use different TOS octet codings for the same traffic class.

15.3.3.3 IPv4 Multi-field Classification for IPSec Traffic

In the case of multi-field classification of IPSec traffic, the packet filter contains the SPI instead of the port numbers that are not available due to encryption. If IPSec (ESP) was used with an SPI of 0x0F80F000, then the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 4;
- Protocol Number for ESP = 50; and
- SPI = 0x0F80F000.

16 Interactions with Other Services

This clause describes the interaction between packet-domain services and the following other services:

- point-to-point Short Message Service (SMS);
- circuit-switched services;
- supplementary services; and
- CAMEL services.

16.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service

16.1.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service for GPRS

It shall be possible for a GPRS-attached MS to send and receive short messages over GPRS radio channels. An MS that is GPRS-attached and not IMSI-attached shall transfer SMs over GPRS channels. MSs that are both GPRS-attached

and IMSI-attached shall transfer SMs over GPRS channels or over non-GPRS control channels (if non-GPRS control channels are used, then paging for MT SMS may go through the SGSN).

The following two subclauses define the operation of mobile-terminated and mobile-originated SMS routeing and transfer over GPRS radio channels. More detailed definitions are contained in GSM 03.40 [8].

16.1.1.1 Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer

Figure 93 and the description below show an example of a successful delivery of a SM to an MS over a GPRS radio channel.

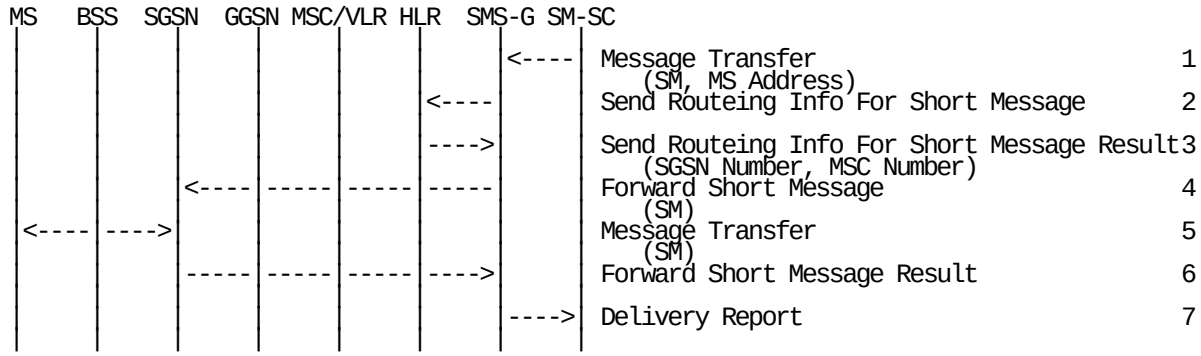


Figure 93: MT SMS Transfer, Successful

1) The short message service centre determines it shall send a SM to an MS. SM-SC forwards the SM to a SMS gateway MSC (SMS-GMSC).

2) SMS-GMSC examines the destination MS Address, and sends a Send Routeing Info For Short Message message to the relevant HLR.

3) HLR returns a Send Routeing Info For Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC. The result may contain the MS's current SGSN Number, the MSC Number, or both. If the result does not contain an SGSN Number (i.e., the HLR knows that the MS is not reachable via an SGSN), and if the result does contain an MSC Number, then non-GPRS SMS delivery procedures are followed. If the result contains an SGSN Number, the SMS transfer proceeds according to the following events.

NOTE: SMS delivery via the SGSN is normally more radio resource efficient than SMS delivery via the MSC/VLR. The preferred delivery path is selected by SMS-GMSC operator-specific action.

4) SMS-GMSC forwards the SM to the SGSN.

5) SGSN transfers the SM to the MS on the RP, CP, LLC layers, as defined in GSM 04.11 and GSM 04.64.

6) SGSN returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

7) SMS-GMSC returns a Delivery Report to the SM-SC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

16.1.1.1.1 Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer

The SGSN may not be able to deliver the SM to the MS. This may for example happen when the MS is not attached to GPRS, or when the radio channel conditions are bad.

When the SGSN cannot deliver the SM to the MS, the SGSN sets the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG), and returns a failure report to the SMS-GMSC. Based on the routeing information received from the HLR, the SMS-GMSC shall do one of the following:

- If an MSC/VLR is available for the MS, the SM is forwarded to the MS via the MSC/VLR. A successful delivery report shall be returned to the SM-SC.

- If an MSC/VLR is not available for the MS, the Message Waiting Indication information in the HLR shall be updated and an unsuccessful delivery report shall be returned to the SM-SC.

Figure 94 illustrates one possible traffic scenario when neither the SGSN nor the MSC is able to deliver the SM.

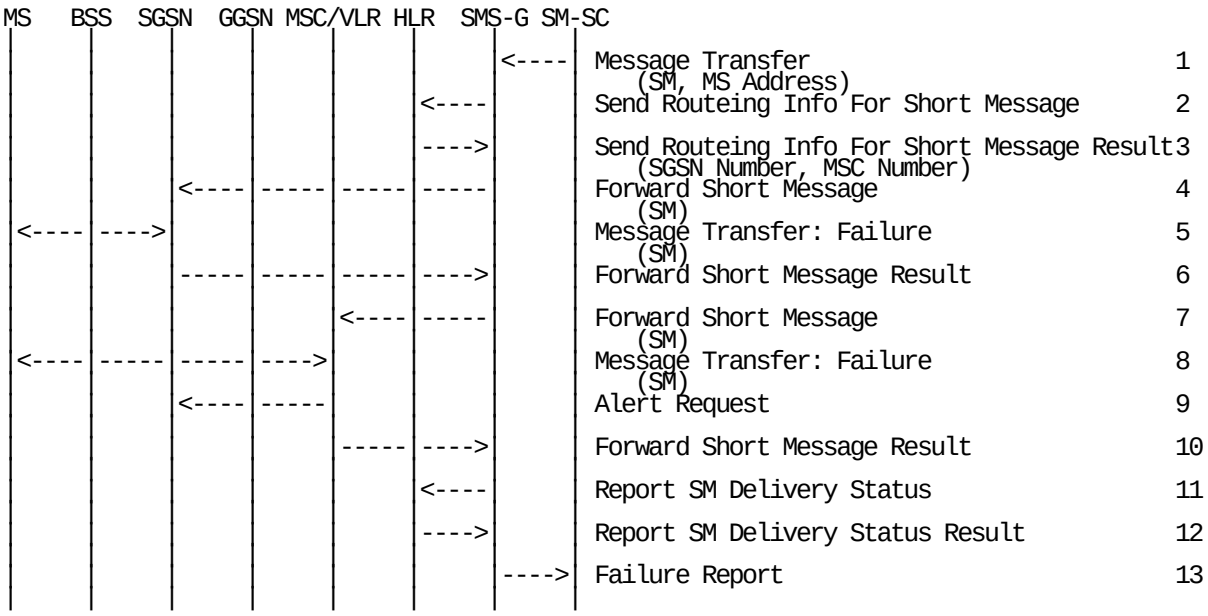


Figure 94: MT SMS Transfer, Unsuccessful

1) The short message service centre determines it shall send a SM to an MS. SM-SC forwards the SM to a SMS-GMSC.

2) SMS-GMSC examines the destination MS Address, and sends a Send Routeing Info For Short Message message to the relevant HLR.

3) HLR returns a Send Routeing Info For Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC. The Result contains an SGSN Number and an MSC Number.

4) SMS-GMSC forwards the SM to the SGSN.

5) SGSN attempts to transfer the SM to the MS, but fails.

6) SGSN sets MNRG and returns a Forward Short Message Result message to SMS-GMSC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

7) SMS-GMSC selects an alternative route for the SMS, and forwards the SM to the MSC/VLR.

8) MSC/VLR attempts to transfer the SM to the MS, but fails.

9) The MSC/VLR requests the setting of the NGAF at the SGSN.

10) VLR sets MNRF and returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

11) SMS-GMSC sends a Report SM Delivery message to the HLR.

12) HLR updates its Message Waiting Indication fields and returns a Report SM Delivery Result message to the SMS-GMSC.

13) SMS-GMSC returns a Failure Report to the SM-SC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

Figure 65 shows that the SGSN sends a Ready for SM (MS Reachable) message to the HLR when the MS becomes reachable and MNRG is set in the SGSN. The SGSN indicates also to the MSC/VLR when the MS becomes reachable and NGAF is set in the SGSN. If the MNRF is set at the MSC/VLR, the MSC/VLR sends a Ready for SM (MS Reachable) message to the HLR. Reception of a Ready for SM message or Update Location message when MNRG is set in the HLR shall trigger the SMS alert procedure as defined in GSM 03.40.

MNRG remains set in the SGSN independently of whether the MSC/VLR was successful in delivering the SM or not. This means that the SGSN in certain cases sends a Ready for SM message to the HLR when an MS becomes reachable via the SGSN, even if no SM is waiting. This causes a small amount of duplicate signalling between SGSN and HLR only.

16.1.1.2 Mobile-originated SMS Transfer

Figure 95 and the description below explain the steps involved in sending a SM from an MS over a GPRS radio channel.

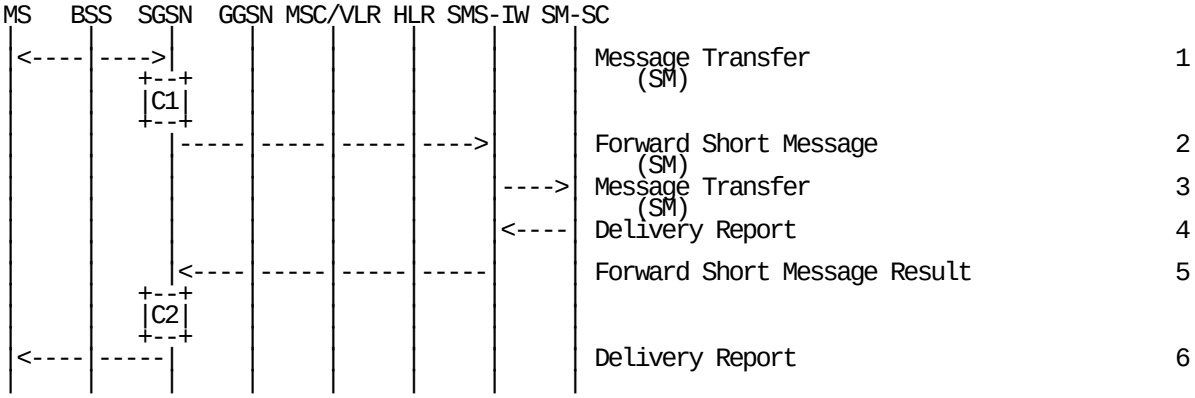


Figure 95: MO SMS Transfer, Successful

1) The MS has a SM to send, and transfers the SM to the SGSN via RP, CP, and LLC.

2) SGSN checks the MS subscription data, and determines that the MS is allowed to originate the SMS. SGSN forwards the SM to a SMS interworking MSC (SMS-IWMSC).

3) SMS-IWMSC passes the SM to the addressed SM-SC.

4) SM-SC returns a Delivery Report to the SMS-IWMSC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

5) SMS-IWMSC returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SGSN indicating successful delivery of the SM.

6) SGSN returns a Delivery Report to the MS indicating successful delivery of the SM.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SMS-MO-Request

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SMS-MO-Result

16.1.2 Point-to-point Short Message Service for UMTS

SMS shall be supported via the control plane in the UMTS packet domain. The UMTS SMS service is described in 3G TS 23.040.

16.2 Circuit-switched Services for GPRS

The ability for a GPRS user to access circuit-switched services depends on the subscription held, the network capabilities, and the MS capabilities. Interaction between GPRS and circuit-switched services is described in subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR".

16.2.1 Suspension of GPRS Services

When a GPRS-attached MS enters dedicated mode, and when the MS limitations make it unable to communicate on GPRS channels, the MS shall request the network for suspension of GPRS services. The Suspend and Resume procedure is illustrated in Figure 96. Each step is explained in the following list.

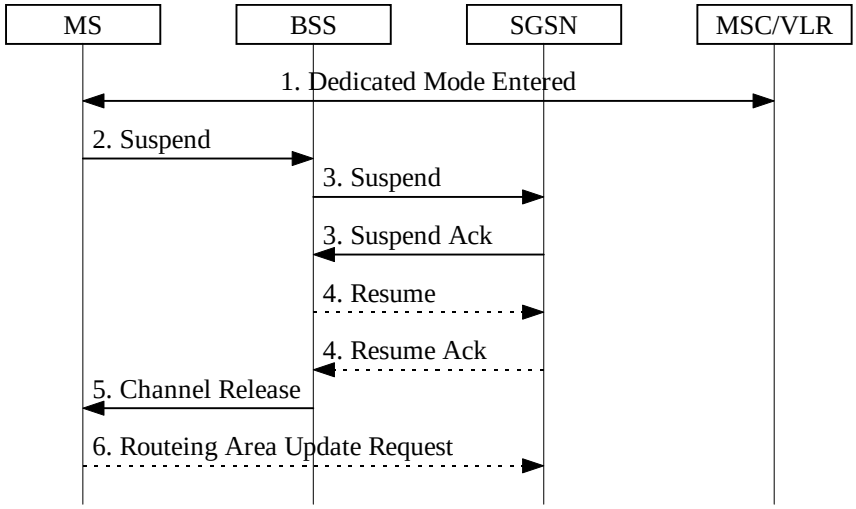


Figure 96: Suspend and Resume Procedure

1) The MS enters dedicated mode.

2) The MS sends an RR Suspend (TLLI, RAI) message to the BSS. The BSS may terminate any ongoing GPRS traffic for this TLLI.

3) The BSS sends a Suspend (TLLI, RAI) message to the SGSN, and the SGSN acknowledges by returning Suspend Ack. The BSS shall store TLLI and RAI in order to be able to request the SGSN to resume GPRS services when the MS leaves dedicated mode.

4) Eventually, the BSS determines that the circuit-switched radio channel shall be released. If the BSS is able to request the SGSN to resume GPRS services, the BSS shall send a Resume (TLLI, RAI) message to the SGSN. The SGSN acknowledges the successful outcome of the resume by returning Resume Ack.

5) The BSS sends an RR Channel Release (Resume) message to the MS. Resume indicates whether the BSS has successfully requested the SGSN to resume GPRS services for the MS, i.e., whether Resume Ack was received in the BSS before the RR Channel Release message was transmitted. The MS leaves dedicated mode.

6) If the BSS did not successfully request the SGSN to resume GPRS services, or if the RR Channel Release message was not received before the MS left dedicated mode, then the MS shall resume GPRS services by sending a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Routeing Area Update Procedure".

The full handling of suspended MSs in the BSS and the SGSN is implementation dependent. Typically, the SGSN should not page suspended MSs.

If the MS performs an inter-BSC handover while suspended, then TLLI and RAI should be transferred as BSC-to-BSC information in the Handover Required and Handover Request messages, see GSM 08.08. This allows the new BSC to initiate the Resume request procedure to the SGSN. In the case where the BSC-to-BSC information was not transferred or not understood, then the MS doesn’t receive an indication that resumption has been successful, and the MS shall resume GPRS services by initiating a Routeing Area Update Request procedure as described in step 6.

16.2.2 GPRS and Dedicated Mode Priority Handling

An MS in class-B mode of operation that communicates on GPRS radio channels when a dedicated channel is needed, shall immediately abort the GPRS communication and trigger the Suspend and Resume procedure.

Response to circuit-switched paging, non-emergency MO circuit-switched calls, MO SMS, and MO supplementary services are exceptions to the above rule. In these cases, it is an implementation choice whether to immediately abort GPRS communication or to delay the dedicated mode establishment.

16.3 Supplementary Services

No supplementary services are defined for the packet domain. Supplementary services may be available in the interworked-with networks ~~(e.g., the X.25 Call Redirection user facility)~~, but this is outside the scope of this specification.

16.4 CAMEL Services

CAMEL may be used for session and cost control. It may also be used for other operator-specific services.

Annex A (normative): APN and GGSN Selection

This annex contains the rules applied upon PDP context activation to determine the APN and the corresponding GGSN.

A.1 Definitions

The SGSN knows from the subscription data the parameters (S for Subscribed): PDP type (S), PDP address (S), APN (S), and VPLMN address allowed.

The SGSN may know from configuration the default APN supporting a given PDP type. This APN is called APN (SGSN) and does not include an APN Operator Identifier.

The SGSN knows the parameters requested by the MS (R for Requested): PDP type (R), PDP address (R), and APN (R). APN (R) is the APN Network Identifier requested by the MS.

In case of "an APN chosen by the SGSN" the activated PDP context is always linked with a dynamic PDP address.

An MS may have multiple subscription records for the same PDP type and the same PDP address, but with different APNs.

An MS may have one or two subscription records with the same PDP type and the same APN: one with a static PDP address, one with a dynamic PDP address.

When the MS is in its HPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN. When the MS is in a VPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN nor of this VPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN.

If APN (S) = wild card (see GSM 03.03), it means either:

- that a default APN (a default PDN) has to be chosen by the SGSN (APN (SGSN)) if no APN (R) has been provided; or
- that a PDP context with dynamic PDP address may be activated towards any APN requested by the MS.

In order to derive APN (R) from the APN sent by the MS, the SGSN shall check if the APN sent by the user ends with ".gprs". If not, then APN (R) is equal to APN sent by the MS. If yes, then APN (R) is the APN sent by the MS without the three last labels.

A.2 Selection Rules

The SGSN shall select the APN to be used to derive the GGSN address, and set the selection mode parameter according to the rules in the SDL diagrams in this subclause. The following definitons apply to the SDL diagrams:

AddrMode: Addressing Mode.

APN-OI: APN Operator Identifier.

HPLMN-OI: HPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

Number <condition>: determines the PDP context subscription records that satisfy the given condition.

PDPaddr: PDP address.

SelMode := ChosenBySGSN: Network-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := SentByMS: MS-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := Subscribed: MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified.

SelMode: Selection Mode.

VPLMN-OI: VPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

+: concatenation operation.

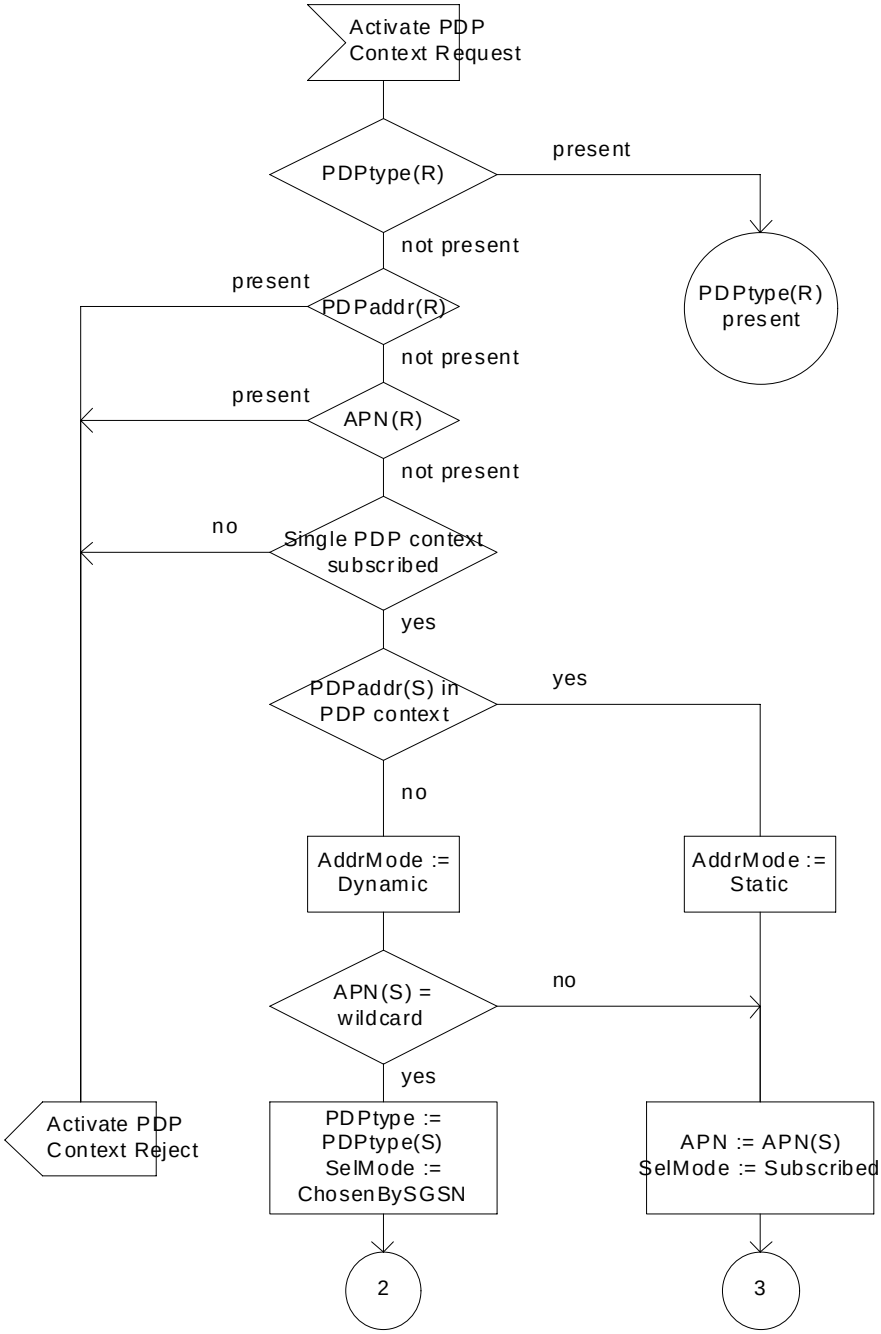


Figure A.1: SDL Diagram 1

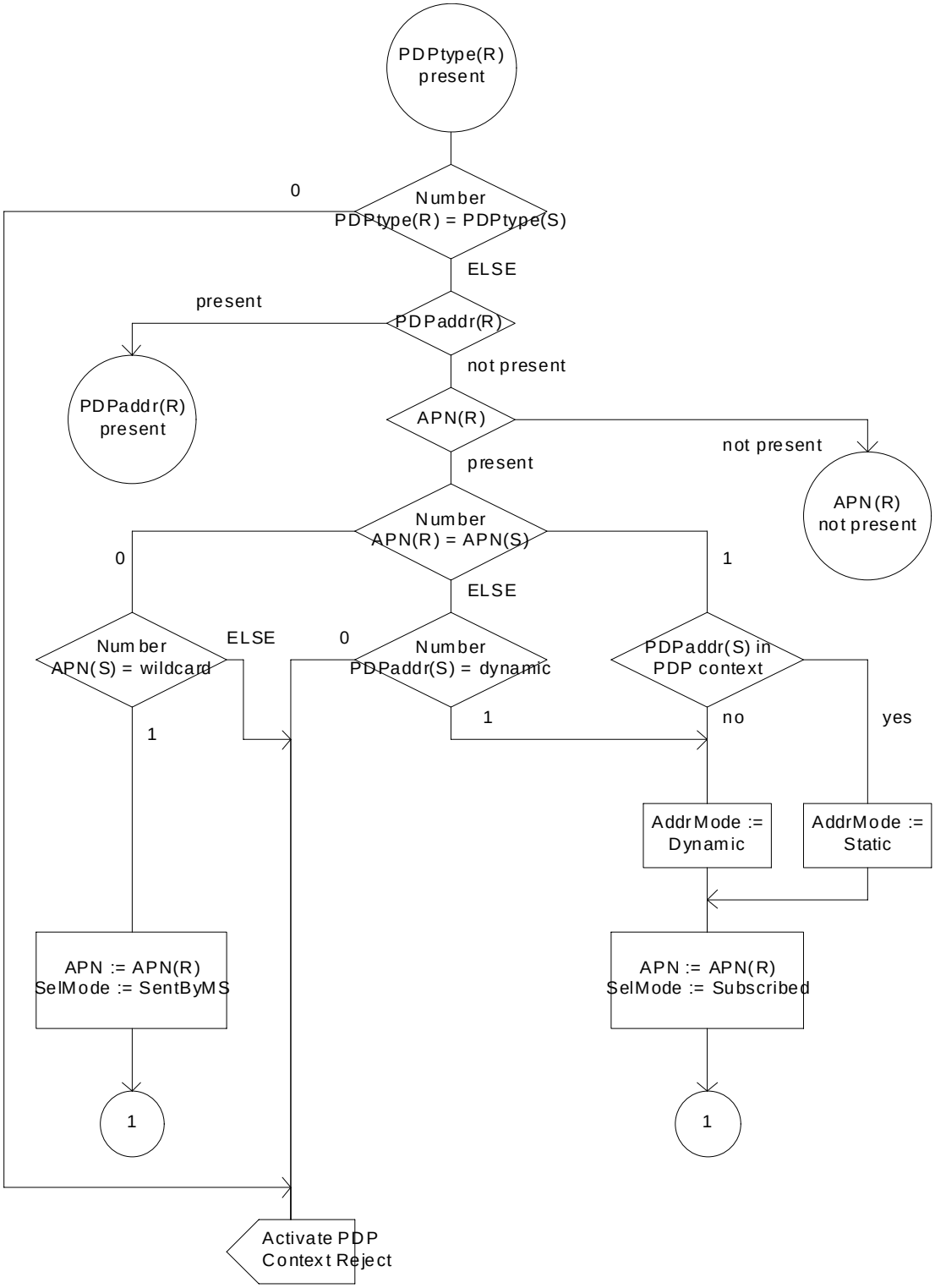


Figure A.2: SDL Diagram 2

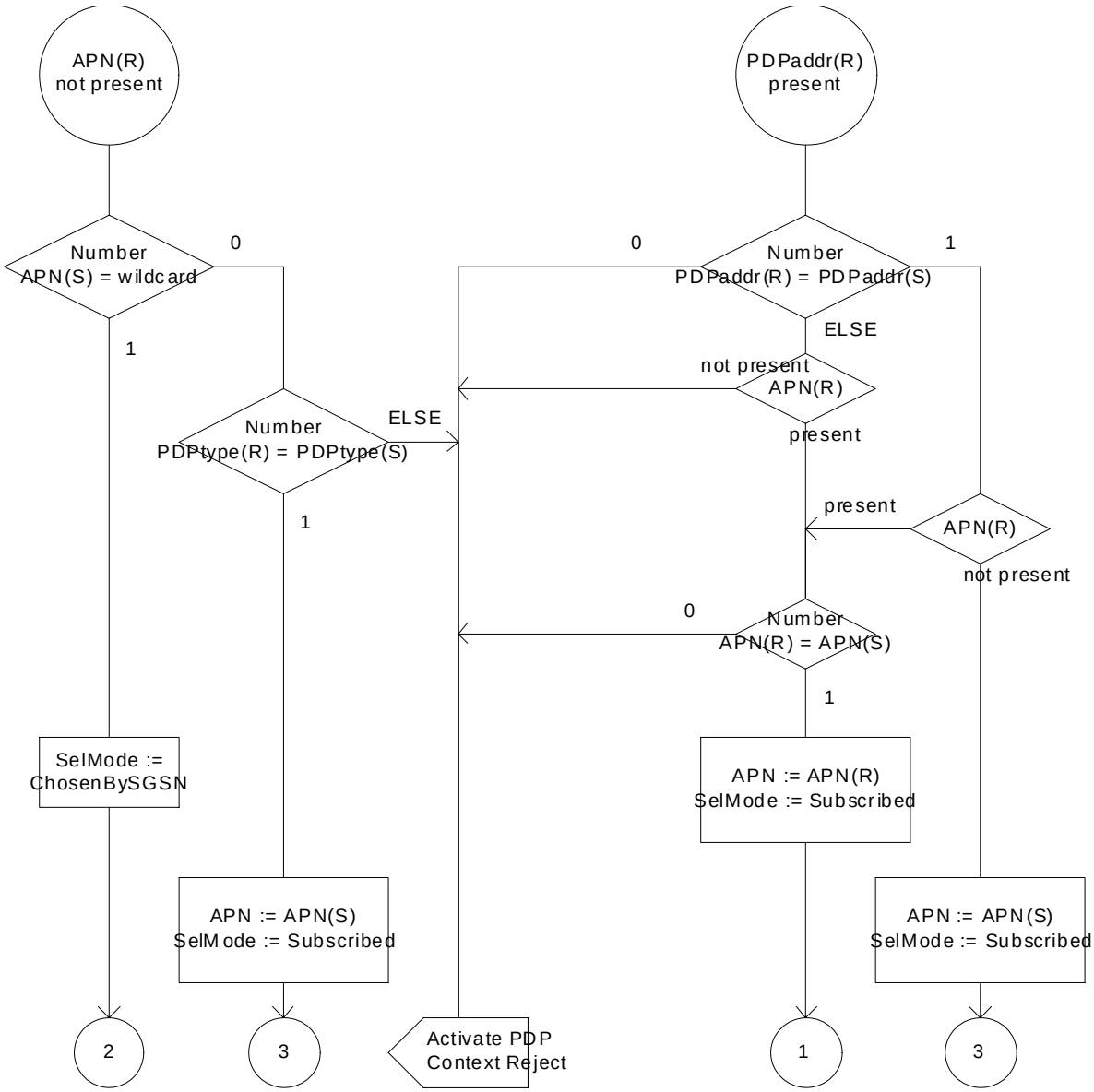


Figure A.3: SDL Diagram 3

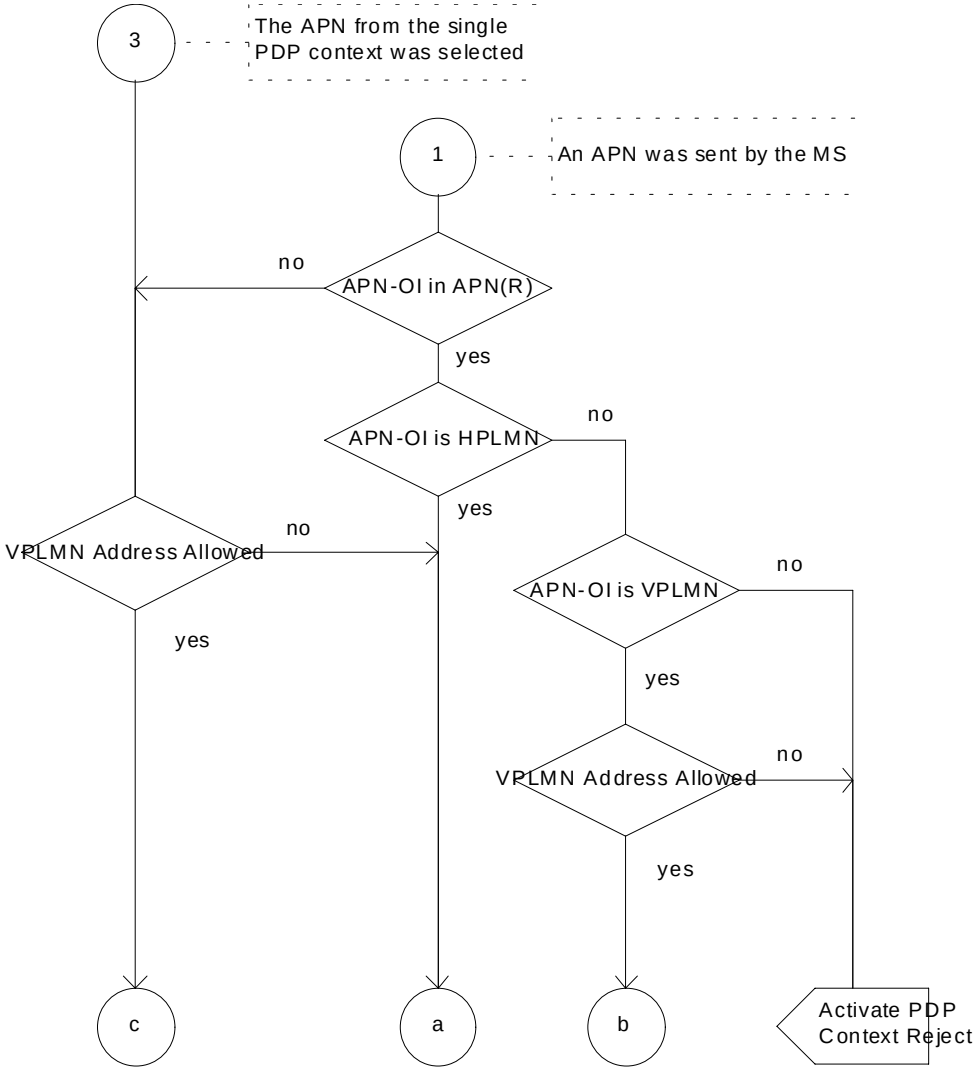


Figure A.4: SDL Diagram 4

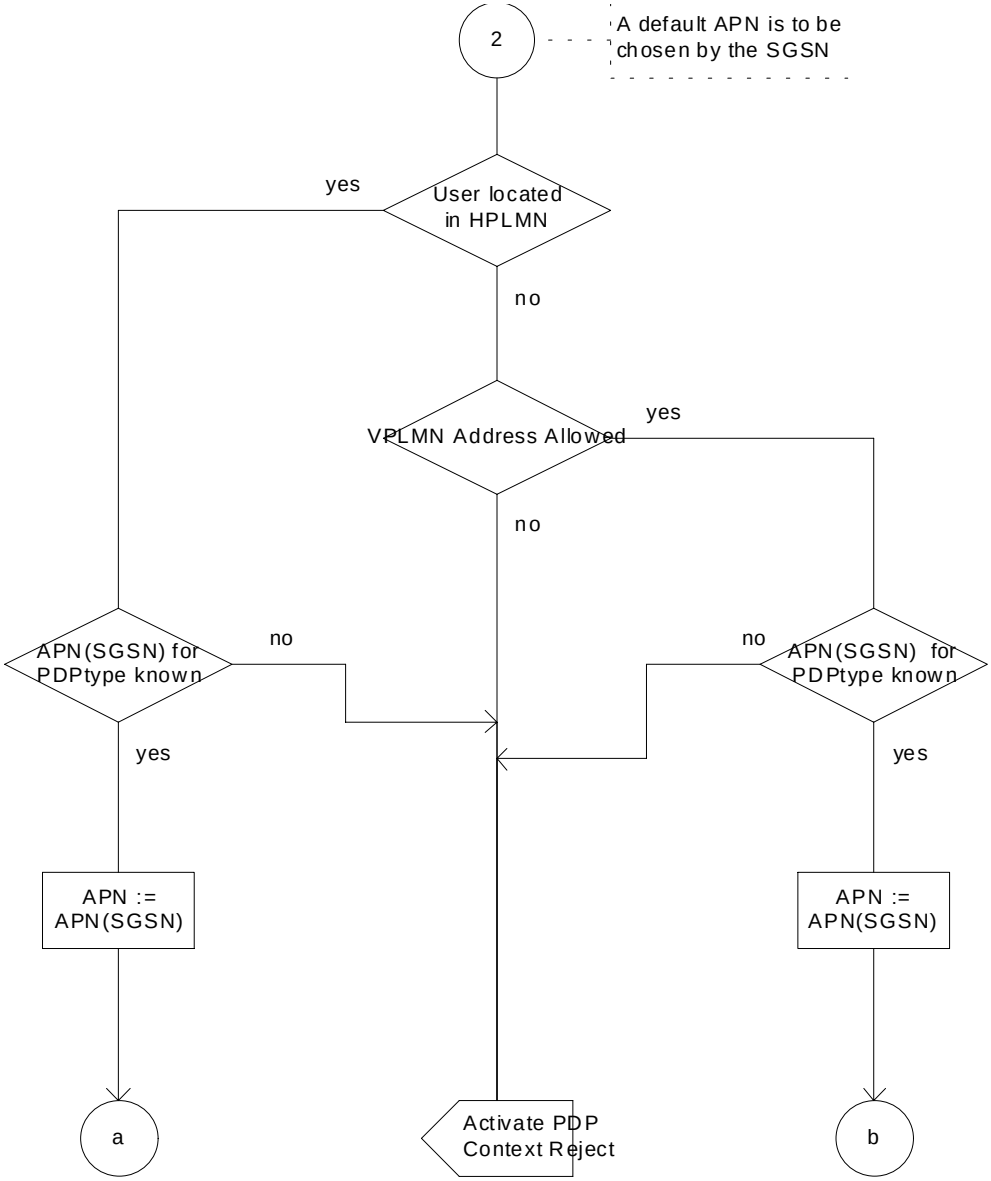


Figure A.5: SDL Diagram 5

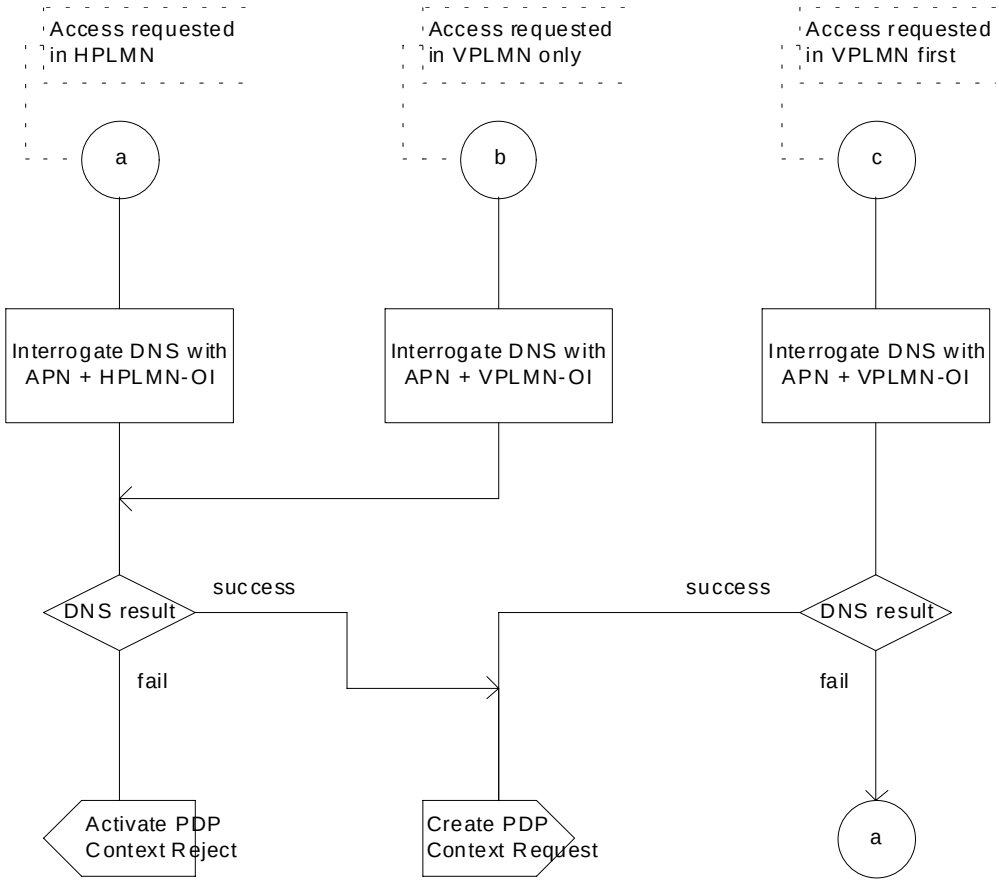


Figure A.6: SDL Diagram 6

Annex B (normative): Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service

[Not yet updated for UMTS.]

The GPRS Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service (IHOSS) is a connection-oriented service that can transport an unstructured octet (character) stream between a GPRS MS and an Internet host. The service uses the Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) PDP type to provide a 'character pipe' between the MS and the GGSN. In the GGSN there is an interworking function which provides a relay function between the OSP and the Internet host.

Figure B.1 shows the scope of IHOSS and OSP.

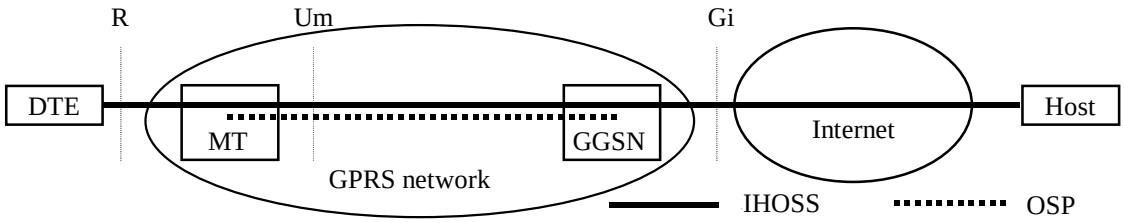


Figure B.1: Scope of IHOSS and OSP

IHOSS is analogous to a virtual serial cable between the MS and the Internet host.

This service is intended to provide a very simple connection for early implementation and for simple low-cost devices later on in the life cycle of GPRS.

B.1 Direction of Connection Setup

This service shall be mobile-originated only.

B.2 Bearer

The IHOSS shall use the unstructured Octet Stream Protocol as its bearer service.

The MT end of the IHOSS connection shall use the octet mode interface to the OSP as a Packet Assembler / Disassembler function is necessary.

The GGSN end of the IHOSS connection shall use the block mode interface to the OSP to remove the need for two back-to-back PAD functions.

B.3 Setup Data

The following data items are required before an octet stream can be initiated.

B.3.1 Protocol Type – TCP or UDP

This refers to the protocol used over IP on the GGSN to Internet host segment of the connection. The options available are TCP or UDP.

If no protocol is specified for a given context, TCP shall be used.

B.3.2 Host Name

This refers to the Internet host to which the connection is made. It shall be a fully formed domain name extended host name.

There shall be no default host name. If no host name is specified, the context activation shall fail.

B.3.3 Port Number

This refers to the TCP or UDP port on the host name, which forms the endpoint of the Internet side of the connection.

If no port number is specified for a given context, a default value of 23 decimal shall be used.

B.3.4 PAD Parameters

The Packet Assembler / Disassembler parameters determine how to fill the outgoing packets. If the user requires interactive terminal style behaviour then the PAD shall be able to act in this way. If the user requires a streaming data link then a different setup is necessary.

The default values for the PAD parameters are defined in GSM 07.60.

B.4 Flow Control

The service shall use the flow control features provided by the OSP to provide simple start / stop flow control.

B.5 Break Signal

The OSP break signals are mapped onto the appropriate break signals at the R and Gi interfaces.

B.6 Connection Establishment Procedure

Establishing an IHOSS connection involves setting up two segments, the PLMN segment (using the OSP) between the MS and the GGSN, and the fixed-network segment between the GGSN and the Internet host. Establishing the PLMN segment shall be as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". Figure B.2 illustrates the overall procedure.

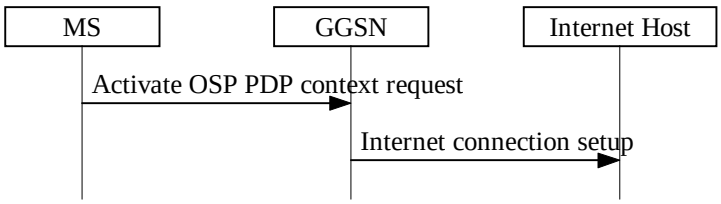


Figure B.2: IHOSS Connection Establishment

The MS requests that an OSP PDP context be activated by transmitting an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN with the following parameter values:

- NSAPI is selected by the MS.
- TI is selected by the MS.
- PDP Type shall have a two-part value. The first part shall identify the protocol as OSP, and the second part shall identify the service being used and thereby allow the SGSN to select a GGSN that can provide this service. For IHOSS PDP Type shall be set to OSP:IHOSS.

- PDP Address shall be empty.
- APN is selected by the MS, may be empty.
- QoS Requested is selected by the MS.
- PDP Configuration Options may contain an Internet host name, a port number, a protocol type, and possibly other parameters in order to enable the GGSN to set up a connection to the Internet host, or it may be empty.

The Activate PDP Context Accept message shall be returned to the MS only after the connection to the Internet host has been established.

The activation parameters shall be provided as either interactive commands or via a system-default value. The following subclauses describe how these parameters shall be derived for a number of different scenarios.

B.6.1 Fully User-Specified Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying the PAD parameters, the host name, the port, and the protocol (UDP or TCP) in PDP Configuration Options.

The SGSN shall select an appropriate GGSN for the outgoing connection.

The GGSN shall attempt to establish a connection with the specified host. Connection failure shall be signalled back to the MS and the session terminated. A successful connection establishment enables data transmission over the connection.

B.6.2 Default Internet Endpoint Parameters Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying only PAD parameters that deviate from the system defaults.

The SGSN shall connect to the GGSN indicated by the APN in the HLR subscription record.

The GGSN shall use the APN to further select the host name, the port number, and the protocol. The method used to select these parameters is manufacturer specific and outside of the scope of the specifications.

B.7 Connection Termination

Either the MS or the Internet host may request that a connection be cleared.

B.7.1 MS-initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

The MS clears the connection by sending a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN. This shall result in the TCP session closure procedures being executed by the GGSN. Once this is complete, the GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.2 MS-initiated UDP IHOSS Connection Termination

No further action is required by the GGSN towards the Internet endpoint, as the User Datagram Protocol is connectionless. The GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.3 Internet Host Initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

When the GGSN receives a TCP clear request from the fixed network it shall follows the procedure described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

B.8 Quality of Service

The QoS profile shall be negotiated to the following QoS attribute values:

- Precedence: as required.
- Delay: as required, but consistent with PAD forwarding strategy.
- Reliability: Class 1 for TCP. Class 3 for UDP.
- Peak throughput: as required.
- Mean throughput: as required.

B.9 Security

B.9.1 Authentication of the GPRS User

Identification and authentication of the subscriber by the GPRS network is carried out as described elsewhere in this document. The GPRS network shall not provide any identification of the GPRS subscriber to the Internet host. End-to-end security is provided at the application layer and is outside of the scope of this document.

B.9.2 Malicious Reconfiguration of the GPRS Device

An MS that can not hold protocol, host name, and port information, would render it impossible to gain unauthorised access and subvert the system by providing alternative protocol, host name, or port information. This information would have to be provided by the GGSN, which is potentially more physically secure than the embedded MT, and it would make "man in the middle" type security breaches considerably more complex.

B.10 Maintenance

Configuring the Internet endpoint by accepting a mandatory default endpoint from the GGSN enables a GPRS user to effect system reconfiguration without the requirement for a site visit for each GPRS MS. The association between the APN and the host name, port number and protocol in the GGSN would be updated to give a new host name and/or port number and/or protocol.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000221**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	097r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Motorola **Date:** 25 Jan., 2000

Subject: AAL5 description

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	[X]	**Release:**	Phase 2	[ ]
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	[ ]		Release 96	[ ]
B	Addition of feature	[ ]		Release 97	[ ]
C	Functional modification of feature	[ ]		Release 98	[ ]
D	Editorial modification	[ ]		Release 99	[X]
				Release 00	[ ]

Reason for change: It is an outstanding editorial task to add text to describe ATM AAL5.

Clauses affected: 2, 3.2, and 5.6.2.1.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

2 References

[All references need to be checked once release 99 stabilises.]

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- A non-specific reference to an ETS shall also be taken to refer to later versions published as an EN with the same number.

[67] ITU-T Recommendation I.363.5: "B-ISDN ATM Adaptation Layer Specification: Type 5 AAL".

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

AAL5 ATM Adaptation Layer type 5

5.6.2 User Plane for UMTS

5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN

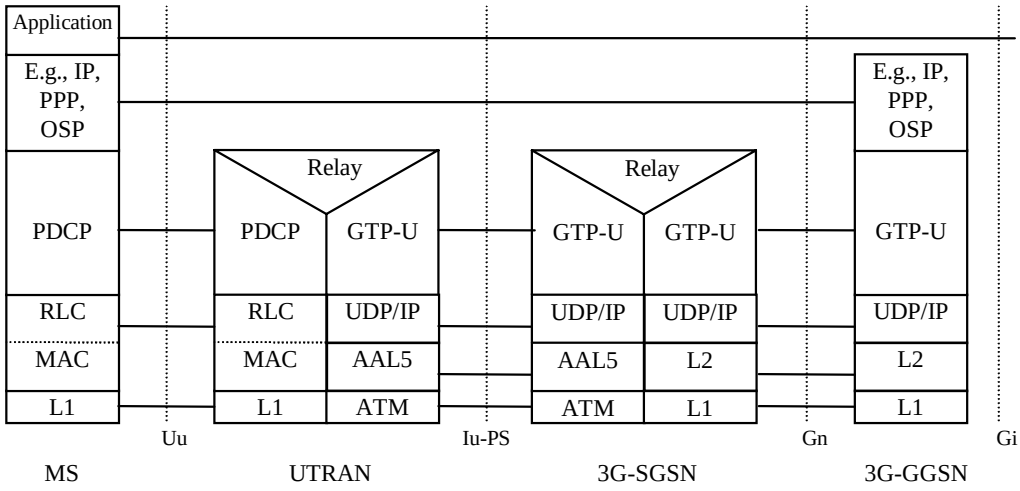


Figure 1: User Plane for UMTS

Legend:

- Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps higher-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol transparency for higher-layer protocols. PDCP supports e.g., IPv4, PPP, OSP, and IPv6. Introduction of new higher-layer protocols shall be possible without any changes to the radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is specified in 3G TS 25.323.

NOTE: Unlike in GPRS, user data compression is not supported in UMTS, because the data compression efficiency depends on the type of user data, and because many applications compress data before transmission. It is difficult to check the type of data in the PDCP layer, and compressing all user data requires too much processing.

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between UTRAN and the 3G-SGSN, and between the GSNs in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by GTP. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060.

- UDP/IP: These are the backbone network protocols used for routeing user data and control signalling.

- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM): The information to be transmitted is divided into fixed-size cells (53 octets), multiplexed, and transmitted. ATM is specified in I.361 [59]. ~~[FFS: add AAL5 description.]~~

- ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (AAL5): This adaptation layer protocol provides support for variable-bitrate connection-oriented or connectionless data services. AAL5 is specified in I.363.5 [67].

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol provides logical link control over the radio interface. There may be several simultaneous RLC links per MS. Each link is identified by a Bearer Id. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

- Medium Access Control (MAC): The MAC protocol controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel. MAC is specified in 3G TS 25.321.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000102**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	098	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Motorola **Date:** 18 Jan., 2000

Subject: Removal of Anonymous Access support

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature	X		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:
S1 has decided that anonymous access shall not be supported from release 99 onwards, see Tdoc S1 (99) 1043. This CR removes the AA material from 23.060.

The Auxiliary TLLI is only used for anonynomous access purposes in releases 97 and 98. Since the Auxiliary TLLI may be needed in the future, it is proposed that the deninition of the Auxiliary TLLI be left in the specifications, most notably in 23.003.

Clauses affected: Many.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

3 Definitions, abbreviations and symbols

3.1 Definitions

Refer to 3G TS 22.060 and 3G TS 25.401.

2G- / 3G- The prefixes 2G- and 3G- refers to functionality that supports only GSM GPRS or UMTS, respectively, e.g., 2G-SGSN refers only to the GSM GPRS functionality of an SGSN. When the prefix is omitted, reference is made independently from the GSM GPRS or UMTS functionality.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

~~AA~~	~~Anonymous Access~~
APN	Access Point Name
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
AUTN	Authentication Token
BG	Border Gateway
BSSAP+	Base Station System Application Part +
BSSGP	Base Station System GPRS Protocol
BVCI	BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier
CCU	Channel Codec Unit
CDR	Call Detail Record
CGF	Charging Gateway Functionality
CGI	Cell Global Identification
CK	Cipher Key
CS	Circuit Switched
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
EGPRS	Enhanced GPRS
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
GEA	GPRS Encryption Algorithm
GGSN	Gateway GPRS Support Node
GMM/SM	GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management
GPRS-SSF	GPRS Service Switching Function
GPRS-CSI	GPRS CAMEL Subscription Information
GSM-SCF	GSM Service Control Function
GSIM	GSM Service Identity Module
GSN	GPRS Support Node
GTP	GPRS Tunnelling Protocol
GTP-C	GTP Control Plane
GTP-U	GTP User Plane
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IHOSS	Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service
IK	Integrity Key
IP	Internet Protocol
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
IPX	Internet Packet eXchange
ISP	Internet Service Provider
KSI	Key Set Identifier
L2TP	Layer-2 Tunnelling Protocol
LL-PDU	LLC PDU
LLC	Logical Link Control
MAC	Medium Access Control
MIP	Mobile IP

MNRF	Mobile station Not Reachable Flag
MNRG	Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag
MNRR	Mobile station Not Reachable Reason
MTP2	Message Transfer Part layer 2
MTP3	Message Transfer Part layer 3
NGAF	Non-GPRS Alert Flag
NS	Network Service
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier
NSS	Network SubSystem
OSP	Octet Stream Protocol
P-TMSI	Packet TMSI
PCU	Packet Control Unit
PDCH	Packet Data CHannel
PDCP	Packet Data Convergence Protocol
PDN	Packet Data Network
PDP	Packet Data Protocol, e.g., IP or X.25 [34]
PDU	Protocol Data Unit
PPF	Paging Proceed Flag
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PTM	Point To Multipoint
PTP	Point To Point
PVC	Permanent Virtual Circuit
RA	Routeing Area
RAB	Radio Access Bearer
RAC	Routeing Area Code
RAI	Routeing Area Identity
RANAP	Radio Access Network Application Protocol
RLC	Radio Link Control
RNS	Radio Network Subsystem
RNTI	Radio Network Temporary Identity
RRC	Radio Resource Control
SGSN	Serving GPRS Support Node
SM	Short Message
SM-SC	Short Message service Service Centre
SMS-GMSC	Short Message Service Gateway MSC
SMS-IWMSC	Short Message Service Interworking MSC
SN-PDU	SNDCP PDU
SNDC	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence
SNDCP	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol
SPI	Security Parameter Index
TCAP	Transaction Capabilities Application Part
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TFT	Traffic Flow Template
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint IDentifier
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity
TOM	Tunnelling Of Messages
TOS	Type of Service
TRAU	Transcoder and Rate Adaptor Unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UEA	UMTS Encryption Algorithm
UIA	UMTS Integrity Algorithm
URA	UTRAN Registration Area
USIM	User Service Identity Module
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network

3.3 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

Ga	Charging data collection interface between a CDR transmitting unit (e.g., an SGSN or a GGSN) and a CDR receiving functionality (a CGF).

Gb	Interface between an SGSN and a BSS.
Gc	Interface between a GGSN and an HLR.
Gd	Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN.
Gf	Interface between an SGSN and an EIR.
Gi	Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network.
Gn	Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN.
Gp	Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs.
Gr	Interface between an SGSN and an HLR.
Gs	Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR.
Iu	Interface between the RNS and the core network. It is also considered as a reference point.
kbit/s	Kilobits per second.
Mbit/s	Megabits per second. 1 Mbit/s = 1 million bits per second.
R	Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface.
Reporting Area	The service area for which an MS's location shall be reported.
Service Area	The location accuracy level needed for service management purposes in the 3G-SGSN, e.g., a routeing area or a cell. The 3G-SGSN can request the SRNC to report: i) the MS's current service area; ii) when the MS moves into a given service area; or iii) when the MS moves out of a given service area.
Um	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the GPRS fixed network part. The Um interface is the GPRS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services through this interface.
Uu	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the UMTS fixed network part. The Uu interface is the UMTS network interface for providing packet data services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the UMTS services through this interface.

4 Main Concepts

The packet domain uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. The packet domain optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies.

A common packet domain Core Network is used for both GPRS and UMTS. This common Core Network provides packet-switched (PS) services and is designed to support several quality of services levels in order to allow efficient transfer of non real-time traffic (e.g., intermittent and bursty data transfers, occasional transmission of large volumes of data) and real-time traffic (e.g., voice, video). Applications based on standard data protocols and SMS are supported, and interworking is defined with IP networks and X.25 networks. Charging should be flexible and allow to bill according to the amount of data transferred, the QoS supported, and the duration of the connection.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) keeps track of the individual MSs' location and performs security functions and access control. The SGSN is connected to the GPRS base station system through the Gb interface and/or to the UMTS Radio Access Network through the Iu interface. The SGSN also interfaces via the GPRS Service Switching Function with the GSM Service Control Function for optional CAMEL session and cost control service support.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) provides interworking with external packet-switched networks, and is connected with SGSNs via an IP-based packet domain PLMN backbone network.

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) collects charging records from SGSNs and GGSNs.

The HLR contains GPRS and UMTS subscriber information.

The SMS-GMSCs and SMS-IWMSCs support SMS transmission via the SGSN.

Optionally, the MSC/VLR can be enhanced for more-efficient co-ordination of packet-switched and circuit-switched services and functionality: e.g., combined GPRS and non-GPRS location updates.

In order to access the PS services, an MS shall first make its presence known to the network by performing a PS attach. This makes the MS available for SMS over PS, paging via the SGSN, and notification of incoming PS data.

In order to send and receive PS data, the MS shall activate the Packet Data Protocol context that it wants to use. This operation makes the MS known in the corresponding GGSN, and interworking with external data networks can commence.

User data is transferred transparently between the MS and the external data networks with a method known as encapsulation and tunnelling: data packets are equipped with PS-specific protocol information and transferred between the MS and the GGSN. This transparent transfer method lessens the requirement for the PLMN to interpret external data protocols, and it enables easy introduction of additional interworking protocols in the future.

4.1 Main GPRS Concepts

New GPRS radio channels are defined, and the allocation of these channels is flexible: from 1 to 8 radio interface timeslots can be allocated per TDMA frame, timeslots are shared by the active users, and up and downlink are allocated separately. The radio interface resources can be shared dynamically between speech and data services as a function of service load and operator preference. Various radio channel coding schemes are specified to allow bitrates from 9 to more than 150 kbit/s per user. EGPRS is an enhancement of GPRS allowing higher bitrates on the radio interface. The higher bitrates are achieved by using a new modulation and new coding schemes in the MS and the BSS.

Three GPRS MS modes of operation are supported: An MS in class-A mode of operation operates GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously. An MS in class-B mode of operation monitors control channels for GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously, but can only operate one set of services at one time. An MS in class-C mode of operation exclusively operates GPRS services.

User data can be compressed and protected with retransmission protocols for efficiency and reliability.

GPRS security functionality is equivalent to the existing GSM security. The SGSN performs authentication and cipher setting procedures based on the same algorithms, keys, and criteria as in existing GSM. GPRS uses a ciphering algorithm optimised for packet data transmission. A GPRS ME can access the GPRS services with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware, and with GPRS-aware SIMs.

Cell selection may be performed autonomously by an MS, or the base station system instructs the MS to select a certain cell. The MS informs the network when it re-selects another cell or group of cells known as a routeing area.

4.2 Main UMTS Concepts

In UMTS, radio resources are allocated to MSs in a very flexible manner. Depending on the level of activity, MSs are allocated shared contention-based radio resources or dedicated radio resources for user packet transmission.

Three UMTS MS modes of operation are supported in UMTS: The PS/CS mode of operation corresponds to class-A mode operation in GPRS. The PS mode of operation corresponds to class-C mode operation in GPRS. The CS mode of operation is the outside the scope of this specification.

UMTS security functionality is equivalent to or of higher functionality than the existing GSM GPRS security. UMTS may use a security algorithm different from GSM GPRS. The 3G-SGSN performs the authentication procedure, and the RNC performs the ciphering procedure based on the algorithm for UMTS.

In UMTS, different levels of mobility procedures are executed depending upon the MS state. When an MS has an active RRC connection to UTRAN, the MS performs either UTRAN Registration Area updating procedures or handover or cell update procedures depending on the level that UTRAN is tracking the MS position. When an MS does not have an active RRC connection (i.e., it is in idle mode), the MS performs RA updating procedures. In all the procedures, the cell selection is controlled by the network by setting cell selection parameters and/or restriction information.

5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism

5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

Each PLMN has two access points, the radio interface (labelled Um in GPRS and Uu in UMTS) used for mobile access and the R reference point used for origination or reception of messages. The R reference point for the MSs is defined in 3G TS 27.060 [17].

An interface differs from a reference point in that an interface is defined where specific information is exchanged and needs to be fully recognised.

There is an inter PLMN interface called Gp that connects two independent packet domain networks for message exchange.

There is also a PLMN to fixed network (typically a packet data network) reference point called Gi. Gi is defined in 3G TS 29.061 [27].

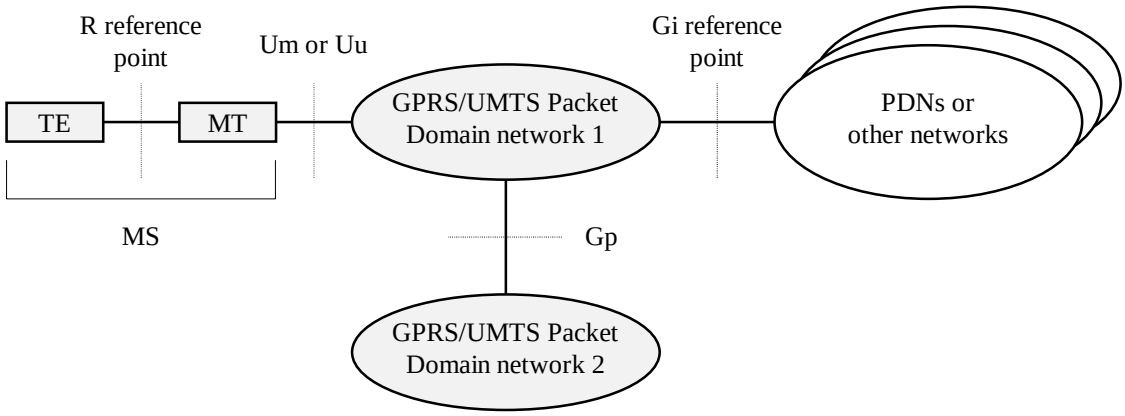


Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

There may be more than a single network interface to several different packet data (or other) networks. These networks may both differ in ownership as well as in communications protocol (e.g., X.25, TCP/IP etc.). The network operator should define and negotiate interconnect with each external (PDN or other) network.

5.2 Network Interworking

Network interworking is required whenever a packet domain PLMN and any other network are involved in the execution of a service request. With reference to Figure 1, interworking takes place through the Gi reference point and the Gp interface.

The internal mechanism for conveying the PDP PDU through the PLMN is managed by the PLMN network operator and is not apparent to the data user. The use of the packet domain data service may have an impact on and increase the transfer time normally found for a message when communicated through a fixed packet data network.

5.2.1 PSPDN Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with PSPDN networks. The interworking may be either direct or through a transit network (e.g., ISDN). GPRS shall support both X.121 [38] and E.164 [30] addresses.

The packet domain shall provide support for X.25 virtual circuits and X.25 fast select. X.75 [37] or X.75' [48] may be used for interworking with X.25 PDNs.

The packet domain TEs have addresses provided by the packet domain service operator and belong to the packet domain. The PSPDN TE sends data to the packet domain TE by use of the packet domain PLMN DNIC (Data Network Identification Code) or equivalent that uniquely identifies the packet domain network.

5.2.2 Internet (IP) Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with networks based on the internet protocol (IP). IP is defined in RFC 791 [40]. The packet domain may provide compression of the TCP/IP header when an IP-datagram is used within the context of a TCP connection.

In a similar way to the PSPDN X.25 case, the packet domain PLMN service is an IP domain, and mobile terminals offered service by a service provider may be globally addressable through the network operator's addressing scheme.

5.3 High-Level Functions

The following list gives the logical functions performed within the packet domain network. Several functional groupings (meta-functions) are defined which each encompasses a number of individual functions:

- Network Access Control Functions.
- Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions.
- Mobility Management Functions.
- Logical Link Management Functions (GPRS only).
- Radio Resource Management Functions.
- Network Management Functions.

5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions

Network access is the means by which a user is connected to a telecommunication network in order to use the services and/or facilities of that network. An access protocol is a defined set of procedures that enables the user to employ the services and/or facilities of the network.

User network access may occur from either the mobile side or the fixed side of the network. The fixed network interface may support multiple access protocols to external data networks, for example X.25 or IP. The set of access protocols to be supported is determined by the PLMN operator.

Individual PLMN administrations may require specific access-control procedures in order to limit the set of users permitted to access the network, or to restrict the capabilities of individual users, for example by limiting the type of service available to an individual subscriber. Such access control procedures are beyond the scope of the specifications.

~~In addition to the standard data transfer, the packet domain may support anonymous access to the network. The service allows an MS to exchange data packets with a predefined host that can be addressed by the supported interworking protocols. Only a limited number of destination PDP addresses can be used within this service. IMSI or IMEI shall not be used when accessing the network thus guaranteeing a high level of anonymity. Therefore, no authentication and ciphering functionalities are foreseen for anonymous access.~~

~~[S1 has decided that anonymous access shall not be supported in UMTS.]~~

5.3.1.1 Registration Function

Registration is the means by which a user's Mobile Id is associated with the user's packet data protocol(s) and address(es) within the PLMN, and with the user's access point(s) to the external PDP network. The association can be static, i.e., stored in an HLR, or dynamic, i.e., allocated on a per need basis.

5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function

This function performs the identification and authentication of the service requester, and the validation of the service request type to ensure that the user is authorised to use the particular network services. The authentication function is performed in association with the Mobility Management functions.

5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function

The purpose of admission control is to calculate which network resources are required to provide the quality of service (QoS) requested, determine if those resources are available, and then reserve those resources. Admission control is performed in association with the Radio Resource Management functions in order to estimate the radio resource requirements within each cell.

5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function

A screening function concerned with filtering out unauthorised or unsolicited messages is required. This should be supported through packet filtering functions. [It is FFS if/how user-controlled screening can be provided by utilising TFTs.]

5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

This function adapts data packets received / transmitted from / to terminal equipment to a form suitable for transmission across the packet domain network.

5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function

This function collects data necessary to support subscription and/or traffic fees.

5.3.2 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions

A route is an ordered list of nodes used for the transfer of messages within and between the PLMN(s). Each route consists of the originating node, zero or more relay nodes and the destination node. Routeing is the process of determining and using, in accordance with a set of rules, the route for transmission of a message within and between the PLMN(s).

5.3.2.1 Relay Function

The relay function is the means by which a node forwards data received from one node to the next node in the route.

5.3.2.2 Routeing Function

The routeing function determines the network node to which a message should be forwarded and the underlying service(s) used to reach that GPRS Support Node (GSN), using the destination address of the message. The routeing function selects the transmission path for the "next hop" in the route.

Data transmission between GSNs may occur across external data networks that provide their own internal routeing functions, for example X.25, Frame Relay or ATM networks.

5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function

Address translation is the conversion of one address to another address of a different type. Address translation may be used to convert an external network protocol address into an internal network address that can be used for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s).

Address mapping is used to map a network address to another network address of the same type for the routeing and relaying of messages within and between the PLMN(s), for example to forward packets from one network node to another.

5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function

Encapsulation is the addition of address and control information to a data unit for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s). Decapsulation is the removal of the addressing and control information from a packet to reveal the original data unit.

Encapsulation and decapsulation are performed between the support nodes of the packet domain PLMN(s), and between the serving support node and the MS.

5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function

Tunnelling is the transfer of encapsulated data units within and between the PLMN(s) from the point of encapsulation to the point of decapsulation. A tunnel is a two-way point-to-point path. Only the tunnel endpoints are identified.

5.3.2.6 Compression Function

The compression function optimises use of radio path capacity by transmitting as little of the SDU (i.e., the exterior PDP PDU) as possible while at the same time as preserving the information contained within it. Only IP header compression is supported in UMTS.

5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function

The ciphering function preserves the confidentiality of user data and signalling across the radio channels and inherently protects the PLMN from intruders.

5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function

The Domain Name Server function resolves logical GSN names to GSN addresses. This function is standard Internet functionality according to RFC 1034 [43], which allows to resolve any name for GSNs and other nodes within the packet domain PLMN backbone networks.

5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions

The mobility management functions are used to keep track of the current location of an MS within the PLMN or within another PLMN.

5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions for GPRS

Logical link management functions are concerned with the maintenance of a communication channel between an individual MS and the PLMN across the radio interface. These functions involve the co-ordination of link state information between the MS and the PLMN as well as the supervision of data transfer activity over the logical link.

Refer to GSM 04.64 [15] for further information.

5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function

Logical link establishment is performed when the MS attaches to the PS services.

5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions

Logical link maintenance functions supervise the logical link status and control link state changes.

5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function

The logical link release function is used to de-allocate resources associated with the logical link connection.

5.3.5 Radio Resource Management Functions

Radio resource management functions are concerned with the allocation and maintenance of radio communication paths, and is performed by the Access Network. Refer to GSM 03.64 for further information on the GSM GPRS radio. Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the UMTS radio.

5.3.6 Network Management Functions

Network management functions provide mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

5.4 Logical Architecture

The packet domain Core Network functionality is logically implemented on two network nodes, the Serving GPRS Support Node and the Gateway GPRS Support Node. The GPRS support nodes originating from GPRS evolve to UMTS network nodes. Therefore, the name GPRS Support Node is used even if the node provides UMTS functionality only. It is necessary to name a number of new interfaces. No inference should be drawn about the physical configuration on an interface from Figure 2.

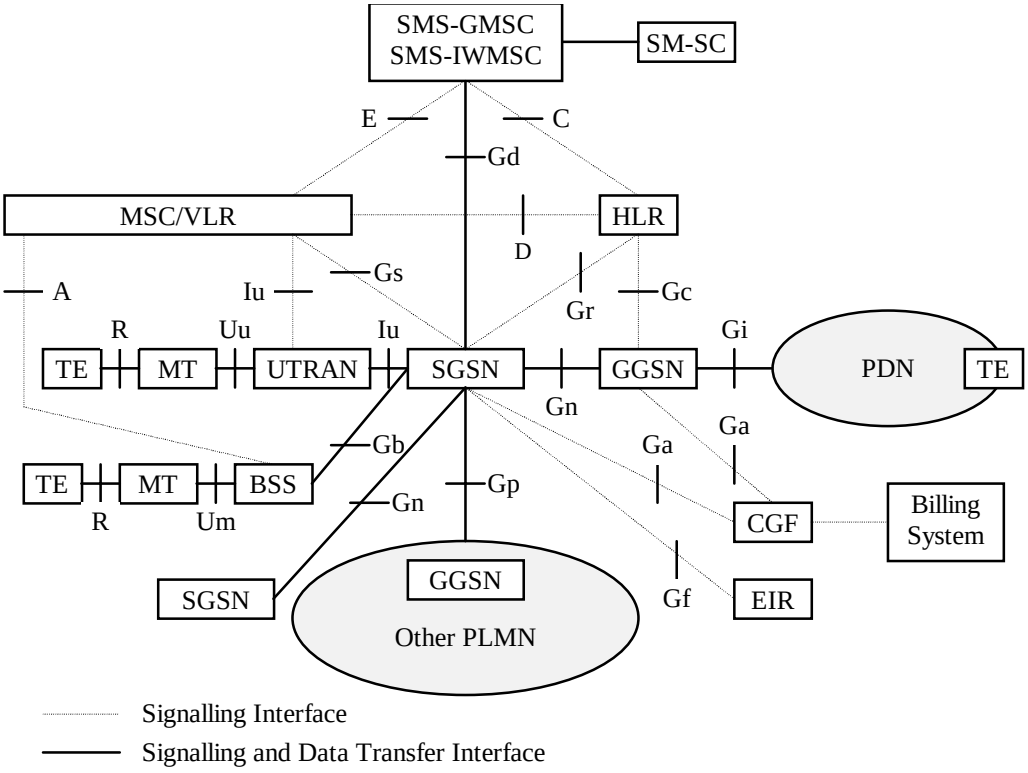


Figure 2: Overview of the Packet Domain Logical Architecture

5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes

A GPRS Support Node (GSN) contains functionality required to support GPRS and/or to support UMTS packet domain functionality. In one PLMN, there may be more than one GSN.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) is the node that is accessed by the packet data network due to evaluation of the PDP address. It contains routeing information for attached GPRS users. The routeing information is used to tunnel N-PDUs to the MS's current point of attachment, i.e., the Serving GPRS Support Node. The GGSN may request location information from the HLR via the optional Gc interface. The GGSN is the first point of PDN interconnection with a GSM PLMN supporting GPRS (i.e., the Gi reference point is supported by the GGSN). GGSN functionality is common for GPRS and for the UMTS packet domain.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) is the node that is serving the MS. The SGSN supports GPRS (i.e., the Gb interface is supported by the SGSN) and/or UMTS (i.e., the Iu interface is supported by the SGSN). At GPRS attach, the SGSN establishes a mobility management context containing information pertaining to e.g., mobility and security for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routeing purposes, with the GGSN that the subscriber will be using.

The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC) routeing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.

The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.

The SGSN interfaces with the GSM-SCF for optional CAMEL cost control. Depending on the result from the CAMEL interaction, the session and packet data transfer may proceed normally. This also applies if the SGSN does not support CAMEL interaction. Otherwise, interaction with the GSM-SCF continues as described in 3G TS 23.078 [8b]. Only the GSM-SCF interworking points are indicated in the signalling procedures in this specification.

5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks

There are two kinds of backbone networks. These are called:

- intra-PLMN backbone network; and
- inter-PLMN backbone network.

The intra-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs within the same PLMN.

The inter-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs and intra-PLMN backbone networks in different PLMNs.

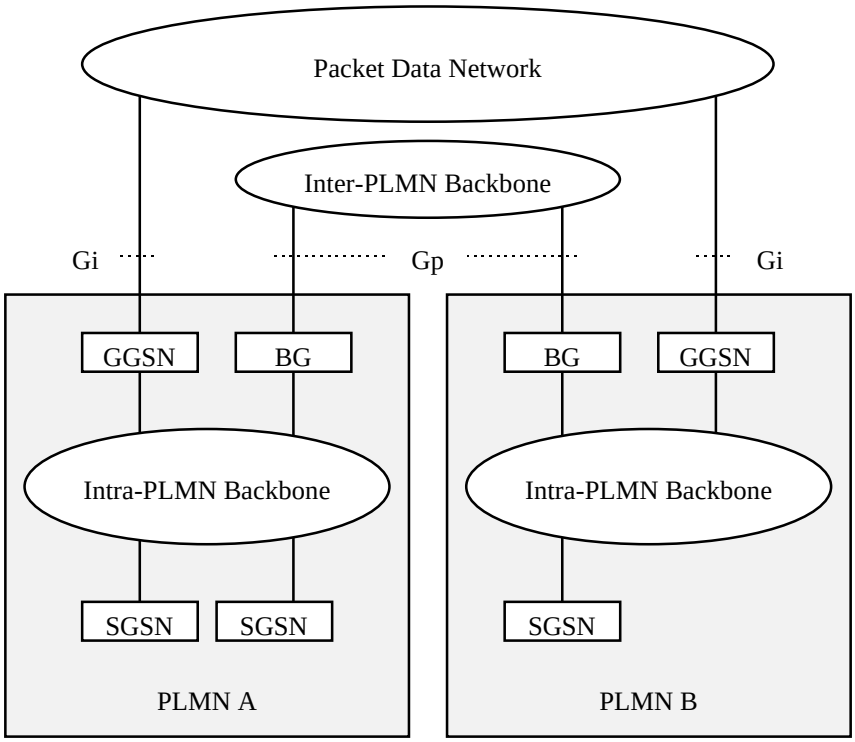


Figure 3: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks

Every intra-PLMN backbone network is a private IP network intended for packet domain data and signalling only. A private IP network is an IP network to which some access control mechanism is applied in order to achieve a required level of security. Two intra-PLMN backbone networks are connected via the Gp interface using Border Gateways (BGs) and an inter-PLMN backbone network. The inter-PLMN backbone network is selected by a roaming agreement that includes the BG security functionality. The BG is not defined within the scope of the packet domain. The inter-PLMN backbone can be a Packet Data Network, e.g., the public Internet or a leased line.

5.4.3 HLR

The HLR contains packet domain subscription data and routeing information. The HLR is accessible from the SGSN via the Gr interface and from the GGSN via the Gc interface. For roaming MSs, HLR may be in a different PLMN than the current SGSN.

5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC

The SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC are connected to the SGSN via the Gd interface to enable the SGSN to support SMS.

5.4.5 GPRS Mobile Stations

A GPRS MS can operate in one of three modes of operation. The mode of operation depends on the services that the MS is attached to, i.e., only GPRS or both GPRS and other GSM services, and upon the MS's capabilities to operate GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously.

- Class-A mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, and the MS supports simultaneous operation of GPRS and other GSM services.

- Class-B mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, but the MS can only operate one set of services at a time.

- Class-C mode of operation: The MS is exclusively attached to GPRS services.

The three modes of operation are defined in 3G TS 22.060.

NOTE: Other GSM technical specifications may refer to the MS modes of operation as GPRS class-A MS, GPRS class-B MS, and GPRS class-C MS.

5.4.6 UMTS Mobile Stations

A UMTS mobile station can operate in one of three modes of operation. However, these operation modes are different from the ones in GPRS due to the capabilities of UTRAN to multiplex CS and PS connections, due to paging co-ordination for PS services and CS services that are offered by the CN or the UTRAN (as defined in subclause "Paging Co-ordination for UMTS"), etc. The different UMTS mobile station operation modes are defined as follows:

- PS/CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to both the PS domain and CS domain, and the MS is capable of simultaneously operating PS services and CS services. This mode of operation is equivalent to the GPRS class-A mode of operation.

- PS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the PS domain only and may only operate services of the PS domain. However, this does not prevent CS-like services to be offered over the PS domain (e.g., VoIP). This mode of operation is equivalent to the GPRS class-C mode of operation.

- CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the CS domain only and may only operate services of the CS domain. However, this does not prevent PS-like service to be offered over the CS domain. The CS mode of operation is outside the scope of this specification.

All combinations of different operation modes as described for GPRS and UMTS MSs shall be allowed for GSM GPRS and UMTS multisystem terminals.

5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) is described in GSM 12.15 [28a].

5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture

The functions identified in the functional model are assigned to the logical architecture.

Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture

Function	2G-MS	3G-MS	BSS	UTRAN	2G-SGSN	3G-SGSN	GGSN	HLR
Network Access Control:								
Registration								X
Authentication and Authorisation	X	X			X	X		X
Admission Control	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Message Screening							X	
Packet Terminal Adaptation	X	X						
Charging Data Collection					X	X	X	
Packet Routeing & Transfer:								
Relay	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Routeing	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Address Translation and Mapping	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Encapsulation	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Tunnelling				X	X	X	X	
Compression	X	X		X	X			
Ciphering	X	X		X	X			X
Mobility Management:	X	X			X	X	X	X
Logical Link Management:								
Logical Link Establishment	X				X			
Logical Link Maintenance	X				X			
Logical Link Release	X				X			
Radio Resource Management:	X	X	X	X	X			

5.6 User and Control Planes

5.6.1 User Plane for GPRS

5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN

The user plane consists of a layered protocol structure providing user information transfer, along with associated information transfer control procedures (e.g., flow control, error detection, error correction and error recovery). The user plane independence of the Network Subsystem (NSS) platform from the underlying radio interface is preserved via the Gb interface. The following user plane is used in GPRS:

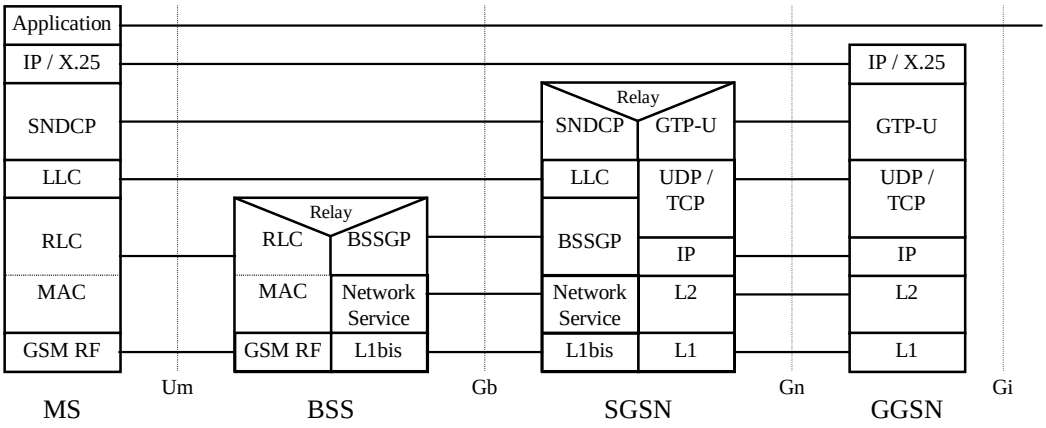


Figure 4: User Plane for GPRS

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between GPRS Support Nodes in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by the GPRS Tunnelling Protocol. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060 [26].

- TCP carries GTP PDUs in the backbone network for protocols that need a reliable data link (e.g., X.25), and UDP carries GTP PDUs for protocols that do not need a reliable data link (e.g., IP). TCP provides flow control and protection against lost and corrupted GTP PDUs. UDP provides protection against corrupted GTP PDUs. TCP is defined in RFC 793 [42]. UDP is defined in RFC 768 [39].

- IP: This is the backbone network protocol used for routeing user data and control signalling. The backbone network may initially be based on the IP version 4 protocol. Ultimately, IP version 6 shall be used. IP version 4 is defined in RFC 791.

- Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. SNDCP is specified in GSM 04.65 [16].

- Logical Link Control (LLC): This layer provides a highly reliable ciphered logical link. LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols in order to allow introduction of alternative GPRS radio solutions with minimum changes to the NSS. LLC is specified in GSM 04.64.

- Relay: In the BSS, this function relays LLC PDUs between the Um and Gb interfaces. In the SGSN, this function relays PDP PDUs between the Gb and Gn interfaces.

- Base Station System GPRS Protocol (BSSGP): This layer conveys routeing- and QoS-related information between BSS and SGSN. BSSGP does not perform error correction. BSSGP is specified in GSM 08.18 [21].

- Network Service (NS): This layer transports BSSGP PDUs. NS is based on the Frame Relay connection between BSS and SGSN, and may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. NS is specified in GSM 08.16 [20].

- RLC/MAC: This layer contains two functions: The Radio Link Control function provides a radio-solution-dependent reliable link. The Medium Access Control function controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel, and the mapping of LLC frames onto the GSM physical channel. RLC/MAC is defined in GSM 04.60 [14].

- GSM RF: As defined in GSM 05 series.

5.6.1.2 GSN – GSN

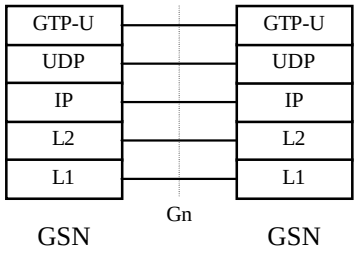


Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers user data between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.2 User Plane for UMTS

5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN

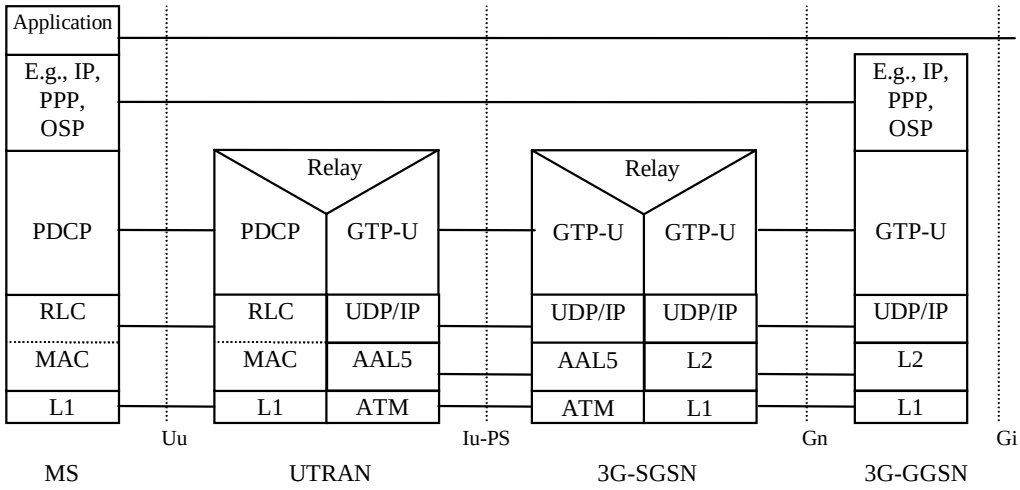


Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS

Legend:

- Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps higher-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol transparency for higher-layer protocols. PDCP supports e.g., IPv4, PPP, OSP, and IPv6. Introduction of new higher-layer protocols shall be possible without any changes to the radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is specified in 3G TS 25.323.

NOTE: Unlike in GPRS, user data compression is not supported in UMTS, because the data compression efficiency depends on the type of user data, and because many applications compress data before transmission. It is difficult to check the type of data in the PDCP layer, and compressing all user data requires too much processing.

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between UTRAN and the 3G-SGSN, and between the GSNs in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by GTP. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060.

- UDP/IP: These are the backbone network protocols used for routeing user data and control signalling.

- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM): The information to be transmitted is divided into fixed-size cells (53 octets), multiplexed, and transmitted. ATM is specified in I.361 [59]. [FFS: add AAL5 description.]

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol provides logical link control over the radio interface. There may be several simultaneous RLC links per MS. Each link is identified by a Bearer Id. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

- Medium Access Control (MAC): The MAC protocol controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel. MAC is specified in 3G TS 25.321.

5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN

This user plane is the same as for GPRS, see subclause "GSN – GSN" above.

5.6.3 Control Plane

The control plane consists of protocols for control and support of the user plane functions:

- controlling the packet domain network access connections, such as attaching to and detaching from the packet domain network;

- controlling the attributes of an established network access connection, such as activation of a PDP address;

- controlling the routeing path of an established network connection in order to support user mobility; and

- controlling the assignment of network resources to meet changing user demands.

The following control planes are used in both GPRS and UMTS unless specifically indicated:

5.6.3.1 MS – SGSN for GPRS

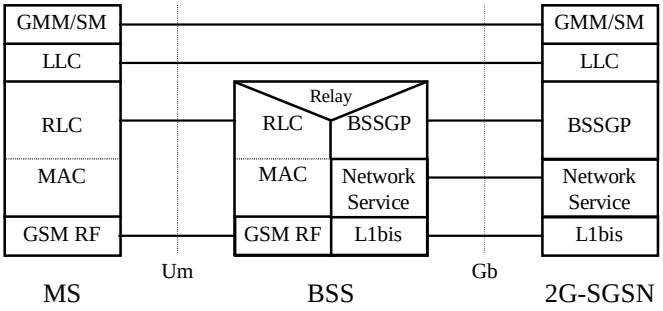


Figure 7: Control Plane MS – 2G-SGSN

Legend:

- GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): This protocol supports mobility management functionality such as GPRS attach, GPRS detach, security, routeing area update, location update, PDP context activation, and PDP context deactivation, as described in clauses "Mobility Management Functionality" and "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

5.6.3.2 MS – SGSN for UMTS

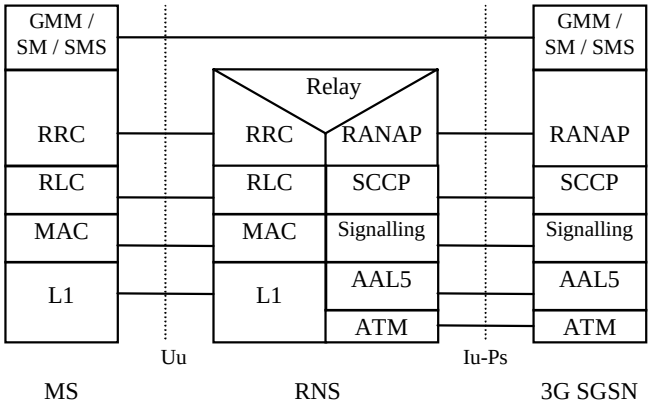


Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN

Legend:

- UMTS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): GMM supports mobility management functionality such as attach, detach, security, and routeing area update, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality". SM supports PDP context activation and PDP context deactivation, as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

- SMS supports the mobile-originated and mobile-terminated short message service described in 3G TS 23.040.

- Radio Access Network Application Protocol (RANAP): This protocol encapsulates and carries higher-layer signalling, handles signalling between the 3G-SGSN and UTRAN, and manages the GTP connections on the Iu interface. RANAP is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The layers below RANAP are defined in 3G TS 23.121.

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol offers logical link control over the radio interface for the transmission of higher layer-signalling messages and SMS. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

5.6.3.3 SGSN - HLR

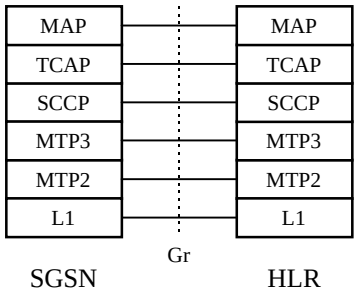


Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as defined in 3G TS 29.002 [23], with enhancements for GPRS as described in the present document.

- TCAP, SCCP, MTP3, and MTP2 are the same protocols as used to support MAP in CS PLMNs.

5.6.3.4 SGSN - MSC/VLR

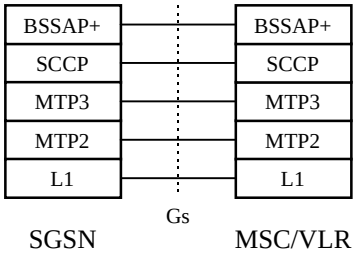


Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR

Legend:

- Base Station System Application Part + (BSSAP+): A subset of BSSAP procedures supports signalling between the SGSN and MSC/VLR, as described in subclause "Mobility Management Functionality" and in 3G TS 29.018 [25]. The requirements for the lower layers are specified in 3G TS 29.016 [24].

5.6.3.5 SGSN - EIR

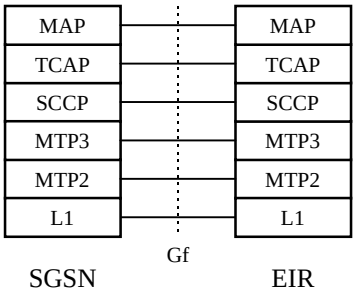


Figure 11: Control Plane SGSN - EIR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and the EIR, as described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

5.6.3.6 SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC

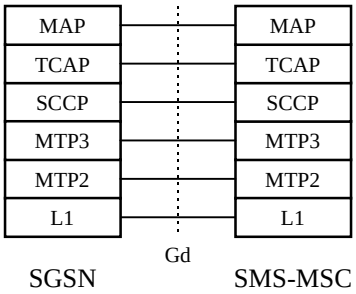


Figure 12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IWMSC

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC, as described in subclause "Point-to-point Short Message Service".

5.6.3.7 GSN - GSN

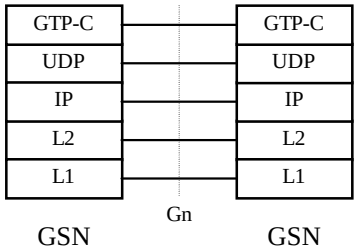


Figure 13: Control Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers signalling messages between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.3.8 GGSN - HLR

This optional signalling path allows a GGSN to exchange signalling information with an HLR. There are two alternative ways to implement this signalling path:

- If a SS7 interface is installed in the GGSN, the MAP protocol can be used between the GGSN and an HLR.
- If a SS7 interface is not installed in the GGSN, any GSN with a SS7 interface installed in the same PLMN as the GGSN can be used as a GTP-to-MAP protocol converter to allow signalling between the GGSN and an HLR.

5.6.3.8.1 MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

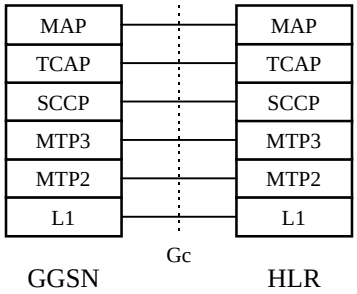


Figure 14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as described in subclause "Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure".

5.6.3.8.2 GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

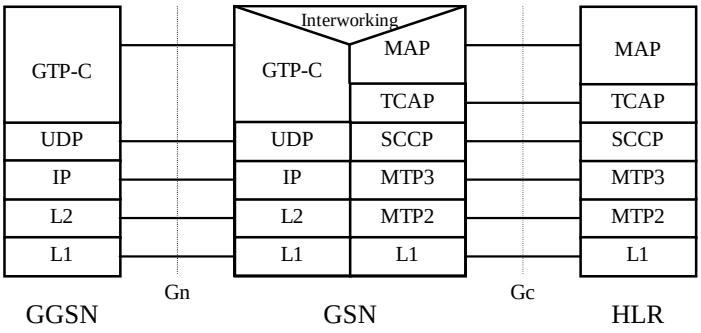


Figure 15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between the GGSN and the protocol-converting GSN in the backbone network.
- Interworking: This function provides interworking between GTP and MAP for GGSN - HLR signalling.

5.7 Functionality Needed for Mobile IP Using IPv4

To support the optional Mobile IP services, see 3G TS 23.121 [54], efficiently in the packet domain, Foreign Agent (FA) functionality needs to be provided in the GGSN. The interface between the GGSN and FA, including the mapping between the care of IP address and the GTP tunnel in the PLMN is assumed not be standardized as the GGSN and FA are considered to be one integrated node.

Mobile IP services need a Home Agent (HA). The HA is a router that tunnels datagrams to an FA. The FA de-tunnels the datagrams and sends them towards the MS that is in a PLMN. The HA maintains current location information for each of the departed users. The location of the HA is outside the scope of the 3GPP specifications.

The FA and HA functionality is specified in RFC 2002 [46].

6 Mobility Management Functionality

6.1 Definition of Mobility Management States

The Mobility Management (MM) activities related to a subscriber are characterised by one of three different MM states. The MM states for a GPRS subscriber are IDLE, STANDBY, and READY, and the MM states for a UMTS subscriber are PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED. Each state describes a certain level of functionality and information allocated. The information sets held at the MS and the SGSN are denoted MM context.

~~In the non-anonymous access case, t~~The MM state relates only to GPRS MM activities of a subscriber. The MM state is independent of the number and state of PDP contexts for that subscriber.

~~In the anonymous access case, the MM state relates to GPRS MM activities of an MS represented only by an Auxiliary TLLI.~~

6.1.1 Mobility Management States for GPRS

6.1.1.1 IDLE (GPRS) State

In GPRS IDLE state, the subscriber is not attached to the GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routeing information for the subscriber. The subscriber-related mobility management procedures are not performed.

PLMN selection and GPRS cell selection and re-selection processes are performed by the MS.

Data transmission to and from the mobile subscriber as well as the paging of the subscriber are not possible. The GPRS MS is seen as not reachable in this case.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the GPRS Attach procedure.

6.1.1.2 STANDBY State

In STANDBY state, the subscriber is attached to GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

Pages for data or signalling information transfers may be received. It is also possible to receive pages for the CS services via the SGSN. Data reception and transmission are not possible in this state.

The MS performs GPRS Routeing Area (RA) and GPRS cell selection and re-selection locally. The MS executes mobility management procedures to inform the SGSN when it has entered a new RA. The MS does not inform the SGSN on a change of cell in the same RA. Therefore, the location information in the SGSN MM context contains only the GPRS RAI for MSs in STANDBY state.

The MS may initiate activation or deactivation of PDP contexts while in STANDBY state. A PDP context shall be activated before data can be transmitted or received for this PDP context.

The SGSN may have to send data or signalling information to an MS in STANDBY state. The SGSN then sends a Paging Request in the routeing area where the MS is located if PPF is set. If PPF is cleared, then paging is not done. The MM state in the MS is changed to READY when the MS responds to the page, and in the SGSN when the page response is received. Also, the MM state in the MS is changed to READY when data or signalling information is sent from the MS and, accordingly, the MM state in the SGSN is changed to READY when data or signalling information is received from the MS.

The MS or the network may initiate the GPRS Detach procedure to move to the IDLE state. After expiry of the mobile reachable timer the SGSN may perform an implicit detach in order to return the MM contexts in the SGSN to IDLE state. The MM and PDP contexts may then be deleted.

6.1.1.3 READY State

In READY state, the SGSN MM context corresponds to the STANDBY MM context extended by location information for the subscriber on cell level. The MS performs mobility management procedures to provide the network with the actual selected cell. GPRS cell selection and re-selection is done locally by the MS, or may optionally be controlled by the network.

An identifier of the cell, the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC, is included in the BSSGP header of the data packet from the MS, see GSM 08.18.

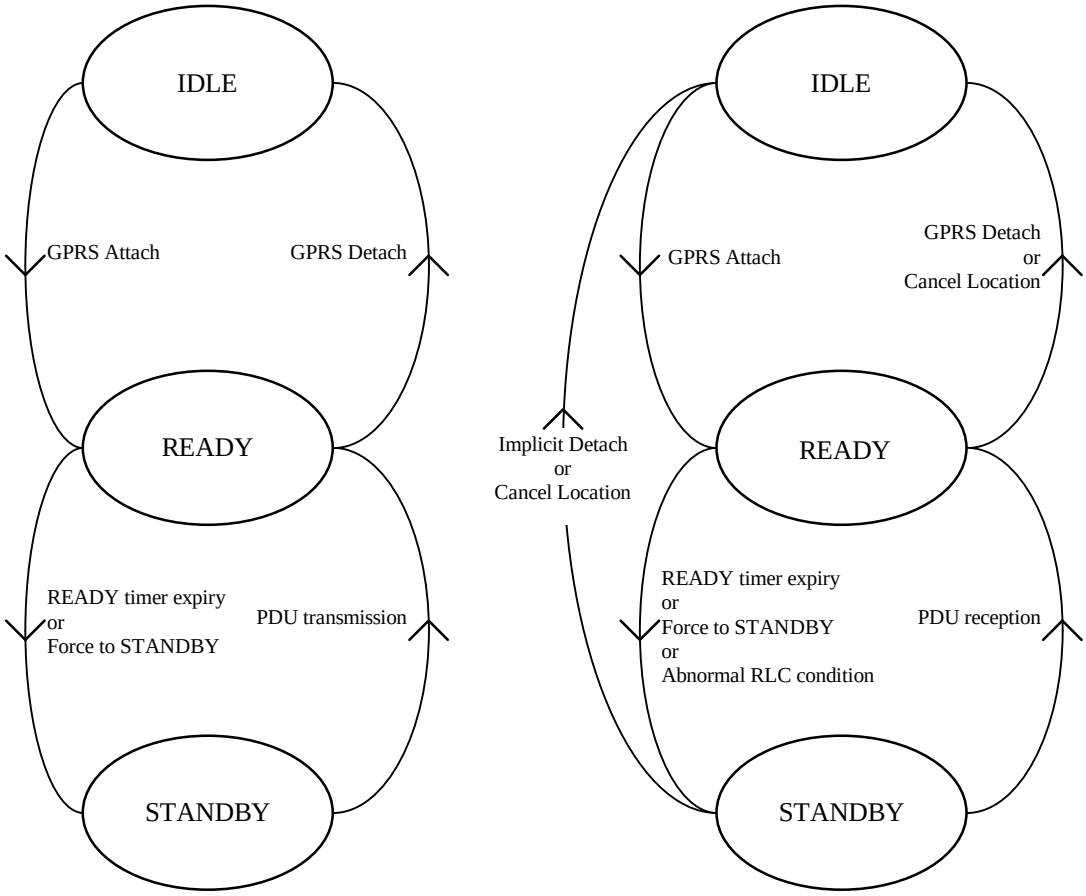
The MS may send and receive PDP PDUs in this state. The network initiates no GPRS pages for an MS in READY state, pages for other services may be done via the SGSN. The SGSN transfers downlink data to the BSS responsible for the subscriber's actual GPRS cell.

The MS may activate or deactivate PDP contexts while in READY state.

Regardless if a radio resource is allocated to the subscriber or not, the MM context remains in the READY state even when there is no data being communicated. The READY state is supervised by a timer. An MM context moves from READY state to STANDBY state when the READY timer expires. In order to move from READY state to IDLE state, the MS initiates the GPRS Detach procedure.

6.1.1.4 State Transitions and Functions

The movement from one state to the next is dependent on the current state (IDLE, STANDBY, or READY) and the event occurred (e.g., GPRS attach).



MM State Model of MS MM State Model of SGSN

Figure 16: Functional Mobility Management State Model

Figure 16 describes the following state transitions:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- GPRS Attach: The MS requests access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN.

Moving from STANDBY to IDLE:

- Implicit Detach: The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN shall return to IDLE and INACTIVE state. The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN may be deleted. The GGSN PDP contexts shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

Moving from STANDBY to READY:

- PDU transmission: The MS sends an LLC PDU to the SGSN, possibly in response to a page.

- PDU reception: The SGSN receives an LLC PDU from the MS.

Moving from READY to STANDBY:

- READY timer expiry: The MS and the SGSN MM contexts return to STANDBY state.

- Force to STANDBY: The SGSN indicates an immediate return to STANDBY state before the READY timer expires.

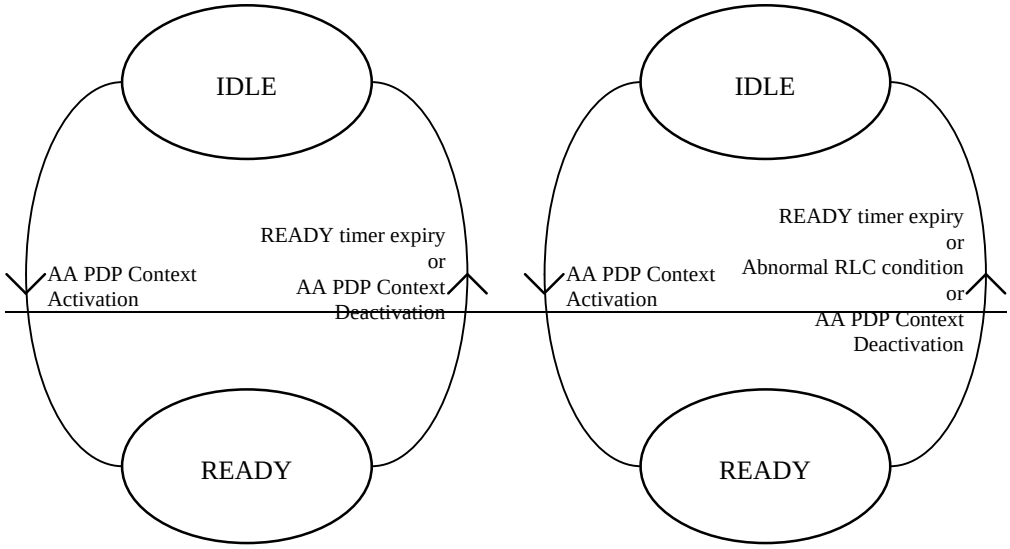
- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context returns to STANDBY state in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- GPRS Detach: The MS or the network requests that the MM contexts return to IDLE state and that the PDP contexts return to INACTIVE state. The SGSN may delete the MM and PDP contexts. The PDP contexts in the GGSN shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

~~For anonymous access, a reduced Mobility Management State Model consisting of IDLE and READY states is used. The AA MM state machine is independently handled by the MS and the network and may coexist with an IMSI based MM state machine. Several AA MM state machines may coexist in the same MS and SGSN simultaneously.~~



AA MM State Model of MS AA MM State Model of SGSN

~~Figure 17: Functional Anonymous Access Mobility Management State Model~~

~~Figure 17 describes the following state transitions for anonymous access:~~

~~Moving from IDLE to READY:~~

- ~~AA PDP Context Activation: The MS requests an anonymous access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN, and PDP contexts are established at the MS, the SGSN, and a GGSN.~~

~~Moving from READY to IDLE:~~

- ~~READY timer expiry: The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN are deleted.~~

- ~~Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context shall be deleted in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.~~

- ~~AA PDP Context Deactivation: The network (either the SGSN or the GGSN) initiates the AA PDP Context Deactivation procedure, e.g., due to malicious usage of the anonymous service. The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN shall be deleted.~~

6.1.2 Mobility Management States for UMTS

6.1.2.1 PMM-DETACHED State

In the PMM-DETACHED state there is no communication between the MS and the 3G-SGSN. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routeing information for the MS. The MS MM state machine does not react on system information related to the 3G-SGSN. The MS is not reachable by a 3G-SGSN, as the MS location is not known.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the PS Attach procedure. When the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing the PS attach, the state changes to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN and in the MS. The PS signalling connection is made up of two parts; an RRC connection and an Iu connection.

6.1.2.2 PMM-IDLE State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a routeing area. Paging is needed in order to reach the MS, e.g., for signalling. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

The MS shall perform a routeing area update if the RA changes. Signalling towards the HLR is needed if the 3G-SGSN does not have an MM context for this MS.

The MS and 3G-SGSN shall enter the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

PS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED. The 3G-SGSN may perform an implicit PS detach any time after the MS reachable timer expiry. The MS's MM context is deleted, preferably after a certain (implementation dependent) time. The HLR may be informed about the deletion (see subclause "Purge Function").

6.1.2.3 PMM-CONNECTED State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a serving RNC. In the PMM-CONNECTED state, the location of the MS is tracked by the serving RNC. The MS performs the routeing area update procedure when RAI in the MM system information changes.

When an MS and a 3G-SGSN are in the PMM-CONNECTED state, a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

In the 3G-SGSN, PS signalling connection release or failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC" changes the state to PMM-IDLE.

The MS shall enter the PMM-IDLE state when its PS signalling connection to the 3G-SGSN has been released or broken. This release or failure is explicitly indicated by the RNC to the MS or detected by the MS (RRC connection failure). The radio connection shall also be released if a URA update fails because of "RRC connection not established", or if the URA update timer expires while the MS is out of coverage.

After a signalling procedure (e.g., routeing area update), the 3G-SGSN may decide to release the PS signalling connection, after which the state is changed to PMM-IDLE.

PS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED.

6.1.2.4 State Transitions and Functions

The figure below introduces the MM states for a UMTS subscriber (PMM). The states and activations are further described below.

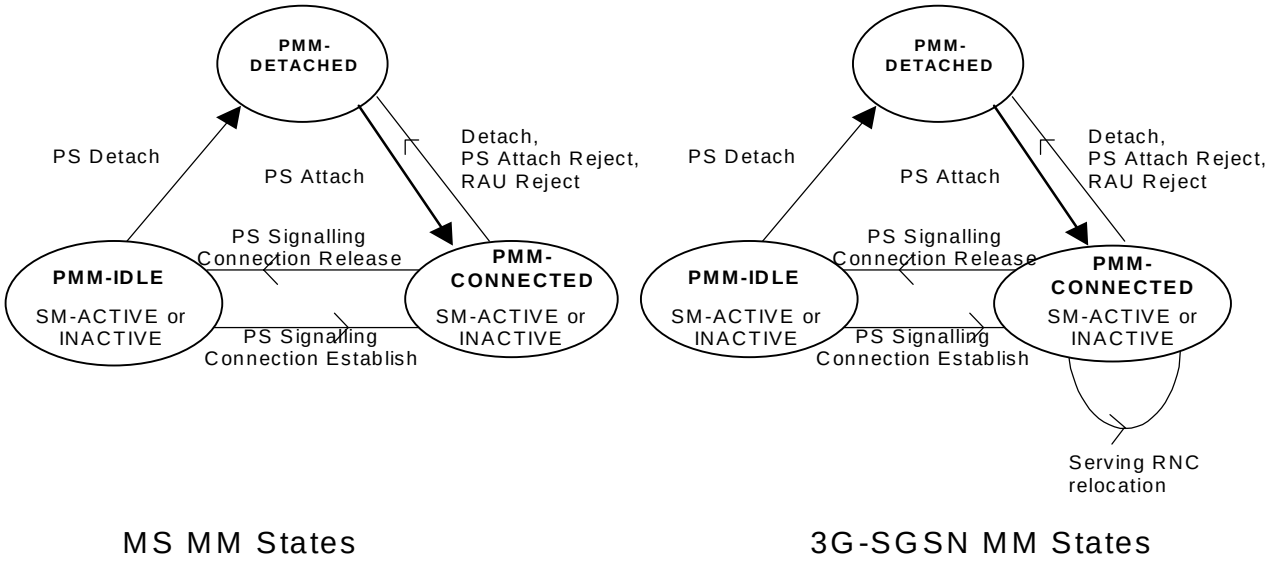


Figure 18: PMM State Model

NOTE: In both the PMM-IDLE and the PMM-CONNECTED states, session management may or may not have activated a PDP context. The consequence is that in PMM-CONNECTED state, only a signalling connection may be established. In PMM-IDLE state, a PDP context may be established, but no corresponding connection over the Iu interface nor the radio are established.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- PS Attach: Th MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing a PS attach. If the PS attach is accepted an MM context is created in MS.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- PS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a PS detach or after the network-initiated PS detach is performed. The MM context in the MS may be deleted.

- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

- PS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a PS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- Implicit PS Detach: The MM context shall locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state, e.g., in the case of removal of the battery, the USIM, or the GSIM from the TE.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Attach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and 3G-SGSN for performing a PS attach. If the PS attach is accepted, an MM context is created in 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a PS detach or after the network-initiated PS detach is performed. The MM context in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted.

- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected.

- PS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when a PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a PS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- Implicit PS Detach: The MM context may locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state after expiry of the MS Reachable timer. The MM and PDP context(s) in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted, preferably after an implementation-dependent time.

6.1.2.4.1 Error Cases

In case of an error, the PMM state of the MS and the 3G-SGSN may lose synchronisation. In this case the MS may be in the PMM-IDLE state while the 3G-SGSN is in the PMM-CONNECTED state.

NOTE: The opposite (MS in the PMM-CONNECTED state and SGSN in the PMM-IDLE state) shall never happen because the 3G-SGSN may not have the RAI where the MS is really located, so downlink transfer is impossible until the periodic URA update timer expires.

This situation is recovered by a successful RAU moving the MS to the PMM-CONNECTED state, or by a failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC", triggering a paging procedure from the 3G-SGSN.

NOTE: An RNC shall not release the Iu connection if it could not inform the MS that the radio connection was released.

6.2 Mobility Management Timer Functions

6.2.1 READY Timer Function for GPRS

The READY timer function maintains the READY timer in the MS and SGSN. The READY timer controls the time an MS remains in READY state in the MS and the SGSN. The READY timer shall be reset and begin running in the MS when an LLC PDU is transmitted, and in the SGSN when an LLC PDU is correctly received. When the READY timer expires, the MS and SGSN MM contexts shall return to STANDBY state. ~~In case of anonymous access the MM context shall be deleted.~~

The length of the READY timer shall be the same in the MS and SGSN. The initial length of the READY timer shall be defined by a default value. The SGSN, and only the SGSN, may change the length of the READY timer by transmitting a new value in the Attach Accept~~,~~ or Routeing Area Update Accept~~, or AA PDP Context Accept~~ messages.

If the READY timer length is set to zero, the MS shall immediately be forced into STANDBY state. If the timer length is set to all 1s (binary), then the READY timer function shall be deactivated, i.e., the timer no longer runs and the MS remains in READY state.

6.2.2 Periodic RA Update Timer Function

The Periodic RA Update Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the MS. The length of the periodic RA update timer is sent in the Routeing Area Update Accept or Attach Accept message. The periodic RA update timer is unique within an RA. Upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall start a periodic routeing area update procedure.

NOTE: An MS is said to be in packet domain coverage if it can access packet domain services. These services may be provided by GPRS or by UMTS.

If the MS is in coverage but out of packet domain coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires, then, if the MS is CS-attached to a network in network operation mode I, the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started immediately. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was CS-attached, regardless of the network operation mode, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet domain coverage.

If the MS is out of coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires then:

- if the MS is both CS and PS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode I, then the combined RA / LA update procedure with CS attach requested shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage;

- if the MS is both CS- and PS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode II or III, or if a PS only-attached MS returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services, then the periodic RA update procedure shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage; or

- if the MS returns to coverage in a cell that does not support packet-domain services, and if the MS is CS-attached, then the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage in that cell. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was CS-attached, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost packet-domain coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of packet-domain coverage, then, the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of coverage, then the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to coverage.

6.2.3 Mobile Reachable Timer Function

The Mobile Reachable Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the SGSN. The mobile reachable timer shall be slightly longer than the periodic RA update timer used by an MS.

The mobile reachable timer is stopped when the READY state or PMM-CONNECTED state is entered. The mobile reachable timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY or PMM-IDLE.

If the mobile reachable timer expires, the SGSN shall clear PPF. Typically, in GPRS, this causes the SGSN to stop sending GPRS paging or CS paging messages to the MS, but other features (e.g., MSC/VLR-based call forwarding) may happen immediately. PPF is set when the next activity from the MS is detected. The MM and PDP contexts shall be kept in the SGSN.

When an MS first registers in an SGSN, then PPF is set.

6.3 Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR

The interactions described in this subclause shall be supported if the optional Gs interface is installed.

An association is created between SGSN and MSC/VLR to provide for interactions between SGSN and MSC/VLR. The association is created when the VLR stores the SGSN number and the SGSN stores the VLR number. The association is used for co-ordinating MSs that are both PS-attached and CS-attached.

The association supports the following actions:

- IMSI attach and detach via SGSN. This makes combined PS / CS attach and combined PS / CS detach possible, thus saving radio resources.
- Co-ordination of LA update and RA update, including periodic updates, thus saving radio resources. A combined RA / LA update is sent from the MS to the SGSN. SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR.
- Paging for a CS connection via the SGSN.
- Alert procedures for non-PS services.
- Identification procedure.
- MM Information procedure.

6.3.1 Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is created at the following occasions:

- Combined CS / PS attach.
- GPRS attach when the MS is already CS-attached.
- Combined RA / LA update when the MS performs CS attach and is already PS-attached.

  Combined RA / LA update when an CS and PS-attached MS changes from an area of network operation mode II or III to an area of network operation mode I.

The association is initiated by the SGSN. The SGSN creates an association by sending a BSSAP+ message concerning a particular MS to the VLR. To get the VLR number, the SGSN translates the current RAI to a VLR number via a translation table. During a CS connection, an MS in class-B mode of operation (GPRS only) cannot perform PS attach nor routeing area updates, only MSs in class-A mode of operation can perform these procedures. If a PS attach was made during a CS connection, the association shall be initiated by a combined RA / LA update after the CS connection has been released.

The association is updated on the following occasions:

- When an MS changes VLR.
- When an MS changes SGSN.

The association is not updated during a CS connection.

When the MS is in idle mode (see GSM 03.22), the association is updated with the combined RA / LA updates procedure.

In relation with a CS connection, the association is managed in the following way:

MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation:

An MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation makes RA updates but no combined RA / LA updates during the CS connection. In the case when the MS changes SGSN, the SGSN (according to normal RA update procedures, see subclause "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update") updates the HLR and the GGSN, but not the VLR, about the new SGSN number.

In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection is released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. The association is also not updated during the CS connection.

After the CS connection has been released, a combined RA / LA update is performed (if there has been a change of RA, or if a PS attach was performed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I), and the association is updated according to combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". If the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, then the MS performs an LA update.

MS in class-B mode of operation (GPRS only):

An MS in class-B mode of operation does not make any RA updates during a CS connection. The SGSN number therefore remains the same during the CS connection and needs not be updated in the VLR. In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection has been released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. Therefore, the VLR number remains the same during the CS connection. After the CS connection has been released, the MS shall perform an RA update and an LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, or a combined RA / LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I. The association is updated according to the combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclauses "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update" and "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure".

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is removed at the following occasions:

- At IMSI detach.
- At GPRS detach.

When the MSC/VLR receives an LA update via the A or Iu interface from an MS for which an association exists, then the MSC/VLR shall remove the association without notifying the SGSN. When the SGSN receives a (non-combined) RA update from an MS for which an association exists, then the SGSN shall remove the association without notifying the MSC/VLR. When the MSC/VLR receives a BSSAP+ MS Unreachable message from the SGSN indicating that PPF is cleared, then the state of the association shall not be changed at the MSC/VLR.

6.3.2 Combined RA / LA Updating

When the MS is both CS and PS-attached, the LA and RA updating is done in a co-ordinated way to save radio resources if supported by the network operation mode. When the MS enters a new RA in network operation mode I, then the MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". The LA update is included in the RA update. The SGSN then forwards the LA update to the MSC/VLR. The MSC/VLR optionally returns a new VLR TMSI that is sent to the MS via the SGSN.

An MS in class-A mode of operation involved in a CS connection makes only RA updates and no combined RA / LA updates to the SGSN.

An MS in class-B mode of operation involved in a CS connection does not make any updates during the CS connection.

An MS in class-C mode of operation never makes combined RA / LA updates.

6.3.3 CS Paging for GPRS

When an MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. If the MS is in STANDBY state, then it is paged in the routeing area and in the null routeing area (see subclause "Routeing Area Identity "). If the MS is in READY state, then it is paged in the cell. The paging procedure is supervised in the MSC by a paging timer. The SGSN converts the MSC paging message into an SGSN paging message.

The CS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 19. Each step is explained in the following list.

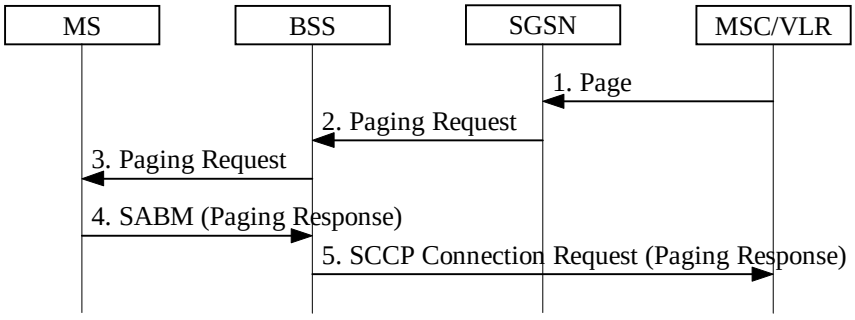


Figure 19: CS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a Page (IMSI, VLR TMSI, Channel Needed, Priority, Location Information) message from the MSC. Channel Needed is defined in GSM 08.08 [18] and indicates to the MS which type of CS channel is

needed to be requested in the response. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are optional parameters. Priority is the circuit-switched paging priority parameter as defined in GSM 08.08. The SGSN maps Priority to QoS.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, TLLI, VLR TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS) message to the BSS serving the MS. Area is derived from either the MS's MM context in the SGSN or, if no such information is available, from the Location Information received from the MSC/VLR. Area indicates a single cell for a READY state MS or a routeing area for a STANDBY state MS. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are included if received from the MSC. If Channel Needed was not received from the MSC, then a default Channel Needed parameter indicating circuit-switched paging is included by the SGSN. QoS indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. If the location area where the MS was last known to be located has an associated null routeing area, then the SGSN shall send an additional BSSGP Paging Request message to each BSS serving this null RA.

3) The BSS translates the incoming BSSGP Paging Request message into one radio Paging Request message per cell. If a dedicated radio resource is assigned to the MS in a cell, then the BSS transmits one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on this radio resource, without stopping possibly ongoing data transfers for the MS. Otherwise, the BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on the appropriate paging channel in each addressed cell. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a Paging Request message for a circuit-switched service the MS may accept to respond to this request and shall then follow the CS procedures for paging response (random access, immediate assignment, and paging response) as specified in GSM 04.08 [13].

5) When received at the BSS, the Paging Response message is sent to the MSC which shall then stop the paging response timer.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GPRS paging channel or on the GPRS traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GPRS paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GPRS traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 2: Network Operation Modes for GPRS

Mode	Circuit Paging Channel	GPRS Paging Channel	Paging co-ordination
I	Packet Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	Yes
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	
	Packet Data Channel	Not Applicable	
II	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	No
III	CCCH Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	No
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or
- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

6.3.4 CS Paging for UMTS

When an MS is both CS- and PS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. Paging is defined in subclause "Paging Initiated by CN".

6.3.4.1 Network Operation Modes for UMTS

The network operation mode is used to indicate whether the Gs interface is installed or not. When the Gs interface is present, MT can initiate combine procedures.

Table 3: Network Operation Modes for UMTS

Mode	Network configuration	Combined procedure by MT
I	Gs interface is present	Yes
II	Gs interface is not present	No

The network operation mode (mode I or II) shall be indicated as system information to the MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to CS domain services, to PS domain services, or to both. Furthermore, based on the mode of operation, the MS can choose whether it can initiate combine update procedures or separate update procedures, according to its capabilities.

NOTE: Network operation modes I and II for UMTS correspond to modes I and II, respectively, for GPRS. Mode III applies to GPRS and not to UMTS.

6.3.5 Non-PS Alert

The MSC/VLR may request an SGSN to report activity from a specific MS. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall send a BSSAP+ Alert Request (IMSI) message to the SGSN where the MS is currently GPRS-attached.

Upon reception of the Alert Request (IMSI) message, the SGSN shall set NGAF. If NGAF is set for an MS, the SGSN shall inform the MSC/VLR when the next activity from that MS (and the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached) is detected, and shall clear NGAF.

If the activity detected by the SGSN leads to a procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall just follow this procedure. If the activity detected by the SGSN does not lead to any procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall send an MS Activity Indication (IMSI) message towards the MSC/VLR.

6.3.6 MS Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both CS and PS attached, the VLR may perform the MS Information procedure via the SGSN. If the information requested by the VLR in the MS Information procedure is known by the SGSN, then the SGSN shall return this information to the VLR without interrogating the MS.

If the information requested is MS identity information (e.g., IMEI) that is not known by the SGSN but is known by the MS, then the SGSN shall interrogate the MS in a similar manner to that described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

The MS Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 20. Each step is explained in the following list.

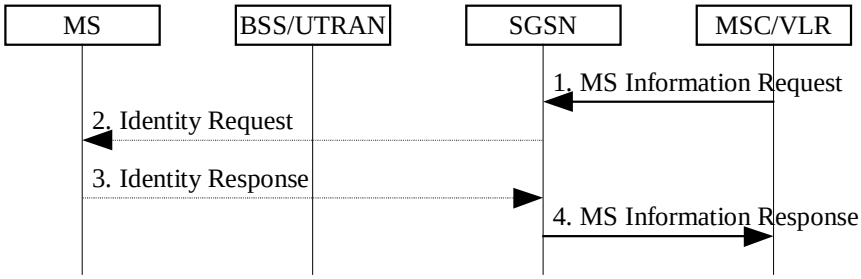


Figure 20: MS Information Procedure

1) The MSC/VLR sends an MS Information Request (IMSI, Information Type) message to the SGSN. Information Type indicates the information that the MSC/VLR is requesting for that IMSI.

2) If the information requested is not known by the SGSN but should be known by the MS, then the SGSN interrogates the MS in a similar manner to that described in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". The SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type) message to the MS.

3) The MS responds with an Identity Response (Mobile Identity) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN sends an MS Information Response (IMSI, Information) message to the MSC/VLR. Information contains the information requested by the MSC/VLR.

6.3.7 MM Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both CS and PS attached, the VLR may perform the MM Information procedure via the SGSN. The MM Information procedure is typically used to inform the MS about such things as the network name and the local timezone of the mobile.

The MM Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 21. Each step is explained in the following list.

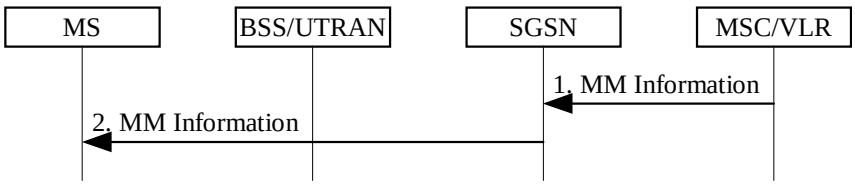


Figure 21: MM Information Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an MM Information (IMSI, Information) message from the MSC/VLR. Information is the information that the MSC/VLR is sending to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends an MM Information (Information) message to the MS including the information received by the MSC/VLR.

6.4 MM Procedures

For GPRS, the MM procedures shall use the LLC and RLC/MAC protocols for message transmission across the Gb and Um interfaces. The MM procedures shall provide information to the underlying layers to enable reliable transmission of MM messages on the Um interface. GSM 03.64 defines the mapping between LLC and the radio channels used.

For UMTS, the MM procedures shall use the RANAP and RRC protocols for message transmission across the Iu and Uu interfaces, respectively.

Furthermore, the MM procedures use MAP interfaces between SGSN and HLR (Gr), and between SGSN and EIR (Gf), and a BSSAP+ interface between SGSN and MSC/VLR (Gs).

User data can in general be transmitted during MM signalling procedures. User data transmitted during attach, authentication, and routeing area update procedures may be lost and may therefore have to be retransmitted. In order to minimise the need for retransmission, the MS and SGSN should not transmit user data during the attach, authentication, and routeing area update procedures.

6.5 PS Attach Function

An MS shall perform a PS Attach to the SGSN in order to obtain access to the PS services. If the MS is connected via a GPRS radio, it shall perform a GPRS Attach procedure. If the MS is connected via a UMTS radio access network, it shall perform a UMTS PS Attach procedure.

6.5.1 GPRS Attach Function

A GPRS attach is made to the SGSN. A GPRS-attached MS makes IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operation mode is I. In network operation modes II and III, or if the MS is not GPRS-attached, then the MS makes IMSI attach as already defined in GSM. An IMSI-attached MS in class-A mode of operation engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a GPRS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are GPRS attach and combined GPRS / IMSI attach.

At the RLC/MAC layer, the MS shall identify itself with a Local or Foreign TLLI if the MS is already GPRS-attached and is performing an IMSI attach. Otherwise, the MS shall identify itself with a Foreign TLLI, or a Random TLLI if a valid P-TMSI is not available. The Foreign or Random TLLI is used as an identifier during the attach procedure until a new P-TMSI is allocated.

After having executed the GPRS attach, the MS is in READY state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An IMSI-attached MS that can only operate in class-C mode of operation shall follow the normal IMSI detach procedure before it makes a GPRS attach. A GPRS-attached MS in class-C mode of operation shall always perform a GPRS detach before it makes an IMSI attach.

If the network operates in mode I (see subclause "Paging Co-ordination"), then an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

If the network operates in mode II or III, then a GPRS-attached MS that has the capability to be simultaneously GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the (non-combined) Routeing Area Update procedures, and either:

- access the non-GPRS common control channels for CS operation (the way that CS operation is performed in parallel with GPRS operation is an MS implementation issue outside the scope of the present document); or
- if CS operation is not desired, depending on system information that defines whether or not explicit detach shall be used, either:
  - avoid all CS signalling (in which case the MS may be implicitly IMSI detached after a while); or
  - perform an explicit IMSI detach via the non-GPRS common control channels (if the MS was already IMSI-attached).

The Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 22. Each step is explained in the following list.

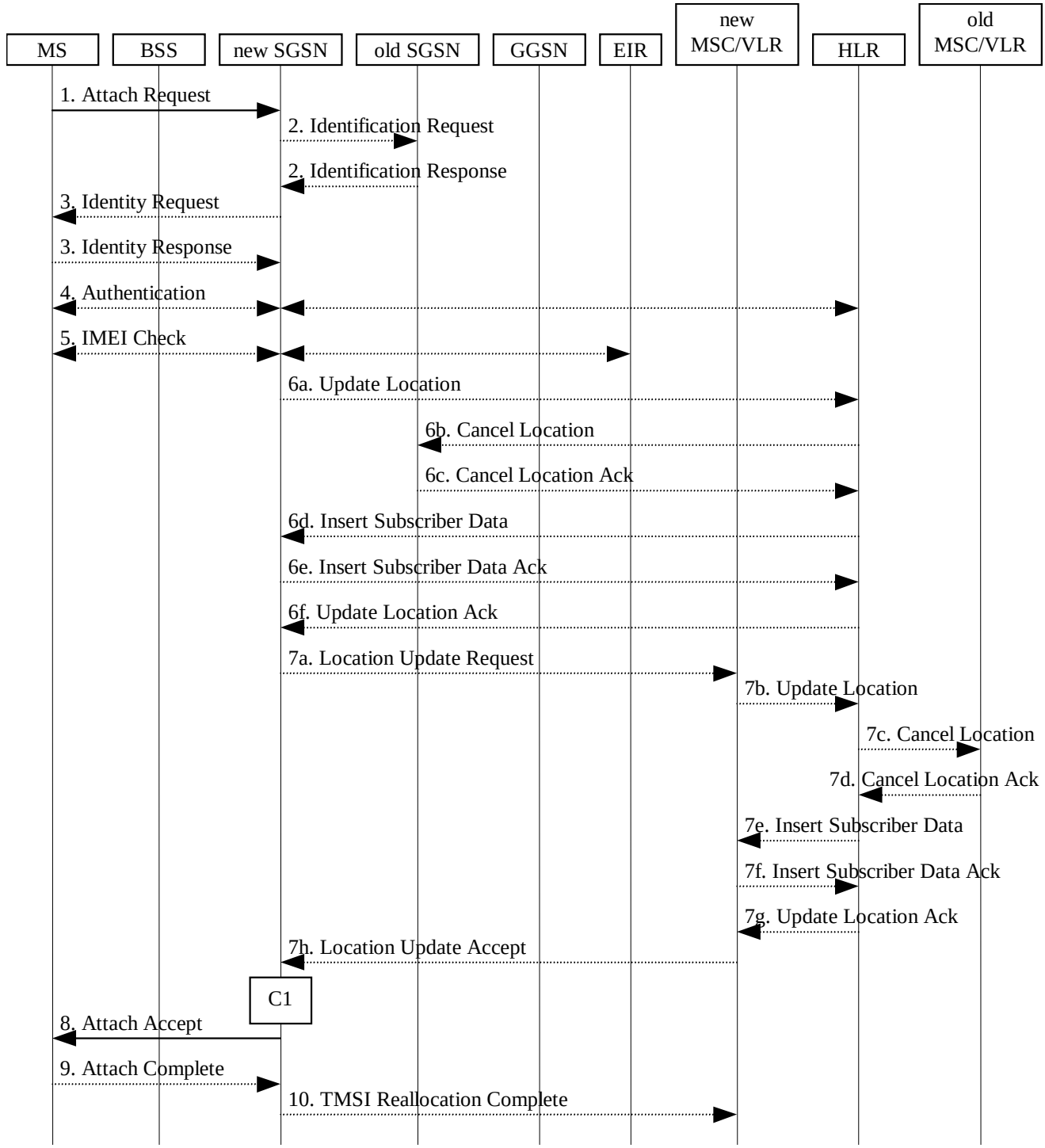


Figure 22: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure

1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Classmark, CKSN, Attach Type, DRX Parameters, old P-TMSI Signature) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. Classmark contains the MS's GPRS multislot capabilities and supported GPRS ciphering algorithms in addition to the existing classmark parameters defined in GSM 04.08. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests and channel assignments. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message.

2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication Triplets). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Attach Type indicated combined GPRS / IMSI attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

   b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

   c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.5.2 UMTS PS Attach Function

[It is an outstanding task to merge this subclause with "GPRS Attach Function".]

A PS-attached MS makes a CS attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operates in mode I. In network operates in mode II, or if the MS is not PS-attached, then the MS makes a normal CS attach. A CS-attached MS engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) PS Attach procedure when it performs a PS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are PS attach and combined PS / CS attach.

After having executed the PS attach, the MS is in the PMM-CONNECTED state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An CS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall follow the normal CS detach procedure before it makes a PS attach. A PS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall perform a PS detach before it makes a CS attach.

The Combined PS / CS Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 22. Each step is explained in the following list.

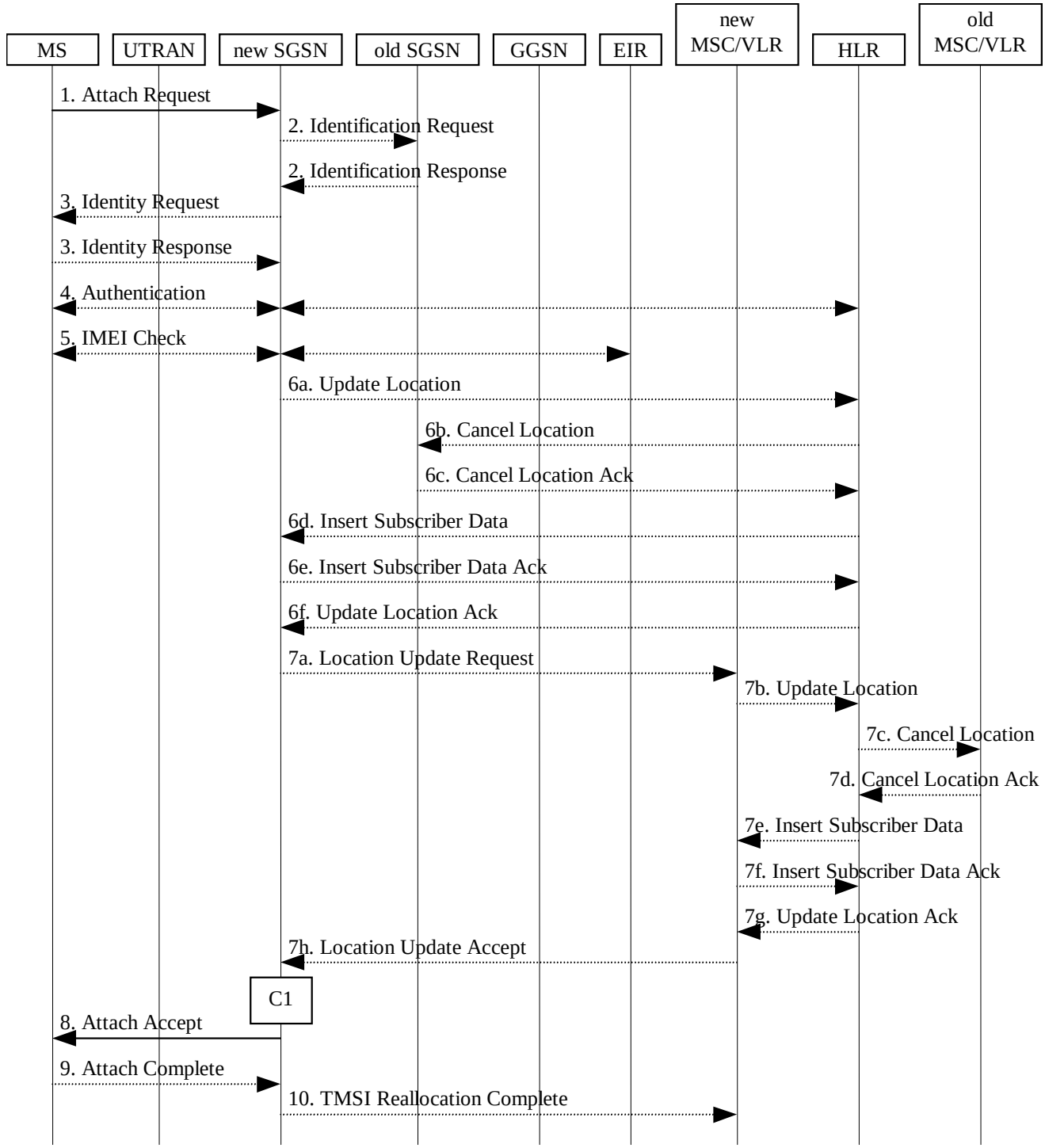


Figure 23: Combined PS / CS Attach Procedure

1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Core Network Classmark, KSI, Attach Type, old P-TMSI Signature, Follow on request) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. KSI shall be included if the MS has valid security parameters. Core Network Classmark is describe in subclause "Core Network Classmark". Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the PS Attach procedure. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., PS attach only, PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach.

If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication vector). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate CS attach if Attach Type indicated combined PS / CS attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

   b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

   c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

   h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.6 Detach Function

The PS Detach procedure allows:

- an MS to inform the network that it does not want access the SGSN-based services any longer; and
- the network to inform an MS that it does not have access to the SGSN-based services any more.

The Detach function allows an MS to inform the network that it wants to make a PS and/or CS detach, and it allows the network to inform an MS that it has been PS-detached or CS-detached by the network.

The different types of detach are:

- CS detach;
- PS detach; and
- combined PS / CS detach (MS-initiated only).

The MS is detached either explicitly or implicitly:

- Explicit detach: The network or the MS explicitly requests detach.
- Implicit detach: The network detaches the MS, without notifying the MS, a configuration-dependent time after the mobile reachable timer expired, or after an irrecoverable radio error causes disconnection of the logical link.

In the explicit detach case, a Detach Request (Cause) is sent by the SGSN to the MS, or by the MS to the SGSN.

The MS can make a CS detach in one of two ways depending on if it is PS-attached or not:

- A PS-attached MS sends a Detach Request message to the SGSN, indicating a CS detach. This can be made in combination with PS detach.
- An MS that is not PS-attached makes the CS detach as already defined in GSM or UMTS.

In the MO Detach Request message there is an indication to tell if the detach is due to switch off or not. The indication is needed to know whether a Detach Accept message should be returned or not.

In the network-originated Detach Request message there may be an indication to tell the MS that it is requested to initiate PS Attach and PDP Context Activation procedures for the previously activated PDP contexts.

6.6.1 MS-Initiated Detach Procedure

The MS-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the MS is illustrated in Figure 24. Each step is explained in the following list.

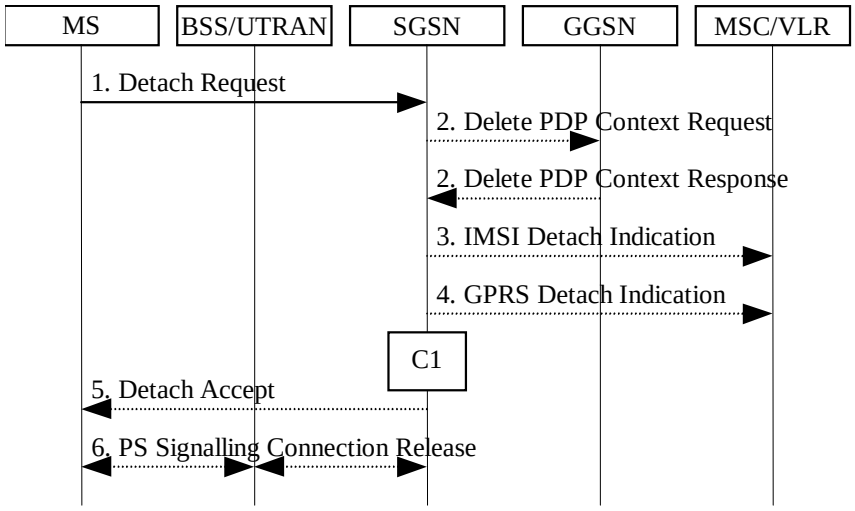


Figure 24: MS-Initiated Combined PS / CS Detach Procedure

1) The MS detaches by sending Detach Request (Detach Type, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Switch Off) to the SGSN. Detach Type indicates which type of detach that is to be performed, i.e., PS Detach only, CS Detach only or combined PS and CS Detach. Switch Off indicates whether the detach is due to a switch off situation or not. For UMTS, the Detach Request message includes P-TMSI and P-TMSI Signature. P-TMSI Signature is used to check the validity of the Detach Request message. If P-TMSI Signature is not valid or is not included, then authentication procedure should be performed.

2) If PS detach, the active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID).

3) If CS detach, the SGSN sends an IMSI Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR.

4) If the MS wants to remain CS-attached and is doing a PS detach, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) If Switch Off indicates that the detach is not due to a switch off situation, the SGSN sends a Detach Accept to the MS.

6) If the MS was PS detached, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2 Network-Initiated Detach Procedure

6.6.2.1 SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the SGSN is illustrated in Figure 25. Each step is explained in the following list.

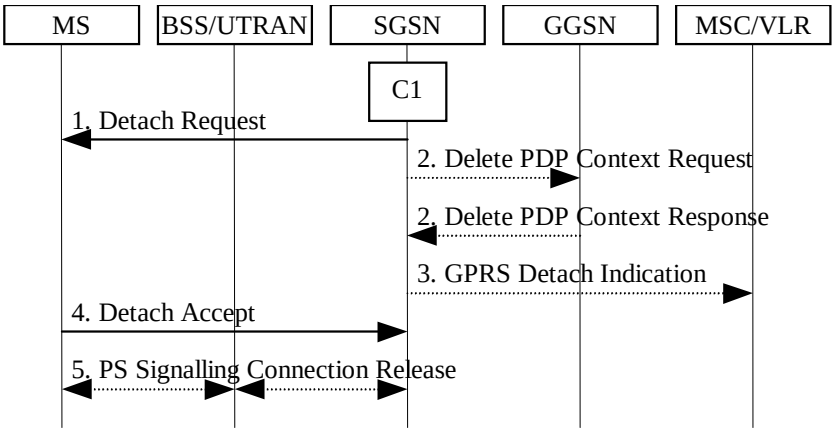


Figure 25: SGSN-Initiated PS Detach Procedure

1) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type indicates if the MS is requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation for the previously activated PDP contexts. If so, the attach procedure shall be initiated when the detach procedure is completed.

2) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

3) If the MS was both CS- and PS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

4) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 1.

5) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2.2 HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure

The HLR-Initiated Detach procedure is initiated by the HLR. The HLR uses this procedure for operator-determined purposes to request the removal of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts at the SGSN. The HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure is illustrated in Figure 26. Each step is explained in the following list.

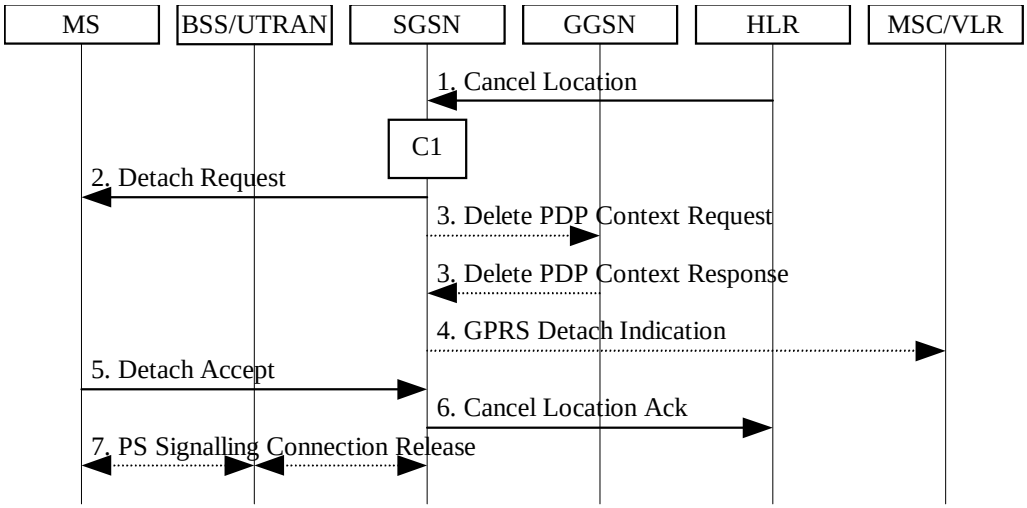


Figure 26: HLR-Initiated PS Detach Procedure

1) If the HLR wants to request the immediate deletion of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts from the SGSN, the HLR shall send a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Subscription Withdrawn.

2) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type shall indicate that the MS is not requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation.

3) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

4) If the MS was both CS- and PS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 2.

6) The SGSN shall confirm the deletion of the MM and PDP contexts with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

7) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.7 Purge Function

The Purge function allows an SGSN to inform the HLR that it has deleted the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS. The SGSN may, as an implementation option, delete the MM and PDP contexts of an MS immediately after the implicit or explicit detach of the MS. Alternatively, the SGSN may keep for some time the MM and PDP contexts and the authentication triplets of the detached MS, so that the contexts can be reused at a later PS attach without accessing the HLR.

When the SGSN deletes the MM and PDP contexts, it shall initiate the Purge procedure as illustrated in Figure 27. Each step is explained in the following list.

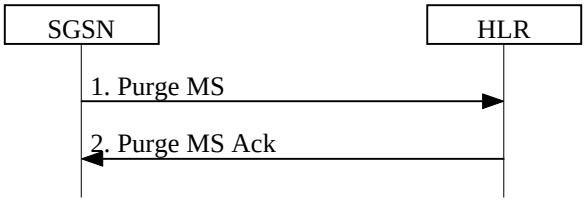


Figure 27: Purge Procedure

1) After deleting the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS, the SGSN sends a Purge MS (IMSI) message to the HLR.

2) The HLR sets the MS Purged for GPRS flag and acknowledges with a Purge MS Ack message.

6.8 Security Function

The Security function:

- Guards against unauthorised packet-domain service usage (authentication and service request validation).
- Provides user identity confidentiality (temporary identification and ciphering).
- Provides user data and signalling confidentiality (ciphering).
- Provides, for UMTS only, data integrity and origin authentication of signalling data (integrity protection).
- Provides, for UMTS only, authentication of the network by the MS.

Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 for GPRS and in UMTS 33.102 for UMTS.

6.8.1 Authentication

6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM

Authentication procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN. The GPRS Authentication procedure performs subscriber authentication, or selection of the ciphering algorithm and the synchronisation of the start of ciphering, or both. Authentication triplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment. Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6].

The Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 28. Each step is explained in the following list.

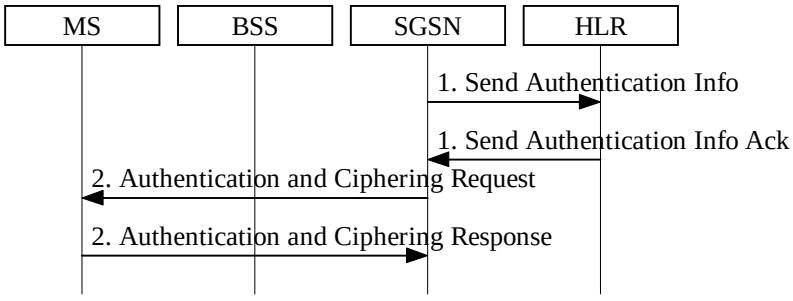


Figure 28: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM Procedure

1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored authentication triplets, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) The SGSN sends an Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, CKSN, Ciphering Algorithm) message to the MS. The MS responds with an Authentication and Ciphering Response (SRES) message.

The MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the Authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

[Conversion functions to be defined by TSG SA3.]

6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS

The UMTS authentication procedure is described in UMTS 33.102. The UMTS authentication procedure executed from the SGSN performs both the mutual authentication and security keys agreement. Authentication quintuplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon CS attach nor upon location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment.

The Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS procedure (USIM) is illustrated in Figure 29. Each step is explained in the following list.

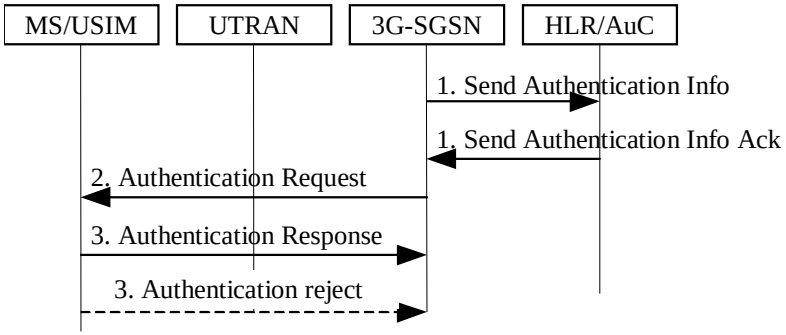


Figure 29: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not have previously stored UMTS Authentication Vectors (quintuplets), a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. Upon receipt of this message for a UMTS user, the HLR/AuC responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack message including an ordered array of quintuplets to the 3G-SGSN. Each quintuplet contains RAND, XRES, AUTN, CK, and IK. The generation of quintuplets in HLR/AuC for a UMTS user is performed as specified in UMTS 33.102.

2) At authentication of a UMTS user, the 3G-SGSN selects the next in-order quintuplet and transmits the RAND and AUTN, that belong to this quintuplet, to the MS in the Authentication Request (RAND, AUTN, KSN) message. The 3G-SGSN also selects a key sequence number, KSN, and includes this in the message.

3) At reception of this message, the USIM in the MS verifies AUTN and, if accepted, the USIM computes the signature of RAND, RES, in accordance with UMTS 33.102. If the USIM considers the authentication being successful the MS returns an Authentication Response (RES) message to the 3G-SGSN. The USIM in the MS computes then also a new Ciphering Key, CK, and a new Integrity Key, IK. These keys are stored together with the KSN until KSN is updated at the next authentication.

   If the USIM considers the authentication being unsuccessful, i.e., in case of an authentication synchronisation failure, the MS returns the Authentication Reject message to the 3G-SGSN. The actions then taken are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the used IK and CK are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a GSM system the USIM and the SGSN shall generate from the UMTS security keys IK and CK the GSM Kc by using the standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the old 3G-SGSN should generate the GSM Kc as described above and transfer this to the new SGSN. This will then give support for a change of SGSN without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplets are transferred in this case.

6.8.1.3 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS

GSM users roaming in a UMTS network are authenticated with the GSM authentication procedure.

The UMTS Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 30. Each step is explained in the following list.

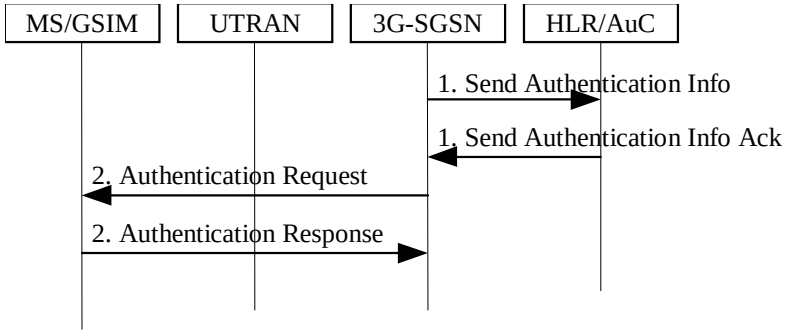


Figure 30: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not contain previously stored authentication parameters, then a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) At authentication in UMTS mode the 3G-SGSN selects an unused triplet and sends an Authentication Request (RAND) message to the MS. The GSIM then calculates the SRES and the GSM Kc. The MS returns an Authentication Response (SRES) message to the 3G-SGSN.

The 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

The MS shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102, i.e., the same algorithm as in the 3G-SGSN.

When changing SGSN the used Kc (i.e., the Kc of last used authentication triplet) is sent from the old 3G-SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused triplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

6.8.1.4 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in GSM

For authentication of a UMTS subscriber (USIM) in a GSM system three cases are possible:

a) The SGSN supports the GSM authentication procedure but not the UMTS authentication procedure.

b) The SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure.

c) Both the SGSN and the MS support the UMTS authentication procedure.

[It is an open issue whether it shall be possible to make a UMTS authentication also in GSM release 99.]

Case a)

When the SGSN supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber is performed using an authentication triplet produced by the HLR/AuC. The authentication of a UMTS subscriber by using a GSM authentication triplet is performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for HLR/AuC and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a UMTS system a new authentication using a UMTS authentication quintuplet is required.

[The requirements for this system change case need to be clarified.]

Case b)

When the SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber shall be performed using an authentication quintuplet produced by HLR/AuC. In this case the SGSN derives a GSM triplet from a UMTS quintuplet originally produced by HLR/AuC. The authentication procedure of the UMTS subscriber will then be performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for SGSN and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the IK and CK of the last used quintuplet are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

When changing to a UMTS system the UMTS CK and IK from the last used authentication quintuplet shall be used.

When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the used GSM Kc is transferred from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. This supports SGSN change without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplet is transferred in this case.

Case c)

FFS.

6.8.2 User Identity Confidentiality

6.8.2.1 User Identity Confidentiality for GPRS

A Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) identifies a GPRS user. The relationship between TLLI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN or built by the MS as described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

6.8.2.2 User Identity Confidentiality for UMTS

A Radio Network Temporary Identity (RNTI) identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the UTRAN. The relationship between RNTI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the UTRAN. A P-TMSI identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the SGSN. The relationship between P-TMSI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN.

6.8.2.3 P-TMSI Signature

P-TMSI Signature is optionally sent by the SGSN to the MS in Attach Accept and Routeing Area Update Accept messages. If the P-TMSI Signature has been sent by the SGSN to the MS since the current P-TMSI was allocated, then the MS shall include the P-TMSI Signature in the next Routeing Area Update Request, Detach Request, Service Request, and Attach Request for identification checking purposes. If the P-TMSI Signature was sent, then the SGSN shall compare the P-TMSI Signature sent by the MS with the signature stored in the SGSN. If the values do not match, the SGSN should use the security functions to authenticate the MS. If the values match or if the P-TMSI Signature is missing, the SGSN may use the security functions to authenticate the MS. The P-TMSI Signature parameter has only local significance in the SGSN that allocated the signature.

If ciphering is supported by the network, the SGSN shall send the P-TMSI Signature ciphered to the MS. Routeing Area Update Request and Attach Request, into which the MS includes the P-TMSI Signature, are not ciphered.

6.8.2.4 P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

The SGSN may reallocate the P-TMSI at any time. The reallocation procedure can be performed by the P-TMSI Reallocation procedure, or it can be included in the Attach or Routeing Area Update procedures.

The P-TMSI Reallocation procedure is illustrated in Figure 31. Each step is explained in the following list.

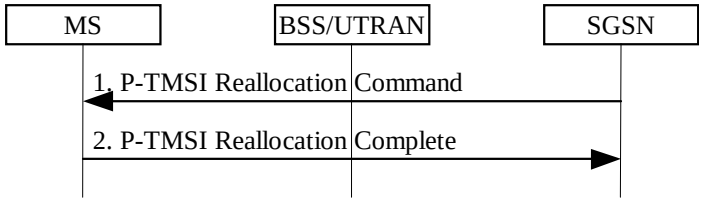


Figure 31: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a P-TMSI Reallocation Command (new P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI) message to the MS. P-TMSI Signature is an optional parameter that the MS, if received, shall return to the SGSN in the next Attach and Routeing Area Update procedures.

2) The MS returns a P-TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the SGSN.

6.8.3 User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality

6.8.3.1 Scope of Ciphering

The scope of GPRS ciphering is from the ciphering function in the SGSN to the ciphering function in the MS. Ciphering is done in the LLC layer, and from the perspective of the existing GSM MS-BTS radio path, an LLC PDU is transmitted as plain text.

The scope of UMTS ciphering is from the ciphering function in the UTRAN to the ciphering function in the MS.

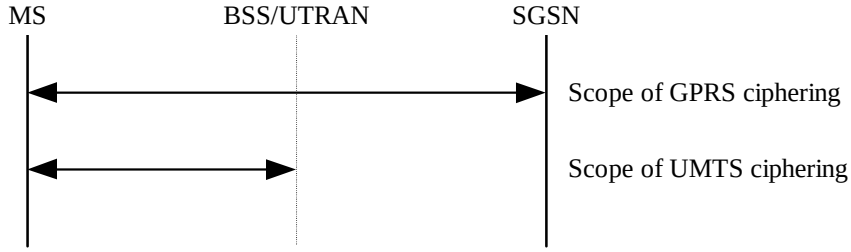


Figure 32: Scope of Ciphering

6.8.3.2 Ciphering Algorithm

GSM 01.61 [2] contains the requirements for the GPRS Encryption Algorithm (GEA). The GPRS ciphering key Kc is an input to the algorithm.. The standard key management procedures for the Kc shall be used.

UMTS ciphering is performed with the UMTS Encryption Algorithm (UEA). The UMTS Ciphering Key CK is an input to the algorithm.

6.8.3.3 Start of Ciphering

In GPRS, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response message is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in UMTS 33.102.

6.8.4 Identity Check Procedures

The Identity Check procedure is illustrated in Figure 33. Each step is explained in the following list.

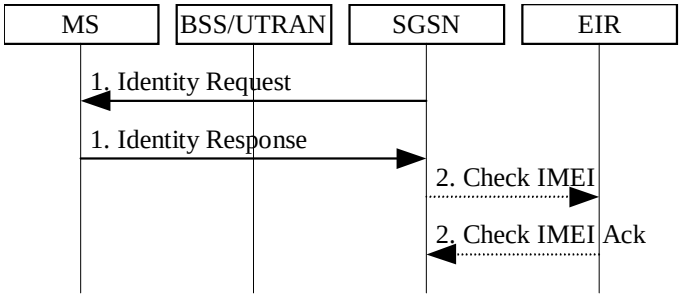


Figure 33: Identity Check Procedure

1) The SGSN sends Identity Request (Identity Type) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (Mobile Identity). In UMTS, the MS may choose to send its IMSI encrypted (FFS).

2) If the SGSN decides to check the IMEI against the EIR, it sends Check IMEI (IMEI) to EIR. The EIR responds with Check IMEI Ack (IMEI).

6.8.5 Data Integrity Procedure for UMTS

The Data Integrity procedure is performed between the MS and the UTRAN. It is applicable only to radio signalling. The UMTS integrity check is made with the UMTS Integrity Algorithm (UIA). The UMTS Integrity Key IK is an input to the algorithm. The start of the data integrity procedure is controlled by the security mode procedure as described in UMTS 33.102.

6.9 Location Management Function

The Location Management function:

- provides mechanisms for cell and PLMN selection;
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the Routeing Area for MSs in STANDBY, PMM-IDLE, READY, and PMM-CONNECTED states;
- provides a mechanism for the 2G-SGSN to know the cell identity for MSs in READY state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to know the URA identity or cell identity for MSs in PMM-CONNECTED state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to indicate to an MS in RRC Connected mode when a Routeing Area Update procedure shall be perform by providing the RAI; and
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the address of the Serving RNC handling a MS in PMM-CONNECTED state. This mechanism is the Serving RNC relocation procedure.

NOTE: The SGSN may not know the Routeing Area where the UMTS MS is physically located for an MS is in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-CONNECTED state is necessarily in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-IDLE state is in RRC Connected mode only if the MS is in CS MM-CONNECTED state.

In UMTS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on three levels (cell, URA, or RA), see 3G TS 23.121.

In GPRS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on two levels (cell or RA).

Routeing Area (RA) is defined in subclause "Routeing Area Identity".

6.9.1 Location Management Procedures for GPRS

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

The MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS's MM context. The MS detects that a new RA has been entered by periodically comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with that received from the new cell. The MS shall consider hysteresis in signal strength measurements.

When the MS camps on a new cell, possibly in a new RA, this indicates one of three possible scenarios:

- a cell update is required;
- a routeing area update is required; or
- a combined routeing area and location area update is required.

In all three scenarios the MS stores the cell identity in its MM context.

If the MS enters a new PLMN, the MS shall either perform a routeing area update, or enter IDLE state.

In network mode of operation II and III, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall perform the LA update first.

Routeing Area Update Request messages shall be sent unciphered, since in the inter SGSN routeing area update case the new SGSN shall be able to process the request.

6.9.1.1 Cell Update Procedure

A cell update takes place when the MS enters a new cell inside the current RA and the MS is in READY state. If the RA has changed, a routeing area update is executed instead of a cell update.

The MS performs the cell update procedure by sending an uplink LLC frame of any type containing the MS's identity to the SGSN. In the direction towards the SGSN, the BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC to all BSSGP frames, see GSM 08.18. A cell update is any correctly received and valid LLC PDU carried inside a BSSGP PDU containing a new identifier of the cell.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the new cell.

6.9.1.2 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when a PS-attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA, when the periodic RA update timer has expired, or, for GPRS, when a suspended MS is not resumed by the BSS (see subclause "Suspension of GPRS Services"). The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update.

~~An MS in READY state due to anonymous access shall not perform routeing area updates for the AA MM context. If the MS has entered a new routeing area, a new Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated. The old context is implicitly deleted upon expiry of the READY timer.~~

6.9.1.2.1 Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 34. Each step is explained in the following list.

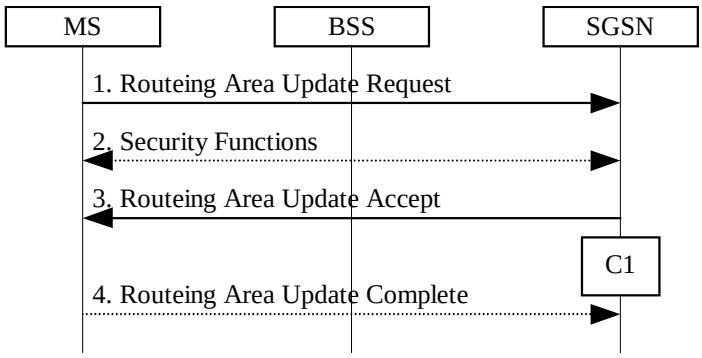


Figure 34: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN, see GSM 08.18.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) is returned to the MS.

4) If P-TMSI was reallocated, the MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.2.2 Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 35. Each step is explained in the following list.

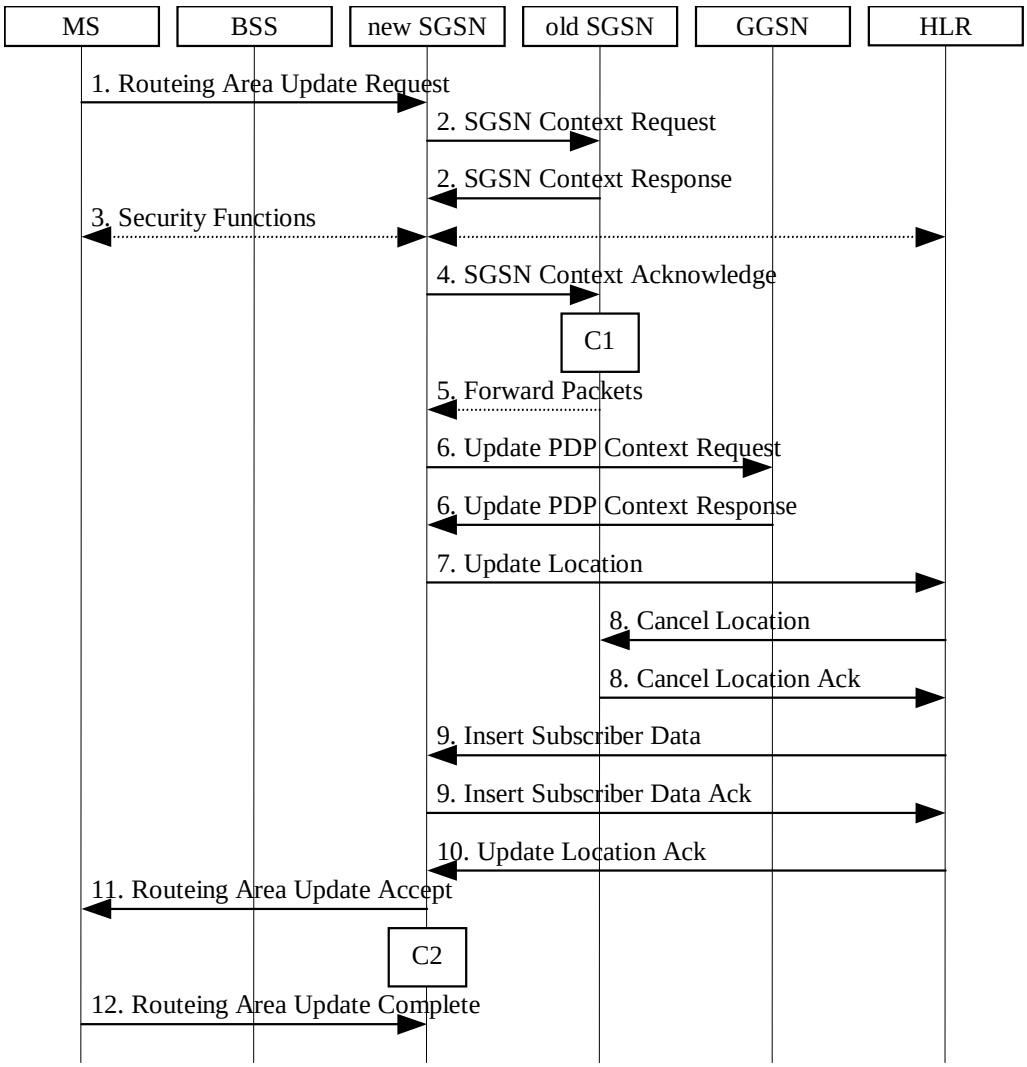


Figure 35: Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return Update PDP Context Response (TEID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

12) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3 Combined RA / LA Update Procedure

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see GSM 03.22), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

6.9.1.3.1 Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (intra SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 36. Each step is explained in the following list.

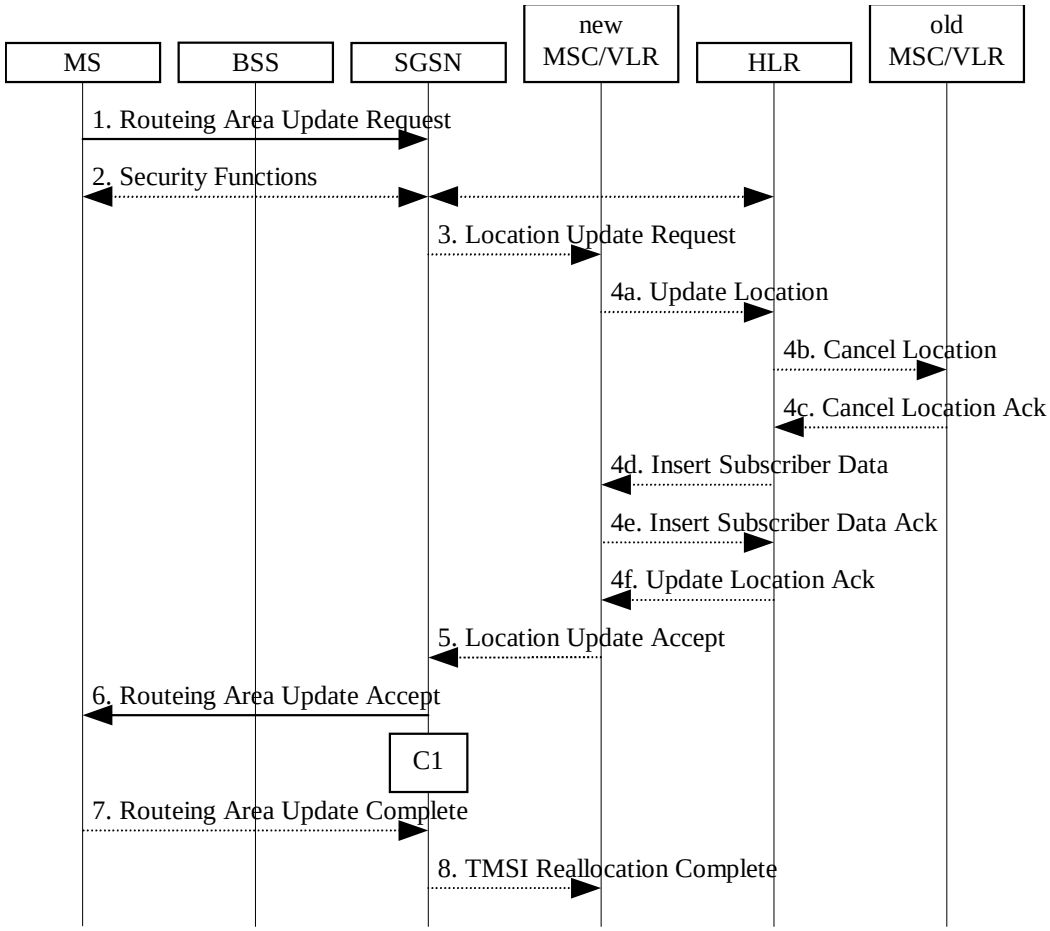


Figure 36: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. This procedure is defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

4) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

5) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

6) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. The SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

7) If a new P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was received, then the MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful Location Update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3.2 Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (inter SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 37. Each step is explained in the following list.

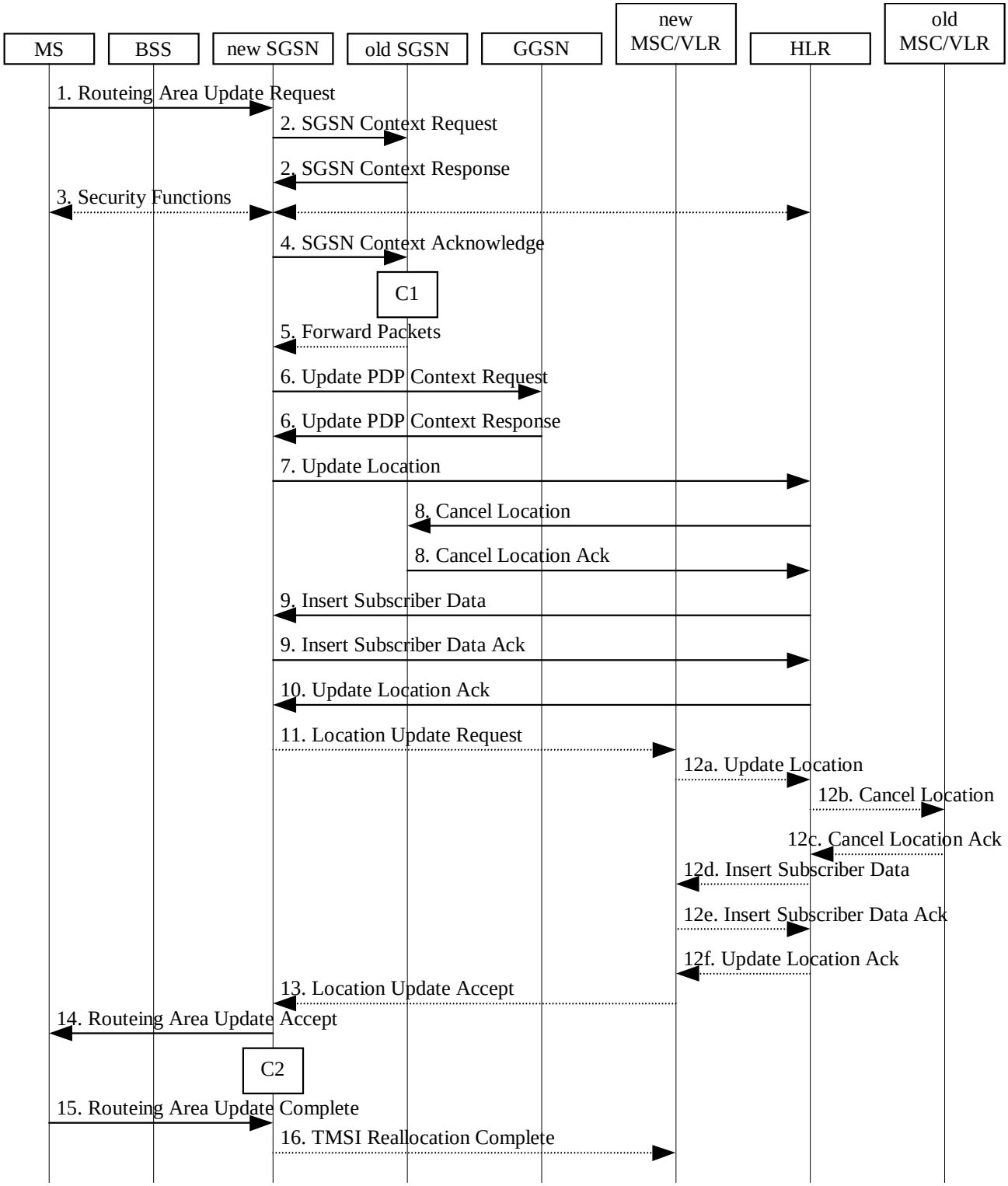


Figure 37: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address until the old MM context is cancelled, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the downlink transfer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon

receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 9). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

12) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

13) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

14) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

15) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

16) The new SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2 Location Management Procedures for UMTS

Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

In this specification, only the Location Management procedures related to the CN are described. These procedures are:

- a routeing area update procedure; and
- SERVING RNC relocation procedure.

An MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS. The MS detects that a RA Update shall be performed by comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with the RAI received from the network. In RRC-CONNECTED mode (PMM-CONNECTED state or CS MM CONNECTED state), the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the Serving RNC via an "MM information" message at the RRC layer. In RRC-IDLE state, the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the broadcasted system information at the RRC layer.

In network mode of operation II, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall start the LA update first. The MS should start RA Update procedure before the LA update is completed.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, an RA Update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA Update, either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the RA Update cases are contained in the procedure illustrated in Figure 38. Each step is explained in the following list.

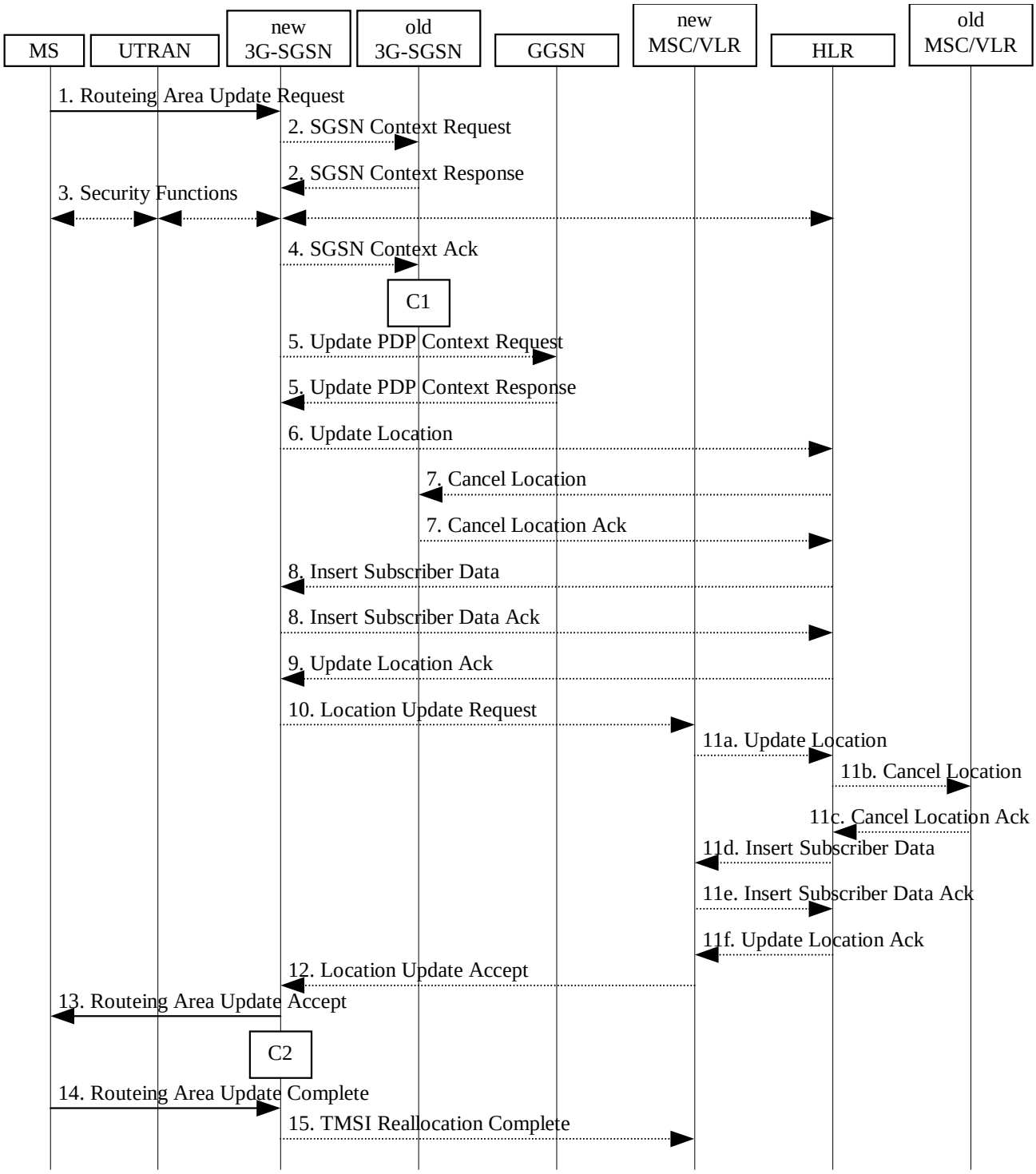


Figure 38: UMTS RA Update Procedure

1) The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:

   - RA Update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA;

- Periodic RA Update if the RA update is triggered by the expiry of the Periodic RA Update timer;
- Combined RA / LA Update if the MS is also CS attached and the LA update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR"); or
- Combined RA / LA Update with CS attach requested if the MS wants to perform an CS attach in network operation mode I.

The UTRAN shall add the Routeing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN [FFS].

NOTE: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

2) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old PTMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

4) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update, the new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

5) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier). Note: If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, the update PDP Context Request is sent as described in subclause "SRNC relocation".

6) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

7) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM context. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. It also ensures that the MM context is kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

8) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

9) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

10) If Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the association has to be established, and the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate CS attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 8). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

11) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

12) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

13) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM context for the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

14) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

15) The new SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

NOTE: Steps 11, 12, and 15, are performed only if step 9 is performed.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered up.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter PMM-DETACHED state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-PS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is

connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Figure 39 shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. Figure 40 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

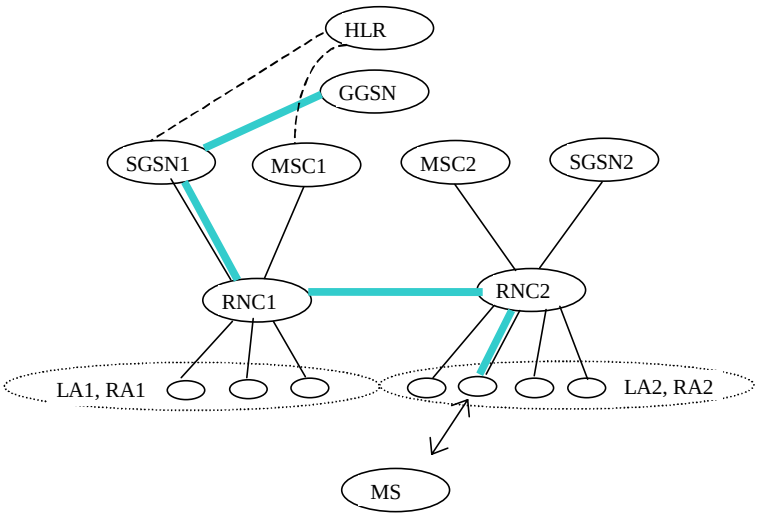


Figure 39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

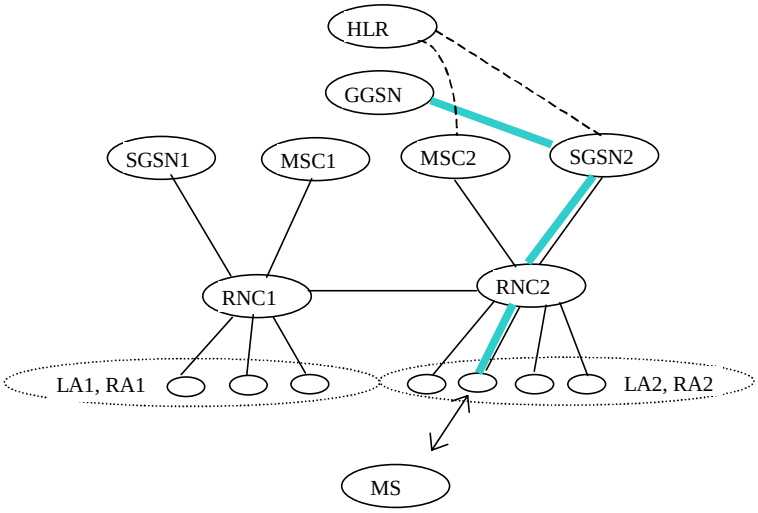


Figure 40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 41. Each step is explained in the following list.

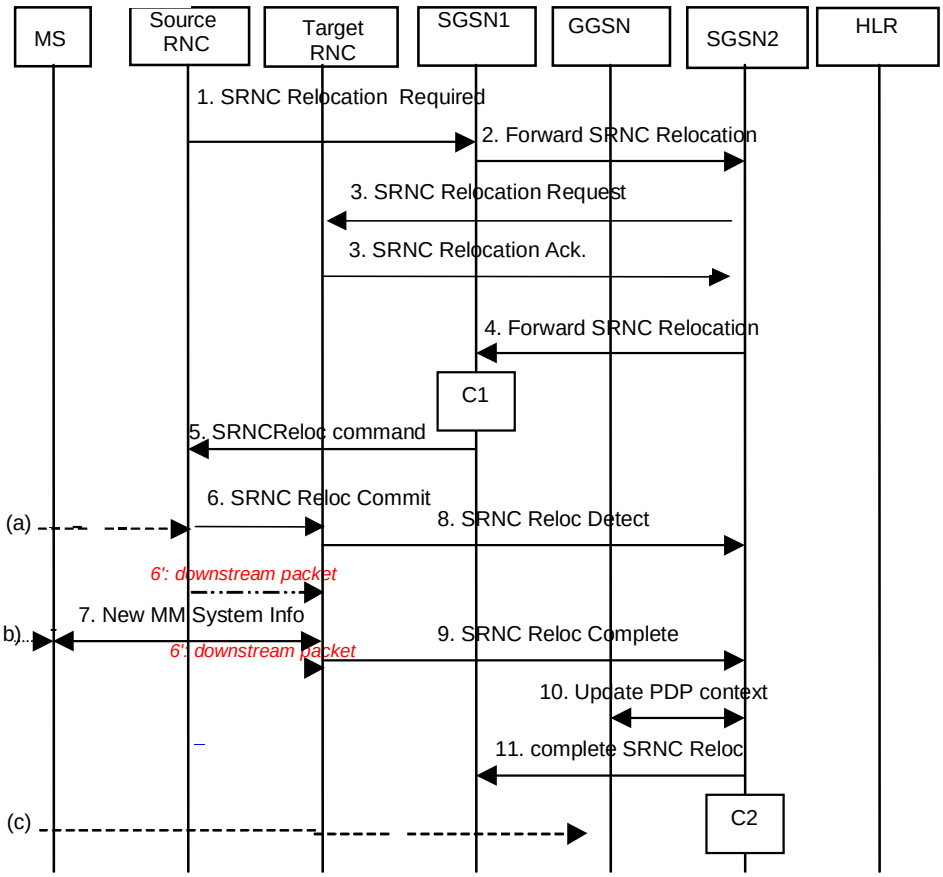


Figure 41: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.3 Periodic RA and LA Updates

All PS-attached MSs, except GPRS MSs in class-B mode of operation engaged in CS communication, shall perform periodic RA updates. MSs that are CS-attached and not PS-attached shall perform periodic LA updates. Periodic RA updates are equivalent to intra SGSN routeing area updates as described in subclause "Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update", with Update Type indicating periodic RA update. For MSs that are both CS-attached and PS-attached, the periodic updates depend on the mode of operation of the network:

- If the network operates in mode I, periodic RA updates shall be performed, and periodic LA updates shall not be performed. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall disable implicit detach for PS-attached MSs and instead rely on the SGSN to receive periodic RA updates. If periodic RA updates are not received in the SGSN and the SGSN detaches the MS, the SGSN shall notify the MSC/VLR by sending an IMSI Detach Indication message.

- If the network operates in mode II or mode III, both periodic RA updates and periodic LA updates shall be performed independently. RA updates are performed towards the SGSN, and LA updates are performed towards the MSC/VLR.

For GPRS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when an LLC PDU is sent since all sent LLC PDUs set the MM context state to READY. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY.

For UMTS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when the MM context enters the PMM-CONNECTED state. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to PMM-IDLE state.

If the MS could not successfully complete the periodic RA update procedure after a retry scheme while the MS was in PS coverage, then the MS shall wait a backoff time equal to the periodic LA update timer broadcast by the network before re-starting the periodic RA update procedure.

6.10 Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Function

This subclause applies to GPRS only.

Tunnelling of Messages (TOM) is an optional protocol layer that uses the LLC unacknowledged mode procedures to tunnel messages between the MS and the SGSN (see GSM 04.64). TOM uses two LLC SAPs for communication between the MS and the SGSN; one for high-priority messages and one for low-priority messages. A network that supports TIA/EIA-136 [49] shall support the TOM protocol and the Gs interface.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from an MS via the TOM protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a non-GSM MSC/VLR using the BSSAP+ protocol (see GSM 09.18). The specific Gs interface used by the SGSN is determined by the:

- RAI associated with the current location of the MS; and

- information in the TOM protocol header.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from a non-GSM MSC/VLR via the BSSAP+ protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a specific MS using the TOM protocol. The specific MS is determined by the SGSN based on the content of the BSSAP+ header.

The control plane between an MS and a non-GSM MSC/VLR that uses tunnelling procedures for non-GSM signalling is shown in Figure 42:

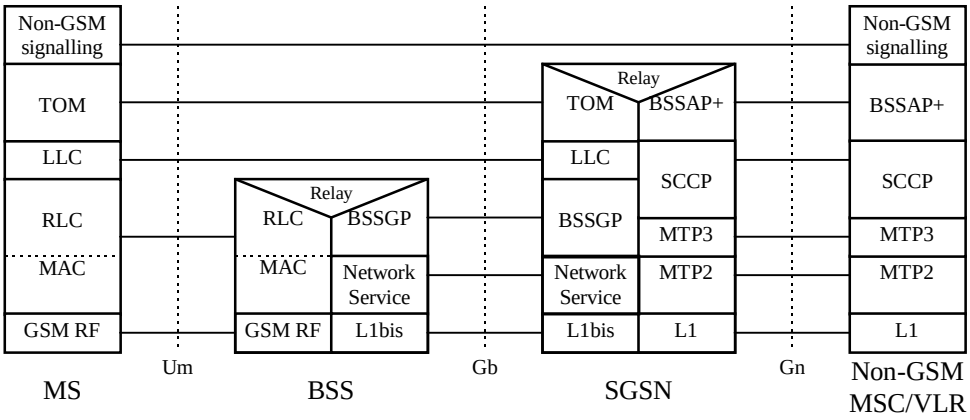


Figure 42: Control Plane MS - Non-GSM MSC/VLR

6.10.1 Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 43. Each step is explained in the following list.

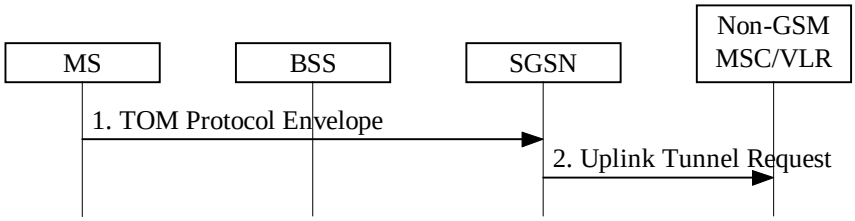


Figure 43: Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

1) The MS sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the SGSN either in ciphered or clear mode. The TOM protocol header contains information about the application using the TOM facility and any other TOM Protocol Discriminator-specific information. The TOM Protocol Envelope is received on one of the two LLC SAPs used for tunnelling of messages.

2) The SGSN identifies the non-GSM MSC/VLR to which to forward the non-GSM signalling message. It then sends a BSSAP+ Uplink Tunnel Request (IMSI, SGSN Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the identified non-GSM MSC/VLR. The Cipher parameter is set to cipher if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received by the LLC layer in ciphered form, otherwise it is set to not cipher. TOM Priority is set to high priority if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received on the high-priority LLC SAP, otherwise it is set to low priority.

6.10.2 Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 44. Each step is explained in the following list.

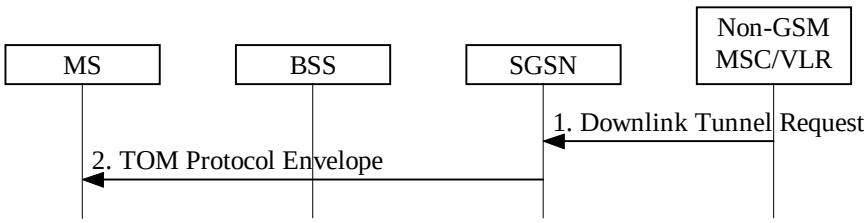


Figure 44: Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

1) The non-GSM MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Downlink Tunnel Request (IMSI, VLR Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the SGSN associated with the MS. TOM Priority indicates whether the SGSN shall select the high-priority or low-priority LLC SAP when forwarding the non-GSM signalling message to the MS. Cipher indicates whether or not the SGSN shall cipher the non-GSM signalling message before forwarding it to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the MS using the selected LLC SAP.

6.11 Subscriber Management Function

The Subscriber Management function provides a mechanism to inform the nodes about changes of the PS subscription data for a specific PS subscriber.

6.11.1 Subscriber Management Procedures

Whenever the PS subscription data is changed for a PS subscriber in the HLR, and the changes affect the PS subscription data stored in the SGSN, then the SGSN node shall be informed about these changes by means of the following procedures:

- Insert Subscriber Data procedure, used to add or modify PS subscription data in the SGSN; or
- Delete Subscriber Data procedure, used to remove PS subscription data in the SGSN.

6.11.1.1 Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the insertion and modification of general PS subscription data for a PS subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the insertion or modification of one or several new or existing PDP contexts in the SGSN. It should be noted that the modification may trigger a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". In particular, the following PDP context parameters may be modified by the HLR:

- QoS Profile Subscribed; and
- VPLMN Address Allowed.

The Insert Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 45. Each step is explained in the following list.

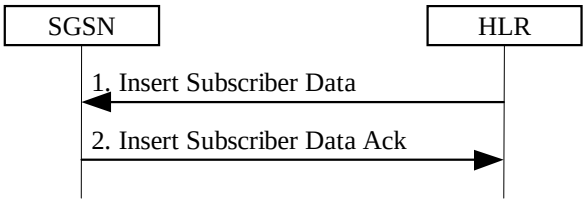


Figure 45: Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

1) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, PS Subscription Data) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN updates its PS subscription data and acknowledges the Insert Subscriber Data message by returning an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context that is included in PS Subscription Data the SGSN shall check whether it is a new, an active, or an inactive PDP context:

   - For a new or inactive PDP context, no further action is required except storage in the SGSN.
   - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall in addition compare the new QoS Subscribed with QoS Negotiated and shall, if necessary, initiate a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". Furthermore, if VPLMN Address Allowed is changed, the SGSN shall, if necessary (e.g., if the PDP context is currently routed via a GGSN in the VPLMN and VPLMN Address Allowed is changed to not allowed), initiate a PDP Context Deactivation procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures".

6.11.1.2 Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the deletion of general PS subscription data for a subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the deletion of one or several PDP contexts from the SGSN.

The Delete Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 46. Each step is explained in the following list.

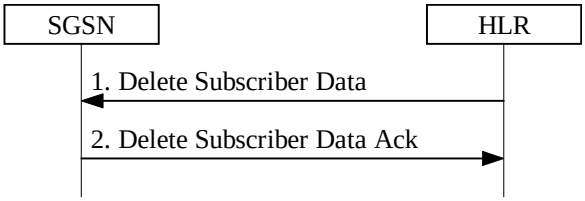


Figure 46: Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

1) The HLR sends a Delete Subscriber Data (IMSI, PDP Context Identifiers List) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN acknowledges the Delete Subscriber Data message by returning a Delete Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context identifier included in PDP Context Identifiers List, the SGSN shall check whether it belongs to an active or an inactive PDP context:

   - For an inactive PDP context no further action is required except deletion of the PDP context.

   - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall initiate the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures" before the PDP context is deleted.

6.12 Service Request Procedure for UMTS

The Service Request procedure is used by a 3G-MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signalling messages (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request) or user data. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request resource reservation for active PDP contexts.

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP contexts. After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

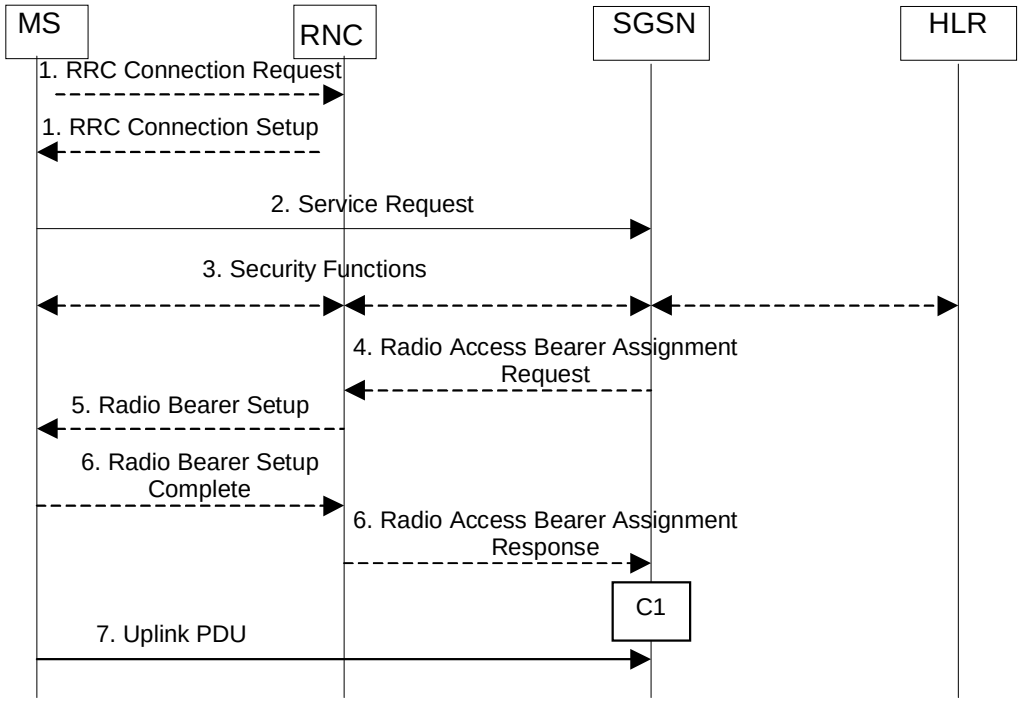


Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are requested allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not requested allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The MS sends the uplink packet.

The MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating Service Type = Data is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases, the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

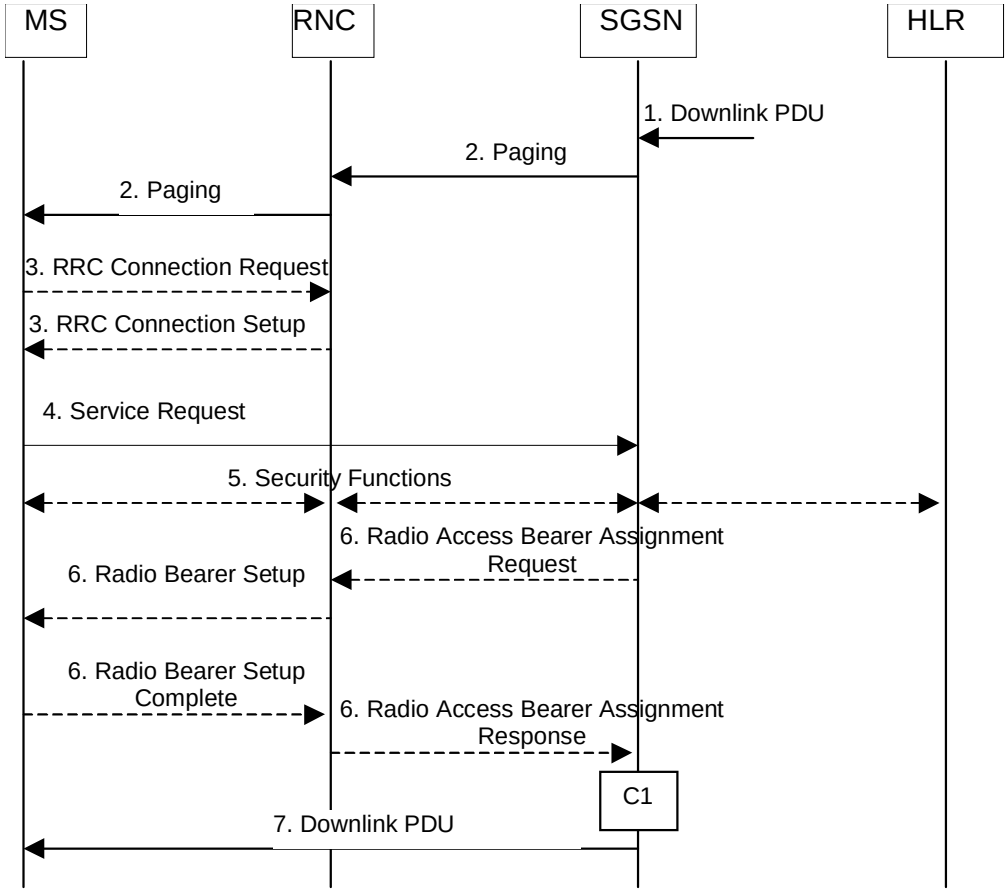


Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the MS.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change

The UMTS-GPRS intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS moves to a cell where the radio technology that the MS was using is not any longer supported. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

The UMTS RLC Sequence Number parameters, RLC-SND and RLC-SNU, are not relevant for the intersystem change of real-time PDP contexts (because these contexts use RLC transparent mode).

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces can support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the old and the new cells are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state enters a new GSM GPRS cell. In this case the MS shall perform a routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in PMM-IDLE state enters a new GSM GPRS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.

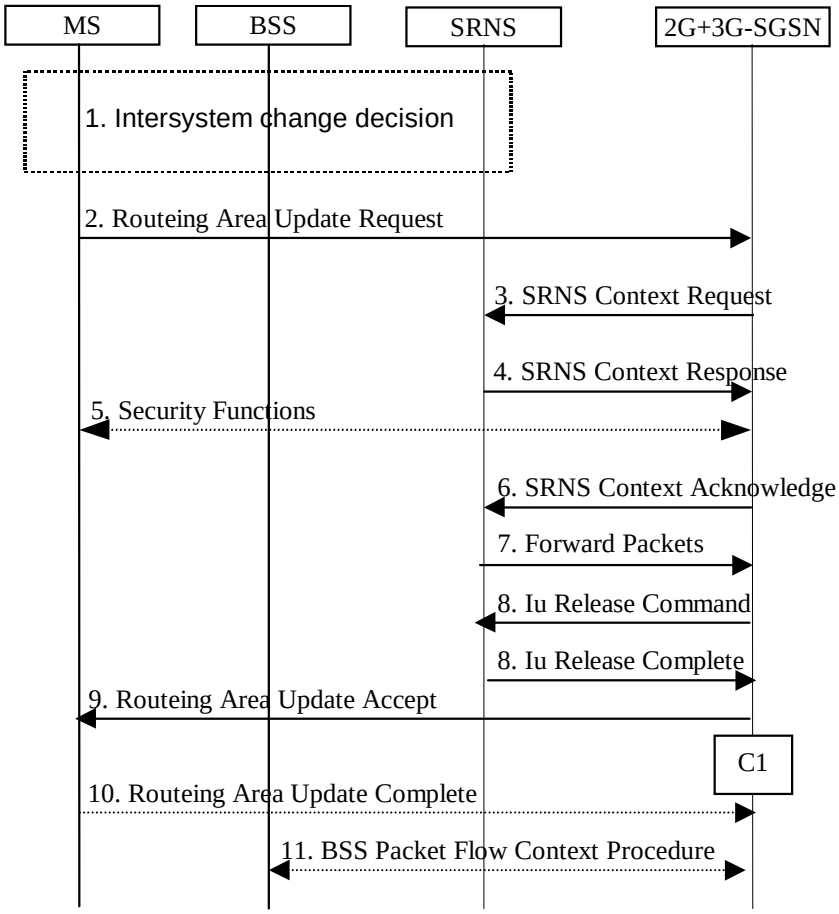


Figure 49: UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.

3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS, starts a timer and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink RLC sequence number (RLC-SNU) and the downlink RLC sequence number (RLC-SND). RLC-SNU shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS. RLC-SND shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets.

7) The partly transmitted and transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the downlink RLC sequence number of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs before sending them to the MS.

8) When the timer described under 3 has expired, the 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

9) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

10) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from RLC-SND by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC-SND of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

11) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.1 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.

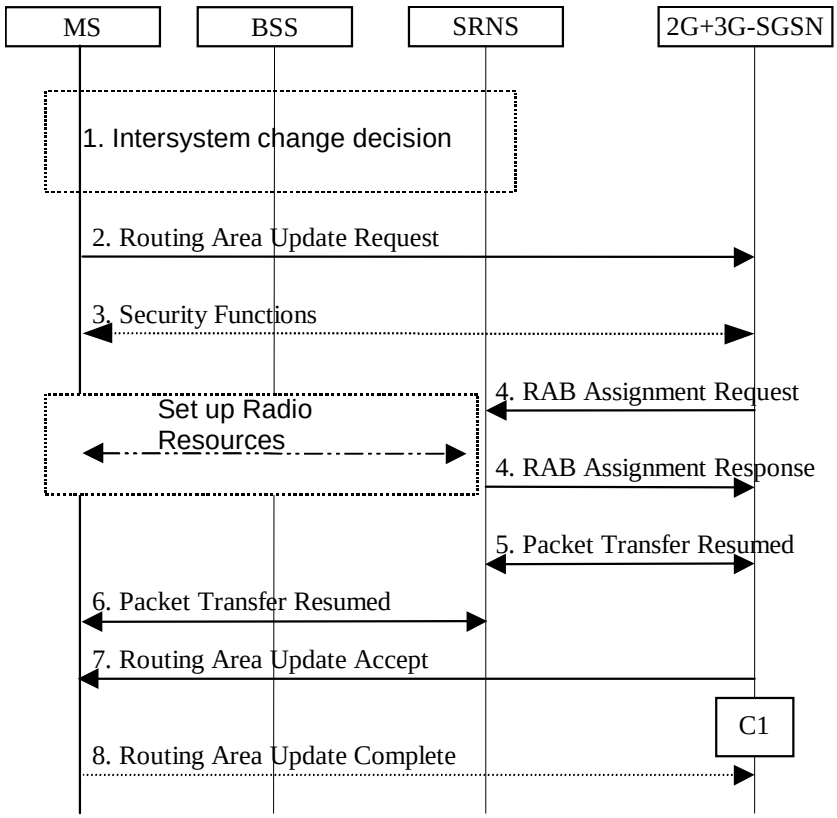


Figure 50: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The RLC sequence numbers shall be derived (shifted left 4 times) from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. If this is not the case, then the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.

Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routeing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.

If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.

If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.

If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GPRS cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.

If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state moves to a new GSM GPRS cell and this cell is served by a different SGSN. In this case the MS shall initiate a GPRS RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN change case is shown in .

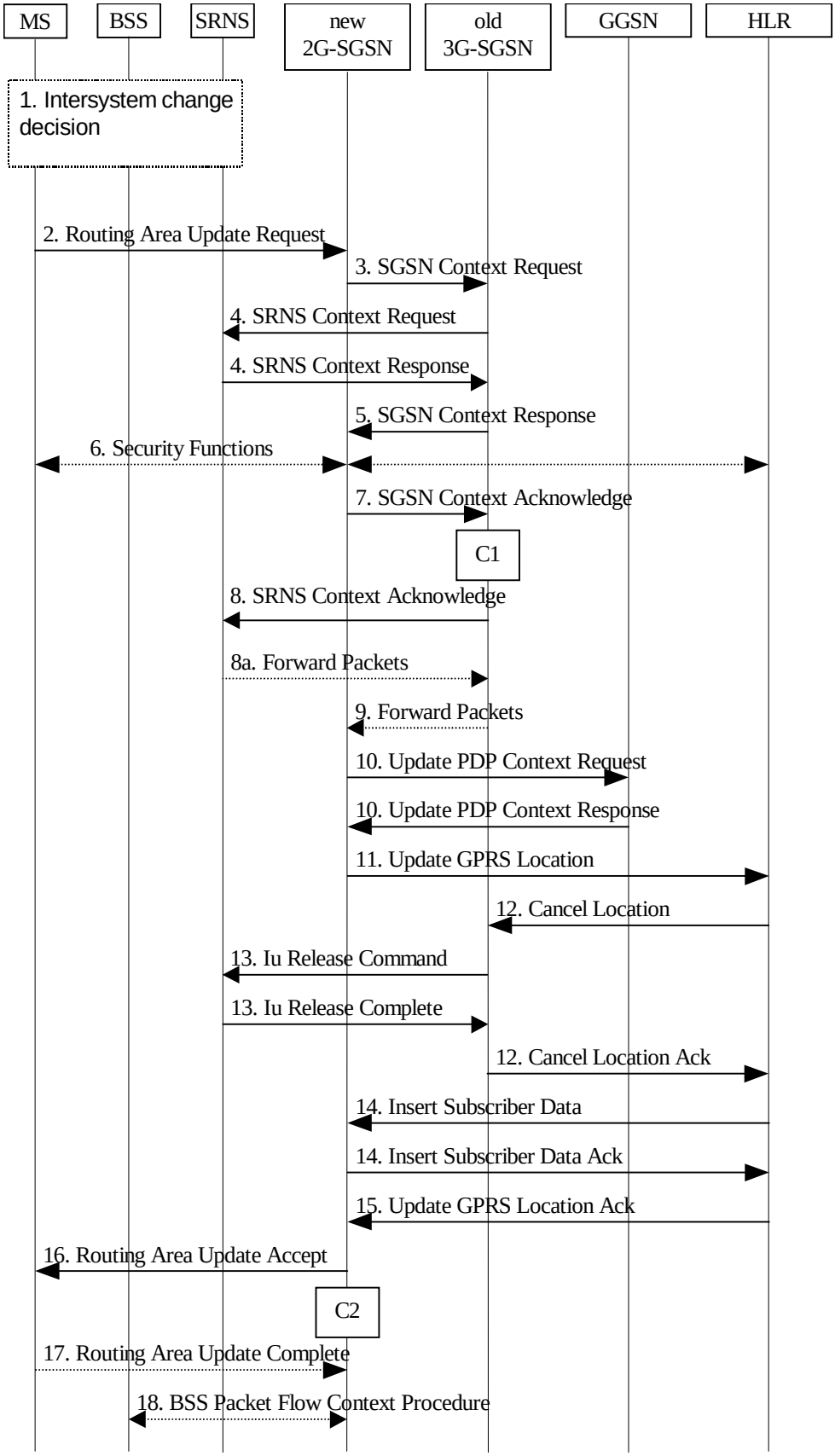


Figure 51: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell

Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes RLC-SNU and RLC-SND. The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the partly transmitted and the transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the RLC downlink sequence number (the four most significant bits shall be stripped off) of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU, and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The SNDCP sequence numbers shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The

new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from the downlink RLC sequence number by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence number of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

18) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

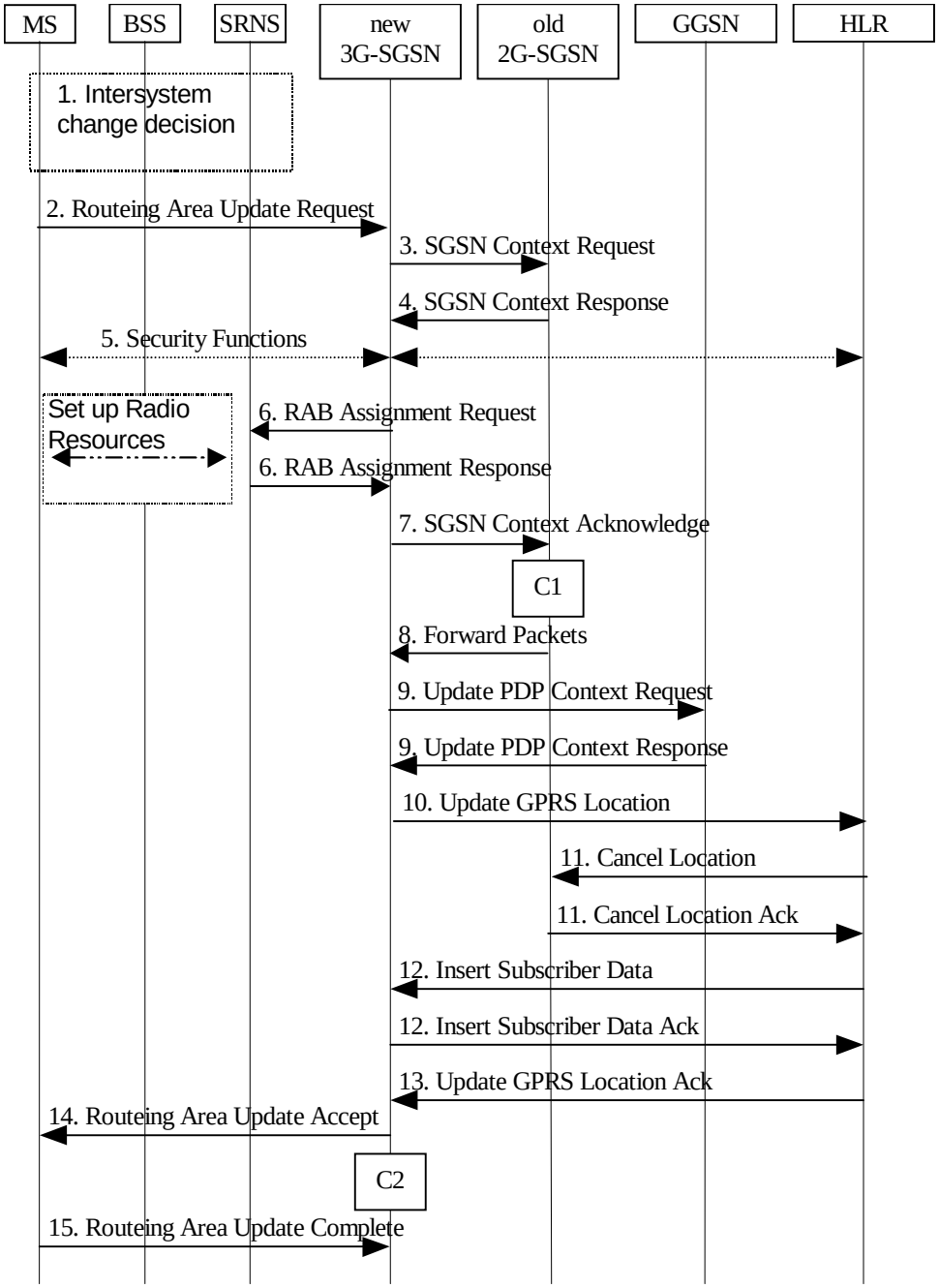


Figure 52: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface.

The new 3G-SGSN converts the SNDCP sequence numbers to RLC sequence numbers by shifting them left 4 times.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNDs received from the MS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNUs received from the SRNS. If this is not the case, the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.14 Classmark Handling

To support efficient radio interface usage in GPRS, the MS classmark is handled differently for SGSN-based services than for MSC-based services. In particular, the classmark is sent in MM messages to the network and stored in the network as long as the MS is GPRS-attached, avoiding redundant classmark retransmissions over the radio interface. This is sometimes called the "idle-mode classmark" principle.

In order to allow introduction of new radio access technologies in the future, the MS classmark is split into two distinct and independent information elements, the radio access classmark, and the SGSN classmark.

6.14.1 Radio Access Classmark

The radio access classmark contains the radio capabilities of the MS (e.g., multislot capability, power class), and more generally all the information that should be known by the BSS in order to handle radio resources for that MS.

The radio access classmark is a container for a multiplicity of radio access technology-dependent information, i.e., within the radio access classmark there are independent sub-fields for various technologies such as GSM 900, GSM 1800, Satellite, UMTS, etc. The coding shall allow a BSS to extract only the sub-fields relevant to it without interpreting the other sub-fields. This ensures that the radio classmark does not need to be interpreted by the NSS, and the full radio classmark is always sent by the MS to the SGSN, and thereafter provided to the BSS irrespective of the actual BSS capabilities.

The SGSN shall provide the radio access classmark as an information element on the Gb interface. It is the responsibility of the SGSN to provide the BSS with the most recent classmark received from the MS. The classmark information element can be included in a downlink transfer request, or be sent in a specific message that updates the radio classmark information in the BSS. The BSS may at any time request the radio classmark for a given MS to be transmitted from the SGSN to the BSS.

A specific optimisation allows the BSS to receive a reduced radio access classmark at initial access directly from the MS. This enables the BSS not to wait for the full radio access classmark to be provided by the SGSN, and is therefore quicker for the initial MS-originated transmission. The reduced classmark can be carried is several RR messages depending on the access method, e.g., in the initial random access message, or in the first uplink radio block. Details are provided in GSM 04.08 and GSM 04.60.

6.14.2 SGSN Classmark

The SGSN classmark contains non radio-related capabilities, e.g., the ciphering capability. The SGSN stores the SGSN classmark which is used both locally by the SGSN and for transfer to the new SGSN at all types of inter SGSN RA update.

7 Network Management Functionality

The Network Management function provides mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

8 Radio Resource Functionality

8.1 Radio Resource Functionality for GPRS

8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.

If the MS is in idle mode, see 3G TS 23.022, then it shall behave as described below:

When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:

- If the currently camped-on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.
- If the currently camped-on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.

If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see 3G TS 23.022.

The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.

If the MS is in dedicated mode, see 3G TS 24.008, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network-controlled handover procedures.

There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit-switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI-attached and GPRS-attached.

8.1.2 Discontinuous Reception

A GPRS MS may be able to choose if it wants to use discontinuous reception (DRX) or not. If using DRX, the MS shall also be able to specify other DRX parameters that indicate the delay for the network to send a page request or a channel assignment to the MS (see GSM 03.64).

The DRX parameters shall be indicated by the MS in the attach procedure. The SGSN shall then in each page request send these parameters to the BSS that uses this information and the IMSI to calculate the correct paging group.

DRX usage is independent of the MM states IDLE, STANDBY and READY. As DRX can be used by a GPRS MS in READY state, DRX has to be considered also when assigning a packet data channel for downlink transfer. The SGSN shall therefore indicate the DRX parameters for the MS in all packet transmission requests to the BSS.

A GPRS MS shall not apply DRX in READY state during the GPRS attach and routeing area update procedures.

8.1.3 Radio Resource Management

GSM Radio Resource Management functions are defined in GSM 04.07 [12]. The radio interface layer 3 protocol is specified in 3G TS 24.008.

8.1.3.1 Layer Functions

GPRS radio resource management procedures are required for the following functions:

- allocation and release of physical resources (i.e., timeslots) associated with a GPRS channel;
- monitoring GPRS channel utilisation to detect under-utilised or congested GPRS channels;
- initiating congestion control procedures; and
- distribution of GPRS channel configuration information for broadcasting to the MSs.

8.1.3.2 Model of Operation

8.1.3.2.1 Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources

A cell may or may not support GPRS.

A cell supporting GPRS may have GPRS radio resources allocated at a given instance. If no GPRS radio resources are allocated, an MS can request allocation of such resources. MSs may then use these radio resources. The PLMN may dynamically increase, to a PLMN operator-defined maximum, or, decrease to an operator-defined minimum, the radio resources allocated.

The network broadcasts GPRS system information on the common control channels.

GSM radio resources are dynamically shared between GPRS and other GSM services.

8.1.4 Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer

An MS in STANDBY state is paged by the SGSN before a downlink transfer to that MS. The paging procedure shall move the MM state to READY to allow the SGSN to forward downlink data to the radio resource. Therefore, any uplink data from the MS that moves the MM context at the SGSN to READY state is a valid response to paging.

The SGSN supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the SGSN receives no response from the MS to the Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent.

The MS shall accept pages also in READY state if no radio resource is assigned. This supports recovery from inconsistent MM states in MS and SGSN.

The GPRS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 53. Each step is explained in the following list.

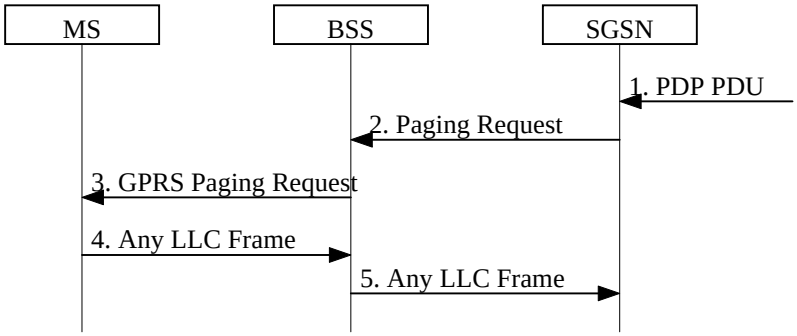


Figure 53: GPRS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in STANDBY state. Downlink signalling to a STANDBY state MS initiates paging as well.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS, DRX Parameters) message to the BSS serving the MS. IMSI is needed by the BSS in order to calculate the MS paging group. P-TMSI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. Channel Needed indicates GPRS paging. QoS is the negotiated QoS for the PDP context that initiates the paging procedure, and indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests.

3) The BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (P-TMSI, Channel Needed) message in each cell belonging to the addressed routeing area. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a GPRS Paging Request message, the MS shall respond with either any single valid LLC frame (e.g., a Receive Ready or Information frame) that implicitly is interpreted as a page response message by the SGSN. When responding, the MS changes MM state to READY. The response is preceded by the Packet Channel Request and Packet Immediate Assignment procedures as described in GSM 03.64.

5) Upon reception of the LLC frame, the BSS adds the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell and sends the LLC frame to the SGSN. The SGSN shall then consider the LLC frame to be an implicit paging response message and stop the paging response timer.

8.2 Radio Resource Functionality for UMTS

8.2.1 Radio Resource Management

UTRAN functions are defined in 3G TS 25.401. The radio interface protocol architecture is specified in 3G TS 25.301, and the Radio Resource Control protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

8.2.2 RRC State Machine

The RRC state machine is a description model of how the MS and the UTRAN co-operate regarding RRC functionality. The RRC state describes the MS state in the UTRAN. This subclause contains a brief description of the RRC state machine, for more information see 3G TS 25.303.

The RRC state machine exists as two peer entities, one in the MS and one in UTRAN. Apart from transient situations and error cases the two peer entities are synchronised. Figure 54 illustrates the main modes and states of the RRC state machine.

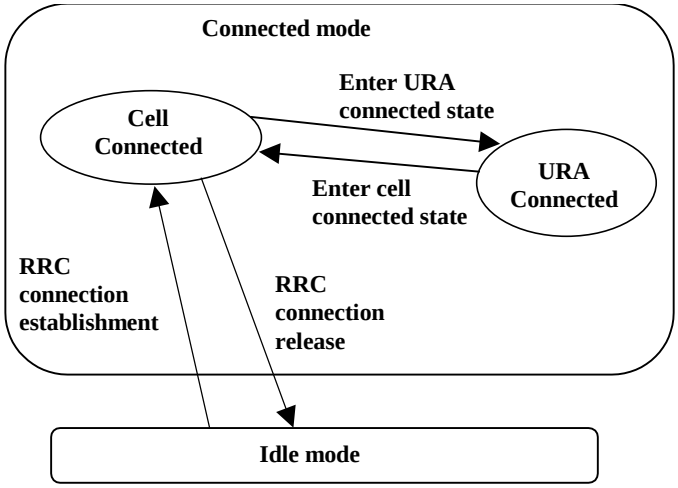


Figure 54: RRC Modes, Main RRC States and Main Mode and State Transition

RRC Idle mode: In the Idle mode there is no connection established between the MS and UTRAN. There is no signalling between UTRAN and the MS except for system information that is sent from UTRAN on a broadcast channel to the MS. The MS can also receive paging messages with a CN identity on the PCH. There is no information of the MS stored in UTRAN in this mode.

RRC Connected mode: In the Connected mode the main states are Cell Connected state and URA Connected state. In this mode there is one RNC that is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC), and an RRC connection is established between the MS and this SRNC.

- When the MS position is known at the cell level, the MS is in the Cell Connected state. When in Cell Connected state, the RRC connection mobility is handled by handover and cell update procedures.
- When the MS position is known at the URA level, the MS is in the URA Connected state. URA updating procedures provides the mobility functionality in this state. No dedicated radio resources are used in the URA Connected state.

8.2.3 Paging Initiated by CN

A CN node requests paging only for MSs in CMM-IDLE state or PMM-IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independently from the state of the MS in the other CN service domain.

In this alternative with paging co-ordination in the UTRAN, the MS does not need to listen to the PCH (Paging Channel) in the RRC Connected mode, at least not when MS is allocated a dedicated channel.

For each paging request received from a CN node, the RNC determines whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In order to achieve this, the context that is prepared within the SRNC for MS in RRC Connected mode must contain the IMSI, which is the common MS identity for the two CN domains.

If no context is found for the MS, "normal PCH paging" is performed. The paging message is transferred on the paging channel, and it includes the MS paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

If a context is found, a "CN paging message" is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message includes a CN service domain type indication.

8.2.3.1 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN Without RRC Connection for CS

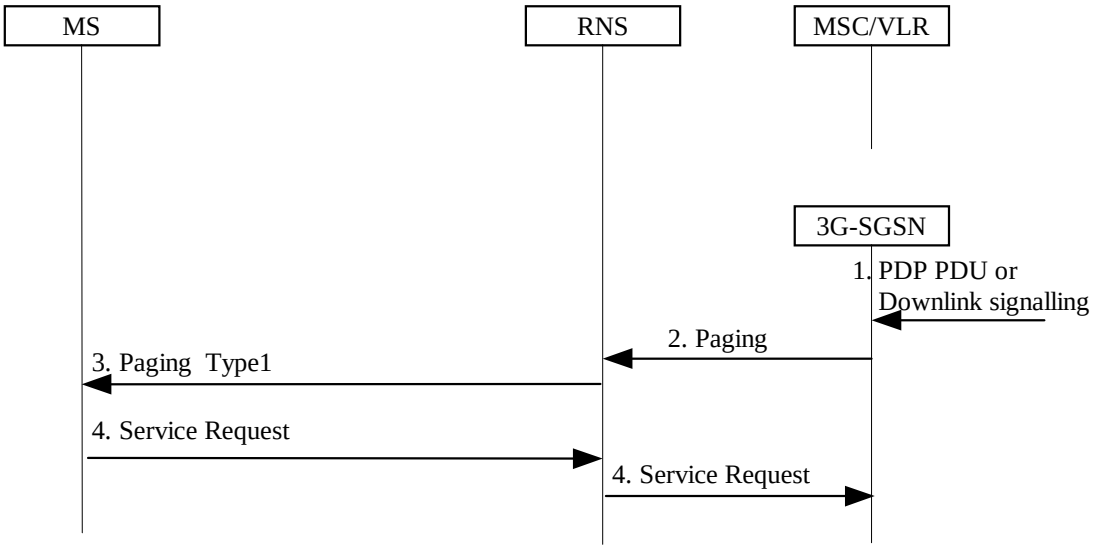


Figure 55: PS Paging Without RRC Connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a PDP PDU or downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group, and to identify the paged MS. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is also included. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) initiated the paging message, and it represents "SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has no RRC connection, so a "normal PCH paging" is performed. Paging Type 1(IMSI or P-TMSI, Paging originator, CN domain ID) is transferred on the Paging channel, IMSI or P-TMSI identifies the MS. Paging originator indicates whether this is core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "CN" in this case. And CN domain ID indicates whether this paging message is for CS-service or PS-service, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure for UMTS".

Optionally, 3G-SGSN may include "Non Searching Indication" in RANAP Paging message in this case. If a "Non Searching Indication" parameter is present, the RNC will not search the established RRC connection, and just initiate "normal PCH paging".

8.2.3.2 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN With RRC Connection for CS

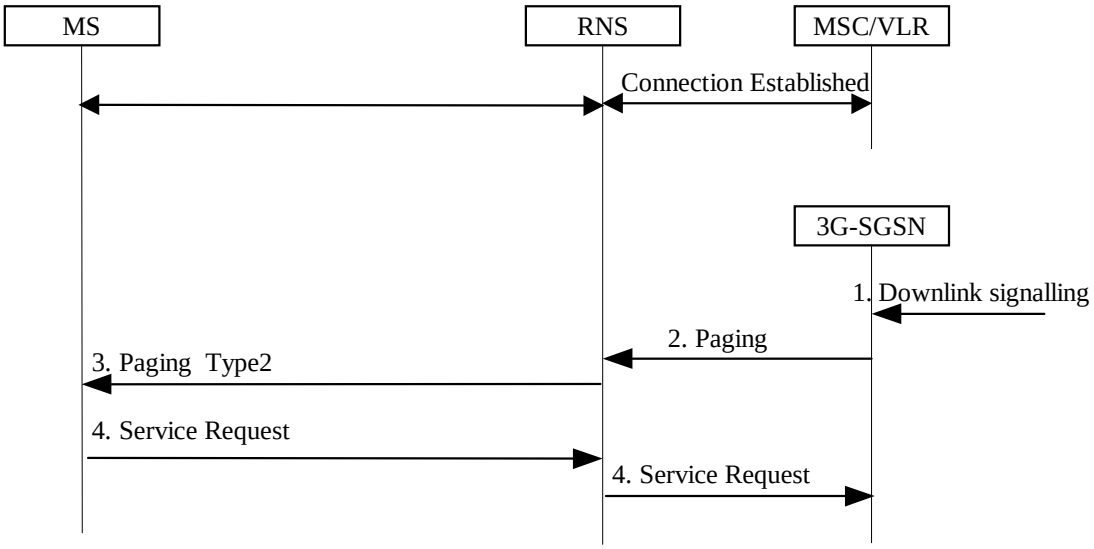


Figure 56: PS Paging With RRC Connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS is located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is included, and it identifies the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates to which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) the paging was initiated, and it represents "3G-SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has an established RRC connection for CS service, so RNS sends a RRC Paging Type 2(CN domain ID) message to the MS on established RRC connection. CN Domain ID indicates to which domain (CS or PS) the paging shall be directed, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure for UMTS".

8.2.4 Paging Initiated by UTRAN

An MS in RRC URA connected state is paged by the RNC before a downlink transfer to that MS. The URA paging procedure shall move the RRC state to Cell Connected to allow the RNC to forward downlink data or signalling message to the radio resource. Therefore, RRC: Cell Update message from the MS that moves the RRC State at the RNC to Cell Connected state is a valid response to URA paging.

The RNC supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the RNC receives no response from the MS to the URA Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent. For more information see TS 25.303.

The Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 42. Each step is explained in the following list.

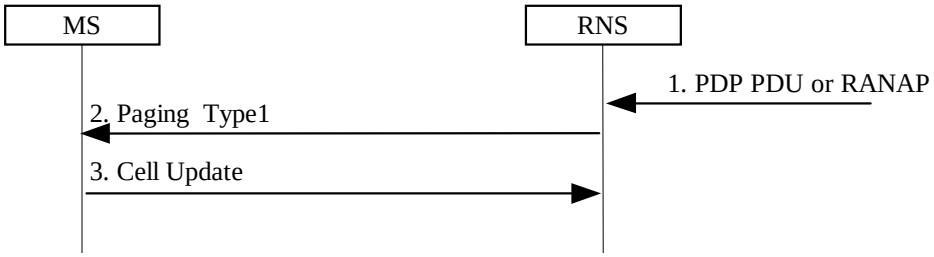


Figure 57: URA Paging Procedure

1) The RNS receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in RRC URA connected state. Downlink signalling to a MS in RRC URA connected state initiates URA paging as well.

2) The RNS pages the MS with one Paging Type 1 (RNTI, Paging originator) message in each cell belonging to the UTRAN routeing area where the MS exists. RNTI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Paging originator indicates whether this is the core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "UTRAN" in this case.

3) The paging request triggers the Cell Update procedures in the MS. The Cell Update procedures are described in TS 25.331.

9 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functionality

9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States

A GPRS subscription contains the subscription of one or more PDP addresses. Each PDP address is described by one or more PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. Each PDP context may be associated with a TFT. At most one PDP context associated with the same PDP address may exist at any time with no TFT assigned to it. Every PDP context exists independently in one of two PDP states. The PDP state indicates whether data transfer is enabled for that PDP address and TFT or not. In case all PDP contexts associated with the same PDP address are deactivated, data transfer for that PDP address is disabled. Activation and deactivation are described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions". All PDP contexts of a subscriber are associated with the same MM context for the IMSI of that subscriber.

9.1.1 INACTIVE State

The INACTIVE state characterises the data service for a certain PDP address of the subscriber as not activated. The PDP context contains no routeing or mapping information to process PDP PDUs related to that PDP address. No data can be transferred. A changing location of a subscriber causes no update for the PDP context in INACTIVE state even if the subscriber is PS-attached.

Mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state by the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure if the GGSN is allowed to initiate the activation of the PDP context for that PDP address. Otherwise, mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state invoke error procedures in the GGSN relevant to the external network protocol, for example, an IP packet is discarded and an ICMP (see RFC 792 [41]) packet (error notification) is returned to the source of the received packet. Other error procedures may be introduced on the application level, but this is outside the scope of the present document.

The MS initiates the movement from INACTIVE to ACTIVE state by initiating the PDP Context Activation procedure.

9.1.2 ACTIVE State

In ACTIVE state, the PDP context for the PDP address in use is activated in MS, SGSN and GGSN. The PDP context contains mapping and routeing information for transferring PDP PDUs for that particular PDP address between MS and GGSN. The PDP state ACTIVE is permitted only when the mobility management state of the subscriber is STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. The Iu interface radio access bearer may or may not be established for an active PDP context.

An active PDP context for an MS is moved to INACTIVE state when the deactivation procedure is initiated.

All active PDP contexts for an MS are moved to INACTIVE state when the MM state changes to IDLE or PMM-DETACHED.

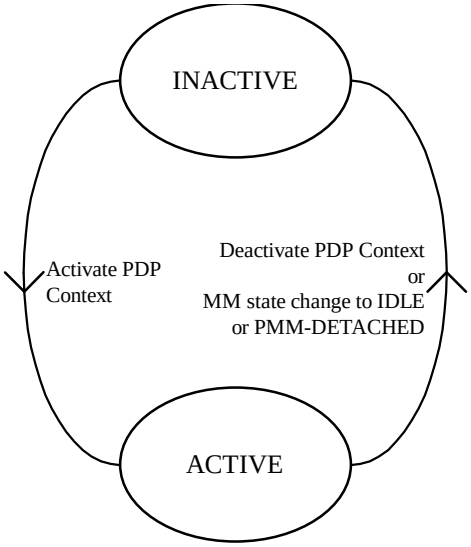


Figure 58: Functional PDP State Model

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions

A PS-attached MS can initiate these functions at any time in order to activate, modify, or deactivate a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a PS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

NOTE: If the MS is in PMM-IDLE state, it needs to perform a service request procedure to enter the PMM-CONNECTED state before initiating these procedure.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGS shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP addr but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts that share the same PDP address and APN shall be managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure be initiated. When the MS performs an RA update procedure to change from a release 99 to a release 97 or 98 system, only o active PDP context per PDP address and APN shall be preserved. This PDP context is selected taking the QoS profile and NS value into account.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every TI.

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 59. Each step is explained in the following list.

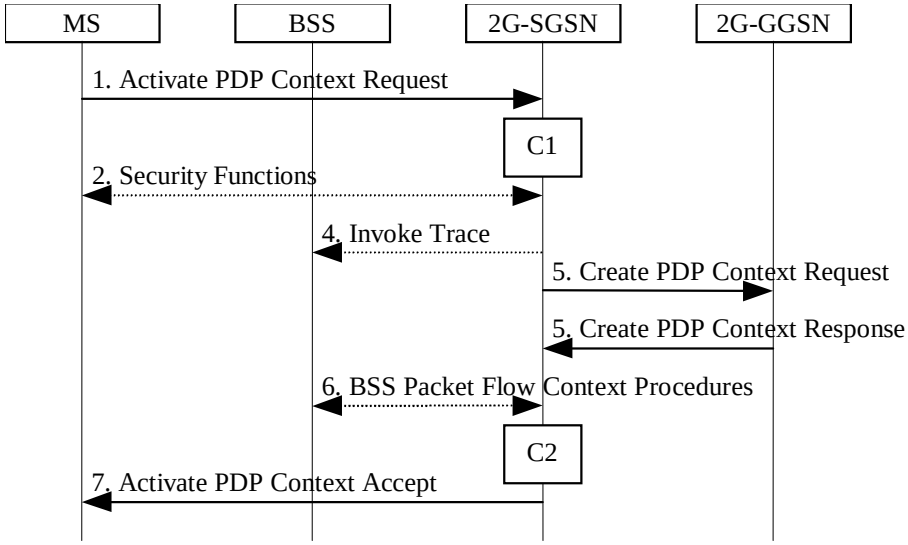


Figure 59: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

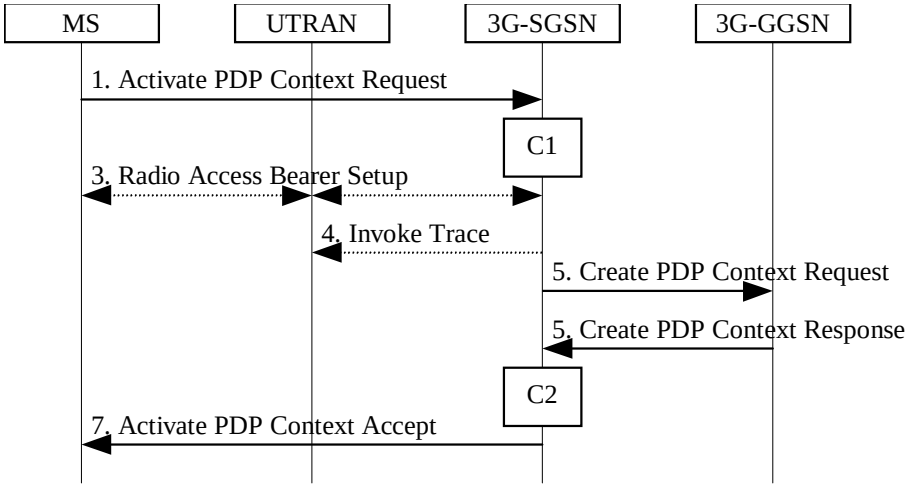


Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to

select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. Each PDP context sharing the same PDP address and APN shall be identified by a unique TI and a unique NSAPI.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be executed without providing a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context if all other active PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN already have an associated TFT, otherwise a TFT shall be provided. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address and APN. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 61. Each step is explained in the following list.

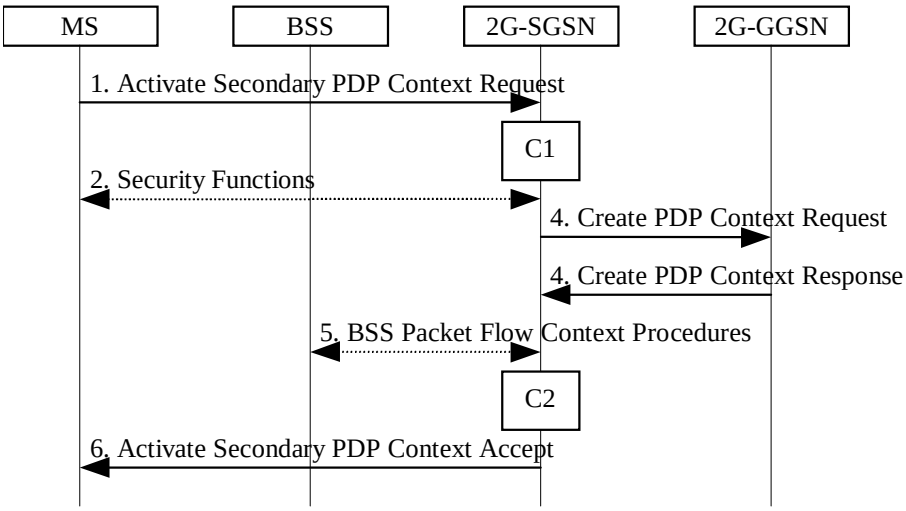


Figure 61: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

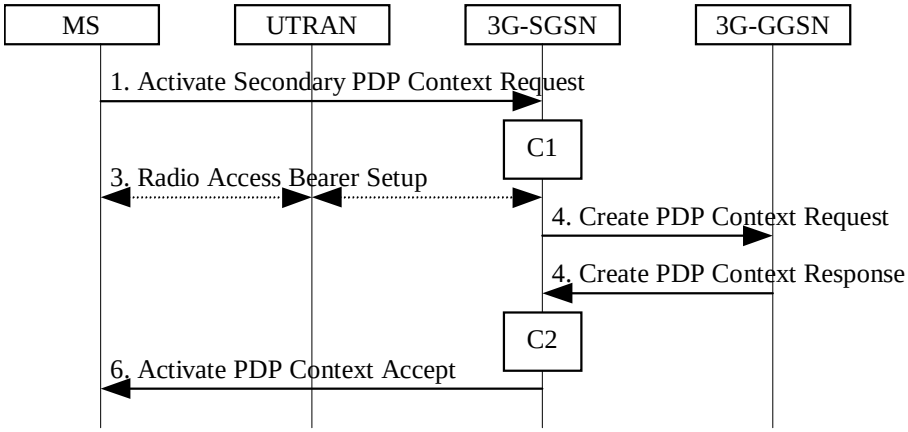


Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (Linked TI, NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Linked TI indicates the TI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI and NSAPI contain values not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to the UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI indicated by Linked TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TEID, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. TFT is included only if received in the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

5) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

6) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.2 Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure allows the GGSN to initiate the activation of a PDP context. When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN checks if a PDP context is established for that PDP address. If no PDP context has been previously established the GGSN may try to deliver the PDP PDU by initiating the Network-

Requested PDP Context Activation procedure. The criteria used by the GGSN to determine whether trying to deliver the PDP PDU to the MS may be based on subscription information and are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

To support Network-Requested PDP Context Activation the GGSN has to have static PDP information about the PDP address. To determine whether Network-Requested PDP Context Activation is supported for a PDP address the GGSN checks if there is static PDP information for that PDP address.

Once these checks have been performed the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure.

The network operator may implement the following techniques to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR:

- Implementation of the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG) technique in GGSN, SGSN, and HLR (see subclause "Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure").
- The GGSN may reject or discard PDP PDUs after a previous unsuccessful delivery attempt. This systematic rejection of PDP PDUs would be performed during a certain time after the unsuccessful delivery.
- The GGSN may store the address of the SGSN with which the GGSN established the last PDP context. This would prevent an enquiry to the HLR. This SGSN address would be considered as valid during a certain time.

9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 63. Each step is explained in the following list.

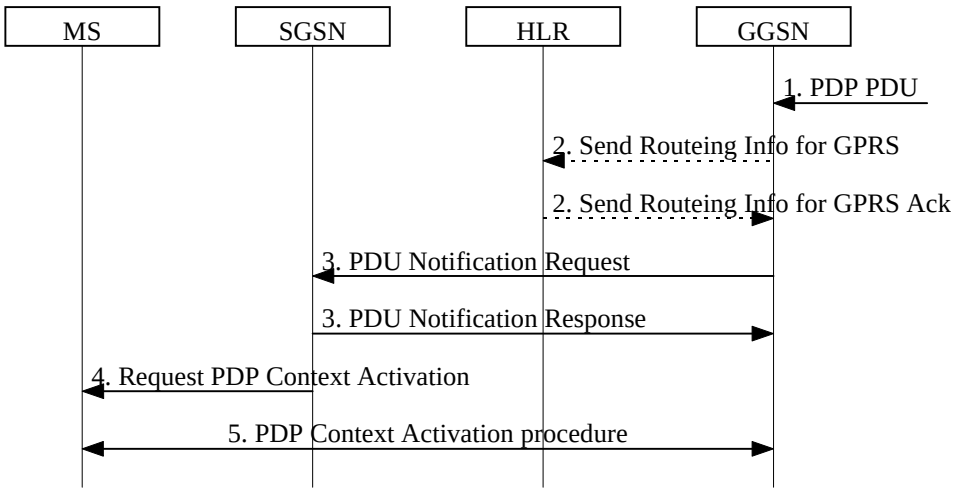


Figure 63: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN determines if the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure has to be initiated. The GGSN may store subsequent PDP PDUs received for the same PDP address.

2) The GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. If the HLR determines that the request can be served, it returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason) message to the GGSN. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter is included if the MNRG flag is set in the HLR. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter indicates the reason for the setting of the MNRG flag as stored in the MNRR record (see GSM 03.40). If the MNRR record indicates a reason other than 'No Paging Response', the HLR shall include the GGSN number in the GGSN-list of the subscriber.

   If the HLR determines that the request cannot be served (e.g., IMSI unknown in HLR), the HLR shall send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, MAP Error Cause) message. Map Error Cause indicates the reason for the negative response.

3) If the SGSN address is present and either Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason is not present or Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason indicates 'No Paging Response', the GGSN shall send a PDU Notification Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to the SGSN indicated by the HLR. Otherwise, the GGSN shall set the MNRG flag for that MS. The SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN in order to acknowledge that it shall request the MS to activate the PDP context indicated with PDP Address.

4) The SGSN sends a Request PDP Context Activation (TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to request the MS to activate the indicated PDP context.

5) The PDP context is activated with the PDP Context Activation procedure (see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure").

9.2.2.2.2 Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

If the PDP context requested by the GGSN cannot be established, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Response (Cause) or a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN depending on if the context activation fails before or after the SGSN has sent a Request PDP Context Activation message to the MS. Cause indicates the reason why the PDP context could not be established:

- 'IMSI Not Known'. The SGSN has no MM context for that IMSI (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS GPRS Detached'. The MM state of the MS is IDLE (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS Not GPRS Responding'. The MS is GPRS-attached to the SGSN but the MS does not respond. This may be due to the lack of a response to a GPRS Paging Request, due to an Abnormal RLC condition, or due to no Activate PDP Context Request message received within a certain time after the Request PDP Context Activation message was delivered to the MS (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

- 'MS Refuses'. The MS refuses explicitly the network-requested PDP context (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

When receiving the PDU Notification Response or the PDU Notification Reject Request message the GGSN may reject or discard the PDP PDU depending on the PDP type.

After an unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure the network may perform some actions to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR. The actions taken depend on the cause of the delivery failure.

- If the MS is not reachable or if the MS refuses the PDP PDU (Cause value 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'), then the SGSN shall not change the setting of MNRG for this MS. The GGSN may refuse any PDP PDU for that PDP address during a certain period. The GGSN may store the SGSN address during a certain period and send subsequent PDU Notification Request messages to that SGSN.

- If the MS is GPRS-detached or if the IMSI is not known in the SGSN (Cause value 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known'), then the SGSN, the GGSN, and the HLR may perform the Protection and Mobile User Activity procedures.

The Protection procedure is illustrated in Figure 64. Each step is explained in the following list.

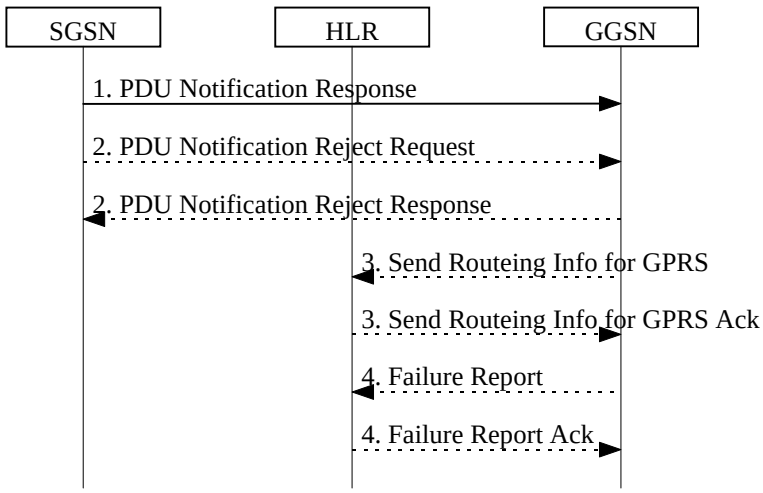


Figure 64: Protection Procedure

1) If the MM context of the mobile is IDLE or if the SGSN has no information about that user, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known', otherwise the Cause shall be 'Activation Proceeds'. If the Cause is 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI

Not Known' and if the SGSN has an MM context for that user, the SGSN sets MNRG to indicate the need to report to the HLR when the next contact with that MS is performed.

2) If the MS does not respond or refuses the activation request, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'. The GGSN returns a PDU Notification Reject Response message to the SGSN.

3) If Cause equals 'IMSI Not Known' the GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. The HLR returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Cause) message to the GGSN indicating the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. If SGSN Address is different from the one previously stored by the GGSN, then steps 3, 4, and 5 in Figure 63 are followed.

4) If SGSN Address is the same as the one previously stored in the GGSN, or if the Cause value returned in step 1 equals 'MS GPRS Detached', then the GGSN sets MNRG for that PDP address and sends a Failure Report (IMSI, GGSN Number, GGSN Address) message to the HLR to request MNRG to be set in the HLR. The HLR sets (if not already set) MNRG for the IMSI and adds GGSN Number and GGSN Address to the list of GGSNs to report to when activity from that IMSI is detected. GGSN Number is either the number of the GGSN, or, if a protocol-converting GSN is used as an intermediate node, the number of the protocol-converting GSN. GGSN Address is an optional parameter that shall be included if a protocol-converting GSN is used.

The Mobile User Activity procedure is illustrated in Figure 65. Each step is explained in the following list.

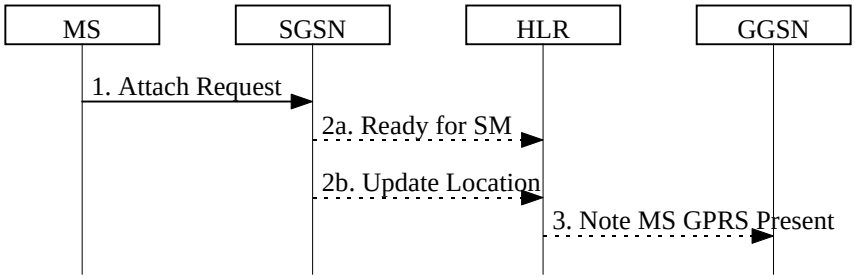


Figure 65: Mobile User Activity Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an indication that an MS is reachable, e.g., an Attach Request message from the MS.

2a) If the SGSN contains an MM context of the MS and MNRG for that MS is set, the SGSN shall send a Ready for SM (IMSI, MS Reachable) message to the HLR and clears MNRG for that MS.

2b) If the SGSN does not keep the MM context of the MS, the SGSN shall send an Update Location message (see subclause "Attach Function") to the HLR.

3) When the HLR receives the Ready for SM message or the Update Location message for an MS that has MNRG set, it clears MNRG for that MS and sends a Note MS GPRS Present (IMSI, SGSN Address) message to all the GGSNs in the list of the subscriber. (The Ready for SM message also triggers the SMS alert procedure as described in subclause "Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer".) SGSN Address contains the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. Upon reception of Note MS Present, each GGSN shall clear MNRG.

~~9.2.2.3 Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure~~

~~The MS can anonymously initiate PDP Context Activation in IDLE, STANDBY, and READY states. An existing MM context in the SGSN is neither required nor used in this case. Only dynamic PDP addressing is applicable.~~

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 66. Each step is explained in the following list.

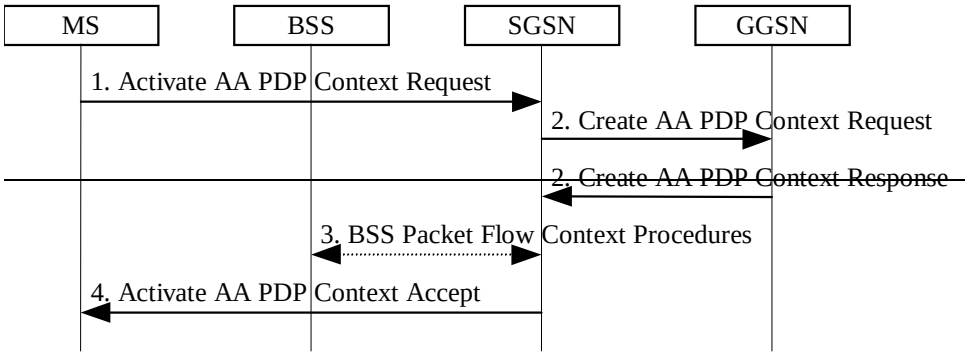


Figure 66: Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate AA PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use a Random TLLI at the RLC/MAC layer for identification purposes. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate that it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network that provides anonymous services. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS value given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN assigns an Auxiliary TLLI and creates an AA TEID for the PDP Context. The SGSN sends a Create AA PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, AA TEID, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the GGSN indicated by Access Point Name in the Activate AA PDP Context Request message. Selection Mode indicates how the APN was selected. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the server(s) that provide services for anonymous MSs, and to start charging. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network that provides anonymous services. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then allocates a dynamic PDP Address and returns a Create AA PDP Context Response (AA TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The GGSN shall check the source and destination address in all subsequent anonymous MO PDP PDUs received from the SGSN. If the GGSN detects a not allowed address in an MO PDP PDU, then the PDP PDU shall be discarded and the MM and PDP contexts shall be deleted in the GGSN, SGSN, and MS, as defined in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create AA PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

4) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the PDP address received from the GGSN in its PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated and returns an Activate AA PDP Context Accept (A TLLI, PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route anonymous PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS and to start charging.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the MM and PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the AA PDP Context Activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate AA PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same GGSN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id;
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure); and
- TFT (in case of MS-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

A trace may be activated while a PDP context is active. To enable trace activation in a GGSN, the SGSN shall send an Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN. If PDP context modification is performed only to activate a trace, then the SGSN shall not send a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 67. Each step is explained in the following list.

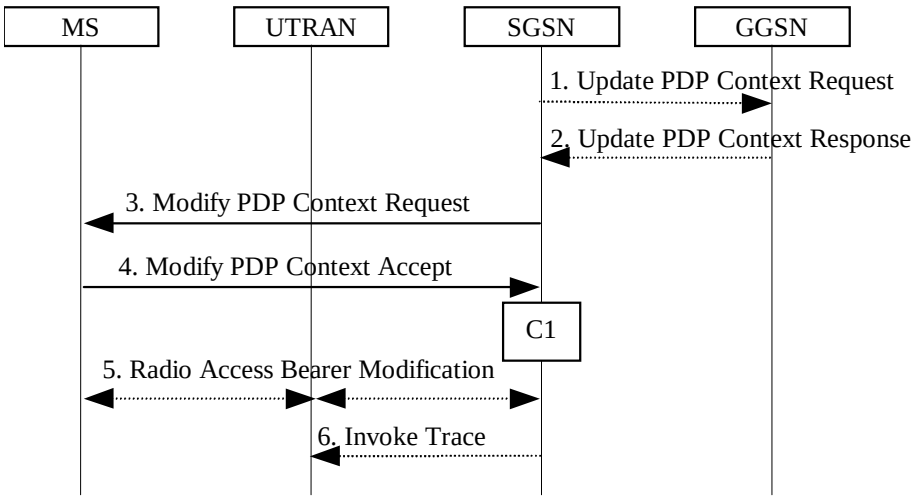


Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 68. Each step is explained in the following list.

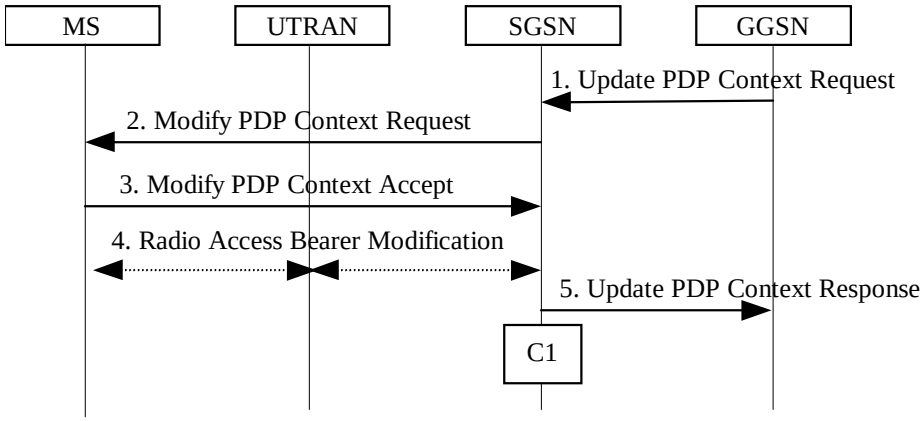


Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 69. Each step is explained in the following list.

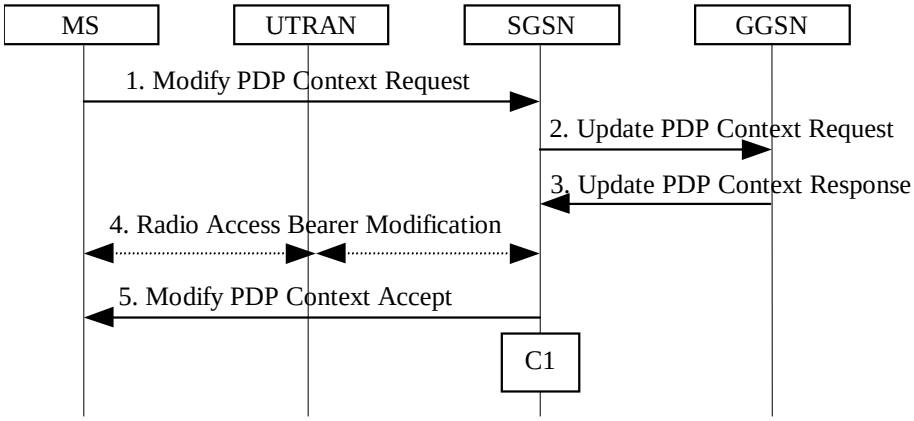


Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type or TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 70. Each step is explained in the following list.

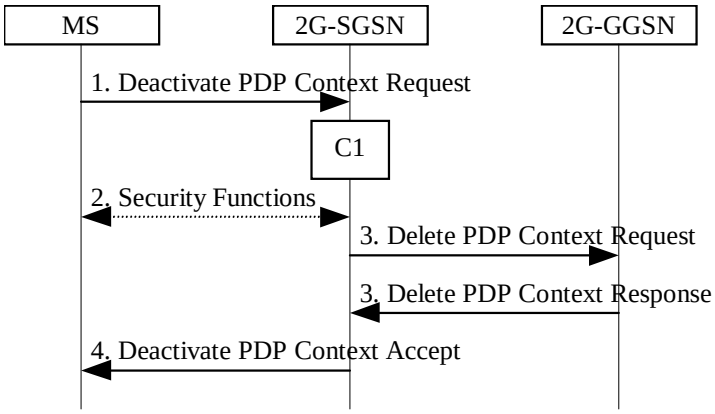


Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GPRS

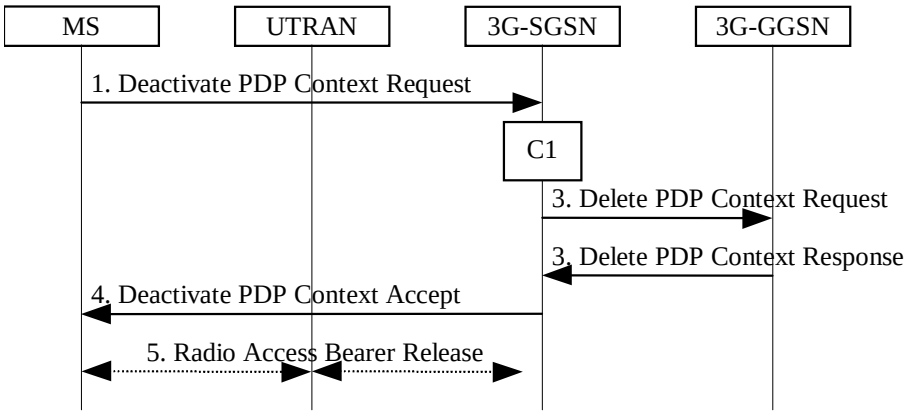


Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN.

2) For GPRS security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind was included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 72. Each step is explained in the following list.

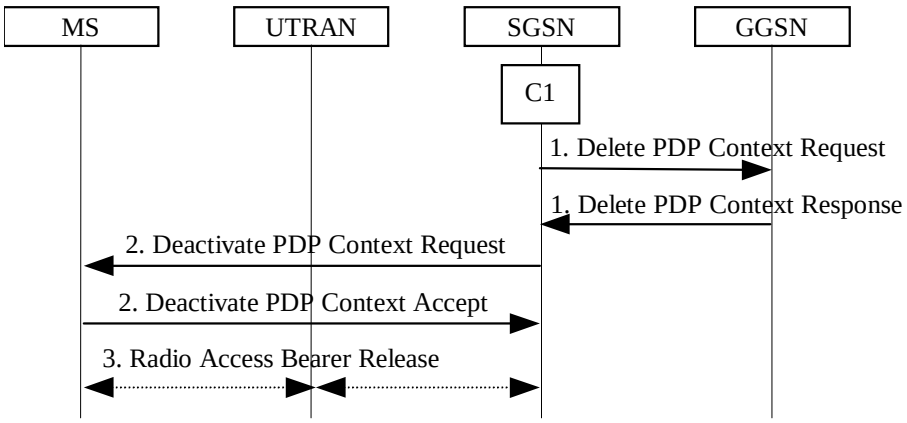


Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind is included, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 73. Each step is explained in the following list.

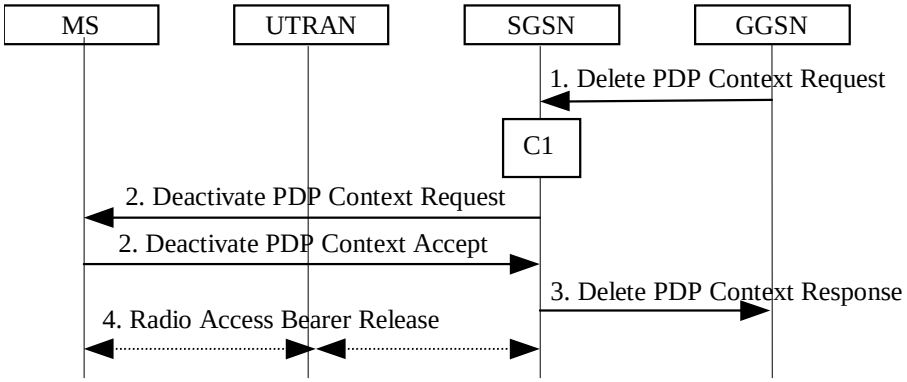


Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind was included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

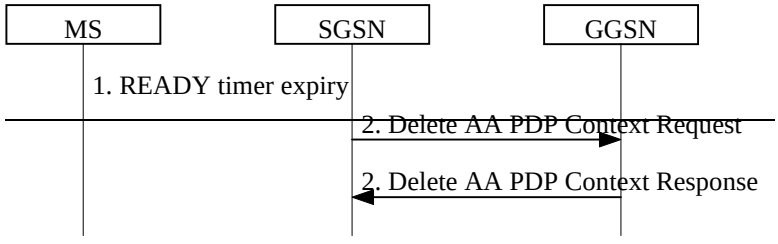
For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

~~9.2.4.4 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure~~

~~The MS shall not issue explicit deactivation request messages to delete anonymous contexts in the network. Instead, the READY timer shall be used as an implicit deactivation timer to save signalling traffic on the radio interface.~~

~~The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 74. Each step is explained in the following list.~~



~~Figure 74: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure~~

~~1) The READY timer expires in the MS and SGSN.~~

~~2) The SGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA TEID) message. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA TEID) message to the SGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent anonymous activation by other MSs.~~

9.2.4.5 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

If the GGSN detects a misuse or fraud of the anonymous context as described in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure", step 2, it shall initiate the deactivation independently of the READY timer expiry.

If the anonymous server detects a misuse or fraud, it may request the GGSN to deactivate the AA context. The method that the anonymous server uses to inform the GGSN is outside the scope of the GSM specifications.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 75. Each step is explained in the following list.

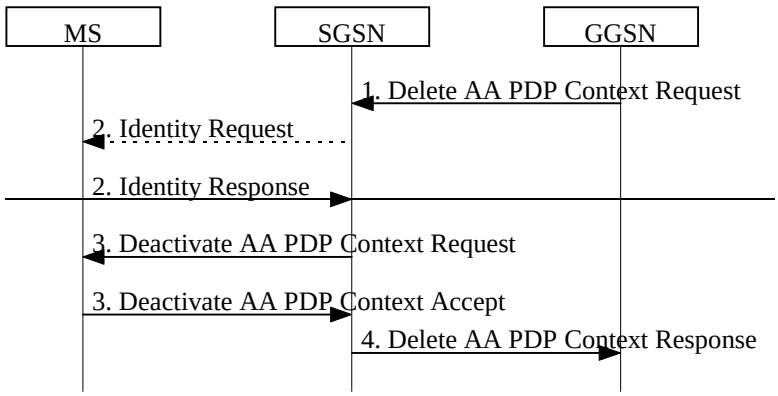


Figure 75: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TEID) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may send an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI or IMEI) message to the MS. The MS shall respond with an Identity Response (IMSI or IMEI) message.

3) The SGSN sends a Deactivate AA PDP Context Request (TI) message to the MS. The MS removes the PDP context and returns a Deactivate AA PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete AA PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the accept from the MS before sending the Delete AA PDP Context Response message.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;

- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and

- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. The maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets [FFS]. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

9.4 Relay Function

The relay function of a network node transfers the PDP PDUs received from the incoming link to the appropriate outgoing link. At the RNC, the SGSN, and the GGSN the relay function stores all valid PDP PDUs until they are forwarded to the next network node or until the maximum holding time of the PDP PDUs is reached. The PDP PDUs are discarded when buffering is longer than their maximum holding time. This maximum holding time is implementation dependent and can be influenced by the PDP type, the QoS of the PDP PDU, the resource load status, and by buffer conditions. The discarding protects resources from useless transfer attempts, especially the radio resource. Impacts on user protocol operation by too short holding time shall be avoided.

In GPRS, the SGSN and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from SNDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively. In UMTS, the RNC and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from PDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively.

PDP PDUs may be re-sequenced in the RNC, the SGSN, and/or in the GGSN depending on the setting of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile. In GPRS, the SGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to SNDCP. In UMTS, the SGSN relay function may optionally perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to Iu GTP-U and before passing the PDP PDUs to Gn GTP-U. The GGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to the Gi reference point. The RNC may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to PDCP.

9.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

The Packet Terminal Adaptation function adapts packets received from and transmitted to the Terminal Equipment to a form suitable for transmission within the PLMN.

A range of MT versions providing different standard interfaces towards the TE can be used, e.g.:

- MT with asynchronous serial interface and PAD (Packet Assembly / Disassembly) support (e.g., AT command set PAD, X.28 [35] / X.29 [36] / X.3 [33] PAD). In the case when the PAD function does not exist in the MT, it exists in the TE.

- "Embedded MT" integrated with the TE, possibly via an industry-standard application program interface.

- MT with synchronous serial interface.

9.6 Encapsulation Function

The packet domain transparently transports PDP PDUs between external networks and MSs. All PDP PDUs are encapsulated and decapsulated for routeing purposes. Encapsulation functionality exists at the MS, at the RNC, at the SGSN, and at the GGSN. Encapsulation allows PDP PDUs to be delivered to and associated with the correct PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, or the GGSN. Two different encapsulation schemes are used; one for the backbone network between two GSNs and between an SGSN and an RNC, and one for the GPRS connection between the SGSN and the MS or for the UMTS RRC connection between the RNC and the MS.

Encapsulation requires that the MS is attached to GPRS, and that the PDP Context Activation procedure has been executed. If the PS Attach or PDP Context Activation procedures cannot be successfully executed, then uplink PDP PDUs are discarded in the MS. If these procedures have not been executed when a downlink PDP PDU arrives in the GGSN, then the downlink PDP PDU shall be discarded, rejected, or the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated.

9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs

The packet domain PLMN backbone network encapsulates a PDP PDU with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header, and inserts this GTP PDU in a TCP PDU or UDP PDU that again is inserted in an IP PDU. The IP and GTP PDU headers contain the GSN addresses and tunnel endpoint identifier necessary to uniquely address a GSN PDP context.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC

On the Iu interface, a PDP PDUs is encapsulated with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS

Between a 2G-SGSN and an MS, an SGSN or MS PDP context is uniquely addressed with a temporary logical link identity and a network layer service access point identifier pair. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI. An NSAPI is assigned when the MS initiates the PDP Context Activation function. The relationship between TLLI / NSAPI and LLC / SNDCP is illustrated in Figure 76. TLLI and NSAPI are described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

9.6.3 Encapsulation Between RNC and MS

On the Uu interface, a PDP PDU is encapsulated with PDCP.

10 Message Screening Functionality

This screening mechanism may be performed by routers and firewalls, and performs the selection of which packets to allow and which to deny.

Only network-controlled message screening shall be supported. Network-controlled screening is used to protect the packet domain PLMN from known security problems, and the screening provided by a certain PLMN is applied independently of the MS user. Network-controlled screening is outside the scope of this specification.

11 Compatibility Issues

Non-GPRS MSs in GSM PLMNs that support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue operation.

GSM PLMNs that do not support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue interworking with GSM PLMNs that do support GPRS.

A GPRS ME shall be able to access GPRS services with GPRS-aware SIMs, and with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware. A GPRS-aware SIM is able to store information in the elementary files EF_{KcGPRS} and $EF_{LOCIGPRS}$,as defined in GSM 11.11 [28].

The compatibility of SIMs and USIMs with GPRS MEs or UMTS MEs is defined in 3G TS 22.102.

11.1 Interaction between Releases 97/98 and 99

NOTE: Unless specifically indicated, references to release 97 in this subclause refer to both release 97 and release 98.

11.1.1 Interactions between GTP v0 (R97) and GTP v1 (R99)

When a first GSN receives a GTP PDU from a second GSN using a version not supported, then the first GSN shall return a "version not supported" error message to the second GSN. The second GSN shall then fall back to the most-recent version supported by the first GSN. A GSN shall use its most-recent GTP version when initiating GTP PDU transmission to a new GSN.

When an SGSN that supports GTP v1 establishes a GTP tunnel to a GGSN that supports GTP v0, then the SGSN shall convert a release 99 QoS profile to a release 97 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the GGSN. If the MS supports the R99 QoS profile, then the SGSN shall convert the negotiated R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the MS.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v1 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v0, then the first SGSN shall convert the R99 QoS profile to an R97 QoS profile before sending the SGSN Context Response message. If several PDP contexts have been activated for the same APN and PDP address in the first SGSN (secondary PDP context activation), then all PDP contexts except the PDP context with the highest-quality QoS profile are deleted in the MS and in the first SGSN, and the first SGSN shall initiate deletion of these PDP contexts in the GGSN. 3G TS 23.107 specifies how to determine the highest-quality QoS profile. The second SGSN shall be responsible for updating the remaining PDP context in the GGSN, and the GGSN shall remove the TFT if present when it receives the GTP v0 Update PDP Context Request message.

NOTE: The conversion between an R99 QoS profile and an R97 QoS profile is defined in 3G TS 23.107.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v0 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v1, then the second SGSN shall convert the R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile, and use GTP v1 to send the Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN.

11.1.2 Interactions between MS R97 and CN R99

When an R97 MS activates a PDP context and both the SGSN and the GGSN support R99, then the QoS profile shall not be converted to R99.

11.1.3 Interactions between SM R97 and SM R99

The SM protocol shall be backward compatible.

11.1.4 Interactions between MAP R97 and MAP R99

The MAP protocol shall be backward compatible to allow interworking between HLRs and SGSNs that support different releases.

12 Transmission

12.1 Transmission Modes

For GPRS, the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC transmission modes define the QoS reliability classes (see subclause "Reliability Class").

For UMTS, the GTP-U and RLC protocols provide various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS.

The RLC protocol for GPRS and the RLC protocol for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the GTP-U layer are supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP) and acknowledged (TCP/IP). The GTP-U layer shall support both modes simultaneously. In UMTS, GTP-U is also used on the Iu interface for user data transport. Only the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported on the Iu interface.

[Check the Gn TCP support in UMTS.]

12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes for GPRS

Two modes of operation of the LLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The LLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

- In acknowledged mode, the receipt of LL-PDUs are confirmed. The LLC layer retransmits LL-PDUs if confirmation has not been received within a timeout period.
- In unacknowledged mode, there is no confirmation required for LL-PDUs.

Signalling and SMS shall be transferred in unacknowledged mode.

In unacknowledged mode, the LLC layer shall offer the following two options:

- transport of "protected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field result in the frame being discarded; and
- transport of "unprotected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field do not result in the frame being discarded.

The LLC layer shall support several different QoS delay classes with different transfer delay characteristics.

12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the RLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The RLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

The RLC for GPRS is described in GSM 04.60, and for UMTS in 3G TS 25.322.

12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality for GPRS

The Logical Link Control (LLC) protocol provides a reliable logical link between the MS and its SGSN. As shown in subclause "User and Control Planes", the LLC layer is situated below the SNDC layer.

12.2.1 Addressing

TLLI is used for addressing at the LLC layer. TLLI is described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

12.2.2 Services

LLC provides the services necessary to maintain a ciphered data link between an MS and an SGSN. The LLC layer does not support direct communication between two MSs.

The LLC connection is maintained as the MS moves between cells served by the same SGSN. When the MS moves to a cell being served by a different SGSN, the existing connection is released and a new logical connection is established with the new SGSN.

LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols. In order to allow LLC to operate with a variety of different radio interface protocols, and to ensure optimum performance, it may be necessary to adjust e.g., the maximum LLC PDU length and the LLC protocol timer values. Such adjustments can be made through negotiation between the MS and the SGSN. The maximum length of an LLC PDU shall not be greater than 1 600 octets minus the BSSGP protocol control information.

12.2.3 Functions

The Logical Link Control layer supports:

- service primitives allowing the transfer of SNDCP Protocol Data Units (SN-PDUs) between the Subnetwork Dependent Convergence layer and the Logical Link Control layer;
- procedures for transferring LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN, including:
  - procedures for unacknowledged delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
  - procedures for acknowledged, reliable delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN;
- procedures for detecting and recovering from lost or corrupted LL-PDUs;
- procedures for flow control of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
- procedures for ciphering of LL-PDUs. The procedures are applicable to both unacknowledged and acknowledged LL-PDU delivery.

The layer functions are organised in such a way that ciphering resides immediately above the RLC/MAC layer in the MS, and immediately above the BSSGP layer in the SGSN.

12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality for GPRS

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence (SNDC) protocol is situated below the network layer and above the Logical Link Control layer in the MS and the SGSN, as shown in subclause "User and Control Planes". A variety of network layers are supported, e.g., IP and X.25. The network-layer packet data protocols share the same SNDCP, that then performs multiplexing of data coming from the different sources to be sent across LLC. This is illustrated in Figure 76.

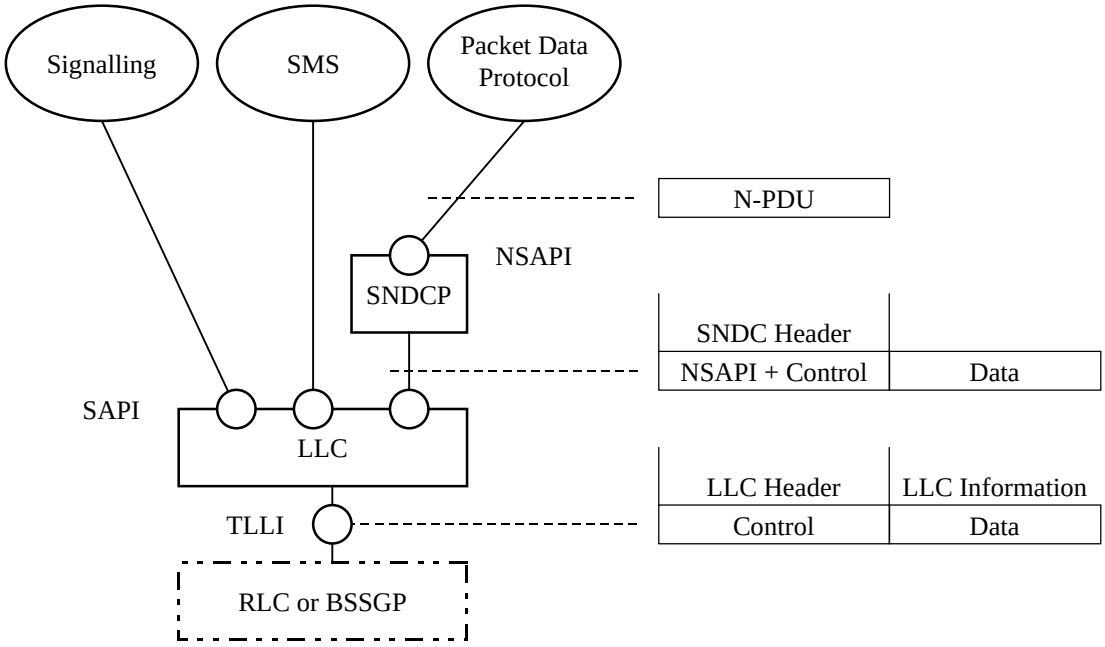


Figure 76: Multiplexing of Network Protocols

The following identities and control information is needed:

- NSAPI identifies the network layer. The SNDCP control part contains compression information.
- TLLI identifies the MS. The LLC control part contains the rest of the LLC protocol header including ciphering information.

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence function is defined in terms of offered services and sub-functions.

12.3.1 Services

The SNDC function provides the following services to the network layer:

- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs in acknowledged and unacknowledged LLC mode. In acknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall be confirmed at the LLC layer, and the data shall be transmitted and received in order per NSAPI. In unacknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall not be confirmed at the SNDCP layer nor at the LLC layer.
- Transmission and reception between the MS and SGSN of variable-length N-PDUs.
- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs between the SGSN and MS according to the negotiated QoS profile.
- Transfer of the minimum amount of data possible between the SGSN and MS through compression techniques.

The SNDC function requires the following services from the LLC layer:

- Acknowledged and unacknowledged data transfer.
- Ciphered transmission of SN-PDUs.
- In-order delivery of SN-PDUs per LLC SAPI.
- Support for variable-length SN-PDUs.

12.3.2 Subfunctions

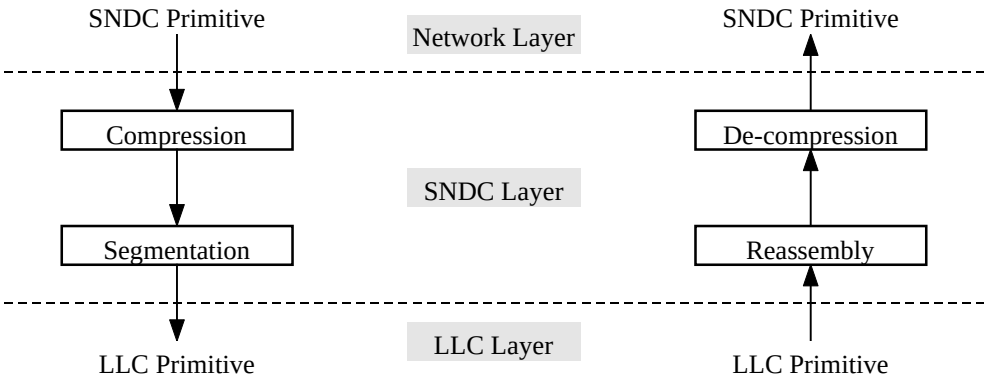


Figure 77: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority level, QoS delay class, and precedence class.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for each QoS delay class and precedence class. If several network layers use the same QoS delay class and precedence class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

12.4 PDCP for UMTS

The Packet Data Compatibility Protocol (PDCP) transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. PDCP can support several network layer protocols by providing protocol

transparency for the users of the service. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is located in the MS and the UTRAN and described in 3G TS 25.323.

12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP types IP and X.25, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD) function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layers below SNDCP and GTP.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Figure 78 illustrates the OSP user plane for GPRS, and Figure 79 for UMTS.

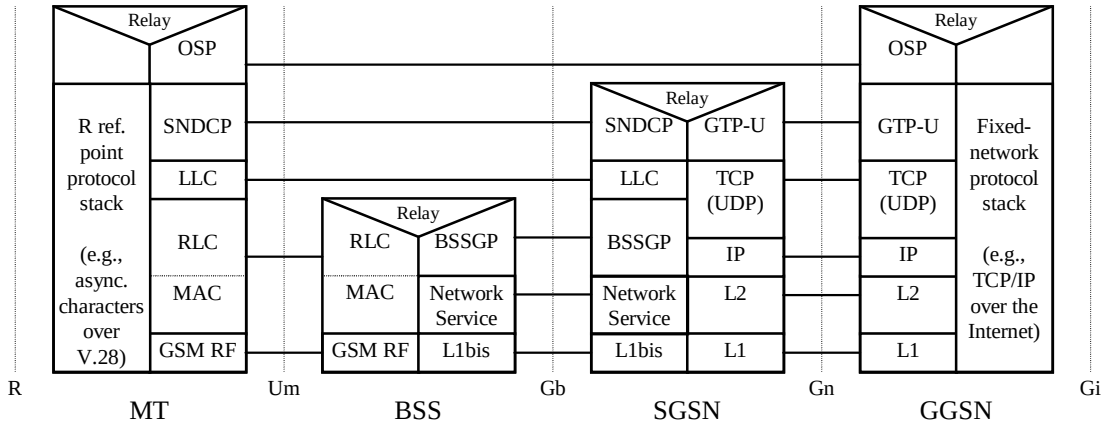


Figure 78: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

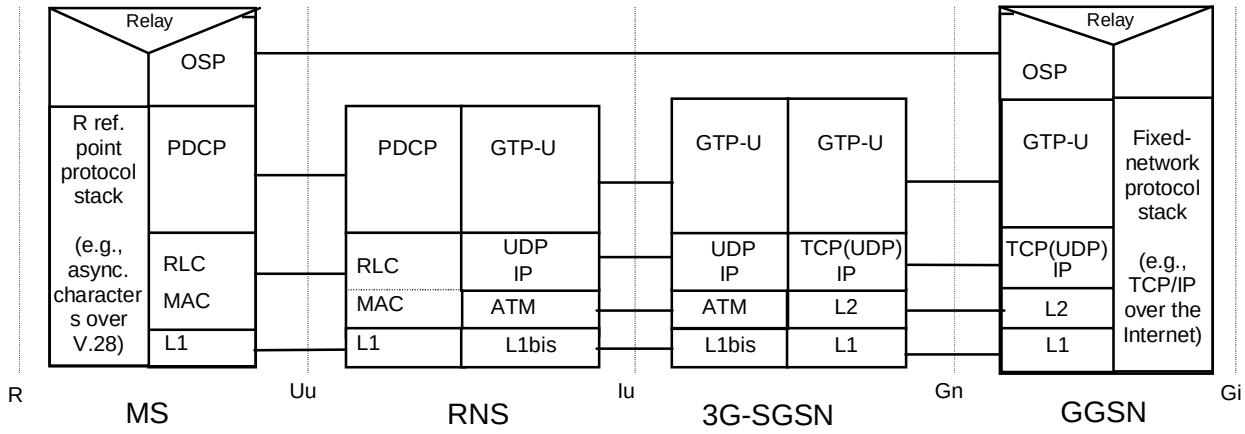


Figure 79: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.5.1 PAD Function

In order to make efficient use of the network resources, particularly the radio resource, octets received from the OSP user are not forwarded immediately but are placed in a buffer. When some forwarding criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer are forwarded in the payload of an N-PDU to the underlying layer. At the receiving end, the payload of an N-PDU received from the underlying layer is placed in a buffer and the octets are delivered to the OSP user as an octet stream.

The PAD is used only when OSP operates in octet mode. It is not used when OSP operates in block mode.

12.5.1.1 Packet Assembler

The packet assembler shall be able to detect the following forwarding criteria. When any one criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer shall be forwarded in an N-PDU to the underlying layer, subject to any flow control condition.

12.5.1.1.1 Buffer Full

The buffer contents are forwarded when the number of octets in the buffer reaches the value of the maximum buffer size parameter.

12.5.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry

The inactivity timer shall be started whenever an octet is placed in the buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. The inactivity timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry

A maximum buffer delay timer may be started when the first octet is placed in the (empty) buffer,. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. This optional timer ensures that no octet is delayed in the buffer for longer than the specified time. The maximum buffer delay timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.4 Special Character

Whenever an octet has been placed in the buffer, its least significant 7 bits shall be compared with a list of 7-bit special characters. If the bits match, the buffer shall be forwarded. The possible characters and combinations of characters shall be the same as specified for the X.3 PAD access to X.25.

12.5.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State

The buffer may be forwarded when there is a need to signal a change in the ready to receive condition.

12.5.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request

When the OSP receives an immediate forward request from its user, it shall immediately forward the buffer unless it is empty.

12.5.1.2 Packet Disassembler

The packet disassembler shall forward the contents of the N-PDU payload to the OSP user, subject to any local flow control condition.

12.5.2 Quality of Service

The QoS provided by the OSP layer is determined by that provided by the underlying protocol layers. However, the PAD functions introduce an additional variable delay into the transmission path. This delay can be limited at the risk of making less efficient use of network resources, in particular the radio resources.

12.6 Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality

The PPP protocol is specified in RFC 1661 [44].

12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP

The user plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GPRS or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS, and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

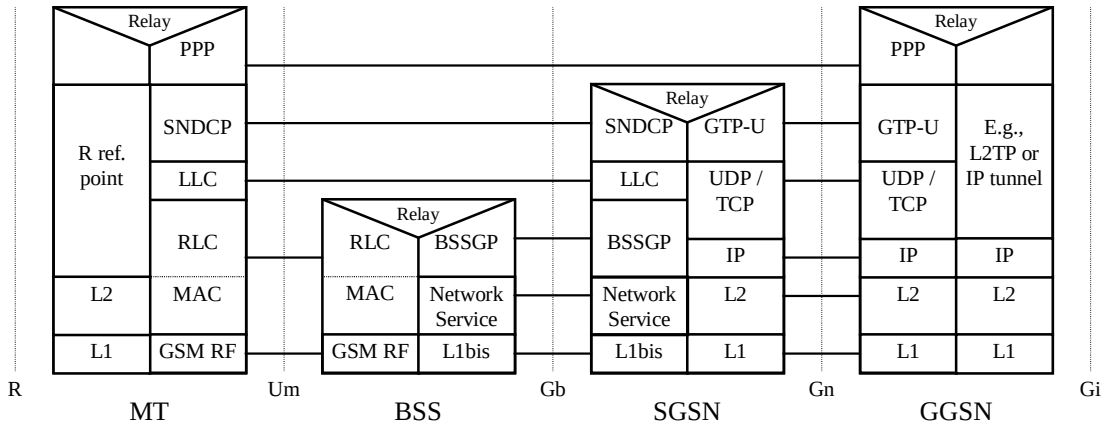


Figure 80: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

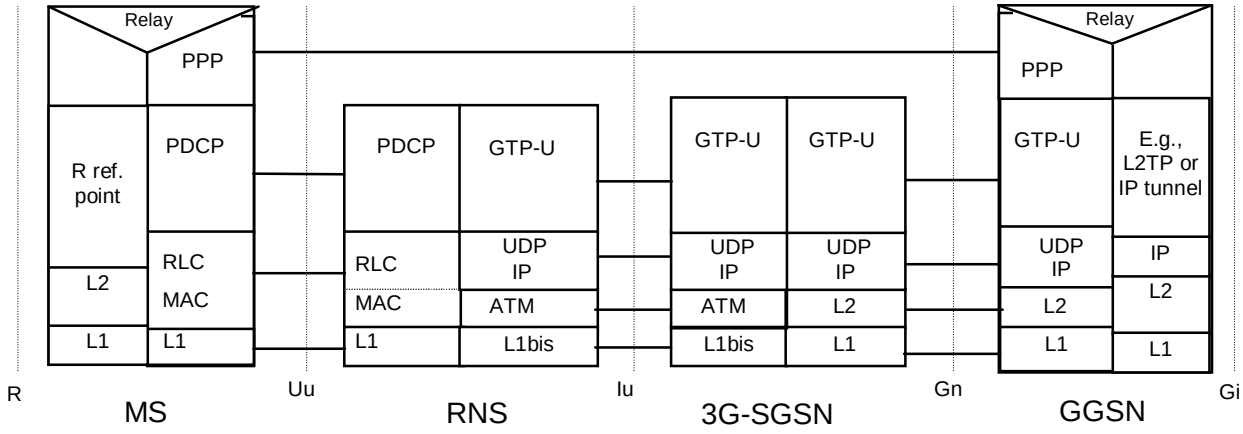


Figure 81: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

12.6.2 Functions

The PPP peers at the MS and GGSN handle the PPP protocol as specified in RFC 1661. PPP requires in-sequence packet delivery by the underlying protocols. Concerning GTP, this shall be achieved by negotiation of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile upon PDP context activation. For GPRS, concerning SNDCP, out-of-sequence packets, that may be present if LLC operates in unacknowledged mode, shall be discarded. SNDCP for GPRS, and PDCP for UMTS, shall not use TCP/IP header compression because PPP may not carry IP packets at all, or because PPP may carry IP packets with already compressed TCP/IP headers. These PPP options are negotiated during the RFC 1661 Network Control Protocol establishment phase.

12.7 Gb Interface for GPRS

The Gb interface connects the BSS and the SGSN, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The Gb interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter. This is in contrast to the A interface where a single user has the sole use of a dedicated physical resource throughout the lifetime of a call irrespective of activity.

GPRS signalling and user data are sent in the same user plane. No dedicated physical resources are required to be allocated for signalling purposes.

Access rates per user may vary without restriction from zero data to the maximum possible line rate (e.g., 1 984 kbit/s for the available bitrate of an E1 trunk).

12.7.1 Physical Layer Protocol

Several physical layer configurations and protocols are possible, as defined in GSM 08.14 [19].

The physical resources shall be allocated by O&M procedures.

12.7.2 Link Layer Protocols

The Gb interface link layer is based on Frame Relay, as defined in GSM 08.16. Frame Relay virtual circuits are established between SGSN and BSS. LLC PDUs from many users are multiplexed on these virtual circuits. The virtual circuits may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. Frame Relay shall be used for signalling and data transmission.

The following characteristics apply for the Frame Relay connection:

- The maximum Frame Relay information field size shall be 1 600 octets.
- The Frame Relay address length shall be 2 octets.

- The BSS and the SGSN shall both implement Frame Relay DTE functionality. The SGSN may optionally also implement DCE functionality.
- Frame Relay PVCs shall be used.
- The Frame Relay layer offers detection of but no recovery from transmission errors.
- One or more Frame Relay PVCs shall be used between one SGSN and one BSS to transport BSSGP PDUs.

12.7.3 BSS GPRS Protocol

The primary function of BSSGP is to provide the radio-related, QoS, and routeing information that is required to transmit user data between a BSS and an SGSN. In the BSS, it acts as an interface between LLC frames and RLC/MAC blocks. In the SGSN, it forms an interface between RLC/MAC-derived information and LLC frames. A secondary function is to enable two physically distinct nodes, the SGSN and BSS, to operate node management control functions.

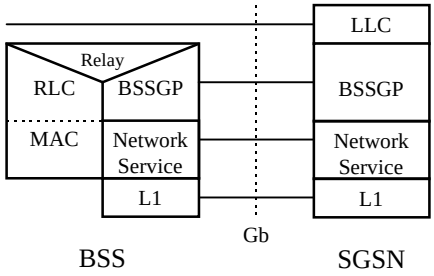


Figure 82: BSSGP Protocol Position

There is a one-to-one relationship between the BSSGP protocol in the SGSN and in the BSS. If one SGSN handles multiple BSSs, the SGSN has to have one BSSGP protocol machine for each BSS.

The main functions for the BSSGP protocol are to:

- provide a connection-less link between the SGSN and the BSS;
- transfer data unconfirmed between the SGSN and the BSS;
- provide tools for bi-directional control of the flow of data between the SGSN and the BSS;
- handle paging requests from the SGSN to the BSS;
- give support for flushing of old messages in the BSS e.g., when an MS changes BSS; and
- support multiple layer 2 links between the SGSN and one BSS.

BSSGP is defined in GSM 08.18.

12.7.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions

The functions of the BSSGP shall be defined in the context of the LLC function in order to avoid duplication of functions and information flows. The following functional model indicates each layer's functional responsibilities.

Table 4: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture

Network Node and Function	MS	BSS	SGSN
LLC: GSM 04.64	Same as for the SGSN.		Provides transfer of frames between the SGSN and MS.
BSSGP: GSM 08.18		MS←PLMN: Using BSSGP information, RLC/MAC operations are invoked. MS→PLMN: Using RLC/MAC-derived information, a BSSGP PDU is constructed. An identifier of the cell including RAC and LAC in which an LLC frame was received is inserted into the BSSGP PDU. Same as for SGSN.	Individual MS radio-related information is used by the BSS to transfer LLC frames across the Gb and Um. Provides flow control and unconfirmed data delivery services across the Gb interface (not the Um – this is the function of the LLC and RLC/MAC function). Provides SGSN-BSS node management functions.
Network Service: GSM 08.16		Same as for SGSN	Provides a multiplexing, variable-bandwidth, frame-based, link layer transport mechanism across the Gb interface, and load balancing.

12.7.3.2 BSSGP Addressing

For information transfer between the SGSN and the BSS the BSSGP is using a BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier (BVCI) for addressing. Additionally, QoS profile, and the MS identification, e.g., TLLI, may be used to create queues and contexts in both the SGSN and the BSS. The flow control mechanism is then based on these queues and contexts.

12.7.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN

A BVCI context in the BSS consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and of the available radio resource capacity.

The BVCI context in the BSS is allocated for each cell supporting GPRS. For each new GPRS cell introduced in the BSS area, a new BVCI context shall be allocated.

In the SGSN the BVCI context consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and the allowed throughput on BSSGP. The allowed throughput is updated by BSSGP flow control messages.

12.7.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface

The flow control mechanism controls the loading of the BSS LLC PDU queues per BVCI and per MS between the SGSN and the BSS in the downlink direction. No flow control is performed in the uplink direction. Buffers and link capacity shall be dimensioned to avoid loss of uplink data.

The downlink flow control mechanism is based on the following principles:

- In the SGSN, queues for LLC PDUs are provided per BVCI. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. The SGSN shall pass LLC PDUs to LLC via BSSGP to the BSS as long as the allowed BSSGP throughput is not exceeded. The allowed BSSGP throughput is given per BVCI and for a single MS on that BVCI. The SGSN schedules the BSSGP downlink traffic of all MSs of a BVCI according to both throughput parameters and to the QoS profile related to each LLC PDU. The scheduling algorithm is implementation dependent.

- In the BSS, queues per BVCI are provided at the BSSGP level. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. Depending on the queuing conditions and the available radio resource capacity in the cell the BSS indicates the allowed BSSGP throughput per BVCI and the default allowed BSSGP throughput for each

individual MS of that BVCI by BSSGP flow control messages to the SGSN. Additionally, the BSS may change the allowed BSSGP throughput for an individual MS by a BSSGP flow control message.

12.7.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Three packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by three reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, one is used for SMS, and one is used for signalling. The SGSN can assign the best-effort or SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context. In the SMS case, the BSS shall handle the packet flow for the PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 83. Each step is explained in the following list.

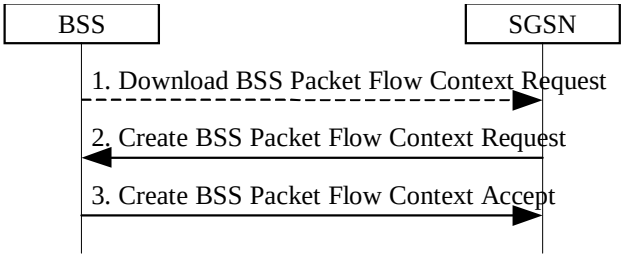


Figure 83: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS.

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.7.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context. The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure shall be used in this case, and the BSS shall instead of creating a BSS packet flow context overwrite the existing parameters with the modified parameters.

12.7.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 84. Each step is explained in the following list.

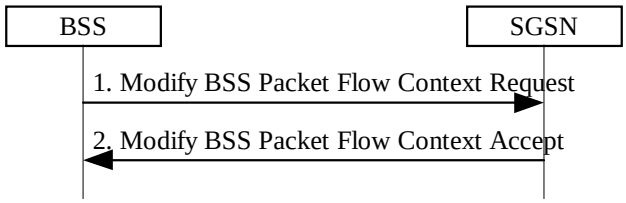


Figure 84: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.7.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in Figure 85. Each step is explained in the following list.

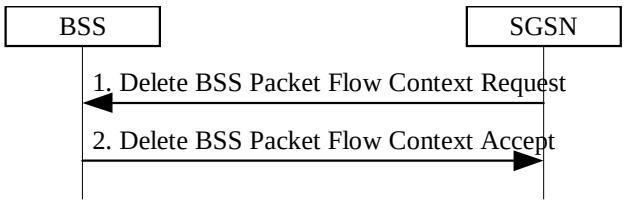


Figure 85: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.

2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

12.8 Iu Interface for UMTS

The Iu interface connects the UTRAN and the Core Network packet domain, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The user plane of Iu interface shall allow user data from many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter.

In UMTS only user data is transmitted on this shared physical medium. Signalling data is transferred via an SCCP connection. A reference configuration for Iu interface user plane is given in Figure 86.

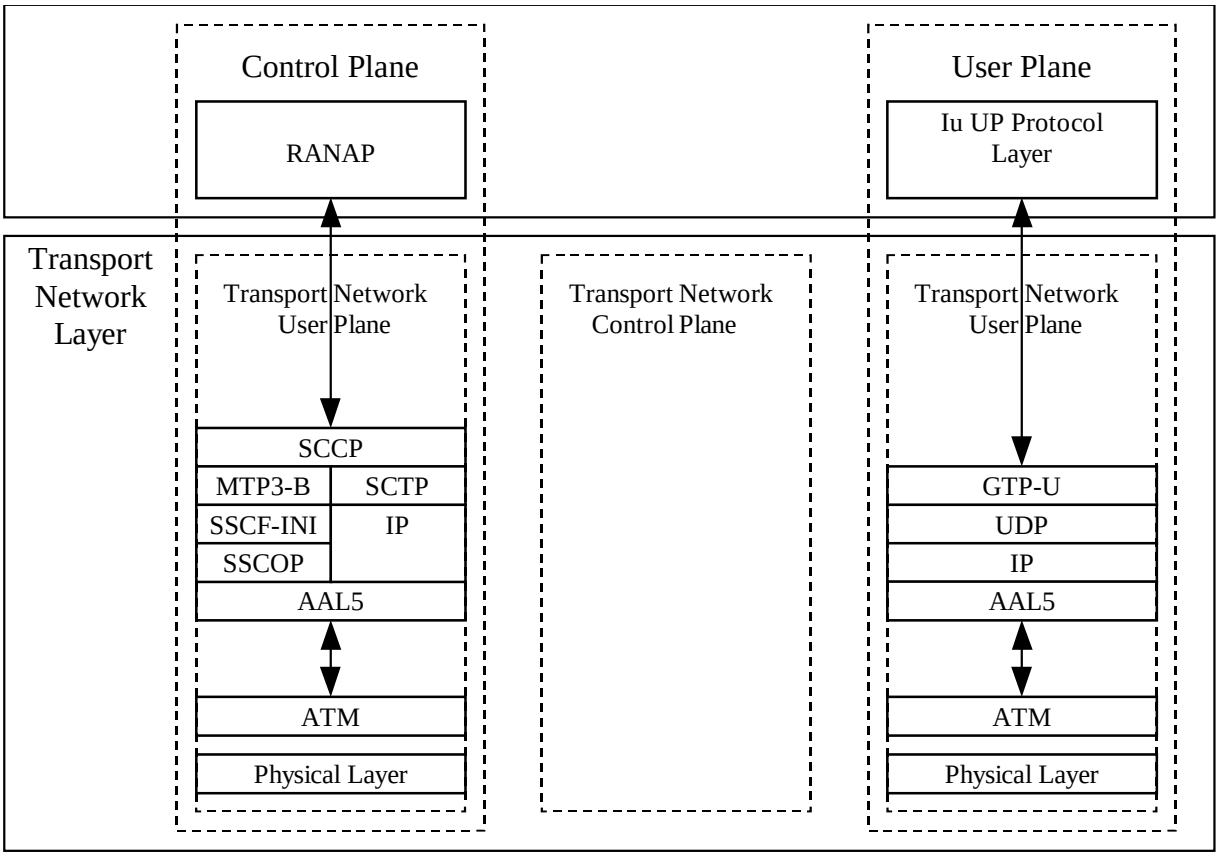


Figure 86: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic

12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols

The physical layer shall comply with one of a wide range of standards, according to 3G TS 25.411. Services provided to the upper layer shall be independent from the used underlying technology.

12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport

The GTP-U protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, as specified in RFC 768. Both the IPv4 (RFC 791) and IPv6 (RFC 2460) IP protocols shall be supported, IPv6 support is FFS.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core network domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the Iu interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in RFC 1483.

The Iu interface protocol stack is described in more detailed in 3G TS 25.414.

12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces

The GTP-U PDU sequence numbers allocated by the GGSN (downlink) and SRNS (uplink) are kept unchanged irrespective of the number of GTP tunnels the PDU is transferred over. Therefore, SGSN shall use on the Iu interface for downlink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the GGSN, and shall use on the Gn interface for uplink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the SRNS. In case of SRNS relocation and intersystem change, the SRNS and SGSN shall tunnel PDUs without changing the GTP-U sequence numbers.

12.8.2.2 Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport

The protocol stack for signalling transport is based on ATM/AAL5. Two AAL5 signalling transport services options are available to provide services for the SCCP layer.

The first option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses SSCOP for reliability reasons. SSCF provides the adaptation to upper layers. MTP3-B is the network layer protocol.

The second option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses IP as the network layer. SCTP performs the adaptation of the IP layer and provides services to the SCCP layer.

12.8.3 Iu Release Procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and changes the 3G-SGSN PMM state to PMM-IDLE. Both RNC-initiated and SGSN-initiated Iu release procedures are showed in the figure below.

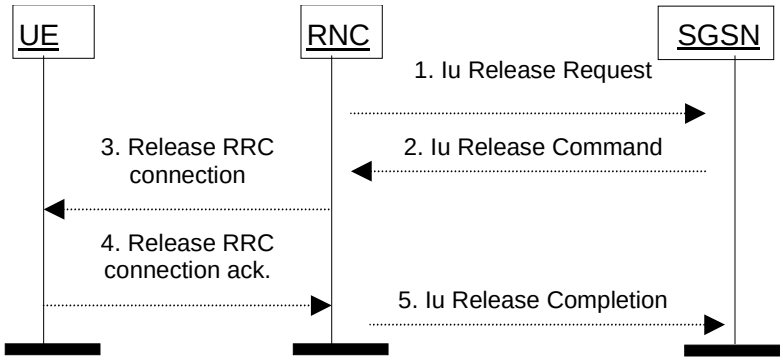


Figure 87: Iu Release Procedure

NOTE 1: Message 1 is only sent when the RNC-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

NOTE 2: Message 1 is not sent but message 2 is sent when the SGSN-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

1) The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources. It sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN. Cause indicates the reason for the release (O&M Intervention, Equipment Failure, Implicit Release, or Resource Optimisation). Implicit Release means that the periodic URA update timer expired. Resource Optimisation means that RNC decided to release an MS with only a non real-time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC-Connection-Release timer expired.

2) The SGSN releases the Iu by sending the Iu Release Command (Cause) message to the RNC. This message may be triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to send the Iu Release Command message after an Iu Release Request message with Cause set to Resource Optimisation is received from the RNC.

3) If the RRC connection is not already released (Cause = Resource Optimisation), then the RNC sends a Release RRC Connection message to the MS. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS]

4) The MS returns a Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message to the RNC.

5) The RNC confirms the Iu release by returning an Iu Release Completion message to the SGSN.

If the RNC does not receive the Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message and if Cause is different from Authentication Failure or Detach, then it should send a failure message to the SGSN, and the SGSN should stay in the MM-CONNECTED state.

12.8.4 Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the MS is currently located, or to report when the MS moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in the LCS stage-2 specification, see 3G TS 23.171.

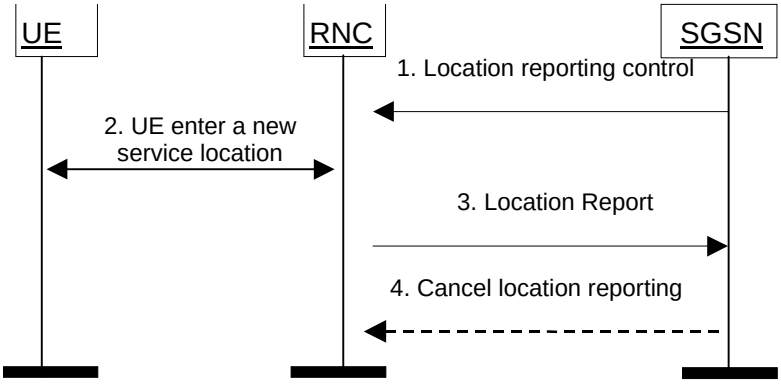


Figure 88: Location Reporting Procedure

1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area an MS in the MM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this MS. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the MS.

2) The SRNC detects that the MS moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the MS if this was requested by the SGSN.

3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the MS is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the MS is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the MS, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a MS entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).

4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given MS. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

12.9 Abis Interface for GPRS

When the GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GPRS Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the GPRS RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in Figure 89) or at the SGSN site (option C in Figure 89). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in Figure 89).

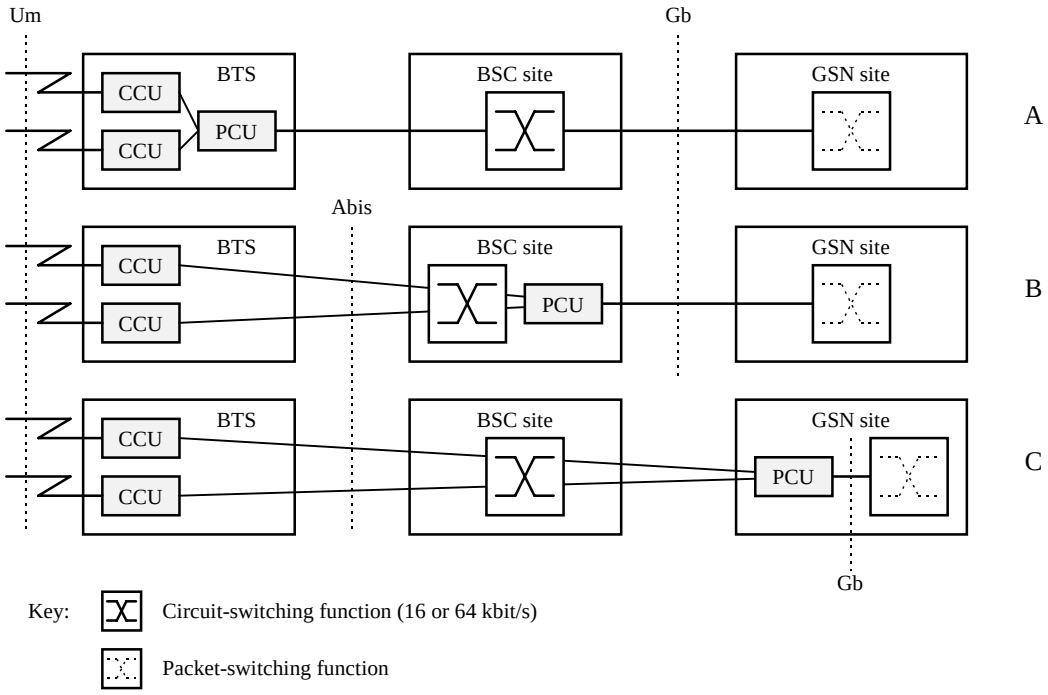


Figure 89: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following GPRS MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in Figure 90.

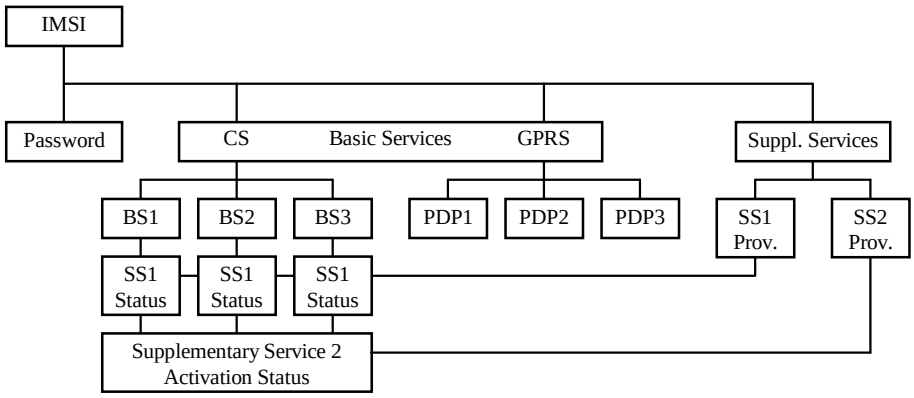


Figure 90: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As Figure 90 indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Table 5 shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 5: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
MS PS Purged for GPRS	Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN.	X	X
GGSN-list	The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling".	X	X
Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed.	X	X
Access Point Name	A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. Table 6 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 6: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain	X	X

	of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.		
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS.		X
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

~~In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. Table 7 shows the context fields for one MS.~~

~~Table 7: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access~~

~~Field~~	~~Description~~
~~A-TLLI~~	~~Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.~~
~~AA-TEID~~	~~Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.~~
~~Routeing Area~~	~~Current routeing area.~~
~~Cell Identity~~	~~Current cell.~~
~~PDP Type~~	~~PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.~~
~~PDP Address~~	~~PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.~~
~~APN in Use~~	~~The APN currently used.~~
~~NSAPI~~	~~Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.~~
~~TI~~	~~Transaction Identifier.~~
~~GGSN Address in Use~~	~~The IP address of the GGSN currently used.~~
~~QoS Profile Requested~~	~~The quality of service profile requested.~~
~~QoS Profile Negotiated~~	~~The quality of service profile negotiated.~~
~~Radio Priority~~	~~The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.~~
~~Packet Flow Id~~	~~Packet flow identifier.~~
~~Send N-PDU Number~~	~~SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.~~
~~Receive N-PDU Number~~	~~SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.~~
~~GTP-SND~~	~~GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.~~
~~GTP-SNU~~	~~GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.~~
~~Charging Id~~	~~Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.~~

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 8 shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 8: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.	X	X
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.	X	X
TFT	Traffic flow template.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.	X	X
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.	X	X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X

If a PDP context is enabled for network-requested PDP context activation, then IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, SGSN Address and MNRG contain valid information also when the PDP context is inactive and when the MS is GPRS-detached.

~~In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 9 shows the PDP context fields for one MS.~~

~~**Table 9: GGSN PDP Context for Anonymous Access**~~

~~Field~~	~~Description~~
~~AA-TEID~~	~~Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.~~
~~PDP Type~~	~~PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.~~
~~PDP Address~~	~~PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.~~
~~APN in Use~~	~~The APN Network Identifier currently used.~~
~~QoS Profile Negotiated~~	~~The quality of service profile negotiated.~~
~~SGSN Address~~	~~The IP address of the SGSN serving this MS.~~
~~GTP-SND~~	~~GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.~~
~~GTP-SNU~~	~~GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.~~
~~Charging Id~~	~~Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.~~

~~A GGSN that supports anonymous access shall have a list of server addresses that are allowed to be accessed by anonymous MSs. The method to maintain the list of the servers is outside the scope of the present document.~~

13.4 MS

Each packet domain MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. Table 10 shows the MS context fields.

Table 10: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	G, U	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	G, U	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	G, U	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
Routeing Area	G, U	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity		Current cell.	X	
Kc	G	Current GPRS ciphering key.	X	
CKSN / KSI	G, U	Key Set Identifier for IK Next, CK Next, and Kc.	X	X
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	X
CK		Currently used ciphering key.		X
CK Next	U	UMTS ciphering key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
IK		Currently used integrity key.		X
IK Next	U	Integrity key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
Classmark		MS classmark.	X	X
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:				
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.	X	X
APN Requested		The APN requested.	X	X
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI		Transaction Identifier.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
TFT		Traffic flow template.	X	X
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id		Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND		The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the RNC.		X
RLC-SNU		The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the RNC.		X

The information marked with a "U" in Table 10 shall be stored in the USIM.

The information marked with a "G" in Table 10:

- shall be stored in the GSIM if the connected SIM is PS-aware; and
- may be stored in the ME after PS detach if the connected GSIM is not PS-aware.

If the GSIM is packet domain service-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the GSIM shall be used for packet domain services.

If the GSIM is not packet domain service-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the GSIM is identical to the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the GSIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a PS attach. IMSI,

P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the PS attach has been successfully performed.

When using a USIM, the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, CK Next, IK Next, and CKSN / KSI stored in the USIM, and the CK and IK stored in the ME, shall be used for packet domain services.

~~For anonymous access (GPRS only) each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in READY state. The information may be contained in the ME and the TE. Table 11 shows the MS context fields.~~

~~Table 11: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access~~

~~Field~~	~~Description~~
~~A-TLLI~~	~~Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.~~
~~Routeing Area~~	~~Current routeing area.~~
~~Cell Identity~~	~~Current cell.~~
~~PDP Type~~	~~PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.~~
~~PDP Address~~	~~PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.~~
~~NSAPI~~	~~Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.~~
~~TI~~	~~Transaction Identifier.~~
~~APN Requested~~	~~The APN requested.~~
~~QoS Profile Requested~~	~~The quality of service profile requested.~~
~~QoS Profile Negotiated~~	~~The quality of service profile negotiated.~~
~~Radio Priority~~	~~The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.~~
~~Packet Flow Id~~	~~Packet flow identifier.~~
~~Send N-PDU Number~~	~~SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.~~
~~Receive N-PDU Number~~	~~SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.~~

13.5 MSC/VLR

The MSC/VLR may store the SGSN number of PS-attached MSs that are also CS-attached. Table 12 shows the MSC/VLR association for one MS.

Table 12: MSC/VLR Association

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SGSN number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Table 13 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 13: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

~~The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. Table 14 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.~~

~~**Table 14: BSS Context for Anonymous Access**~~

~~Field~~	~~Description~~
~~A-TLLI~~	~~Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.~~
~~Packet Flow Id~~	~~Packet flow identifier.~~
~~Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated~~	~~The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.~~
~~BSS Packet Flow Timer~~	~~BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.~~

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. Table 15 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 15: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence number to be sent to the MS
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence Number expected from the MS

13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.8.1 HLR Failure

When an HLR restarts, it sends to each SGSN where one or more of its MSs are registered a Reset message. This causes the SGSN to mark the relevant MM contexts as invalid, and to set NGAF if an SGSN – MSC/VLR association exists. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from a marked MS, the SGSN performs an update location to the HLR as in the attach or inter SGSN RA update procedures, and, if NGAF is set, the procedure in subclause "Non-GPRS Alert" is followed. The update location procedure and the procedure towards the MSC/VLR may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator configuration-depending time period to avoid high signalling load. The periodic back-up of HLR data to non-volatile storage is mandatory as described in UMTS 33.007 [5].

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid. If there is no MM context for the MS, the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routeing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined PS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

13.8.4 VLR Failure

When a VLR fails, all its associations with SGSNs affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. Based on configuration data, the MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Reset message to each of its associated SGSNs. The SGSNs mark all associations containing the restarted VLR as invalid. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached, the SGSN shall return a Detach Request (Detach Type) message in order to request the MS to perform a combined RA / LA update. Detach Type shall be set to CS Detach. The detach procedure may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator-configuration depending time period to avoid high signalling load.

13.8.5 BSS Failure for GPRS

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

13.8.6 RNC Failure for UMTS

When an RNC fails, all its RNC contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. RNC storage of data is volatile.

14 Identities

14.1 IMSI

A unique International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) shall be allocated to each packet-domain subscriber. This is also the case for PS-only subscribers~~, except for anonymous-only access subscribers~~. IMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003 [4].

14.2 Packet TMSI

A Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity shall be allocated to each PS-attached MS. P-TMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.3 NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) and Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) are used for network layer routeing. An NSAPI / TLLI pair is unambiguous within a routeing area.

In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context associated with a PDP address. Between the MS and SGSN, TLLI unambiguously identifies the logical link.

When the MS requests the activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs.

For example (shown figuratively below), an X.25 packet is received by the MS from a connected TE at the X.121 address SAP. The X.25 PDU is encapsulated and NSAPI is initialised to NSAPI-1. TLLI is set to the MS's TLLI before the encapsulated X.25 packet is passed to the SNDC function.

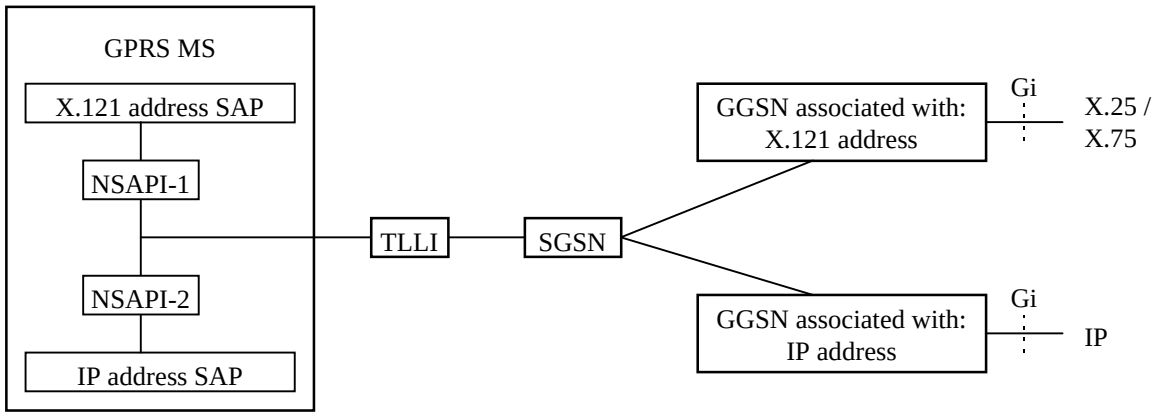


Figure 91: Use of NSAPI and TLLI

Within a routeing area, there is a one-to-one correspondence between TLLI and IMSI that is only known in the MS and SGSN. If it is not clear from the context which routeing area a TLLI belongs to, then TLLI is used together with RAI. TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI, and does then provide user identity confidentiality as described in subclause "User Identity Confidentiality".

The TLLI address range is divided into four ranges: Local, Foreign, Random, and Auxiliary. The TLLI structure allows the MS and SGSN to deduce the range that a TLLI belongs to. A Local TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN, and is valid only in the RA associated with the P-TMSI. A Foreign TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI allocated in another RA. A Random TLLI is selected randomly by the MS, and is used when the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available~~, or when the MS originates an anonymous access~~. An Auxiliary TLLI is selected by the SGSN, but is not used in this release of the specifications ~~and is used by the SGSN and MS to unambiguously identify an Anonymous Access MM and PDP Context~~.

If the MS has a valid P-TMSI associated with the RA where the MS is currently located, then the MS shall use a Local TLLI derived from its P-TMSI, unless the MS performs a GPRS attach.

If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI associated with the current RA, or if the MS performs a GPRS attach, then it shall derive a Foreign TLLI from its P-TMSI, or allocate a Random TLLI if no valid P-TMSI is available.

When a TLLI is exchanged between the MS and an SGSN, then the TLLI is transmitted at the RLC/MAC layer within the Um protocol stack, and at the BSSGP layer within the Gb protocol stack. NSAPI is transmitted within the SNDCP layer in the user plane, and within the GMM/SM layer in the control plane. NSAPI is represented by a transaction identifier (TI) in some SM signalling messages. The TI is dynamically allocated by the MS for MS-requested ~~(AA)~~ PDP context activation, and by the network for network-requested PDP context activation. The TI is deallocated when a PDP context has been deactivated. TI usage is defined in 3G TS 24.007 and 3G TS 24.008.

By default, unless explicitly specified in the procedures, the TLLI transmitted at the RLC/MAC and BSSGP layers shall be used to identify the MS.

14.4 NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) is used for network layer routeing. In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context, and in the RNC, NSAPI identifies the RNC RAB context. Radio Bearer Identity (RB Identity) is used to identify the Uu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer. Radio Access Bearer Identifier (RAB ID) is used to identify the Iu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer.

In the packet domain, a network allocates one radio access bearer for one PDP context. In addition, one Uu interface logical radio bearer is allocated for one radio access bearer.

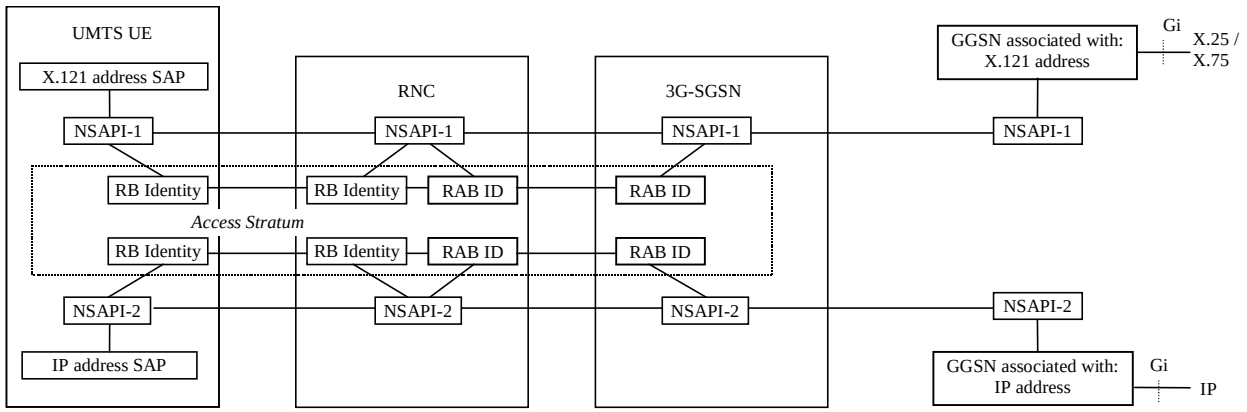


Figure 92: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID

When the MS initiates activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs. When the SGSN initiates a RAB assignment procedure, the SGSN shall allocate RAB ID(s) in which NSAPI(s) are used as those values in order to recognise them in the RNC.

14.5 PDP Address

A packet-domain subscriber identified by an IMSI, shall have one or more network layer addresses, i.e., PDP addresses, temporarily and/or permanently associated with it that conforms to the standard addressing scheme of the respective network layer service used, e.g.:

- an IP version 4 address;
- an IP version 6 address; or
- an X.121 address.

PDP addresses are activated and deactivated through MM procedures described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

14.6 TEID

A Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID) is used by the GPRS tunnelling protocol between GSNs, and between RNCs and SGSNs, to identify a tunnel endpoint in the receiving GTP-C or GTP-U protocol entity and to identify a PDP context. The receiving end side of a GTP tunnel locally assigns the TEID value that the transmitting side has to use. The TEID values are exchanged between tunnel endpoints using GTP-C (or RANAP in the Iu case) messages.

The TEID is forwarded to the GGSN upon PDP Context Activation and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the GGSN and the SGSN to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and GGSN. The TEID is also used to forward N-PDUs from the old SGSN to the new SGSN at and after an inter SGSN routeing area update. In UMTS, the TEID is also forwarded to the RNC upon RAB assignment and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the 3G-SGSN and the RNC in order to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and the MS's RNC RAB contexts in the RNC. It is also used to forward N-PDUs from the SRNC to the target RNC at SRNS relocation.

~~In the anonymous access case, AA-TEID is allocated locally by the SGSN. An AA-TEID consists of an A-TLLI and an NSAPI similar to TEID. Since the IMSI is longer than A-TLLI, the unused digits shall be used to create a unique identity within one PLMN. The allocated AA-TEID shall not collide with the TEID address space.~~

14.7 Routeing Area Identity

Routeing Area Identity (RAI), defined by an operator, identifies one or several cells. In GPRS, RAI is broadcast as system information. In UMTS, RAI is broadcast to MSs in RRC Idle mode, and is notified to MSs in RRC Connected mode on established RRC connections as MM system information.

The location of an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state is known in the SGSN on an RA level. Cells that do not support packet-domain services within an LA are grouped into a null RA. The MS is paged for packet services in the RA where the MS is located when mobile-terminated traffic arrives in the SGSN. The MS is paged for circuit-switched services by the SGSN in the last known RA plus in the null RA.

NOTE: Cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC without a Gb interface should not be included in the same location area as cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC with a Gb interface.

A Routeing Area is a subset of one, and only one, Location Area (LA), meaning that an RA cannot span more than one LA. An RA is served by only one SGSN.

The following rules apply for the Routeing Area Identity:

- RAC is only unique when presented together with LAI.
- CI is only unique when presented together with LAI or RAI (GPRS only).
- LAI = MCC + MNC + LAC
- RAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + RAC
- CGI = LAI + CI (GPRS only)

14.8 UTRAN Registration Area Identity

The UTRAN Registration Area Identity (URA Id) identifies a UTRAN Registration Area (URA) and is defined in 3G TS 25.331. URA Id can be used to indicate to the MS which URA it shall use in case of overlapping URAs.

14.9 Cell Identity

In GPRS, Cell Identity (CI) identifies one cell. In UMTS, Cell Identifer (C-Id) uniquely identifies a cell within an RNS. CI and C-Id are defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.10 Service Area Identity

The Service Area Identity (SAI) is used to uniquely identify an area consisting of one or more cells belonging to the same location area. Such an area is called a Service Area and can be used for indicating the location of an MS to the CN.

The Service Area Code (SAC) together with the PLMN identity and the LAC constitutes the Service Area Identity:

- SAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + SAC

14.11 GSN Addresses

14.11.1 GSN Address

Each SGSN and GGSN shall have an IP address, either of type IPv4 or IPv6, for inter-communication over the backbone network. The IP addresses of GSNs and other backbone nodes of all PLMNs build a private address space that is not accessible from the public Internet. For the GGSN and the SGSN, this IP address may also correspond to one or more DNS-type logical GSN names.

14.11.2 GSN Number

Each SGSN shall have an SGSN number for communication with e.g., HLR and EIR.

Each GGSN that supports the optional SS7-based Gc interface shall have a GGSN number for communication with HLRs.

14.12 RNC Addresses

14.12.1 RNC Address

Each RNC shall have one or more IP addresses, either of type IPv4 or IPv6, for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.12.2 RNC Number

Each RNC shall have an RNC number for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.13 Access Point Name

In the backbone, Access Point Name is a reference to the GGSN to be used. In addition, Access Point Name may, in the GGSN, identify the external network and optionally a service to be offered. Access Point Name is composed of two parts as defined in 3G TS 23.003:

- The APN Network Identifier is mandatory and is a label (for example "corporation" or "service") or a set of labels separated by dots which is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions (for example "company.com" or "service.company.com"). In order to guarantee the uniqueness of the APN, the packet-domain PLMN should allocate, to an ISP or corporation, an APN Network Identifier identical to their domain name in the public Internet. The APN Network Identifier shall not end with ".gprs". An APN Network Identifier that consists of 3 or more labels and that starts with a Reserved Service Label, or an APN Network Identifier that consists of a Reserved Service Label alone, shall indicate that for this APN the GGSN supports additional services such as external PDN address allocation or Mobile IP support. Reserved Service Labels, e.g., "dhcp" or "MIPv4FA", and the corresponding services that they stand for, e.g., external PDN address allocation via DHCP, or Mobile IP Foreign Agent support, are to be agreed among operators.
- The APN Operator Identifier is optional. It is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions, and consists of three labels. The APN Operator Identifier shall end in ".gprs". For example, it may be "MNCyyyy.MCCzzzz.gprs". The exact format is defined in 3G TS 29.060.

The APN stored in the HLR shall not contain the APN Operator Identifier. A wild card may be stored in the HLR instead of the APN. This wild card indicates that the user may select an APN that is not stored in the HLR. The use of the wild card is described in annex A.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000103**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	099	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Motorola **Date:** 14 Jan., 2000

Subject: Removal of TCP support in the packet domain PLMN backbone network

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature	X		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:
TSG S1 has decided that X.25 shall not be supported as an end user protocol in release 99 onwards, i.e., PDP Type X.25 shall be deleted from the specifications, see Tdoc S1-991001. TCP has been supported in the backbone network in order to accommodate X.25 which places a stricter error rate QoS requirement than IP traffic. Hence there is no need for the TCP support any longer, and it is proposed that only UDP be used in the backbone network.

An artefact of this CR is that it streamlines the GTP-U protocol stack across the Iu and Gn interfaces. The current version of the specifications shows that TCP is supported on Gn and not on Iu, which does not make sense from a UMTS reliability point of view.

Clauses affected: Many.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN

The user plane consists of a layered protocol structure providing user information transfer, along with associated information transfer control procedures (e.g., flow control, error detection, error correction and error recovery). The user plane independence of the Network Subsystem (NSS) platform from the underlying radio interface is preserved via the Gb interface. The following user plane is used in GPRS:

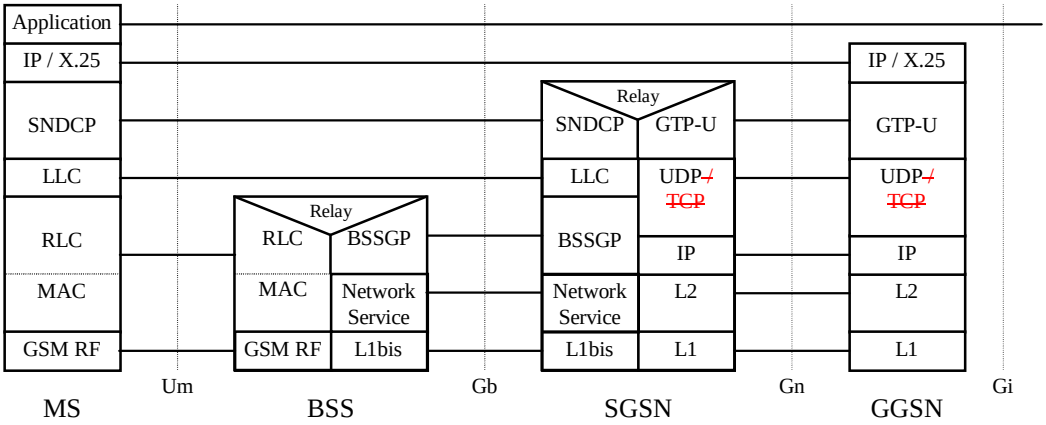


Figure 1: User Plane for GPRS

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between GPRS Support Nodes in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by the GPRS Tunnelling Protocol. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060 [26].

- ~~TCP carries GTP PDUs in the backbone network for protocols that need a reliable data link (e.g., X.25), and~~ UDP carries GTP PDUs for protocols that do not need a reliable data link (e.g., IP), and~~. TCP provides flow control and protection against lost and corrupted GTP PDUs. UDP~~ provides protection against corrupted GTP PDUs. ~~TCP is defined in RFC 793 [42].~~ UDP is defined in RFC 768 [39].

- IP: This is the backbone network protocol used for routeing user data and control signalling. The backbone network may initially be based on the IP version 4 protocol. Ultimately, IP version 6 shall be used. IP version 4 is defined in RFC 791.

- Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. SNDCP is specified in GSM 04.65 [16].

- Logical Link Control (LLC): This layer provides a highly reliable ciphered logical link. LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols in order to allow introduction of alternative GPRS radio solutions with minimum changes to the NSS. LLC is specified in GSM 04.64.

- Relay: In the BSS, this function relays LLC PDUs between the Um and Gb interfaces. In the SGSN, this function relays PDP PDUs between the Gb and Gn interfaces.

- Base Station System GPRS Protocol (BSSGP): This layer conveys routeing- and QoS-related information between BSS and SGSN. BSSGP does not perform error correction. BSSGP is specified in GSM 08.18 [21].

- Network Service (NS): This layer transports BSSGP PDUs. NS is based on the Frame Relay connection between BSS and SGSN, and may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. NS is specified in GSM 08.16 [20].

- RLC/MAC: This layer contains two functions: The Radio Link Control function provides a radio-solution-dependent reliable link. The Medium Access Control function controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel, and the mapping of LLC frames onto the GSM physical channel. RLC/MAC is defined in GSM 04.60 [14].

- GSM RF: As defined in GSM 05 series.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;
- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and
- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. The maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets [FFS]. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with ~~either~~ the ~~TCP/IP or the~~ UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs

The packet domain PLMN backbone network encapsulates a PDP PDU with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header, and inserts this GTP PDU in a ~~TCP PDU or~~ UDP PDU that again is inserted in an IP PDU. The IP and GTP PDU headers contain the GSN addresses and tunnel endpoint identifier necessary to uniquely address a GSN PDP context.

12.1 Transmission Modes

For GPRS, the ~~GTP-U,~~ LLC~~,~~ and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the ~~GTP-U,~~ LLC~~,~~ and RLC transmission modes define the QoS reliability classes (see subclause "Reliability Class").

For UMTS, the ~~GTP-U and~~ RLC protocol~~s~~ provide~~s~~ various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS.

The RLC protocol for GPRS and the RLC protocol for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

~~Two~~One mode~~s~~ of operation of the GTP-U layer is~~are~~ supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP)~~ and acknowledged (TCP/IP). The GTP-U layer shall support both modes simultaneously~~. In UMTS, GTP-U is also used on the Iu interface for user data transport. Only the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported on the Iu interface.

~~[Check the Gn TCP support in UMTS.]~~

12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP types IP and X.25, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD) function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layer~~s~~ below SNDCP~~ and GTP~~.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Figure 2 illustrates the OSP user plane for GPRS, and Figure 3 for UMTS.

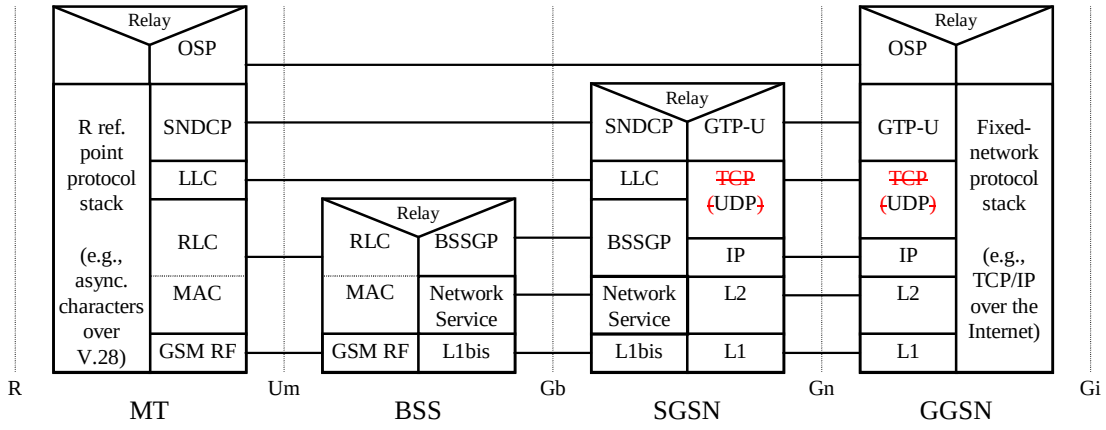


Figure 2: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

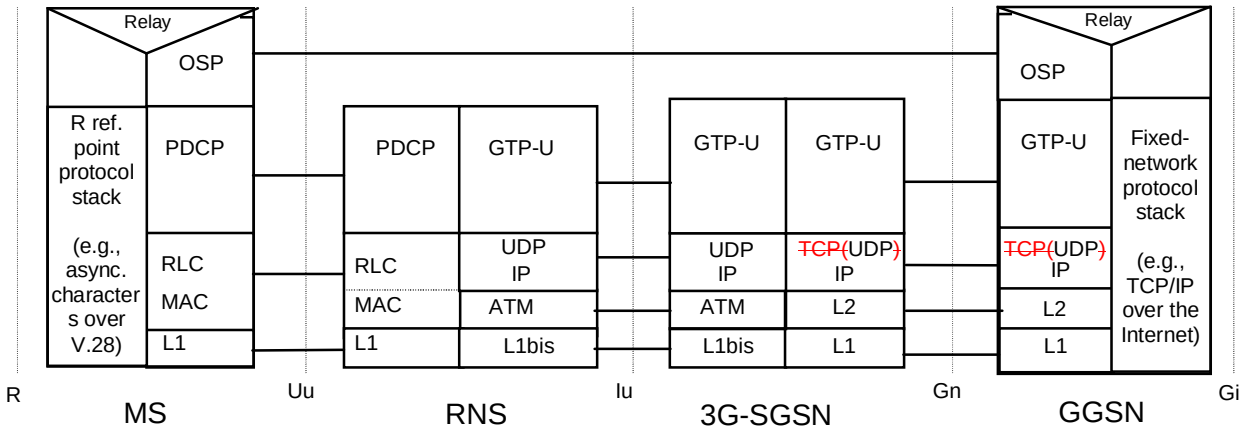


Figure 3: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP

The user plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GPRS or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS, and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

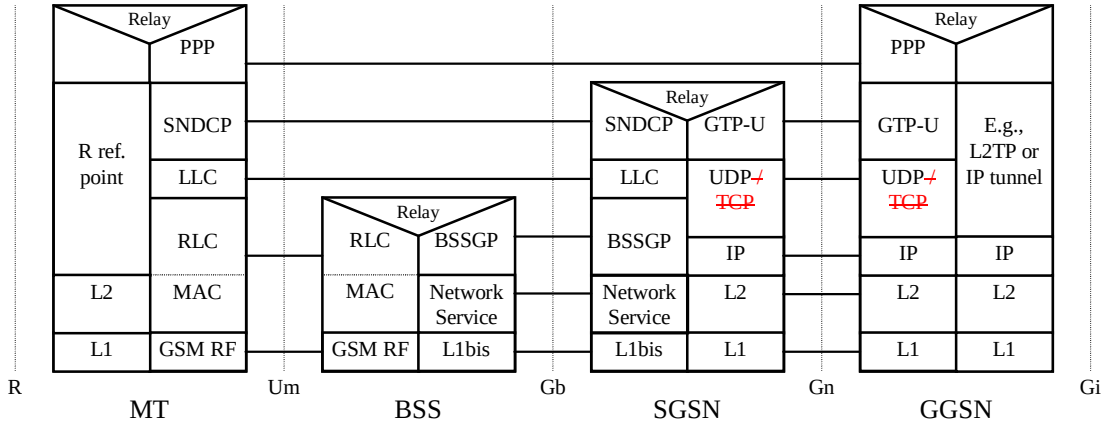


Figure 4: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

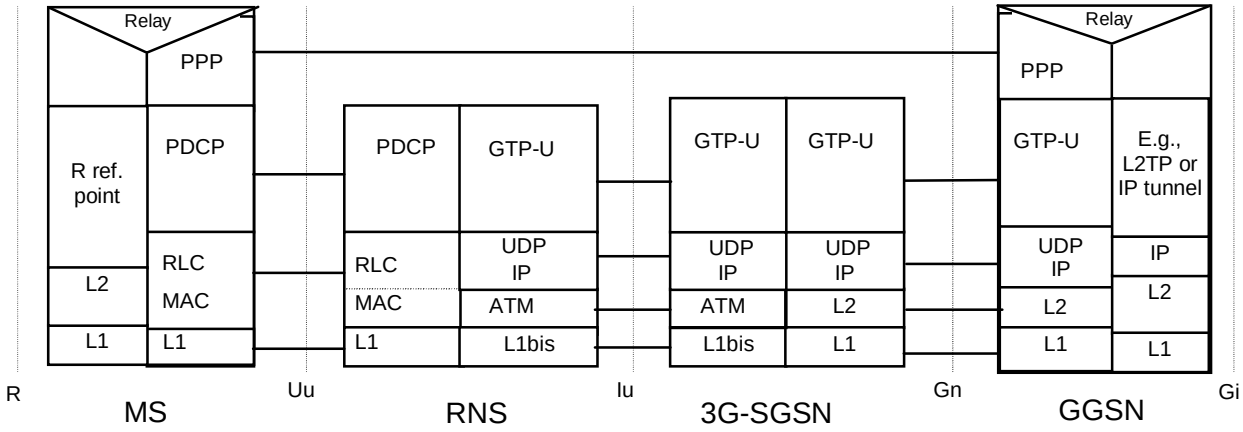


Figure 5: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

Document S2-000215
Revised S2-000104
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**100r1**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: TSG#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]

Source: Motorola **Date:** 25 Jan., 2000

Subject: IPv6 as optional Iu and Gn protocol

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: As equipment based on the IP version 6 protocol is not widely available yet, it is premature to mandate IPv6 support on the Iu interface and in the packet-domain PLMN backbone network. Support for IPv6 should therefore be optional.

Clauses affected: 12.8.2.1, 14.11.1, and 14.12.1.

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

12.8 Iu Interface for UMTS

12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport

The GTP-U protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, as specified in RFC 768. ~~Both t~~The IPv4 (RFC 791) ~~and IPv6 (RFC 2460) IP~~ protocol~~s~~ shall be supported, IPv6 (RFC 2460) support is optional~~FFS~~.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core network domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the Iu interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in RFC 1483.

The Iu interface protocol stack is described in more detailed in 3G TS 25.414.

14.11.1 GSN Address

Each SGSN and GGSN shall have an IP address~~, either~~ of type IPv4, ~~or~~and optionally of type IPv6, for inter-communication over the backbone network. The IP addresses of GSNs and other backbone nodes of all PLMNs build a private address space that is not accessible from the public Internet. For the GGSN and the SGSN, this IP address may also correspond to one or more DNS-type logical GSN names.

14.12.1 RNC Address

Each RNC shall have one or more IP addresses~~, either~~ of type IPv4, ~~or~~and optionally of type IPv6, for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Valarta, Mexico, 24 – 28 Jan 2000

Document S2-000216
Revised S2-000105 *e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx*

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**101r1**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [X] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]

Source: Motorola **Date:** 25 Jan., 2000

Subject: Common GPRS and UMTS PS attach procedure

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*			**Release:**	
F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			Release 00	

Reason for change: It is an outstanding editorial task to merge the Attach procedures for GPRS and UMTS. The advantages are a more compact specification, and easier spec maintenance.

Clauses affected: 6.5.

Other specs affected:			
Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.5 PS Attach Function

An MS shall perform a PS Attach to the SGSN in order to obtain access to the PS services. If the MS is connected via a GPRS radio, it shall perform a GPRS Attach procedure. If the MS is connected via a UMTS radio access network, it shall perform a UMTS PS Attach procedure.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI.

6.5.1 GPRS Attach Procedure~~Function~~

A GPRS attach is made to the SGSN. A GPRS-attached MS makes IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operation mode is I. In network operation modes II and III, or if the MS is not GPRS-attached, then the MS makes IMSI attach as already defined in GSM. An IMSI-attached MS in class-A mode of operation engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a GPRS attach.

~~In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are GPRS attach and combined GPRS / IMSI attach.~~

At the RLC/MAC layer, the MS shall identify itself with a Local or Foreign TLLI if the MS is already GPRS-attached and is performing an IMSI attach. Otherwise, the MS shall identify itself with a Foreign TLLI, or a Random TLLI if a valid P-TMSI is not available. The Foreign or Random TLLI is used as an identifier during the attach procedure until a new P-TMSI is allocated.

After having executed the GPRS attach, the MS is in READY state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

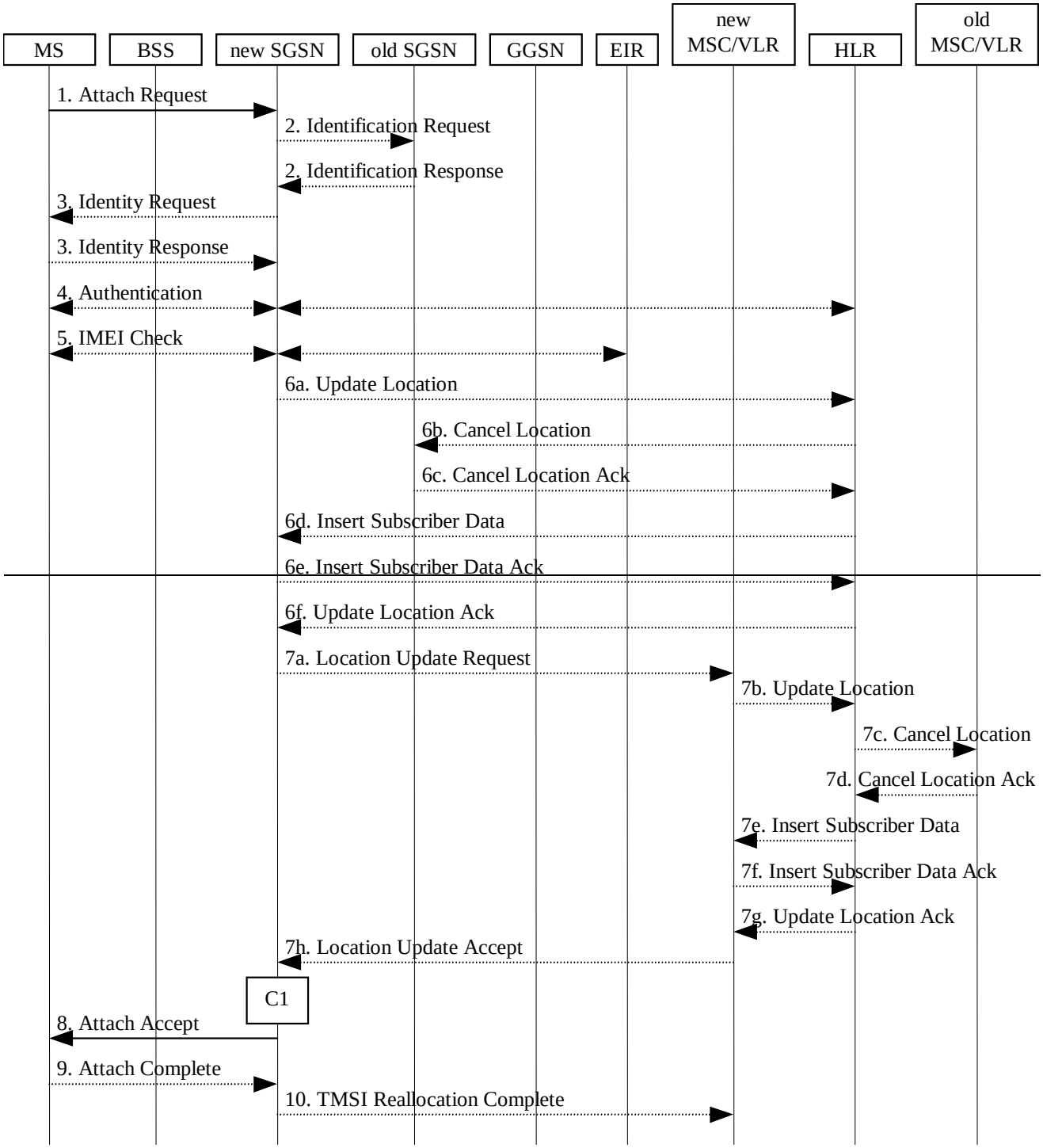
An IMSI-attached MS that can only operate in class-C mode of operation shall follow the normal IMSI detach procedure before it makes a GPRS attach. A GPRS-attached MS in class-C mode of operation shall always perform a GPRS detach before it makes an IMSI attach.

If the network operates in mode I (see subclause "Paging Co-ordination"), then an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

If the network operates in mode II or III, then a GPRS-attached MS that has the capability to be simultaneously GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the (non-combined) Routeing Area Update procedures, and either:

- access the non-GPRS common control channels for CS operation (the way that CS operation is performed in parallel with GPRS operation is an MS implementation issue outside the scope of the present document); or
- if CS operation is not desired, depending on system information that defines whether or not explicit detach shall be used, either:
  - avoid all CS signalling (in which case the MS may be implicitly IMSI detached after a while); or
  - perform an explicit IMSI detach via the non-GPRS common control channels (if the MS was already IMSI-attached).

The Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 2~~Figure 22~~. Each step is explained in the following list.



~~Figure 22: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure~~

~~1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Classmark, CKSN, Attach Type, DRX Parameters, old P-TMSI Signature) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. Classmark contains the MS's GPRS multislot capabilities and supported GPRS ciphering algorithms in addition to the existing classmark parameters defined in GSM 04.08. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests and channel assignments. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message.~~

2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication Triplets). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Attach Type indicated combined GPRS / IMSI attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

   b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

   c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.5.2 UMTS PS Attach Procedure~~Function~~

~~[It is an outstanding task to merge this subclause with "GPRS Attach Function".]~~

A PS-attached MS makes a CS attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operates in mode I. In network operates in mode II, or if the MS is not PS-attached, then the MS makes a normal CS attach. A CS-attached MS engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) PS Attach procedure when it performs a PS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are PS attach and combined PS / CS attach.

After having executed the PS attach, the MS is in the PMM-CONNECTED state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An CS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall follow the normal CS detach procedure before it makes a PS attach. A PS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall perform a PS detach before it makes a CS attach.

The Combined PS / CS Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 2~~Figure 22~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

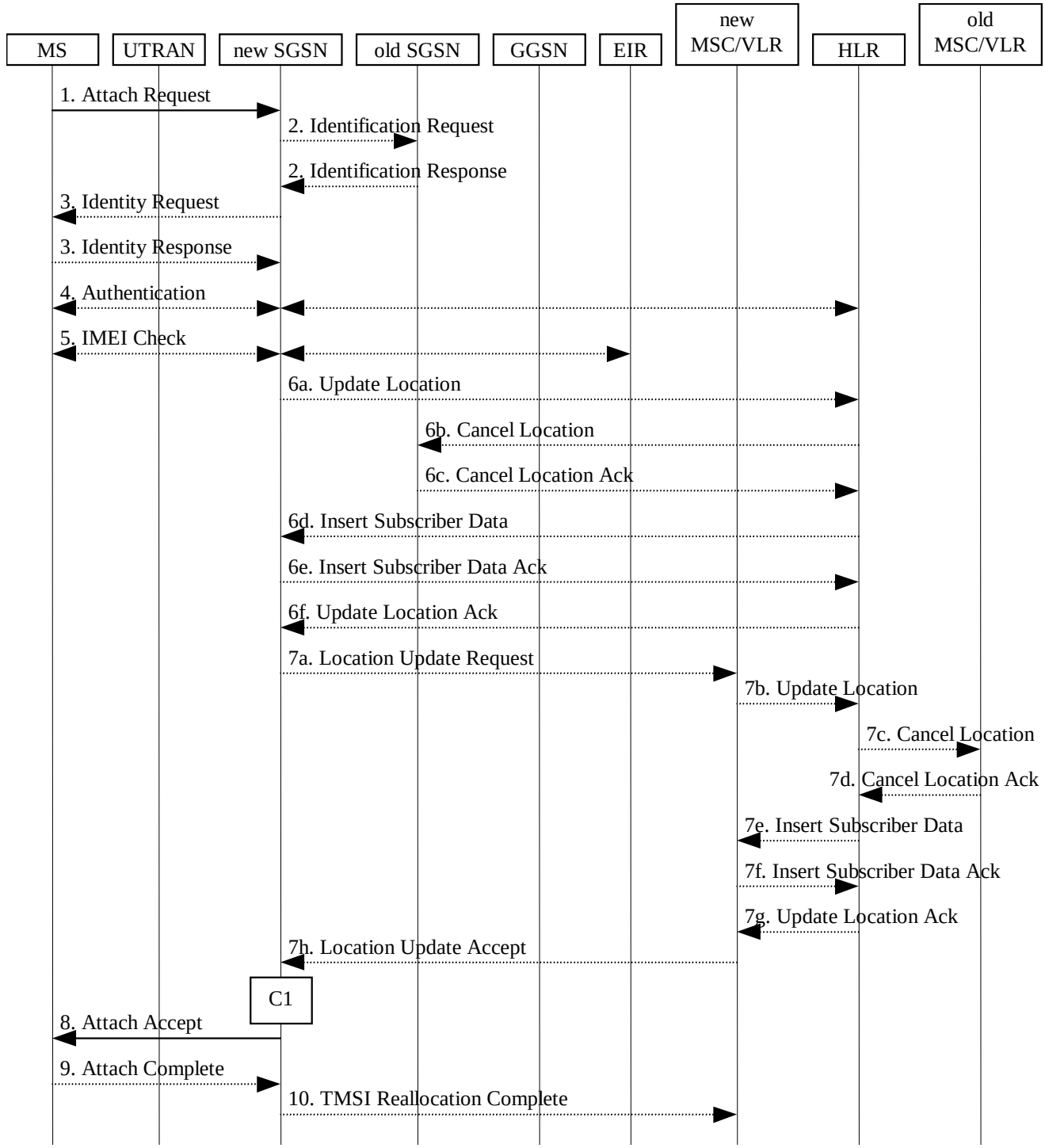


Figure 2: Combined GPRS / IMSI and Combined PS / CS Attach Procedure

1) For GPRS, the MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Classmark, CKSN, Attach Type, DRX Parameters, old P-TMSI Signature) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. Classmark contains the MS's GPRS multislot capabilities and supported GPRS ciphering algorithms in addition to the existing classmark parameters defined in GSM 04.08. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests and channel assignments. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message.

For UMTS, t~~T~~he MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Core Network Classmark, KSI, Attach Type, old P-TMSI Signature, Follow on request) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. KSI shall be included if the MS has valid security parameters. Core Network Classmark is describe in subclause "Core Network Classmark". Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the PS Attach procedure. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., PS attach only, PS Attach while already CS attached, or combined PS / CS attach.

2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication Triplets (for GPRS) or Authentication V~~v~~ectors (for UMTS)). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated GPRS or PS Attach while already IMSI or CS attached, or combined GPRS /IMSI or combined PS / CS attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI or CS attach if Attach Type indicated combined GPRS / IMSI or combined PS -/ CS attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 January 2000

***Document* S2-000219**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	103rev1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM	X	ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-01-25

Subject: UMTS authentication

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

a) Use of the existing GMM Authentication and ciphering request/response/reject messages in both GSM and UMTS.
b) Support for "UMTS authentication" in both GSM and UMTS.
c) The interoperability between GSM and UMTS regarding security keys and authentication functionality is described in 3G TS 33.102. Conversion functions between GSM and UMTS authentication parameters and security keys are defined in 3G TS 33.102.
d) "Ciphering Key Sequence Number" is used in both GSM and UMTS (i.e. no renaming to "Key sequence identifier")
e) Functional clarifications and editorial changes

Clauses affected: 6.8

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments: For the authentication and security key functionality, the interoperation between GSM and UMTS (including the related 3G-2G compatibility issue) is described in 3G TS 33.102 (v3.3.1) and therefore is the corresponding text in TS 23.060 (v3.2.1) proposed to be removed.

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.8 Security Function

The Security function:

- Guards against unauthorised packet-domain service usage (authentication of the MS by the network and service request validation).
- Provides user identity confidentiality (temporary identification and ciphering).
- Provides user data and signalling confidentiality (ciphering).
- Provides, for UMTS radio access only, data integrity and origin authentication of signalling data (integrity protection).
- Provides, for UMTS subscriber (USIM) only, authentication of the network by the MS.

Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 ~~for GPRS~~ and in ~~UMTS~~ 3G TS 33.102 ~~for UMTS~~.

6.8.1 Authentication

The Authentication function includes two type of authentication: “UMTS authentication” respective “GSM authentication”.

“UMTS authentication” implies mutual authentication, i.e. authentication of the MS by the network and authentication of the network by the MS. It also implies establishment of a new UMTS ciphering key and integrity key (CK and IK) agreement between SGSN and MS.

“GSM authentication” implies authentication of the MS by the network and establishment of a new GSM ciphering key (Kc) agreement between SGSN and MS.

6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber ~~in GSM~~

Authentication procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN. The GPRS Authentication procedure performs subscriber authentication, or selection of the ciphering algorithm and the synchronisation of the start of ciphering, or both. Authentication triplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment. Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6].

The Authentication of GSM Subscriber ~~in GSM~~ procedure ~~(GSIM)~~ is illustrated in Figure 28. Each step is explained in the following list.

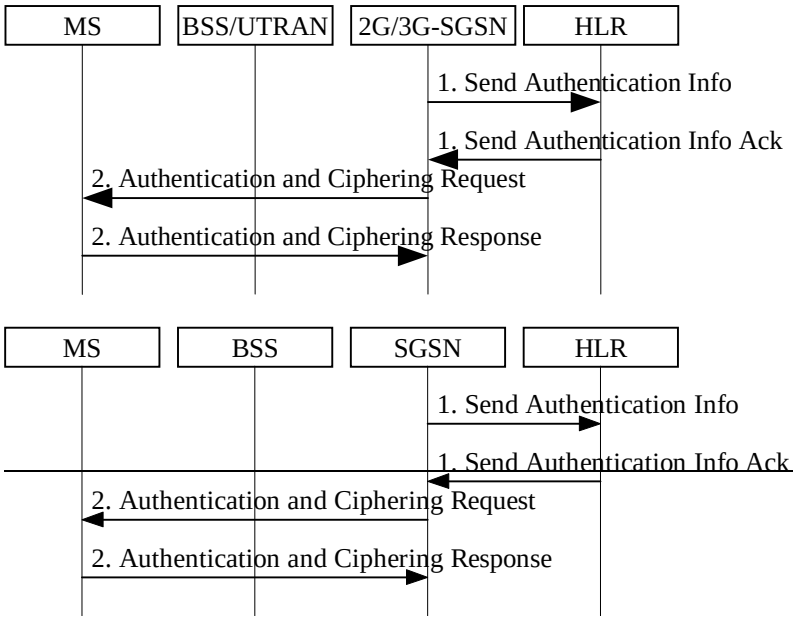


Figure 28: Authentication of GSM Subscriber ~~in GSM~~ Procedure

1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored authentication triplets, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) The SGSN sends an Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, CKSN, Ciphering Algorithm) message to the MS. The MS responds with an Authentication and Ciphering Response (SRES) message.

In GSM, t~~T~~he MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message as described in subsection 6.8.3.3. ~~The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the Authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.~~

In UMTS, the 3G-SGSN and the MS shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in 3G TS 33.102.

~~When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.~~

~~[Conversion functions to be defined by TSG SA3.]~~

6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber ~~in UMTS~~

The UMTS authentication procedure is described in 3G TS ~~UMTS~~ 33.102. The UMTS authentication procedure executed from the SGSN performs both the mutual authentication and security keys agreement. Authentication quintuplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon CS attach nor upon location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment.

The Authentication of UMTS Subscriber ~~in UMTS~~ procedure (USIM) is illustrated in Figure 29. Each step is explained in the following list.

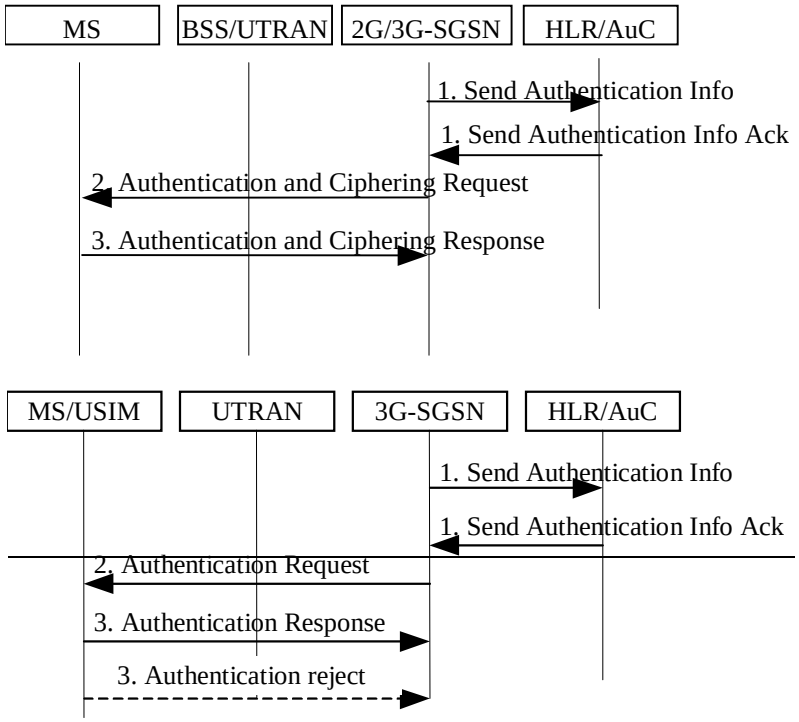


Figure 29: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber ~~in UMTS~~ Procedure

1) If the ~~3G~~ SGSN does not have previously stored UMTS Authentication Vectors (quintuplets), a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. Upon receipt of this message for a UMTS user, the HLR/AuC responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack message including an ordered array of quintuplets to the ~~3G~~ SGSN. Each quintuplet contains RAND, XRES, AUTN, CK, and IK. The generation of quintuplets in HLR/AuC for a UMTS user is performed as specified in 3G TS ~~UMTS~~ 33.102.

2) At authentication of a UMTS subscriber~~user~~, the ~~3G~~ SGSN selects the next in-order quintuplet and transmits the RAND and AUTN, that belong to this quintuplet, to the MS in the Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, AUTN, CKSN) message. The ~~3G~~ SGSN also selects a ciphering key sequence number, CKSN, and includes this in the message.

3) At reception of this message, the USIM in the MS verifies AUTN and, if accepted, the USIM computes the signature of RAND, RES, in accordance with 3G TS ~~UMTS~~ 33.102. If the USIM considers the authentication being successful the MS returns an Authentication and Ciphering Response (RES) message to the ~~3G~~ SGSN. The USIM in the MS computes then also a new Ciphering Key, CK, and a new Integrity Key, IK. These keys are stored together with the CKSN until CKSN is updated at the next authentication.

   If the USIM considers the authentication being unsuccessful, e.g.~~i.e.~~, in case of an authentication synchronisation failure, the MS returns the Authentication and Ciphering Failure ~~Reject~~ message to the ~~3G~~ SGSN. The actions then taken are described in 3G TS ~~UMTS~~ 33.102.

In GSM, the ~~3G~~ SGSN and the MS shall generate the GSM Kc from the UMTS CK and IK using the standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in 3G TS 33.102.

~~When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the used IK and CK are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.~~

~~When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.~~

~~When changing to a GSM system the USIM and the SGSN shall generate from the UMTS security keys IK and CK the GSM Kc by using the standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.~~

~~When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the old 3G-SGSN should generate the GSM Kc as described above and transfer this to the new SGSN. This will then give support for a change of SGSN without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplets are transferred in this case.~~

6.8.1.3 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS

GSM users roaming in a UMTS network are authenticated with the GSM authentication procedure.

The UMTS Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 30. Each step is explained in the following list.

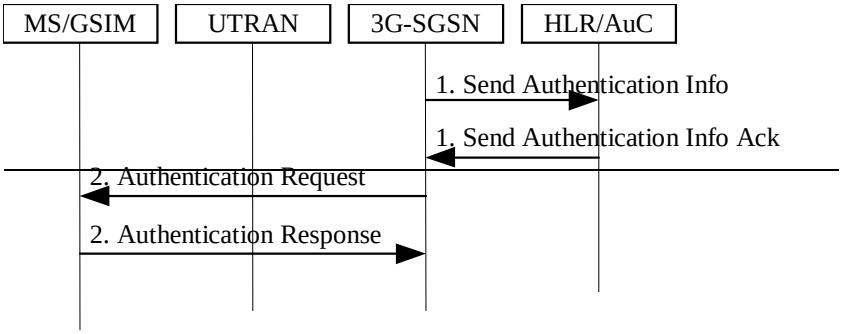


Figure 30: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not contain previously stored authentication parameters, then a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) At authentication in UMTS mode the 3G-SGSN selects an unused triplet and sends an Authentication Request (RAND) message to the MS. The GSIM then calculates the SRES and the GSM Kc. The MS returns an Authentication Response (SRES) message to the 3G-SGSN.

The 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

The MS shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102, i.e., the same algorithm as in the 3G-SGSN.

When changing SGSN the used Kc (i.e., the Kc of last used authentication triplet) is sent from the old 3G-SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused triplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

6.8.1.4 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in GSM

For authentication of a UMTS subscriber (USIM) in a GSM system three cases are possible:

a) The SGSN supports the GSM authentication procedure but not the UMTS authentication procedure.

b) The SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure.

c) Both the SGSN and the MS support the UMTS authentication procedure.

[It is an open issue whether it shall be possible to make a UMTS authentication also in GSM release 99.]

Case a)

When the SGSN supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber is performed using an authentication triplet produced by the HLR/AuC. The authentication of a UMTS subscriber by using a GSM authentication triplet is performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for HLR/AuC and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a UMTS system a new authentication using a UMTS authentication quintuplet is required.

[The requirements for this system change case need to be clarified.]

~~**Case b)**~~

~~When the SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber shall be performed using an authentication quintuplet produced by HLR/AuC. In this case the SGSN derives a GSM triplet from a UMTS quintuplet originally produced by HLR/AuC. The authentication procedure of the UMTS subscriber will then be performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for SGSN and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.~~

~~When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the IK and CK of the last used quintuplet are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.~~

~~When changing to a UMTS system the UMTS CK and IK from the last used authentication quintuplet shall be used.~~

~~When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the used GSM Kc is transferred from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. This supports SGSN change without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplet is transferred in this case.~~

~~**Case c)**~~

~~FFS.~~

6.8.3.3 Start of Ciphering

In GSM~~GPRS~~, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response message is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in UMTS 33.102.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000540**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	104r3	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-03-08

Subject: Hard handover with switching in CN

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The case where a hard handover decision made in UTRAN triggers a combined hard handover and SRNS relocation is missing in 3G TS 23.060, i.e. the combined hard handover and SRNS relocation procedure.

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2.2 (new)

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.9.2.2.2 Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure

This procedure is only performed for an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-Core Network connection point at UTRAN side from the source SRNC to the target RNC, while performing a hard handover decided by the UTRAN. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the source SRNC, an Intra SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. If routing area is changed the procedure is followed by an Intra SGSN RA Update procedure. The SGSN detects that it is an Intra SGSN routing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the HLR about the new MS location.

If the target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the source SRNC, an Inter SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter SGSN RA Update procedure.

Figure 1 shows the situation before a Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure when source and the target RNC are connected to different SGSNs. Figure 2 shows the situation after the Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure and Routing Area Update procedure have been completed. In the case described in Figure 1 and Figure 2 the MS is in state MM-IDLE.

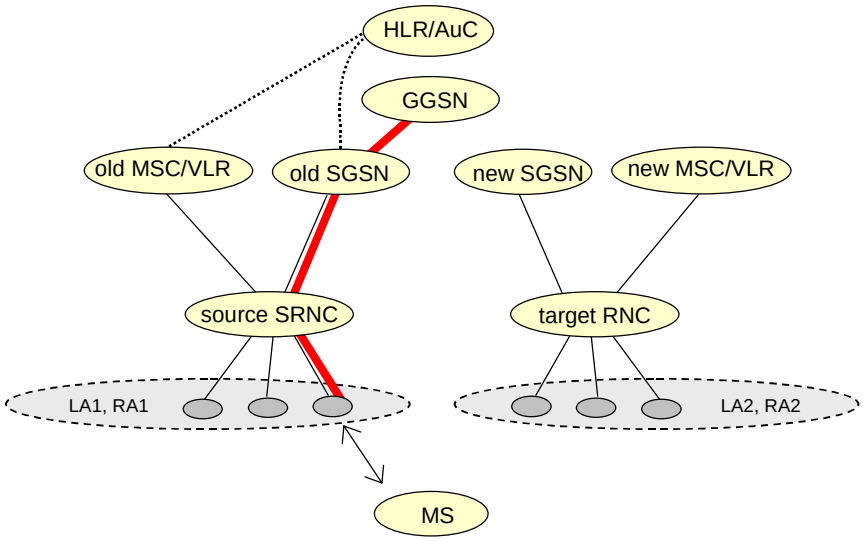


Figure 1: Before Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation and Routing Area Update

Before the SRNS Relocation and Routing Area Update the MS is registered in the old SGSN and in the old MSC/VLR. The source RNC is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC).

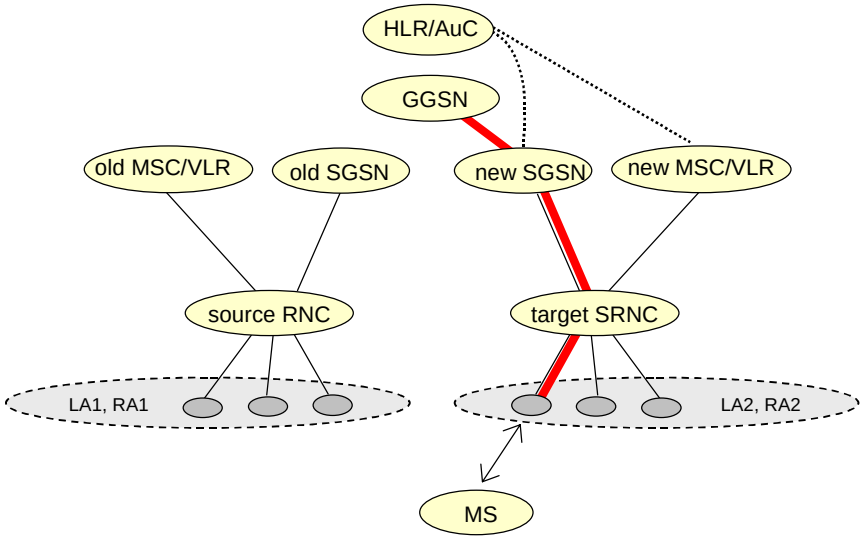


Figure 2: After Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation and Routing Area Update

After the SRNS Relocation and Routing Area Update, the MS is registered in the new SGSN and in the new MSC/VLR. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the new SGSN and in state MM-IDLE towards the new MSC/VLR. The target RNC is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC).

The Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation procedure for the PS domain is illustrated in Figure 3. The sequence is valid for both intra SGSN SRNS relocation and inter SGSN SRNS relocation. Each step is explained in the following list.

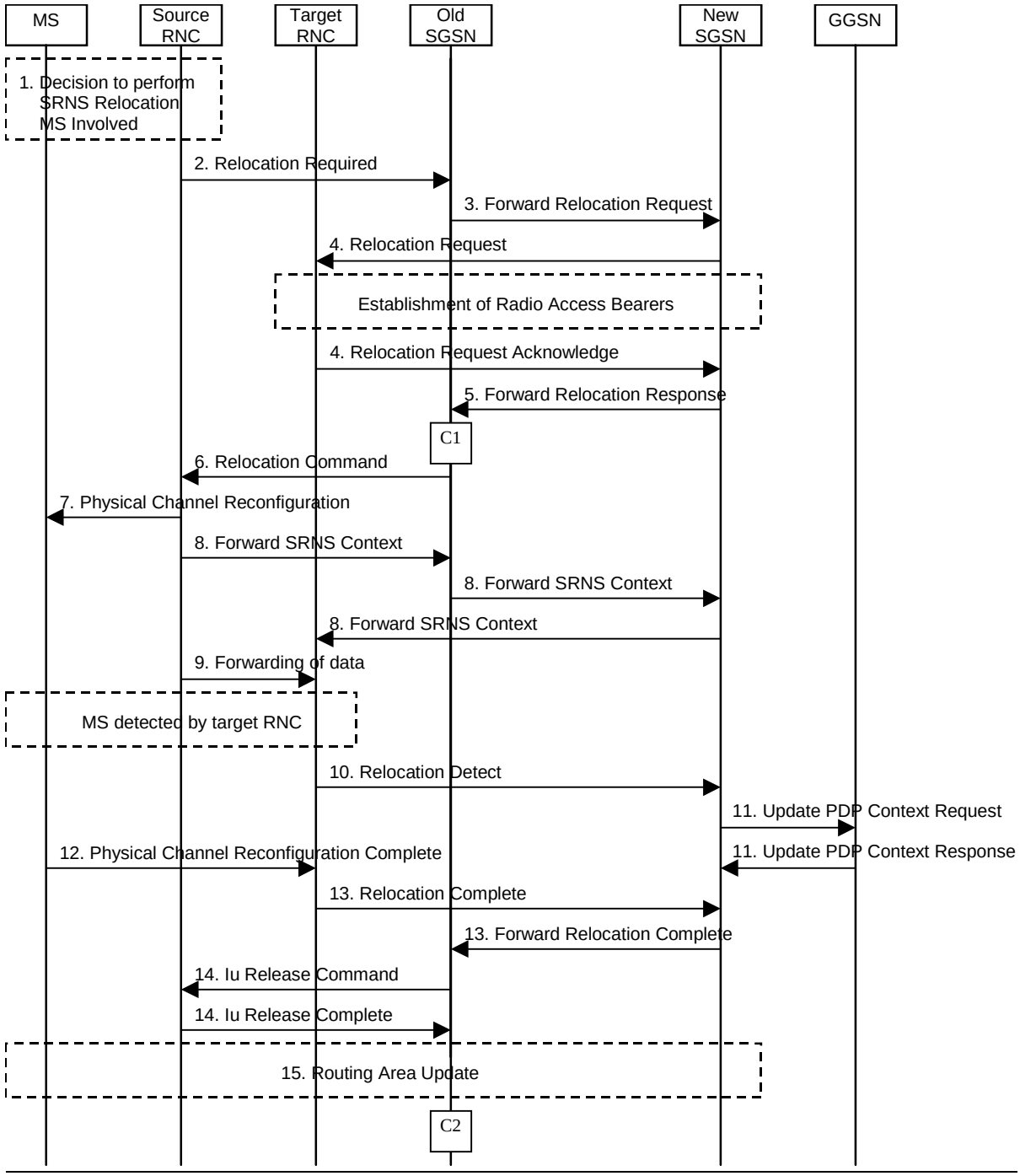


Figure 3: Combined Hard Handover and SRNS Relocation

1) Based on measurement results and knowledge of the UTRAN topology the source SRNC decides to initiate a combined hard handover and SRNS relocation.

2) The source SRNC initiates the relocation preparation procedure by sending a Relocation Required message (Relocation Type, Cause, Source ID, Target ID, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container) to the old SGSN. The source SRNC shall set the Relocation Type to 'UE involved'. The Source to Target RNC Transparent Container includes the necessary information for Relocation co-ordination, security functionality and RRC protocol context information (including UE Capabilities).

3) The old SGSN determines from Target ID if the SRNS Relocation is intra SGSN SRNS relocation or inter SGSN SRNS relocation. In case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation the old SGSN initiates the relocation resource allocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Request message (IMSI, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Signalling, MM Context, PDP Context, Target Identification, UTRAN transparent container, RANAP Cause) to the new SGSN. At the same time a timer is started on the MM and PDP contexts in the old SGSN (see Routing Area Update procedure in subclause "Location Management Procedures for UMTS").
The Forward Relocation Request message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

4) The new SGSN sends a Relocation Request message (Permanent NAS UE Identity, Cause, CN Domain Indicator, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container, and RABs to be setup) to the target RNC. For each RAB requested to be established, the RABs to be setup information elements shall contain information such as RAB ID, RAB parameters, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The RAB ID information element contains the NSAPI value, and the RAB parameters information element gives the QoS profile. The Transport Layer Address is the SGSN Address for user data, and the Iu Transport Association corresponds to Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Data.
After all necessary resources for accepted RABs including the Iu user plane are successfully allocated, target RNC shall send the Relocation Request Acknowledge message (Target RNC to source RNC transparent container, RABs setup, RABs failed to setup) to the new SGSN. The transparent container contains all radio-related information that the MS need for the handover, i.e. a complete RRC message (e.g. Physical Channel Reconfiguration) to be sent transparently via CN and source SRNC to the MS. Target RNC will for each RAB to be setup (defined by an IP Address and a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) receive both forwarded downstream PDUs from the source SRNC as well as downstream PDUs from the new SGSN.

5) When resources for the transmission of user data between target RNC and new SGSN has been allocated and the new SGSN is ready for relocation of SRNS, the Forward Relocation Response message (Cause, UTRAN transparent container, RANAP Cause, and Target RNC Information) is sent from new SGSN to old SGSN. This message indicates that the new SGSN and target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS, i.e. the relocation resource allocation procedure is terminated successfully. UTRAN transparent container and RANAP Cause are information from the target RNC to be forwarded to the source RNC. The Target RNC Information, one information element for each RAB to be setup, contain the RNC Tunnel Endpoint Identifier and RNC IP address for data forwarding from source SRNC to target RNC.
The Forward Relocation Response message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

6) The old SGSN continues the relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Command message (Target RNC to source RNC transparent container, RABs to be released, and RABs subject to data forwarding) to the source SRNC.The old SGSN decides the RABs to be subject for data forwarding based on QoS, and those RABs shall be contained in RABs subject to data forwarding. For each RAB subject to data forwarding, the information element shall contain RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The Transport Layer Address and Iu Transport Association is used for forwarding of DL N-PDU from source RNC to target RNC. ~~Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer.~~

7) Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer. When the relocation preparation procedure is terminated successfully and when the source SRNC is ready, the source SRNC shall trigger the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending to the MS the RRC message provided in the Target RNC to source RNC transparent container, e.g. a Physical Channel Reconfiguration message (UE information elements, CN information elements). The UE information elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. The CN information elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routing Area Identification.

8) The source SRNC continues the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending a Forward SRNS Context message (RAB Contexts) to the target RNC via the old and the new SGSN. The purpose of this procedure is to transfer SRNS contexts from the source RNC to the target RNC when handover is made with switching in CN. SRNS contexts are sent for each concerned RAB and contain the sequence numbers of the GTP-PDUs next to be transmitted in the uplink and downlink directions and the next PDCP sequence numbers that would have been used to send and receive data from the MS. For connections using RLC unacknowledged mode PDCP sequence numbers is not used.

9) After having sent the Forward SRNS Context message, source SRNC begins the forwarding of data for the RABs to be subject for data forwarding. The data forwarding at SRNS relocation shall be carried out through the Iu interface, meaning that the data exchanged between source SRNC and target RNC ~~are carried over Iu at ATM layer. The PDUs~~ are duplicated in the source SRNC and routed at IP layer towards the target RNC.

10) The target RNC shall send a Relocation Detect message to the new SGSN when the relocation execution trigger is received. For SRNS relocation type 'UE Involved', the relocation execution trigger may be received from the Uu interface; i.e. when target RNC detects the MS on the lower layers. When Relocation Detect message is sent, target RNC shall start SRNC operation.
~~Upon reception of Relocation Detect message, CN switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC.~~

11) Upon reception of Relocation Detect message, CN may switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request messages (new SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

12) When the MS has reconfigured it self, it sends e.g. a Physical Channel Reconfiguration Complete message to the target SRNC.

13) When target SRNC receives the Physical Channel Reconfiguration Complete message or the Radio Bearer Release Complete message, i.e. the new SRNC-ID + S-RNTI are successfully exchanged with the UE by the radio protocols, target SRNC shall initiate Relocation Complete procedure by sending the Relocation Complete message to new SGSN. The purpose of Relocation Complete procedure is to indicate by the target SRNC the completion of relocation of SRNS to the CN. If the user plane has not been switched at Relocation Detect, the CN shall upon reception of Relocation Complete switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC,
If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN signals to the old SGSN the completion of the SRNS relocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Complete message.

14) Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the old SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete.

15) After the MS has finished the reconfiguration procedure and if the new Routing Area Identification is different from the old one, the MS initiates the Routing Area Update procedure. See subclause “Location Management Procedures for UMTS”. Note that it is only a subset of the RA Update procedure that is performed, since the MS is in PMM-CONNECTED mode.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 January 2000

***Document* S2-000277**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	105rev1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: TSG SA #7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-01-21

Subject: Transfer of present RA information from UTRAN to SGSN

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The accurate RA information is always needed in the SGSN after RA change, the way to provide this to the SGSN is marked FFS

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.1, 6.13.2.2

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, an RA Update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA Update, either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the RA Update cases are contained in the procedure illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

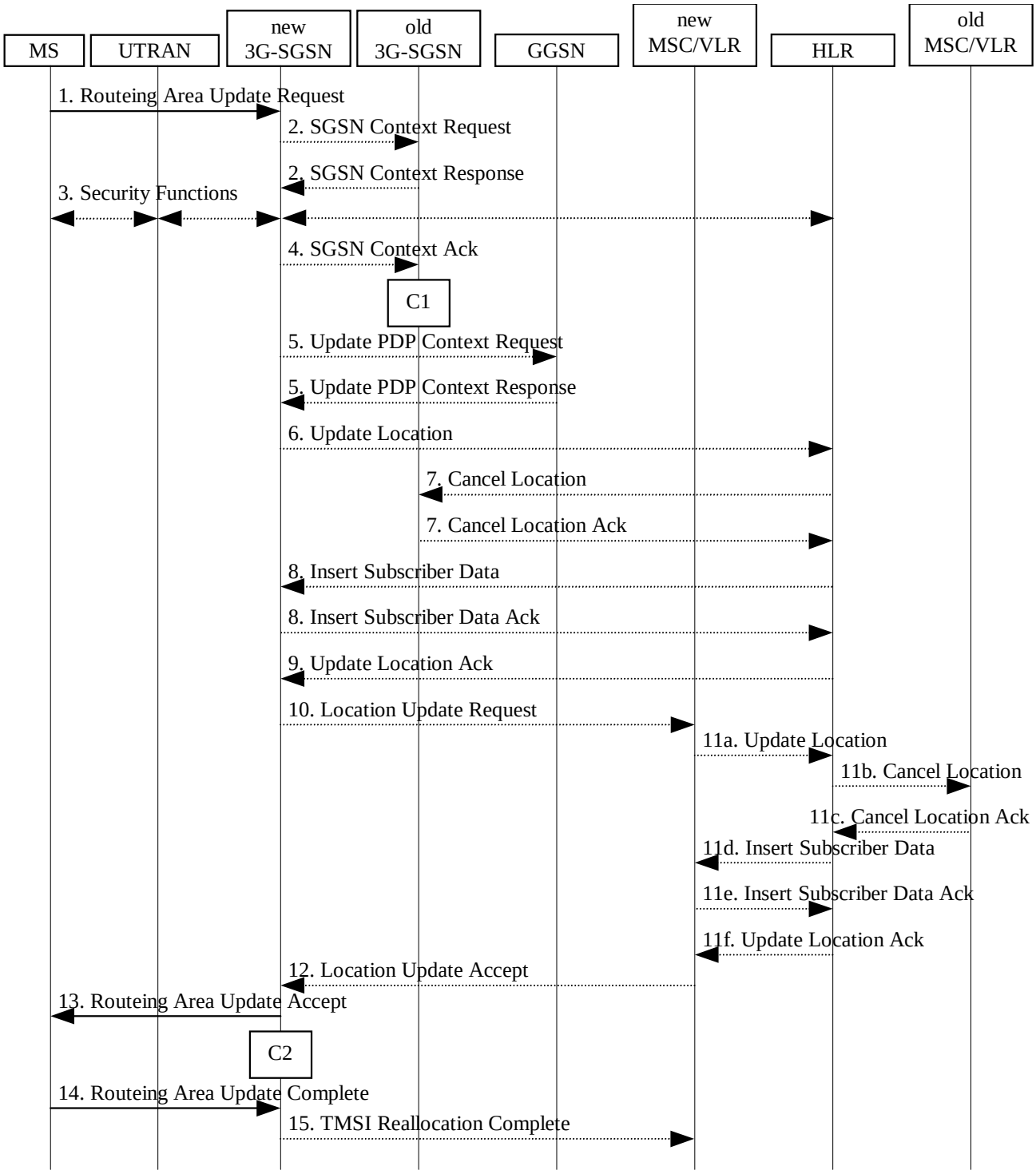


Figure 1: UMTS RA Update Procedure

1) The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:

   - RA Update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA;

- Periodic RA Update if the RA update is triggered by the expiry of the Periodic RA Update timer;
- Combined RA / LA Update if the MS is also CS attached and the LA update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR"); or
- Combined RA / LA Update with CS attach requested if the MS wants to perform an CS attach in network operation mode I.

The ~~UTRAN~~ SRNC shall add the Routeing Area Identity, including the RAC and LAC, of the area where the MS is located ~~of the cell where the message was received~~ before ~~passing~~ forwarding the message to the 3G-SGSN ~~[FFS]~~. This RA identity corresponds to the RAI in the MM system information sent by the SRNC to the MS.

NOTE: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

2) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old PTMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

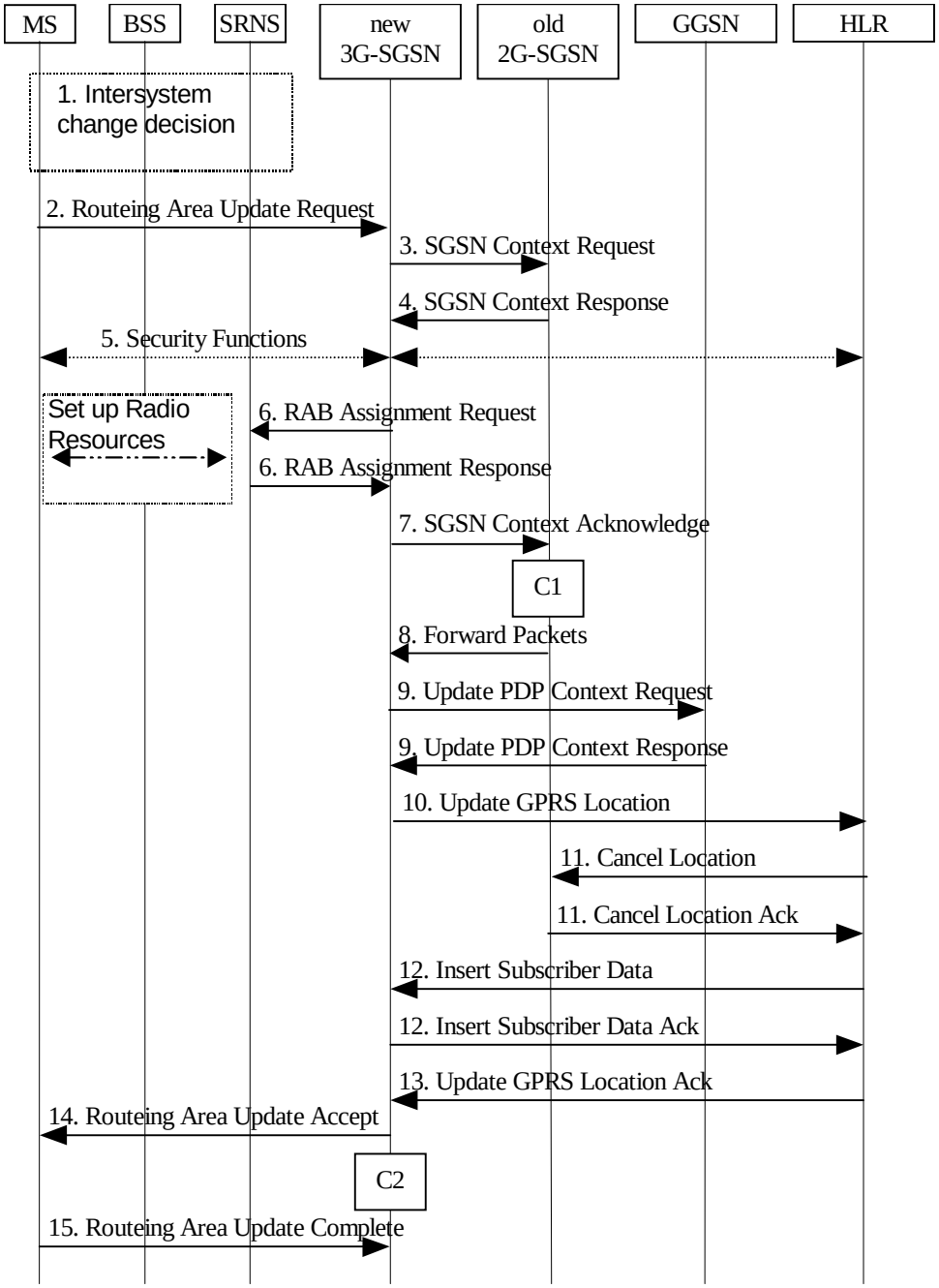


Figure 2: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. ~~The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.~~ The SRNC shall add the Routeing Area Identity, including the RAC and LAC, of the area where the MS is located before forwarding the message to the 3G-SGSN. This RA identity corresponds to the RAI in the MM system information sent by the SRNC to the MS.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000504**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	106 rev2	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-03-08

Subject: Service Request

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

In addition to editorial corrections, the CR clarifies how the MS can know when the service request procedure for service type data is completed.

It also clarifies that in case the SGSN fails to re-establish a RAB of a particular PDP Context then the SGSN will determine if the PDP Context shall be deactivated or if it shall be preserved. The QOS objectives for that PDP Context shall be taken into account in such decision.

Clauses affected: 6.12

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	3G TS 24.008
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.12 Service Request Procedure for UMTS

The Service Request procedure is used by a 3G-MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signalling messages (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request), ~~or~~ user data or as paging response. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request resource reservation for active PDP contexts.

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP context(s). After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

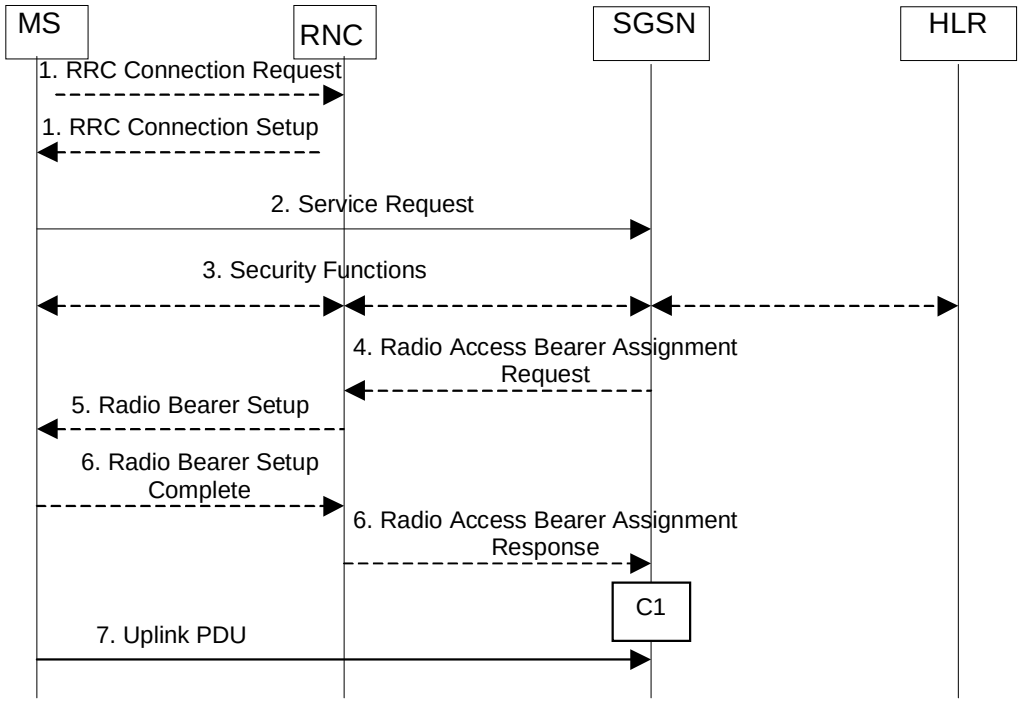


Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are requested allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not requested allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (~~NSAPI~~RABid(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding ~~NSAPI~~ RABid with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (~~NSAPI~~RABid(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The MS sends the uplink packet.

For Service Type = Signalling, ~~T~~the MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. ~~It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating~~

For Service Type = Data, ~~is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases,~~ the MS knows that the Service Request was successfully received when the MS receives the Radio Bearer Setup message from the RNC. ~~the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.~~

For any Service Type, ~~If~~ in the case the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station with an appropriate cause value.

~~-~~For Service Type = Data, ~~If~~in the case the SGSN fails to re-establish RAB(s) for the PDP-Context(s), the SGSN determines if a session management procedure, such as SGSN Initiated PDP Context Modification or PDP Context Deactivation, should be initiated. The appropriate action depends on the QoS Profile of the PDP Context and is an operator choice.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

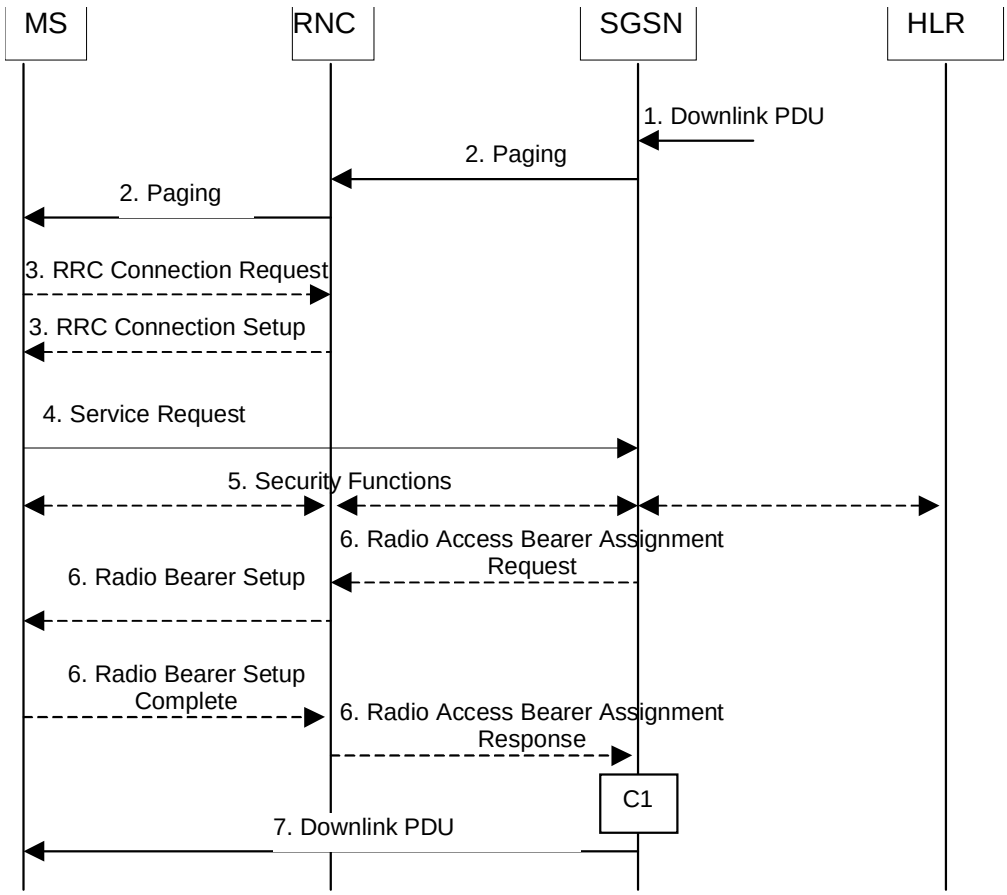


Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging ~~(IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause)~~ message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging ~~(P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause)~~ message to the MS. See chapter 8.2.3.1 for details.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (~~NSAPI~~RABid(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio ~~Access~~ Bearer Setup (RABid(s) ~~Identity, NSAPI~~) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio ~~Access~~ Bearer Setup Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (~~NSAPI~~RABid(s), TEID(s), ~~QoS Profile(s),~~ RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For Service Type = Page Response, the MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message.

In the case the SGSN fails to re-establish RAB(s) for the PDP-Context(s), the SGSN determines if a session management procedure, such as SGSN Initiated PDP Context Modification or PDP Context Deactivation, should be initiated. The appropriate action depends on the QoS Profile of the PDP Context and is an operator choice.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Mexico, 22 Jan – 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000133**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	107	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 19.1.2000

Subject: Correction to Address allocation procedure for PDP Type IPv6.

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The PDP Type is currently specified for two versions of the Internet Protocol – IPv4 and IPv6. However, the IPv6 address allocation procedure is not defined clearly. This CR adds the clarification needed for the IPv6 autoconfiguration.

Clauses affected: 2; 9.2.1; 9.2.2; 14.5; Annex X (new)

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	24.065, 27.060, 29.061
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

2 References

[All references need to be checked once release 99 stabilises.]

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- A non-specific reference to an ETS shall also be taken to refer to later versions published as an EN with the same number.

[48] IETF RFC 2373 (1998): "IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture"

[49] IETF RFC 2462 (1998): "IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration"

********** Next Modification **********

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

In case of PDP Type IP version 6, the PDP Address is the mobile's link-local address.

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure . Each step is explained in the following list.

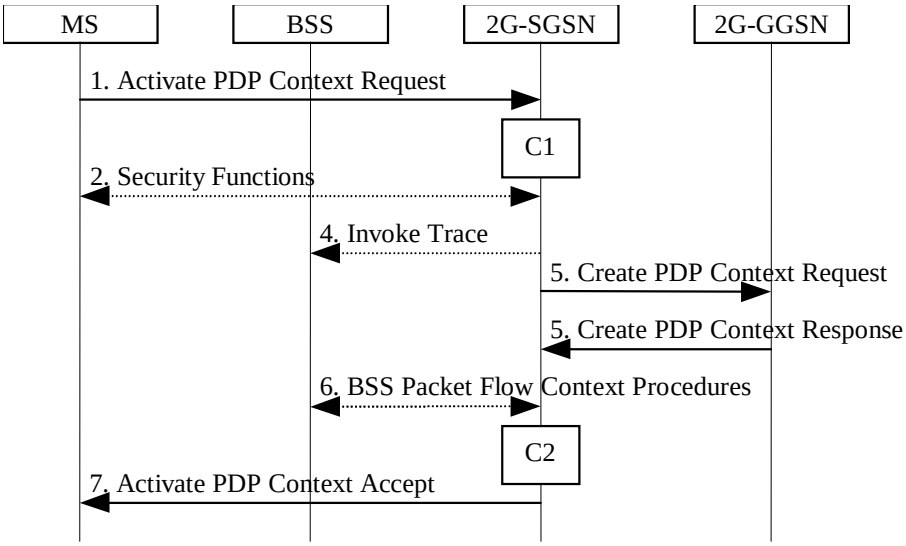


Figure 1: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

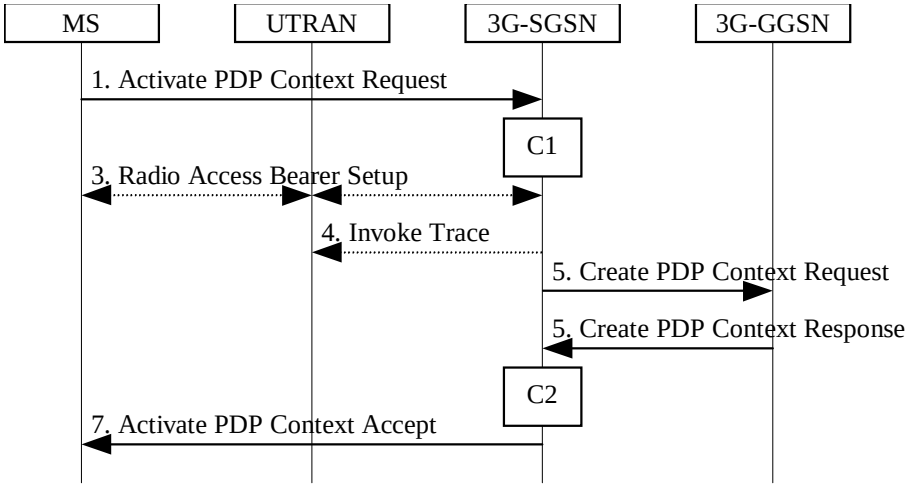


Figure 2: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. When the PDP Type is IP version 6, the GGSN shall create a link-local address for the MS to be used as the PDP Address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

******************************** Next Modification ********************************

14.5 PDP Address

A packet-domain subscriber identified by an IMSI, shall have one or more network layer addresses, i.e., PDP addresses, temporarily and/or permanently associated with it that conforms to the standard addressing scheme of the respective network layer service used, e.g.:

- an IP version 4 address;
- an IP version 6 link-local address; or
- an X.121 address.

PDP addresses are activated and deactivated through MM procedures described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

********** Next Modification **********

Annex X (normative): IPv6 Stateless address autoconfiguration procedure

The IPv6 address allocation is somewhat different from the IPv4 address allocation procedure. There are two possibilities to allocate the address for an IPv6 node – stateless and stateful autoconfiguration. The stateful address allocation mechanism needs a DHCP server to allocate the address for the IPv6 node. In the stateless autoconfiguration, the IPv6 node is more involved in the allocation of the address. In addition, the stateless autoconfiguration procedure does not need any external entity involved in the address autoconfiguration. The following shows how the IPv6 stateless autoconfiguration is done in the GPRS and UMTS networks.

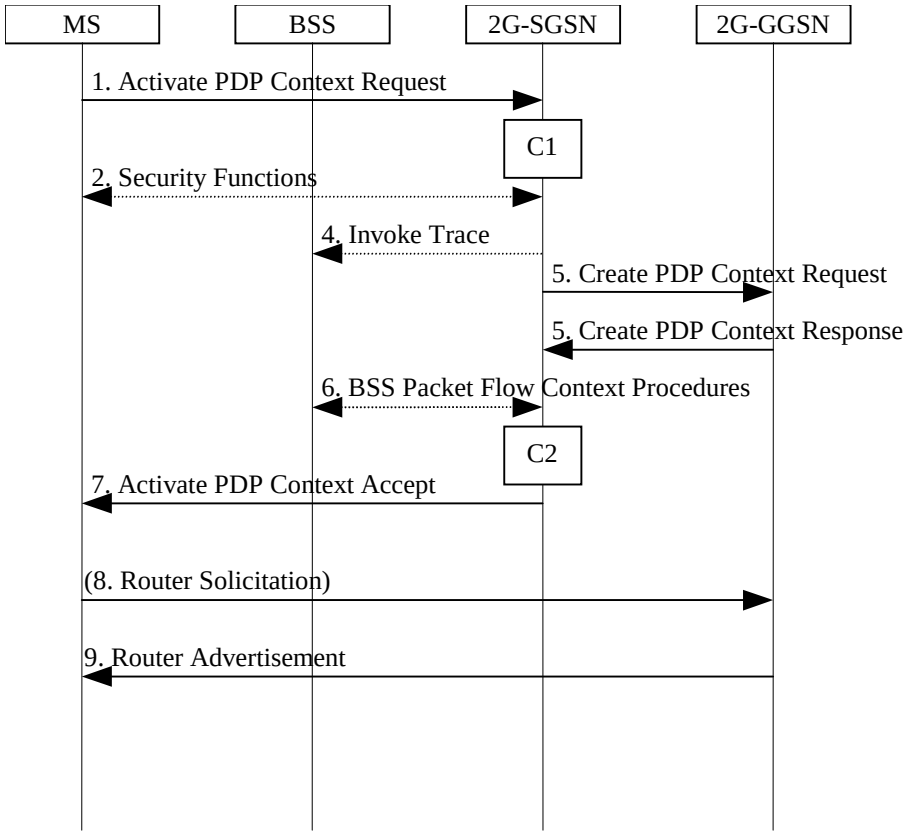


Figure X: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

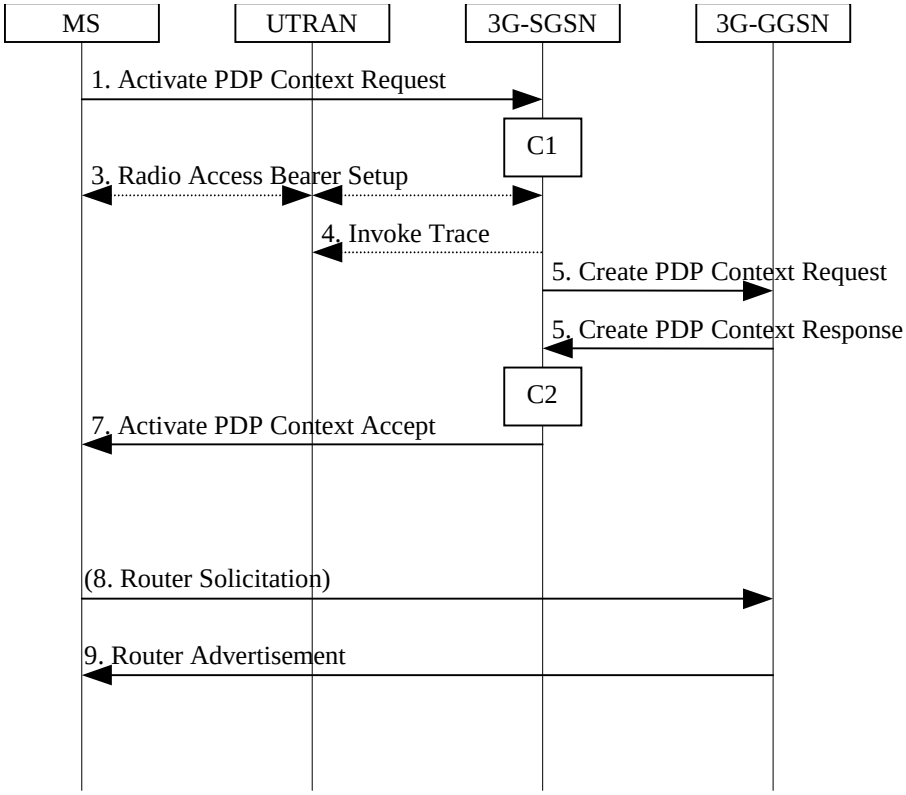


Figure X: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty. The MS shall set the PDP Type to IPv6. Otherwise, the PDP Context activation is as for PDP Type IPv4.

   The steps from two to four are as in PDP Type IPv4. The only difference is that PDP Type has to be set to PDP Type IPv6.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using the methods standardised. The Create PDP Context procedure from the SGSN's side is as defined for PDP Type IPv4 except that only the Dynamic address shall be used.

   The GGSN shall create the link-local address for the MS. The link local address is a IPv6 address used for a single link. It consist of fixed 10 bits, zero or more 0 bits, and the Interface Identifier. Otherwise, the procedure is as defined for PDP Type IPv4.

The Steps 6 and 7 are as for the PDP Type IPv4.

8) The MS may send a router solicitation to the GGSN to activate the sending of the Router Advertisement.

9) The GGSN should send automatically the Router Advertisement after the PDP Context is activated.

   After the MS has received the Router Advertisement it constructs its full IPv6 address and is ready to start communicating to the Internet.

   The MS may send a Neighbour solicitation message to the network to make sure that the IPv6 address it has is unique. The GGSN shall intercept any such a message.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Mexico, 22– 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000225**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	108r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval [X]	strategic [ ]	*(for SMG use only)*
	for information [ ]	non-strategic [ ]	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]

Source: Nokia **Date:** 20.1.2000

Subject: Aligning SRNC relocation procedure

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	[X]
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	[ ]
B	Addition of feature	[ ]
C	Functional modification of feature	[ ]
D	Editorial modification	[ ]

Release:

Phase 2	[ ]
Release 96	[ ]
Release 97	[ ]
Release 98	[ ]
Release 99	[X]
Release 00	[ ]

Reason for change: Current TS 23.060 describes mainly SRNS Relocation procedure in case of PS domain <u>bearer services belonging to interactive or background class.</u>~~non real-time data service with high reliability~~. The case of ~~Real Time~~<u>conversational and streaming class bearer</u> services needs also to be described. Therefore, this CR proposes to copy the ~~Real-Time service~~<u>description of conversational and streaming class services</u> ~~description~~ from TS 23.121 into 23.060.

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Error! Reference source not found. shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

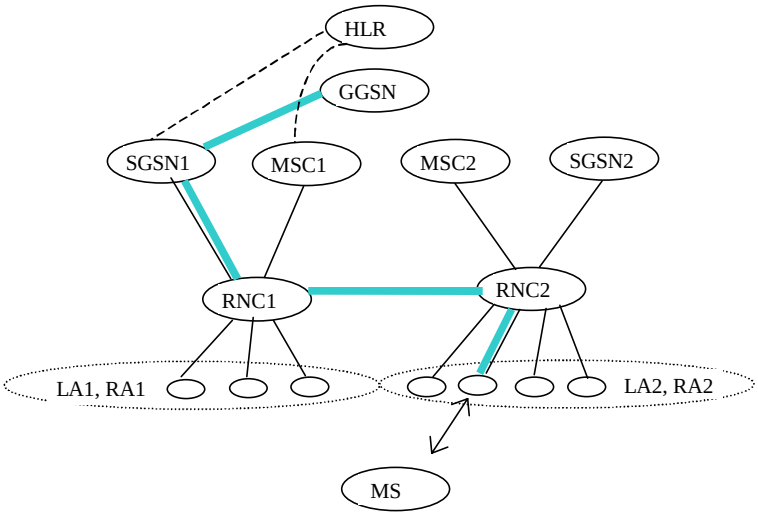


Figure 1: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

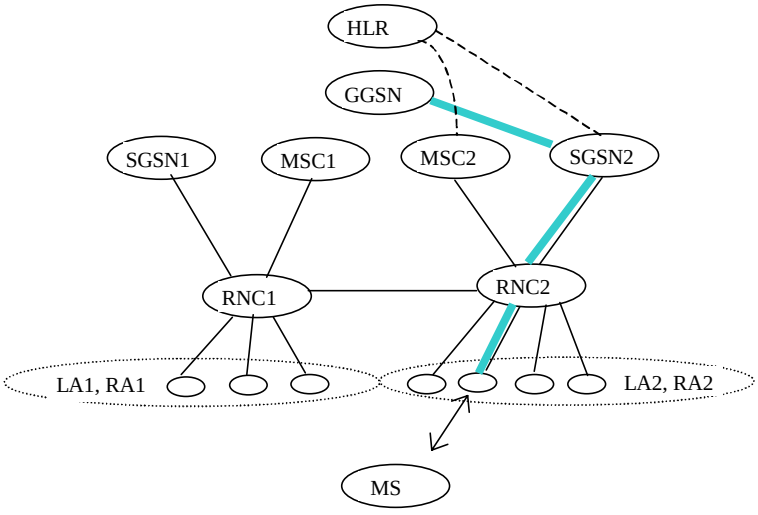


Figure 2: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

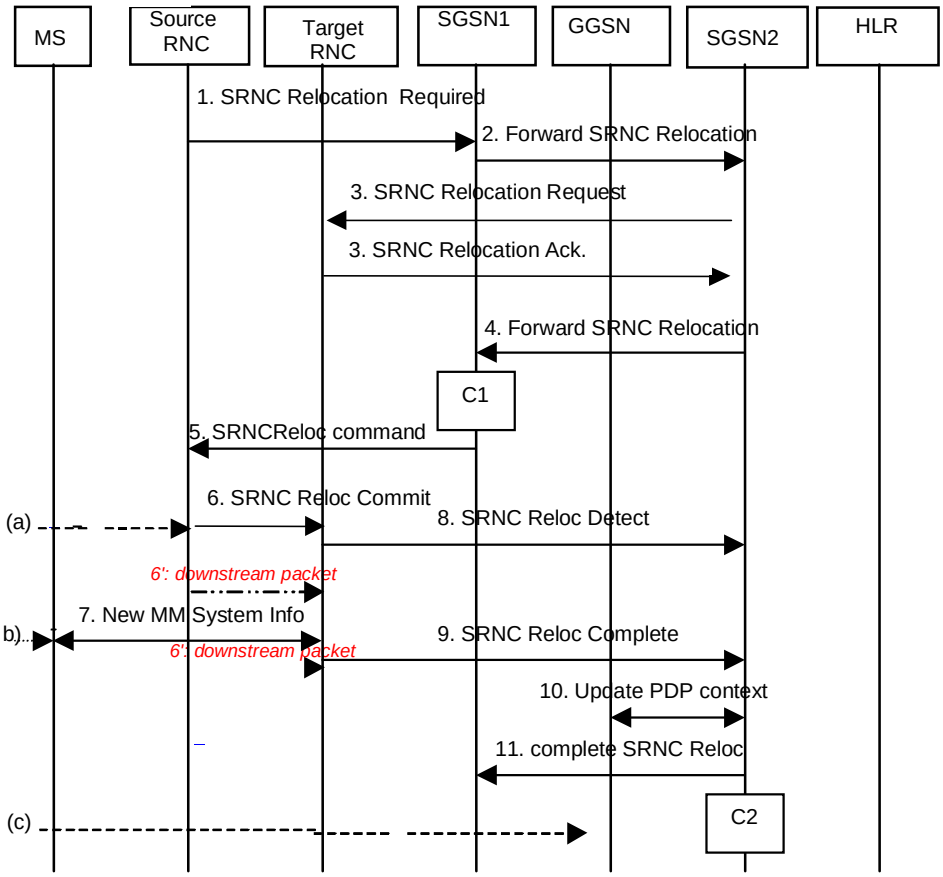


Figure 3: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context)

on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each ~~Non Real Time~~RLC connection belonging to interactive or background QoS class ~~RLC connection~~ used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). ~~For Real Time~~ For connections belonging to~~(~~conversational or~~and~~ streaming QoS class~~)~~, ~~UP_RLC_ACK~~ UP-RLC-ack is not used. The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes, for ~~Non Real Time bearers~~bearer services belonging to interactive or background QoS class, the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)). For bearers with header compression, the header compression entities renegotiate ~~/~~and restart between UE and target RNC. From now on the exchange of data between UE and network can restart.

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated. The target RNC then receiving downstream packets from both the old path (source SRNC) and from the new path (SGSN2), may in case of~~for RT bearers~~bearers belonging to conversational or streaming QoS class have too ~~much~~many packets in its queues. The way to discard these packets in excess is implementation dependant.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Mexico, 22– 28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000226**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	109r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval [X]	strategic [ ]	*(for SMG use only)*
	for information [ ]	non-strategic [ ]	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [ ]

Source: Nokia **Date:** 19.1.2000

Subject: PDCP sequence numbers in SRNC relocation and inter-system handover

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	[X]
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	[ ]
B	Addition of feature	[ ]
C	Functional modification of feature	[ ]
D	Editorial modification	[ ]

Release:

Phase 2	[ ]
Release 96	[ ]
Release 97	[ ]
Release 98	[ ]
Release 99	[X]
Release 00	[ ]

Reason for change:

3GPP TSG RAN WG2 has adopted the working assumption of using PDCP sequence numbers instead of RLC sequence numbers. Therefore, this CR proposes to align SRNC relocation procedure and inter-system handover with this.

Primary reason for using PDCP sequence number are the problems when converting RLC-sequence number to N-PDU sequence number in inter-system HO (UMTS->GPRS). Currently, 12-bit RLC-sequence number is converted to 8-bit N-PDU sequence number by stripping off four most significant bits. Because RLC-PDU is relatively short compared to N-PDU, the converted N-PDU sequece number may flip over. In this case, reliability cannot be assured. The PDCP sequence number is also applicable to SRNS relocation. PDCP sequence numbers make the relocation procedure more simple, because they refers directly to N-PDUs. (All succesfully transferred N-PDUs shall be discarded during relocation.)

In general, multiplexing of several radio bearers to one RLC link may cause unexpected problems in release 2000, if RLC sequence numbers are used. (Multiplexing is not used in release '99)

PDCP sequence number doesn't add any overhead, because it is not transferred over air interface (PDCP number is 'virtual).

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2; 6.13; 13

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Error! Reference source not found.~~Figure 39~~ shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Figure 40~~ shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

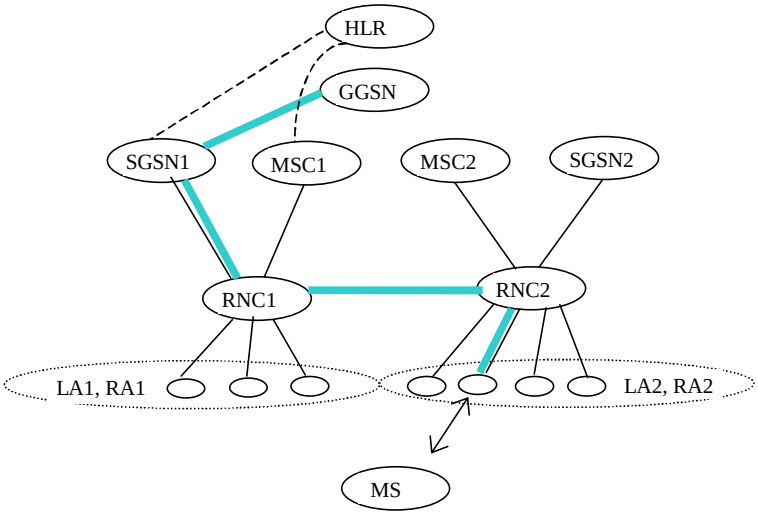


Figure ~~1~~39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

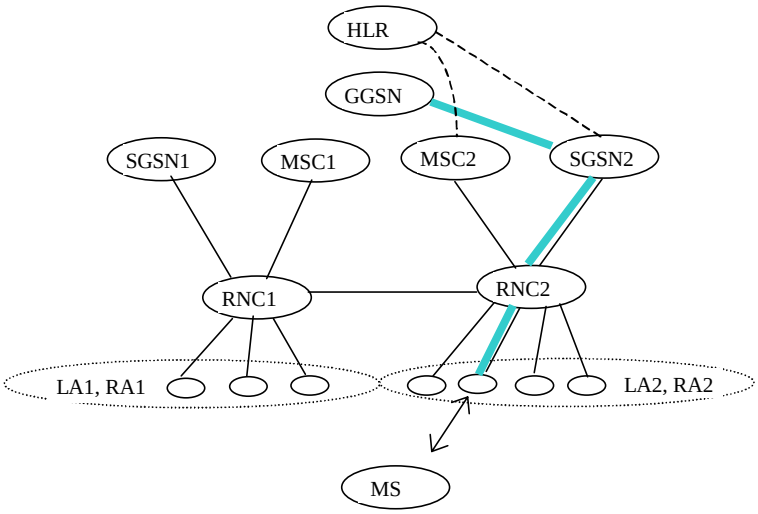


Figure ~~2~~40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Figure 41~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

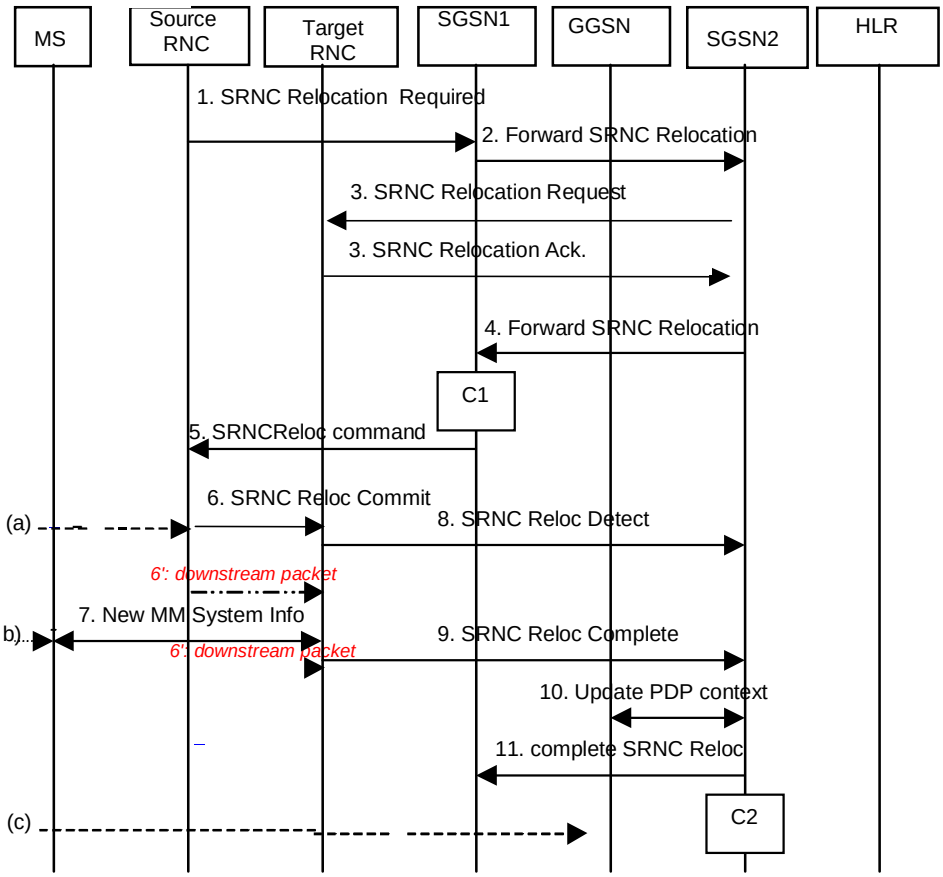


Figure ~~341~~: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context)

on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, ~~UP-RLC-ack~~PDCP-SNU, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. ~~UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode).~~ PDCP-SNU is the PDCP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS for each radio bearer. The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- ~~-~~ Resets and ~~R~~restarts the RLC connections. ~~This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC-Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).~~

- Exchanges the PDCP sequence numbers (PDCP-SNU, PDCP-SND) between the target SRNC and the MS. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode to the MS per radio bearer. PDCP-SND confirms all mobile terminated packets succesfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If PDCP-SND confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. PDCP-SNU confirms all mobile originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)). If PDCP-SNU confirms reception of packets that were received in the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the MS.

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The

GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change

The UMTS-GPRS intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS moves to a cell where the radio technology that the MS was using is not any longer supported. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

~~The UMTS RLC Sequence Number parameters, RLC-SND and RLC-SNU, are not relevant for the intersystem change of real-time PDP contexts (because these contexts use RLC transparent mode).~~

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces can support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the old and the new cells are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state enters a new GSM GPRS cell. In this case the MS shall perform a routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in PMM-IDLE state enters a new GSM GPRS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.

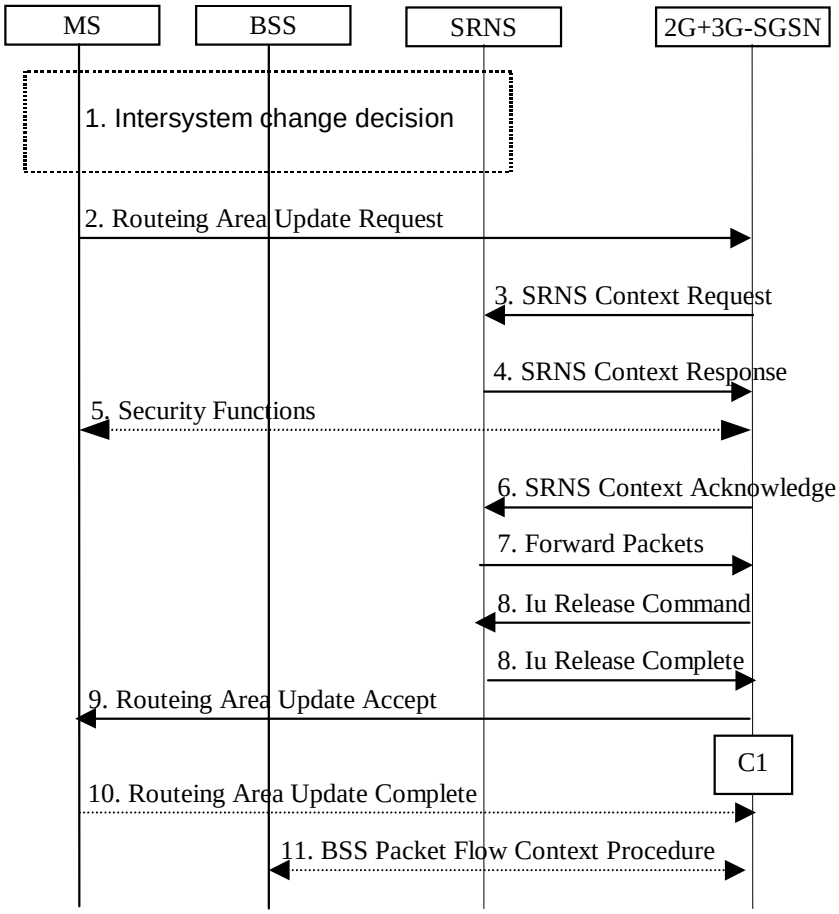


Figure 4~~4~~9: UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.

3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS, starts a timer and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, PDCP-SNDs~~RLC SNDs~~, PDCP-SNUs~~RLC SNUs~~) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number (~~RLC~~PDCP-SNU) and the downlink ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number (~~RLC~~PDCP-SND). ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNU shall be the next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number expected from the MS. ~~RLC~~PDCP-SND shall be the next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number to be sent to the MS. ~~The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts.~~ Because the PDCP sequence number is 8 bits, PDCP sequence number is equal to SNDCP ~~PDCP~~N-PDU number (in acknowledged mode).

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets.

7) The ~~partly transmitted and~~ transmitted but not acknowledged ~~N~~PDCP-PDUs together with the downlink ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number ~~of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU~~ and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. ~~The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs before sending them to the MS.~~

8) When the timer described under 3 has expired, the 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

9) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

10) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. ~~The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from RLC-SND by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC-SND of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.~~

11) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.~~1~~2 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.

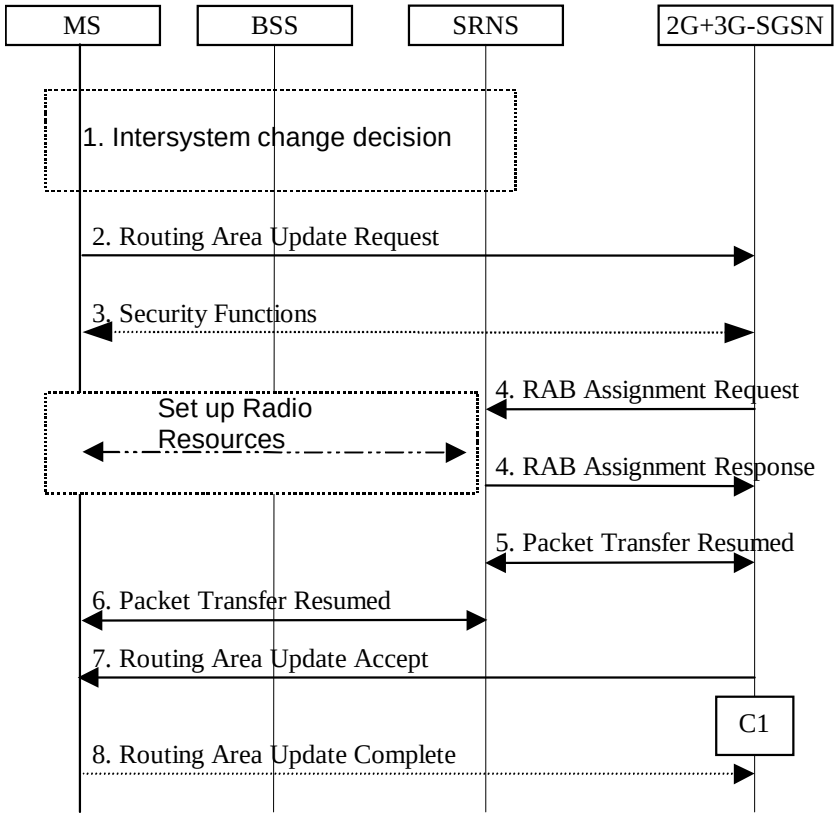


Figure ~~5~~50: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNDs, ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence numbers shall be derived ~~(shifted left 4 times)~~ from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (~~RLC~~PDCP-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (~~RLC~~PDCP-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. ~~If this is not the case, then the~~ ~~All not old~~Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.

Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routeing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.

If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.

If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.

If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GPRS cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.

If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state moves to a new GSM GPRS cell and this cell is served by a different SGSN. In this case the MS shall initiate a GPRS RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN change case is shown in .

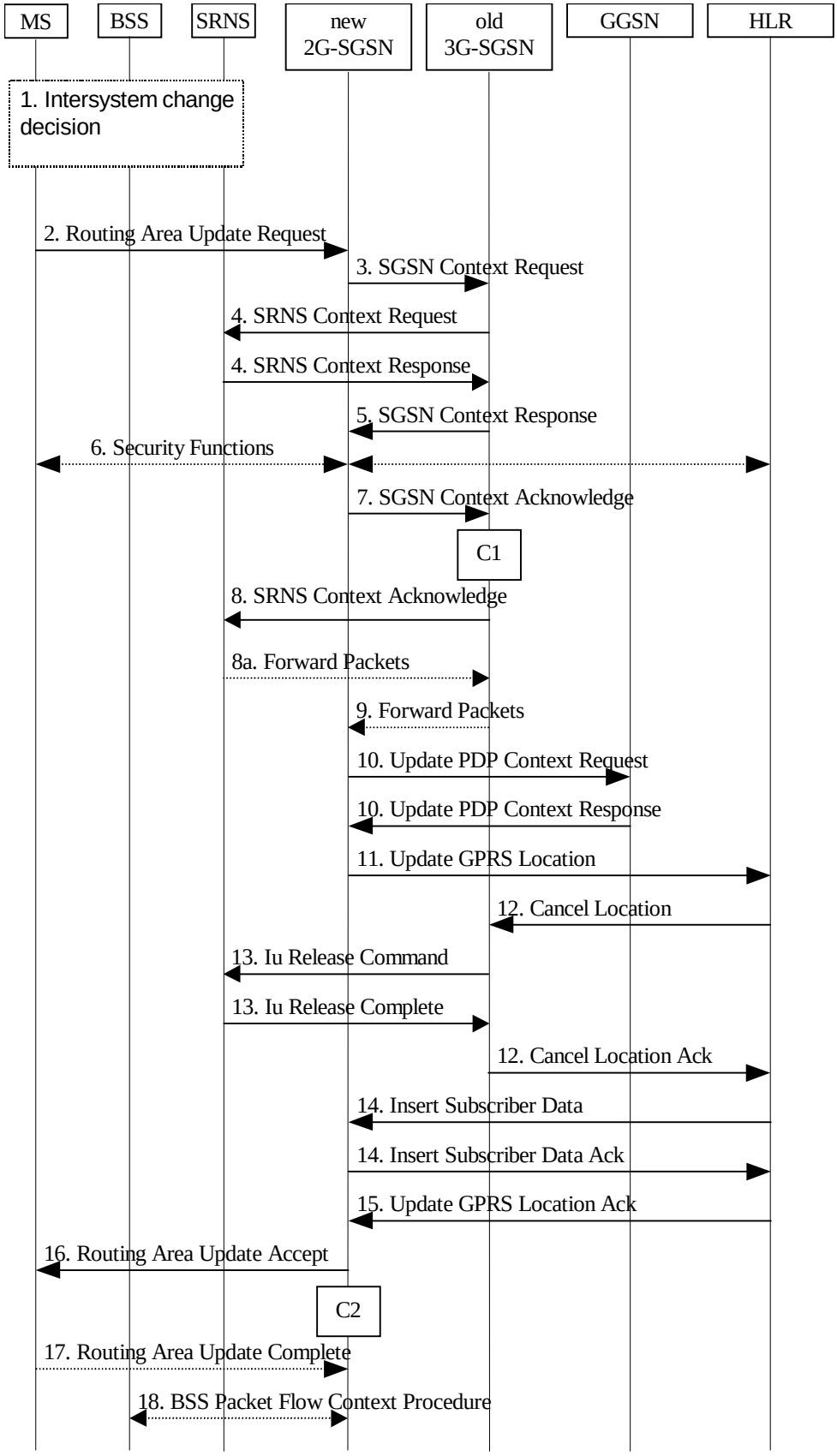


Figure ~~6~~51: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell

Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNDs, ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. ~~For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes RLC SNU and RLC SND. The 3G SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.~~ For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SNU) and the downlink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SND). PDCP-SNU shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number expected from the MS (per each active radio bearer). PDCP-SND shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number to be sent to the MS (per each active radio bearer). Because PDCP sequence number is 8 bits, PDCP sequence number is equal to SNDCP ~~PDCP~~N-PDU number (in acknowledged mode).

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling ~~the partly transmitted and~~ the transmitted but not acknowledged ~~N-PDU~~PDCP-PDUs together with the ~~RLC~~ PDCP downlink sequence number ~~(the four most significant bits shall be stripped off) of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU~~, and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The SNDCP sequence numbers shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. ~~The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from the downlink RLC sequence number by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence number of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.~~

18) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

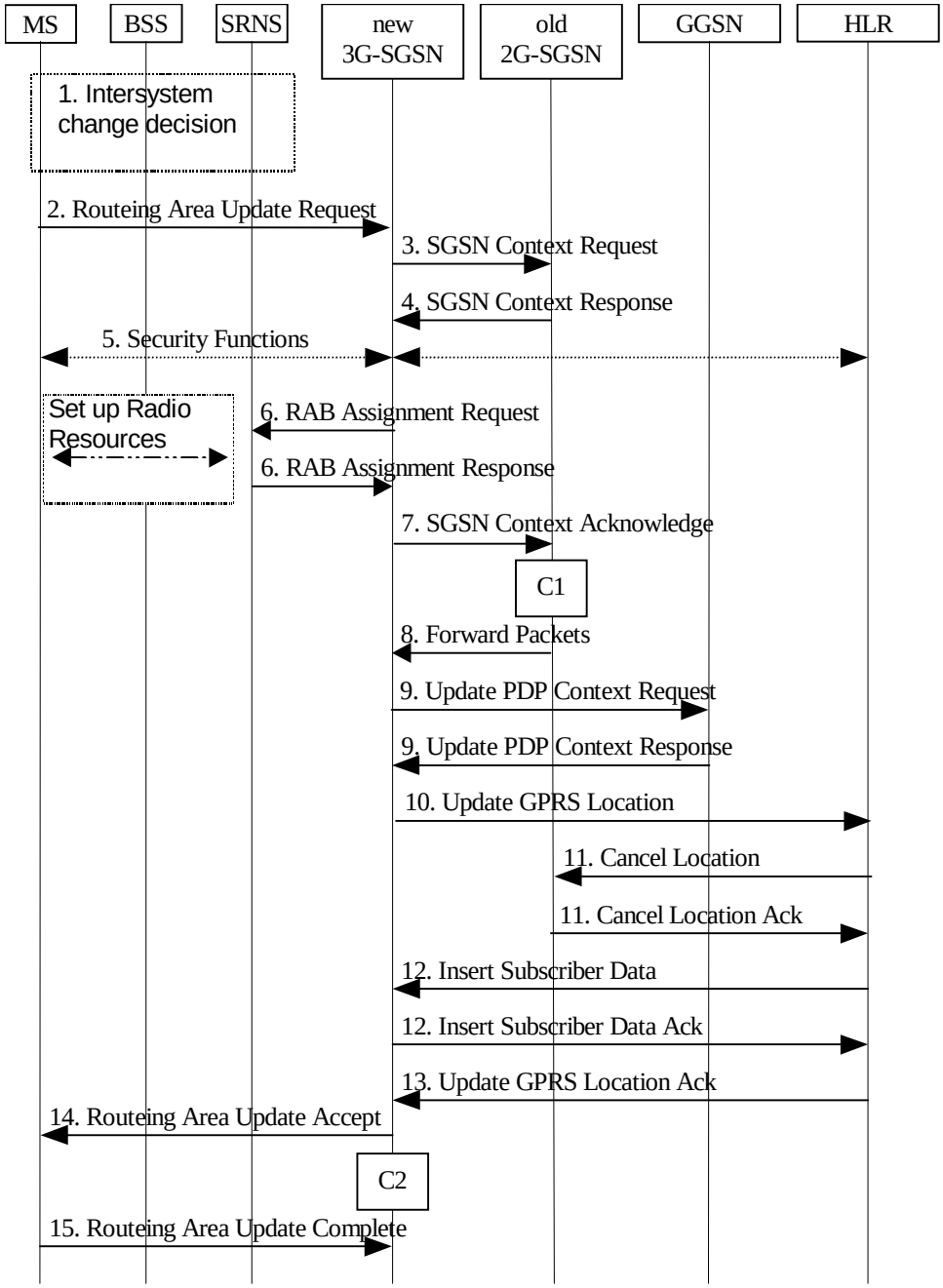


Figure 7~~52~~: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface.

~~The new 3G-SGSN converts the SNDCP sequence numbers to RLC sequence numbers by shifting them left 4 times.~~

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNDs, ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The PDCP sequence numbers shall be derived from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (~~RLC~~PDCP-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (~~RLC~~PDCP-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNDs received from the MS. ~~If this is not the case the~~All ~~not-old~~Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the ~~RLC~~PDCP-SNUs received from the SRNS. ~~If this is not the case, the~~All ~~not-old~~Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

---

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Figure 90~~.

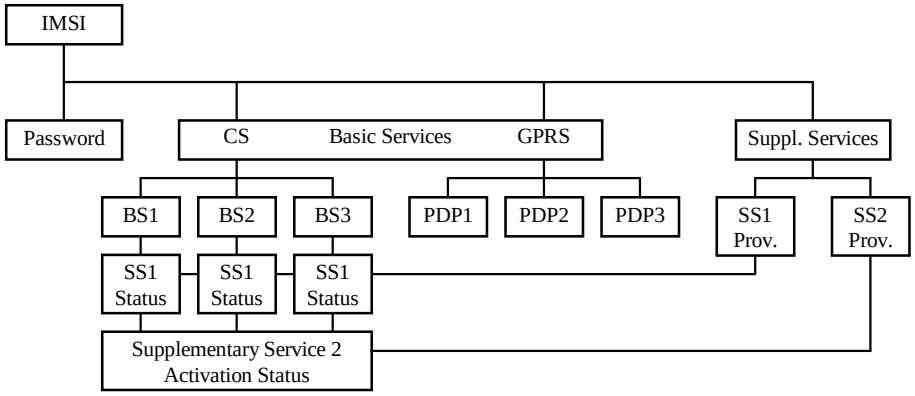


Figure ~~8~~90: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Figure 90~~ indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Error! Reference source not found.~~Table 5~~ shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 15: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
MS PS Purged for GPRS	Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN.	X	X
GGSN-list	The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling".	X	X
Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed.	X	X
Access Point Name	A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 6~~ shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 2~~6~~: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDU~~PDCP-PDU~~s should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain	X	X

	of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.		
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
~~RLC~~PDCP-SND	The next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number to be sent to the MS.		X
~~RLC~~PDCP-SNU	The next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 7~~ shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 3~~7~~: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
GTP-SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 8~~ shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 4~~8~~: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.	X	X
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.	X	X
TFT	Traffic flow template.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.	X	X
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.	X	X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X

If a PDP context is enabled for network-requested PDP context activation, then IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, SGSN Address and MNRG contain valid information also when the PDP context is inactive and when the MS is GPRS-detached.

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 9~~ shows the PDP context fields for one MS.

Table 5~~9~~: GGSN PDP Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN serving this MS.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

A GGSN that supports anonymous access shall have a list of server addresses that are allowed to be accessed by anonymous MSs. The method to maintain the list of the servers is outside the scope of the present document.

13.4 MS

Each packet domain MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 10~~ shows the MS context fields.

Table 6~~10~~: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	G, U	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	G, U	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	G, U	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
Routeing Area	G, U	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity		Current cell.	X	
Kc	G	Current GPRS ciphering key.	X	
CKSN / KSI	G, U	Key Set Identifier for IK Next, CK Next, and Kc.	X	X
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	X
CK		Currently used ciphering key.		X
CK Next	U	UMTS ciphering key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
IK		Currently used integrity key.		X
IK Next	U	Integrity key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
Classmark		MS classmark.	X	X
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:				
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.	X	X
APN Requested		The APN requested.	X	X
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI		Transaction Identifier.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
TFT		Traffic flow template.	X	X
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id		Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.	X	X
~~RLC~~PDCP-SND		The next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number expected from the RNC.		X
~~RLC~~PDCP-SNU		The next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP sequence number to be sent to the RNC.		X

The information marked with a "U" in **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 10~~ shall be stored in the USIM.

The information marked with a "G" in **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 10~~:

- shall be stored in the GSIM if the connected SIM is PS-aware; and
- may be stored in the ME after PS detach if the connected GSIM is not PS-aware.

If the GSIM is packet domain service-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the GSIM shall be used for packet domain services.

If the GSIM is not packet domain service-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the GSIM is identical to the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the GSIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a PS attach. IMSI,

P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the PS attach has been successfully performed.

When using a USIM, the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, CK Next, IK Next, and CKSN / KSI stored in the USIM, and the CK and IK stored in the ME, shall be used for packet domain services.

For anonymous access (GPRS only) each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in READY state. The information may be contained in the ME and the TE. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 11~~ shows the MS context fields.

Table 7~~11~~: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
APN Requested	The APN requested.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.

13.5 MSC/VLR

The MSC/VLR may store the SGSN number of PS-attached MSs that are also CS-attached. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 12~~ shows the MSC/VLR association for one MS.

Table 8~~12~~: MSC/VLR Association

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SGSN number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Error! Reference source not found.~~Table 13~~ shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 9~~13~~: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 14~~ shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 10~~14~~: BSS Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. **Error! Reference source not found.**~~Table 15~~ shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 11~~15~~: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
~~RLC~~PDCP-SND	The next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP Sequence number to be sent to the MS
~~RLC~~PDCP-SNU	The next in-sequence ~~RLC~~ PDCP Sequence Number expected from the MS

13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.8.1 HLR Failure

When an HLR restarts, it sends to each SGSN where one or more of its MSs are registered a Reset message. This causes the SGSN to mark the relevant MM contexts as invalid, and to set NGAF if an SGSN – MSC/VLR association exists. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from a marked MS, the SGSN performs an update location to the HLR as in the attach or inter SGSN RA update procedures, and, if NGAF is set, the procedure in subclause "Non-GPRS Alert" is followed. The update location procedure and the procedure towards the MSC/VLR may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator configuration-depending time period to avoid high signalling load. The periodic back-up of HLR data to non-volatile storage is mandatory as described in UMTS 33.007 [5].

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs

shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid. If there is no MM context for the MS, the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routeing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined PS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

13.8.4 VLR Failure

When a VLR fails, all its associations with SGSNs affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. Based on configuration data, the MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Reset message to each of its associated SGSNs. The SGSNs mark all associations containing the restarted VLR as invalid. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached, the SGSN shall return a Detach Request (Detach Type) message in order to request the MS to perform a combined RA / LA update. Detach Type shall be set to CS Detach. The detach procedure may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator-configuration depending time period to avoid high signalling load.

13.8.5 BSS Failure for GPRS

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

13.8.6 RNC Failure for UMTS

When an RNC fails, all its RNC contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. RNC storage of data is volatile.

TSG SA WG2 #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000227**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	110	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA#7	for approval	X	Strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-01-14

Subject: RAB Assignment Procedure Description

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: Add description of how RABs are established, modified and Released. Insert references to the description and update the procedure names that are used for RAB operations according to 3G TS 25.413. Editorial correction as to the use of UE vs MS.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 1~~Figure 1~~~~Figure 1~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

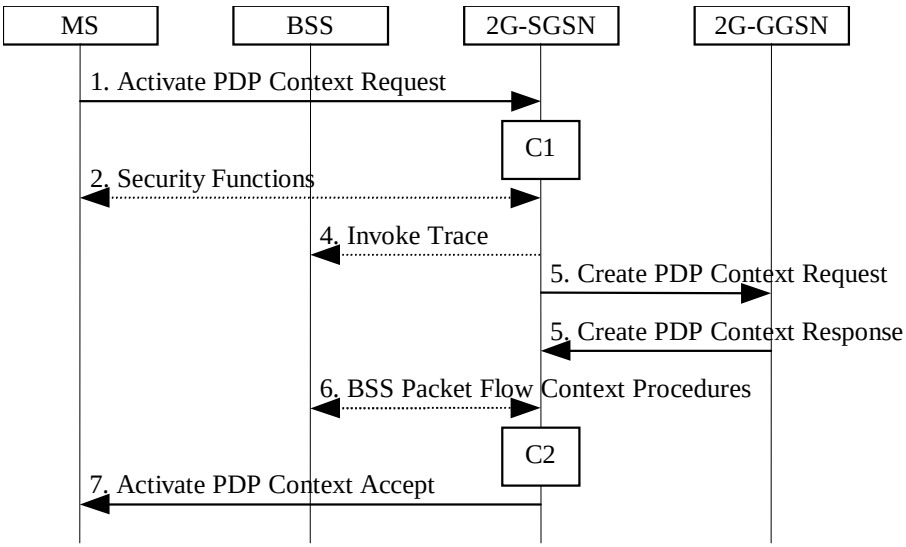


Figure 1: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

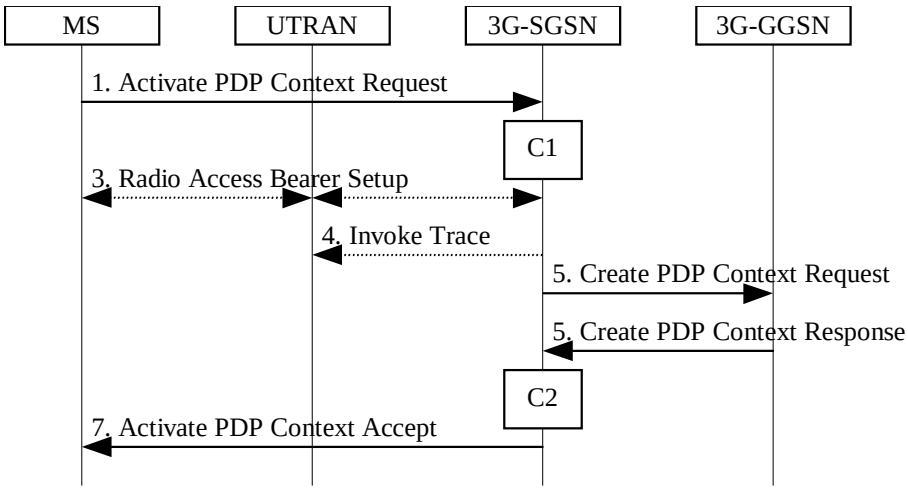


Figure 22~~2~~: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, ~~the~~ RAB setup ~~procedure~~ is ~~performed~~ done by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4. ~~The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.~~

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and

demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. Each PDP context sharing the same PDP address and APN shall be identified by a unique TI and a unique NSAPI.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be executed without providing a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context if all other active PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN already have an associated TFT, otherwise a TFT shall be provided. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address and APN. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 3~~Figure 3~~~~Figure 3~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

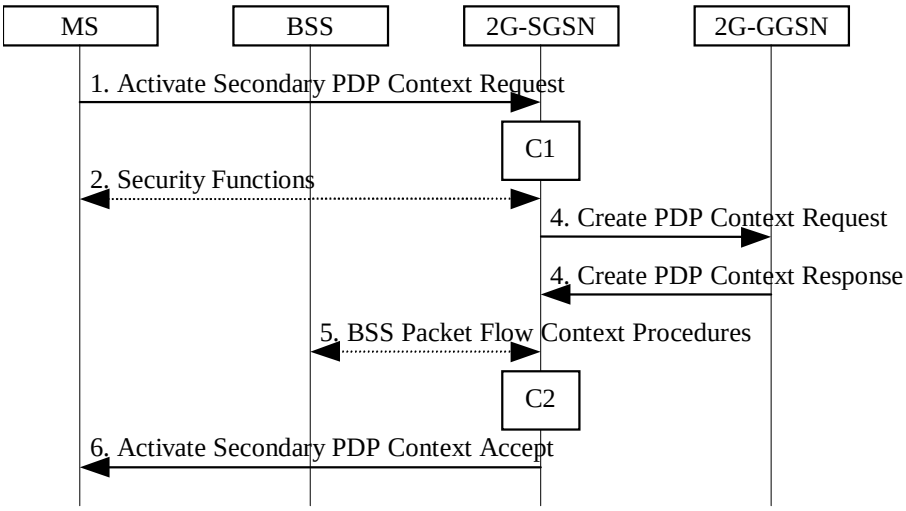


Figure ~~33~~3: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

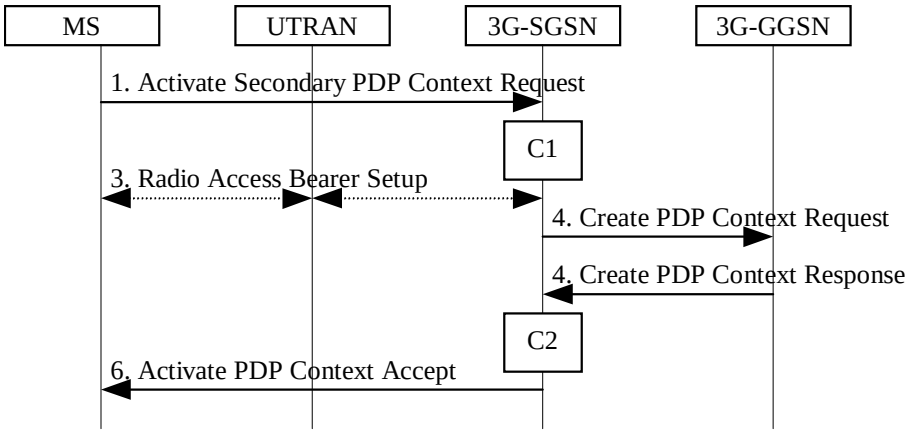


Figure 444: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (Linked TI, NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Linked TI indicates the TI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI and NSAPI contain values not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, ~~the~~ RAB setup ~~procedure~~ is ~~performed~~ done by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4~~. The 3G SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to the UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.~~

4) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI indicated by Linked TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TEID, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. TFT is included only if received in the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

5) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

6) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 5~~Figure 5~~~~Figure 9~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

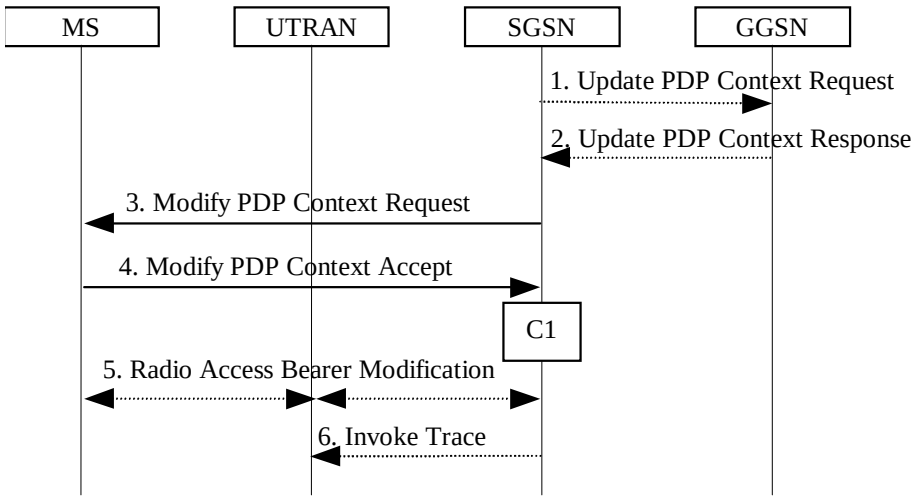


Figure ~~55~~9: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) For UMTS, ~~the~~ radio access bearer modification may be performed by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4. ~~procedure may be executed.~~

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 6~~Figure 6~~~~Figure 10~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

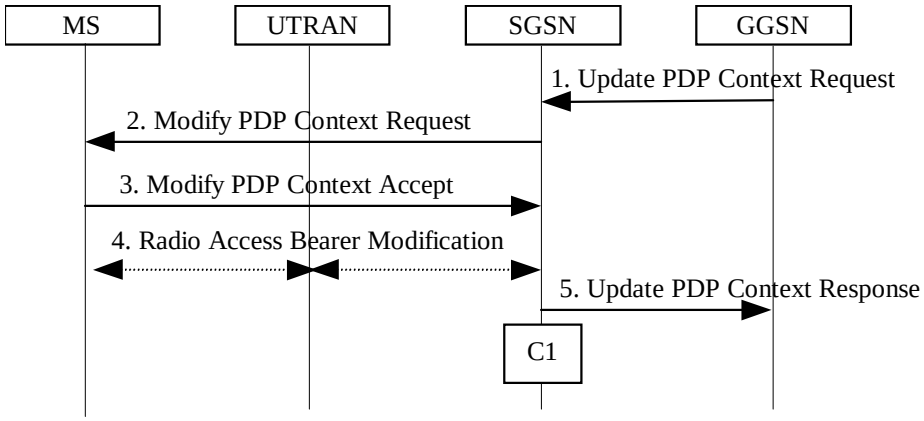


Figure 6610: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) For UMTS, ~~the~~ radio access bearer modification may be performed by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4. ~~procedure may be executed.~~

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 7~~Figure 7~~~~Figure 11~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

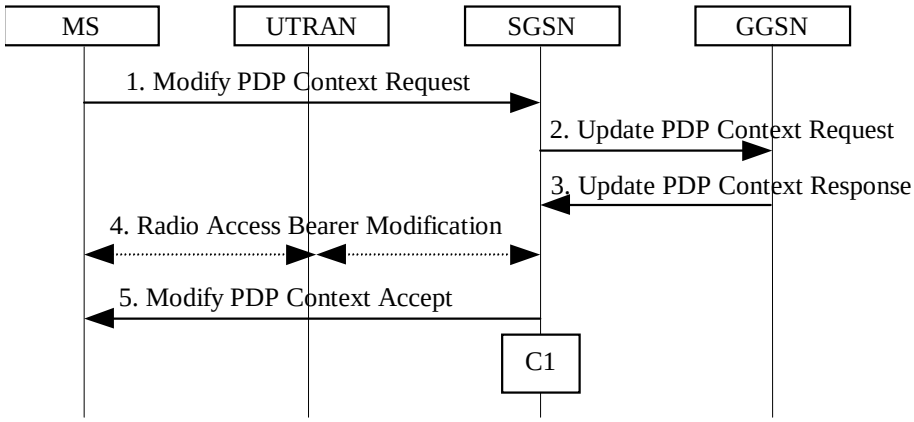


Figure 7711: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type or TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) For UMTS, ~~the~~ radio access bearer modification may be performed by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4. ~~procedure may be executed.~~

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 8~~Figure 8~~~~Figure 12~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

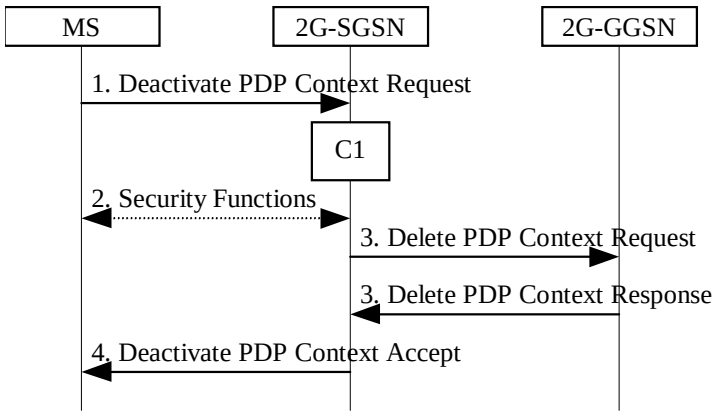


Figure ~~88~~12: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GPRS

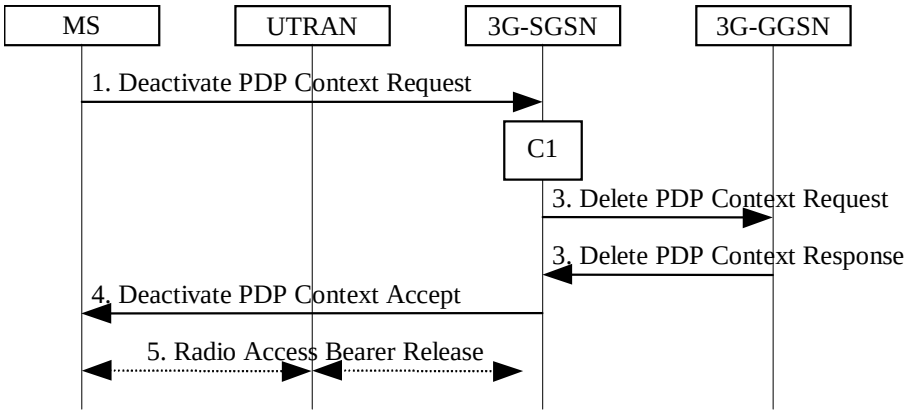


Figure 99~~13~~: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN.

2) For GPRS security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind was included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

5) For UMTS, ~~the~~ radio access bearer release is done by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4.~~procedure is executed.~~

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 10~~Figure 10~~~~Figure 14~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

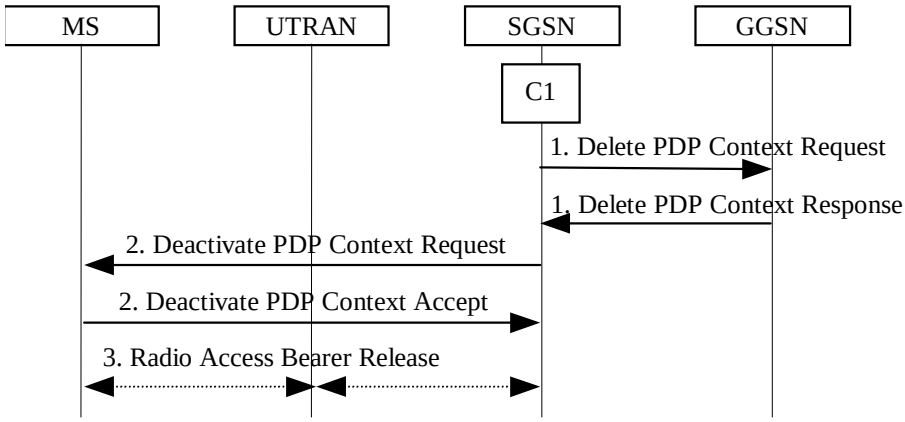


Figure 10~~10~~~~14~~: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind is included, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) For UMTS, ~~the~~ radio access bearer release is done by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4. ~~procedure is executed.~~

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 11~~Figure 11~~~~Figure 15~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

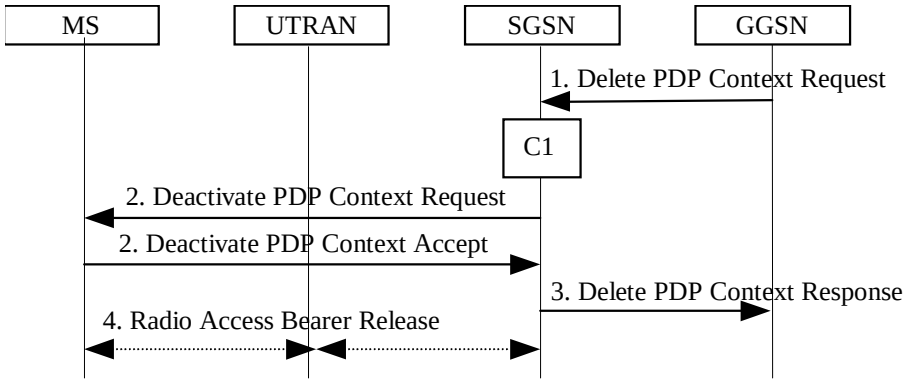


Figure 11~~11~~~~15~~: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind was included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

3) For UMTS, ~~the~~ radio access bearer release is done by the RAB Assignment procedure, see 12.8.4.~~procedure is executed.~~

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

12.8.4 RAB Assignment Procedure

The purpose of the RAB Assignment procedure is to enable modification and/or release of already established RABs and/or the establishment of new RABs for a given MS. The same messages are used for the three mentioned actions and it is only the content carried by the messages that is different. The RAB assignment procedure, which is shown below, is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The RRC protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

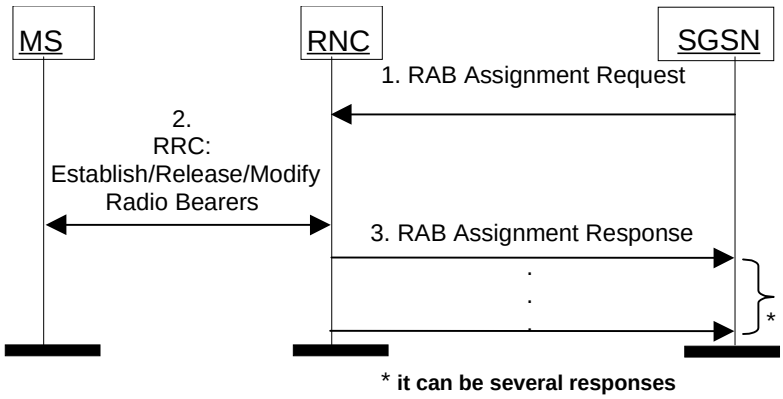
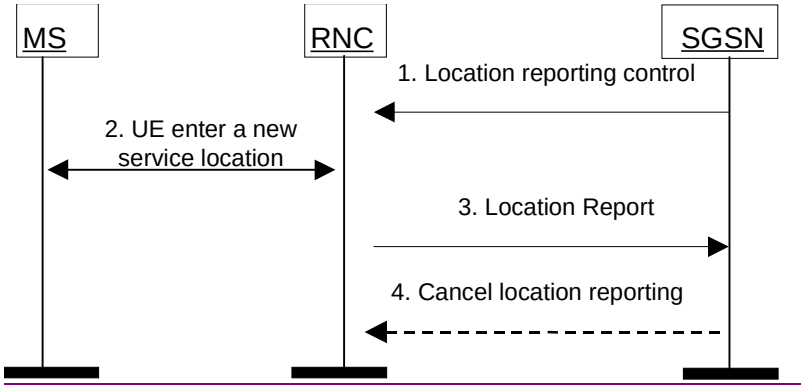


Figure 88 RAB Assignment Procedure

12.8.5~~12.8.4~~ Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the MS is currently located, or to report when the MS moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in the LCS stage-2 specification, see 3G TS 23.171.



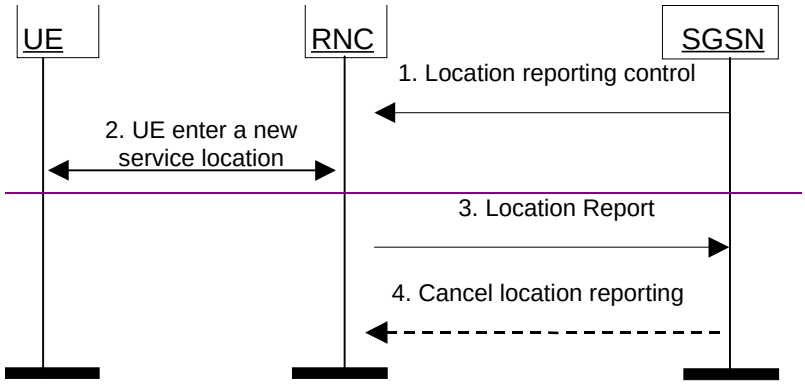


Figure 121218: Location Reporting Procedure

1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area an MS in the MM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this MS. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the MS.

2) The SRNC detects that the MS moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the MS if this was requested by the SGSN.

3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the MS is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the MS is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the MS, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a MS entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).

4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given MS. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan 6-9 Mar 2000

***Document* S2-000518**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	112r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 07.03.2000

Subject: NSAPI missing after change from TID to TEID

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:
In R'99 TID has been replaced by TEID which does not contain the NSAPI anymore.
In the Create, Update and Delete PDP Context Requests the TID has been replaced by the TEID but the GGSN needs the NSAPI to identify the PDP context. This change request adds the NSAPI where necessary.
Also in the Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure the NSAPI of the primary PDP context needs to be sent in the Create PDP Context Request to the GGSN as a link between the secondary PDP context being activated and the existing one(s). This has already been changed in 29.060.

Clauses affected: 9.2.2.1; 9.2.2.1.1; 9.2.3.1; 9.2.3.2; 9.2.3.3; 9.2.4.1; 9.2.4.2; 9.2.4.3

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 59. Each step is explained in the following list.

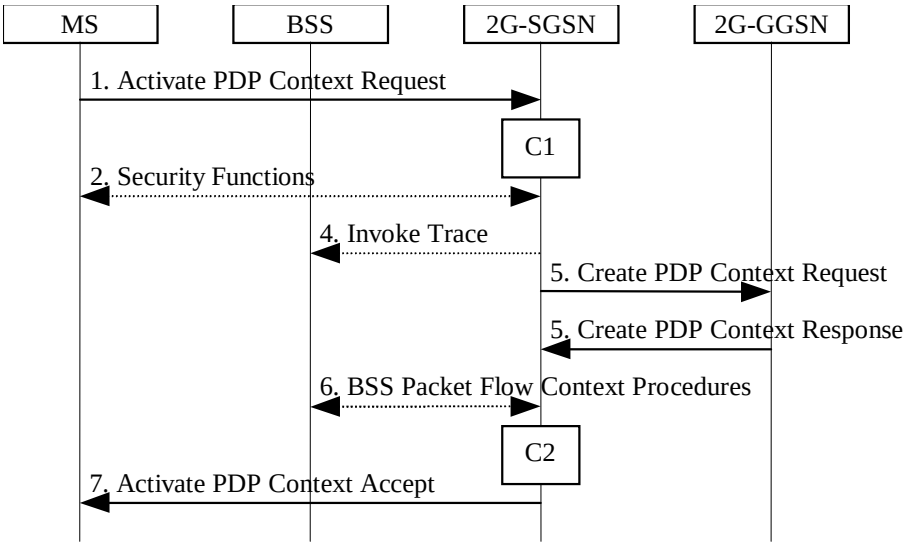


Figure 59: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

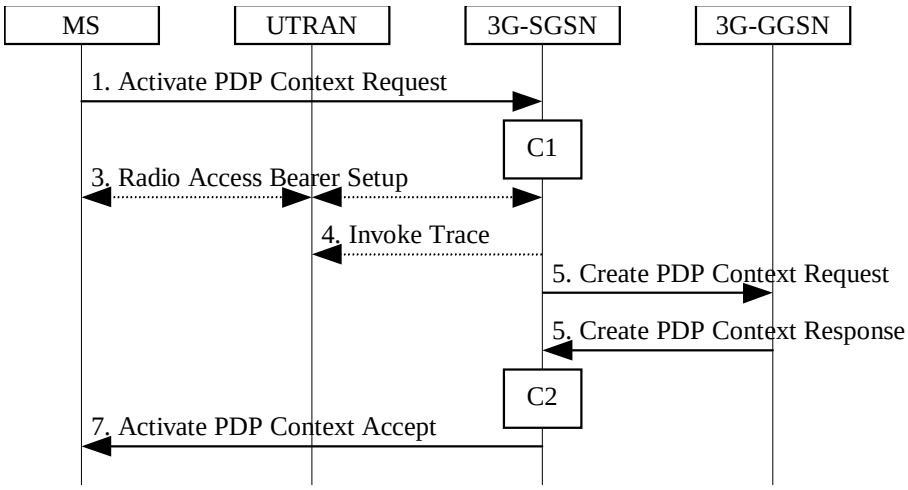


Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context ~~by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS~~. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, NSAPI, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, ~~NSAPI,~~ PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. Each PDP context sharing the same PDP address and APN shall be identified by a unique TI and a unique NSAPI.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be executed without providing a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context if all other active PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN already have an associated TFT, otherwise a TFT shall be provided. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address and APN. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 61. Each step is explained in the following list.

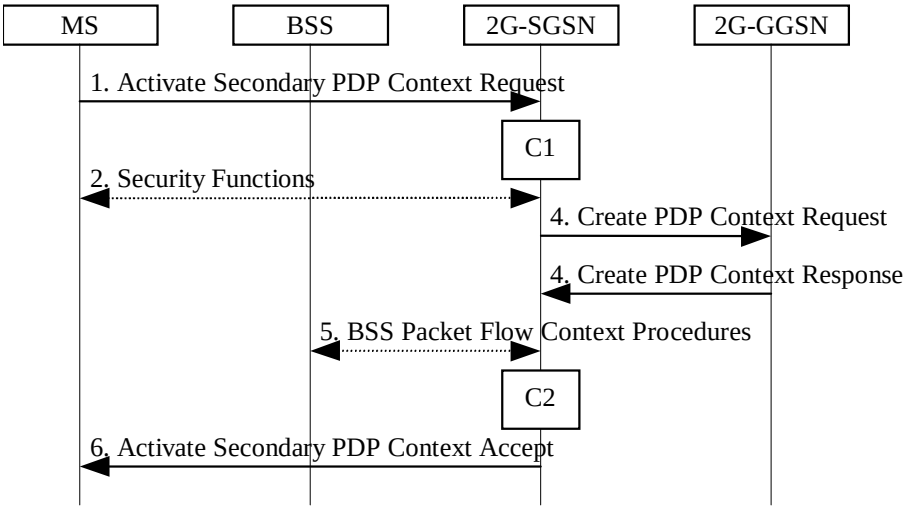


Figure 61: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

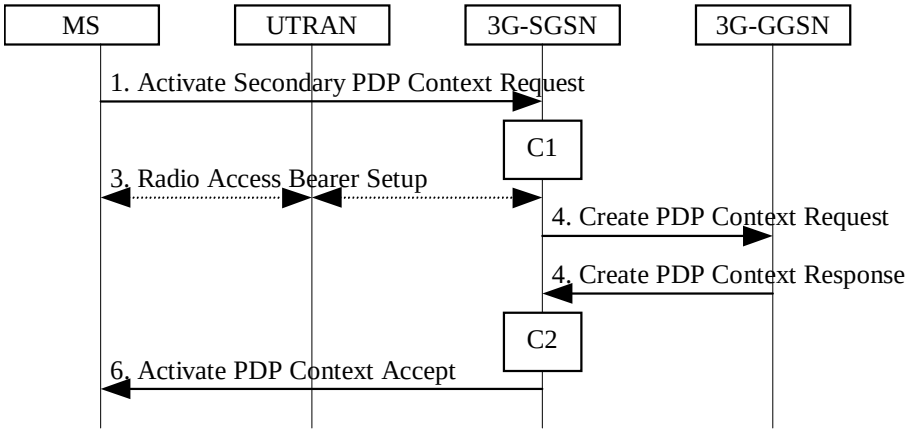


Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (Linked TI, NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Linked TI indicates the TI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI and NSAPI contain values not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to the UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI indicated by Linked TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TEID, NSAPI, Primary NSAPI, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. Primary NSAPI indicates the NSAPI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. TFT is included only if received in the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, ~~NSAPI,~~ QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

5) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

6) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 67. Each step is explained in the following list.

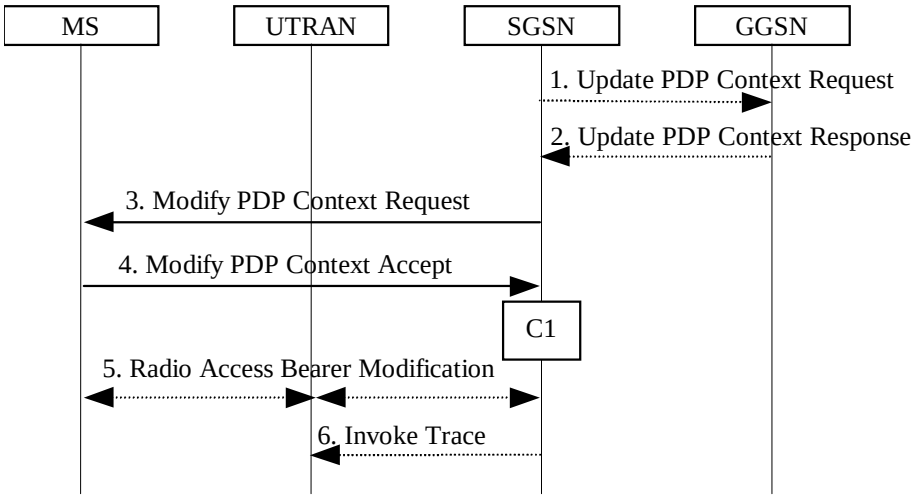


Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, ~~NSAPI,~~ QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 68. Each step is explained in the following list.

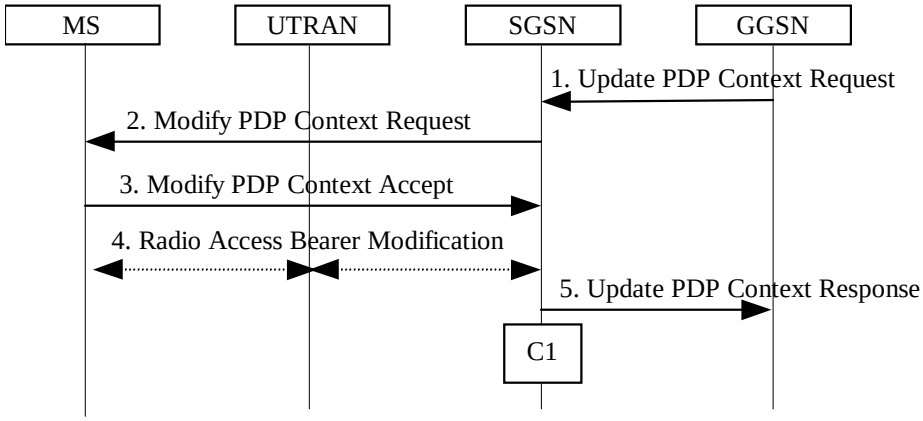


Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, ~~NSAPI,~~ QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 69. Each step is explained in the following list.

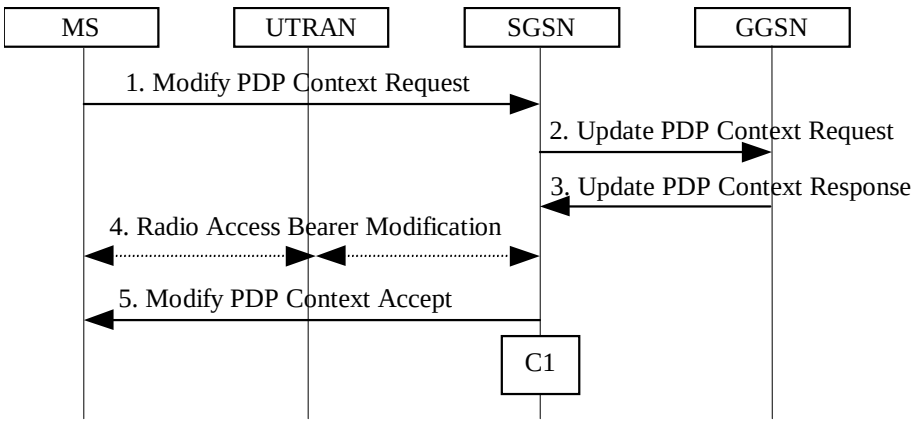


Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type or TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, ~~NSAPI,~~ QoS Negotiated) message.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 70. Each step is explained in the following list.

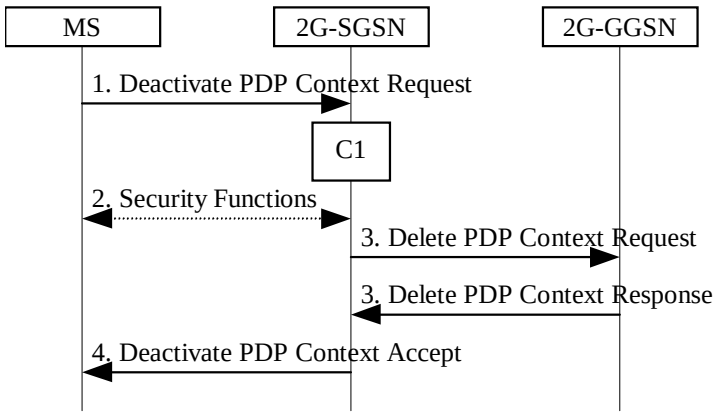


Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GPRS

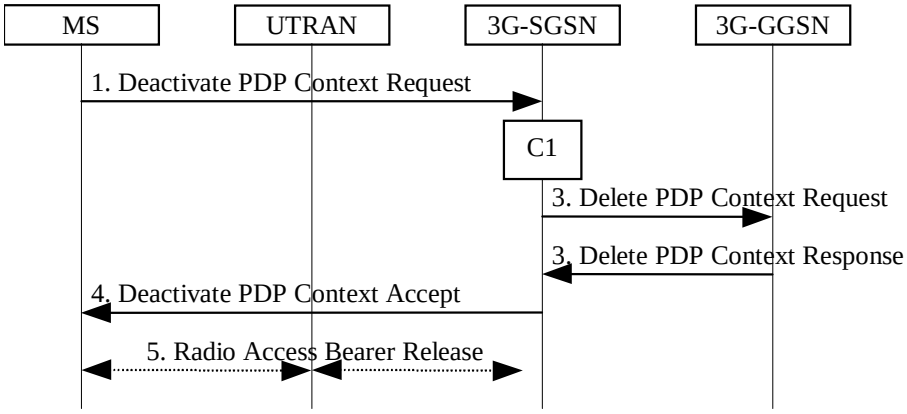


Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN.

2) For GPRS security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind was included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID~~, NSAPI~~) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 72. Each step is explained in the following list.

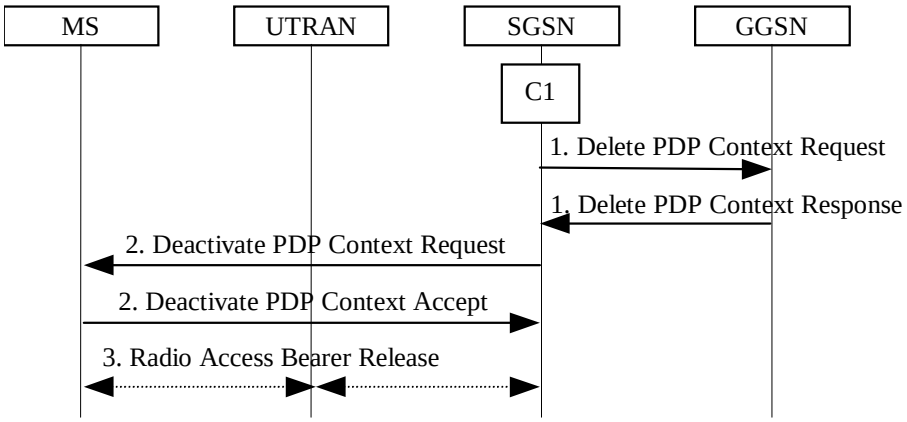


Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID~~, NSAPI~~) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind is included, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 73. Each step is explained in the following list.

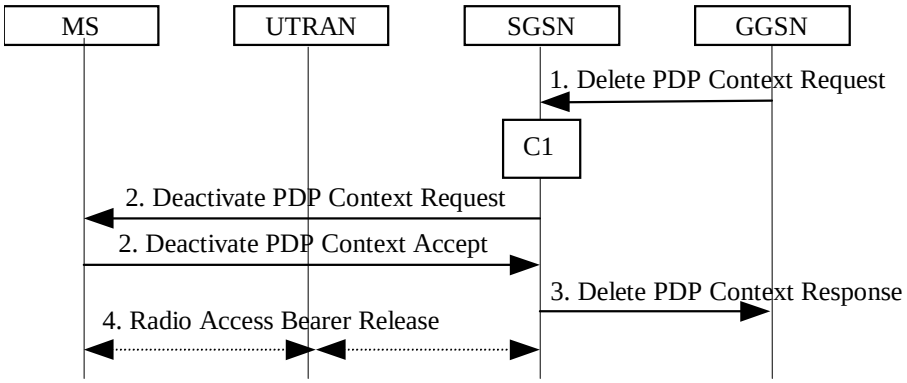


Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, NSAPI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind was included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID~~, NSAPITeardown Ind~~) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

3) For UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

3GPP/SMG Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000228**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	114r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [X]

Source: NTT Communicatioware **Date:** 24-01-2000

Subject: Clarification of RANAP and GTP procedures in SRNS relocation

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification	X		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

This CR proposes the following modifications to clarify the SRNS relocation procedure.

- To align with TS 25.413v3.0.0 and TS 29.060v3.3.0, RANAP and GTP message for SRNS relocation procedure is modified.
- The Iu release procedure is added at the last phase of the acutual handover because when the old SGSN receives Forward Relocation Complete message the new tunnelling paths (Gn and Iu) have been updated and established.
- Some conditions are clearly specified.
- Some editorial modifications including terminology modifications

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments: The changes without marking mean the 1st and 4th bullets of the modification item in Reason for change.

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.9.2.2 Serving RNS~~C~~ Relocation procedure

~~[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]~~

This procedure is only performed for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNS~~C~~ relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the ~~Serving~~ source RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the ~~T~~target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the ~~Serving~~ source RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNS~~C~~ Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure if RA is changed. If the ~~T~~target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the ~~Serving~~ source RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNS~~C~~ Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Figure 1 shows SRNS relocation when a source RNC and a target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSNs. Figure 2 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

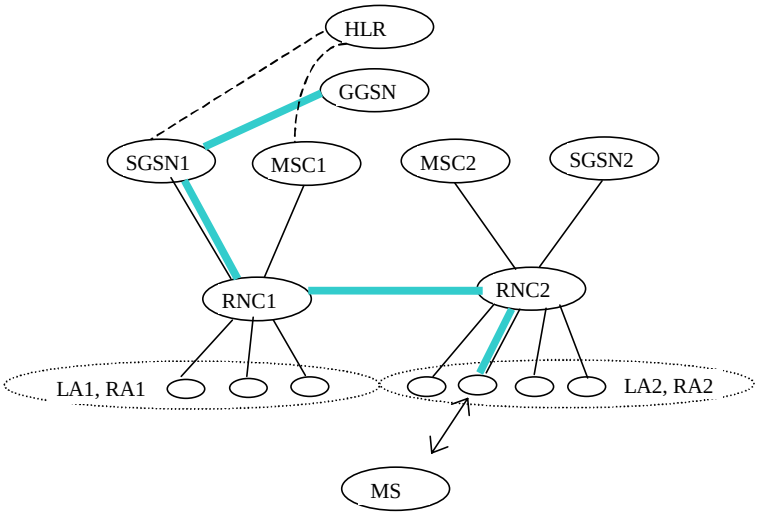


Figure 1: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and the location registration, the MS is registered in the SGSN1 and in the MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as Serving~~ERVING~~ RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

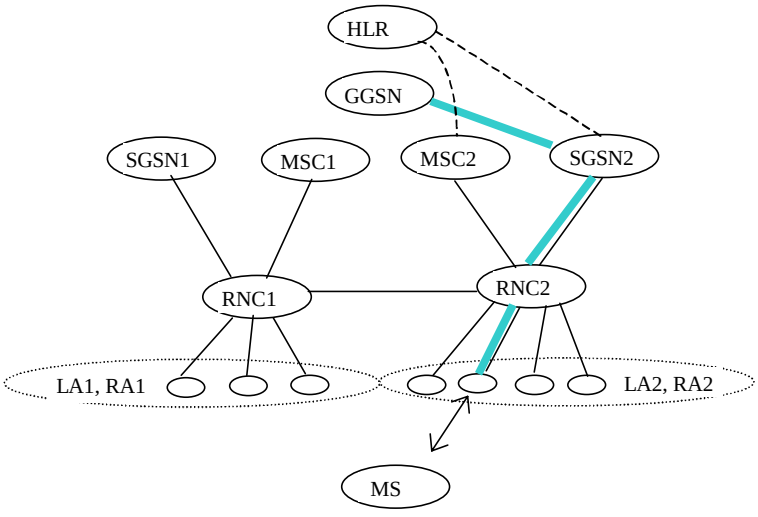


Figure 2: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in the MSC2 and in the SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as Serving~~ERVING~~ RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNS~~C~~ Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from the~~(old) Serving~~ source RNC to the ~~T~~target RNC. And the new transport paths (Gn and Iu) are updated and established.

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

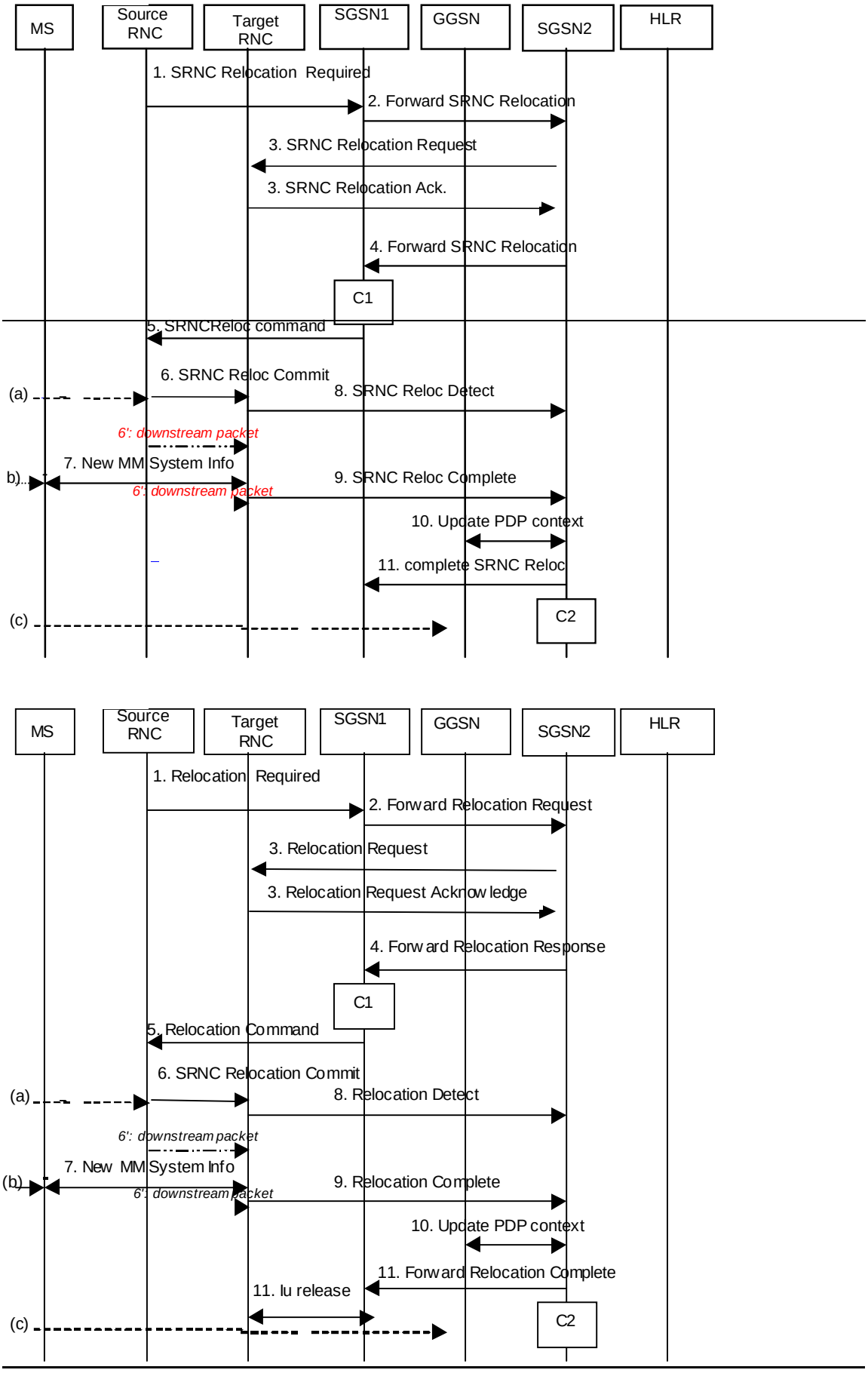


Figure 3: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNSC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNSC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Ttarget RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends a SRNC Relocation rRequired message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from the target RNC Iidentifier that the SRNSC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNSC Relocation, then the SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC rRelocation rRequest message to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts) to the SGSN2.

NOTE: Forward SRNC rRelocation rRequest does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, SGSN IP address(es), Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the target RNC. The SGSN IP address(es) and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are allocated and sent when it is necessary to establish Iu user plane transport bearers because there are one or more PDP context(s). When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and the target RNC completed its preparation phase, a SRNC Relocation Request Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from the target RNC to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are also allocated and sent when Iu user plane transport bearers is established. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these downstream packets from the GGSN and downstream forwarding packets from the source RNC are possibly one address per PDP context. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Iidentifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between the target RNC and the SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the a Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from the SGSN2 to the SGSN1. This message indicates that the SGSN2 /and the target RNC are ready to receive from the source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNSC relocation by sending a the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Ssource RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by the Ssource RNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation CommandProceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)) to the target RNC. GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers

a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, the target RNC (=SRNC) sends a ~~SRNC~~ Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends a~~n SRNC r~~ Relocation ~~c~~Complete message to the SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNS~~C~~ Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu ~~r~~Release Command message to the source RNC (old SRNC).

10) If the SRNS~~C~~ relocation is an Inter-SGSN SERVING RNS~~C~~ relocation, the ~~new~~ SGSN2 sends an Update PDP Context Request message (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier~~, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier~~) to the GGSNs concerned~~. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context.~~ The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response message (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNS~~C~~ relocation is an Inter-SGSN SERVING RNS~~C~~ relocation, the ~~new~~ SGSN2 sends a Forward Relocation Complete ~~SERVING RNC relocation~~ message ~~(IMSI)~~ to the ~~old~~ SGSN1 when all GGSNs have been updated. After receiving this message, the SGSN1 executes Iu release procedure to the source RNC (old SRNC).

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Mexico, 24-28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000197**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	116	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]

Source: Nokia **Date:** 17.1.2000

Subject: Subscriber and equipment trace for PS domain

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification	X		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: This CR removes the Initiating OMC Identity from the Create PDP Context Request message which the SGSN sends when activating a trace. The Initiating OMC is also removed from the data stored in the HLR, SGSN, GGSN, BSS and RNC. The Initiating OMC Identity is the same as the Trigger Id.

Clauses affected: 9.2.2; 9.2.3; 13.1; 13.2; 13.3; 13.6; 13.7

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

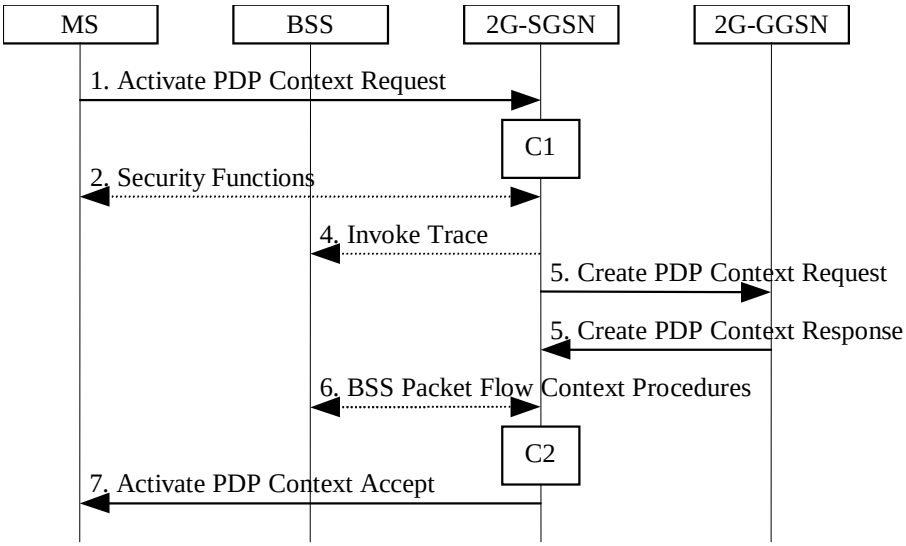


Figure 1: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

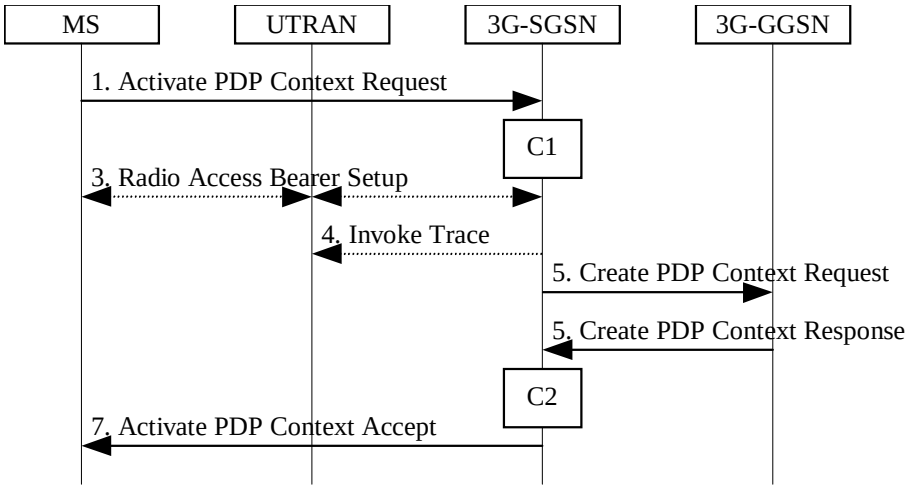


Figure 2: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, ~~Initiating OMC Identity,~~ OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, ~~Initiating OMC Identity,~~ and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and ~~Initiating~~ OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement

is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

< Next modified section >

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id;
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure); and
- TFT (in case of MS-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

A trace may be activated while a PDP context is active. To enable trace activation in a GGSN, the SGSN shall send an Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN. If PDP context modification is performed only to activate a trace, then the SGSN shall not send a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 3. Each step is explained in the following list.

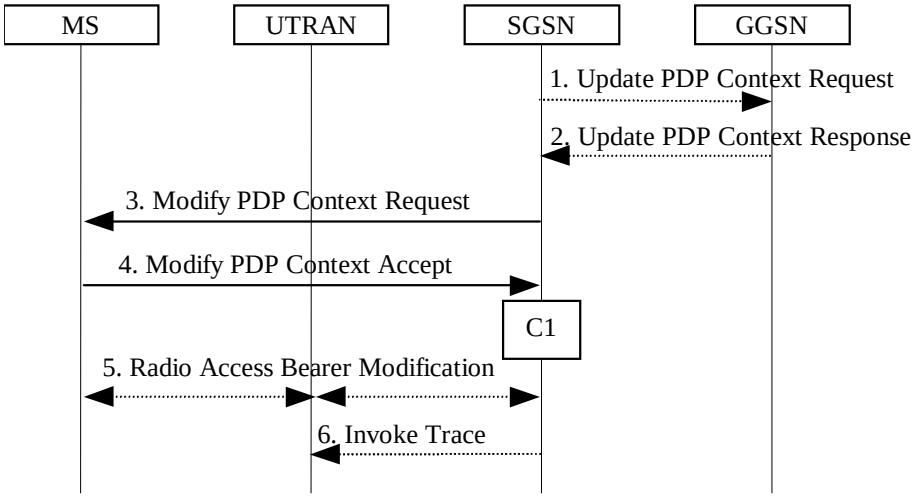


Figure 3: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, ~~Initiating OMC Identity,~~ OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, ~~Initiating OMC Identity,~~ and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and ~~Initiating~~ OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

< Next modified section >

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in Figure 4.

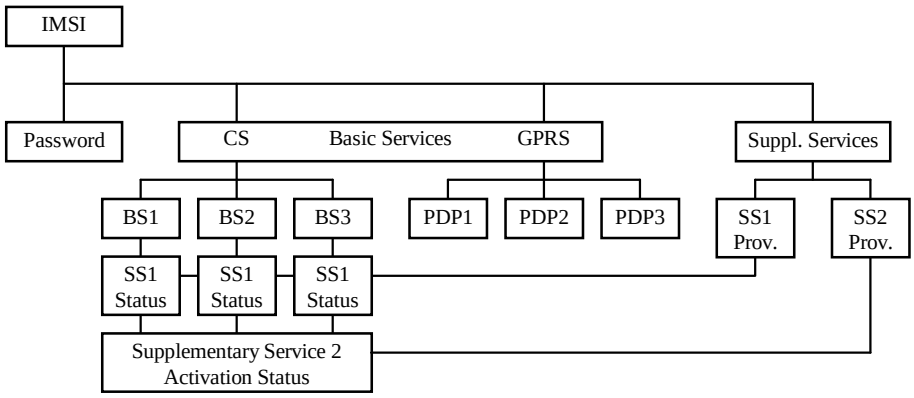


Figure 4: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As Figure 4 indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Table 1 shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 1: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace.	X	X
~~Initiating~~ OMC Identity	~~Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC~~Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
MS PS Purged for GPRS	Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN.	X	X
GGSN-list	The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling".	X	X
Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed.	X	X
Access Point Name	A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. Table 2 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 2: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
~~Initiating OMC Identity~~	~~Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.~~	~~X~~	~~X~~
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain	X	X

	of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.		
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS.		X
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. Table 3 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 3: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
GTP-SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 4 shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 4: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.	X	X
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.	X	X
TFT	Traffic flow template.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.	X	X
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.	X	X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
~~Initiating OMC Identity~~	~~Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.~~	~~X~~	~~X~~
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X

< Next modified section >

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Table 5 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 5: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
~~Initiating OMC Identity~~	~~Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.~~
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. Table 6 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 6: BSS Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. Table 7 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 7: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
~~Initiating OMC Identity~~	~~Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.~~
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence number to be sent to the MS
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence Number expected from the MS

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico, 24-28 January, 2000

***Document* S2-000236**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	119	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source:	NTT DoCoMo	**Date:** 28. Jan. 2000
Subject:	Extension of Maximum N-PDU size in case of PDP type = PPP	
Work item:	QoS	

Category: *(only one category shall be marked With an X)*

			Release:	
F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			Release 00	

Reason for change: Most PDP-PDUs from outside of the PLMN, e.g. ISP, are transferred as data units up to 1,500 octets. In case of PDP type = PPP, it is needed to add 2 octets as a header in PPP frame format. Totally the N-PDU length is 1,502 octets within the PLMN. This CR is to extend N-PDU size up to 1502 octets.

Clauses affected: 9.3

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	23.107
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;
- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and
- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. In case of PDP type = PPP, the maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 502 octets. In other cases, ~~T~~the maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets ~~[FFS]~~. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that results in an N-PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that results in an N-PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #11
Puerto Vallarta, Mexico 24-28 Jan 2000

Document S2-000278
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**121**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 25.1.2000

Subject: User-controlled screening in R99

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Release:

Phase 2	
Release 96	
Release 97	
Release 98	
Release 99	X
Release 00	

Reason for change: In LS S2-000056 concerning message screening function, SA1 informs that user-controlled packet screening is not a requirement for release 99. In accordance with SA1's decision the FFS in sect. 5.3.1.4 is removed.

Clauses affected: 5.3.1.4

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function

A screening function concerned with filtering out unauthorised or unsolicited messages is required. This should be supported through packet filtering functions. All types of message screening are left to the operators control, e.g. by use of internet firewalls. ~~[It is FFS if/how user-controlled screening can be provided by utilising TFTs.]~~

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #11
Mexico, 24-28 Jan 2000

***Document* S2-000290**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	122	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Nokia **Date:** 17.1.2000

Subject: Improving charging efficiency

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*				**Release:**	
	F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
	B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
	C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
	D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: This CR aligns the 23.060 with the work in done in the TSG-CN WG2.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:				
	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

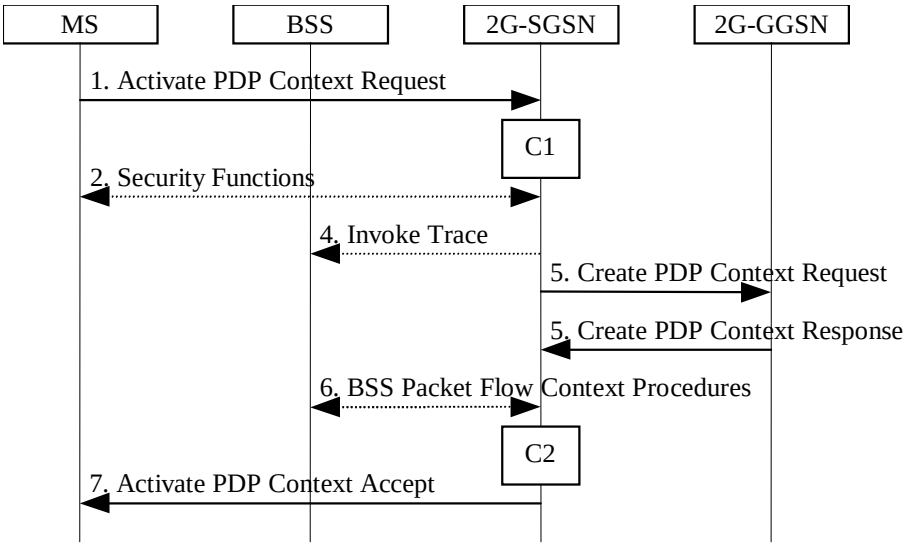


Figure 1: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

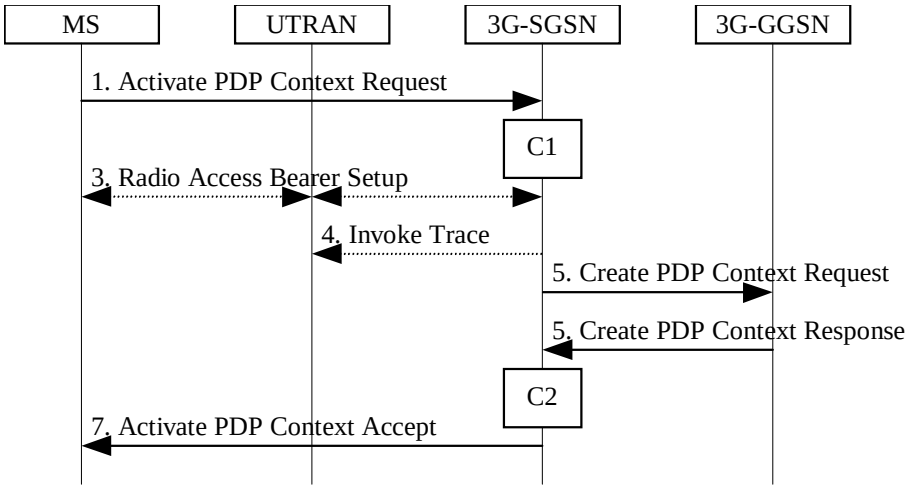


Figure 2: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

   If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

   The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics if received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

   The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement

is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

< Next modified section >

15 Operational Aspects

15.1 Charging

Charging information for the packet domain is collected for each MS by SGSNs and GGSNs that are serving the MS. The operator can control whether charging shall be collected in the SGSN and the GGSN on an individual MS basis by appropriately setting the Subscribed Charging Characteristics in the HLR. Charging characteristic shall be ignored for roaming subscribers.

The information that the operator uses to generate a bill to a subscriber is operator-specific. Billing aspects, e.g., a regular fee for a fixed period, are outside the scope of the present document.

Every packet domain operator collects and processes their own charging information.

The SGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the radio network usage while the GGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the external data network usage. Both GSNs also collect charging information on usage of the network resources.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000354**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	123	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-02-29

Subject: Removal of P-TMSI Signature in Service Request

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*			**Release:**	
F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			Release 00	

Reason for change:

Removal of P-TMSI signature from the Service Request procedure.

The general principle is that whenever the P-TMSI signature is sent unciphered, the MS shall delete the P-TMSI signature when it has been sent unciphered . Therefore the P-TMSI signature shall only be included wherever it is useful.

A service request initiated when the MS is in PMM-IDLE state will be sent unciphered. Since the service request procedure can not re-allocate a P-TMSI signature, it will normally trigger a P-TMSI re-allocation procedure. This seems quite unnecessary since the P-TMSI signature is not a very useful concept in UMTS where we have introduced integrity protection.

If the service request includes the P-TMSI signature then at time for the next RA update the MS do not have a P-TMSI signature (e.g. inter-system change). This is a drawback since the P-TMSI signature was introduced in GSM GPRS to make sure that the unciphered RA updates were sent from a valid MS.

Clauses affected: 6.8.2.3, 6.12

Other specs affected:				
Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	3G TS 24.008
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.8.2.3 P-TMSI Signature

P-TMSI Signature is optionally sent by the SGSN to the MS in Attach Accept and Routeing Area Update Accept messages. If the P-TMSI Signature has been sent by the SGSN to the MS since the current P-TMSI was allocated, then the MS shall include the P-TMSI Signature in the next Routeing Area Update Request, Detach Request~~, Service Request,~~ and Attach Request for identification checking purposes. If the P-TMSI Signature was sent, then the SGSN shall compare the P-TMSI Signature sent by the MS with the signature stored in the SGSN. If the values do not match, the SGSN should use the security functions to authenticate the MS. If the values match or if the P-TMSI Signature is missing, the SGSN may use the security functions to authenticate the MS. The P-TMSI Signature parameter has only local significance in the SGSN that allocated the signature.

If ciphering is supported by the network, the SGSN shall send the P-TMSI Signature ciphered to the MS. Routeing Area Update Request and Attach Request, into which the MS includes the P-TMSI Signature, are not ciphered.

****** Next Modification ******

6.12 Service Request Procedure for UMTS

The Service Request procedure is used by a 3G-MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signalling messages (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request) or user data. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request resource reservation for active PDP contexts.

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP contexts. After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

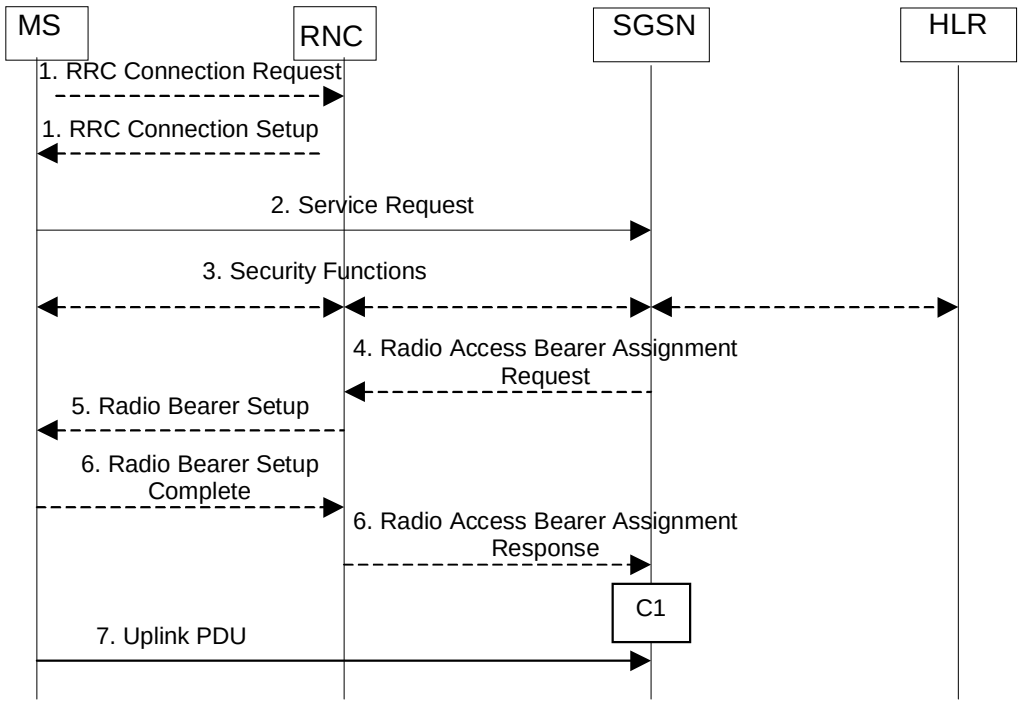


Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI~~, P-TMSI Signature~~, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are requested allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not requested allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The MS sends the uplink packet.

The MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating Service Type = Data is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases, the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

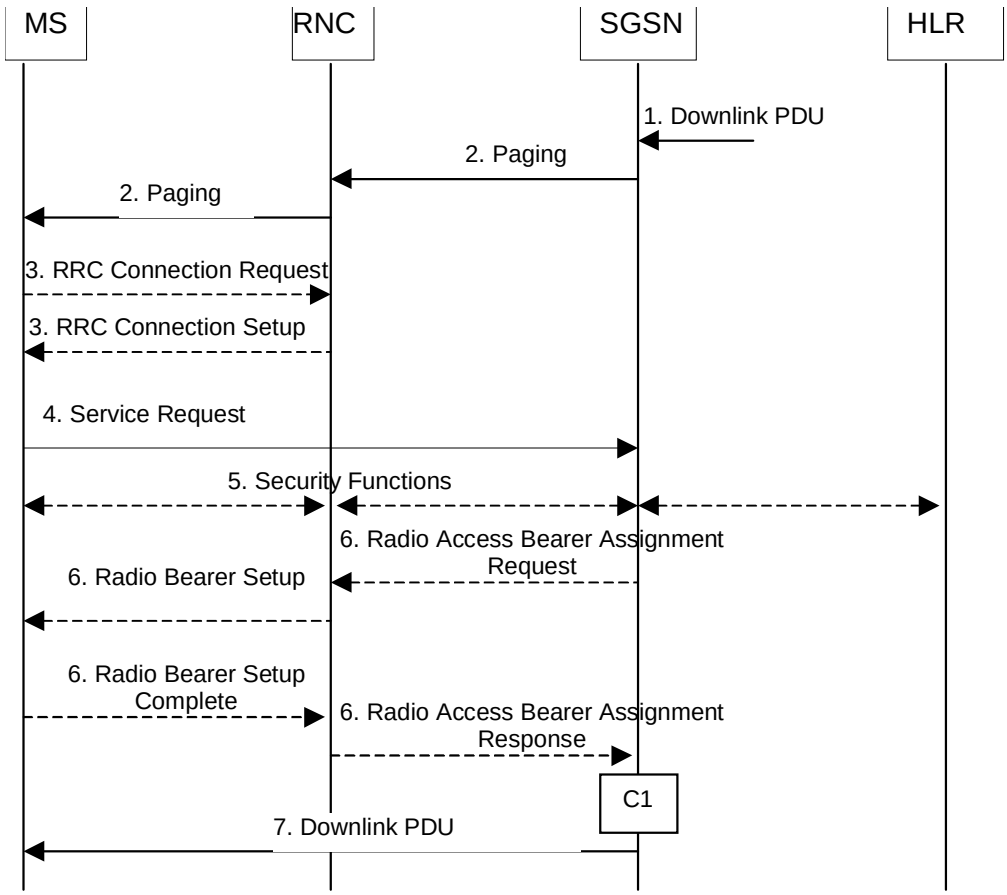


Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the MS.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, ~~P-TMSI Signature,~~ RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 Mar 2000

***Document* S2-000512**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	125r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 08.03.2000

Subject: Clarification of unsuccessful RAB assignment

Work item:

Category:				**Release:**	
(only one category shall be marked with an X)	F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
	B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
	C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
	D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

With release 99 specifications QoS negotiation is not possible on the Iu interface. When the RNS cannot provide the QoS requested in a RAB Assignment Request, the RNC responds with an appropriate cause code (e.g. 'Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available'). At the session management level, however, there is no mean to inform the MS about the exact cause; the SGSN can only use the generic 'insufficient resources' cause code in the reject message. Therefore only the SGSN has enough information to possibly re-attempt with an appropriately downgraded QoS profile. This CR clarifies the behaviour of the SGSN in such situation.

When the SGSN receives a RAB Assignment Response from the RNC with a cause code indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) cannot be provided, the SGSN may re-attempt a RAB Assignment Request with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined by the SGSN is implementation dependent.

Clauses affected: 6.12.1, 6.12.2, 12.8.4

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments: This CR takes into consideration the changes made in **CR110** (new chapter 12.8.4)

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP contexts. After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

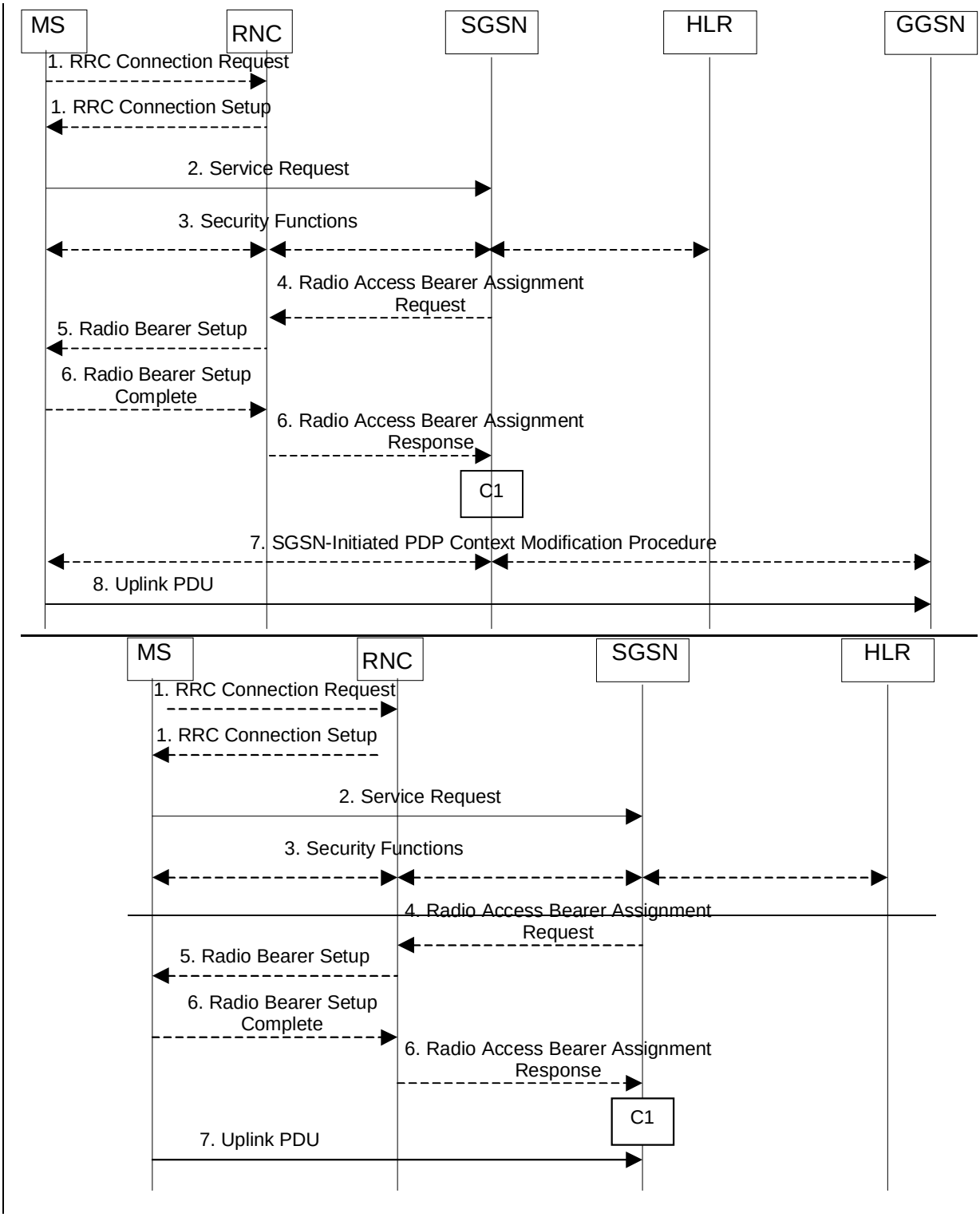


Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is ~~requested~~ established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are ~~requested~~ allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is ~~requested~~ established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not ~~requested~~ allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) ~~6)~~ SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface. If the RNC returns a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response with a cause indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) can not be provided (e.g. 'Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available'), then the SGSN may send a new Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request message with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined is implementation dependent.

7) For each RAB re-established with a modified QoS profile, the SGSN initiates a PDP Context Modification procedure to inform the MS and the GGSN of the new negotiated QoS profile for the corresponding PDP context.

~~7~~8) The MS sends the uplink packet.

The MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating Service Type = Data is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases, the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

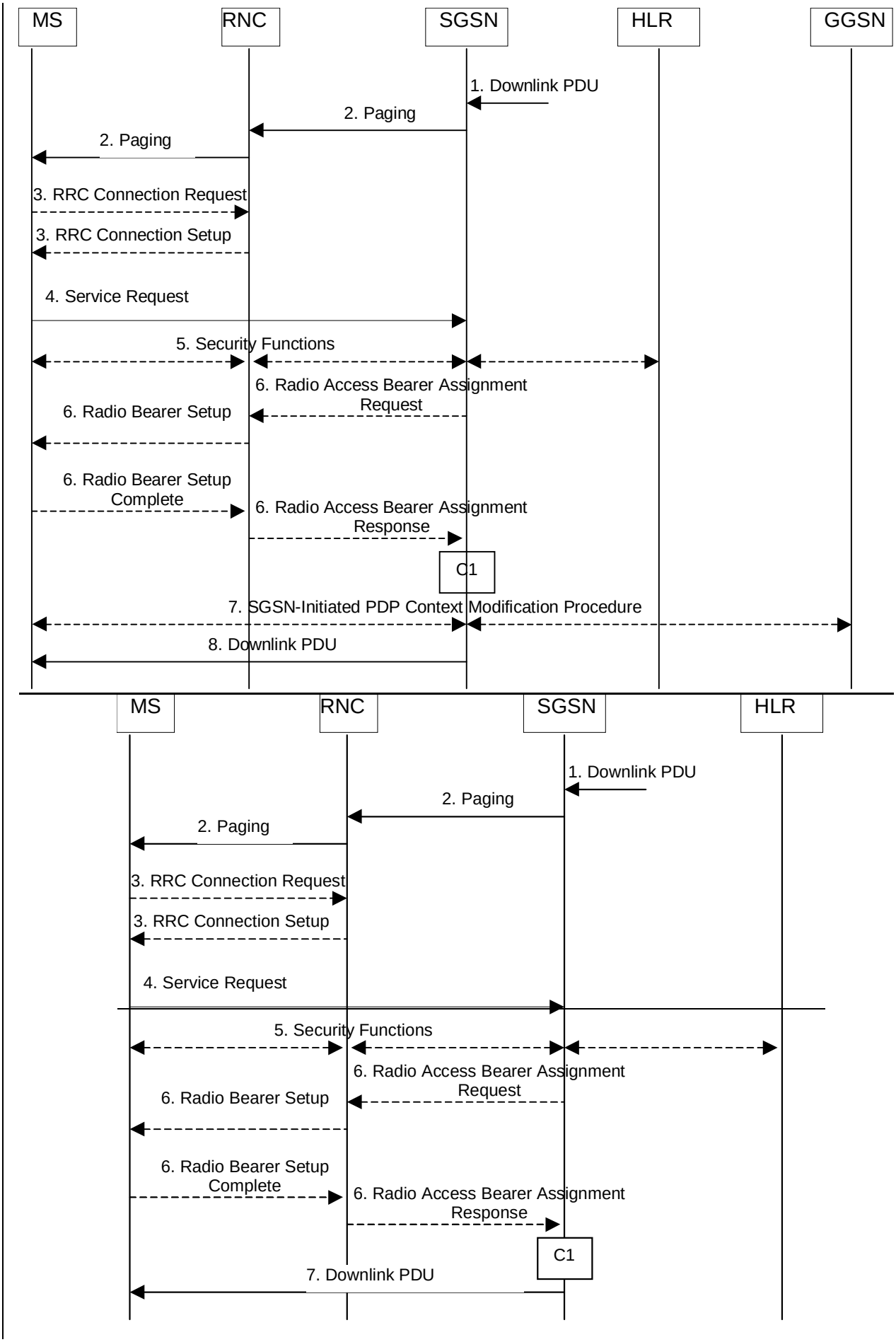


Figure 1: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the MS.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) ~~6)~~ If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS. If the RNC returns a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response with a cause indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) can not be provided (e.g. 'Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available'), then the SGSN may send a new Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request message with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined is implementation dependent.

7) For each RAB re-established with a modified QoS profile, the SGSN initiates a PDP Context Modification procedure to inform the MS and the GGSN of the new negotiated QoS profile for the corresponding PDP context.

~~7~~8) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

12.8.4 RAB Assignment Procedure

The purpose of the RAB Assignment procedure is to enable modification and/or release of already established RABs and/or the establishment of new RABs for a given MS. The same messages are used for the three mentioned actions and it is only the content carried by the messages that is different. The RAB assignment procedure, which is shown below, is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The RRC protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

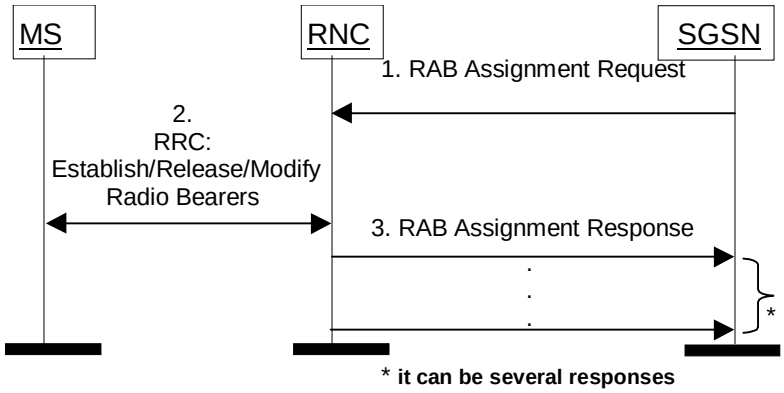


Figure 88 RAB Assignment Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a RAB Assignment Request message to the RNC to establish, modify or release one or several RABs. For each RAB requested to be established or modified, if the RAB is allowed for queuing and the resource situation requires it, the RNC may place the RAB in the establishment queue.

2) The RNC establishes, modifies or releases the appropriate radio bearers.

3) The RNC sends a RAB Assignment Response message to the SGSN. If the request to establish or modify one or several RABs has been queued, the RNC will report the outcome of the establishment or modification in subsequent RAB Assignment Response messages. If the SGSN receives a RAB Assignment Response with a cause indicating that the requested QoS profile(s) can not be provided (e.g. 'Requested Maximum Bit Rate not Available'), then the SGSN may send a new RAB Assignment Request message with different QoS profile(s). The number of re-attempts, if any, as well as how the new QoS profile(s) values are determined is implementation dependent.

3GPP TSG-S2#12 meeting
Tokyo, 6-9 March 2000

Document ***S2-000513***

3G CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060 **CR** **127r1** Current Version: 3.2.1

3G specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by 3G support team*

For submission to TSG: SA#7 *(list TSG meeting no. here ↑)* — for approval [X] — For information [ ] *(only one box should be marked with an X)*

Form: 3G CR cover sheet, version 1.0 *The latest version of this form is available from:* ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/3GCRF-xx.rtf

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* USIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN [X] Core Network [X]

Source: Nokia **Date:** 20/01/2000

Subject: Procedures for volume-based charging

3G Work item:

Category: *(only one category Shall be marked With an X)*

F	Correction	X
A	Corresponds to a correction in a 2G specification	
B	Addition of feature	
C	Functional modification of feature	
D	Editorial modification	

Reason for change:

Currently charging function for down-link packets is located at the 3G-SGSN. On the other hand, only RNC can identify the actual packet volume successfully transferred to a UE. In order for 3G-SGSN to charge only for packet data successfully transferred to a UE, the RNC shall advice 3G-SGSN about the non-transmitted data volume.

At the S2 meeting in London, it was agreed that the RNC shall report the amount of unsent data to 3G-SGSN.

This CR proposes to introduce into 23.060 text describing volume based charging in a way that RNC reports the unsuccessfully transmitted DL data volume. Also the procedures to report this data volume to SGSN is introduced.

Clauses affected: 15.1.1, 15.1.3

Other specs Affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other 2G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

15.1.1 Charging Information

Charging information is collected for the PS subscriber.

As a minimum, the SGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs that are subject to charging:

- usage of the radio interface: the charging information shall describe the amount of data transmitted in MO and MT directions categorised with QoS and user protocols;
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the packet data protocol addresses;
- usage of the general packet domain resources: the charging information shall describe the usage of other packet domain-related resources and the MS's network activity (e.g., mobility management); and
- location of MS: HPLMN, VPLMN, plus optional higher-accuracy location information.

As a minimum, the GGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs that are subject to charging:

- destination and source: the charging information shall describe the destination and source addresses with a level of accuracy as defined by the packet domain operator;
- usage of the external data networks: the charging information shall describe the amount of data sent and received to and from the external data network; and
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the PDP addresses.

The RNC shall collect the following charging information for an MS's RABs when instructed by the 3G-SGSN:

- the amount of not transferred downlink data, i.e., data that the RNC has either discarded or forwarded to a 2G-SGSN. Partially transferred packets shall be handled as not transferred. The collected charging information shall be sent by the RNC to the 3G-SGSN when a RAB is released, or when explicitly requested by the 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN shall indicate at RAB setup whether data volume collection and reporting for the particular RAB is required or not.

~~15.1.3Fair charging for UMTS~~

15.1.3 ~~FFS~~

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, 6– 9 March 2000

Document S2-000387
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	128	Current Version:	3.2.1+CR #109r1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*

(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	

Source: Nokia **Date:** 2.3.2000

Subject: PDCP sequence numbers in SRNC relocation and inter-system handover

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

3GPP TSG RAN WG2 has been changed the lenght of PDCP sequence number from 8 to 16 bits.

Also 'Send (PDCP) Sequence Number' can be removed from inter-system HO. There is no need to transfer this number to target node, because PDCP numbering are always reset after HO. This removal also clarifies naming issues (Not anymore two different meaning for SND parameter).

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2; 6.13; 13

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Error! Reference source not found. shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

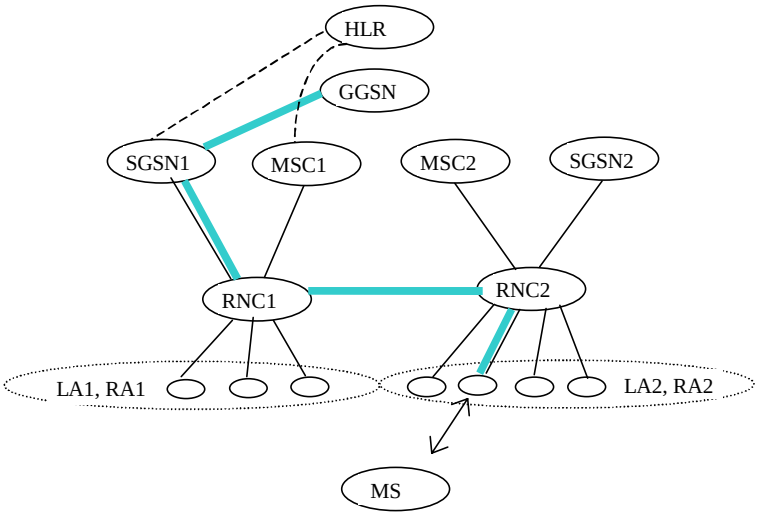


Figure 1: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

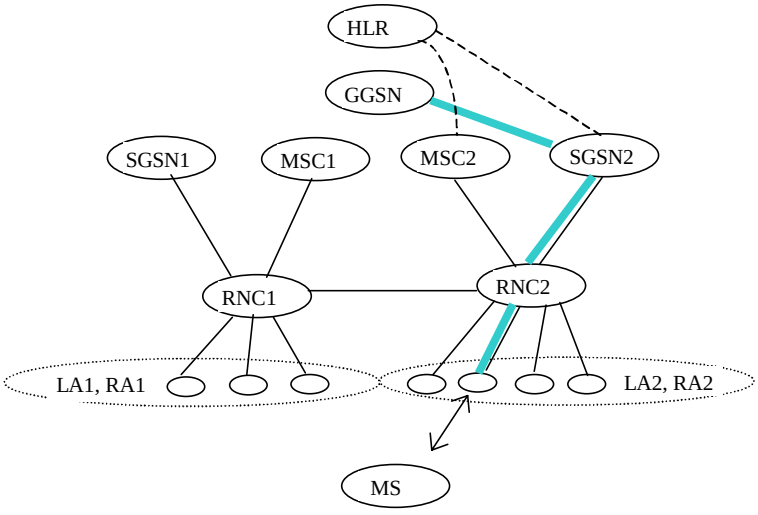


Figure 2: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

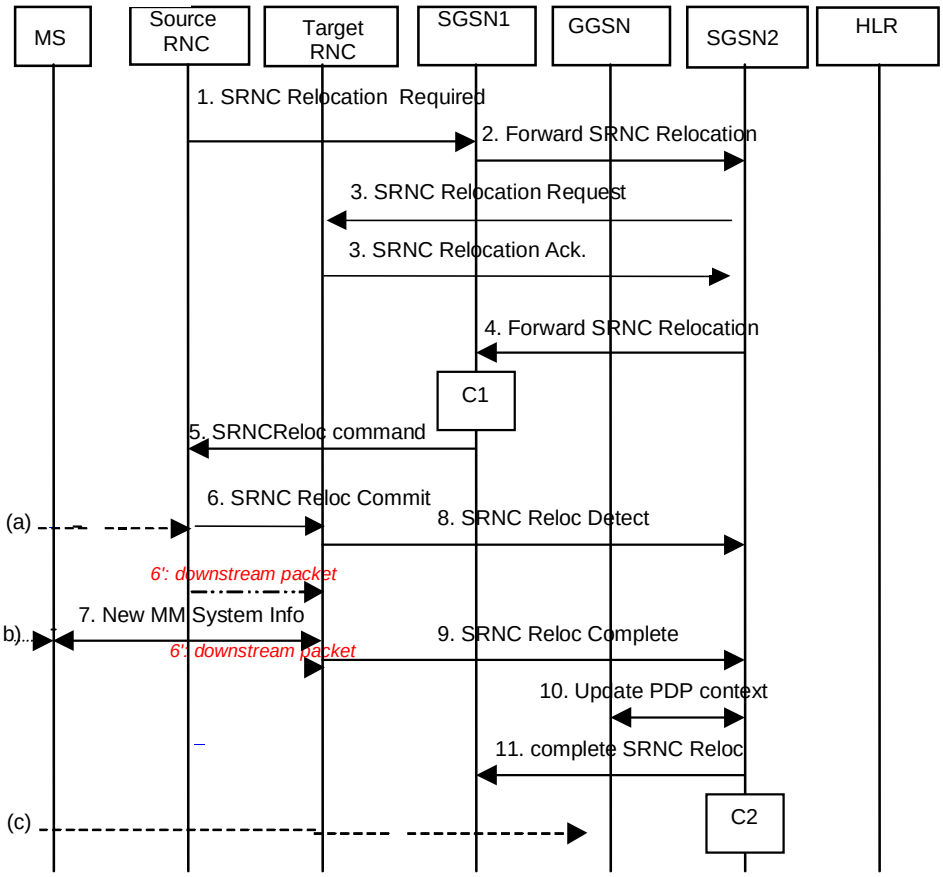


Figure 3: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context)

on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, PDCP-SNU, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. PDCP-SNU is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence uplink packet to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS for each radio bearer, which requires lossless relocation. The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

   - Resets and restarts the RLC connections.

   - Exchanges the PDCP sequence numbers (PDCP-SNU, PDCP-SND) between the target SRNC and the MS. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode to the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless relocation. PDCP-SND confirms all mobile terminated packets succesfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If PDCP-SND confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. PDCP-SNU confirms all mobile originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. ~~From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).~~ If PDCP-SNU confirms reception of packets that were received in the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the MS. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

   - Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change

The UMTS-GPRS intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS moves to a cell where the radio technology that the MS was using is not any longer supported. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces can support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the old and the new cells are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state enters a new GSM GPRS cell. In this case the MS shall perform a routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in PMM-IDLE state enters a new GSM GPRS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.

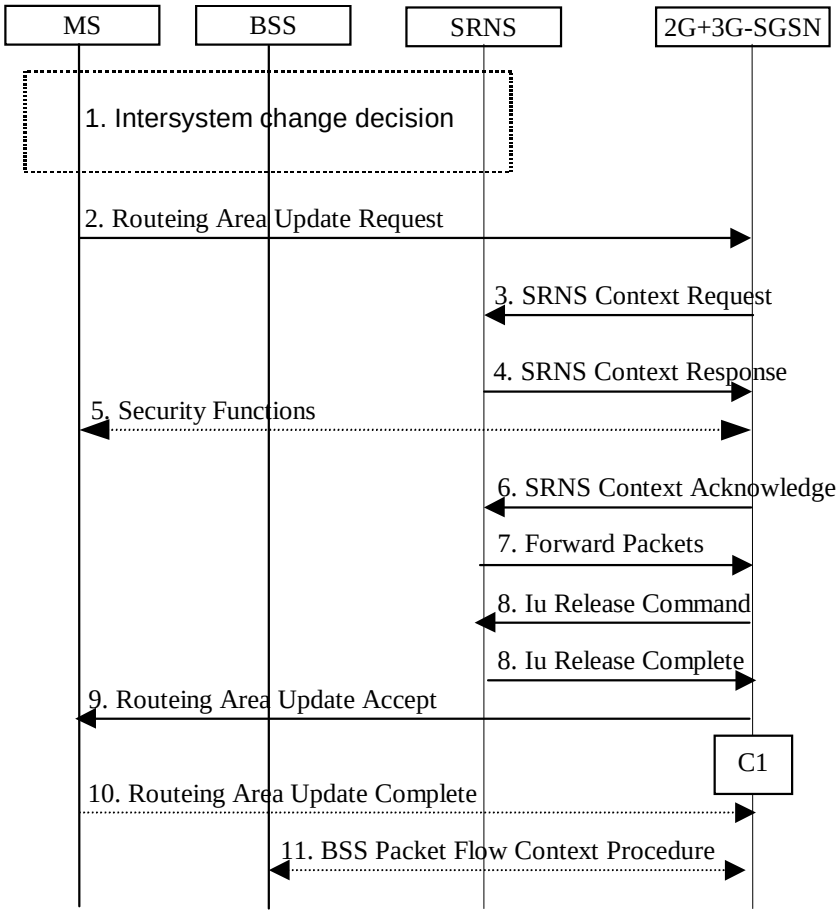


Figure 4: UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.

3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS, starts a timer and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~PDCP-SNDs,~~ PDCP-SNUs) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SNU). ~~and the downlink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SND). PDCP-SNU shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number expected from the MS. PDCP-SND shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number to be sent to the MS.~~ PDCP-SNU is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence uplink packet to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS for each radio bearer, which requires lossless relocation. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the eight most significant bits of the passed PDCP sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts. ~~Because the PDCP sequence number is 8 bits, PDCP sequence number is equal to SNDCP N-PDU number (in acknowledged mode).~~

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets.

7) The transmitted but not acknowledged PDCP-PDUs together with the downlink PDCP sequence number and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the

eight most significant bits of the passed PDCP sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs beore sendind them to MS.

8) When the timer described under 3 has expired, the 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

9) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SNU) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

10) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SND) contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from PDCP-SND by stripping off the eight most significant bits. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode in the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless handover.

11) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.2 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.

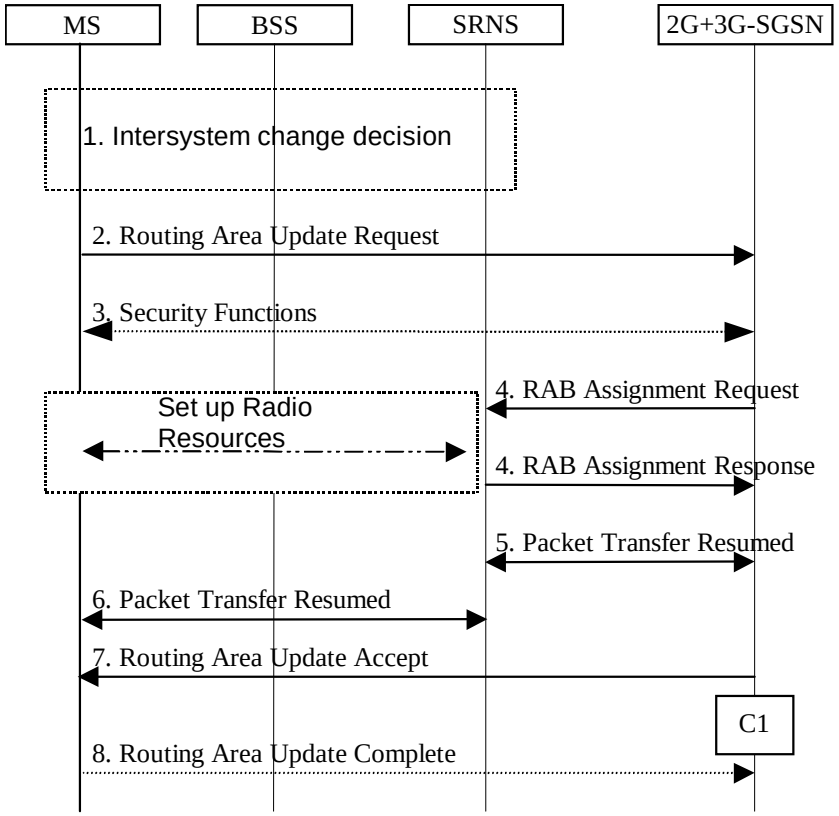


Figure 5: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~PDCP-SNDs,~~ PDCP-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The PDCP sequence numbers shall be derived from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (PDCP-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (PDCP-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.

Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routeing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.

If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.

If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.

If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GPRS cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.

If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state moves to a new GSM GPRS cell and this cell is served by a different SGSN. In this case the MS shall initiate a GPRS RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN change case is shown in .

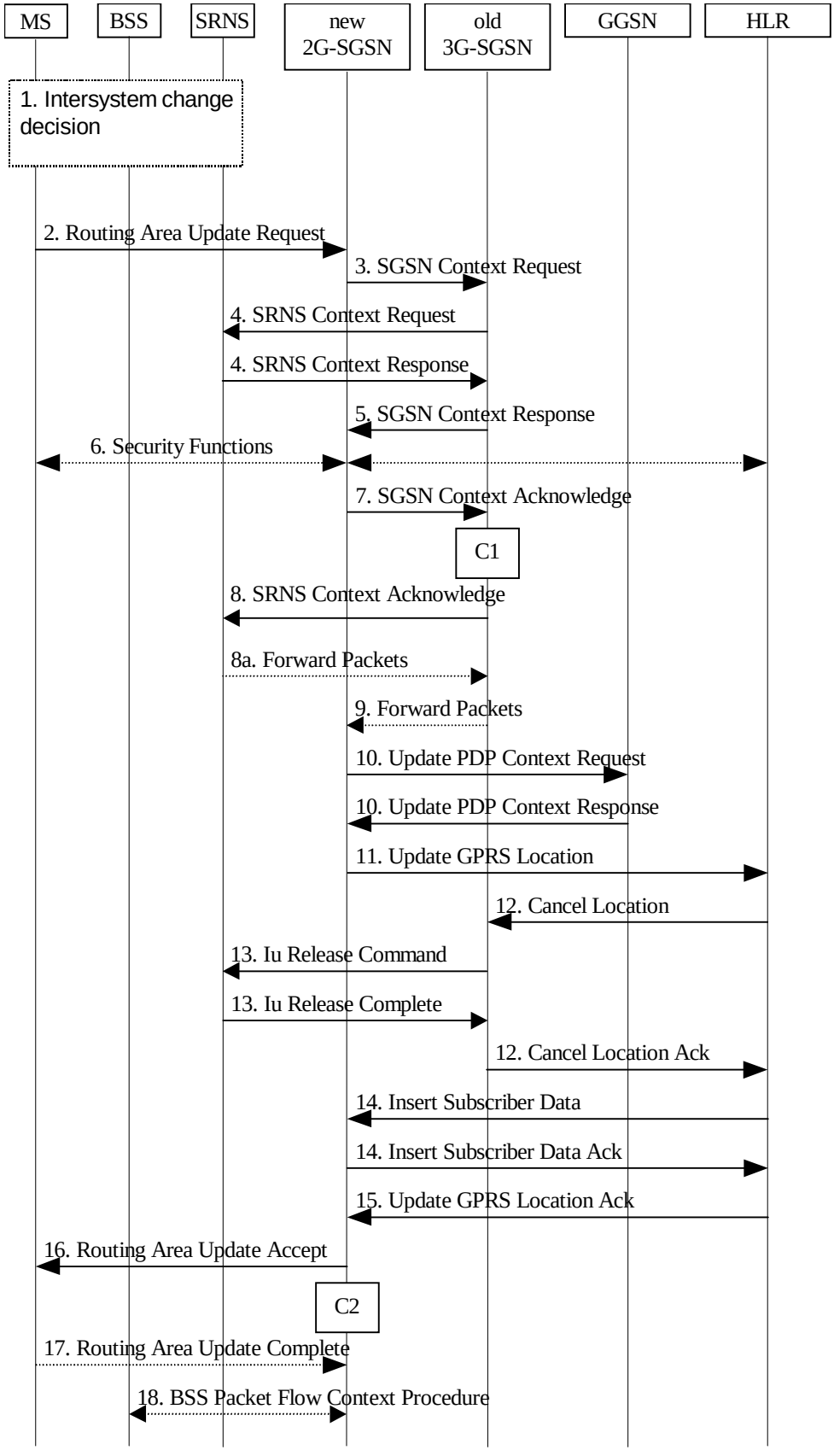


Figure 6: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell

Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~PDCP-SNDs,~~ PDCP-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SNU) ~~and the downlink PDCP sequence number (PDCP-SND)~~. PDCP-SNU shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number expected from the MS (per each active radio bearer). ~~PDCP-SND shall be the next in-sequence PDCP sequence number to be sent to the MS (per each active radio bearer). Because PDCP sequence number is 8 bits, PDCP sequence number is equal to SNDCP N-PDU number (in acknowledged mode).~~ The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the eight most significant bits of the passed PDCP sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number (the value is 0) for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SNU) for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the transmitted but not acknowledged PDCP-PDUs together with the PDCP downlink sequence number (the eight most significant bits shall be stripped off), and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The SNDCP sequence numbers (= converted PDCP sequence numbers) shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SNU)) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number (= converted PDCP-SND)) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from PDCP-SND by stripping off the eight most significant bits. PDCP-SND is the PDCP sequence number for the next expected in-sequence downlink packet to be received in acknowledged mode in the MS per radio bearer, which requires lossless handover.

18) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

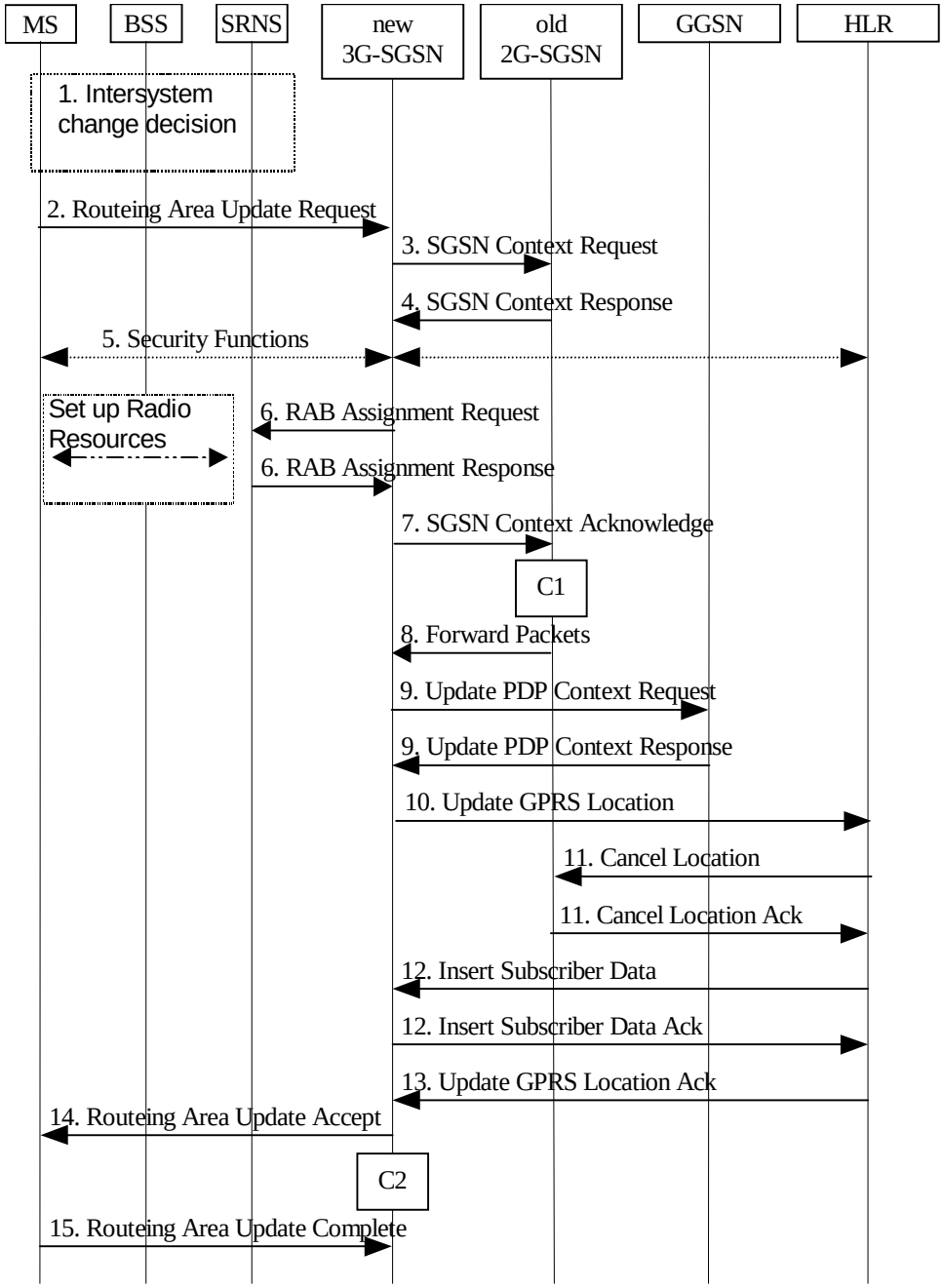


Figure 7: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, ~~PDCP-SNDs~~, PDCP-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The PDCP sequence numbers shall be derived from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (PDCP-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (PDCP-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the PDCP-SNDs received from the MS. Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the PDCP-SNUs received from the SRNS. Other N-PDUs shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

---

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**.

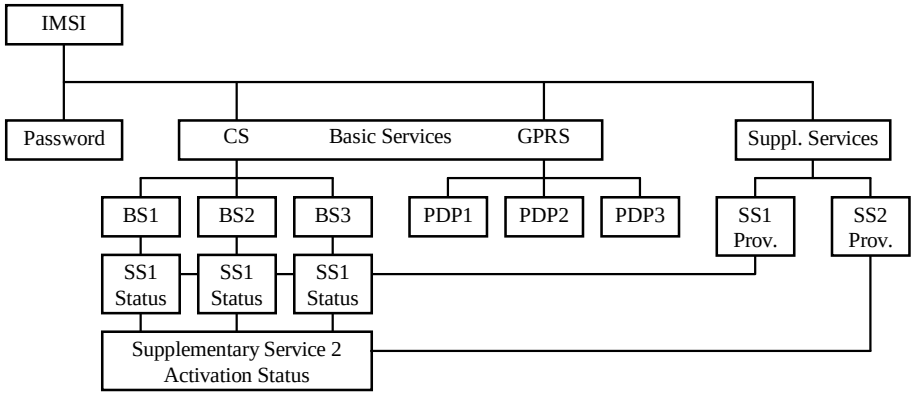


Figure 8: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As **Error! Reference source not found.** indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Error! Reference source not found. shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 1: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
MS PS Purged for GPRS	Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN.	X	X
GGSN-list	The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling".	X	X
Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed.	X	X
Access Point Name	A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 2: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain	X	X

	of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.		
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
PDCP-SND	~~The next in-sequence PDCP sequence number to be sent to the MS~~. PDCP sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence PDCP-PDU expected to the MS		X
PDCP-SNU	~~The next in-sequence PDCP sequence number expected from the MS.~~ PDCP sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence PDCP-PDU expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 3: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
GTP-SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 4: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.	X	X
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.	X	X
TFT	Traffic flow template.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.	X	X
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.	X	X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X

If a PDP context is enabled for network-requested PDP context activation, then IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, SGSN Address and MNRG contain valid information also when the PDP context is inactive and when the MS is GPRS-detached.

In case of anonymous access (GPRS only) the GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the PDP context fields for one MS.

Table 5: GGSN PDP Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN serving this MS.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

A GGSN that supports anonymous access shall have a list of server addresses that are allowed to be accessed by anonymous MSs. The method to maintain the list of the servers is outside the scope of the present document.

13.4 MS

Each packet domain MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the MS context fields.

Table 6: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	G, U	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	G, U	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	G, U	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
Routeing Area	G, U	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity		Current cell.	X	
Kc	G	Current GPRS ciphering key.	X	
CKSN / KSI	G, U	Key Set Identifier for IK Next, CK Next, and Kc.	X	X
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	X
CK		Currently used ciphering key.		X
CK Next	U	UMTS ciphering key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
IK		Currently used integrity key.		X
IK Next	U	Integrity key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
Classmark		MS classmark.	X	X
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:				
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.	X	X
APN Requested		The APN requested.	X	X
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI		Transaction Identifier.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
TFT		Traffic flow template.	X	X
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id		Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.	X	X
PDCP-SND		~~The next in-sequence PDCP sequence number expected from the RNC.~~ PDCP sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence PDCP-PDU expected to the MS		X
PDCP-SNU		~~The next in-sequence PDCP sequence number to be sent to the RNC.~~ PDCP sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence PDCP-PDU expected from the MS.		X

The information marked with a "U" in **Error! Reference source not found.** shall be stored in the USIM.

The information marked with a "G" in **Error! Reference source not found.**:

- shall be stored in the GSIM if the connected SIM is PS-aware; and
- may be stored in the ME after PS detach if the connected GSIM is not PS-aware.

If the GSIM is packet domain service-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the GSIM shall be used for packet domain services.

If the GSIM is not packet domain service-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the GSIM is identical to the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the GSIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME

shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a PS attach. IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the PS attach has been successfully performed.

When using a USIM, the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, CK Next, IK Next, and CKSN / KSI stored in the USIM, and the CK and IK stored in the ME, shall be used for packet domain services.

For anonymous access (GPRS only) each GPRS MS maintains MM and PDP context information in READY state. The information may be contained in the ME and the TE. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the MS context fields.

Table 7: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
APN Requested	The APN requested.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.

13.5 MSC/VLR

The MSC/VLR may store the SGSN number of PS-attached MSs that are also CS-attached. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the MSC/VLR association for one MS.

Table 8: MSC/VLR Association

Field	Description	GPRS	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SGSN number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Error! Reference source not found. shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 9: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 10: BSS Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 11: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
PDCP-SND	~~The next in-sequence PDCP Sequence number to be sent to the MS~~ PDCP sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence PDCP-PDU expected to the MS
PDCP-SNU	~~The next in-sequence PDCP Sequence Number expected from the MS~~ PDCP sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence PDCP-PDU expected from the MS.

13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.8.1 HLR Failure

When an HLR restarts, it sends to each SGSN where one or more of its MSs are registered a Reset message. This causes the SGSN to mark the relevant MM contexts as invalid, and to set NGAF if an SGSN – MSC/VLR association exists. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from a marked MS, the SGSN performs an update location to the HLR as in the attach or inter SGSN RA update procedures, and, if NGAF is set, the procedure in subclause "Non-GPRS Alert" is followed. The update location procedure and the procedure towards the MSC/VLR may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator configuration-depending time period to avoid high signalling load. The periodic back-up of HLR data to non-volatile storage is mandatory as described in UMTS 33.007 [5].

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid. If there is no MM context for the MS, the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routeing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined PS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

13.8.4 VLR Failure

When a VLR fails, all its associations with SGSNs affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. Based on configuration data, the MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Reset message to each of its associated SGSNs. The SGSNs mark all associations containing the restarted VLR as invalid. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GPRS) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached, the SGSN shall return a Detach Request (Detach Type) message in order to request the MS to perform a combined RA / LA update. Detach Type shall be set to CS Detach. The detach procedure may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator-configuration depending time period to avoid high signalling load.

13.8.5 BSS Failure for GPRS

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

13.8.6 RNC Failure for UMTS

When an RNC fails, all its RNC contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. RNC storage of data is volatile.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000541**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	129r2	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source:	Ericsson	**Date:** 2000-03-08
Subject:	Combined Cell Update/URA Update and SRNS Relocation	
Work item:	Release 99	

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*			**Release:**	
F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			Release 00	

Reason for change:	The case where a cell re-selection made in UTRAN triggers a combined cell update/ URA update and SRNS relocation is missing in 3G TS 23.060, i.e. the combined cell/URA update and SRNS relocation procedure.
Clauses affected:	6.9.2.2.3 (new)

Other specs affected:			
Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:	

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.9.2.2.3 Combined Cell/ URA Update and SRNS Relocation procedure

This procedure is only performed for an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state, where the Iur carries the control signalling in but no user data.

The Combined Cell/ URA Update and SRNS Relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-Core Network connection point at UTRAN side from the source SRNC to the target RNC, while performing a cell re-selection in the UTRAN. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the source SRNC, an Intra SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. If routing area is changed the procedure is followed by an Intra SGSN RA Update procedure. The SGSN detects that it is an Intra SGSN routing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the HLR about the new MS location.

Before the combined Cell/ URA Update and SRNS Relocation and Routing Area Update the MS is registered in the old SGSN. The source RNC is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC).

After the combined Cell/ URA Update and SRNS Relocation and Routing Area Update, the MS is registered in the new SGSN The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the new SGSN, and the target RNC is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC).

The Combined Cell/ URA Update and SRNS Relocation procedure for the PS domain is illustrated in Figure 1~~Figure 1Figure 1~~. The sequence is valid for both intra SGSN SRNS relocation and inter SGSN SRNS relocation. Each step is explained in the following list.

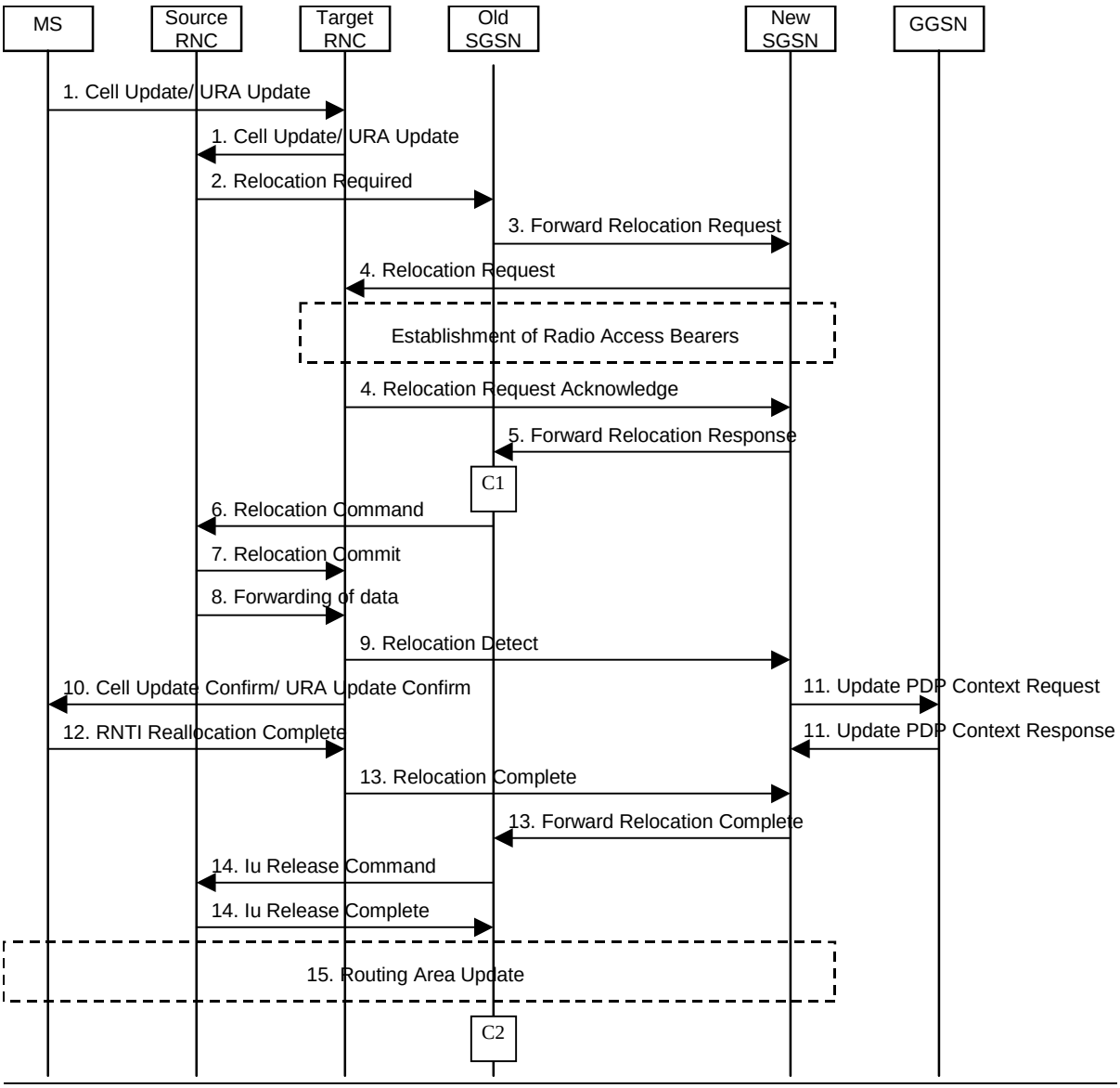


Figure 1: Combined Cell/ URA Update and SRNS Relocation

1) The MS sends a Cell Update/ URA Update message to the UTRAN, after having made cell re-selection. Upon reception of the message, target RNC forwards the received message towards the source SRNC via the Iur. Source SRNC decides to perform a combined cell/ URA update and SRNS relocation towards the target RNC.

2) The source SRNC initiates the relocation preparation procedure by sending a Relocation Required message (Relocation Type, Cause, Source ID, Target ID, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container) to the old SGSN. The source SRNC shall set the Relocation Type to 'UE not involved'. The Source to Target RNC Transparent Container includes the necessary information for Relocation co-ordination, security functionality and RRC protocol context information (including UE Capabilities).

3) The old SGSN determines from Target ID if the SRNS Relocation is intra SGSN SRNS relocation or inter SGSN SRNS relocation. In case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation the old SGSN initiates the relocation resource allocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Request message (IMSI, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Signalling, MM Context, PDP Context, Target Identification, UTRAN transparent container, RANAP Cause) to the new SGSN. At the same time a timer is started on the MM and PDP contexts in the old SGSN (see Routing Area Update procedure in subclause “Location Management Procedures for UMTS”). The Forward Relocation Request message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

4) The new SGSN sends a Relocation Request message (Permanent NAS UE Identity, Cause, CN Domain Indicator, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container, and RABs to be setup) to the target RNC. For each RAB requested to be established, the RABs to be setup information elements shall contain information such as RAB ID, RAB parameters, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The RAB ID information element contains the NSAPI value, and the RAB parameters information element gives the QoS profile. The Transport Layer Address is the SGSN Address for user data, and the Iu Transport Association corresponds to Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Data.
   After all necessary resources for accepted RABs including the Iu user plane are successfully allocated, target RNC shall send the Relocation Request Acknowledge message (RABs setup, RABs failed to setup) to the new SGSN. Target RNC will for each RAB to be setup (defined by an IP Address and a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) receive both forwarded downstream PDUs from the source SRNC as well as downstream PDUs from the new SGSN.

5) When resources for the transmission of user data between target RNC and new SGSN has been allocated and the new SGSN is ready for relocation of SRNS, the Forward Relocation Response message (Cause, RANAP Cause, and Target RNC Information) is sent from new SGSN to old SGSN. This message indicates that the new SGSN and target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS, i.e. the relocation resource allocation procedure is terminated successfully. RANAP Cause is information from the target RNC to be forwarded to the source RNC. The Target RNC Information, one information element for each RAB to be setup, contain the RNC Tunnel Endpoint Identifier and RNC IP address for data forwarding from source SRNC to target RNC.
   The Forward Relocation Response message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

6) The old SGSN continues the relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Command message (RABs to be released, and RABs subject to data forwarding) to the source SRNC. The old SGSN decides the RABs to be subject for data forwarding based on QoS, and those RABs shall be contained in RABs subject to data forwarding. For each RAB subject to data forwarding, the information element shall contain RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The Transport Layer Address and Iu Transport Association is used for forwarding of DL N-PDU from source RNC to target RNC. ~~Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer.~~

7) Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer. When the relocation preparation procedure is terminated successfully and when the source SRNC is ready, the source SRNC shall trigger the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Commit message (SRNS Contexts) to the target RNC. The purpose of this procedure is to transfer SRNS contexts from the source RNC to the target RNC. SRNS contexts are sent for each concerned RAB and contain the sequence numbers of the GTP-PDUs next to be transmitted in the uplink and downlink directions and the next PDCP sequence numbers that would have been used to send and receive data from the MS. For connections using RLC unacknowledged mode PDCP sequence numbers is not used.

8) After having sent the Relocation Commit message, source SRNC begins the forwarding of data for the RABs to be subject for data forwarding. The data forwarding at SRNS relocation shall be carried out through the Iu interface, meaning that the data exchanged between source SRNC and target RNC ~~are carried over Iu at ATM layer. The PDUs~~ are duplicated in the source SRNC and routed at IP layer towards the target RNC.

9) The target RNC shall send a Relocation Detect message to the new SGSN when the relocation execution trigger is received. For SRNS relocation type 'UE not involved', the relocation execution trigger is the reception of the Relocation Commit message from the Iur interface. When Relocation Detect message is sent, target RNC shall start SRNC operation.
~~Upon reception of Relocation Detect message, CN switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC.~~

10) After having sent the Relocation Detect message, target SRNC responds to the MS by sending a Cell Update Confirm/ URA Update Confirm message. Both messages contain UE information elements and CN information elements. The UE information elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. The CN information elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routing Area Identification. The procedure shall be co-ordinated in all Iu signalling connections existing for the MS.

11) Upon reception of Relocation Detect message, CN may switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request messages (new SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

12) When the MS has reconfigured it self, it sends the RNTI Reallocation Complete message to the target SRNC.

13) When target SRNC receives the RNTI Reallocation Complete message, i.e. the new SRNC-ID + S-RNTI are successfully exchanged with the UE by the radio protocols, target SRNC shall initiate the Relocation Complete procedure by sending the Relocation Complete message to new SGSN. The purpose of Relocation Complete procedure is to indicate by the target SRNC the completion of relocation of SRNS to the CN. If the user plane has not been switched at Relocation Detect, the CN shall upon reception of Relocation Complete switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC,
If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN signals to the old SGSN the completion of the SRNS relocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Complete message.

14) Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the old SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete.

15) After the MS has finished the Cell/ URA update and RNTI reallocation procedure and if the new Routing Area Identification is different from the old one, the MS initiates the Routing Area Update procedure. See subclause "Location Management Procedures for UMTS". Note that it is only a subset of the RA Update procedure that is performed, since the MS is in PMM-CONNECTED mode.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

Document S2-000542
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**130r2**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA #7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-03-08

Subject: Serving RNC Relocation Procedure

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*			**Release:**	
F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
			Release 00	

Reason for change:
- The whole Serving SRNS relocation procedure is worked through and aligned with the other SRNS relocation cases

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.2 and 6.9.2.2.1 (new)

Other specs affected:			
Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.9.2.2 SRNS Relocation procedures

6.9.2.2.1 Serving RNS~~C~~ Relocation procedure

This procedure is only performed for an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving SRNS Relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-Core Network connection point at UTRAN side from the source SRNC to the target RNC, from a "standing still position". In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the source SRNC, an Intra SGSN SRNS Relocation procedure is performed. If routing area is changed the procedure is followed by an Intra SGSN RA Update procedure. The SGSN

detects that it is an Intra SGSN routing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the HLR about the new MS location.

Before the Serving SRNS Relocation procedure and Routing Area Update the MS is registered in the old SGSN. The source RNC is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC).

After the the Serving SRNS Relocation procedure and Routing Area Update, the MS is registered in the new SGSN The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the new SGSN, and the target RNC is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC).

The for the PS domain is illustrated in Figure 41. The sequence is valid for both intra SGSN SRNS relocation and inter SGSN SRNS relocation. Each step is explained in the following list.

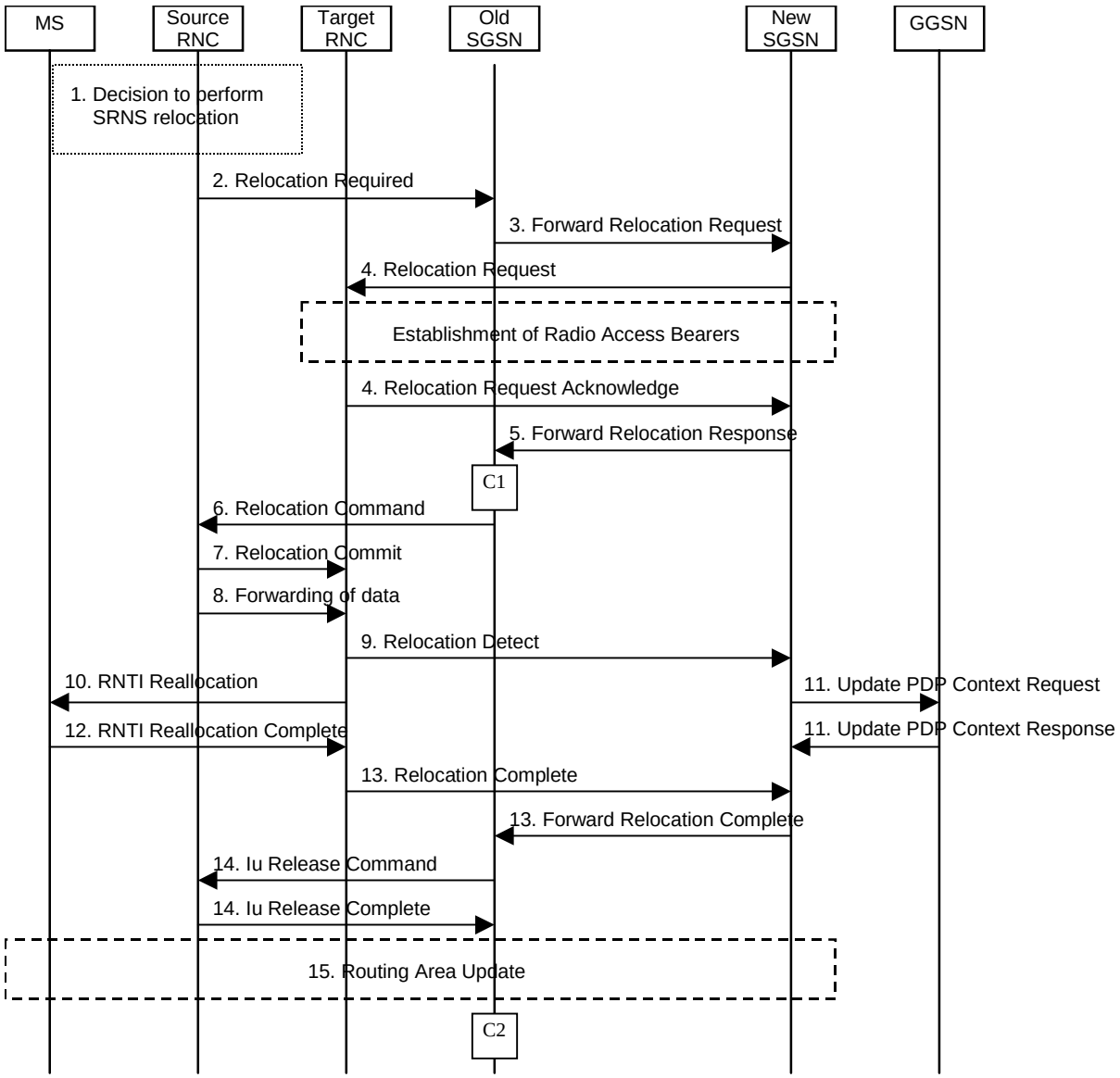


Figure 41: Serving SRNS Relocation procedure

1) The source SRNC decides to perform/initiate a SRNS relocation

2) The source SRNC initiates the relocation preparation procedure by sending a Relocation Required message (Relocation Type, Cause, Source ID, Target ID, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container) to the old SGSN. The source SRNC shall set the Relocation Type to 'UE not involved'. The Source to Target RNC Transparent Container includes the necessary information for Relocation co-ordination, security functionality and RRC protocol context information (including UE Capabilities).

3) The old SGSN determines from Target ID if the SRNS Relocation is intra SGSN SRNS relocation or inter SGSN SRNS relocation. In case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation the old SGSN initiates the relocation resource allocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Request message (IMSI, Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Signalling, MM Context, PDP Context, Target Identification, UTRAN transparent container, RANAP Cause)

to the new SGSN. At the same time a timer is started on the MM and PDP contexts in the old SGSN (see Routing Area Update procedure in subclause “Location Management Procedures for UMTS”). The Forward Relocation Request message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

4) The new SGSN sends a Relocation Request message (Permanent NAS UE Identity, Cause, CN Domain Indicator, Source RNC to target RNC transparent container, and RABs to be setup) to the target RNC. For each RAB requested to be established, the RABs to be setup information elements shall contain information such as RAB ID, RAB parameters, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The RAB ID information element contains the NSAPI value, and the RAB parameters information element gives the QoS profile. The Transport Layer Address is the SGSN Address for user data, and the Iu Transport Association corresponds to Tunnel Endpoint Identifier Data.
After all necessary resources for accepted RABs including the Iu user plane are successfully allocated, target RNC shall send the Relocation Request Acknowledge message (RABs setup, RABs failed to setup) to the new SGSN. Target RNC will for each RAB to be setup (defined by an IP Address and a Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) receive both forwarded downstream PDUs from the source SRNC as well as downstream PDUs from the new SGSN.

5) When resources for the transmission of user data between target RNC and new SGSN has been allocated and the new SGSN is ready for relocation of SRNS, the Forward Relocation Response message (Cause, RANAP Cause, and Target RNC Information) is sent from new SGSN to old SGSN. This message indicates that the new SGSN and target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS, i.e. the relocation resource allocation procedure is terminated successfully. RANAP Cause is information from the target RNC to be forwarded to the source RNC. The Target RNC Information, one information element for each RAB to be setup, contain the RNC Tunnel Endpoint Identifier and RNC IP address for data forwarding from source SRNC to target RNC.
The Forward Relocation Response message is applicable only in case of inter SGSN SRNS relocation.

6) The old SGSN continues the relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Command message (RABs to be released, and RABs subject to data forwarding) to the source SRNC. The old SGSN decides the RABs to be subject for data forwarding based on QoS, and those RABs shall be contained in RABs subject to data forwarding. For each RAB subject to data forwarding, the information element shall contain RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, and Iu Transport Association. The Transport Layer Address and Iu Transport Association is used for forwarding of DL N-PDU from source RNC to target RNC.

7) Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data-forwarding timer. When the relocation preparation procedure is terminated successfully and when the source SRNC is ready, the source SRNC shall trigger the execution of relocation of SRNS by sending a Relocation Commit message (SRNS Contexts) to the target RNC. The purpose of this procedure is to transfer SRNS contexts from the source RNC to the target RNC. SRNS contexts are sent for each concerned RAB and contain the sequence numbers of the GTP-PDUs next to be transmitted in the uplink and downlink directions and the next PDCP sequence numbers that would have been used to send and receive data from the MS. For connections using RLC unacknowledged mode PDCP sequence numbers is not used.

8) After having sent the Relocation Commit message, source SRNC begins the forwarding of data for the RABs to be subject for data forwarding. The data forwarding at SRNS relocation shall be carried out through the Iu interface, meaning that the data exchanged between source SRNC and target RNC are duplicated in the source SRNC and routed at IP layer towards the target RNC.

9) The target RNC shall send a Relocation Detect message to the new SGSN when the relocation execution trigger is received. For SRNS relocation type 'UE not involved', the relocation execution trigger is the reception of the Relocation Commit message from the Iur interface. When Relocation Detect message is sent, target RNC shall start SRNC operation.

10) After having sent the Relocation Detect message, target SRNC responds to the MS by sending a RNTI Reallocation message. Both messages contain UE information elements and CN information elements. The UE information elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. The CN information elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routing Area Identification. The procedure shall be co-ordinated in all Iu signalling connections existing for the MS.

11) Upon reception of Relocation Detect message, CN may switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC. If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request messages (new SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

12) When the MS has reconfigured it self, it sends the RNTI Reallocation Complete message to the target SRNC.

13) When target SRNC receives the RNTI Reallocation Complete message, i.e. the new SRNC-ID + S-RNTI are successfully exchanged with the UE by the radio protocols, target SRNC shall initiate the Relocation Complete procedure by sending the Relocation Complete message to new SGSN. The purpose of Relocation Complete procedure is to indicate by the target SRNC the completion of relocation of SRNS to the CN. If the user plane has not been switched at Relocation Detect, the CN shall upon reception of Relocation Complete switch the user plane from source RNC to target SRNC,
If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation, the new SGSN signals to the old SGSN the completion of the SRNS relocation procedure by sending a Forward Relocation Complete message.

14) Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the old SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete.

15) After the MS has finished RNTI reallocation procedure and if the new Routing Area Identification is different from the old one, the MS initiates the Routing Area Update procedure. See subclause “Location Management Procedures for UMTS”. Note that it is only a subset of the RA Update procedure that is performed, since the MS is in PMM-CONNECTED mode.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

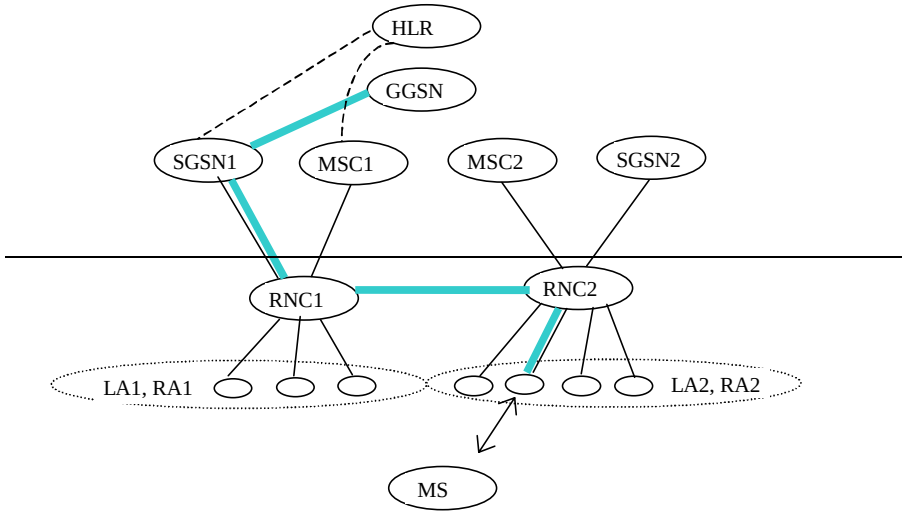
C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routing-Area-Update.

~~[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]~~

~~This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.~~

~~The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.~~

~~Figure 39 shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. Figure 40 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.~~



~~Figure 39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration~~

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

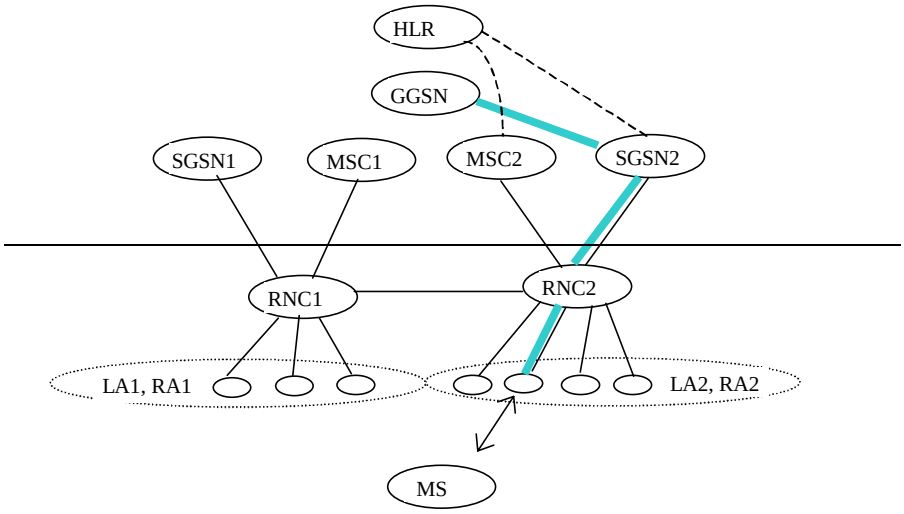


Figure 40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

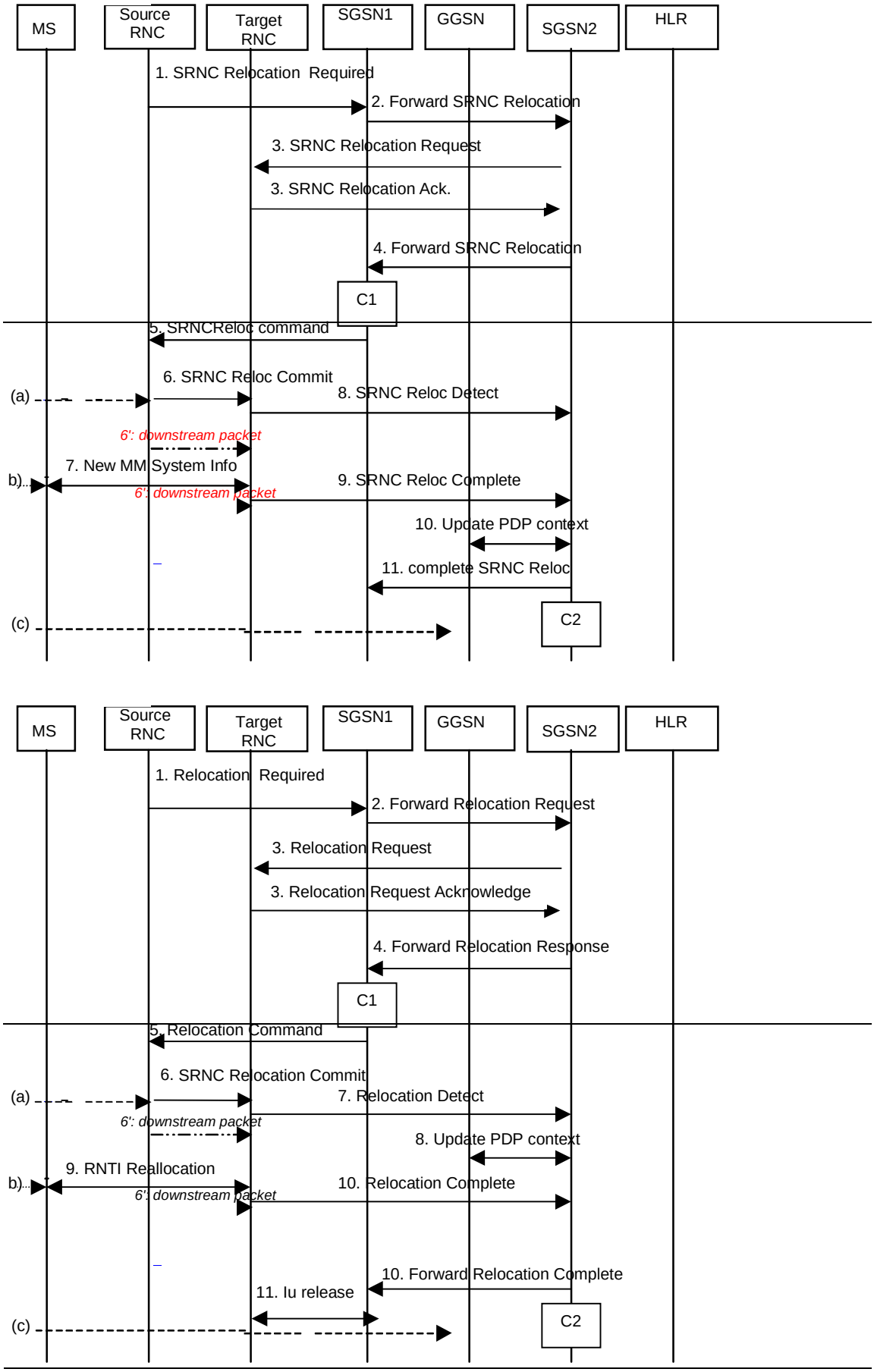
The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 41. Each step is explained in the following list.



~~Figure 41: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation~~

~~**1. "Resource reservation" phase:**~~

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNCRNS relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target(target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (targeta Relocation Required message (Relocation Type, target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. The source SRNC shall set the Relocation Type to 'UE not involved'. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.
Upon reception of the Relocation Command message from the PS domain, the source RNC shall start the data forwarding timer.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6)6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNCstarts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, the target RNC (=SRNC) sends a Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

If the SRNS Relocation is an inter SGSN Serving RNS relocation, the SGSN2 sends an Update PDP Context Request message (new SGSN Address, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response message (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).
The target RNC then receiving downstream packets from both the old path (source SRNC) and from the new path (SGSN2), may in case of bearers belonging to conversational or streaming QoS class have too many packets in its queues. The way to discard these packets in excess is implementation dependent.

7) The9) Immediately after having sent the Relocation Detect message target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Initiates RNTI reallocation towards the MS. The RNTI Reallocation message contains UE information elements and CN information elements. The UE information elements include among others new SRNC identity and S-RNTI. The CN information elements contain among others Location Area Identification and Routing Area Identification.
  The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c).

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP RLC Ack and DOWN RLC ACK. DOWN RLC ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN RLC ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.10) After having received the RNTI Reallocation Complete message, target RNC sends a Relocation Complete message to the SGSN2.
  If the SRNS relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNS relocation, the SGSN2 sends a Forward Relocation Complete message to the SGSN1.

11)Upon receiving the Relocation Complete message or if it is an inter-SGSN SRNS relocation; the Forward Relocation Complete message, the SGSN1 sends an Iu Release Command message to the source RNC. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the source RNC responds with an Iu Release Complete.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 Mars 2000

***Document* S2-000520**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**131r1**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	TSG SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-03-07

Subject: Support for combined procedures also at UMTS<->GSM Inter System Change

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

This CR address four items in the current version of 23.060 ver 3.2.1:

- Combined procedures for inter system change is missing in the inter system change sub-chapters.
- Periodic registration is not consistent in the inter system change sub-chapters
- In the Intra SGSN GSM ->UMTS handling of roaming restriction is missing
- Alignment of the Iu release procedure in the inter system change case with 3G TS 25.413
- Alignment of the Data Forward procedure in the inter system change case with 3G TS 25.413

Clauses affected: 6.13.1.1, 6.13.1.2, 6.13.2

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change

The UMTS-GPRS intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS moves to a cell where the radio technology that the MS was using is not any longer supported. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

The UMTS RLC Sequence Number parameters, RLC-SND and RLC-SNU, are not relevant for the intersystem change of real-time PDP contexts (because these contexts use RLC transparent mode).

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces can support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the old and the new cells are both served by this SGSN.

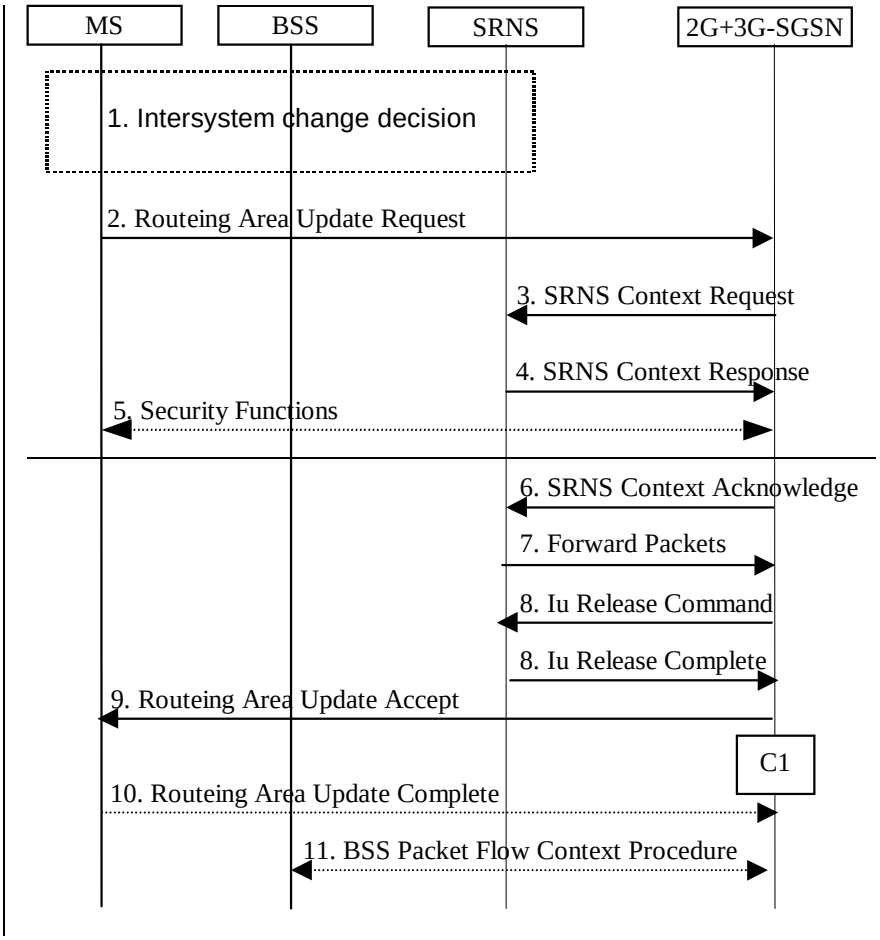
6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state enters a new GSM GPRS cell. In this case the MS shall perform a routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed. The RA update procedure is either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, these RA update cases are illustrated in Figure 49

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

When an MS in PMM-IDLE state enters a new GSM GPRS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.


MS
BSS
SRNS
2G+3G-SGSN
1. Intersystem change decision
2. Routeing Area Update Request
3. SRNS Context Request
4. SRNS Context Response
5. Security Functions
6. SRNS Context Acknowledge
7. Forward Packets
8. Iu Release Command
8. Iu Release Complete
9. Routeing Area Update Accept
C1
10. Routeing Area Update Complete
11. BSS Packet Flow Context Procedure

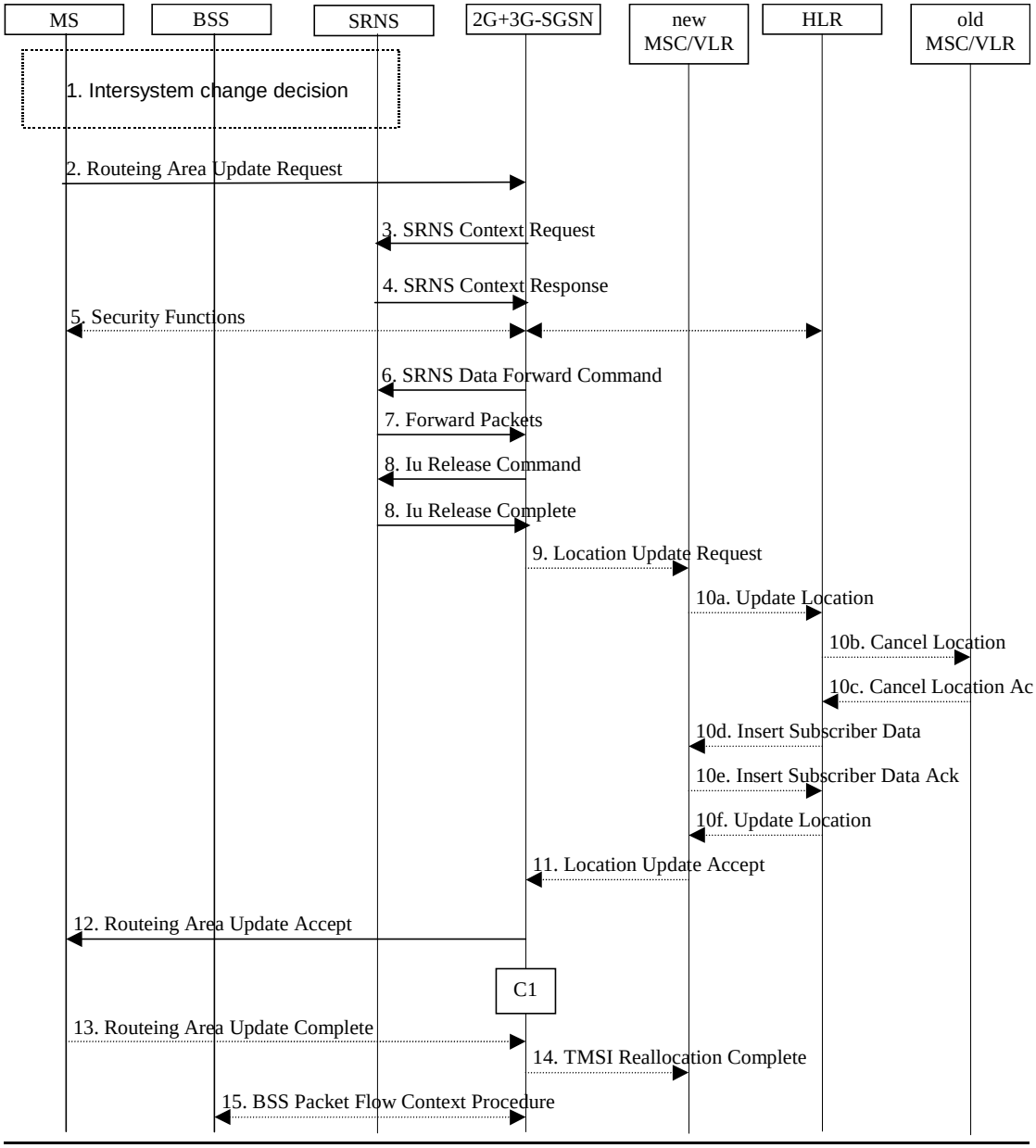


Figure 49: UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update ~~or periodic RA update.~~ or combined RA / LA update or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.

3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS, ~~starts a timer~~ and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink RLC sequence number (RLC-SNU) and the downlink RLC sequence number (RLC-SND). RLC-SNU shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS. RLC-SND shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Data Forward Command (RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, Iu Transport Association)~~Context Acknowledge~~ message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets. Upon reception of SRNS Data Forward Command message from the 2G+3G-SGSN the SRNS shall start the data-forwarding timer.

7) The partly transmitted and transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the downlink RLC sequence number of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs before sending them to the MS.

8) ~~When the timer described under 3 has expired, t~~The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired t~~T~~he SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

9) If the association has to be established i.e., if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the 2G+3G-SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 2G+3G-SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the 2G+3G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

10) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

11) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 2G+3G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

12) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

13) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from RLC-SND by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC-SND of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

14) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

15) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

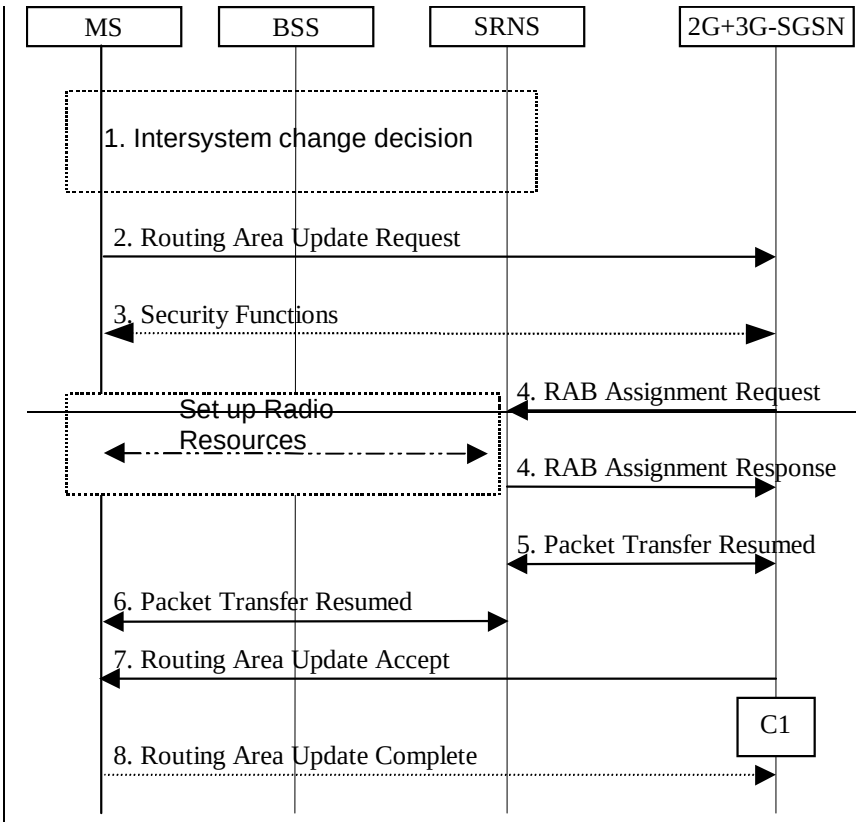
6.13.1.2~~1~~ GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and a~~n intra SGSN~~ routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed. The RA update procedure is either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, these RA update cases are illustrated in Figure 50

If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedure. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause “Selective RA Update”.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.



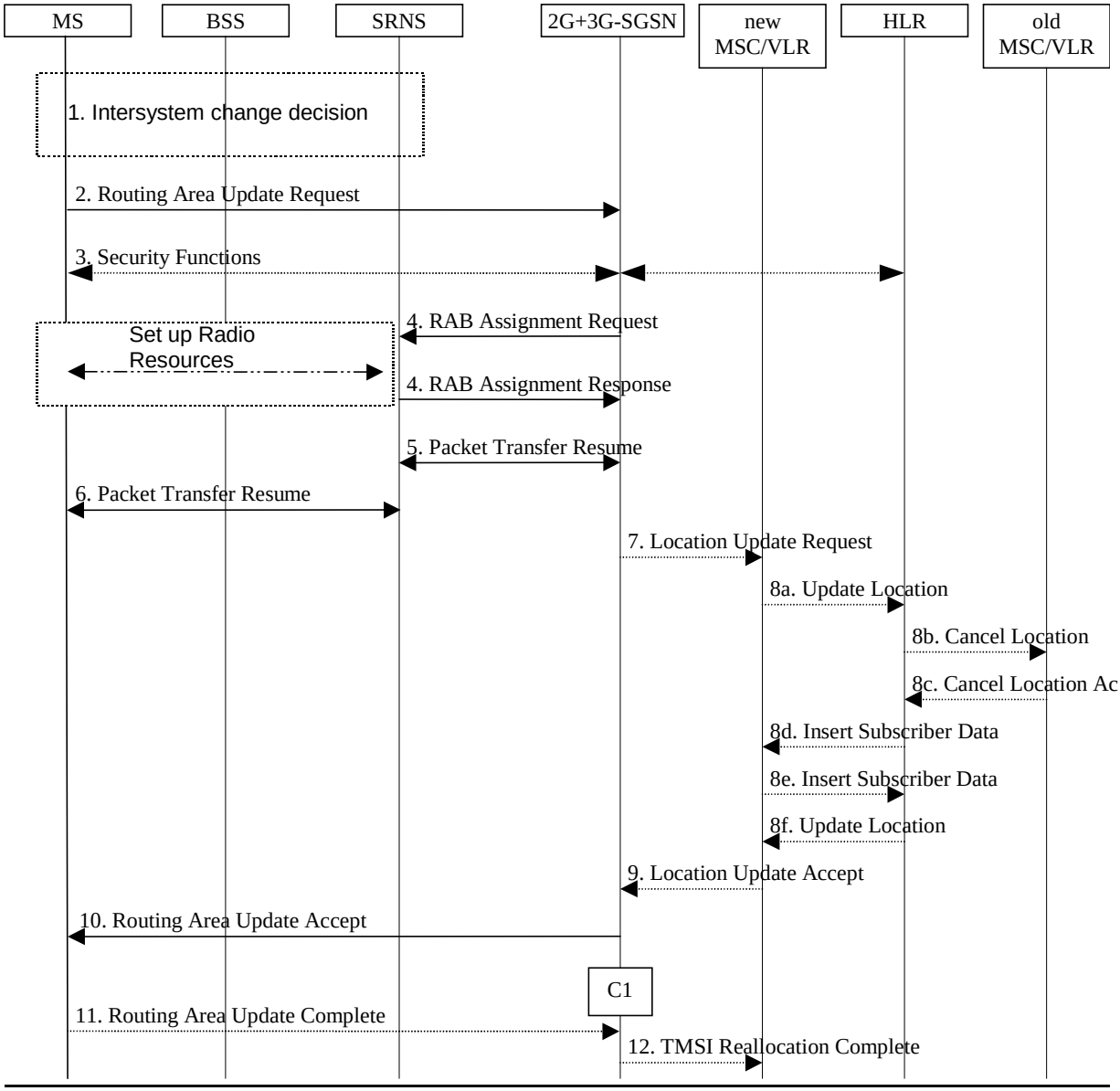


Figure 50: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update ~~or periodic RA update.~~ or combined RA / LA update or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The RLC sequence numbers shall be derived (shifted left 4 times) from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. If this is not the case, then the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) If the association has to be established i.e., if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the 2G+3G-SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 2G+3G-SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the 2G+3G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

8) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

9) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 2G+3G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

10) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. ~~The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated.~~ A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

11) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

12) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

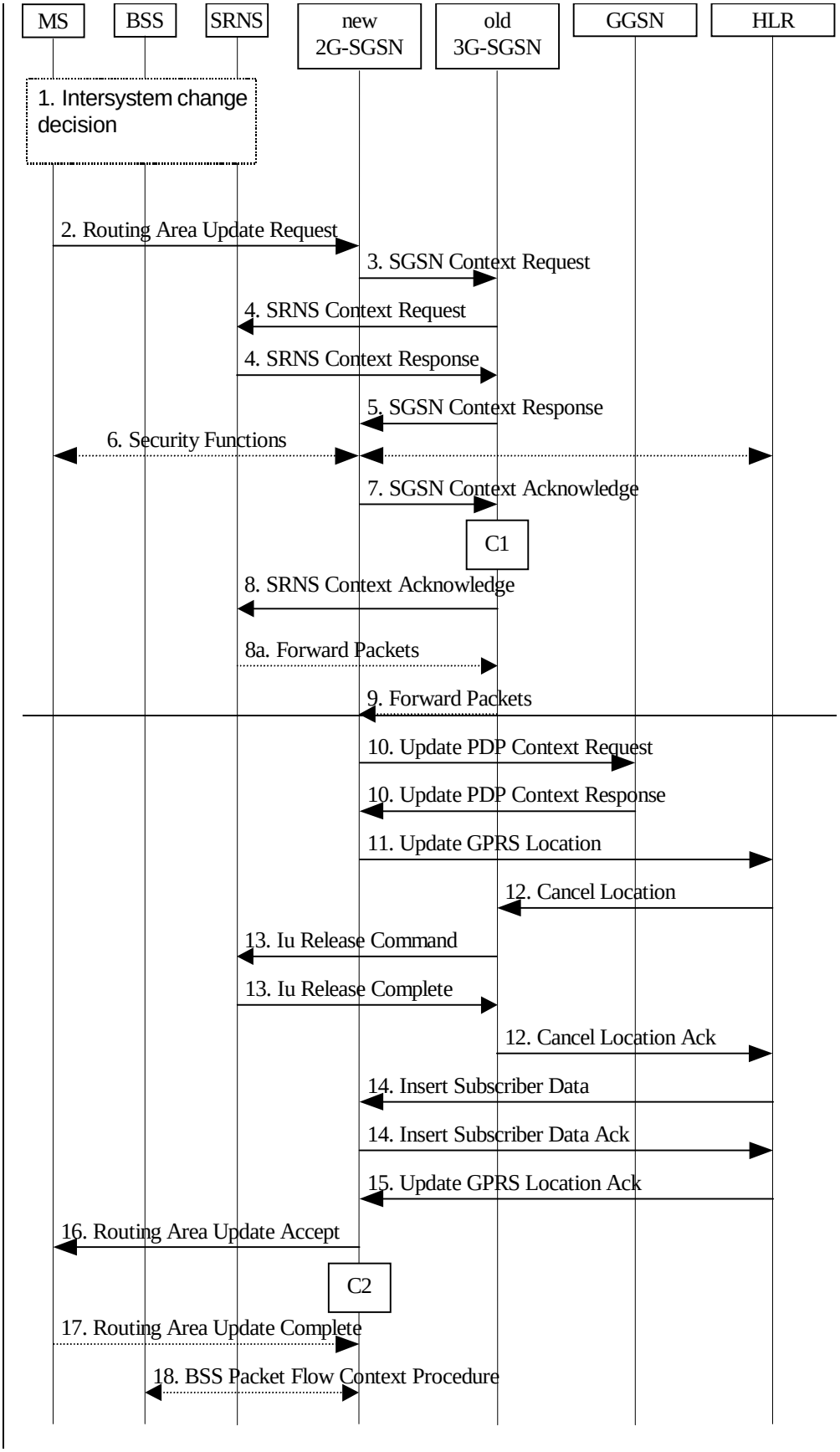
C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state moves to a new GSM GPRS cell and this cell is served by a different SGSN. In this case the MS shall initiate a GPRS RA update procedure. The RA update procedure is either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, these RA update cases are illustrated in Figure 51. ~~The sequence applied for the inter SGSN change case is shown in .~~

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.


MS
BSS
SRNS
new 2G-SGSN
old 3G-SGSN
GGSN
HLR
1. Intersystem change decision
2. Routing Area Update Request
3. SGSN Context Request
4. SRNS Context Request
4. SRNS Context Response
5. SGSN Context Response
6. Security Functions
7. SGSN Context Acknowledge
C1
8. SRNS Context Acknowledge
8a. Forward Packets
9. Forward Packets
10. Update PDP Context Request
10. Update PDP Context Response
11. Update GPRS Location
12. Cancel Location
13. Iu Release Command
13. Iu Release Complete
12. Cancel Location Ack
14. Insert Subscriber Data
14. Insert Subscriber Data Ack
15. Update GPRS Location Ack
16. Routing Area Update Accept
C2
17. Routing Area Update Complete
18. BSS Packet Flow Context Procedure

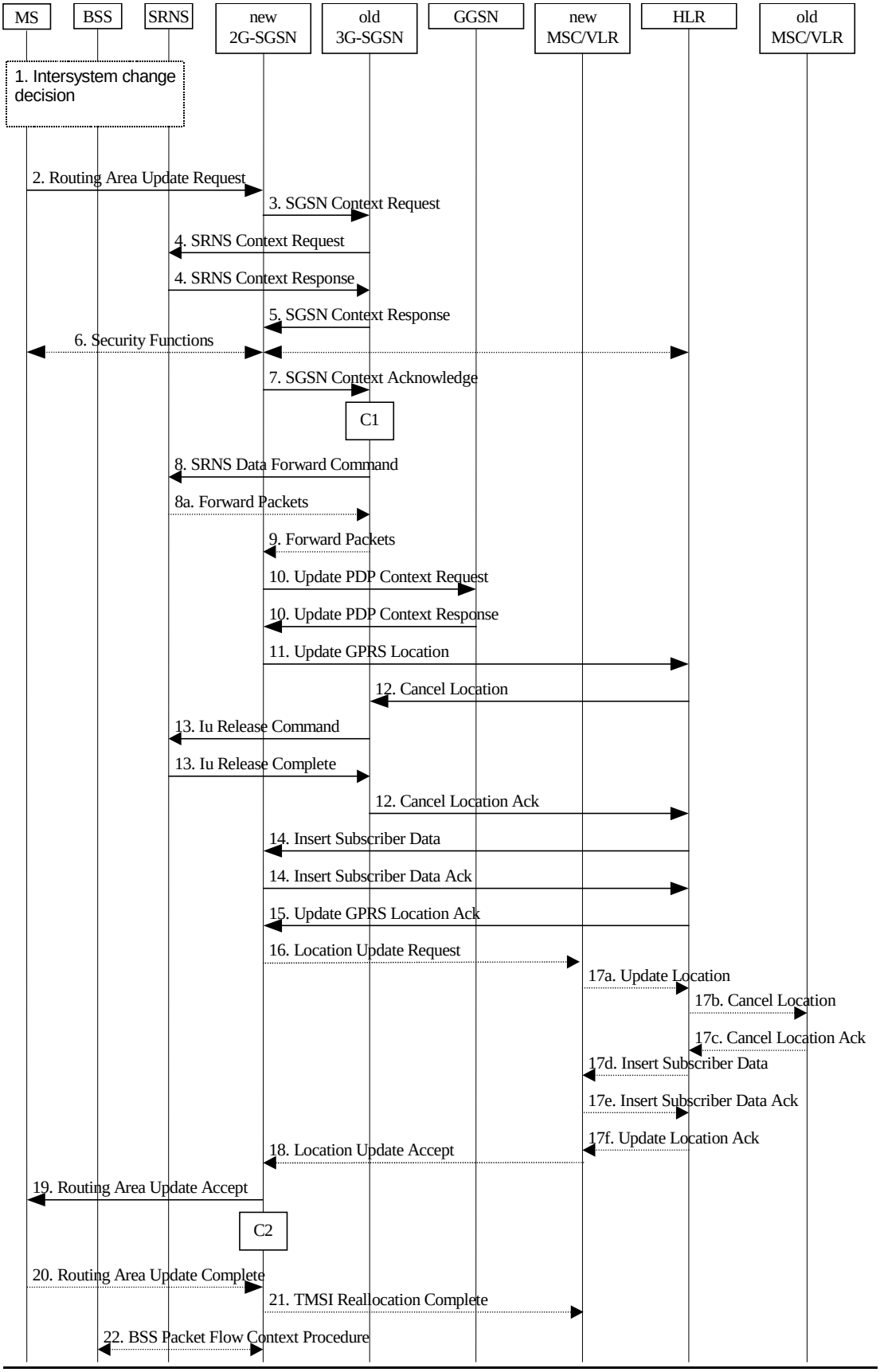


Figure 51: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update~~, or periodic RA update~~or combined RA / LA update, or,

if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested.~~.~~ The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes RLC-SNU and RLC-SND. The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Data Forward Command~~Context Acknowledge~~ (RAB ID, Transport Layer Address, Iu Transport Association~~IMSI~~) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the partly transmitted and the transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the RLC downlink sequence number (the four most significant bits shall be stripped off) of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU, and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN. Upon reception of SRNS Data Forward Command message from the 3G-SGSN the SRNS shall start the data-forwarding timer.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The SNDCP sequence numbers shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) ~~When the timer described in step 3 expires t~~The old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. When the RNC data-forwarding timer has expired the t~~T~~he SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) If the association has to be established i.e., if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new 2G-SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 14). The VLR creates or updates the association with the 2G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

17) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

18) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 2G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

19) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

20) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the 2G-SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from the downlink RLC sequence number by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence number of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

21) The new 2G-SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

22) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

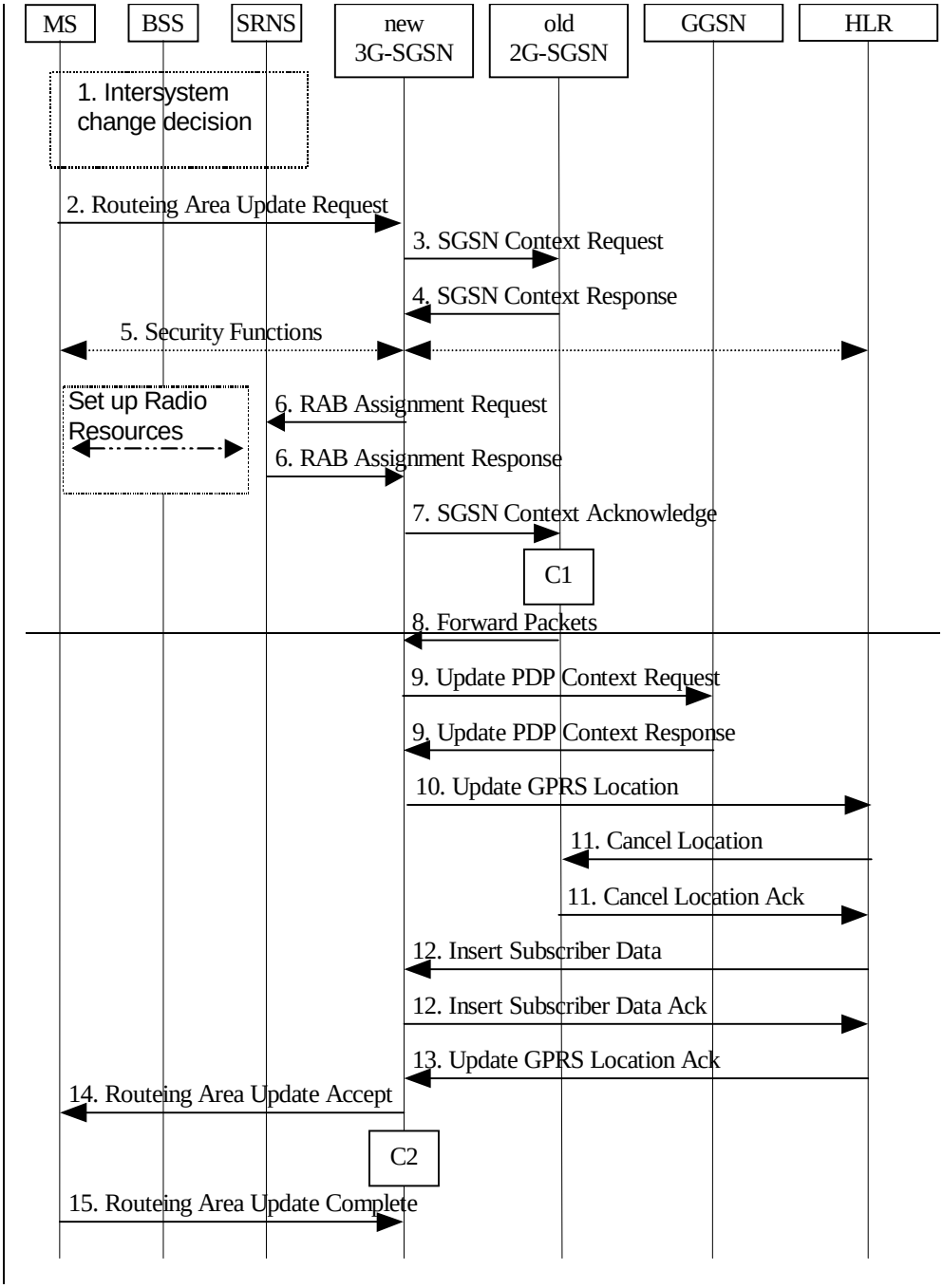
C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The RA update procedure is either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, these RA update cases are illustrated in Figure 52. ~~The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.~~

If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures. This concerns only idle mode (see 3G TS 23.122), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.


MS
BSS
SRNS
new 3G-SGSN
old 2G-SGSN
GGSN
HLR
1. Intersystem change decision
2. Routeing Area Update Request
3. SGSN Context Request
4. SGSN Context Response
5. Security Functions
Set up Radio Resources
6. RAB Assignment Request
6. RAB Assignment Response
7. SGSN Context Acknowledge
C1
8. Forward Packets
9. Update PDP Context Request
9. Update PDP Context Response
10. Update GPRS Location
11. Cancel Location
11. Cancel Location Ack
12. Insert Subscriber Data
12. Insert Subscriber Data Ack
13. Update GPRS Location Ack
14. Routeing Area Update Accept
C2
15. Routeing Area Update Complete

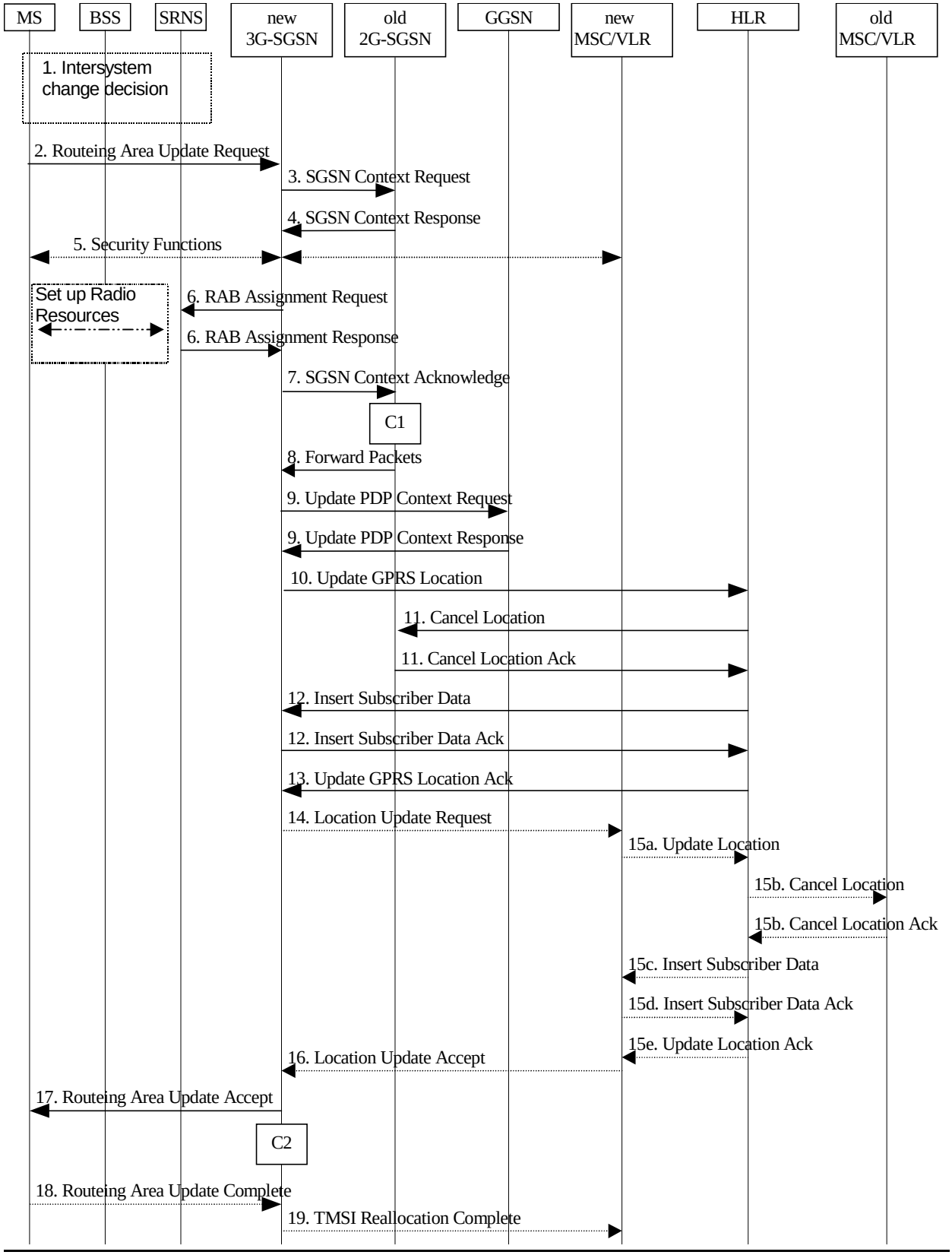


Figure 52: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface. The new 3G-SGSN converts the SNDCP sequence numbers to RLC sequence numbers by shifting them left 4 times.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNDs received from the MS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNUs received from the SRNS. If this is not the case, the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) <u>If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI by the 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 12). The VLR creates or updates the association with the 3G-SGSN by storing SGSN Number.</u>

15) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

16) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the 3G-SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

17) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

18) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

19) The new 3G-SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, 6– 9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000523**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	133r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [X] Core Network [ ]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 2.3.2000

Subject: PDP Type to RNC Context

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: PDP Type parameter should be added to RNC RAB Context. According to this parameter, RNC can either negotiate suitable header compression method (e.g. PDP type is IPv4) or not use header compression at all (e.g. PDP type is PPP) for certain Radio Bearer.

Clauses affected: 13.7

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. **Error! Reference source not found.** shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 1: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g. PPP or IP.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
PDCP-SND	The next in-sequence PDCP Sequence number to be sent to the MS
PDCP-SNU	The next in-sequence PDCP Sequence Number expected from the MS

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, 6– 9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000431**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	134r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval [X]	strategic [ ]	*(for SMG use only)*
	for information [ ]	non-strategic [ ]	

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [X] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]

Source: Nokia **Date:** 16/02/00

Subject: PDP Context modification on RAB Release

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	[X]
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	[ ]
B	Addition of feature	[ ]
C	Functional modification of feature	[ ]
D	Editorial modification	[ ]

Release:

Phase 2	[ ]
Release 96	[ ]
Release 97	[ ]
Release 98	[ ]
Release 99	[X]
Release 00	[ ]

Reason for change: 25.331 has been modified to allow first the real time radio access bearers to be dropped in the Iu plane when radio coverage is lost. This CR introduces the needed interaction from the MS and the Core Network to reflect release of the RAB on the state of the PDP Context affected. This procedure is needed to assure to keep the state of the PDP Contexts consistent on the MS and in the Core Network.

Clauses affected: 9.2.3

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by a Radio Access Bearer Release procedure initiated by an RNC or by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts.The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id;
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure); and
- TFT (in case of MS-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An RNC can request the release of a Radio Access Bearer. After the RAB release procedure MS and SGSN shall locally modify the corresponding PDP Context according to rules defined in the section 9.2.3.X.

A trace may be activated while a PDP context is active. To enable trace activation in a GGSN, the SGSN shall send an Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN. If PDP context modification is performed only to activate a trace, then the SGSN shall not send a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 1~~Figure 1~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

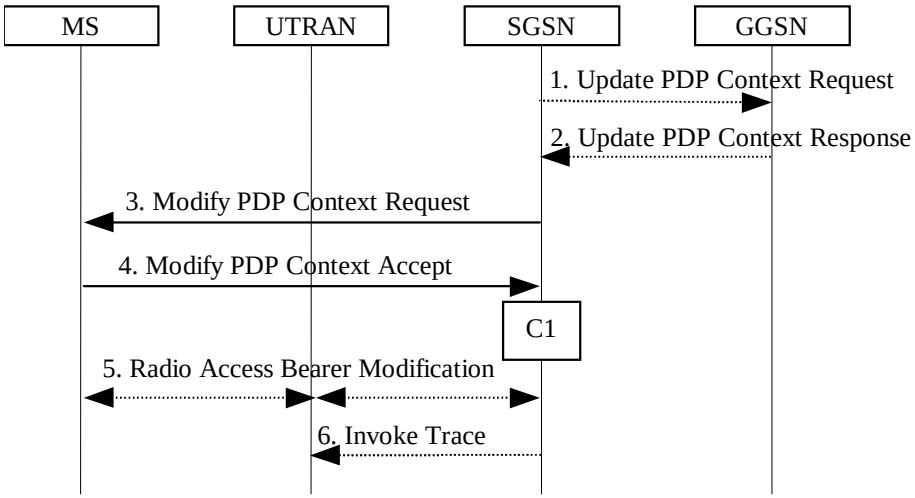


Figure 1: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 3~~Figure 2~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

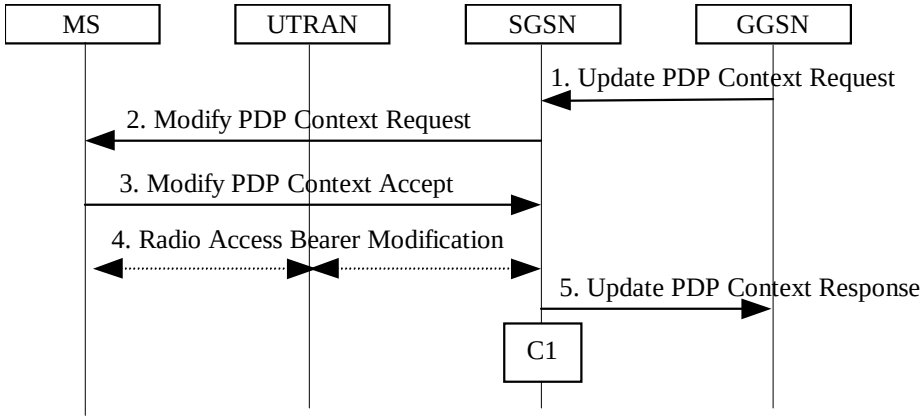


Figure 3~~2~~: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 5~~Figure 3~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

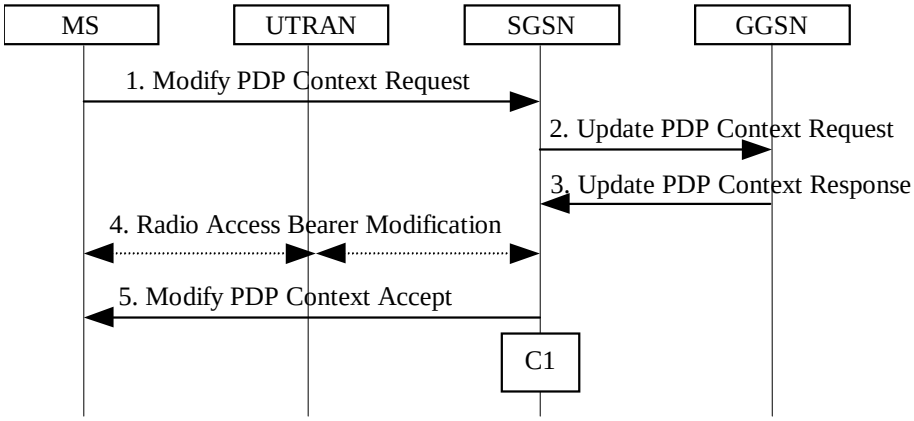


Figure 5~~3~~: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type or TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) For UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.X RAB Release-Initiated local PDP Context Modification Procedure

The RNC can request a RAB to be release through the Radio Access Bearer Release procedure on the streaming or conversational traffic class bearers without releasing Iu connection when there is a break in the radio connection. After the Radio Access Bearer(s) Release the SGSN shall modify the PDP Context as follows.

- In SGSN, for a PDP context using streaming or conversational traffic class, the PDP Context is preserved, but the maximum bit rate is downgraded to 0 kbit/s (for both uplink and downlink) when the associated Radio Access Bearer (RAB) is released. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN and sets the maximum bit rate to 0 kbit/s in the GGSN. The value of 0 kbit/s for the guaranteed bit rate indicates the GGSN to stop sending packets to the SGSN on this PDP Context.

The following procedures shall be done in the MS when the radio coverage is lost:

- In MS, for a PDP context using streaming or conversational traffic class, the PDP Context is preserved, but the maximum bit rate is downgraded to 0 kbit/s (for both uplink and downlink) when RRC re-establishment procedure has failed. After coverage is regained the MS should start MS-initiated PDP context modification procedure or the PDP Context deactivation procedure. The MS shall use the PDP context modification procedure to re-activate the PDP Context and to re-establish the RAB.

The Radio Access Bearer shall be released by the RNC only when the RRC re-establishment is not any more possible. Therefore the change happens simultaneously in MS and SGSN.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000433**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**135**	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio	X	Core Network	X

Source: Lucent Technologies **Date:** 2000-03-02

Subject: Clarifications on Iu interface

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification	X		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: This CR proposes text to clarify, as per the RAN3 decision to include the possibility of IP routers within the Iu interface.

Clauses affected: 5.4.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments: . The relevant RAN3 CR (R300855) is attached FYI.

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes

A GPRS Support Node (GSN) contains functionality required to support GPRS and/or to support UMTS packet domain functionality. In one PLMN, there may be more than one GSN.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) is the node that is accessed by the packet data network due to evaluation of the PDP address. It contains routeing information for attached GPRS users. The routeing information is used to tunnel N-PDUs to the MS's current point of attachment, i.e., the Serving GPRS Support Node. The GGSN may request location information from the HLR via the optional Gc interface. The GGSN is the first point of PDN interconnection with a GSM PLMN supporting GPRS (i.e., the Gi reference point is supported by the GGSN). GGSN functionality is common for GPRS and for the UMTS packet domain.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) is the node that is serving the MS. The SGSN supports GPRS (i.e., the Gb interface is supported by the SGSN) and/or UMTS (i.e., the Iu interface is supported by the SGSN). At GPRS attach, the SGSN establishes a mobility management context containing information pertaining to e.g., mobility and security for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routeing purposes, with the GGSN that the subscriber will be using.

The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC) routeing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. In UMTS, the SGSN and RNC may be interconnected with one or more IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.

The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.

The SGSN interfaces with the GSM-SCF for optional CAMEL cost control. Depending on the result from the CAMEL interaction, the session and packet data transfer may proceed normally. This also applies if the SGSN does not support CAMEL interaction. Otherwise, interaction with the GSM-SCF continues as described in 3G TS 23.078 [8b]. Only the GSM-SCF interworking points are indicated in the signalling procedures in this specification.

3GPP TSG-SA2 WG2 #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6–9 Mar 2000

Document S2-000528

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	136rev1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: TSG SA#7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)* (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [ ]

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 2000-03-08

Subject: Adaptation of 23.060 terminology with the N1 agreement

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification	X		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

TS 23.060 is based on GSM TS 03.60 and consequently the terminology has been defined for GSM and GPRS environment.

For UMTS the TS 23.060 specification will need to cover the requirements of GSM, UMTS and GSM-UMTS multimode.

To align TS 23.060 terminology with the terminology used in TSG-CN WG1 the following rules shall be used to define specific system descriptions.

Inter-System change is a change of radio access between different radio access technologies such as GSM and UMTS.

The label **(GSM only)** indicates this section or paragraph applies only to GSM system. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

The label **(UMTS only)** indicates this section or paragraph applies only to UMTS system. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

In GSM,... Indicates this paragraph applies only to GSM System. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

In UMTS,... Indicates this paragraph applies only to UMTS System. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.

GPRS: Packet Services for GSM and UMTS system.

MS, Mobile Station. This specification makes no distinction between MS and UE.

The above presented rules are specified in a new chapter Vocabulary.

Clauses affected:	3.4 (new), for the rest of the document see following change indications.			
Other specs affected:	Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other comments:	This CR does not cover chapters with approved CRs that have not been inserted in the current version (3.2.1).			

3G TS 23.060 V3.2.1 (2000-01)

Technical Specification

3rd Generation Partnership Project;
Technical Specification Group Services and System Aspects;
General Packet Radio Service (GPRS);
Service description;
Stage 2
(3G TS 23.060 version 3.2.1)

The present document has been developed within the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP ™) and may be further elaborated for the purposes of 3GPP.
The present document has not been subject to any approval process by the 3GPP Organisational Partners and shall not be implemented.
This Specification is provided for future development work within 3GPP only. The Organisational Partners accept no liability for any use of this Specification.
Specifications and reports for implementation of the 3GPP ™ system should be obtained via the 3GPP Organisational Partners' Publications Offices.

Reference
3TS/TSGS-0123060U

Keywords
GPRS, UMTS Packet Domain

3GPP

Postal address

3GPP support office address
650 Route des Lucioles - Sophia Antipolis
Valbonne - FRANCE
Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Internet
http://www.3gpp.org

Copyright Notification

No part may be reproduced except as authorized by written permission.
The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© 1999, 3GPP Organizational Partners (ARIB, CWTS, ETSI, T1, TTA,TTC).
All rights reserved.

Contents

Foreword 12

1 Scope 13

2 References 13

3 Definitions, abbreviations and symbols 16
3.1 Definitions 16
3.2 Abbreviations 16
3.3 Symbols 18

4 Main Concepts 19
4.1 Main GPRS Concepts 20
4.2 Main UMTS Concepts 20

5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism 21
5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points 21
5.2 Network Interworking 22
5.2.1 PSPDN Interworking 22
5.2.2 Internet (IP) Interworking 22
5.3 High-Level Functions 22
5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions 22
5.3.1.1 Registration Function 23
5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function 23
5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function 23
5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function 23
5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function 23
5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function 23
5.3.2 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions 23
5.3.2.1 Relay Function 23
5.3.2.2 Routeing Function 24
5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function 24
5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function 24
5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function 24
5.3.2.6 Compression Function 24
5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function 24
5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function 24
5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions 24
5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions for GPRS 24
5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function 25
5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions 25
5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function 25
5.3.5 Radio Resource Management Functions 25
5.3.6 Network Management Functions 25
5.4 Logical Architecture 25
5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes 26
5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks 27
5.4.3 HLR 27
5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC 27
5.4.5 GPRS Mobile Stations 28
5.4.6 UMTS Mobile Stations 28
5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality 28
5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture 29
5.6 User and Control Planes 30
5.6.1 User Plane for GPRS 30
5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN 30
5.6.1.2 GSN – GSN 31

5.6.2 User Plane for UMTS 31
5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN 31
5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN 32
5.6.3 Control Plane 32
5.6.3.1 MS – SGSN for GPRS 32
5.6.3.2 MS – SGSN for UMTS 33
5.6.3.3 SGSN - HLR 33
5.6.3.4 SGSN - MSC/VLR 34
5.6.3.5 SGSN - EIR 34
5.6.3.6 SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC 34
5.6.3.7 GSN - GSN 35
5.6.3.8 GGSN - HLR 35
5.6.3.8.1 MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling 35
5.6.3.8.2 GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling 36
5.7 Functionality Needed for Mobile IP Using IPv4 36

6 Mobility Management Functionality 36
6.1 Definition of Mobility Management States 36
6.1.1 Mobility Management States for GPRS 36
6.1.1.1 IDLE (GPRS) State 36
6.1.1.2 STANDBY State 37
6.1.1.3 READY State 37
6.1.1.4 State Transitions and Functions 38
6.1.2 Mobility Management States for UMTS 40
6.1.2.1 PMM-DETACHED State 40
6.1.2.2 PMM-IDLE State 40
6.1.2.3 PMM-CONNECTED State 40
6.1.2.4 State Transitions and Functions 40
6.1.2.4.1 Error Cases 42
6.2 Mobility Management Timer Functions 42
6.2.1 READY Timer Function for GPRS 42
6.2.2 Periodic RA Update Timer Function 43
6.2.3 Mobile Reachable Timer Function 43
6.3 Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR 44
6.3.1 Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association 44
6.3.2 Combined RA / LA Updating 45
6.3.3 CS Paging for GPRS 45
6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS 46
6.3.4 CS Paging for UMTS 47
6.3.4.1 Network Operation Modes for UMTS 47
6.3.5 Non-PS Alert 48
6.3.6 MS Information Procedure 48
6.3.7 MM Information Procedure 49
6.4 MM Procedures 49
6.5 ~~PS~~GPRS Attach Function 49
6.5.1 GPRS Attach Function 49
6.5.2 UMTS ~~PS~~GPRS Attach Function 53
6.6 Detach Function 56
6.6.1 MS-Initiated Detach Procedure 57
6.6.2 Network-Initiated Detach Procedure 58
6.6.2.1 SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure 58
6.6.2.2 HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure 59
6.7 Purge Function 59
6.8 Security Function 60
6.8.1 Authentication 60
6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM 60
6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS 61
6.8.1.3 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS 62
6.8.1.4 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in GSM 63
6.8.2 User Identity Confidentiality 63
6.8.2.1 User Identity Confidentiality for GPRS 63

6.8.2.2 User Identity Confidentiality for UMTS 64
6.8.2.3 P-TMSI Signature 64
6.8.2.4 P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure 64
6.8.3 User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality....64
6.8.3.1 Scope of Ciphering....64
6.8.3.2 Ciphering Algorithm 65
6.8.3.3 Start of Ciphering....65
6.8.4 Identity Check Procedures 65
6.8.5 Data Integrity Procedure for UMTS 65
6.9 Location Management Function....66
6.9.1 Location Management Procedures for GPRS 66
6.9.1.1 Cell Update Procedure 67
6.9.1.2 Routeing Area Update Procedure....67
6.9.1.2.1 Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update....67
6.9.1.2.2 Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update....68
6.9.1.3 Combined RA / LA Update Procedure....70
6.9.1.3.1 Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update....71
6.9.1.3.2 Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update....73
6.9.2 Location Management Procedures for UMTS 76
6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure....76
6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure 80
6.9.3 Periodic RA and LA Updates....84
6.10 Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Function 84
6.10.1 Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure....85
6.10.2 Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure....86
6.11 Subscriber Management Function 86
6.11.1 Subscriber Management Procedures....86
6.11.1.1 Insert Subscriber Data Procedure 86
6.11.1.2 Delete Subscriber Data Procedure....87
6.12 Service Request Procedure for UMTS 88
6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure....88
6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure 89
6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change....90
6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change 90
6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change....90
6.13.1.1 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change....92
6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update 94
6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission....94
6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission....94
6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change 94
6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change....94
6.13.2.2 GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change....97
6.14 Classmark Handling 100
6.14.1 Radio Access Classmark....100
6.14.2 SGSN Classmark 100

7 Network Management Functionality 100

8 Radio Resource Functionality....101
8.1 Radio Resource Functionality for GPRS....101
8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection....101
8.1.2 Discontinuous Reception 101
8.1.3 Radio Resource Management 101
8.1.3.1 Layer Functions....101
8.1.3.2 Model of Operation 102
8.1.3.2.1 Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources....102
8.1.4 Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer 102
8.2 Radio Resource Functionality for UMTS....103
8.2.1 Radio Resource Management 103
8.2.2 RRC State Machine....103
8.2.3 Paging Initiated by CN....104

8.2.3.1 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN Without RRC Connection for CS 104
8.2.3.2 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN With RRC Connection for CS 105
8.2.4 Paging Initiated by UTRAN 105

9 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functionality 106
9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States 106
9.1.1 INACTIVE State 106
9.1.2 ACTIVE State 106
9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions 107
9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses 108
9.2.2 Activation Procedures 108
9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure 108
9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure 111
9.2.2.2 Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure 113
9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure 113
9.2.2.2.2 Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure 114
9.2.2.3 Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure 116
9.2.3 Modification Procedures 117
9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure 118
9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure 119
9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure 120
9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures 121
9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure 121
9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure 122
9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure 123
9.2.4.4 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure 123
9.2.4.5 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure 124
9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function 125
9.4 Relay Function 125
9.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function 126
9.6 Encapsulation Function 126
9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs 126
9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC 126
9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS 126
9.6.3 Encapsulation Between RNC and MS 127

10 Message Screening Functionality 127

11 Compatibility Issues 127
11.1 Interaction between Releases 97/98 and 99 127
11.1.1 Interactions between GTP v0 (R97) and GTP v1 (R99) 127
11.1.2 Interactions between MS R97 and CN R99 128
11.1.3 Interactions between SM R97 and SM R99 128
11.1.4 Interactions between MAP R97 and MAP R99 128

12 Transmission 128
12.1 Transmission Modes 128
12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes 128
12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes for GPRS 128
12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes 129
12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality for GPRS 129
12.2.1 Addressing 129
12.2.2 Services 129
12.2.3 Functions 129
12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality for GPRS 130
12.3.1 Services 130
12.3.2 Subfunctions 131
12.4 PDCP for UMTS 131
12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality 131
12.5.1 PAD Function 133
12.5.1.1 Packet Assembler 133
12.5.1.1.1 Buffer Full 133

12.5.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry 133
12.5.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry 133
12.5.1.1.4 Special Character 133
12.5.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State 134
12.5.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request 134
12.5.1.2 Packet Disassembler 134
12.5.2 Quality of Service 134
12.6 Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality 134
12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP 134
12.6.2 Functions 135
12.7 Gb Interface for GPRS 135
12.7.1 Physical Layer Protocol 135
12.7.2 Link Layer Protocols 135
12.7.3 BSS GPRS Protocol 136
12.7.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions 136
12.7.3.2 BSSGP Addressing 137
12.7.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN 137
12.7.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface 137
12.7.3.5 BSS Context 138
12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure 138
12.7.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure 139
12.7.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure 139
12.7.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures 140
12.8 Iu Interface for UMTS 140
12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols 141
12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols 141
12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport 141
12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces 141
12.8.2.2 Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport 142
12.8.3 Iu Release Procedure 142
12.8.4 Location Reporting Procedure 143
12.9 Abis Interface for GPRS 143
12.9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit 145

13 Information Storage 145
13.1 HLR 145
13.2 SGSN 147
13.3 GGSN 149
13.4 MS 150
13.5 MSC/VLR 151
13.6 BSS for GPRS 151
13.7 RNC for UMTS 152
13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures 153
13.8.1 HLR Failure 153
13.8.2 SGSN Failure 153
13.8.3 GGSN Failure 153
13.8.4 VLR Failure 154
13.8.5 BSS Failure for GPRS 154
13.8.6 RNC Failure for UMTS 154

14 Identities 154
14.1 IMSI 154
14.2 Packet TMSI 154
14.3 NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS 154
14.4 NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS 155
14.5 PDP Address 156
14.6 TEID 156
14.7 Routeing Area Identity 156
14.8 UTRAN Registration Area Identity 157
14.9 Cell Identity 157
14.10 Service Area Identity 157

14.11 GSN Addresses....157
14.11.1 GSN Address....157
14.11.2 GSN Number....157
14.12 RNC Addresses....158
14.12.1 RNC Address....158
14.12.2 RNC Number....158
14.13 Access Point Name....158

15 Operational Aspects....158
15.1 Charging....158
15.1.1 Charging Information....159
15.1.2 Reverse Charging....159
15.1.3 Fair Charging for UMTS....159
15.2 Quality of Service Profile....159
15.2.1 Radio Priority Levels for GPRS....159
15.3 Traffic Flow Template....160
15.3.1 Rules for Operations on TFTs....160
15.3.2 Packet Filter Attributes....160
15.3.2.1 Source Address and Subnet Mask....161
15.3.2.2 Protocol Number / Next Header....161
15.3.2.3 Port Numbers....161
15.3.2.4 IPSec Security Parameter Index....161
15.3.2.5 Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask....161
15.3.2.6 Flow Label....161
15.3.3 Example Usage of Packet Filters....161
15.3.3.1 IPv4 Multi-field Classification....162
15.3.3.2 IPv4 TOS-based Classification....162
15.3.3.3 IPv4 Multi-field Classification for IPSec Traffic....162

16 Interactions with Other Services....162
16.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service....162
16.1.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service for GPRS....162
16.1.1.1 Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer....163
16.1.1.1.1 Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer....163
16.1.1.2 Mobile-originated SMS Transfer....165
16.1.2 Point-to-point Short Message Service for UMTS....165
16.2 Circuit-switched Services for GPRS....165
16.2.1 Suspension of GPRS Services....166
16.2.2 GPRS and Dedicated Mode Priority Handling....167
16.3 Supplementary Services....167
16.4 CAMEL Services....167

Annex A (normative): APN and GGSN Selection....168

A.1 Definitions....168

A.2 Selection Rules....168

Annex B (normative): Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service....175

B.1 Direction of Connection Setup....175

B.2 Bearer....175

B.3 Setup Data....175
B.3.1 Protocol Type – TCP or UDP....175
B.3.2 Host Name....175
B.3.3 Port Number....176
B.3.4 PAD Parameters....176

B.4 Flow Control 176
B.5 Break Signal 176
B.6 Connection Establishment Procedure 176
B.6.1 Fully User-Specified Establishment 177
B.6.2 Default Internet Endpoint Parameters Establishment 177
B.7 Connection Termination 177
B.7.1 MS-initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination 177
B.7.2 MS-initiated UDP IHOSS Connection Termination 177
B.7.3 Internet Host Initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination 177
B.8 Quality of Service 177
B.9 Security 178
B.9.1 Authentication of the GPRS User 178
B.9.2 Malicious Reconfiguration of the GPRS Device 178
B.10 Maintenance 178
Annex C (informative): Figures 179
Annex D (informative): Tables 182
Annex E: Change History 183
History 185

Foreword

This Technical Specification has been produced by the 3GPP.

The present document defines the stage-2 service description for a General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) within the digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of this TS, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version 3.y.z

where:

x the first digit:

1 presented to TSG for information;

2 presented to TSG for approval;

3 Indicates TSG approved document under change control.

y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.

z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the specification;

1 Scope

The present document defines the stage-2 service description for the packet domain, which includes the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) in GSM~~,~~ and ~~the packet side of~~ UMTS. CCITT I.130 [29] describes a three-stage method for characterisation of telecommunication services, and CCITT Q.65 [31] defines stage 2 of the method.

This document does not cover the Access Network functionality. GSM 03.64 [11] contains an overall description of the GSM GPRS Access Network. 3G TS 25.301 contains an overall description of the UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network.

2 References

[All references need to be checked once release 99 stabilises.]

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies.
- A non-specific reference to an ETS shall also be taken to refer to later versions published as an EN with the same number.

[1] GSM 01.04: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Abbreviations and acronyms".

[2] GSM 01.61: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); GPRS ciphering algorithm requirements".

[3] 3G TS 22.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Service description; Stage 1".

[4] 3G TS 23.003: "Numbering, addressing and identification".

[5] 3G TS 23.007: "Restoration procedures".

[5b] 3G TS 23.016: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Subscriber Data Management; Stage 2".

[6] GSM 03.20: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Security related network functions".

[7] 3G TS 23.022: "Functions related to Mobile Station (MS) in idle mode and group receive mode".

[8] 3G TS 23.040: "Technical realisation of the Short Message Service (SMS); Point-to-Point (PP)".

[8b] 3G TS 23.078: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Customised Applications for Mobile Network Enhanced Logic (CAMEL) Phase 3 – Stage 2".

[11] GSM 03.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Overall description of the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) Radio interface; Stage 2".

[12] 3G TS 24.007: "Mobile radio interface signalling layer 3; General aspects".

[13] 3G TS 24.008: "Mobile radio interface layer 3 specification; Core Network Protocols – Stage 3".

[14] GSM 04.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) - Base Station System (BSS) interface; Radio Link Control / Medium Access Control (RLC/MAC) protocol".

[15] GSM 04.64: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station – Serving GPRS Support Node (MS - SGSN) Logical Link Control (LLC) layer specification".

[16] GSM 04.65: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) – Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP)".

[17] 3G TS 27.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Mobile Station (MS) supporting GPRS".

[18] GSM 08.08: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Mobile Switching Centre - Base Station System (MSC - BSS) interface: Layer 3 specification".

[19] GSM 08.14: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Gb interface layer 1".

[20] GSM 08.16: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) interface; Network Service".

[21] GSM 08.18: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Base Station System (BSS) - Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN); BSS GPRS Protocol (BSSGP)".

[22] GSM 08.60: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Inband control of remote transcoders and rate adaptors for Enhanced Full Rate (EFR) and full rate traffic channels."

[23] 3G TS 29.002: "Mobile Application Part (MAP) specification".

[24] 3G TS 29.016: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface network service specification".

[25] 3G TS 29.018: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) - Visitors Location Register (VLR); Gs interface layer 3 specification".

[26] 3G TS 29.060: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Tunnelling Protocol (GTP) across the Gn and Gp Interface".

[27] 3G TS 29.061: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); Interworking between the Public Land Mobile Network (PLMN) supporting GPRS and Packet Data Networks (PDN)".

[27b] 3G TS 29.078: "3rd Generation Partnership Project; Customised Applications for Mobile Network Enhanced Logic (CAMEL) Phase 3; CAMEL Application Part (CAP) Specification".

[28] GSM 11.11: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); Specification of the Subscriber Identity Module - Mobile Equipment (SIM - ME) interface".

[28a] GSM 12.15: "Digital cellular telecommunications system (Phase 2+); General Packet Radio Service (GPRS); GPRS Charging".

[29] CCITT Recommendations I.130: "General modelling methods – Method for the characterisation of telecommunication services supported by an ISDN and network capabilities of an ISDN".

[30] CCITT Recommendation E.164: "Numbering plan for the ISDN era".

[31] CCITT Recommendation Q.65: "Methodology – Stage 2 of the method for the characterization of services supported by an ISDN".

[32] CCITT Recommendation V.42 bis: "Data communication over the telephone network – Data compression procedures for data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) using error correction procedures".

[33] CCITT Recommendation X.3: "Packet assembly disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network".

[34] CCITT Recommendation X.25: "Interface between data terminal equipment (DTE) and data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE) for terminals operating in the packet mode and connected to public data networks by dedicated circuit".

[35] CCITT Recommendation X.28: "DTE / DCE interface for a start-stop mode data terminal equipment accessing the packet assembly / disassembly facility (PAD) in a public data network situated in the same country".

[36] CCITT Recommendation X.29: "Procedures for the exchange of control information and user data between a packet assembly / disassembly (PAD) facility and a packet mode DTE or another PAD".

[37] CCITT Recommendation X.75: "Packet-switched signalling system between public networks providing data transmission services".

[38] CCITT Recommendation X.121: "International Numbering Plan for Public Data Networks".

[39] IETF RFC 768 (1980): "User Datagram Protocol" (STD 6).

[40] IETF RFC 791 (1981): "Internet Protocol" (STD 5).

[41] IETF RFC 792 (1981): "Internet Control Message Protocol" (STD 5).

[42] IETF RFC 793 (1981): "Transmission Control Protocol" (STD 7).

[43] IETF RFC 1034 (1987): "Domain Names – Concepts and Facilities" (STD 7).

[44] IETF RFC 1661 (1994): "The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)" (STD 51).

[45] IETF RFC 1542 (1993): "Clarification and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol".

[46] IETF RFC 2002 (1996): "IPv4 Mobility Support".

[47] IETF RFC 2131 (1997): "Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol".

[48] Bellcore GR-000301 Issue 2 December 1997: "Public Packet Switched Network Generic Requirements (PPSNGR)".

[49] TIA/EIA-136 (1999): "TDMA Cellular / PCS"; Arlington: Telecommunications Industry Association.

[50] 3G TS 25.301: "Radio Interface Protocol Architecture".

[51] 3G TS 25.303: "UE Functions and Interlayer Procedures in Connected Mode".

[52] 3G TS 25.331: "RRC Protocol Specification".

[53] 3G TS 25.401: "UTRAN Overall Description".

[54] 3G TS 23.121: "Architectural Requirements for Release 1999".

[55] 3G TS 25.322: "RLC Protocol Specification".

[56] 3G TS 25.412: "UTRAN Iu Interface Signalling Transport".

[56b] 3G TS 25.413: "3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP); UTRAN Iu Interface RANAP Signalling".

[57] 3G TS 25.323: "FFS".

[58] 3G TS 23.107: "FFS".

[59] ITU-T Recommendation I.361: "B-ISDN ATM Layer Specification".

[60] 3G TS 25.321: "FFS".

[61] 3G TS 33.102: "FFS".

[62] 3G TS 22.102: "FFS".

[63] 3G TS 25.411: "FFS".

[64] 3G TS 25.414: "FFS".

[65] 3G TS 23.171: "FFS".

[66] 3G TS 33.007: "FFS".

3 Definitions, abbreviations and symbols

3.1 Definitions

Refer to 3G TS 22.060 and 3G TS 25.401.

2G- / 3G- The prefixes 2G- and 3G- refers to functionality that supports only GSM ~~GPRS~~ or UMTS, respectively, e.g., 2G-SGSN refers only to the GSM ~~GPRS~~ functionality of an SGSN. When the prefix is omitted, reference is made independently from the GSM ~~GPRS~~ or UMTS functionality.

3.2 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document the following abbreviations apply. Additional applicable abbreviations can be found in GSM 01.04 [1].

AA Anonymous Access
APN Access Point Name
ATM Asynchronous Transfer Mode
AUTN Authentication Token
BG Border Gateway
BSSAP+ Base Station System Application Part +
BSSGP Base Station System GPRS Protocol
BVCI BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier
CCU Channel Codec Unit
CDR Call Detail Record
CGF Charging Gateway Functionality
CGI Cell Global Identification
CK Cipher Key
CS Circuit Switched
DHCP Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS Domain Name System

EGPRS	Enhanced GPRS
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
GEA	GPRS Encryption Algorithm
GGSN	Gateway GPRS Support Node
GMM/SM	GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management
GPRS-SSF	GPRS Service Switching Function
GPRS-CSI	GPRS CAMEL Subscription Information
GSM-SCF	GSM Service Control Function
GSIM	GSM Service Identity Module
GSN	GPRS Support Node
GTP	GPRS Tunnelling Protocol
GTP-C	GTP Control Plane
GTP-U	GTP User Plane
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IHOSS	Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service
IK	Integrity Key
IP	Internet Protocol
IPv4	Internet Protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet Protocol version 6
IPX	Internet Packet eXchange
ISP	Internet Service Provider
KSI	Key Set Identifier
L2TP	Layer-2 Tunnelling Protocol
LL-PDU	LLC PDU
LLC	Logical Link Control
MAC	Medium Access Control
MIP	Mobile IP
MNRF	Mobile station Not Reachable Flag
MNRG	Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag
MNRR	Mobile station Not Reachable Reason
MTP2	Message Transfer Part layer 2
MTP3	Message Transfer Part layer 3
NGAF	Non-GPRS Alert Flag
NS	Network Service
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier
NSS	Network SubSystem
OSP	Octet Stream Protocol
P-TMSI	Packet TMSI
PCU	Packet Control Unit
PDCH	Packet Data CHannel
PDCP	Packet Data Convergence Protocol
PDN	Packet Data Network
PDP	Packet Data Protocol, e.g., IP or X.25 [34]
PDU	Protocol Data Unit
PPF	Paging Proceed Flag
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PTM	Point To Multipoint
PTP	Point To Point
PVC	Permanent Virtual Circuit
RA	Routeing Area
RAB	Radio Access Bearer
RAC	Routeing Area Code
RAI	Routeing Area Identity
RANAP	Radio Access Network Application Protocol
RLC	Radio Link Control
RNS	Radio Network Subsystem
RNTI	Radio Network Temporary Identity
RRC	Radio Resource Control
SGSN	Serving GPRS Support Node

SM	Short Message
SM-SC	Short Message service Service Centre
SMS-GMSC	Short Message Service Gateway MSC
SMS-IWMSC	Short Message Service Interworking MSC
SN-PDU	SNDCP PDU
SNDC	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence
SNDCP	SubNetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol
SPI	Security Parameter Index
TCAP	Transaction Capabilities Application Part
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TFT	Traffic Flow Template
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint IDentifier
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity
TOM	Tunnelling Of Messages
TOS	Type of Service
TRAU	Transcoder and Rate Adaptor Unit
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UEA	UMTS Encryption Algorithm
UIA	UMTS Integrity Algorithm
URA	UTRAN Registration Area
USIM	User Service Identity Module
UTRAN	UMTS Terrestrial Radio Access Network

3.3 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document the following symbols apply:

Ga	Charging data collection interface between a CDR transmitting unit (e.g., an SGSN or a GGSN) and a CDR receiving functionality (a CGF).
Gb	Interface between an SGSN and a BSS.
Gc	Interface between a GGSN and an HLR.
Gd	Interface between a SMS-GMSC and an SGSN, and between a SMS-IWMSC and an SGSN.
Gf	Interface between an SGSN and an EIR.
Gi	Reference point between GPRS and an external packet data network.
Gn	Interface between two GSNs within the same PLMN.
Gp	Interface between two GSNs in different PLMNs. The Gp interface allows support of GPRS network services across areas served by the co-operating GPRS PLMNs.
Gr	Interface between an SGSN and an HLR.
Gs	Interface between an SGSN and an MSC/VLR.
Iu	Interface between the RNS and the core network. It is also considered as a reference point.
kbit/s	Kilobits per second.
Mbit/s	Megabits per second. 1 Mbit/s = 1 million bits per second.
R	Reference point between a non-ISDN compatible TE and MT. Typically this reference point supports a standard serial interface.
Reporting Area	The service area for which an MS's location shall be reported.

Service Area	The location accuracy level needed for service management purposes in the 3G-SGSN, e.g., a routeing area or a cell. The 3G-SGSN can request the SRNC to report: i) the MS's current service area; ii) when the MS moves into a given service area; or iii) when the MS moves out of a given service area.
Um	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the ~~GPRS~~ GSM fixed network part. The Um interface is the ~~GPRS~~ GSM network interface for providing ~~packet data~~GPRS services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the GPRS services in GSM through this interface.
Uu	Interface between the mobile station (MS) and the UMTS fixed network part. The Uu interface is the UMTS network interface for providing ~~packet data~~GPRS services over the radio to the MS. The MT part of the MS is used to access the ~~UMTS~~ GPRS services in UMTS through this interface.

3.4 Vocabulary

- **Inter-System change** is a change of radio access between different radio access technologies such as GSM and UMTS.
- **GPRS:** Packet Services for GSM and UMTS system.
- The label **(GSM only)** indicates this section or paragraph applies only to GSM system. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.
- The label **(UMTS only)** indicates this section or paragraph applies only to UMTS system. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.
- **In GSM,...** Indicates this paragraph applies only to GSM System. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.
- **In UMTS,...** Indicates this paragraph applies only to UMTS System. For multi system case this is determined by the current serving radio access network.
- **MS,** Mobile Station. This specification makes no distinction between MS and UE.

4 Main Concepts

The packet domain uses a packet-mode technique to transfer high-speed and low-speed data and signalling in an efficient manner. The packet domain optimises the use of network and radio resources. Strict separation between the radio subsystem and network subsystem is maintained, allowing the network subsystem to be reused with other radio access technologies.

A common packet domain Core Network is used for both ~~GPRS~~GSM and UMTS. This common Core Network provides packet-switched (PS) services and is designed to support several quality of services levels in order to allow efficient transfer of non real-time traffic (e.g., intermittent and bursty data transfers, occasional transmission of large volumes of data) and real-time traffic (e.g., voice, video). Applications based on standard data protocols and SMS are supported, and interworking is defined with IP networks and X.25 networks. Charging should be flexible and allow to bill according to the amount of data transferred, the QoS supported, and the duration of the connection.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) keeps track of the individual MSs' location and performs security functions and access control. The SGSN is connected to the ~~GPRS~~GSM base station system through the Gb interface and/or to the UMTS Radio Access Network through the Iu interface. The SGSN also interfaces via the GPRS Service Switching Function with the GSM Service Control Function for optional CAMEL session and cost control service support.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) provides interworking with external packet-switched networks, and is connected with SGSNs via an IP-based packet domain PLMN backbone network.

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) collects charging records from SGSNs and GGSNs.

The HLR contains ~~GPRS~~GSM and UMTS subscriber information.

The SMS-GMSCs and SMS-IWMSCs support SMS transmission via the SGSN.

Optionally, the MSC/VLR can be enhanced for more-efficient co-ordination of packet-switched and circuit-switched services and functionality: e.g., combined GPRS and non-GPRS location updates.

In order to access the PS services, an MS shall first make its presence known to the network by performing a ~~PS~~GPRS attach. This makes the MS available for SMS over PS, paging via the SGSN, and notification of incoming PS data.

In order to send and receive PS data, the MS shall activate the Packet Data Protocol context that it wants to use. This operation makes the MS known in the corresponding GGSN, and interworking with external data networks can commence.

User data is transferred transparently between the MS and the external data networks with a method known as encapsulation and tunnelling: data packets are equipped with PS-specific protocol information and transferred between the MS and the GGSN. This transparent transfer method lessens the requirement for the PLMN to interpret external data protocols, and it enables easy introduction of additional interworking protocols in the future.

4.1 Main ~~GPRS~~GSM Concepts

For GPRS specific ~~New~~ GSM ~~GPRS~~ radio channels are defined, and the allocation of these channels is flexible: from 1 to 8 radio interface timeslots can be allocated per TDMA frame, timeslots are shared by the active users, and up and downlink are allocated separately. The radio interface resources can be shared dynamically between speech and data services as a function of service load and operator preference. Various radio channel coding schemes are specified to allow bitrates from 9 to more than 150 kbit/s per user. EGPRS is an enhancement of GSM GPRS allowing higher bitrates on the radio interface. The higher bitrates are achieved by using a new modulation and new coding schemes in the MS and the BSS.

Three GSM ~~GPRS~~ MS modes of operation are supported: An MS in class-A mode of operation operates GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously. An MS in class-B mode of operation monitors control channels for GSM GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously, but can only operate one set of services at one time. An MS in class-C mode of operation exclusively operates GSM GPRS services.

User data can be compressed and protected with retransmission protocols for efficiency and reliability.

In GSM, GPRS security functionality is equivalent to the existing GSM security. The SGSN performs authentication and cipher setting procedures based on the same algorithms, keys, and criteria as in existing GSM. GPRS uses a ciphering algorithm optimised for packet data transmission. A GPRS ME can access the GPRS services with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware, and with GPRS-aware SIMs.

Cell selection may be performed autonomously by an MS, or the base station system instructs the MS to select a certain cell. The MS informs the network when it re-selects another cell or group of cells known as a routeing area.

4.2 Main UMTS Concepts

In UMTS, radio resources are allocated to MSs in a very flexible manner. Depending on the level of activity, MSs are allocated shared contention-based radio resources or dedicated radio resources for user packet transmission.

Three UMTS MS modes of operation are supported in UMTS: The PS/CS mode of operation corresponds to class-A mode operation in ~~GPRS~~GSM. The PS mode of operation corresponds to class-C mode operation in ~~GPRS~~GSM. The CS mode of operation is the outside the scope of this specification.

UMTS security functionality is equivalent to or of higher functionality than the existing GSM ~~GPRS~~ security. UMTS may use a security algorithm different from GSM ~~GPRS~~. The 3G-SGSN performs the authentication procedure, and the RNC performs the ciphering procedure based on the algorithm for UMTS.

In UMTS, different levels of mobility procedures are executed depending upon the MS state. When an MS has an active RRC connection to UTRAN, the MS performs either UTRAN Registration Area

updating procedures or handover or cell update procedures depending on the level that UTRAN is tracking the MS position. When an MS does not have an active RRC connection (i.e., it is in idle mode), the MS performs RA updating procedures. In all the procedures, the cell selection is controlled by the network by setting cell selection parameters and/or restriction information.

5 General Packet Domain Architecture and Transmission Mechanism

5.1 Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

Each PLMN has two access points, the radio interface (labelled Um in ~~GPRS~~GSM and Uu in UMTS) used for mobile access and the R reference point used for origination or reception of messages. The R reference point for the MSs is defined in 3G TS 27.060 [17].

An interface differs from a reference point in that an interface is defined where specific information is exchanged and needs to be fully recognised.

There is an inter PLMN interface called Gp that connects two independent packet domain networks for message exchange.

There is also a PLMN to fixed network (typically a packet data network) reference point called Gi. Gi is defined in 3G TS 29.061 [27].

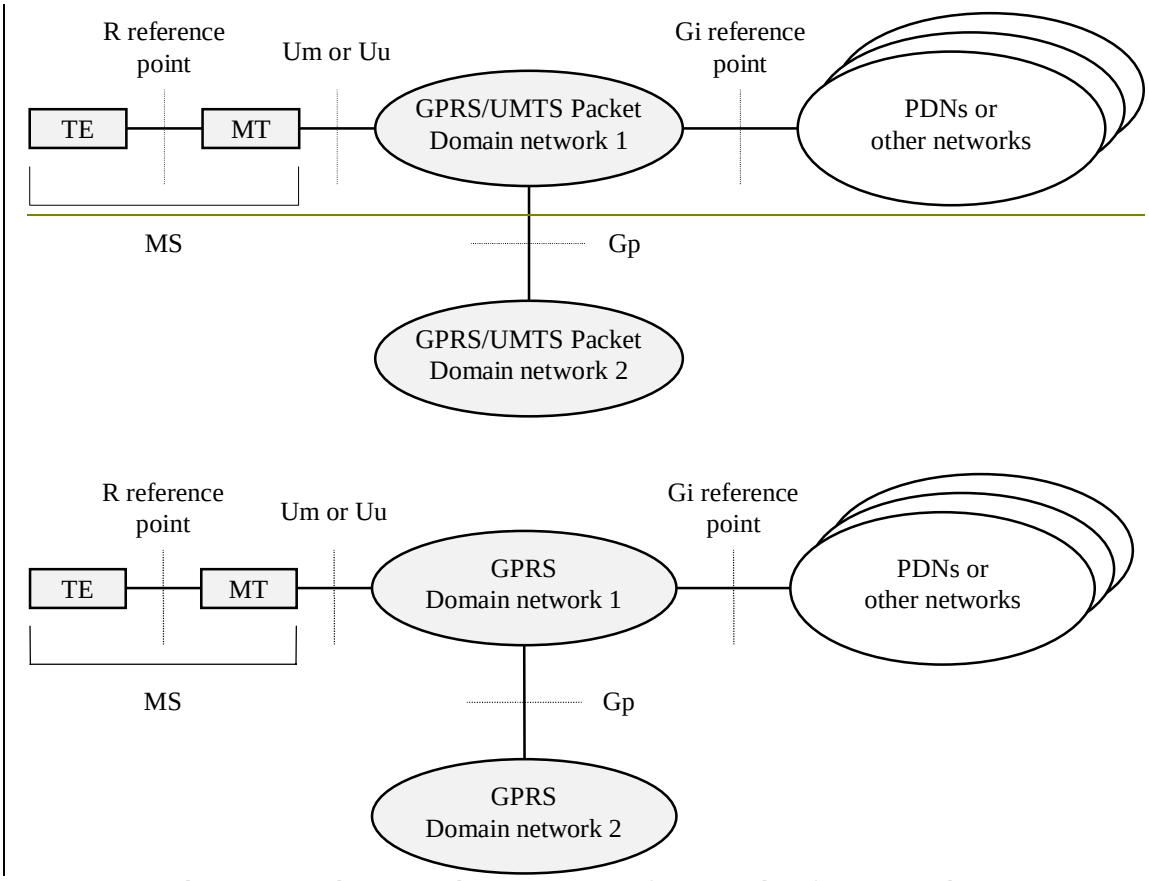


Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points

There may be more than a single network interface to several different packet data (or other) networks. These networks may both differ in ownership as well as in communications protocol (e.g., X.25, TCP/IP etc.). The network operator should define and negotiate interconnect with each external (PDN or other) network.

5.2 Network Interworking

Network interworking is required whenever a packet domain PLMN and any other network are involved in the execution of a service request. With reference to Figure 1, interworking takes place through the Gi reference point and the Gp interface.

The internal mechanism for conveying the PDP PDU through the PLMN is managed by the PLMN network operator and is not apparent to the data user. The use of the packet domain data service may have an impact on and increase the transfer time normally found for a message when communicated through a fixed packet data network.

5.2.1 PSPDN Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with PSPDN networks. The interworking may be either direct or through a transit network (e.g., ISDN). In GSM, GPRS shall support both X.121 [38] and E.164 [30] addresses.

The packet domain shall provide support for X.25 virtual circuits and X.25 fast select. X.75 [37] or X.75' [48] may be used for interworking with X.25 PDNs.

The packet domain TEs have addresses provided by the packet domain service operator and belong to the packet domain. The PSPDN TE sends data to the packet domain TE by use of the packet domain PLMN DNIC (Data Network Identification Code) or equivalent that uniquely identifies the packet domain network.

5.2.2 Internet (IP) Interworking

The packet domain shall support interworking with networks based on the internet protocol (IP). IP is defined in RFC 791 [40]. The packet domain may provide compression of the TCP/IP header when an IP-datagram is used within the context of a TCP connection.

In a similar way to the PSPDN X.25 case, the packet domain PLMN service is an IP domain, and mobile terminals offered service by a service provider may be globally addressable through the network operator's addressing scheme.

5.3 High-Level Functions

The following list gives the logical functions performed within the packet domain network. Several functional groupings (meta-functions) are defined which each encompasses a number of individual functions:

- Network Access Control Functions.
- Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions.
- Mobility Management Functions.
- Logical Link Management Functions (~~GPRS~~ GSM only).
- Radio Resource Management Functions.
- Network Management Functions.

5.3.1 Network Access Control Functions

Network access is the means by which a user is connected to a telecommunication network in order to use the services and/or facilities of that network. An access protocol is a defined set of procedures that enables the user to employ the services and/or facilities of the network.

User network access may occur from either the mobile side or the fixed side of the network. The fixed network interface may support multiple access protocols to external data networks, for example X.25 or IP. The set of access protocols to be supported is determined by the PLMN operator.

Individual PLMN administrations may require specific access-control procedures in order to limit the set of users permitted to access the network, or to restrict the capabilities of individual users, for example by limiting the type of service available to an individual subscriber. Such access control procedures are beyond the scope of the specifications.

In addition to the standard data transfer, the packet domain may support anonymous access to the network. The service allows an MS to exchange data packets with a predefined host that can be addressed by the supported interworking protocols. Only a limited number of destination PDP addresses can be used within this service. IMSI or IMEI shall not be used when accessing the network thus guaranteeing a high level of anonymity. Therefore, no authentication and ciphering functionalities are foreseen for anonymous access.

[S1 has decided that anonymous access shall not be supported in UMTS.]

5.3.1.1 Registration Function

Registration is the means by which a user's Mobile Id is associated with the user's packet data protocol(s) and address(es) within the PLMN, and with the user's access point(s) to the external PDP network. The association can be static, i.e., stored in an HLR, or dynamic, i.e., allocated on a per need basis.

5.3.1.2 Authentication and Authorisation Function

This function performs the identification and authentication of the service requester, and the validation of the service request type to ensure that the user is authorised to use the particular network services. The authentication function is performed in association with the Mobility Management functions.

5.3.1.3 Admission Control Function

The purpose of admission control is to calculate which network resources are required to provide the quality of service (QoS) requested, determine if those resources are available, and then reserve those resources. Admission control is performed in association with the Radio Resource Management functions in order to estimate the radio resource requirements within each cell.

5.3.1.4 Message Screening Function

A screening function concerned with filtering out unauthorised or unsolicited messages is required. This should be supported through packet filtering functions. [It is FFS if/how user-controlled screening can be provided by utilising TFTs.]

5.3.1.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

This function adapts data packets received / transmitted from / to terminal equipment to a form suitable for transmission across the packet domain network.

5.3.1.6 Charging Data Collection Function

This function collects data necessary to support subscription and/or traffic fees.

5.3.2 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functions

A route is an ordered list of nodes used for the transfer of messages within and between the PLMN(s). Each route consists of the originating node, zero or more relay nodes and the destination node. Routeing is the process of determining and using, in accordance with a set of rules, the route for transmission of a message within and between the PLMN(s).

5.3.2.1 Relay Function

The relay function is the means by which a node forwards data received from one node to the next node in the route.

5.3.2.2 Routeing Function

The routeing function determines the network node to which a message should be forwarded and the underlying service(s) used to reach that GPRS Support Node (GSN), using the destination address of the message. The routeing function selects the transmission path for the "next hop" in the route.

Data transmission between GSNs may occur across external data networks that provide their own internal routeing functions, for example X.25, Frame Relay or ATM networks.

5.3.2.3 Address Translation and Mapping Function

Address translation is the conversion of one address to another address of a different type. Address translation may be used to convert an external network protocol address into an internal network address that can be used for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s).

Address mapping is used to map a network address to another network address of the same type for the routeing and relaying of messages within and between the PLMN(s), for example to forward packets from one network node to another.

5.3.2.4 Encapsulation Function

Encapsulation is the addition of address and control information to a data unit for routeing packets within and between the PLMN(s). Decapsulation is the removal of the addressing and control information from a packet to reveal the original data unit.

Encapsulation and decapsulation are performed between the support nodes of the packet domain PLMN(s), and between the serving support node and the MS.

5.3.2.5 Tunnelling Function

Tunnelling is the transfer of encapsulated data units within and between the PLMN(s) from the point of encapsulation to the point of decapsulation. A tunnel is a two-way point-to-point path. Only the tunnel endpoints are identified.

5.3.2.6 Compression Function

The compression function optimises use of radio path capacity by transmitting as little of the SDU (i.e., the exterior PDP PDU) as possible while at the same time as preserving the information contained within it. Only IP header compression is supported in UMTS.

5.3.2.7 Ciphering Function

The ciphering function preserves the confidentiality of user data and signalling across the radio channels and inherently protects the PLMN from intruders.

5.3.2.8 Domain Name Server Function

The Domain Name Server function resolves logical GSN names to GSN addresses. This function is standard Internet functionality according to RFC 1034 [43], which allows to resolve any name for GSNs and other nodes within the packet domain PLMN backbone networks.

5.3.3 Mobility Management Functions

The mobility management functions are used to keep track of the current location of an MS within the PLMN or within another PLMN.

5.3.4 Logical Link Management Functions ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

Logical link management functions are concerned with the maintenance of a communication channel between an individual MS and the PLMN across the radio interface. These functions involve the co-

ordination of link state information between the MS and the PLMN as well as the supervision of data transfer activity over the logical link.

Refer to GSM 04.64 [15] for further information.

5.3.4.1 Logical Link Establishment Function

Logical link establishment is performed when the MS attaches to the PS services.

5.3.4.2 Logical Link Maintenance Functions

Logical link maintenance functions supervise the logical link status and control link state changes.

5.3.4.3 Logical Link Release Function

The logical link release function is used to de-allocate resources associated with the logical link connection.

5.3.5 Radio Resource Management Functions

Radio resource management functions are concerned with the allocation and maintenance of radio communication paths, and is performed by the Access Network. Refer to GSM 03.64 for further information on the GSM ~~GPRS~~ radio. Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the UMTS radio.

5.3.6 Network Management Functions

Network management functions provide mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

5.4 Logical Architecture

The packet domain Core Network functionality is logically implemented on two network nodes, the Serving GPRS Support Node and the Gateway GPRS Support Node. ~~The GPRS support nodes originating from GPRS evolve to UMTS network nodes. Therefore, the name GPRS Support Node is used even if the node provides UMTS functionality only.~~ It is necessary to name a number of new interfaces. No inference should be drawn about the physical configuration on an interface from Figure 2.

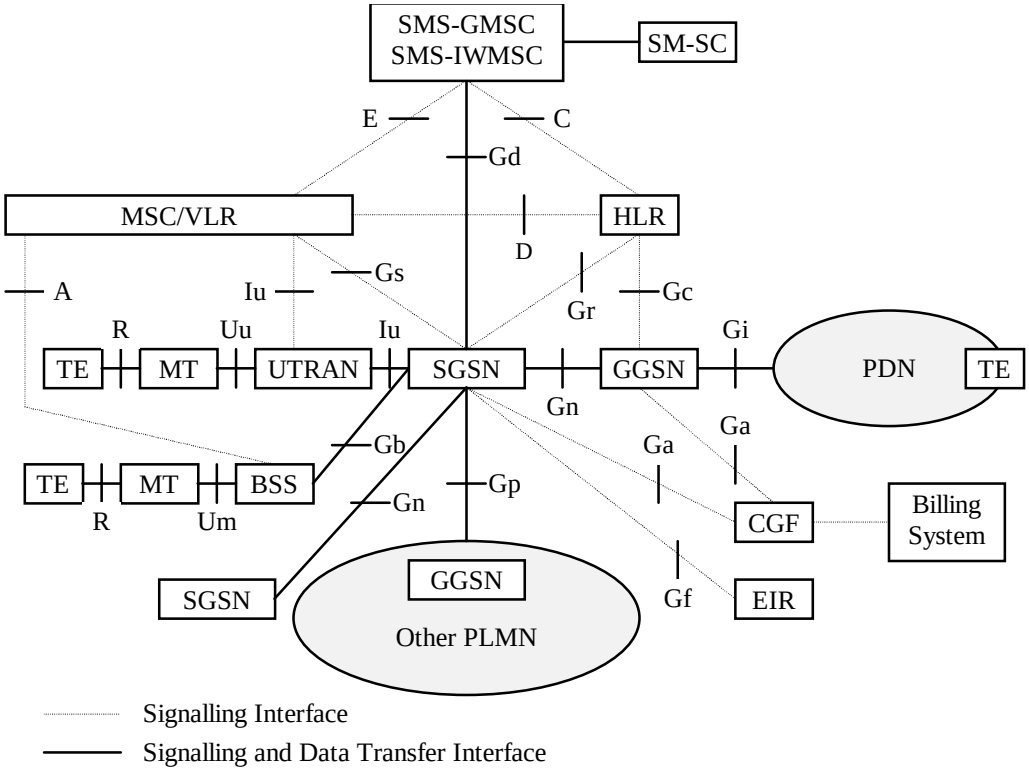


Figure 2: Overview of the Packet Domain Logical Architecture

5.4.1 Packet Domain Core Network Nodes

A GPRS Support Node (GSN) contains functionality required to support GPRS functionality for GSM and/or ~~to support~~ UMTS ~~packet domain functionality~~. In one PLMN, there may be more than one GSN.

The Gateway GPRS Support Node (GGSN) is the node that is accessed by the packet data network due to evaluation of the PDP address. It contains routeing information for attached GPRS users. The routeing information is used to tunnel N-PDUs to the MS's current point of attachment, i.e., the Serving GPRS Support Node. The GGSN may request location information from the HLR via the optional Gc interface. The GGSN is the first point of PDN interconnection with a GSM PLMN supporting GPRS (i.e., the Gi reference point is supported by the GGSN). GGSN functionality is common for GSM~~GPRS~~ and ~~for the~~ UMTS ~~packet domain~~.

The Serving GPRS Support Node (SGSN) is the node that is serving the MS. The SGSN supports GPRS for GSM (i.e., the Gb interface is supported by the SGSN) and/or UMTS (i.e., the Iu interface is supported by the SGSN). At GPRS attach, the SGSN establishes a mobility management context containing information pertaining to e.g., mobility and security for the MS. At PDP Context Activation, the SGSN establishes a PDP context, to be used for routeing purposes, with the GGSN that the subscriber will be using.

The SGSN and GGSN functionalities may be combined in the same physical node, or they may reside in different physical nodes. SGSN and GGSN contain IP or other (operator's selection, e.g., ATM-SVC) routeing functionality, and they may be interconnected with IP routers. When SGSN and GGSN are in different PLMNs, they are interconnected via the Gp interface. The Gp interface provides the functionality of the Gn interface, plus security functionality required for inter-PLMN communication. The security functionality is based on mutual agreements between operators.

The SGSN may send location information to the MSC/VLR via the optional Gs interface. The SGSN may receive paging requests from the MSC/VLR via the Gs interface.

The SGSN interfaces with the GSM-SCF for optional CAMEL cost control. Depending on the result from the CAMEL interaction, the session and packet data transfer may proceed normally. This also applies if the SGSN does not support CAMEL interaction. Otherwise, interaction with the GSM-SCF

continues as described in 3G TS 23.078 [8b]. Only the GSM-SCF interworking points are indicated in the signalling procedures in this specification.

5.4.2 Packet Domain PLMN Backbone Networks

There are two kinds of backbone networks. These are called:

- intra-PLMN backbone network; and
- inter-PLMN backbone network.

The intra-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs within the same PLMN.

The inter-PLMN backbone network is the IP network interconnecting GSNs and intra-PLMN backbone networks in different PLMNs.

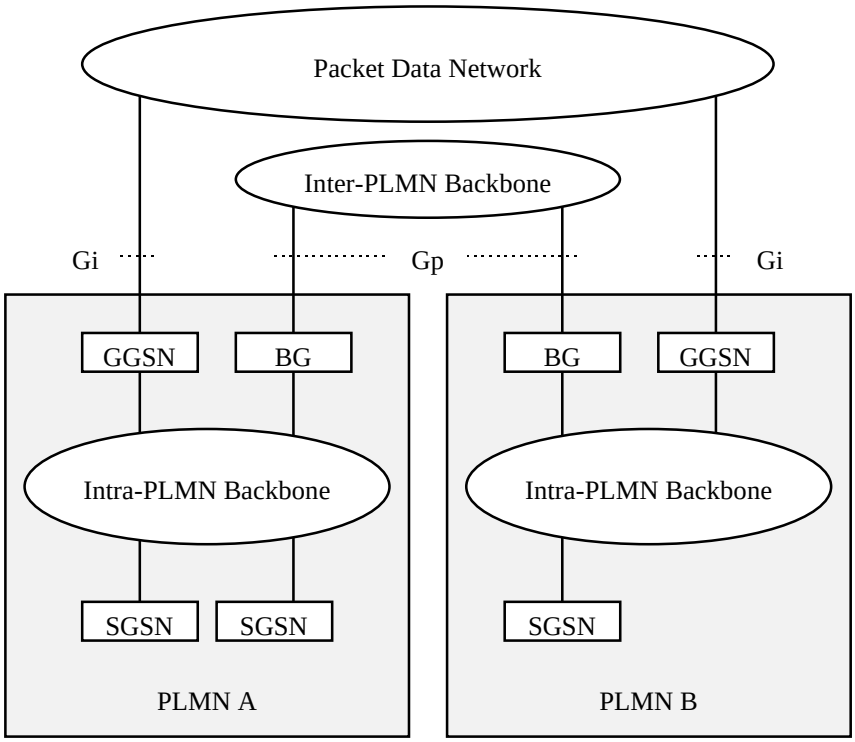


Figure 3: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks

Every intra-PLMN backbone network is a private IP network intended for packet domain data and signalling only. A private IP network is an IP network to which some access control mechanism is applied in order to achieve a required level of security. Two intra-PLMN backbone networks are connected via the Gp interface using Border Gateways (BGs) and an inter-PLMN backbone network. The inter-PLMN backbone network is selected by a roaming agreement that includes the BG security functionality. The BG is not defined within the scope of the packet domain. The inter-PLMN backbone can be a Packet Data Network, e.g., the public Internet or a leased line.

5.4.3 HLR

The HLR contains packet domain subscription data and routeing information. The HLR is accessible from the SGSN via the Gr interface and from the GGSN via the Gc interface. For roaming MSs, HLR may be in a different PLMN than the current SGSN.

5.4.4 SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC

The SMS-GMSC and SMS-IWMSC are connected to the SGSN via the Gd interface to enable the SGSN to support SMS.

5.4.5 ~~GPRS~~ Mobile Stations (GSM only)

A GSM GPRS MS can operate in one of three modes of operation. The mode of operation depends on the services that the MS is attached to, i.e., only GPRS or both GPRS and other GSM services, and upon the MS's capabilities to operate GPRS and other GSM services simultaneously.

- Class-A mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, and the MS supports simultaneous operation of GPRS and other GSM services.
- Class-B mode of operation: The MS is attached to both GPRS and other GSM services, but the MS can only operate one set of services at a time.
- Class-C mode of operation: The MS is exclusively attached to GPRS services.

The three modes of operation are defined in 3G TS 22.060.

NOTE: Other GSM technical specifications may refer to the MS modes of operation as GPRS class-A MS, GPRS class-B MS, and GPRS class-C MS.

5.4.6 ~~UMTS~~ Mobile Stations (UMTS only)

A UMTS mobile station can operate in one of three modes of operation. However, these operation modes are different from the ones in GSM GPRS due to the capabilities of UTRAN to multiplex CS and PS connections, due to paging co-ordination for PS services and CS services that are offered by the CN or the UTRAN (as defined in subclause "Paging Co-ordination for UMTS"), etc. The different UMTS mobile station operation modes are defined as follows:

- PS/CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to both the PS domain and CS domain, and the MS is capable of simultaneously operating PS services and CS services. This mode of operation is equivalent to the GSM GPRS class-A mode of operation.
- PS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the PS domain only and may only operate services of the PS domain. However, this does not prevent CS-like services to be offered over the PS domain (e.g., VoIP). This mode of operation is equivalent to the GSM GPRS class-C mode of operation.
- CS mode of operation: The MS is attached to the CS domain only and may only operate services of the CS domain. However, this does not prevent PS-like service to be offered over the CS domain. The CS mode of operation is outside the scope of this specification.

All combinations of different operation modes as described for GSM ~~GPRS~~ and UMTS MSs shall be allowed for GSM ~~GPRS~~ and UMTS multisystem terminals.

5.4.7 Charging Gateway Functionality

The Charging Gateway Functionality (CGF) is described in GSM 12.15 [28a].

5.5 Assignment of Functions to General Logical Architecture

The functions identified in the functional model are assigned to the logical architecture.

Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture

Function	2G-MS	3G-MS	BSS	UTRAN	2G-SGSN	3G-SGSN	GGSN	HLR
Network Access Control:								
Registration								X
Authentication and Authorisation	X	X			X	X		X
Admission Control	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Message Screening							X	
Packet Terminal Adaptation	X	X						
Charging Data Collection					X	X	X	
Packet Routeing & Transfer:								
Relay	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Routeing	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Address Translation and Mapping	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Encapsulation	X	X		X	X	X	X	
Tunnelling				X	X	X	X	
Compression	X	X		X	X			
Ciphering	X	X		X	X			X
Mobility Management:	X	X			X	X	X	X
Logical Link Management:								
Logical Link Establishment	X				X			
Logical Link Maintenance	X				X			
Logical Link Release	X				X			
Radio Resource Management:	X	X	X	X	X			

5.6 User and Control Planes

5.6.1 User Plane ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

5.6.1.1 MS – GGSN

The user plane consists of a layered protocol structure providing user information transfer, along with associated information transfer control procedures (e.g., flow control, error detection, error correction and error recovery). The user plane independence of the Network Subsystem (NSS) platform from the underlying radio interface is preserved via the Gb interface. The following user plane is used in GSM~~GPRS~~:

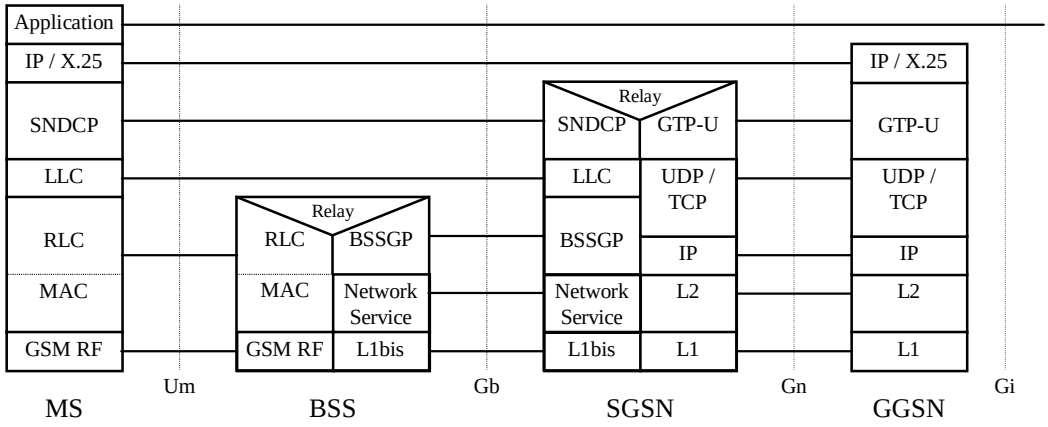


Figure 4: User Plane for GSM~~GPRS~~

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between GPRS Support Nodes in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by the GPRS Tunnelling Protocol. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060 [26].

- TCP carries GTP PDUs in the backbone network for protocols that need a reliable data link (e.g., X.25), and UDP carries GTP PDUs for protocols that do not need a reliable data link (e.g., IP). TCP provides flow control and protection against lost and corrupted GTP PDUs. UDP provides protection against corrupted GTP PDUs. TCP is defined in RFC 793 [42]. UDP is defined in RFC 768 [39].

- IP: This is the backbone network protocol used for routeing user data and control signalling. The backbone network may initially be based on the IP version 4 protocol. Ultimately, IP version 6 shall be used. IP version 4 is defined in RFC 791.

- Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Protocol (SNDCP): This transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. SNDCP is specified in GSM 04.65 [16].

- Logical Link Control (LLC): This layer provides a highly reliable ciphered logical link. LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols in order to allow introduction of alternative GPRS radio solutions with minimum changes to the NSS. LLC is specified in GSM 04.64.

- Relay: In the BSS, this function relays LLC PDUs between the Um and Gb interfaces. In the SGSN, this function relays PDP PDUs between the Gb and Gn interfaces.

- Base Station System GPRS Protocol (BSSGP): This layer conveys routeing- and QoS-related information between BSS and SGSN. BSSGP does not perform error correction. BSSGP is specified in GSM 08.18 [21].

- Network Service (NS): This layer transports BSSGP PDUs. NS is based on the Frame Relay connection between BSS and SGSN, and may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. NS is specified in GSM 08.16 [20].

- RLC/MAC: This layer contains two functions: The Radio Link Control function provides a radio-solution-dependent reliable link. The Medium Access Control function controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel, and the mapping of LLC frames onto the GSM physical channel. RLC/MAC is defined in GSM 04.60 [14].

- GSM RF: As defined in GSM 05 series.

5.6.1.2 GSN – GSN

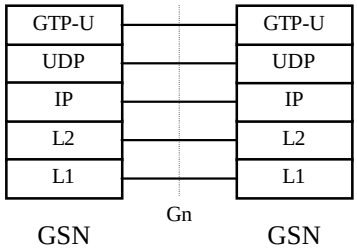


Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers user data between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.2 User Plane ~~for (~~UMTS only)

5.6.2.1 MS – GGSN

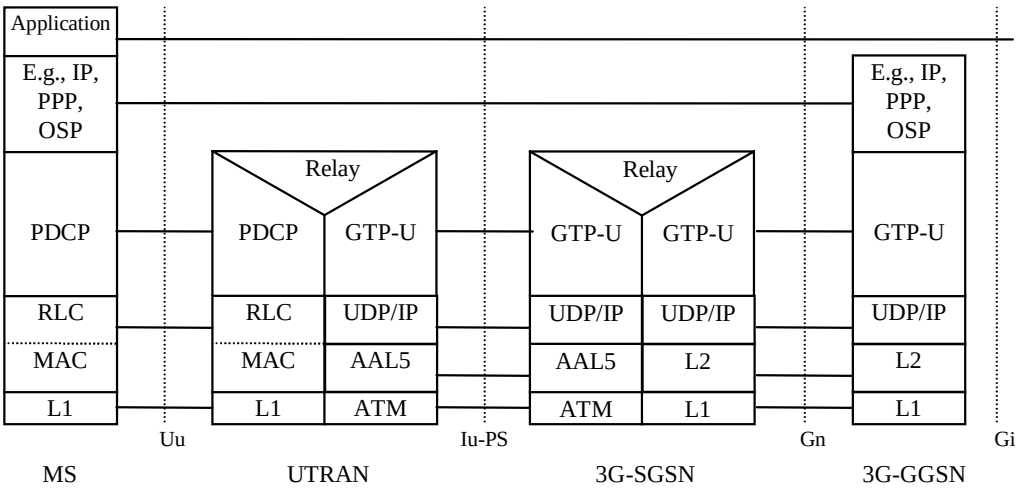


Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS

Legend:

- Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP): This transmission functionality maps higher-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol transparency for higher-layer protocols. PDCP supports e.g., IPv4, PPP, OSP, and IPv6. Introduction of new higher-layer protocols shall be possible without any changes to

the radio-interface protocols. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is specified in 3G TS 25.323.

NOTE: Unlike in GSM~~GPRS~~, user data compression is not supported in UMTS, because the data compression efficiency depends on the type of user data, and because many applications compress data before transmission. It is difficult to check the type of data in the PDCP layer, and compressing all user data requires too much processing.

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the user plane (GTP-U): This protocol tunnels user data between UTRAN and the 3G-SGSN, and between the GSNs in the backbone network. All PDP PDUs shall be encapsulated by GTP. GTP is specified in 3G TS 29.060.
- UDP/IP: These are the backbone network protocols used for routeing user data and control signalling.
- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM): The information to be transmitted is divided into fixed-size cells (53 octets), multiplexed, and transmitted. ATM is specified in I.361 [59]. [FFS: add AAL5 description.]
- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol provides logical link control over the radio interface. There may be several simultaneous RLC links per MS. Each link is identified by a Bearer Id. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.
- Medium Access Control (MAC): The MAC protocol controls the access signalling (request and grant) procedures for the radio channel. MAC is specified in 3G TS 25.321.

5.6.2.2 GSN – GSN

This user plane is the same as for GSM~~GPRS~~, see subclause "GSN – GSN" above.

5.6.3 Control Plane

The control plane consists of protocols for control and support of the user plane functions:

- controlling the packet domain network access connections, such as attaching to and detaching from the packet domain network;
- controlling the attributes of an established network access connection, such as activation of a PDP address;
- controlling the routeing path of an established network connection in order to support user mobility; and
- controlling the assignment of network resources to meet changing user demands.

The following control planes are used in both GSM ~~GPRS~~ and UMTS unless specifically indicated:

5.6.3.1 MS – SGSN ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

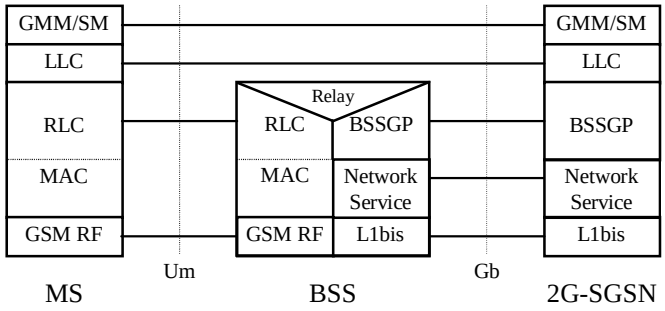


Figure 7: Control Plane MS – 2G-SGSN

Legend:

- GPRS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): This protocol supports mobility management functionality such as GPRS attach, GPRS detach, security, routeing area update, location update, PDP context activation, and PDP context deactivation, as described in clauses "Mobility Management Functionality" and "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

5.6.3.2 MS – SGSN ~~for~~ (UMTS only)

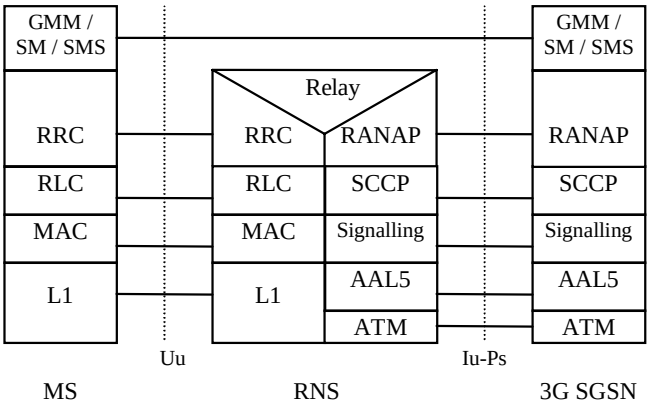


Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN

Legend:

- UMTS Mobility Management and Session Management (GMM/SM): GMM supports mobility management functionality such as attach, detach, security, and routeing area update, as described in clause "Mobility Management Functionality". SM supports PDP context activation and PDP context deactivation, as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

- SMS supports the mobile-originated and mobile-terminated short message service described in 3G TS 23.040.

- Radio Access Network Application Protocol (RANAP): This protocol encapsulates and carries higher-layer signalling, handles signalling between the 3G-SGSN and UTRAN, and manages the GTP connections on the Iu interface. RANAP is specified in 3G TS 25.413. The layers below RANAP are defined in 3G TS 23.121.

- Radio Link Control (RLC): The RLC protocol offers logical link control over the radio interface for the transmission of higher layer-signalling messages and SMS. RLC is defined in 3G TS 25.322.

5.6.3.3 SGSN - HLR

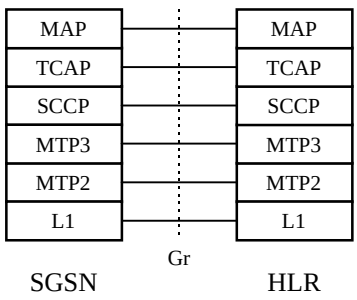


Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as defined in 3G TS 29.002 [23], with enhancements for GPRS as described in the present document.

- TCAP, SCCP, MTP3, and MTP2 are the same protocols as used to support MAP in CS PLMNs.

5.6.3.4 SGSN - MSC/VLR

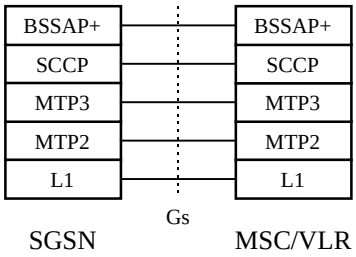


Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR

Legend:

- Base Station System Application Part + (BSSAP+): A subset of BSSAP procedures supports signalling between the SGSN and MSC/VLR, as described in subclause "Mobility Management Functionality" and in 3G TS 29.018 [25]. The requirements for the lower layers are specified in 3G TS 29.016 [24].

5.6.3.5 SGSN - EIR

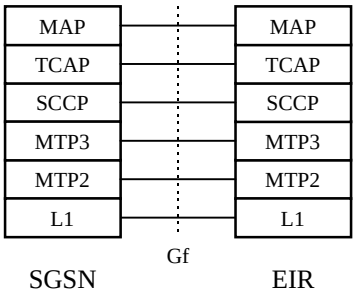


Figure 11: Control Plane SGSN - EIR

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and the EIR, as described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

5.6.3.6 SGSN - SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC

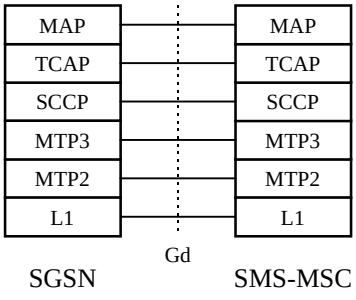


Figure 12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IWMSC

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling between the SGSN and SMS-GMSC or SMS-IWMSC, as described in subclause "Point-to-point Short Message Service".

5.6.3.7 GSN - GSN

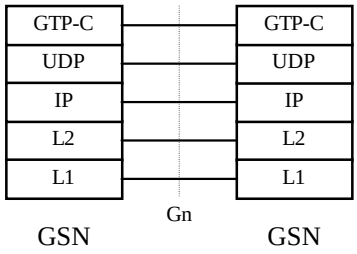


Figure 13: Control Plane GSN - GSN

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between SGSNs and GGSNs, and between SGSNs, in the backbone network.

- User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol transfers signalling messages between GSNs. UDP is defined in RFC 768.

5.6.3.8 GGSN - HLR

This optional signalling path allows a GGSN to exchange signalling information with an HLR. There are two alternative ways to implement this signalling path:

- If a SS7 interface is installed in the GGSN, the MAP protocol can be used between the GGSN and an HLR.

- If a SS7 interface is not installed in the GGSN, any GSN with a SS7 interface installed in the same PLMN as the GGSN can be used as a GTP-to-MAP protocol converter to allow signalling between the GGSN and an HLR.

5.6.3.8.1 MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

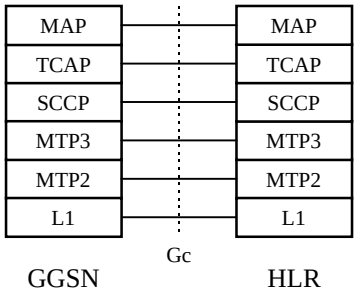


Figure 14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP

Legend:

- Mobile Application Part (MAP): This protocol supports signalling exchange with the HLR, as described in subclause "Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure".

5.6.3.8.2 GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling

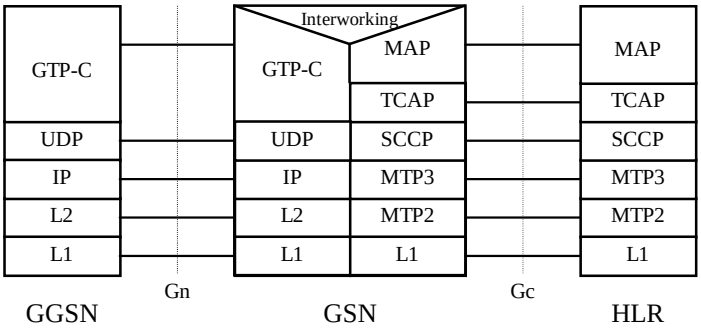


Figure 15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP

Legend:

- GPRS Tunnelling Protocol for the control plane (GTP-C): This protocol tunnels signalling messages between the GGSN and the protocol-converting GSN in the backbone network.

- Interworking: This function provides interworking between GTP and MAP for GGSN - HLR signalling.

5.7 Functionality Needed for Mobile IP Using IPv4

To support the optional Mobile IP services, see 3G TS 23.121 [54], efficiently in the packet domain, Foreign Agent (FA) functionality needs to be provided in the GGSN. The interface between the GGSN and FA, including the mapping between the care of IP address and the GTP tunnel in the PLMN is assumed not be standardized as the GGSN and FA are considered to be one integrated node.

Mobile IP services need a Home Agent (HA). The HA is a router that tunnels datagrams to an FA. The FA de-tunnels the datagrams and sends them towards the MS that is in a PLMN. The HA maintains current location information for each of the departed users. The location of the HA is outside the scope of the 3GPP specifications.

The FA and HA functionality is specified in RFC 2002 [46].

6 Mobility Management Functionality

6.1 Definition of Mobility Management States

The Mobility Management (MM) activities related to a subscriber are characterised by one of three different MM states. In GSM, ~~T~~the MM states for a GPRS subscriber are IDLE, STANDBY, and READY~~,~~ ~~, and~~ In UMTS, the MM states for a ~~UMTS~~ GPRS subscriber are PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED. Each state describes a certain level of functionality and information allocated. The information sets held at the MS and the SGSN are denoted MM context.

In the non-anonymous access case, the MM state relates only to GPRS MM activities of a subscriber. The MM state is independent of the number and state of PDP contexts for that subscriber.

In the anonymous access case, the MM state relates to GPRS MM activities of an MS represented only by an Auxiliary TLLI.

6.1.1 Mobility Management States ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

6.1.1.1 IDLE (GPRS) State

In GPRS IDLE state, the subscriber is not attached to the GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routeing information for the subscriber. The subscriber-related mobility management procedures are not performed.

PLMN selection and GSM~~PRS~~ cell selection and re-selection processes are performed by the MS.

Data transmission to and from the mobile subscriber as well as the paging of the subscriber are not possible. The GPRS MS is seen as not reachable in this case.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the GPRS Attach procedure.

6.1.1.2 STANDBY State

In STANDBY state, the subscriber is attached to GPRS mobility management. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

Pages for data or signalling information transfers may be received. It is also possible to receive pages for the CS services via the SGSN. Data reception and transmission are not possible in this state.

The MS performs GPRS Routeing Area (RA) and GPRS cell selection and re-selection locally. The MS executes mobility management procedures to inform the SGSN when it has entered a new RA. The MS does not inform the SGSN on a change of cell in the same RA. Therefore, the location information in the SGSN MM context contains only the GPRS RAI for MSs in STANDBY state.

The MS may initiate activation or deactivation of PDP contexts while in STANDBY state. A PDP context shall be activated before data can be transmitted or received for this PDP context.

The SGSN may have to send data or signalling information to an MS in STANDBY state. The SGSN then sends a Paging Request in the routeing area where the MS is located if PPF is set. If PPF is cleared, then paging is not done. The MM state in the MS is changed to READY when the MS responds to the page, and in the SGSN when the page response is received. Also, the MM state in the MS is changed to READY when data or signalling information is sent from the MS and, accordingly, the MM state in the SGSN is changed to READY when data or signalling information is received from the MS.

The MS or the network may initiate the GPRS Detach procedure to move to the IDLE state. After expiry of the mobile reachable timer the SGSN may perform an implicit detach in order to return the MM contexts in the SGSN to IDLE state. The MM and PDP contexts may then be deleted.

6.1.1.3 READY State

In READY state, the SGSN MM context corresponds to the STANDBY MM context extended by location information for the subscriber on cell level. The MS performs mobility management procedures to provide the network with the actual selected cell. GPRS cell selection and re-selection is done locally by the MS, or may optionally be controlled by the network.

An identifier of the cell, the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC, is included in the BSSGP header of the data packet from the MS, see GSM 08.18.

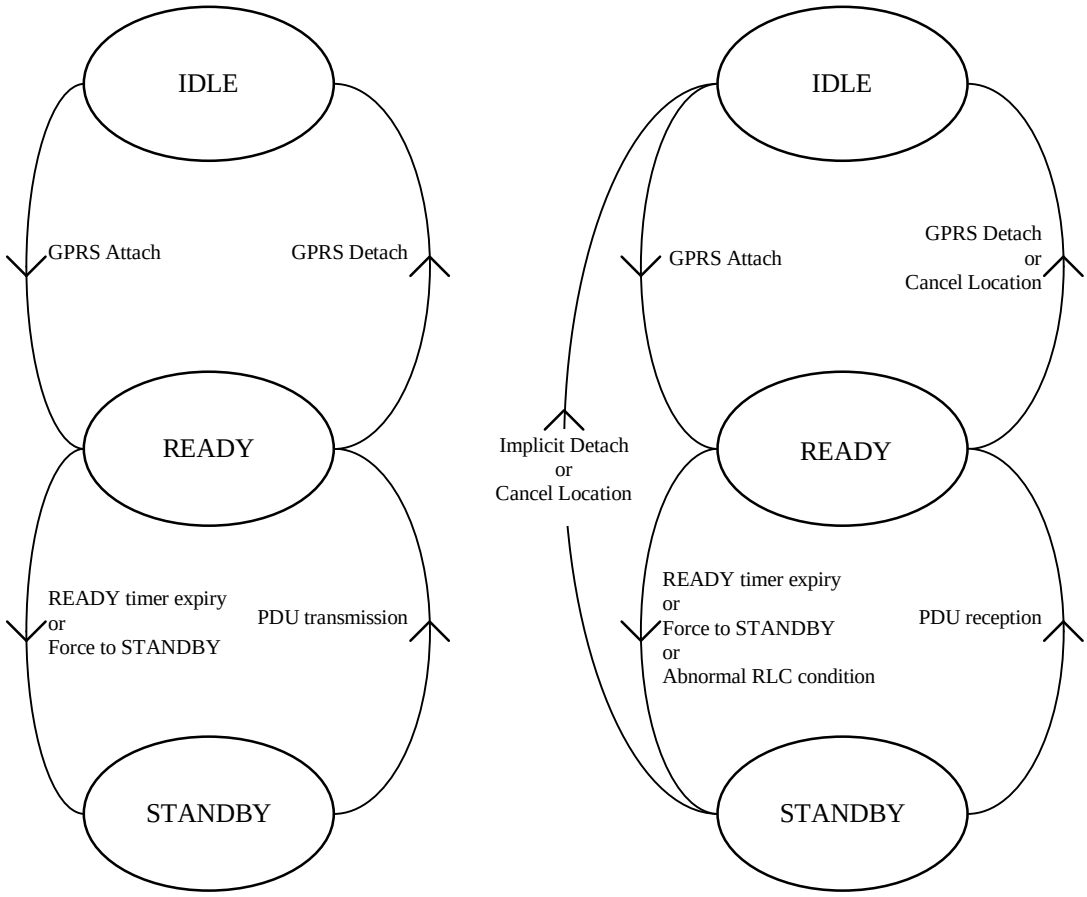
The MS may send and receive PDP PDUs in this state. The network initiates no GPRS pages for an MS in READY state, pages for other services may be done via the SGSN. The SGSN transfers downlink data to the BSS responsible for the subscriber's actual GPRS cell.

The MS may activate or deactivate PDP contexts while in READY state.

Regardless if a radio resource is allocated to the subscriber or not, the MM context remains in the READY state even when there is no data being communicated. The READY state is supervised by a timer. An MM context moves from READY state to STANDBY state when the READY timer expires. In order to move from READY state to IDLE state, the MS initiates the GPRS Detach procedure.

6.1.1.4 State Transitions and Functions

The movement from one state to the next is dependent on the current state (IDLE, STANDBY, or READY) and the event occurred (e.g., GPRS attach).



MM State Model of MS MM State Model of SGSN

Figure 16: Functional Mobility Management State Model

Figure 16 describes the following state transitions:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- GPRS Attach: The MS requests access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN.

Moving from STANDBY to IDLE:

- Implicit Detach: The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN shall return to IDLE and INACTIVE state. The MM and PDP contexts in the SGSN may be deleted. The GGSN PDP contexts shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

Moving from STANDBY to READY:

- PDU transmission: The MS sends an LLC PDU to the SGSN, possibly in response to a page.

- PDU reception: The SGSN receives an LLC PDU from the MS.

Moving from READY to STANDBY:

- READY timer expiry: The MS and the SGSN MM contexts return to STANDBY state.

- Force to STANDBY: The SGSN indicates an immediate return to STANDBY state before the READY timer expires.

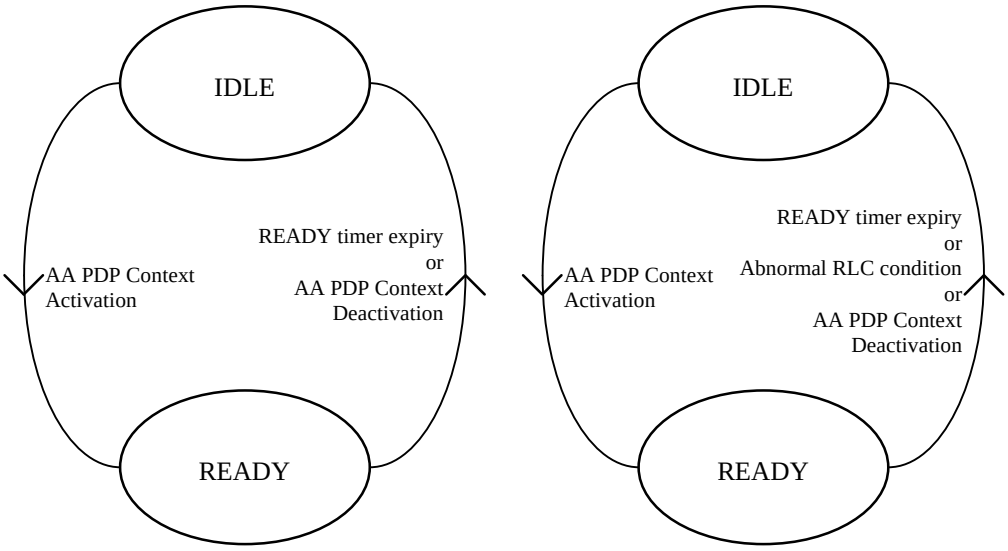
- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context returns to STANDBY state in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- GPRS Detach: The MS or the network requests that the MM contexts return to IDLE state and that the PDP contexts return to INACTIVE state. The SGSN may delete the MM and PDP contexts. The PDP contexts in the GGSN shall be deleted.

- Cancel Location: The SGSN receives a MAP Cancel Location message from the HLR, and removes the MM and PDP contexts.

For anonymous access, a reduced Mobility Management State Model consisting of IDLE and READY states is used. The AA MM state machine is independently handled by the MS and the network and may coexist with an IMSI-based MM state machine. Several AA MM state machines may coexist in the same MS and SGSN simultaneously.



AA MM State Model of MS AA MM State Model of SGSN

Figure 17: Functional Anonymous Access Mobility Management State Model

Figure 17 describes the following state transitions for anonymous access:

Moving from IDLE to READY:

- AA PDP Context Activation: The MS requests an anonymous access and a logical link to an SGSN is initiated. MM contexts are established at the MS and SGSN, and PDP contexts are established at the MS, the SGSN, and a GGSN.

Moving from READY to IDLE:

- READY timer expiry: The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN are deleted.

- Abnormal RLC condition: The SGSN MM context shall be deleted in case of delivery problems on the radio interface or in case of irrecoverable disruption of a radio transmission.

- AA PDP Context Deactivation: The network (either the SGSN or the GGSN) initiates the AA PDP Context Deactivation procedure, e.g., due to malicious usage of the anonymous service. The MM and PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN shall be deleted.

6.1.2 Mobility Management States ~~for (~~UMTS only)

6.1.2.1 PMM-DETACHED State

In the PMM-DETACHED state there is no communication between the MS and the 3G-SGSN. The MS and SGSN contexts hold no valid location or routeing information for the MS. The MS MM state machine does not react on system information related to the 3G-SGSN. The MS is not reachable by a 3G-SGSN, as the MS location is not known.

In order to establish MM contexts in the MS and the SGSN, the MS shall perform the ~~PS~~GPRS Attach procedure. When the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing the ~~PS~~GPRS attach, the state changes to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN and in the MS. The PS signalling connection is made up of two parts; an RRC connection and an Iu connection.

6.1.2.2 PMM-IDLE State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a routeing area. Paging is needed in order to reach the MS, e.g., for signalling. The MS and SGSN have established MM contexts as described in clause "Information Storage".

The MS shall perform a routeing area update if the RA changes. Signalling towards the HLR is needed if the 3G-SGSN does not have an MM context for this MS.

The MS and 3G-SGSN shall enter the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

~~PS~~GPRS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED. The 3G-SGSN may perform an implicit ~~PS~~GPRS detach any time after the MS reachable timer expiry. The MS's MM context is deleted, preferably after a certain (implementation dependent) time. The HLR may be informed about the deletion (see subclause "Purge Function").

6.1.2.3 PMM-CONNECTED State

The MS location is known in the 3G-SGSN with an accuracy of a serving RNC. In the PMM-CONNECTED state, the location of the MS is tracked by the serving RNC. The MS performs the routeing area update procedure when RAI in the MM system information changes.

When an MS and a 3G-SGSN are in the PMM-CONNECTED state, a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

In the 3G-SGSN, PS signalling connection release or failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC" changes the state to PMM-IDLE.

The MS shall enter the PMM-IDLE state when its PS signalling connection to the 3G-SGSN has been released or broken. This release or failure is explicitly indicated by the RNC to the MS or detected by the MS (RRC connection failure). The radio connection shall also be released if a URA update fails because of "RRC connection not established", or if the URA update timer expires while the MS is out of coverage.

After a signalling procedure (e.g., routeing area update), the 3G-SGSN may decide to release the PS signalling connection, after which the state is changed to PMM-IDLE.

~~PS~~GPRS detach changes the state to PMM-DETACHED.

6.1.2.4 State Transitions and Functions

The figure below introduces the MM states for a GPRS~~UMTS~~ subscriber (PMM). The states and activations are further described below.

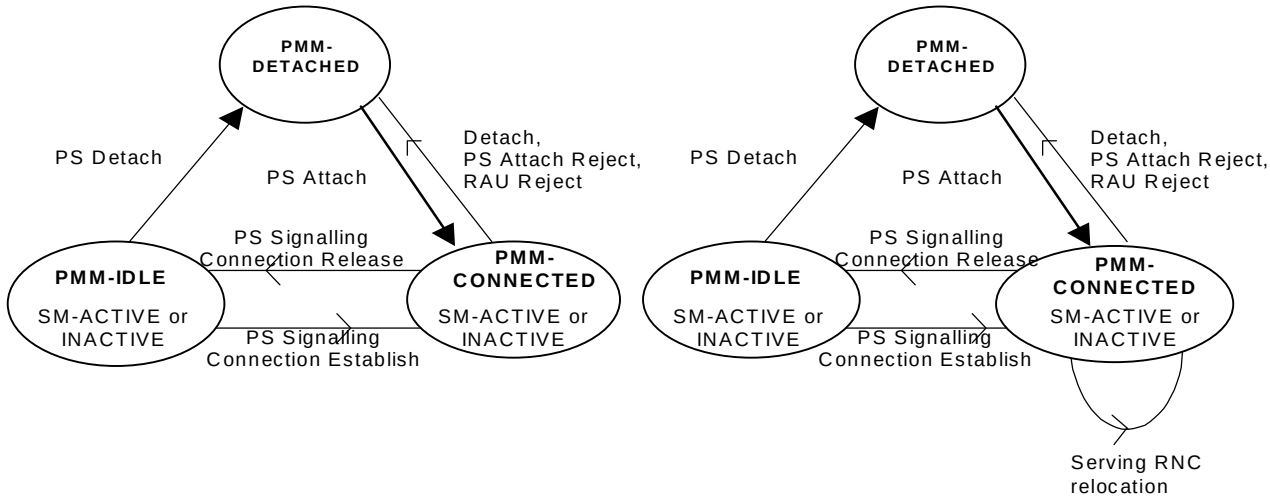


Figure 18: PMM State Model

NOTE: In both the PMM-IDLE and the PMM-CONNECTED states, session management may or may not have activated a PDP context. The consequence is that in PMM-CONNECTED state, only a signalling connection may be established. In PMM-IDLE state, a PDP context may be established, but no corresponding connection over the Iu interface nor the radio are established.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- ~~PS~~GPRS Attach: Th MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN for performing a ~~PS~~GPRS attach. If the ~~PS~~GPRS attach is accepted an MM context is created in MS.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- ~~PS~~GPRS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a ~~PS~~GPRS detach or after the network-initiated ~~PS~~GPRS detach is performed. The MM context in the MS may be deleted.

- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

- ~~PS~~GPRS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a ~~PS~~GPRS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN. The MM context may be deleted.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the MS:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established between the MS and the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the MS:

- Implicit ~~PS~~GPRS Detach: The MM context shall locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state, e.g., in the case of removal of the battery, the USIM, or the GSIM from the TE.

Moving from PMM-DETACHED to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- ~~PS~~GPRS Attach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when a PS signalling connection is established between the MS and 3G-SGSN for performing a ~~PS~~GPRS attach. If the ~~PS~~GPRS attach is accepted, an MM context is created in 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- ~~PS~~GPRS Detach: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after the MS has performed a ~~PS~~GPRS detach or after the network-initiated ~~PS~~GPRS detach is performed. The MM context in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted.

- RAU Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when the PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a RAU is rejected.

- ~~PS~~GPRS Attach Reject: The MM context shall move to the PMM-DETACHED state when a PS signalling connection is released between the MS and the 3G-SGSN after a ~~PS~~GPRS attach is rejected by the 3G-SGSN.

Moving from PMM-CONNECTED to PMM-IDLE in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Release: The MM context shall move to the PMM-IDLE state when the PS signalling connection is released.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-CONNECTED in the 3G-SGSN:

- PS Signalling Connection Establishment: The MM context shall move to the PMM-CONNECTED state when the PS signalling connection is established.

Moving from PMM-IDLE to PMM-DETACHED in the 3G-SGSN:

- Implicit ~~PS~~GPRS Detach: The MM context may locally move to the PMM-DETACHED state after expiry of the MS Reachable timer. The MM and PDP context(s) in the 3G-SGSN may be deleted, preferably after an implementation-dependent time.

6.1.2.4.1 Error Cases

In case of an error, the PMM state of the MS and the 3G-SGSN may lose synchronisation. In this case the MS may be in the PMM-IDLE state while the 3G-SGSN is in the PMM-CONNECTED state.

NOTE: The opposite (MS in the PMM-CONNECTED state and SGSN in the PMM-IDLE state) shall never happen because the 3G-SGSN may not have the RAI where the MS is really located, so downlink transfer is impossible until the periodic URA update timer expires.

This situation is recovered by a successful RAU moving the MS to the PMM-CONNECTED state, or by a failed downlink transfer with cause "IMSI unknown in RNC", triggering a paging procedure from the 3G-SGSN.

NOTE: An RNC shall not release the Iu connection if it could not inform the MS that the radio connection was released.

6.2 Mobility Management Timer Functions

6.2.1 READY Timer Function ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

The READY timer function maintains the READY timer in the MS and SGSN. The READY timer controls the time an MS remains in READY state in the MS and the SGSN. The READY timer shall be reset and begin running in the MS when an LLC PDU is transmitted, and in the SGSN when an LLC PDU is correctly received. When the READY timer expires, the MS and SGSN MM contexts shall return to STANDBY state. In case of anonymous access the MM context shall be deleted.

The length of the READY timer shall be the same in the MS and SGSN. The initial length of the READY timer shall be defined by a default value. The SGSN, and only the SGSN, may change the

length of the READY timer by transmitting a new value in the Attach Accept, Routeing Area Update Accept, or AA PDP Context Accept messages.

If the READY timer length is set to zero, the MS shall immediately be forced into STANDBY state. If the timer length is set to all 1s (binary), then the READY timer function shall be deactivated, i.e., the timer no longer runs and the MS remains in READY state.

6.2.2 Periodic RA Update Timer Function

The Periodic RA Update Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the MS. The length of the periodic RA update timer is sent in the Routeing Area Update Accept or Attach Accept message. The periodic RA update timer is unique within an RA. Upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall start a periodic routeing area update procedure.

NOTE: An MS is said to be in packet domain coverage if it can access packet domain services. These services may be provided by GSM ~~GPRS~~ or by UMTS.

If the MS is in coverage but out of packet domain coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires, then, if the MS is ~~CS~~IMSI-attached to a network in network operation mode I, the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started immediately. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was ~~CS~~IMSI-attached, regardless of the network operation mode, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet domain coverage.

If the MS is out of coverage when the periodic RA update timer expires then:

- if the MS is both ~~CS~~IMSI and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode I, then the combined RA / LA update procedure with ~~CS~~IMSI attach requested shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage;

- if the MS is both ~~CS~~IMSI- and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached and returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services in network operation mode II or III, or if a ~~PS~~GPRS only-attached MS returns to coverage in a cell that supports packet-domain services, then the periodic RA update procedure shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage; or

- if the MS returns to coverage in a cell that does not support packet-domain services, and if the MS is ~~CS~~IMSI-attached, then the periodic location update procedure (or other appropriate location update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to coverage in that cell. In addition, and irrespective of whether or not the MS was ~~CS~~IMSI-attached, the periodic RA update procedure (or other appropriate update procedure) shall be started as soon as the MS returns to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost packet-domain coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of packet-domain coverage, then, the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to packet-domain coverage.

If the MS lost coverage but the periodic RA update timer did not expire while out of coverage, then the MS shall not perform the periodic RA update procedure because of the MS's return to coverage.

6.2.3 Mobile Reachable Timer Function

The Mobile Reachable Timer function monitors the periodic RA update procedure in the SGSN. The mobile reachable timer shall be slightly longer than the periodic RA update timer used by an MS.

The mobile reachable timer is stopped when the READY state or PMM-CONNECTED state is entered. The mobile reachable timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY or PMM-IDLE.

If the mobile reachable timer expires, the SGSN shall clear PPF. Typically, in GPRS, this causes the SGSN to stop sending GPRS paging or CS paging messages to the MS, but other features (e.g., MSC/VLR-based call forwarding) may happen immediately. PPF is set when the next activity from the MS is detected. The MM and PDP contexts shall be kept in the SGSN.

When an MS first registers in an SGSN, then PPF is set.

6.3 Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR

The interactions described in this subclause shall be supported if the optional Gs interface is installed.

An association is created between SGSN and MSC/VLR to provide for interactions between SGSN and MSC/VLR. The association is created when the VLR stores the SGSN number and the SGSN stores the VLR number. The association is used for co-ordinating MSs that are both ~~PS~~GPRS-attached and ~~CS~~IMSI-attached.

The association supports the following actions:

- IMSI attach and detach via SGSN. This makes combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI attach and combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI detach possible, thus saving radio resources.
- Co-ordination of LA update and RA update, including periodic updates, thus saving radio resources. A combined RA / LA update is sent from the MS to the SGSN. SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR.
- Paging for a CS connection via the SGSN.
- Alert procedures for non-PS services.
- Identification procedure.
- MM Information procedure.

6.3.1 Administration of the SGSN - MSC/VLR Association

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is created at the following occasions:

- Combined GPRS / IMSI~~CS / PS~~ attach.
- GPRS attach when the MS is already ~~CS~~IMSI-attached.
- Combined RA / LA update when the MS performs ~~CS~~IMSI attach and is already ~~PS~~GPRS-attached.
- Combined RA / LA update when an ~~CS~~IMSI and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS changes from an area of network operation mode II or III to an area of network operation mode I.

The association is initiated by the SGSN. The SGSN creates an association by sending a BSSAP+ message concerning a particular MS to the VLR. To get the VLR number, the SGSN translates the current RAI to a VLR number via a translation table. During a CS connection, an MS in class-B mode of operation (GPRS only) cannot perform ~~PS~~GPRS attach nor routeing area updates, only MSs in class-A mode of operation can perform these procedures. If a ~~PS~~GPRS attach was made during a CS connection, the association shall be initiated by a combined RA / LA update after the CS connection has been released.

The association is updated on the following occasions:

- When an MS changes VLR.
- When an MS changes SGSN.

The association is not updated during a CS connection.

When the MS is in idle mode (see GSM 03.22), the association is updated with the combined RA / LA updates procedure.

In relation with a CS connection, the association is managed in the following way:

MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation:

An MS in class-A or CS/PS mode of operation makes RA updates but no combined RA / LA updates during the CS connection. In the case when the MS changes SGSN, the SGSN (according to normal RA update procedures, see subclause "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update") updates the HLR and the GGSN, but not the VLR, about the new SGSN number.

In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection is released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. The association is also not updated during the CS connection.

After the CS connection has been released, a combined RA / LA update is performed (if there has been a change of RA, or if a ~~PS~~GPRS attach was performed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I), and the association is updated according to combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". If the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, then the MS performs an LA update.

MS in class-B mode of operation (~~GPRS~~ GSM only):

An MS in class-B mode of operation does not make any RA updates during a CS connection. The SGSN number therefore remains the same during the CS connection and needs not be updated in the VLR. In the case when the MS changes MSC during the CS connection, the subscriber data still remains in the old VLR until the CS connection has been released and a combined RA / LA update or LA update is made. Therefore, the VLR number remains the same during the CS connection. After the CS connection has been released, the MS shall perform an RA update and an LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode II or III, or a combined RA / LA update if the RA has changed and the new cell indicates network operation mode I. The association is updated according to the combined RA / LA update procedures, see subclauses "Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update" and "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure".

The SGSN - MSC/VLR association is removed at the following occasions:

- At IMSI detach.
- At GPRS detach.

When the MSC/VLR receives an LA update via the A or Iu interface from an MS for which an association exists, then the MSC/VLR shall remove the association without notifying the SGSN. When the SGSN receives a (non-combined) RA update from an MS for which an association exists, then the SGSN shall remove the association without notifying the MSC/VLR. When the MSC/VLR receives a BSSAP+ MS Unreachable message from the SGSN indicating that PPF is cleared, then the state of the association shall not be changed at the MSC/VLR.

6.3.2 Combined RA / LA Updating

When the MS is both ~~CS~~IMSI and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, the LA and RA updating is done in a co-ordinated way to save radio resources if supported by the network operation mode. When the MS enters a new RA in network operation mode I, then the MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Combined RA / LA Update Procedure". The LA update is included in the RA update. The SGSN then forwards the LA update to the MSC/VLR. The MSC/VLR optionally returns a new VLR TMSI that is sent to the MS via the SGSN.

An MS in class-A mode of operation involved in a CS connection makes only RA updates and no combined RA / LA updates to the SGSN.

An MS in class-B mode of operation involved in a CS connection does not make any updates during the CS connection.

An MS in class-C mode of operation never makes combined RA / LA updates.

6.3.3 CS Paging ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

When an MS is both IMSI and GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. If the MS is in STANDBY state, then it is paged in the routeing area and in the null routeing area (see subclause "Routeing Area Identity "). If the MS is in READY state, then it is paged in the cell. The paging procedure is supervised in the MSC by a paging timer. The SGSN converts the MSC paging message into an SGSN paging message.

The CS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 19. Each step is explained in the following list.

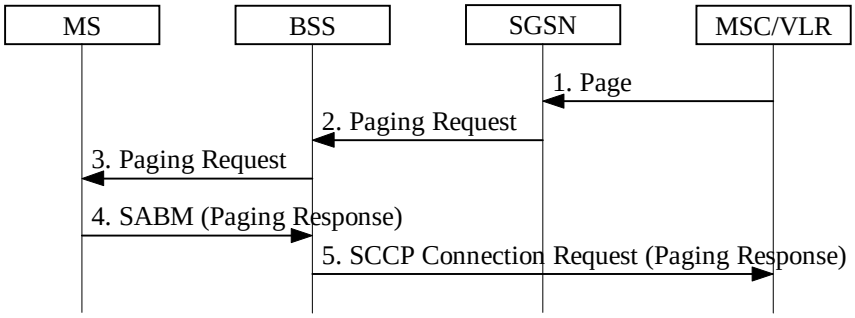


Figure 19: CS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a Page (IMSI, VLR TMSI, Channel Needed, Priority, Location Information) message from the MSC. Channel Needed is defined in GSM 08.08 [18] and indicates to the MS which type of CS channel is needed to be requested in the response. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are optional parameters. Priority is the circuit-switched paging priority parameter as defined in GSM 08.08. The SGSN maps Priority to QoS.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, TLLI, VLR TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS) message to the BSS serving the MS. Area is derived from either the MS's MM context in the SGSN or, if no such information is available, from the Location Information received from the MSC/VLR. Area indicates a single cell for a READY state MS or a routeing area for a STANDBY state MS. VLR TMSI and Channel Needed are included if received from the MSC. If Channel Needed was not received from the MSC, then a default Channel Needed parameter indicating circuit-switched paging is included by the SGSN. QoS indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. If the location area where the MS was last known to be located has an associated null routeing area, then the SGSN shall send an additional BSSGP Paging Request message to each BSS serving this null RA.

3) The BSS translates the incoming BSSGP Paging Request message into one radio Paging Request message per cell. If a dedicated radio resource is assigned to the MS in a cell, then the BSS transmits one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on this radio resource, without stopping possibly ongoing data transfers for the MS. Otherwise, the BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (VLR TMSI or IMSI, Channel Needed) message on the appropriate paging channel in each addressed cell. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a Paging Request message for a circuit-switched service the MS may accept to respond to this request and shall then follow the CS procedures for paging response (random access, immediate assignment, and paging response) as specified in GSM 04.08 [13].

5) When received at the BSS, the Paging Response message is sent to the MSC which shall then stop the paging response timer.

6.3.3.1 Paging Co-ordination for GPRS

The network may provide co-ordination of paging for circuit-switched and packet-switched services. Paging co-ordination means that the network sends paging messages for circuit-switched services on the same channel as used for packet-switched services, i.e., on the GSM ~~GPRS~~ paging channel or on the GSM ~~GPRS~~ traffic channel, and the MS needs only to monitor that channel. Three network operation modes are defined:

- Network operation mode I: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS, either on the same channel as the GSM ~~GPRS~~ paging channel (i.e., the packet paging channel or the CCCH paging channel), or on a GSM ~~GPRS~~ traffic channel. This means that the MS needs only to monitor one paging channel, and that it receives CS paging messages on the packet data channel when it has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode II: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and this channel is also used for GPRS paging. This means that the MS needs only to monitor the CCCH paging channel, but that CS paging continues on this paging channel even if the MS has been assigned a packet data channel.

- Network operation mode III: the network sends a CS paging message for a GPRS-attached MS on the CCCH paging channel, and sends a GPRS paging message on either the packet paging channel (if allocated in the cell) or on the CCCH paging channel. This means that an MS that wants to receive pages for both circuit-switched and packet-switched services shall monitor both paging channels if the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell. No paging co-ordination is performed by the network.

Table 2: Network Operation Modes for GPRS

Mode	Circuit Paging Channel	GPRS Paging Channel	Paging co-ordination
I	Packet Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	Yes
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	
	Packet Data Channel	Not Applicable	
II	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	No
III	CCCH Paging Channel	Packet Paging Channel	No
	CCCH Paging Channel	CCCH Paging Channel	

When the Gs interface is present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the SGSN, thus allowing network co-ordination of paging. Paging co-ordination shall be made by the SGSN based on the IMSI, and is provided independently of whether the MS is in STANDBY or in READY state. The network operates in mode I.

When the Gs interface is not present, all MSC-originated paging of GPRS-attached MSs shall go via the A interface, and co-ordination of paging cannot be performed. The network shall then either:

- operate in mode II, meaning that the packet common control channel shall not be allocated in the cell; or

- operate in mode III, meaning that the packet common control channel shall be used for GPRS paging when the packet paging channel is allocated in the cell.

The network operation mode (mode I, II, or III) shall be indicated as system information to MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to GPRS services, to non-GPRS services, or to both.

6.3.4 CS Paging ~~for~~ (UMTS only)

When an MS is both ~~CS~~IMSI- and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached in a network that operates in mode I, then the MSC/VLR executes paging for circuit-switched services via the SGSN. Paging is defined in subclause "Paging Initiated by CN".

6.3.4.1 Network Operation Modes for UMTS

The network operation mode is used to indicate whether the Gs interface is installed or not. When the Gs interface is present, MT can initiate combine procedures.

Table 3: Network Operation Modes for UMTS

Mode	Network configuration	Combined procedure by MT
I	Gs interface is present	Yes
II	Gs interface is not present	No

The network operation mode (mode I or II) shall be indicated as system information to the MSs. For proper operation, the mode of operation should be the same in each cell of a routeing area.

Based on the mode of operation provided by the network, the MS can then choose, according to its capabilities, whether it can attach to CS domain services, to PS domain services, or to both. Furthermore, based on the mode of operation, the MS can choose whether it can initiate combine update procedures or separate update procedures, according to its capabilities.

NOTE: Network operation modes I and II for UMTS correspond to modes I and II, respectively, for GSM~~GPRS~~. Mode III applies to GSM ~~GPRS~~ and not to UMTS.

6.3.5 Non-PS Alert

The MSC/VLR may request an SGSN to report activity from a specific MS. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall send a BSSAP+ Alert Request (IMSI) message to the SGSN where the MS is currently GPRS-attached.

Upon reception of the Alert Request (IMSI) message, the SGSN shall set NGAF. If NGAF is set for an MS, the SGSN shall inform the MSC/VLR when the next activity from that MS (and the MS is both IMSI- and GPRS-attached) is detected, and shall clear NGAF.

If the activity detected by the SGSN leads to a procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall just follow this procedure. If the activity detected by the SGSN does not lead to any procedure towards the MSC/VLR, the SGSN shall send an MS Activity Indication (IMSI) message towards the MSC/VLR.

6.3.6 MS Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both ~~CS~~IMSI and ~~PS~~GPRS attached, the VLR may perform the MS Information procedure via the SGSN. If the information requested by the VLR in the MS Information procedure is known by the SGSN, then the SGSN shall return this information to the VLR without interrogating the MS.

If the information requested is MS identity information (e.g., IMEI) that is not known by the SGSN but is known by the MS, then the SGSN shall interrogate the MS in a similar manner to that described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

The MS Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 20. Each step is explained in the following list.

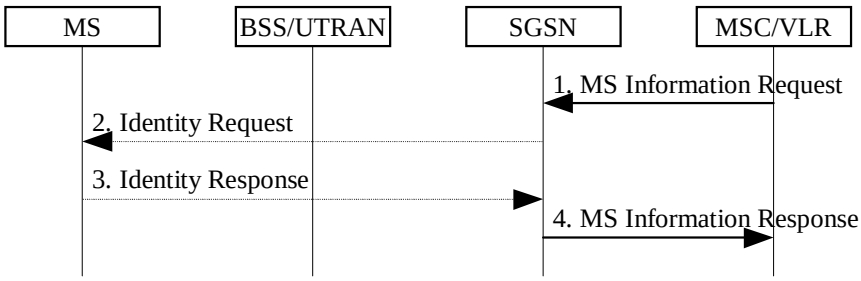


Figure 20: MS Information Procedure

1) The MSC/VLR sends an MS Information Request (IMSI, Information Type) message to the SGSN. Information Type indicates the information that the MSC/VLR is requesting for that IMSI.

2) If the information requested is not known by the SGSN but should be known by the MS, then the SGSN interrogates the MS in a similar manner to that described in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". The SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type) message to the MS.

3) The MS responds with an Identity Response (Mobile Identity) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN sends an MS Information Response (IMSI, Information) message to the MSC/VLR. Information contains the information requested by the MSC/VLR.

6.3.7 MM Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both ~~CS~~IMSI and ~~PS~~GPRS attached, the VLR may perform the MM Information procedure via the SGSN. The MM Information procedure is typically used to inform the MS about such things as the network name and the local timezone of the mobile.

The MM Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 21. Each step is explained in the following list.

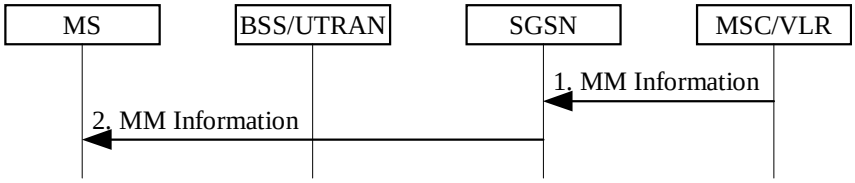


Figure 21: MM Information Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an MM Information (IMSI, Information) message from the MSC/VLR. Information is the information that the MSC/VLR is sending to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends an MM Information (Information) message to the MS including the information received by the MSC/VLR.

6.4 MM Procedures

~~For GPRS~~In GSM, the MM procedures shall use the LLC and RLC/MAC protocols for message transmission across the Gb and Um interfaces. The MM procedures shall provide information to the underlying layers to enable reliable transmission of MM messages on the Um interface. GSM 03.64 defines the mapping between LLC and the radio channels used.

~~For~~ In UMTS, the MM procedures shall use the RANAP and RRC protocols for message transmission across the Iu and Uu interfaces, respectively.

Furthermore, the MM procedures use MAP interfaces between SGSN and HLR (Gr), and between SGSN and EIR (Gf), and a BSSAP+ interface between SGSN and MSC/VLR (Gs).

User data can in general be transmitted during MM signalling procedures. In GSM, ~~U~~user data transmitted during attach, authentication, and routeing area update procedures may be lost and may therefore have to be retransmitted. In order to minimise the need for retransmission, the MS and SGSN should not transmit user data during the attach, authentication, and routeing area update procedures.

6.5 GPRS~~PS~~ Attach Function

An MS shall perform a GPRS~~PS~~ Attach to the SGSN in order to obtain access to the PS services. If the MS is connected via a GSM~~PRS~~ radio, it shall perform a GSM GPRS Attach procedure. If the MS is connected via a UMTS radio access network, it shall perform a UMTS GPRS~~PS~~ Attach procedure.

6.5.1 GSM GPRS Attach Function (GSM only)

A GPRS attach is made to the SGSN. A GPRS-attached MS makes IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operation mode is I. In network operation modes II and III, or if the MS is not GPRS-attached, then the MS makes IMSI attach as already defined in GSM. An IMSI-attached MS in class-A mode of operation engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a GPRS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are GPRS attach and combined GPRS / IMSI attach.

At the RLC/MAC layer, the MS shall identify itself with a Local or Foreign TLLI if the MS is already GPRS-attached and is performing an IMSI attach. Otherwise, the MS shall identify itself with a

Foreign TLLI, or a Random TLLI if a valid P-TMSI is not available. The Foreign or Random TLLI is used as an identifier during the attach procedure until a new P-TMSI is allocated.

After having executed the GPRS attach, the MS is in READY state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An IMSI-attached MS that can only operate in class-C mode of operation shall follow the normal IMSI detach procedure before it makes a GPRS attach. A GPRS-attached MS in class-C mode of operation shall always perform a GPRS detach before it makes an IMSI attach.

If the network operates in mode I (see subclause "Paging Co-ordination"), then an MS that is both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

If the network operates in mode II or III, then a GPRS-attached MS that has the capability to be simultaneously GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall perform the (non-combined) Routeing Area Update procedures, and either:

- access the non-GPRS common control channels for CS operation (the way that CS operation is performed in parallel with GPRS operation is an MS implementation issue outside the scope of the present document); or

- if CS operation is not desired, depending on system information that defines whether or not explicit detach shall be used, either:

    - avoid all CS signalling (in which case the MS may be implicitly IMSI detached after a while); or

    - perform an explicit IMSI detach via the non-GPRS common control channels (if the MS was already IMSI-attached).

The Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 22. Each step is explained in the following list.

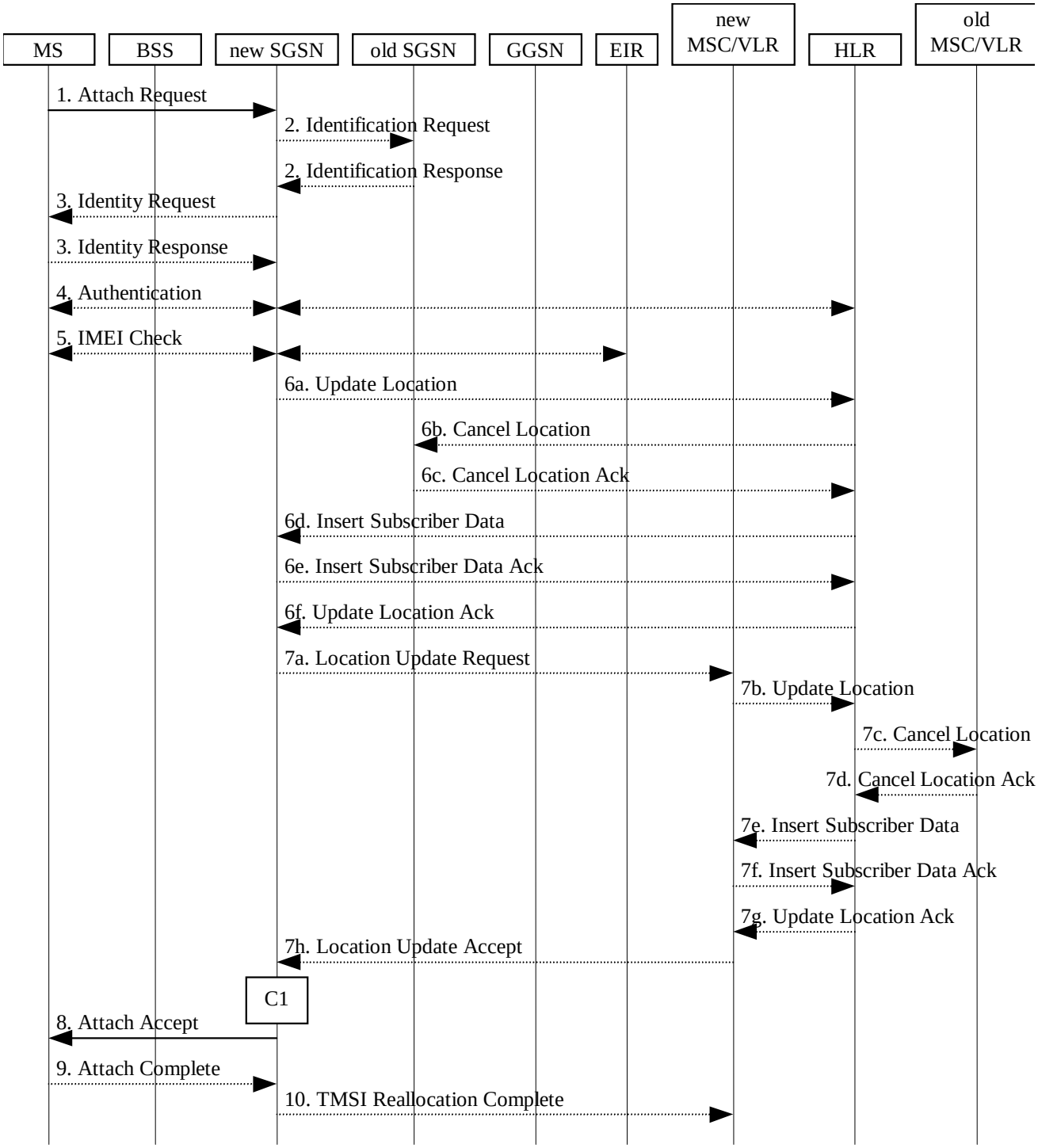


Figure 22: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure

1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Classmark, CKSN, Attach Type, DRX Parameters, old P-TMSI Signature) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. Classmark contains the MS's GPRS multislot capabilities and supported GPRS ciphering algorithms in addition to the existing classmark parameters defined in GSM 04.08. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., GPRS attach only, GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses

discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests and channel assignments. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message.

2) If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication Triplets). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated GPRS Attach while already IMSI attached, or combined GPRS / IMSI attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Attach Type indicated combined GPRS / IMSI attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.5.2 UMTS GPRS~~PS~~ Attach Function (UMTS only)

[It is an outstanding task to merge this subclause with "GPRS Attach Function".]

A GPRS~~PS~~-attached MS makes a ~~CS~~IMSI attach via the SGSN with the combined RA / LA update procedure if the network operates in mode I. In network operates in mode II, or if the MS is not ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, then the MS makes a normal ~~CS~~IMSI attach. A ~~CS~~IMSI-attached MS engaged in a CS connection shall use the (non-combined) ~~PS~~GPRS Attach procedure when it performs a ~~PS~~GPRS attach.

In the attach procedure, the MS shall provide its identity and an indication of which type of attach that is to be executed. The identity provided to the network shall be the MS's Packet TMSI (P-TMSI) or IMSI. P-TMSI and the RAI associated with the P-TMSI shall be provided if the MS has a valid P-TMSI. If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI, then the MS shall provide its IMSI. The different types of attach are ~~PS~~GPRS attach and combined ~~PS~~GPRS / IMSI~~CS~~ attach.

After having executed the ~~PS~~GPRS attach, the MS is in the PMM-CONNECTED state and MM contexts are established in the MS and the SGSN. The MS may then activate PDP contexts as described in subclause "Activation Procedures".

An ~~CS~~IMSI-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall follow the normal ~~CS~~IMSI detach procedure before it makes a ~~PS~~GPRS attach. A ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS that cannot operate in CS/PS mode of operation shall perform a ~~PS~~GPRS detach before it makes a ~~CS~~IMSI attach.

The Combined ~~PS~~GPRS / IMSI~~CS~~ Attach procedure is illustrated in Figure 22. Each step is explained in the following list.

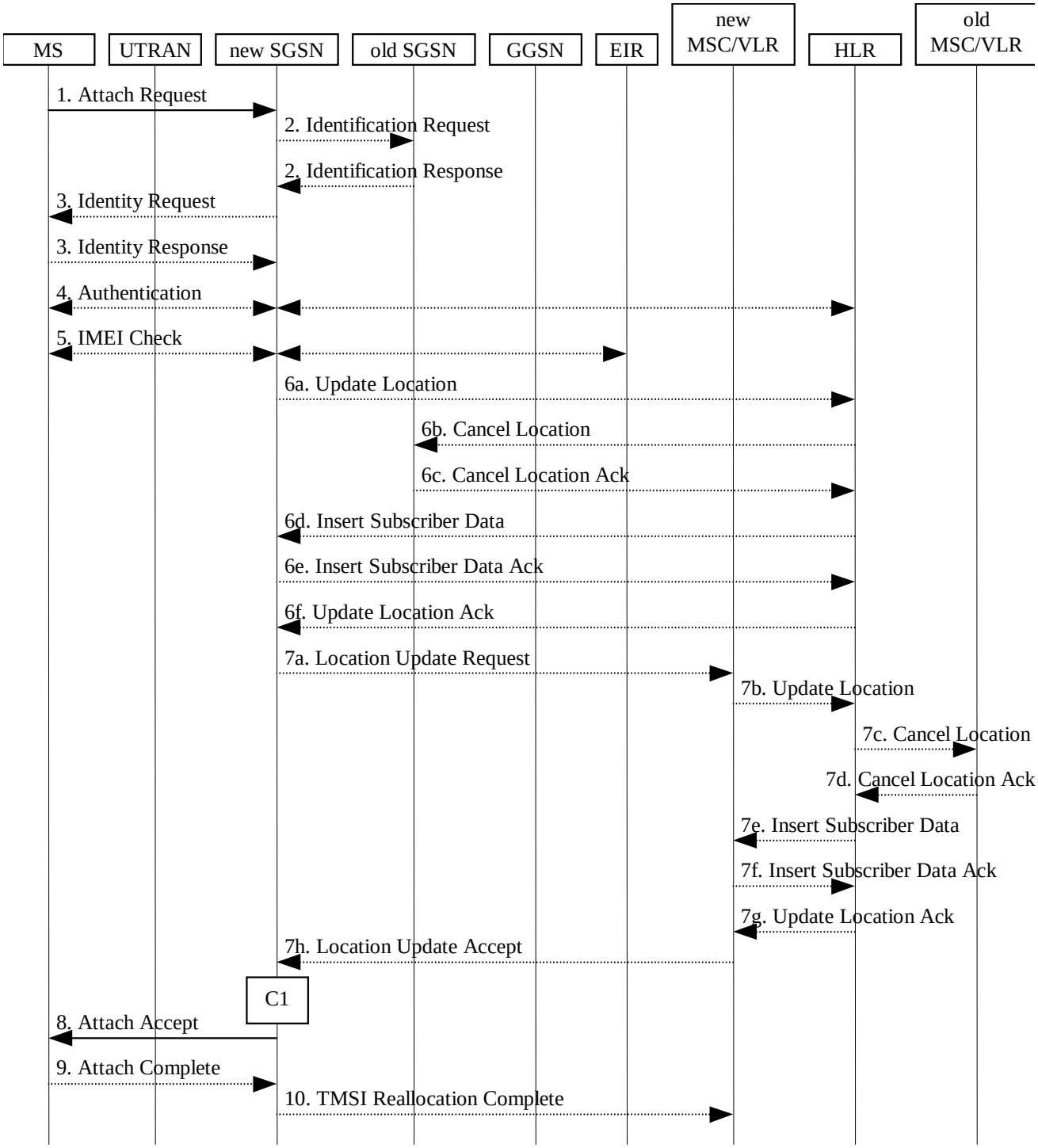


Figure 23: Combined ~~PS~~GPRS / IMSI~~CS~~ Attach Procedure

1) The MS initiates the attach procedure by the transmission of an Attach Request (IMSI or P-TMSI and old RAI, Core Network Classmark, KSI, Attach Type, old P-TMSI Signature, Follow on request) message to the SGSN. IMSI shall be included if the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available. If the MS uses P-TMSI for identifying itself and if it has also stored its old P-TMSI Signature, then the MS shall include the old P-TMSI Signature in the Attach Request message. If the MS has a valid P-TMSI, then P-TMSI and the old RAI associated with P-TMSI shall be included. KSI shall be included if the MS has valid security parameters. Core Network Classmark is describe in subclause "Core Network Classmark". Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may

use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the ~~PS~~GPRS Attach procedure. Attach Type indicates which type of attach that is to be performed, i.e., ~~PS~~GPRS attach only, ~~PS~~GPRS Attach while already ~~CS~~IMSI attached, or combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI attach.

If the MS identifies itself with P-TMSI and the SGSN has changed since detach, the new SGSN sends an Identification Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to request the IMSI. The old SGSN responds with Identification Response (IMSI, Authentication vector). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN also validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN.

3) If the MS is unknown in both the old and new SGSN, the SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (IMSI).

4) The authentication functions are defined in the subclause "Security Function". If no MM context for the MS exists anywhere in the network, then authentication is mandatory. Ciphering procedures are described in subclause "Security Function". If P-TMSI allocation is going to be done, and if ciphering is supported by the network, ciphering mode shall be set.

5) The equipment checking functions are defined in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". Equipment checking is optional.

6) If the SGSN number has changed since the GPRS detach, or if it is the very first attach, then the SGSN informs the HLR:

   a) The SGSN sends an Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure.

   c) The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI). If there are any ongoing procedures for that MS, the old SGSN shall wait until these procedures are finished before removing the MM and PDP contexts.

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN.

   e) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to attach in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If subscription checking fails for other reasons, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request with an appropriate cause and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, Cause) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

   f) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location message by sending an Update Location Ack to the SGSN after the cancelling of old MM context and insertion of new MM context are finished. If the Update Location is rejected by the HLR, the SGSN rejects the Attach Request from the MS with an appropriate cause.

7) If Attach Type in step 1 indicated ~~PS~~GPRS Attach while already ~~CS~~IMSI attached, or combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI attach, then the VLR shall be updated if the Gs interface is installed. The VLR number is derived from the RA information. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 6 d). This operation marks the MS as GPRS-attached in the VLR.

   a) The SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) message to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate ~~CS~~IMSI attach if Attach Type indicated combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI attach. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR creates an association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

b) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the new VLR sends Update Location (IMSI, new VLR) to the HLR.

c) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

d) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

e) If the LA update is inter-MSC, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

f) The VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

g) After finishing the inter-MSC location update procedures, the HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

h) The VLR responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN selects Radio Priority SMS, and sends an Attach Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Radio Priority SMS) message to the MS. P-TMSI is included if the SGSN allocates a new P-TMSI.

9) If P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was changed, the MS acknowledges the received TMSI(s) by returning an Attach Complete message to the SGSN.

10) If VLR TMSI was changed, the SGSN confirms the VLR TMSI re-allocation by sending a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR.

If the Attach Request cannot be accepted, the SGSN returns an Attach Reject (IMSI, Cause) message to the MS.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.6 Detach Function

The ~~PS~~GPRS Detach procedure allows:

- an MS to inform the network that it does not want access the SGSN-based services any longer; and
- the network to inform an MS that it does not have access to the SGSN-based services any more.

The Detach function allows an MS to inform the network that it wants to make a ~~PS~~GPRS and/or ~~CS~~IMSI detach, and it allows the network to inform an MS that it has been ~~PS~~GPRS-detached or ~~CS~~IMSI-detached by the network.

The different types of detach are:

- ~~CS~~IMSI detach;
- ~~PS~~GPRS detach; and
- combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI detach (MS-initiated only).

The MS is detached either explicitly or implicitly:

- Explicit detach: The network or the MS explicitly requests detach.
- Implicit detach: The network detaches the MS, without notifying the MS, a configuration-dependent time after the mobile reachable timer expired, or after an irrecoverable radio error causes disconnection of the logical link.

In the explicit detach case, a Detach Request (Cause) is sent by the SGSN to the MS, or by the MS to the SGSN.

The MS can make a ~~CS~~IMSI detach in one of two ways depending on if it is ~~PS~~GPRS-attached or not:

- A ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS sends a Detach Request message to the SGSN, indicating a ~~CS~~IMSI detach. This can be made in combination with ~~PS~~GPRS detach.
- An MS that is not ~~PS~~GPRS-attached makes the ~~CS~~IMSI detach as already defined in GSM or UMTS.

In the MO Detach Request message there is an indication to tell if the detach is due to switch off or not. The indication is needed to know whether a Detach Accept message should be returned or not.

In the network-originated Detach Request message there may be an indication to tell the MS that it is requested to initiate ~~PS~~GPRS Attach and PDP Context Activation procedures for the previously activated PDP contexts.

6.6.1 MS-Initiated Detach Procedure

The MS-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the MS is illustrated in Figure 24. Each step is explained in the following list.

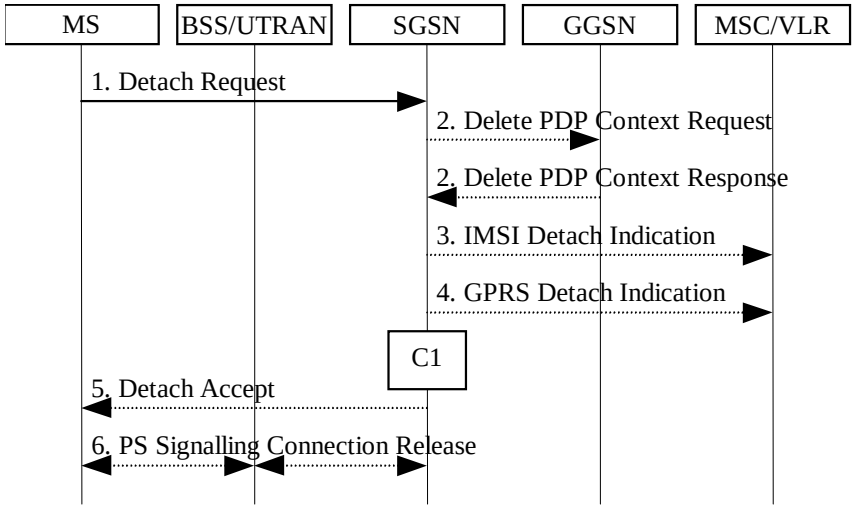


Figure 24: MS-Initiated Combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI Detach Procedure

1) The MS detaches by sending Detach Request (Detach Type, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Switch Off) to the SGSN. Detach Type indicates which type of detach that is to be performed, i.e., ~~PS~~GPRS Detach only, ~~CS~~IMSI Detach only or combined ~~PS~~GPRS and ~~CS~~IMSI Detach. Switch Off indicates whether the detach is due to a switch off situation or not. For UMTS, the Detach Request message includes P-TMSI and P-TMSI Signature. P-TMSI Signature is used to check the validity of the Detach Request message. If P-TMSI Signature is not valid or is not included, then authentication procedure should be performed.

2) If ~~PS~~GPRS detach, the active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID).

3) If ~~CS~~IMSI detach, the SGSN sends an IMSI Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR.

4) If the MS wants to remain ~~CS~~IMSI-attached and is doing a ~~PS~~GPRS detach, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) If Switch Off indicates that the detach is not due to a switch off situation, the SGSN sends a Detach Accept to the MS.

6) If the MS was ~~PS~~GPRS detached, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2 Network-Initiated Detach Procedure

6.6.2.1 SGSN-Initiated Detach Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated Detach procedure when initiated by the SGSN is illustrated in Figure 25. Each step is explained in the following list.

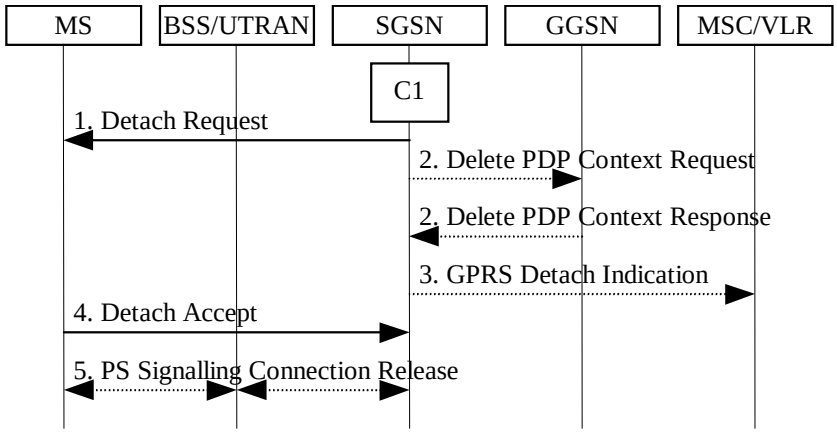


Figure 25: SGSN-Initiated ~~PS~~GPRS Detach Procedure

1) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type indicates if the MS is requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation for the previously activated PDP contexts. If so, the attach procedure shall be initiated when the detach procedure is completed.

2) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

3) If the MS was both ~~CS~~IMSI- and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

4) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 1.

5) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.6.2.2 HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure

The HLR-Initiated Detach procedure is initiated by the HLR. The HLR uses this procedure for operator-determined purposes to request the removal of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts at the SGSN. The HLR-Initiated Detach Procedure is illustrated in Figure 26. Each step is explained in the following list.

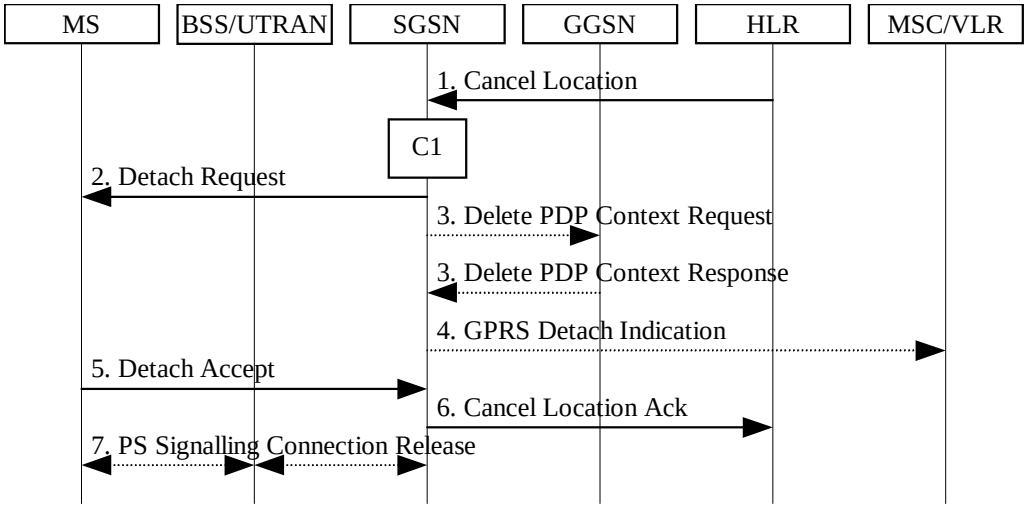


Figure 26: HLR-Initiated ~~PS~~GPRS Detach Procedure

1) If the HLR wants to request the immediate deletion of a subscriber's MM and PDP contexts from the SGSN, the HLR shall send a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Subscription Withdrawn.

2) The SGSN informs the MS that it has been detached by sending Detach Request (Detach Type) to the MS. Detach Type shall indicate that the MS is not requested to make a new attach and PDP context activation.

3) The active PDP contexts in the GGSNs regarding this particular MS are deactivated by the SGSN sending Delete PDP Context Request (TEID) messages to the GGSNs. The GGSNs acknowledge with Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) messages.

4) If the MS was both ~~CS~~IMSI- and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, the SGSN sends a GPRS Detach Indication (IMSI) message to the VLR. The VLR removes the association with the SGSN and handles paging and location update without going via the SGSN.

5) The MS sends a Detach Accept message to the SGSN any time after step 2.

6) The SGSN shall confirm the deletion of the MM and PDP contexts with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

7) After receiving the Detach Accept message, if Detach Type did not request the MS to make a new attach, then the 3G-SGSN releases the PS signalling connection.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Detach.

6.7 Purge Function

The Purge function allows an SGSN to inform the HLR that it has deleted the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS. The SGSN may, as an implementation option, delete the MM and PDP contexts of an MS immediately after the implicit or explicit detach of the MS. Alternatively, the SGSN may keep for some time the MM and PDP contexts and the authentication triplets of the detached MS, so that the contexts can be reused at a later ~~PS~~GPRS attach without accessing the HLR.

When the SGSN deletes the MM and PDP contexts, it shall initiate the Purge procedure as illustrated in Figure 27. Each step is explained in the following list.

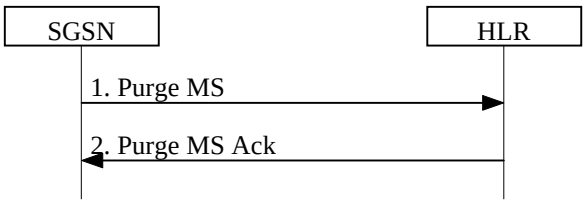


Figure 27: Purge Procedure

1) After deleting the MM and PDP contexts of a detached MS, the SGSN sends a Purge MS (IMSI) message to the HLR.

2) The HLR sets the MS Purged for GPRS flag and acknowledges with a Purge MS Ack message.

6.8 Security Function

The Security function:

- Guards against unauthorised packet-domain service usage (authentication and service request validation).
- Provides user identity confidentiality (temporary identification and ciphering).
- Provides user data and signalling confidentiality (ciphering).
- Provides, for UMTS only, data integrity and origin authentication of signalling data (integrity protection).
- Provides, for UMTS only, authentication of the network by the MS.

Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 for GSM ~~GPRS~~ and in UMTS 33.102 for UMTS.

6.8.1 Authentication

6.8.1.1 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM

Authentication procedures already defined in GSM shall be used, with the distinction that the procedures are executed from the SGSN. The GPRS Authentication procedure performs subscriber authentication, or selection of the ciphering algorithm and the synchronisation of the start of ciphering, or both. Authentication triplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon IMSI attach, nor location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment. Security-related network functions are described in GSM 03.20 [6].

The Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 28. Each step is explained in the following list.

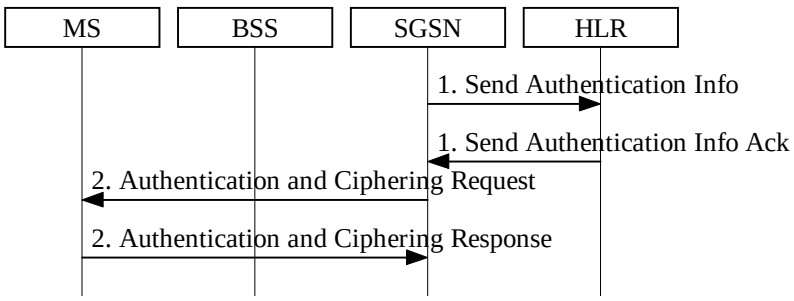


Figure 28: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM Procedure

1) If the SGSN does not have previously stored authentication triplets, a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) The SGSN sends an Authentication and Ciphering Request (RAND, CKSN, Ciphering Algorithm) message to the MS. The MS responds with an Authentication and Ciphering Response (SRES) message.

The MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the Authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

[Conversion functions to be defined by TSG SA3.]

6.8.1.2 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS

The UMTS authentication procedure is described in UMTS 33.102. The UMTS authentication procedure executed from the SGSN performs both the mutual authentication and security keys agreement. Authentication quintuplets are stored in the SGSN. The MSC/VLR shall not authenticate the MS via the SGSN upon ~~CS~~IMSI attach nor upon location update, but may authenticate the MS during CS connection establishment.

The Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS procedure (USIM) is illustrated in Figure 29. Each step is explained in the following list.

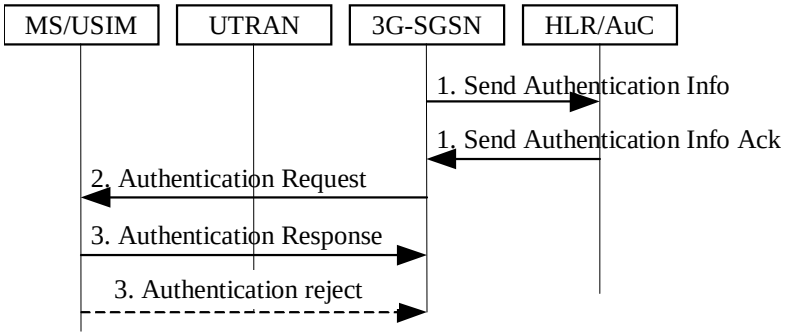


Figure 29: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not have previously stored UMTS Authentication Vectors (quintuplets), a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. Upon receipt of this message for a UMTS user, the HLR/AuC responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack message including an ordered array of quintuplets to the 3G-SGSN. Each quintuplet contains RAND, XRES, AUTN, CK, and IK. The generation of quintuplets in HLR/AuC for a UMTS user is performed as specified in UMTS 33.102.

2) At authentication of a UMTS user, the 3G-SGSN selects the next in-order quintuplet and transmits the RAND and AUTN, that belong to this quintuplet, to the MS in the Authentication Request (RAND, AUTN, KSN) message. The 3G-SGSN also selects a key sequence number, KSN, and includes this in the message.

3) At reception of this message, the USIM in the MS verifies AUTN and, if accepted, the USIM computes the signature of RAND, RES, in accordance with UMTS 33.102. If the USIM considers the authentication being successful the MS returns an Authentication Response (RES) message to the 3G-SGSN. The USIM in the MS computes then also a new Ciphering Key, CK,

and a new Integrity Key, IK. These keys are stored together with the KSN until KSN is updated at the next authentication.

If the USIM considers the authentication being unsuccessful, i.e., in case of an authentication synchronisation failure, the MS returns the Authentication Reject message to the 3G-SGSN. The actions then taken are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the used IK and CK are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

When changing to a UMTS system the MS and the 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS security keys IK and CK from the GSM Kc by using the conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a GSM system the USIM and the SGSN shall generate from the UMTS security keys IK and CK the GSM Kc by using the standardised conversion function specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the old 3G-SGSN should generate the GSM Kc as described above and transfer this to the new SGSN. This will then give support for a change of SGSN without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplets are transferred in this case.

6.8.1.3 Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS

GSM users roaming in a UMTS network are authenticated with the GSM authentication procedure.

The UMTS Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS procedure (GSIM) is illustrated in Figure 30. Each step is explained in the following list.

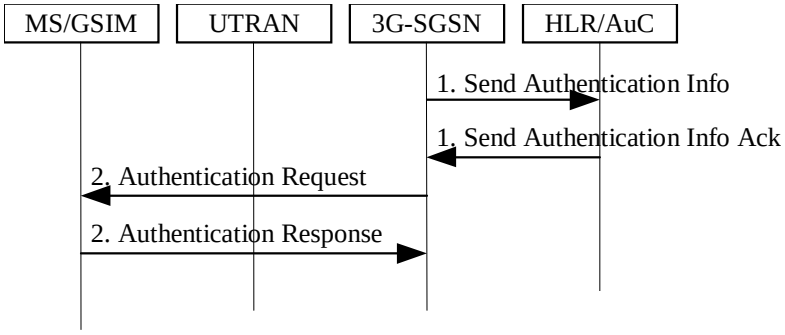


Figure 30: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS Procedure

1) If the 3G-SGSN does not contain previously stored authentication parameters, then a Send Authentication Info (IMSI) message is sent to the HLR. The HLR responds with a Send Authentication Info Ack (Authentication Triplets) message. Each Authentication Triplet includes RAND, SRES, and Kc.

2) At authentication in UMTS mode the 3G-SGSN selects an unused triplet and sends an Authentication Request (RAND) message to the MS. The GSIM then calculates the SRES and the GSM Kc. The MS returns an Authentication Response (SRES) message to the 3G-SGSN.

The 3G-SGSN shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102.

The MS shall generate the UMTS CK and IK from the GSM Kc using the standardised conversion functions specified for this purpose in UMTS 33.102, i.e., the same algorithm as in the 3G-SGSN.

When changing SGSN the used Kc (i.e., the Kc of last used authentication triplet) is sent from the old 3G-SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused triplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

6.8.1.4 Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in GSM

For authentication of a UMTS subscriber (USIM) in a GSM system three cases are possible:

a) The SGSN supports the GSM authentication procedure but not the UMTS authentication procedure.

b) The SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure.

c) Both the SGSN and the MS support the UMTS authentication procedure.

[It is an open issue whether it shall be possible to make a UMTS authentication also in GSM release 99.]

Case a)

When the SGSN supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber is performed using an authentication triplet produced by the HLR/AuC. The authentication of a UMTS subscriber by using a GSM authentication triplet is performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for HLR/AuC and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to a UMTS system a new authentication using a UMTS authentication quintuplet is required.

[The requirements for this system change case need to be clarified.]

Case b)

When the SGSN supports both the GSM and UMTS authentication procedures but the MS supports only the GSM authentication procedure, then the authentication of a UMTS subscriber shall be performed using an authentication quintuplet produced by HLR/AuC. In this case the SGSN derives a GSM triplet from a UMTS quintuplet originally produced by HLR/AuC. The authentication procedure of the UMTS subscriber will then be performed in the same way as authentication of a GSM subscriber in GSM, see subclause "Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM". The conversion functions that apply for SGSN and USIM in this case are described in UMTS 33.102.

When changing to an SGSN that supports the UMTS authentication procedure, the IK and CK of the last used quintuplet are sent from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. The unused quintuplets, if any, are then also transferred to the new SGSN.

When changing to a UMTS system the UMTS CK and IK from the last used authentication quintuplet shall be used.

When changing to an SGSN that does not support the UMTS authentication procedure, the used GSM Kc is transferred from the old SGSN to the new SGSN. This supports SGSN change without the need for a new authentication. No quintuplet is transferred in this case.

Case c)

FFS.

6.8.2 User Identity Confidentiality

6.8.2.1 User Identity Confidentiality ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

A Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) identifies a GSM ~~GPRS~~ user. The relationship between TLLI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN or built by the MS as described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

6.8.2.2 User Identity Confidentiality ~~for (~~UMTS ~~only)~~

A Radio Network Temporary Identity (RNTI) identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the UTRAN. The relationship between RNTI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the UTRAN. A P-TMSI identifies a UMTS user between the MS and the SGSN. The relationship between P-TMSI and IMSI is known only in the MS and in the SGSN.

6.8.2.3 P-TMSI Signature

P-TMSI Signature is optionally sent by the SGSN to the MS in Attach Accept and Routeing Area Update Accept messages. If the P-TMSI Signature has been sent by the SGSN to the MS since the current P-TMSI was allocated, then the MS shall include the P-TMSI Signature in the next Routeing Area Update Request, Detach Request, Service Request, and Attach Request for identification checking purposes. If the P-TMSI Signature was sent, then the SGSN shall compare the P-TMSI Signature sent by the MS with the signature stored in the SGSN. If the values do not match, the SGSN should use the security functions to authenticate the MS. If the values match or if the P-TMSI Signature is missing, the SGSN may use the security functions to authenticate the MS. The P-TMSI Signature parameter has only local significance in the SGSN that allocated the signature.

If ciphering is supported by the network, the SGSN shall send the P-TMSI Signature ciphered to the MS. Routeing Area Update Request and Attach Request, into which the MS includes the P-TMSI Signature, are not ciphered.

6.8.2.4 P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

The SGSN may reallocate the P-TMSI at any time. The reallocation procedure can be performed by the P-TMSI Reallocation procedure, or it can be included in the Attach or Routeing Area Update procedures.

The P-TMSI Reallocation procedure is illustrated in Figure 31. Each step is explained in the following list.

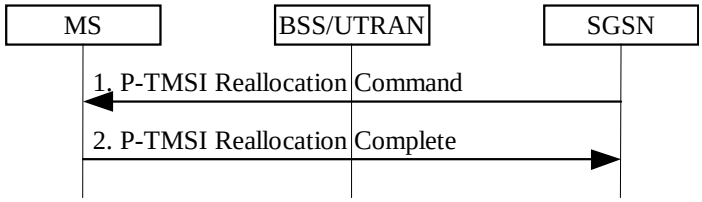


Figure 31: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a P-TMSI Reallocation Command (new P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI) message to the MS. P-TMSI Signature is an optional parameter that the MS, if received, shall return to the SGSN in the next Attach and Routeing Area Update procedures.

2) The MS returns a P-TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the SGSN.

6.8.3 User Data and GMM/SM Signalling Confidentiality

6.8.3.1 Scope of Ciphering

In GSM, ~~T~~the scope of ~~GPRS~~ ciphering is from the ciphering function in the SGSN to the ciphering function in the MS. Ciphering is done in the LLC layer, and from the perspective of the existing GSM MS-BTS radio path, an LLC PDU is transmitted as plain text.

In UMTS, ~~T~~the scope of ~~UMTS~~ ciphering is from the ciphering function in the UTRAN to the ciphering function in the MS.

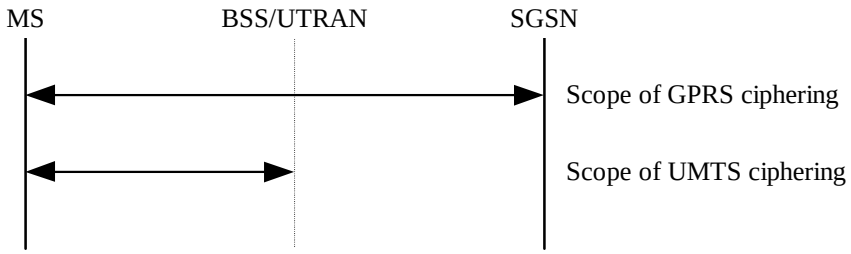


Figure 32: Scope of Ciphering

6.8.3.2 Ciphering Algorithm

GSM 01.61 [2] contains the requirements for the GPRS Encryption Algorithm (GEA). The GSM ~~GPRS~~ ciphering key Kc is an input to the algorithm.. The standard key management procedures for the Kc shall be used.

UMTS ciphering is performed with the UMTS Encryption Algorithm (UEA). The UMTS Ciphering Key CK is an input to the algorithm.

6.8.3.3 Start of Ciphering

In GSM~~GPRS~~, the MS starts ciphering after sending the Authentication and Ciphering Response message. The SGSN starts ciphering when a valid Authentication and Ciphering Response message is received from the MS. In the routeing area update case, if ciphering was used before the routeing area update, and if the authentication procedure is omitted, then the SGSN shall resume ciphering with the same algorithm when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is sent, and the MS shall resume ciphering when a ciphered Routeing Area Update Accept message is received.

In UMTS, the start of ciphering is controlled by the security mode procedure described in UMTS 33.102.

6.8.4 Identity Check Procedures

The Identity Check procedure is illustrated in Figure 33. Each step is explained in the following list.

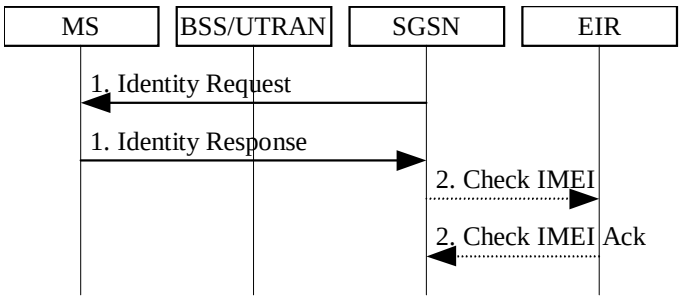


Figure 33: Identity Check Procedure

1) The SGSN sends Identity Request (Identity Type) to the MS. The MS responds with Identity Response (Mobile Identity). In UMTS, the MS may choose to send its IMSI encrypted (FFS).

2) If the SGSN decides to check the IMEI against the EIR, it sends Check IMEI (IMEI) to EIR. The EIR responds with Check IMEI Ack (IMEI).

6.8.5 Data Integrity Procedure ~~for~~ (UMTS only)

The Data Integrity procedure is performed between the MS and the UTRAN. It is applicable only to radio signalling. The UMTS integrity check is made with the UMTS Integrity Algorithm (UIA). The UMTS Integrity Key IK is an input to the algorithm. The start of the data integrity procedure is controlled by the security mode procedure as described in UMTS 33.102.

6.9 Location Management Function

The Location Management function:

- provides mechanisms for cell and PLMN selection;
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the Routeing Area for MSs in STANDBY, PMM-IDLE, READY, and PMM-CONNECTED states;
- provides a mechanism for the 2G-SGSN to know the cell identity for MSs in READY state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to know the URA identity or cell identity for MSs in PMM-CONNECTED state;
- provides a mechanism for the UTRAN to indicate to an MS in RRC Connected mode when a Routeing Area Update procedure shall be perform by providing the RAI; and
- provides a mechanism for the network to know the address of the Serving RNC handling a MS in PMM-CONNECTED state. This mechanism is the Serving RNC relocation procedure.

NOTE: The SGSN may not know the Routeing Area where the UMTS MS is physically located for an MS is in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-CONNECTED state is necessarily in RRC Connected mode. An MS in PMM-IDLE state is in RRC Connected mode only if the MS is in CS MM-CONNECTED state.

In UMTS, the tracking of the location of the MS is on three levels (cell, URA, or RA), see 3G TS 23.121.

In GSM~~GPRS~~, the tracking of the location of the MS is on two levels (cell or RA).

Routeing Area (RA) is defined in subclause "Routeing Area Identity".

6.9.1 Location Management Procedures ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

The MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS's MM context. The MS detects that a new RA has been entered by periodically comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with that received from the new cell. The MS shall consider hysteresis in signal strength measurements.

When the MS camps on a new cell, possibly in a new RA, this indicates one of three possible scenarios:

- a cell update is required;
- a routeing area update is required; or
- a combined routeing area and location area update is required.

In all three scenarios the MS stores the cell identity in its MM context.

If the MS enters a new PLMN, the MS shall either perform a routeing area update, or enter IDLE state.

In network mode of operation II and III, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall perform the LA update first.

Routeing Area Update Request messages shall be sent unciphered, since in the inter SGSN routeing area update case the new SGSN shall be able to process the request.

6.9.1.1 Cell Update Procedure

A cell update takes place when the MS enters a new cell inside the current RA and the MS is in READY state. If the RA has changed, a routeing area update is executed instead of a cell update.

The MS performs the cell update procedure by sending an uplink LLC frame of any type containing the MS's identity to the SGSN. In the direction towards the SGSN, the BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including RAC and LAC to all BSSGP frames, see GSM 08.18. A cell update is any correctly received and valid LLC PDU carried inside a BSSGP PDU containing a new identifier of the cell.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the new cell.

6.9.1.2 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when a ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA, when the periodic RA update timer has expired, or, for GSM~~GPRS~~, when a suspended MS is not resumed by the BSS (see subclause "Suspension of GPRS Services"). The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update.

An MS in READY state due to anonymous access shall not perform routeing area updates for the AA MM context. If the MS has entered a new routeing area, a new Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated. The old context is implicitly deleted upon expiry of the READY timer.

6.9.1.2.1 Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 34. Each step is explained in the following list.

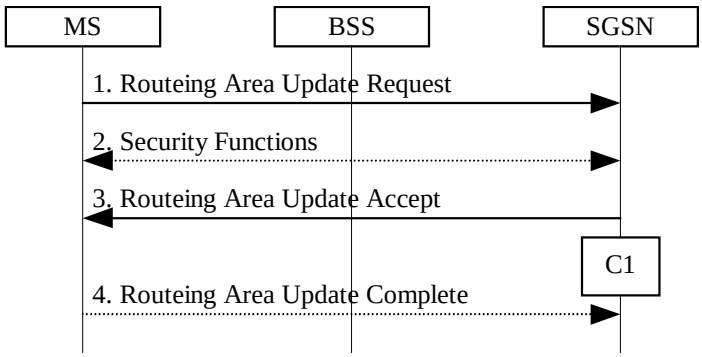


Figure 34: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN, see GSM 08.18.

2) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) is returned to the MS.

4) If P-TMSI was reallocated, the MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.2.2 Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update

The Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update procedure is illustrated in Figure 35. Each step is explained in the following list.

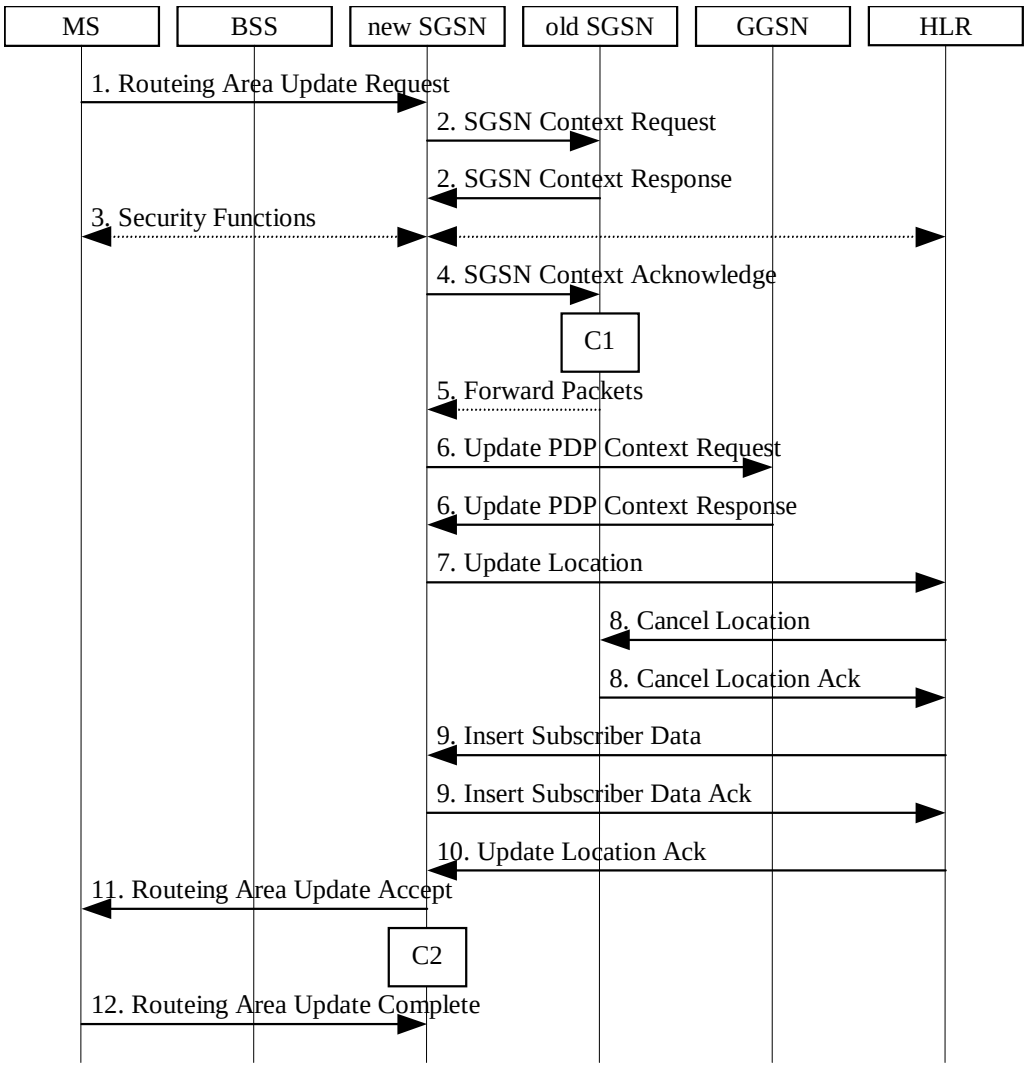


Figure 35: Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the

old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return Update PDP Context Response (TEID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful

then the new SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

12) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3 Combined RA / LA Update Procedure

A combined RA / LA update takes place in network operation mode I when the MS enters a new RA or when a GPRS-attached MS performs IMSI attach. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request indicating that an LA update may also need to be performed, in which case the SGSN forwards the LA update to the VLR. This concerns only idle mode (see GSM 03.22), as no combined RA / LA updates are performed during a CS connection.

6.9.1.3.1 Combined Intra SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (intra SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 36. Each step is explained in the following list.

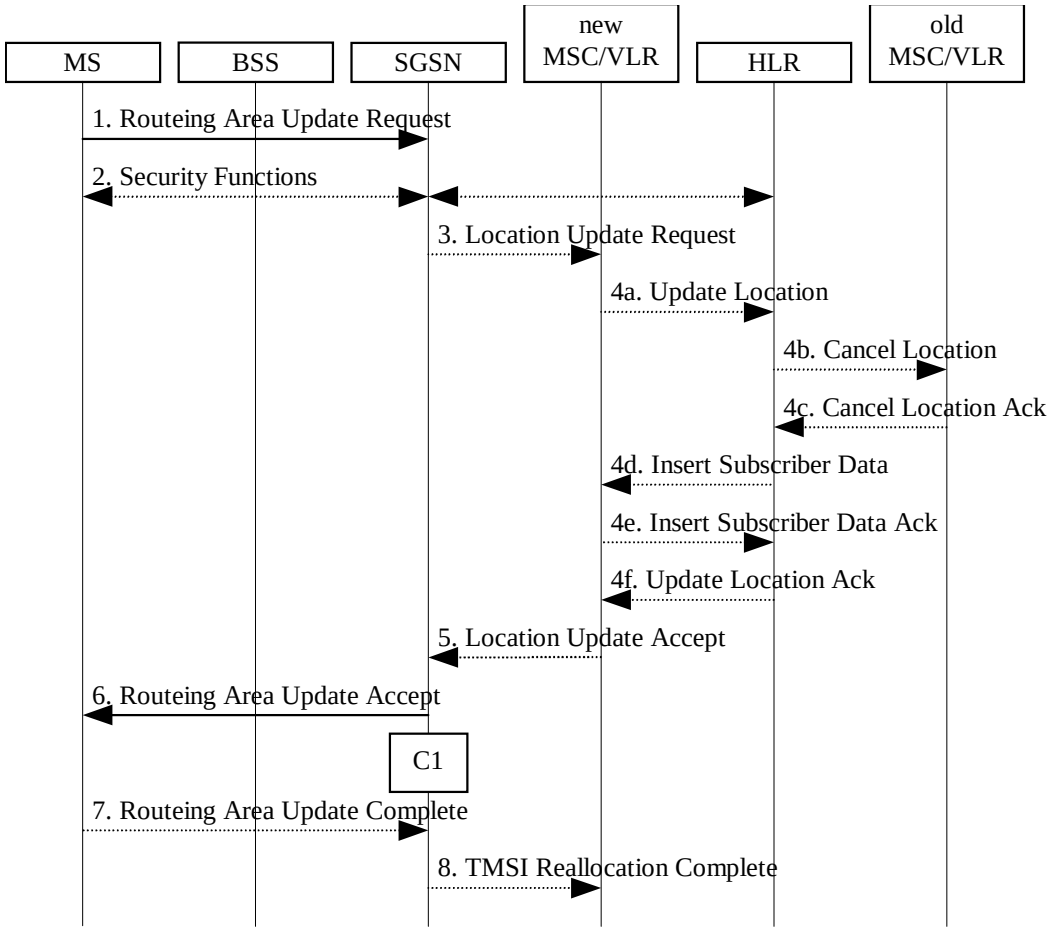


Figure 36: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) Security functions may be executed. This procedure is defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

4) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, then the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

5) The new VLR allocates a new VLR TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

6) The SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. The SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

7) If a new P-TMSI or VLR TMSI was received, then the MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

8) The SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful Location Update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.1.3.2 Combined Inter SGSN RA / LA Update

The Combined RA / LA Update (inter SGSN) procedure is illustrated in Figure 37. Each step is explained in the following list.

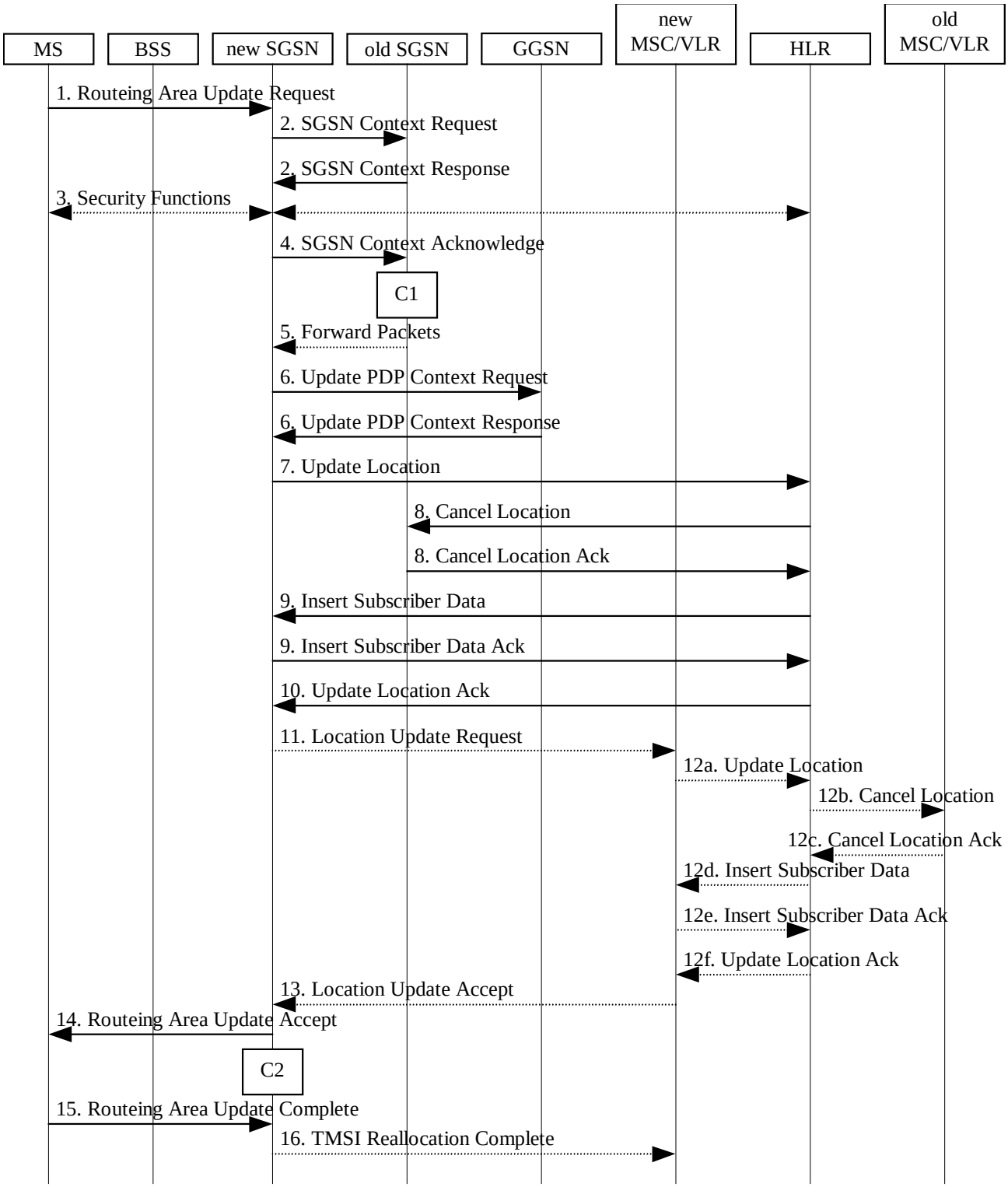


Figure 37: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure

1) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) to the new SGSN. Update Type shall indicate combined RA / LA update, or, if the MS wants to

perform an IMSI attach, combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN.

2) The new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, MS Validated, New SGSN Address) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN stops assigning SNDCP N-PDU numbers to downlink N-PDUs received, and responds with SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN stores New SGSN Address until the old MM context is cancelled, to allow the old SGSN to forward data packets to the new SGSN. Each PDP Context includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS, the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS, the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. The old SGSN starts a timer and stops the downlink transfer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". Ciphering mode shall be set if ciphering is supported.

4) The new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. This informs the old SGSN that the new SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure. If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

5) The old SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 2 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new SGSN. N-PDUs that were already sent to the MS in acknowledged mode and that are not yet acknowledged by the MS are tunnelled together with the SNDCP N-PDU number. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 2.

6) The new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) to the GGSNs concerned. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID).

7) The new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

8) The HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. This allows the old SGSN to complete the forwarding of N-PDUs. It also ensures that the MM and PDP contexts are kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

9) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI,

SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

10) The HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

11) If the association has to be established, if Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 9). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

12) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

    a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

    b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

    c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

    d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

    e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

    f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

13) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

14) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new SGSN and the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number). Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

15) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. If Receive N-PDU Number confirms reception of N-PDUs that were forwarded from the old SGSN, then these N-PDUs shall be discarded by the new SGSN. LLC and SNDCP in the MS are reset.

16) The new SGSN sends TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered-up.

If the SGSN is unable to update the PDP context in one or more GGSNs, then the SGSN shall deactivate the corresponding PDP contexts as described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure". This shall not cause the SGSN to reject the routeing area update.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter IDLE state.

If the timer described in step 2 expires and no Cancel Location (IMSI) was received from the HLR, then the old SGSN shall stop forwarding N-PDUs to the new SGSN.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-GPRS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2 Location Management Procedures ~~for~~ (UMTS only)

Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

In this specification, only the Location Management procedures related to the CN are described. These procedures are:

- a routeing area update procedure; and
- SERVING RNC relocation procedure.

An MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS. The MS detects that a RA Update shall be performed by comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with the RAI received from the network. In RRC-CONNECTED mode (PMM-CONNECTED state or CS MM CONNECTED state), the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the Serving RNC via an "MM information" message at the RRC layer. In RRC-IDLE state, the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the broadcasted system information at the RRC layer.

In network mode of operation II, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall start the LA update first. The MS should start RA Update procedure before the LA update is completed.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both ~~PS~~GPRS-attached and ~~CS~~IMSI-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, an RA Update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA Update, either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the RA Update cases are contained in the procedure illustrated in Figure 38. Each step is explained in the following list.

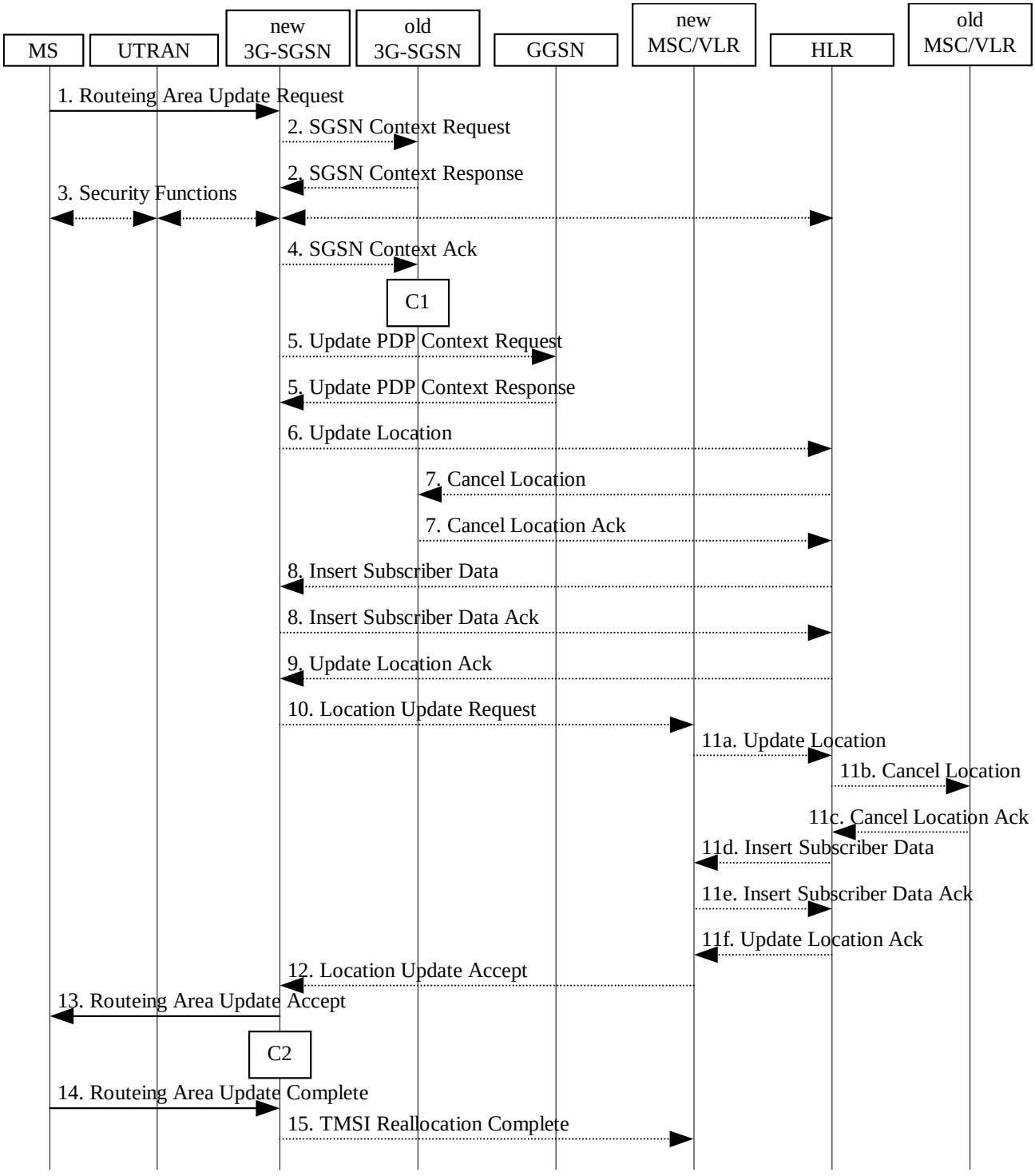


Figure 38: UMTS RA Update Procedure

1) The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on

request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:

- RA Update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA;
- Periodic RA Update if the RA update is triggered by the expiry of the Periodic RA Update timer;
- Combined RA / LA Update if the MS is also ~~CS~~IMSI attached and the LA update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR"); or
- Combined RA / LA Update with ~~CS~~IMSI attach requested if the MS wants to perform an ~~CS~~IMSI attach in network operation mode I.

The UTRAN shall add the Routeing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN [FFS].

NOTE: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

2) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old PTMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

4) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update, the new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

5) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier). Note: If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, the update PDP Context Request is sent as described in subclause "SRNC relocation".

6) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

7) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM context. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. It also ensures that the MM

context is kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

8) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

9) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

10) If Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with ~~CS~~IMSI attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the association has to be established, and the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall indicate ~~CS~~IMSI attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with ~~CS~~IMSI attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 8). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

11) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

12) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

13) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM context for the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

14) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

15) The new SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

NOTE: Steps 11, 12, and 15, are performed only if step 9 is performed.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered up.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter PMM-DETACHED state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-PS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.2.2 Serving RNC Relocation procedure

[Align GTP relocation message names with 29.060]

This procedure is only perform for MS in PMM-CONNECTED state.

The Serving RNC relocation procedure is used to move the UTRAN-CORE NETWORK connection point at UTRAN side from the Serving RNC to the target RNC. In the procedure, the Iu links are relocated. If the Target RNC is connected to the same SGSN as the Serving RNC, an intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Intra-SGSN RA Update procedure. If the Target RNC is connected to a different SGSN than the Serving RNC, an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation procedure is performed. This procedure is followed by an Inter-SGSN RA Update procedure.

Figure 39 shows SRNS relocation when source RNC and target RNC are connected to different 3G-SGSN. Figure 40 shows the situation after the procedure has been completed.

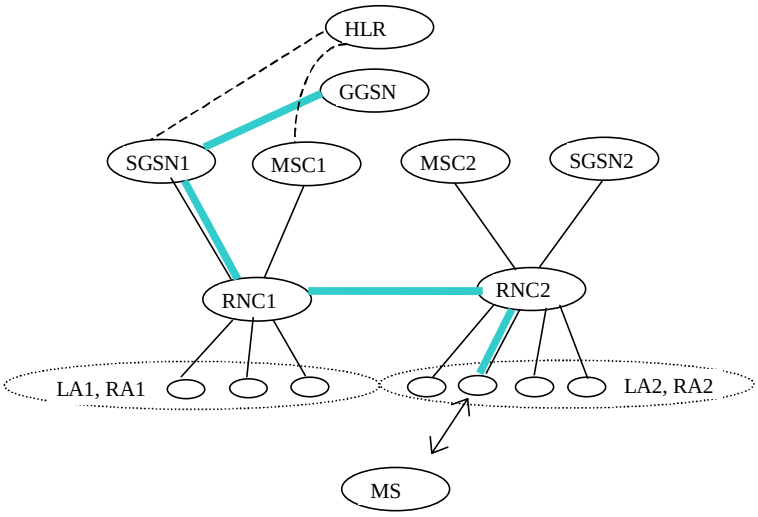


Figure 39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration

Before the SRNS relocation and location registration the MS is registered in SGSN1 and in MSC1. The RNC1 is acting as SERVING RNC and the RNC2 is acting as Drift RNC.

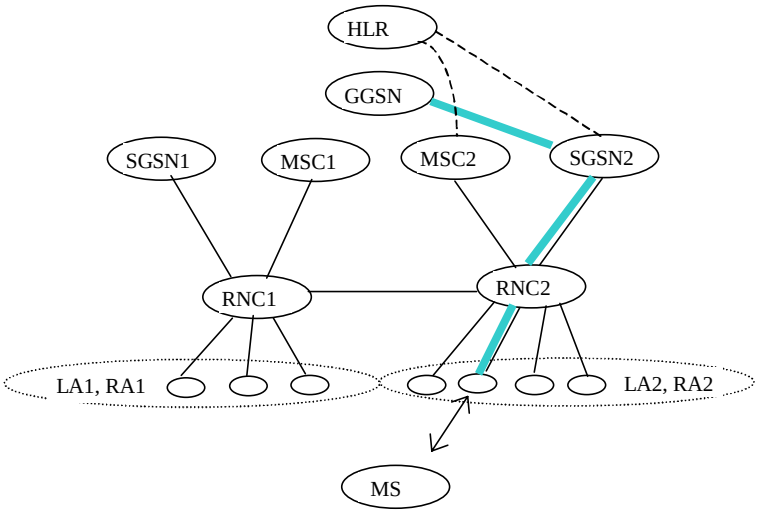


Figure 40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update

After the SRNS relocation and RA Update, the MS is registered in MSC2 and in SGSN2. The MS is in state PMM-CONNECTED towards the SGSN2 and in state CMM-IDLE towards the MSC2. The RNC2 is acting as SERVING RNC.

The SRNS relocation procedure can be divided into 3 stages:

1) Resource Reservation: The path of the data traffic is not changed.

2) Actual handover of Serving RNC Phase: The UTRAN connection point is moved to the target RNC (new Serving RNS) and downlink traffic is forwarded from (old) Serving RNC to the Target RNC

3) Routeing Area Update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, which is described in the RA update subclause.

The SRNS relocation procedure is described in the procedure illustrated in Figure 41. Each step is explained in the following list.

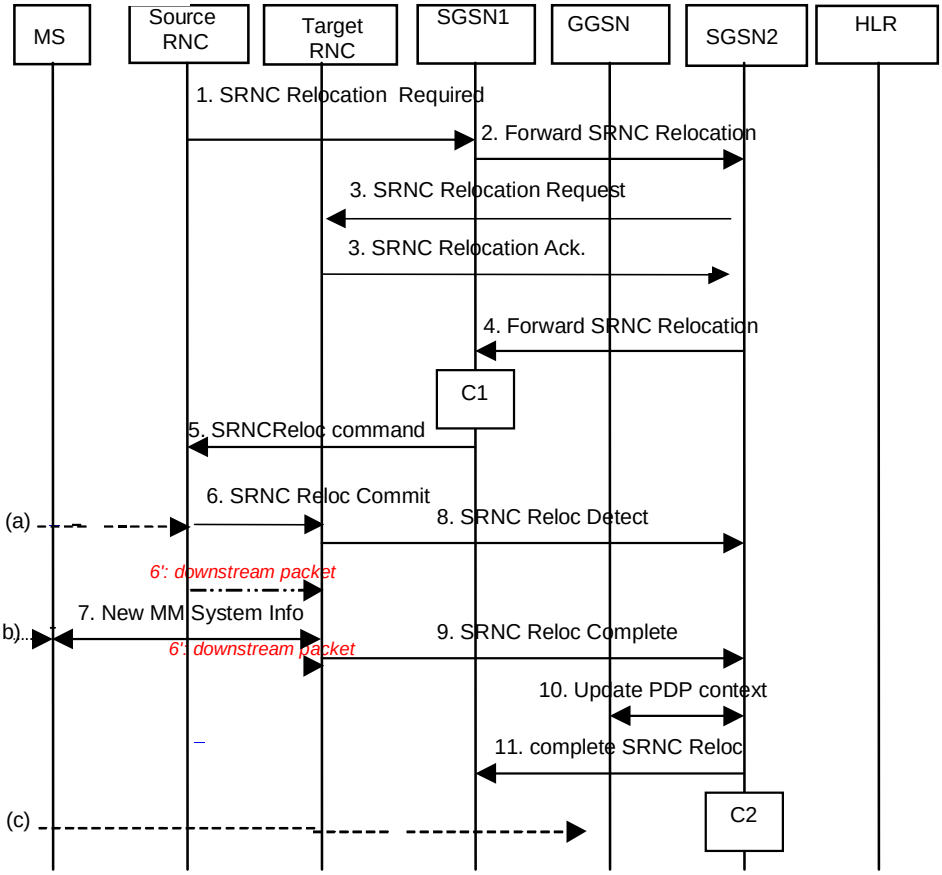


Figure 41: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation

1. "Resource reservation" phase:

During this phase, the transmission of packets between GGSN and MS through the source SRNC continues.

1) UTRAN (source SRNC) makes the decision to perform the Serving RNC relocation procedure. This includes decision on into which RNC (Target RNC) the Serving RNC functionality is to be relocated. The source SRNC sends SRNC Relocation required message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field) to the SGSN1. Transparent information field shall be passed transparently to the target RNC.

2) If the SGSN1 determines from target RNC Identifier that the SRNC relocation is an inter-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, then SGSN1 sends a Forward SRNC relocation request to SGSN2 (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI, MM context, PDP contexts).

NOTE: Forward SRNC relocation request does not contain any information linked with packet transmission (sequence numbers) because such information is under the responsibility of the UTRAN.

3) The SGSN2 sends a SRNC Relocation Request message (target RNC identifier, transparent information field, IMSI) to the target RNC. When the Iu user plane transport bearers have been established, and target RNC completed its preparation phase, SRNC Relocation Acknowledge message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent to the SGSN2. The RNC IP address(es) (possibly one address per PDP context) on which the target RNC is willing to receive these packets. Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are the Identifiers to be used in GTP level when sending packets to this RNC.

4) When the traffic resources between target RNC and SGSN2 has been allocated and the SGSN2 is ready for the SRNC move, then the Forward SRNC Relocation Response message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) is sent from SGSN2 to SGSN1. This message indicates that SGSN2 / target RNC are ready to receive from source SRNC the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS.

5) When the Forward SRNC Relocation Response has been received in the SGSN1, the SGSN1 indicates the completion of preparation phase at the CN PS domain side for the SRNC relocation by sending the SRNC Relocation Command message (RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s)) to the Source RNC. The RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s) are used by SRNC to send the downstream packets not yet acknowledged by MS to the target RNC.

2. "Actual handover of Serving RNC" phase:

6) When the source RNC has received the SRNC Relocation Proceeding 2 message, the source RNC sends a SRNC Relocation Commit message to the target RNC(list of (GTP-SNU, UP-RLC-ack, GTP-SND)). GTP-SND is the GTP sequence number for the next downlink packet received from the GGSN. GTP-SNU is the GTP sequence number for the next uplink packet to be tunnelled to the GGSN. UP-RLC-Ack contains the acknowledgements for upstream PDU received by the source SRNC on each RLC connection used by the MS (i.e. the Receive State Variable V(R) for all RLC SAPI in acknowledged mode). The source SRNC starts a timer T3-TUNNEL , stops the exchange of the packets with the MS (point (a)), and starts tunnelling the buffered and incoming downstream packets towards the target SRNC using RNC IP address(es), and Tunnel End Point Identifier(s). The target RNC executes switch for all bearers at the earliest suitable time instance.

7) The target RNC starts acting as SRNC. The target SRNC:

- Restarts the RLC connections. This includes the exchange between the target SRNC and the MS of the UP-RLC-Ack and DOWN-RLC-ACK. DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms all mobile-terminated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. If DOWN-RLC-ACK confirms reception of packets that were forwarded from the source SRNC, then these packets shall be discarded by the target SRNC. UP-RLC Ack confirms all mobile-originated packets successfully transferred before the start of the relocation procedure. From now on the exchange of the packets with the MS can restart (point (b)).

- Sends New MM System Information to the MS indicating e.g. relevant Routeing Area and Location Area. Additional RRC information may then also be sent to the MS, e.g. new RNTI identity. The new RAI triggers a RA Update procedure (case initiated by MS in PMM-CONNECTED state). This is point (c). The uplink traffic shall not be stopped due to the new MM System Information or the RA Update procedure.

NOTE: The new SGSN may send uplink packets to the GGSN before the update PDP context is performed.

8) Immediately after a successful switch at RNC, target RNC (=SRNC) sends SRNC Relocation Detect message to the SGSN2.

9) After sending out the New MM System Information, the target RNC sends an SRNC relocation complete to SGSN2. In case of intra-SGSN SERVING RNC Relocation, the SGSN use this indication to send an Iu release message to old SRNC.

10) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, SGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier) to the GGSNs concerned. GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context. The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier).

11) If the SRNC relocation is an Inter-SGSN SRNC relocation, the new SGSN sends Complete SERVING RNC relocation message (IMSI) to the old SGSN when all GGSNs have been updated.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.9.3 Periodic RA and LA Updates

All ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MSs, except GSM ~~GPRS~~ MSs in class-B mode of operation engaged in CS communication, shall perform periodic RA updates. MSs that are ~~CS~~IMSI-attached and not ~~PS~~GPRS-attached shall perform periodic LA updates. Periodic RA updates are equivalent to intra SGSN routeing area updates as described in subclause "Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update", with Update Type indicating periodic RA update. For MSs that are both ~~CS~~IMSI-attached and ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, the periodic updates depend on the mode of operation of the network:

- If the network operates in mode I, periodic RA updates shall be performed, and periodic LA updates shall not be performed. In this case, the MSC/VLR shall disable implicit detach for ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MSs and instead rely on the SGSN to receive periodic RA updates. If periodic RA updates are not received in the SGSN and the SGSN detaches the MS, the SGSN shall notify the MSC/VLR by sending an IMSI Detach Indication message.

- If the network operates in mode II or mode III, both periodic RA updates and periodic LA updates shall be performed independently. RA updates are performed towards the SGSN, and LA updates are performed towards the MSC/VLR.

In GSM~~For GPRS~~, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when an LLC PDU is sent since all sent LLC PDUs set the MM context state to READY. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to STANDBY.

~~For~~In UMTS, the periodic RA update timer in the MS is stopped when the MM context enters the PMM-CONNECTED state. The periodic RA update timer is reset and started when the state returns to PMM-IDLE state.

If the MS could not successfully complete the periodic RA update procedure after a retry scheme while the MS was in PS coverage, then the MS shall wait a backoff time equal to the periodic LA update timer broadcast by the network before re-starting the periodic RA update procedure.

6.10 Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Function (GSM only)

~~This subclause applies to GPRS only.~~

Tunnelling of Messages (TOM) is an optional protocol layer that uses the LLC unacknowledged mode procedures to tunnel messages between the MS and the SGSN (see GSM 04.64). TOM uses two LLC SAPs for communication between the MS and the SGSN; one for high-priority messages and one for low-priority messages. A network that supports TIA/EIA-136 [49] shall support the TOM protocol and the Gs interface.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from an MS via the TOM protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a non-GSM MSC/VLR using the BSSAP+ protocol (see GSM 09.18). The specific Gs interface used by the SGSN is determined by the:

- RAI associated with the current location of the MS; and

- information in the TOM protocol header.

Upon receiving a non-GSM signalling message from a non-GSM MSC/VLR via the BSSAP+ protocol, the SGSN forwards the message to a specific MS using the TOM protocol. The specific MS is determined by the SGSN based on the content of the BSSAP+ header.

The control plane between an MS and a non-GSM MSC/VLR that uses tunnelling procedures for non-GSM signalling is shown in Figure 42:

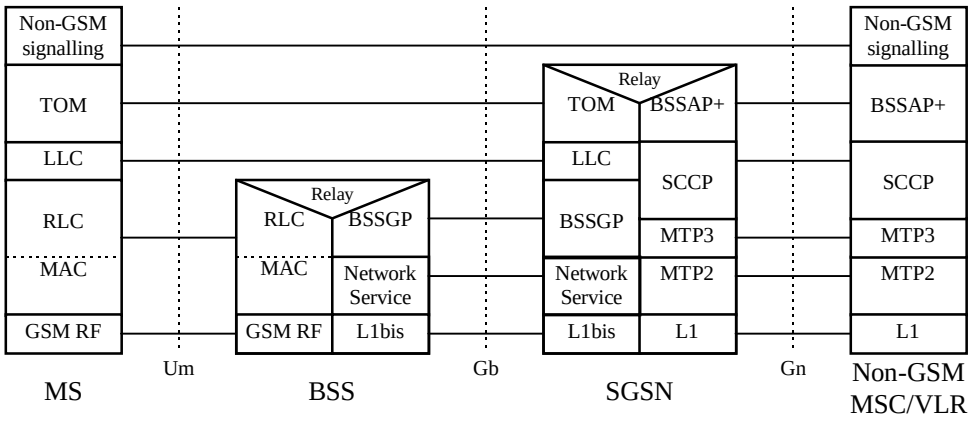


Figure 42: Control Plane MS - Non-GSM MSC/VLR

6.10.1 Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 43. Each step is explained in the following list.

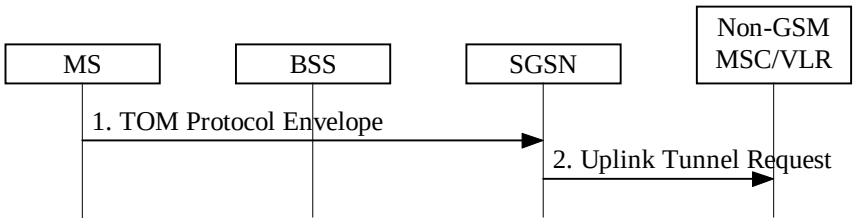


Figure 43: Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

1) The MS sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the SGSN either in ciphered or clear mode. The TOM protocol header contains information about the application using the TOM facility and any other TOM Protocol Discriminator-specific information. The TOM Protocol Envelope is received on one of the two LLC SAPs used for tunnelling of messages.

2) The SGSN identifies the non-GSM MSC/VLR to which to forward the non-GSM signalling message. It then sends a BSSAP+ Uplink Tunnel Request (IMSI, SGSN Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the identified non-GSM MSC/VLR. The Cipher parameter is set to cipher if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received by the LLC layer in ciphered form, otherwise it is set to not cipher. TOM Priority is set to high priority if the TOM Protocol Envelope was received on the high-priority LLC SAP, otherwise it is set to low priority.

6.10.2 Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

The Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages procedure is illustrated in Figure 44. Each step is explained in the following list.

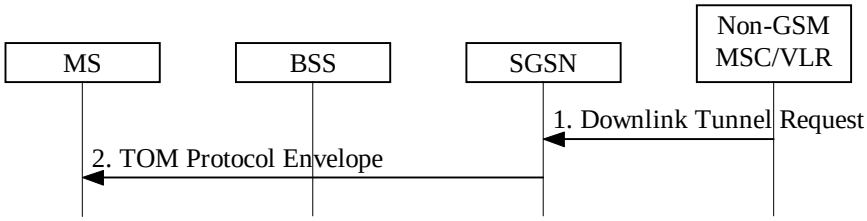


Figure 44: Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure

1) The non-GSM MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Downlink Tunnel Request (IMSI, VLR Address, TOM Priority, Cipher, Non-GSM Signalling Message) message to the SGSN associated with the MS. TOM Priority indicates whether the SGSN shall select the high-priority or low-priority LLC SAP when forwarding the non-GSM signalling message to the MS. Cipher indicates whether or not the SGSN shall cipher the non-GSM signalling message before forwarding it to the MS.

2) The SGSN sends a TOM Protocol Envelope (Non-GSM Signalling Message) to the MS using the selected LLC SAP.

6.11 Subscriber Management Function

The Subscriber Management function provides a mechanism to inform the nodes about changes of the PS subscription data for a specific PS subscriber.

6.11.1 Subscriber Management Procedures

Whenever the PS subscription data is changed for a PS subscriber in the HLR, and the changes affect the PS subscription data stored in the SGSN, then the SGSN node shall be informed about these changes by means of the following procedures:

- Insert Subscriber Data procedure, used to add or modify PS subscription data in the SGSN; or
- Delete Subscriber Data procedure, used to remove PS subscription data in the SGSN.

6.11.1.1 Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the insertion and modification of general PS subscription data for a PS subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the insertion or modification of one or several new or existing PDP contexts in the SGSN. It should be noted that the modification may trigger a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". In particular, the following PDP context parameters may be modified by the HLR:

- QoS Profile Subscribed; and
- VPLMN Address Allowed.

The Insert Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 45. Each step is explained in the following list.

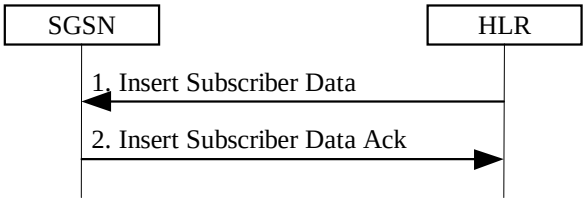


Figure 45: Insert Subscriber Data Procedure

1) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, PS Subscription Data) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN updates its PS subscription data and acknowledges the Insert Subscriber Data message by returning an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context that is included in PS Subscription Data the SGSN shall check whether it is a new, an active, or an inactive PDP context:

   - For a new or inactive PDP context, no further action is required except storage in the SGSN.

   - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall in addition compare the new QoS Subscribed with QoS Negotiated and shall, if necessary, initiate a PDP Context Modification procedure as described in subclause "Modification Procedures". Furthermore, if VPLMN Address Allowed is changed, the SGSN shall, if necessary (e.g., if the PDP context is currently routed via a GGSN in the VPLMN and VPLMN Address Allowed is changed to not allowed), initiate a PDP Context Deactivation procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures".

6.11.1.2 Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

In addition to the deletion of general PS subscription data for a subscriber, see GSM 09.02, the HLR may request the deletion of one or several PDP contexts from the SGSN.

The Delete Subscriber Data procedure is illustrated in Figure 46. Each step is explained in the following list.

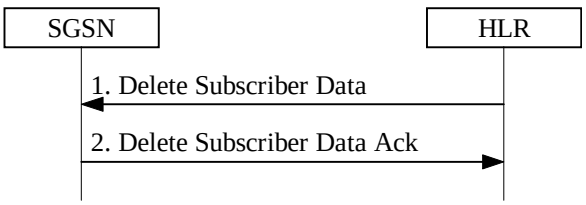


Figure 46: Delete Subscriber Data Procedure

1) The HLR sends a Delete Subscriber Data (IMSI, PDP Context Identifiers List) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN acknowledges the Delete Subscriber Data message by returning a Delete Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message. For each PDP context identifier included in PDP Context Identifiers List, the SGSN shall check whether it belongs to an active or an inactive PDP context:

   - For an inactive PDP context no further action is required except deletion of the PDP context.

   - For an active PDP context, the SGSN shall initiate the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure as explained in subclause "Deactivation Procedures" before the PDP context is deleted.

6.12 Service Request Procedure ~~for (~~UMTS ~~only)~~

The Service Request procedure is used by a 3G-MS in PMM-IDLE state to request the establishment of a secure connection to a 3G-SGSN. The MS in PMM-IDLE state initiates this procedure in order to send uplink signalling messages (e.g., Activate PDP Context Request) or user data. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request resource reservation for active PDP contexts.

6.12.1 Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS in PMM-IDLE state sends the Service Request message to the 3G-SGSN in order to establish the PS signalling connection for the upper layer signalling or for the resource reservation for active PDP contexts. After receiving the Service Request message the 3G-SGSN may perform authentication and it shall perform the security mode procedure. After the establishment of the secure PS signalling connection to a 3G-SGSN the MS may send signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request, to the 3G-SGSN, or the 3G-SGSN may start the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts depending on the requested service in the Service Request message. This procedure is also used by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state to request the resource reservation for the active PDP contexts.

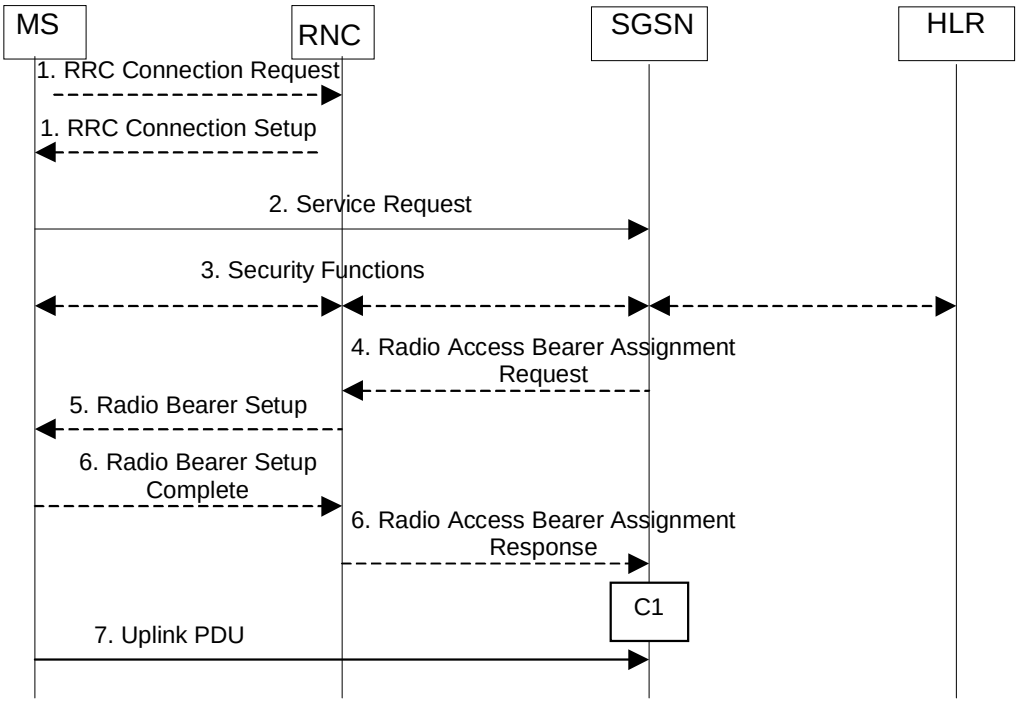


Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The MS establishes an RRC connection, if none exists for CS traffic.

2) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure.

   If Service Type indicates Data then a signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN, and resources for active PDP context(s) are requested allocated, i.e., RAB establishment for the activated PDP context(s).

   If Service Type indicates Signalling then the signalling connection is requested established between the MS and the SGSN for sending upper-layer signalling messages, e.g., Activate PDP Context Request. The resources for active PDP context(s) are not requested allocated.

3) The SGSN shall perform the security functions if the service request was initiated by an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

4) In case Service Type indicates Data, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to re-establish radio access bearer for every activated PDP context.

5) The RNC indicates to the MS the new Radio Bearer Identity established and the corresponding NSAPI with the RRC radio bearer set up procedure.

6) SRNC responds with the Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message. The GTP tunnel(s) are established on the Iu interface.

7) The MS sends the uplink packet.

The MS knows that the Service Request message was successfully received in the SGSN when the MS receives the RRC Security Mode Control Command message. It is, however, possible that the security mode procedure is not performed, e.g., if the Service Request message indicating Service Type = Data is sent after an RA update procedure via the same PS signalling connection. For such cases, the Service Accept message may be needed and it should be treated by the MS as a service acceptance indication.

If the service request cannot be accepted, the network returns a Service Reject message to the mobile station.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.12.2 Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

When the 3G-SGSN receives a downlink packet (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation, MT SMS, user data) for an MS in PMM-IDLE state, the 3G-SGSN sends a paging request to UTRAN. The paging request triggers the Service Request procedure in the UMS

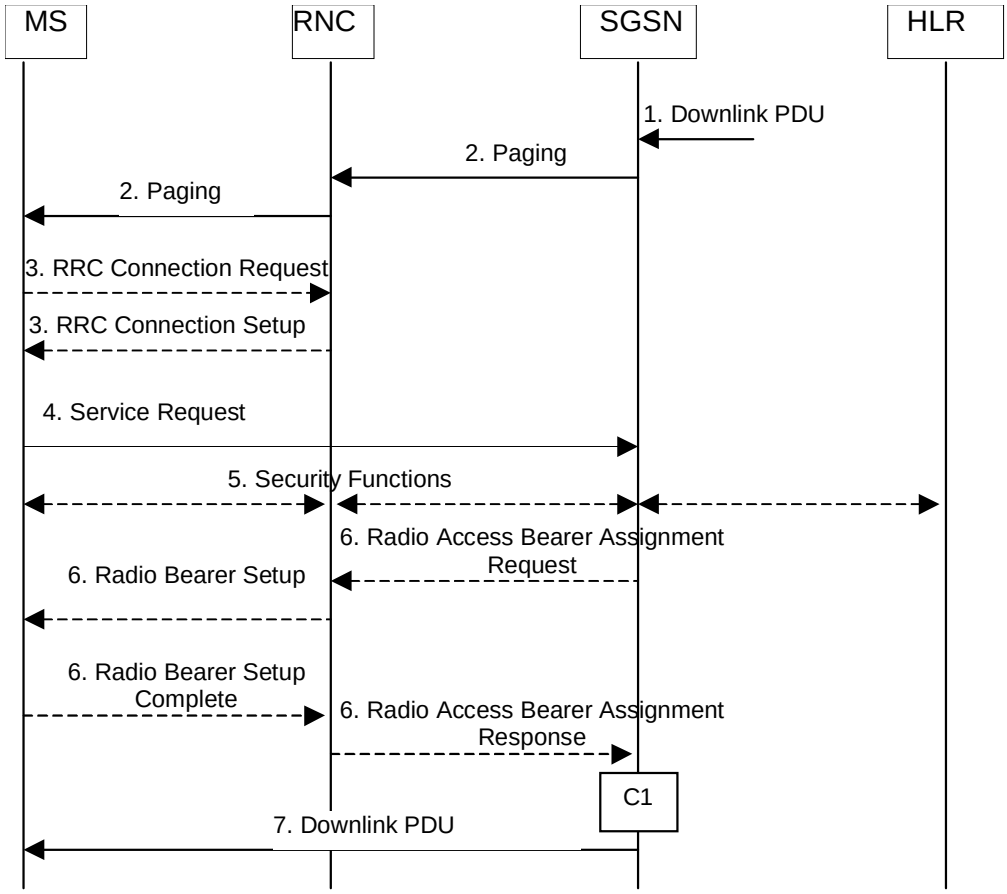


Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in PMM-IDLE state.

2) The SGSN sends a Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, RAI, Paging Cause) message to the RNC. The RNC pages the MS by sending a Paging (P-TMSI or IMSI, Paging Cause) message to the MS.

3) The MS establishes an RRC connection if none exists for CS traffic.

4) The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies Paging Response. The Service Request is carried over the radio in an RRC Direct Transfer message and over the Iu interface in the RANAP Initial MS message. At this point, the SGSN may perform the authentication procedure. The SGSN knows whether the downlink packet requires RAB establishment (e.g., downlink PDU) or not (e.g., Request PDP Context Activation or MT SMS).

5) The SGSN shall perform the security mode procedure.

6) If resources for the PDP contexts are re-established, the SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Request (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), SGSN IP Address(es)) message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup (RAB Identity, NSAPI) to the MS. The MS responds by returning a Radio Access Bearer Complete message to the RNC. The RNC sends a Radio Access Bearer Assignment Response (NSAPI(s), TEID(s), QoS Profile(s), RNC IP Address(es)) message to the SGSN in order to indicate that GTP tunnels are established on the Iu interface and radio access bearers are established between the RNC and the MS.

7) The SGSN sends the downlink packet.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Attach-Request.

6.13 UMTS-GSM ~~GPRS~~ Intersystem Change

The UMTS- GSM ~~GPRS~~ intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ or GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GSM ~~GPRS~~ moves to a cell where the radio technology that the MS was using is not any longer supported. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS ~~is PS attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS attached for~~ GPRS attached. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

The UMTS RLC Sequence Number parameters, RLC-SND and RLC-SNU, are not relevant for the intersystem change of real-time PDP contexts (because these contexts use RLC transparent mode).

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces can support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the old and the new cells are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ takes place when an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state enters a new GSM ~~GPRS~~ cell with GPRS services. In this case the MS shall perform a routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in PMM-IDLE state enters a new GSM ~~GPRS~~ cell with GPRS services inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Gb interface to the new cell.

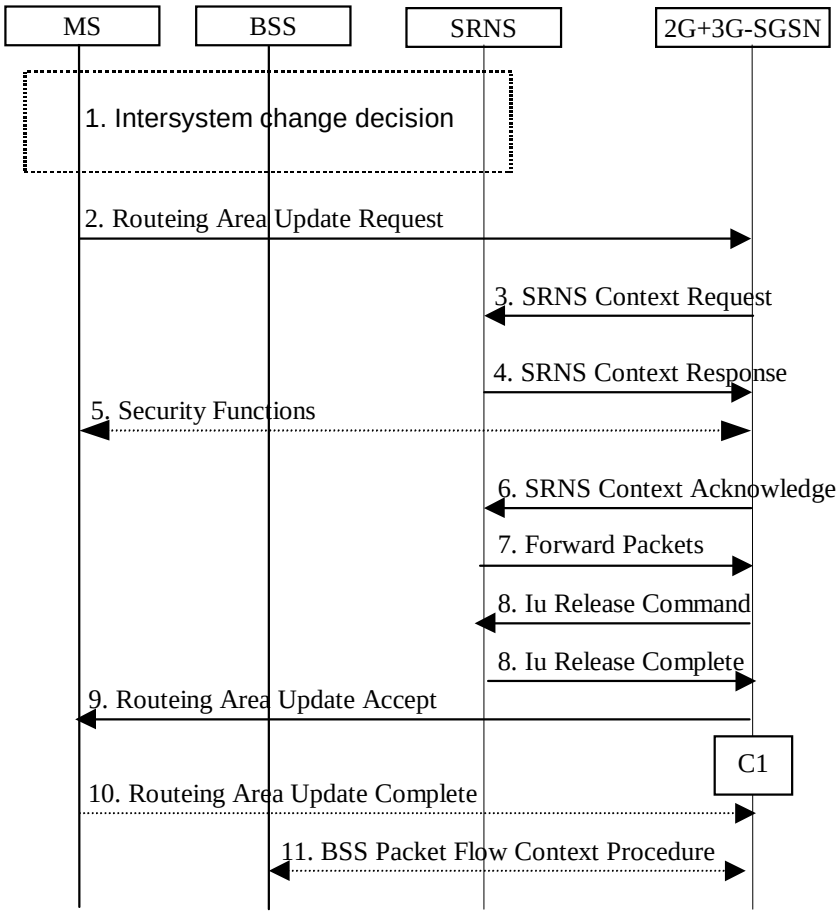


Figure 49: UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GSM ~~GPRS~~ radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN.

3) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS, starts a timer and stops transmission of GTP PDUs to the SRNS.

4) The SRNS responds with an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The GTP sequence numbers are included for each PDP context indicating the next in-sequence downlink PDU to be sent to the MS and the next in-sequence GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes the uplink RLC sequence number (RLC-SNU) and the downlink RLC sequence number (RLC-SND). RLC-SNU shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS. RLC-SND shall be the next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers of the respective 2G GPRS PDP contexts.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The 2G+3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge message to the SRNS. This informs the SRNS that the 2G+3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets.

7) The partly transmitted and transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the downlink RLC sequence number of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU and the buffered downlink GTP PDUs are tunnelled back to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence numbers accompanying the received N-PDUs before sending them to the MS.

8) When the timer described under 3 has expired, the 2G+3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

9) The 2G+3G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, or if subscription checking fails, then the 2G+3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the 2G+3G-SGSN updates MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message is returned to the MS. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

10) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU Number from RLC-SND by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC-SND of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

11) The 2G+3G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.1 GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS takes place when a ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS enters a UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.

When an MS in STANDBY state enters a new UMTS cell inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures.

The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.

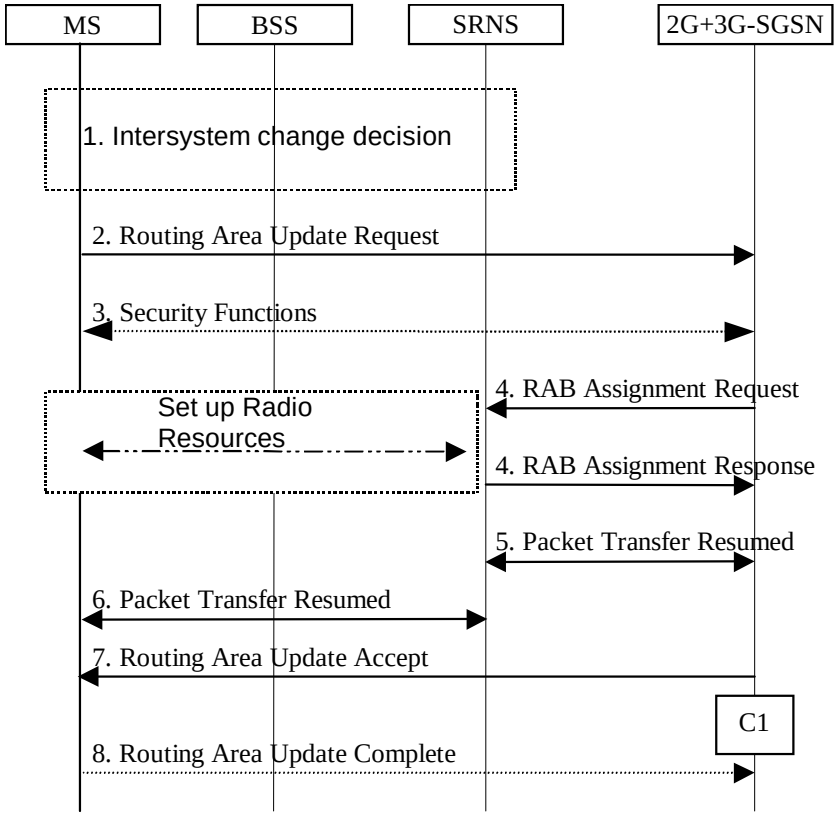


Figure 50: GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The RLC sequence numbers shall be derived (shifted left 4 times) from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

5) Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. If this is not the case, then the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

6) The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.1.3 Selective RA Update

The MS shall use the following procedures when in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state.

Note that upon expiry of the periodic RA update timer, the MS shall carry out the periodic routeing area update procedure.

6.13.1.3.1 Uplink Signalling or Data Transmission

In STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state the MS shall not perform an RA update procedure until uplink data or signalling information is to be sent from the MS.

If the MS is in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in GPRS, or for example sending of a Service Request message in UMTS.

If the MS is in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, the RA update procedure shall be performed before the sending of data or signalling.

6.13.1.3.2 Downlink Signalling or Data Transmission

If the 2G+3G-SGSN receives data for an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state, then the SGSN shall page in the RA where the MS is located. This may include both 2G and 3G cells.

If the MS receives this page in the same access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the procedures defined for that access system shall be followed. This shall be sending of an LLC PDU in a GSM ~~GPRS~~ cell or for example sending of a Service Request message in a UMTS cell.

If the MS receives this page in a different access network as when it last sent data or signalling, then the RA update procedure shall be performed. The 2G+3G-SGSN shall accept this RAU as a valid response.

6.13.2 Inter SGSN Intersystem Change

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state moves to a new GSM ~~GPRS~~ cell and this cell is served by a different SGSN. In this case the MS shall initiate a GSM ~~GPRS~~ RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN change case is shown in .

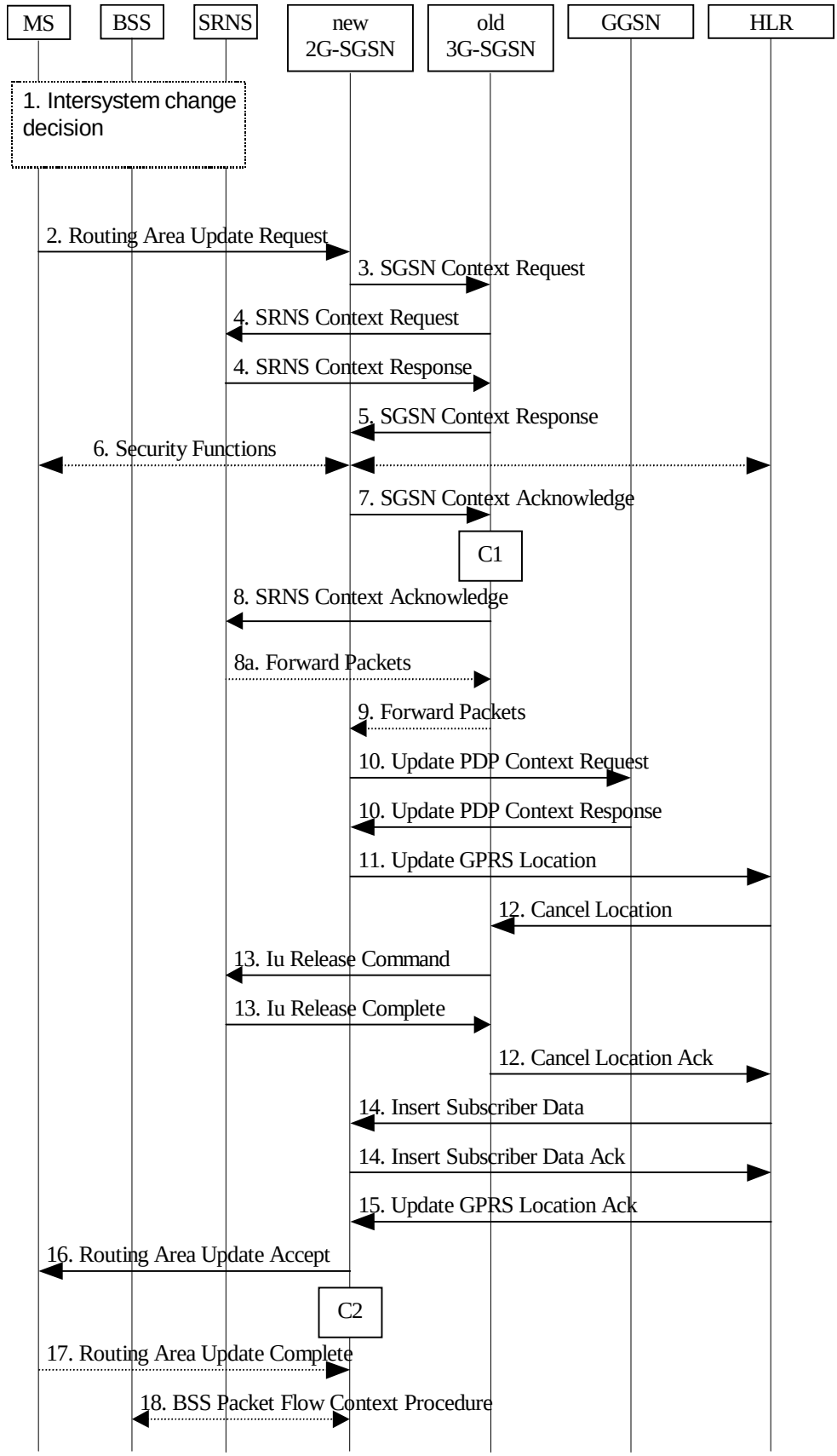


Figure 51: UMTS to GSM ~~GPRS~~ Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GSM ~~GPRS~~ radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes RLC-SNU and RLC-SND. The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) The old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the partly transmitted and the transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the RLC downlink sequence number (the four most significant bits shall be stripped off) of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU, and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The SNDCP sequence numbers shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from the downlink RLC sequence number by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence number of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

18) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.13.2.2 GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS takes place when a ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS moves to a new UMTS cell. In this case the MS shall initiate a UMTS RA update procedure by establishing a RRC connection and initiating the RA update procedure. The sequence applied for the inter SGSN RA update case is shown in the following figure.

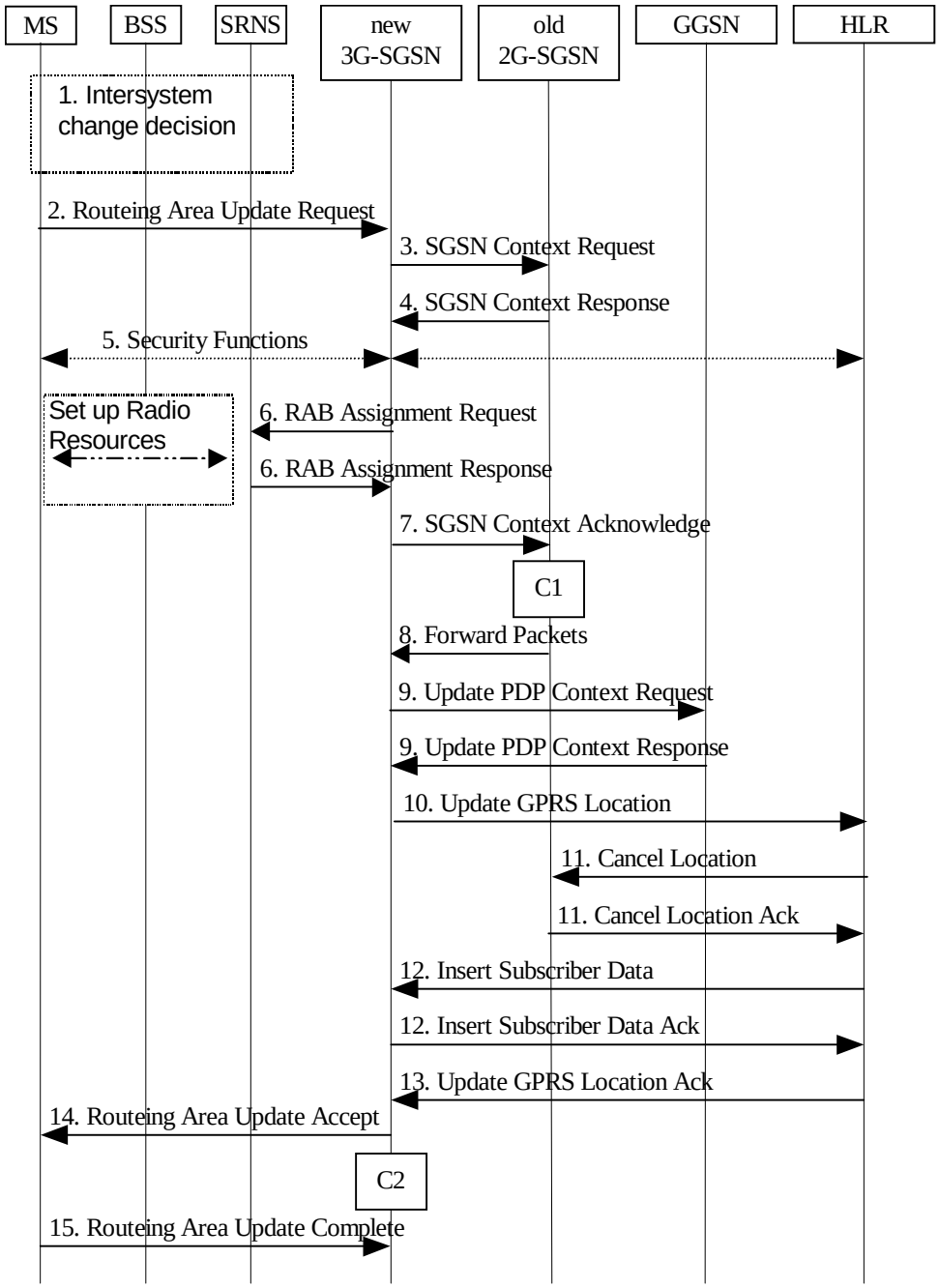


Figure 52: GSM ~~GPRS~~ to UMTS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add the cell [FFS] of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 3G-SGSN.

3) The new 3G-SGSN uses the old RAI received from the MS to derive the old 2G-SGSN address, and sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI, New SGSN Address) message to the 2G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old 2G-SGSN starts a timer and stops the transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

4) The old 2G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. Each PDP Context includes the GTP sequence number for the next downlink N-PDU

to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number for the next uplink N-PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS. The new 3G-SGSN shall use the GTP sequence numbers for in-sequence delivery over the Iu interface. The new 3G-SGSN converts the SNDCP sequence numbers to RLC sequence numbers by shifting them left 4 times.

5) Security functions may be executed.

6) The new 3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs tunnelled from the SGSN with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNDs received from the MS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the RLC-SNUs received from the SRNS. If this is not the case, the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

7) The new 3G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 2G-SGSN. This informs the old 2G-SGSN that the new 3G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

8) The old 2G-SGSN duplicates the buffered N-PDUs and starts tunnelling them to the new 3G-SGSN. Additional N-PDUs received from the GGSN before the timer described in step 3 expires are also duplicated and tunnelled to the new 3G-SGSN. No N-PDUs shall be forwarded to the new 3G-SGSN after expiry of the timer described in step 3.

9) The new 3G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

10) The new 3G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

11) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) message to the old 2G-SGSN. The old 2G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running the MM and PDP contexts are removed when the timer expires. The old 2G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message.

12) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 3G-SGSN. The 3G-SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

13) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 3G-SGSN.

14) The new 3G-SGSN validate the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 3G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 3G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 3G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The new 3G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI signature) message.

15) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

6.14 Classmark Handling

To support efficient radio interface usage in GPRS, the MS classmark is handled differently for SGSN-based services than for MSC-based services. In particular, the classmark is sent in MM messages to the network and stored in the network as long as the MS is GPRS-attached, avoiding redundant classmark retransmissions over the radio interface. This is sometimes called the "idle-mode classmark" principle.

In order to allow introduction of new radio access technologies in the future, the MS classmark is split into two distinct and independent information elements, the radio access classmark, and the SGSN classmark.

6.14.1 Radio Access Classmark

The radio access classmark contains the radio capabilities of the MS (e.g., multislot capability, power class), and more generally all the information that should be known by the BSS in order to handle radio resources for that MS.

The radio access classmark is a container for a multiplicity of radio access technology-dependent information, i.e., within the radio access classmark there are independent sub-fields for various technologies such as GSM 900, GSM 1800, Satellite, UMTS, etc. The coding shall allow a BSS to extract only the sub-fields relevant to it without interpreting the other sub-fields. This ensures that the radio classmark does not need to be interpreted by the NSS, and the full radio classmark is always sent by the MS to the SGSN, and thereafter provided to the BSS irrespective of the actual BSS capabilities.

The SGSN shall provide the radio access classmark as an information element on the Gb interface. It is the responsibility of the SGSN to provide the BSS with the most recent classmark received from the MS. The classmark information element can be included in a downlink transfer request, or be sent in a specific message that updates the radio classmark information in the BSS. The BSS may at any time request the radio classmark for a given MS to be transmitted from the SGSN to the BSS.

A specific optimisation allows the BSS to receive a reduced radio access classmark at initial access directly from the MS. This enables the BSS not to wait for the full radio access classmark to be provided by the SGSN, and is therefore quicker for the initial MS-originated transmission. The reduced classmark can be carried is several RR messages depending on the access method, e.g., in the initial random access message, or in the first uplink radio block. Details are provided in GSM 04.08 and GSM 04.60.

6.14.2 SGSN Classmark

The SGSN classmark contains non radio-related capabilities, e.g., the ciphering capability. The SGSN stores the SGSN classmark which is used both locally by the SGSN and for transfer to the new SGSN at all types of inter SGSN RA update.

7 Network Management Functionality

The Network Management function provides mechanisms to support O&M functions related to the packet domain.

8 Radio Resource Functionality

8.1 Radio Resource Functionality ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

8.1.1 Cell Selection and Reselection

An MS (in any mode of operation (A, B, or C)) cannot camp on more than one cell. This means that the cell selection and reselection procedure should choose cells that support services the user has subscribed to.

If the MS is in idle mode, see 3G TS 23.022, then it shall behave as described below:

When the MS is in GPRS IDLE state and wishes to initiate the GPRS Attach procedure, the following applies:

- If the currently camped-on cell supports GPRS then no cell reselection is required.
- If the currently camped-on cell does not support GPRS, then reselection of a cell supporting GPRS is required before execution of the attach procedure.

If the MS is in GPRS STANDBY or READY state, cell selection and reselection procedures specific to GPRS shall be used, see 3G TS 23.022.

The cell reselection procedure used in READY state shall minimise the cell changes.

If the MS is in dedicated mode, see 3G TS 24.008, then the changes from one cell to another is performed according to the network-controlled handover procedures.

There may be co-ordination of the idle and dedicated mode procedures used for circuit-switched services with the READY state procedure for MSs that are both IMSI-attached and GPRS-attached.

8.1.2 Discontinuous Reception

A GSM ~~GPRS~~ MS may be able to choose if it wants to use discontinuous reception (DRX) or not. If using DRX, the MS shall also be able to specify other DRX parameters that indicate the delay for the network to send a page request or a channel assignment to the MS (see GSM 03.64).

The DRX parameters shall be indicated by the MS in the attach procedure. The SGSN shall then in each page request send these parameters to the BSS that uses this information and the IMSI to calculate the correct paging group.

DRX usage is independent of the MM states IDLE, STANDBY and READY. As DRX can be used by a GPRS MS in READY state, DRX has to be considered also when assigning a packet data channel for downlink transfer. The SGSN shall therefore indicate the DRX parameters for the MS in all packet transmission requests to the BSS.

A GSM ~~GPRS~~ MS shall not apply DRX in READY state during the GPRS attach and routeing area update procedures.

8.1.3 Radio Resource Management

GSM Radio Resource Management functions are defined in GSM 04.07 [12]. The radio interface layer 3 protocol is specified in 3G TS 24.008.

8.1.3.1 Layer Functions

GPRS radio resource management procedures are required for the following functions:

- allocation and release of physical resources (i.e., timeslots) associated with a GPRS channel;
- monitoring GPRS channel utilisation to detect under-utilised or congested GPRS channels;
- initiating congestion control procedures; and
- distribution of GPRS channel configuration information for broadcasting to the MSs.

8.1.3.2 Model of Operation

8.1.3.2.1 Dynamic Allocation of Radio Resources

A cell may or may not support GPRS.

A cell supporting GPRS may have GPRS radio resources allocated at a given instance. If no GPRS radio resources are allocated, an MS can request allocation of such resources. MSs may then use these radio resources. The PLMN may dynamically increase, to a PLMN operator-defined maximum, or, decrease to an operator-defined minimum, the radio resources allocated.

The network broadcasts GPRS system information on the common control channels.

GSM radio resources are dynamically shared between GPRS and other GSM services.

8.1.4 Paging for GPRS Downlink Transfer

An MS in STANDBY state is paged by the SGSN before a downlink transfer to that MS. The paging procedure shall move the MM state to READY to allow the SGSN to forward downlink data to the radio resource. Therefore, any uplink data from the MS that moves the MM context at the SGSN to READY state is a valid response to paging.

The SGSN supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the SGSN receives no response from the MS to the Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent.

The MS shall accept pages also in READY state if no radio resource is assigned. This supports recovery from inconsistent MM states in MS and SGSN.

The GPRS Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 53. Each step is explained in the following list.

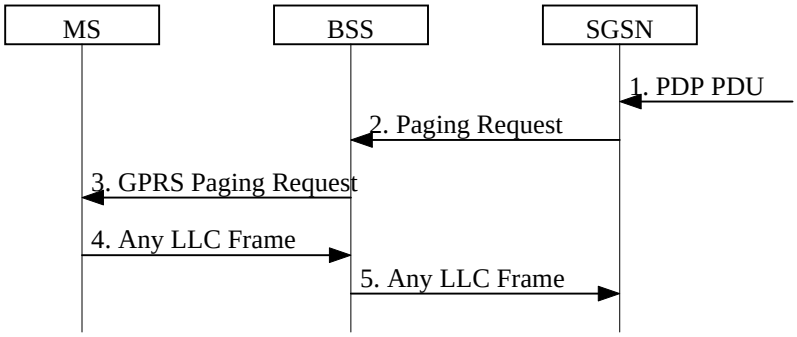


Figure 53: GPRS Paging Procedure

1) The SGSN receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in STANDBY state. Downlink signalling to a STANDBY state MS initiates paging as well.

2) The SGSN sends a BSSGP Paging Request (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, Channel Needed, QoS, DRX Parameters) message to the BSS serving the MS. IMSI is needed by the BSS in order to calculate the MS paging group. P-TMSI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. Channel Needed indicates GPRS paging. QoS is the negotiated QoS for the PDP context that initiates the paging procedure, and indicates the priority of this Paging Request relative to other Paging Request messages buffered in the BSS. DRX Parameters indicates whether the MS uses discontinuous reception or not. If the MS uses discontinuous reception, then DRX Parameters also indicate when the MS is in a non-sleep mode able to receive paging requests.

3) The BSS pages the MS with one Paging Request (P-TMSI, Channel Needed) message in each cell belonging to the addressed routeing area. This is described in GSM 03.64.

4) Upon receipt of a GPRS Paging Request message, the MS shall respond with either any single valid LLC frame (e.g., a Receive Ready or Information frame) that implicitly is interpreted as a page response message by the SGSN. When responding, the MS changes MM state to READY.

The response is preceded by the Packet Channel Request and Packet Immediate Assignment procedures as described in GSM 03.64.

5) Upon reception of the LLC frame, the BSS adds the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell and sends the LLC frame to the SGSN. The SGSN shall then consider the LLC frame to be an implicit paging response message and stop the paging response timer.

8.2 Radio Resource Functionality ~~for (~~UMTS ~~only)~~

8.2.1 Radio Resource Management

UTRAN functions are defined in 3G TS 25.401. The radio interface protocol architecture is specified in 3G TS 25.301, and the Radio Resource Control protocol is specified in 3G TS 25.331.

8.2.2 RRC State Machine

The RRC state machine is a description model of how the MS and the UTRAN co-operate regarding RRC functionality. The RRC state describes the MS state in the UTRAN. This subclause contains a brief description of the RRC state machine, for more information see 3G TS 25.303.

The RRC state machine exists as two peer entities, one in the MS and one in UTRAN. Apart from transient situations and error cases the two peer entities are synchronised. Figure 54 illustrates the main modes and states of the RRC state machine.

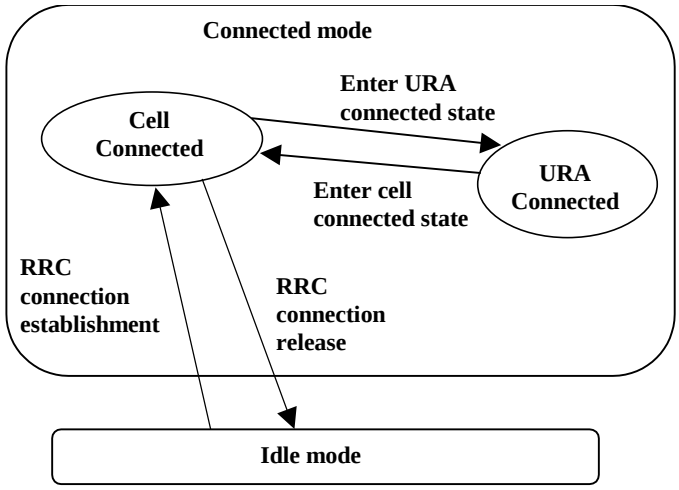


Figure 54: RRC Modes, Main RRC States and Main Mode and State Transition

RRC Idle mode: In the Idle mode there is no connection established between the MS and UTRAN. There is no signalling between UTRAN and the MS except for system information that is sent from UTRAN on a broadcast channel to the MS. The MS can also receive paging messages with a CN identity on the PCH. There is no information of the MS stored in UTRAN in this mode.

RRC Connected mode: In the Connected mode the main states are Cell Connected state and URA Connected state. In this mode there is one RNC that is acting as Serving RNC (SRNC), and an RRC connection is established between the MS and this SRNC.

- When the MS position is known at the cell level, the MS is in the Cell Connected state. When in Cell Connected state, the RRC connection mobility is handled by handover and cell update procedures.

- When the MS position is known at the URA level, the MS is in the URA Connected state. URA updating procedures provides the mobility functionality in this state. No dedicated radio resources are used in the URA Connected state.

8.2.3 Paging Initiated by CN

A CN node requests paging only for MSs in CMM-IDLE state or PMM-IDLE state. In the separate CN architecture, paging from a CN node is done independently from the state of the MS in the other CN service domain.

In this alternative with paging co-ordination in the UTRAN, the MS does not need to listen to the PCH (Paging Channel) in the RRC Connected mode, at least not when MS is allocated a dedicated channel.

For each paging request received from a CN node, the RNC determines whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In order to achieve this, the context that is prepared within the SRNC for MS in RRC Connected mode must contain the IMSI, which is the common MS identity for the two CN domains.

If no context is found for the MS, "normal PCH paging" is performed. The paging message is transferred on the paging channel, and it includes the MS paging identity received from the CN and a CN service domain type indication.

If a context is found, a "CN paging message" is transferred using the existing RRC connection. This message includes a CN service domain type indication.

8.2.3.1 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN Without RRC Connection for CS

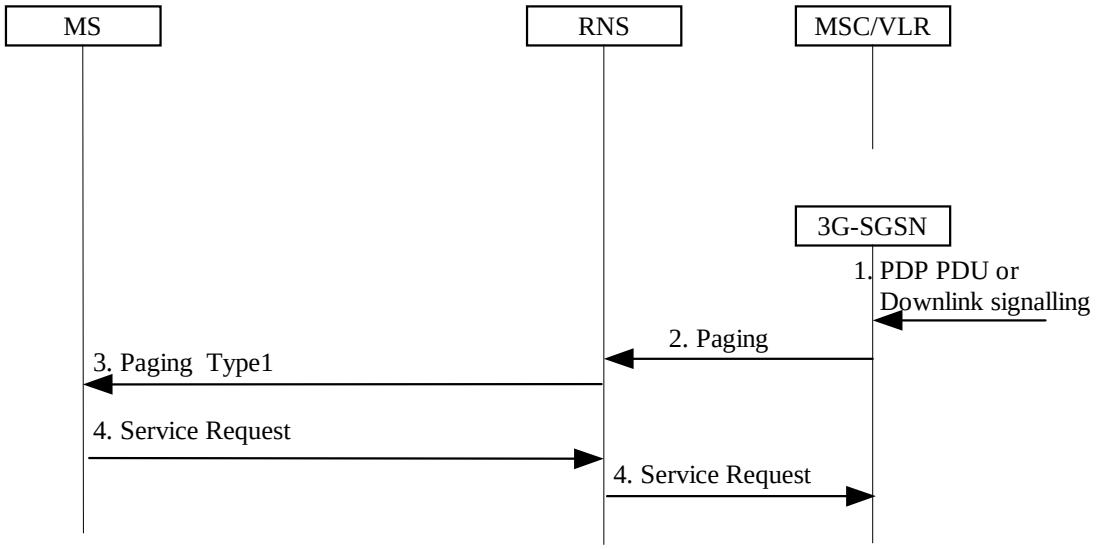


Figure 55: PS Paging Without RRC Connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a PDP PDU or downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group, and to identify the paged MS. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is also included. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) initiated the paging message, and it represents "SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has no RRC connection, so a "normal PCH paging" is performed. Paging Type 1(IMSI or P-TMSI, Paging originator, CN domain ID) is transferred on the Paging channel, IMSI or P-TMSI identifies the MS. Paging originator indicates whether this is core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "CN" in this case. And CN domain ID indicates whether this paging message is for CS-service or PS-service, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure for UMTS".

Optionally, 3G-SGSN may include "Non Searching Indication" in RANAP Paging message in this case. If a "Non Searching Indication" parameter is present, the RNC will not search the established RRC connection, and just initiate "normal PCH paging".

8.2.3.2 PS Paging Initiated by 3G-SGSN With RRC Connection for CS

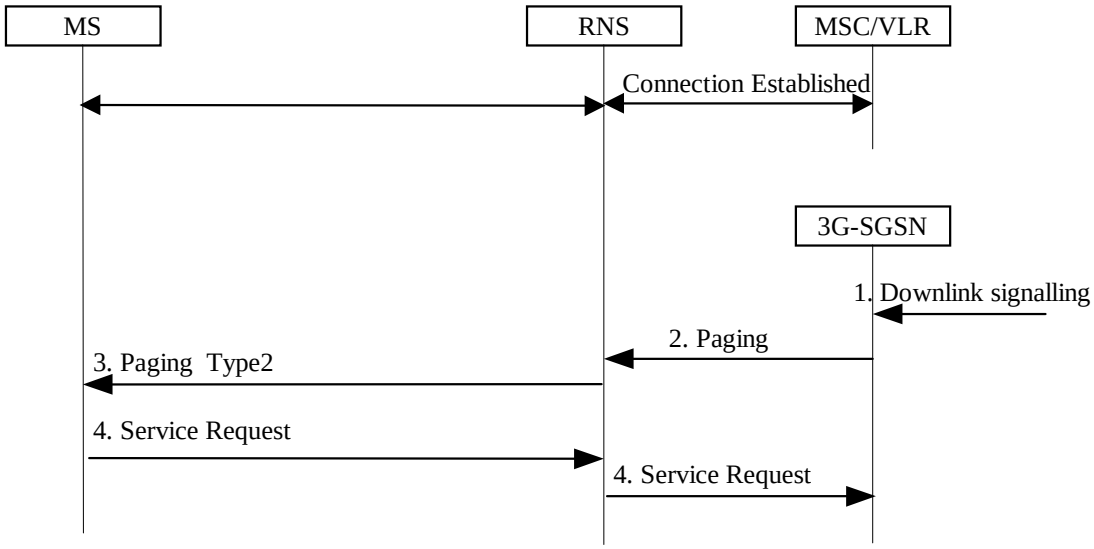


Figure 56: PS Paging With RRC Connection for CS

1) The 3G-SGSN receives a downlink signalling for an MS in PMM Idle state.

2) The 3G-SGSN sends a RANAP Paging (IMSI, P-TMSI, Area, CN Domain Indicator) message to each RNS belonging to the routeing area in which the MS is located. IMSI is needed by the RNS in order to calculate the MS paging group. If 3G-SGSN assigned the P-TMSI to the MS, P-TMSI is included, and it identifies the MS is paged. Area indicates the routeing area in which the MS is paged. CN Domain Indicator indicates to which domain (MSC or 3G-SGSN) the paging was initiated, and it represents "3G-SGSN" in this case.

3) The RNS controls whether the MS has an established RRC connection or not. In this case, MS has an established RRC connection for CS service, so RNS sends a RRC Paging Type 2(CN domain ID) message to the MS on established RRC connection. CN Domain ID indicates to which domain (CS or PS) the paging shall be directed, so it represents "PS" in this case.

4) The paging request triggers the Service Request procedures in the MS. The service request procedures are described in subclause "Service Request Procedure for UMTS".

8.2.4 Paging Initiated by UTRAN

An MS in RRC URA connected state is paged by the RNC before a downlink transfer to that MS. The URA paging procedure shall move the RRC state to Cell Connected to allow the RNC to forward downlink data or signalling message to the radio resource. Therefore, RRC: Cell Update message from the MS that moves the RRC State at the RNC to Cell Connected state is a valid response to URA paging.

The RNC supervises the paging procedure with a timer. If the RNC receives no response from the MS to the URA Paging Request message, it shall repeat the paging. The repetition strategy is implementation dependent. For more information see TS 25.303.

The Paging procedure is illustrated in Figure 42. Each step is explained in the following list.

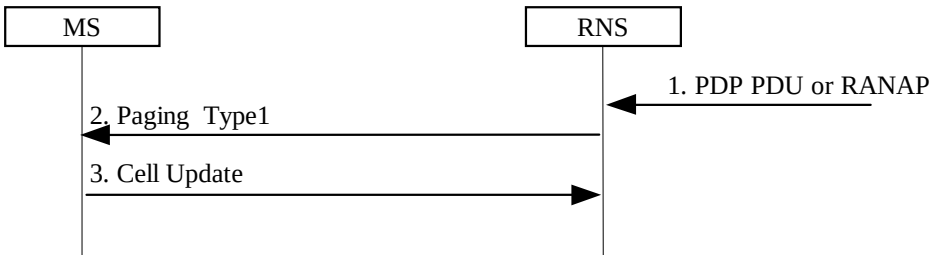


Figure 57: URA Paging Procedure

1) The RNS receives a downlink PDP PDU for an MS in RRC URA connected state. Downlink signalling to a MS in RRC URA connected state initiates URA paging as well.

2) The RNS pages the MS with one Paging Type 1 (RNTI, Paging originator) message in each cell belonging to the UTRAN routeing area where the MS exists. RNTI is the identifier by which the MS is paged. Paging originator indicates whether this is the core network originated paging or UTRAN originated paging, so it represents "UTRAN" in this case.

3) The paging request triggers the Cell Update procedures in the MS. The Cell Update procedures are described in TS 25.331.

9 Packet Routeing and Transfer Functionality

9.1 Definition of Packet Data Protocol States

A GPRS subscription contains the subscription of one or more PDP addresses. Each PDP address is described by one or more PDP contexts in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. Each PDP context may be associated with a TFT. At most one PDP context associated with the same PDP address may exist at any time with no TFT assigned to it. Every PDP context exists independently in one of two PDP states. The PDP state indicates whether data transfer is enabled for that PDP address and TFT or not. In case all PDP contexts associated with the same PDP address are deactivated, data transfer for that PDP address is disabled. Activation and deactivation are described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions". All PDP contexts of a subscriber are associated with the same MM context for the IMSI of that subscriber.

9.1.1 INACTIVE State

The INACTIVE state characterises the data service for a certain PDP address of the subscriber as not activated. The PDP context contains no routeing or mapping information to process PDP PDUs related to that PDP address. No data can be transferred. A changing location of a subscriber causes no update for the PDP context in INACTIVE state even if the subscriber is ~~PS~~GPRS-attached.

Mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state by the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure if the GGSN is allowed to initiate the activation of the PDP context for that PDP address. Otherwise, mobile-terminated PDP PDUs received in INACTIVE state invoke error procedures in the GGSN relevant to the external network protocol, for example, an IP packet is discarded and an ICMP (see RFC 792 [41]) packet (error notification) is returned to the source of the received packet. Other error procedures may be introduced on the application level, but this is outside the scope of the present document.

The MS initiates the movement from INACTIVE to ACTIVE state by initiating the PDP Context Activation procedure.

9.1.2 ACTIVE State

In ACTIVE state, the PDP context for the PDP address in use is activated in MS, SGSN and GGSN. The PDP context contains mapping and routeing information for transferring PDP PDUs for that

particular PDP address between MS and GGSN. The PDP state ACTIVE is permitted only when the mobility management state of the subscriber is STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED. The Iu interface radio access bearer may or may not be established for an active PDP context.

An active PDP context for an MS is moved to INACTIVE state when the deactivation procedure is initiated.

All active PDP contexts for an MS are moved to INACTIVE state when the MM state changes to IDLE or PMM-DETACHED.

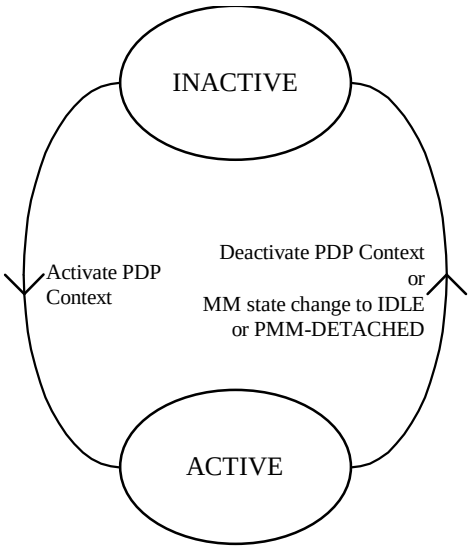


Figure 58: Functional PDP State Model

9.2 PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions

A ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS can initiate these functions at any time in order to activate, modify, or deactivate a PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, and the GGSN. A GGSN may request the activation of a PDP context to a ~~PS~~GPRS-attached subscriber. A GGSN may initiate the deactivation of a PDP context.

NOTE: If the MS is in PMM-IDLE state, it needs to perform a service request procedure to enter the PMM-CONNECTED state before initiating these procedure.

Upon receiving an Activate PDP Context Request message or an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to set up PDP contexts. The first procedure includes subscription checking, APN selection, and host configuration, while the latter procedure excludes these functions and reuses PDP context parameters including the PDP address but except the QoS parameters. Once activated, all PDP contexts that share the same PDP address and APN shall be managed equally. At least one PDP context shall be activated for a PDP address before a Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be initiated. When the MS performs an RA update procedure to change from a release 99 to a release 97 or 98 system, only one active PDP context per PDP address and APN shall be preserved. This PDP context is selected taking the QoS profile and NSAPI value into account.

Upon receiving a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, the SGSN shall initiate procedures to deactivate the PDP context. When the last PDP context associated with a PDP address is deactivated, then N-PDU transfer for this PDP address is disabled.

An MS does not have to receive the (De-)Activate PDP Context Accept message before issuing another (De-)Activate PDP Context Request. However, only one request can be outstanding for every TI.

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 59. Each step is explained in the following list.

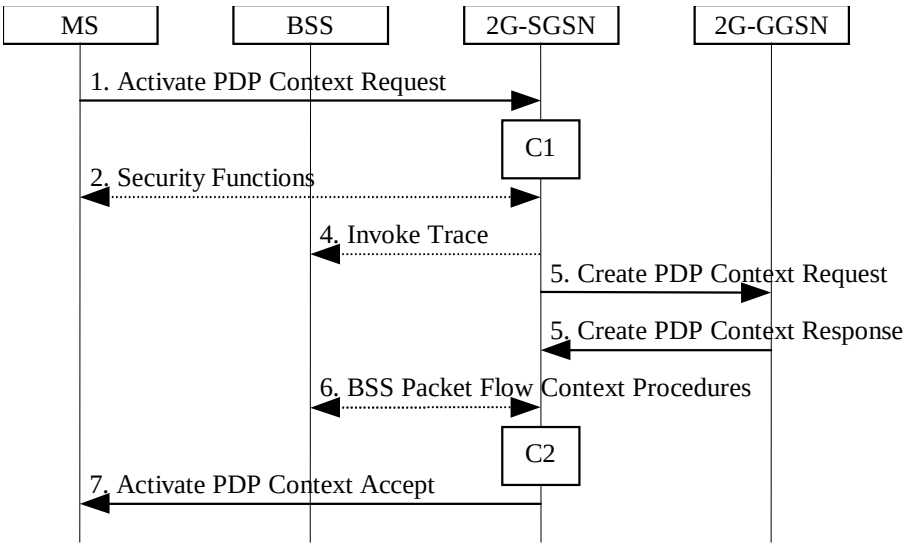


Figure 59: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GSM~~GPRS~~

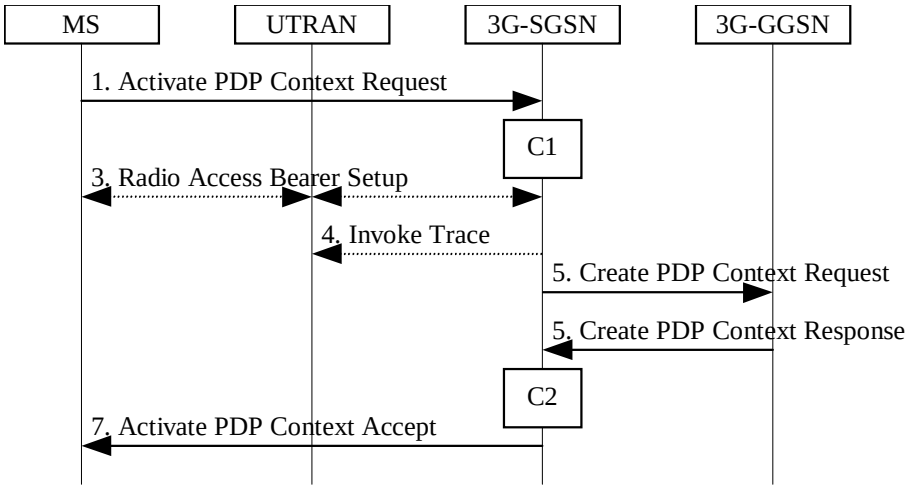


Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) ~~For GPRS~~In GSM, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) ~~For GPRS~~In GSM, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is

defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.1.1 Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be used to activate a PDP context while reusing the PDP address and other PDP context information from an already active PDP context, but with a different QoS profile. Procedures for APN selection and PDP address negotiation are not executed. Each PDP context sharing the same PDP address and APN shall be identified by a unique TI and a unique NSAPI.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may be executed without providing a Traffic Flow Template (TFT) to the newly activated PDP context if all other active PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN already have an associated TFT, otherwise a TFT shall be provided. The TFT contains attributes that specify an IP header filter that is used to direct data packets received from the interconnected external packet data network to the newly activated PDP context.

The Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure may only be initiated after a PDP context is already activated for the same PDP address and APN. The procedure is illustrated in Figure 61. Each step is explained in the following list.

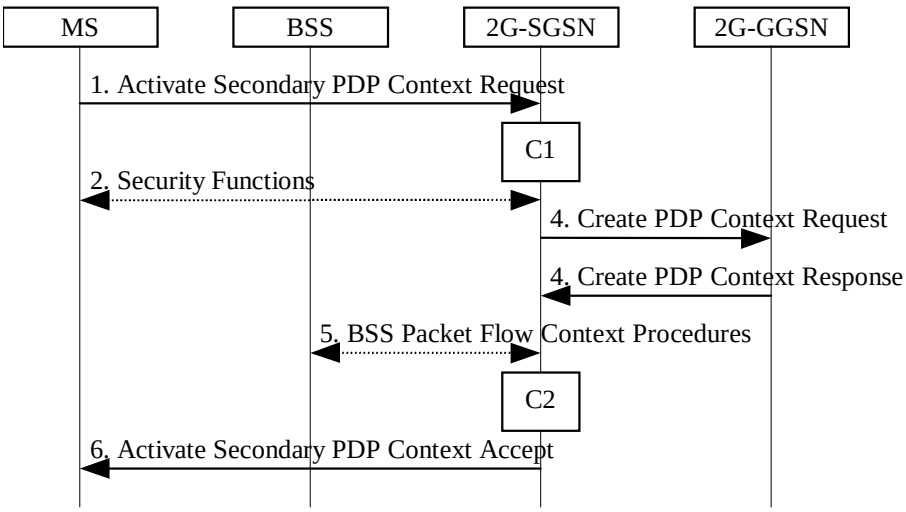


Figure 61: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

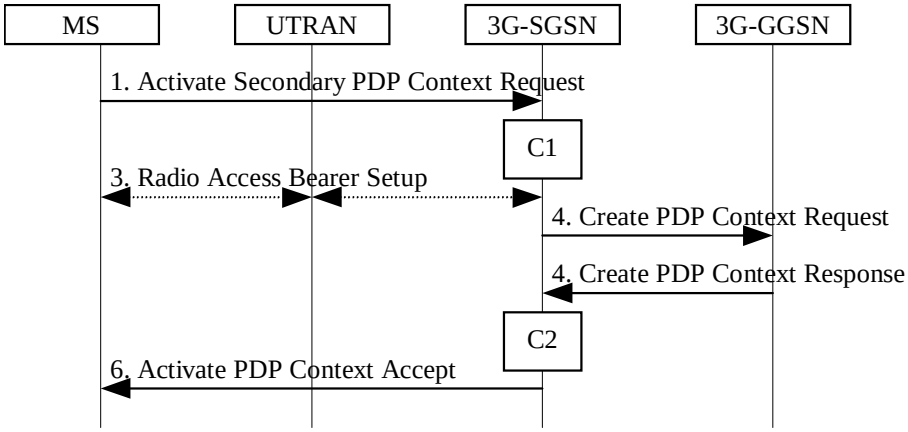


Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate Secondary PDP Context Request (Linked TI, NSAPI, TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Linked TI indicates the TI value assigned to any one of the already activated PDP contexts for this PDP address and APN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. TFT is sent transparently through the SGSN to the GGSN to enable packet classification for downlink data transfer. TI and NSAPI contain values not used by any other activated PDP context.

2) ~~For GPRS~~In GSM, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to the UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) The SGSN validates the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request using the TI indicated by Linked TI. The same GGSN address is used by the SGSN as for the already-activated PDP context(s) for that TI and PDP address.

   The SGSN and GGSN may restrict and negotiate the requested QoS as specified in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (QoS Negotiated, TEID, TFT) message to the affected GGSN. TFT is included only if received in the Activate Secondary PDP Context Request message. The GGSN uses the same external network as used by the already-activated PDP context(s) for that PDP address, generates a new entry in its PDP context table, and stores the TFT. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs via different GTP tunnels between the SGSN and the external PDP network. The GGSN returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message to the SGSN.

5) ~~For GPRS~~In GSM, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

6) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS via different GTP tunnels and possibly different LLC links.

For each additionally activated PDP context a QoS profile and TFT may be requested.

If the secondary PDP context activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate Secondary PDP Context Reject (Cause) message, then the MS may attempt another activation with a different TFT, depending on the cause.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

9.2.2.2 Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure allows the GGSN to initiate the activation of a PDP context. When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN checks if a PDP context is established for that PDP address. If no PDP context has been previously established the GGSN may try to deliver the PDP PDU by initiating the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure. The criteria used by the GGSN to determine whether trying to deliver the PDP PDU to the MS may be based on subscription information and are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

To support Network-Requested PDP Context Activation the GGSN has to have static PDP information about the PDP address. To determine whether Network-Requested PDP Context Activation is supported for a PDP address the GGSN checks if there is static PDP information for that PDP address.

Once these checks have been performed the GGSN may initiate the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure.

The network operator may implement the following techniques to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR:

- Implementation of the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG) technique in GGSN, SGSN, and HLR (see subclause "Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure").

- The GGSN may reject or discard PDP PDUs after a previous unsuccessful delivery attempt. This systematic rejection of PDP PDUs would be performed during a certain time after the unsuccessful delivery.

- The GGSN may store the address of the SGSN with which the GGSN established the last PDP context. This would prevent an enquiry to the HLR. This SGSN address would be considered as valid during a certain time.

9.2.2.2.1 Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

The Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 63. Each step is explained in the following list.

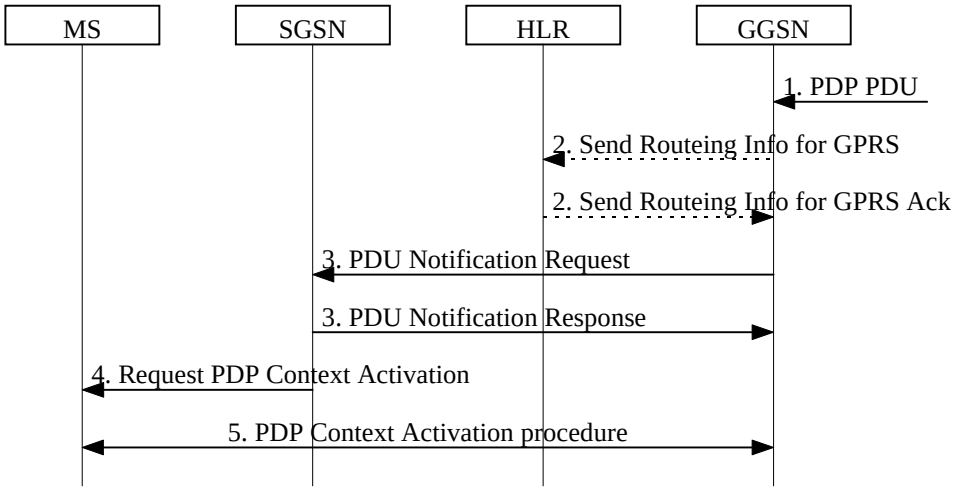


Figure 63: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) When receiving a PDP PDU the GGSN determines if the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure has to be initiated. The GGSN may store subsequent PDP PDUs received for the same PDP address.

2) The GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. If the HLR determines that the request can be served, it returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason) message to the GGSN. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter is included if the MNRG flag is

set in the HLR. The Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason parameter indicates the reason for the setting of the MNRG flag as stored in the MNRR record (see GSM 03.40). If the MNRR record indicates a reason other than 'No Paging Response', the HLR shall include the GGSN number in the GGSN-list of the subscriber.

If the HLR determines that the request cannot be served (e.g., IMSI unknown in HLR), the HLR shall send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, MAP Error Cause) message. Map Error Cause indicates the reason for the negative response.

3) If the SGSN address is present and either Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason is not present or Mobile Station Not Reachable Reason indicates 'No Paging Response', the GGSN shall send a PDU Notification Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to the SGSN indicated by the HLR. Otherwise, the GGSN shall set the MNRG flag for that MS. The SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN in order to acknowledge that it shall request the MS to activate the PDP context indicated with PDP Address.

4) The SGSN sends a Request PDP Context Activation (TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, APN) message to request the MS to activate the indicated PDP context.

5) The PDP context is activated with the PDP Context Activation procedure (see subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure").

9.2.2.2.2 Unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure

If the PDP context requested by the GGSN cannot be established, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Response (Cause) or a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN depending on if the context activation fails before or after the SGSN has sent a Request PDP Context Activation message to the MS. Cause indicates the reason why the PDP context could not be established:

- 'IMSI Not Known'. The SGSN has no MM context for that IMSI (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS GPRS Detached'. The MM state of the MS is IDLE (Cause in PDU Notification Response).

- 'MS Not GPRS Responding'. The MS is GPRS-attached to the SGSN but the MS does not respond. This may be due to the lack of a response to a GPRS Paging Request, due to an Abnormal RLC condition, or due to no Activate PDP Context Request message received within a certain time after the Request PDP Context Activation message was delivered to the MS (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

- 'MS Refuses'. The MS refuses explicitly the network-requested PDP context (Cause in PDU Notification Reject Request).

When receiving the PDU Notification Response or the PDU Notification Reject Request message the GGSN may reject or discard the PDP PDU depending on the PDP type.

After an unsuccessful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure the network may perform some actions to prevent unnecessary enquires to the HLR. The actions taken depend on the cause of the delivery failure.

- If the MS is not reachable or if the MS refuses the PDP PDU (Cause value 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'), then the SGSN shall not change the setting of MNRG for this MS. The GGSN may refuse any PDP PDU for that PDP address during a certain period. The GGSN may store the SGSN address during a certain period and send subsequent PDU Notification Request messages to that SGSN.

- If the MS is GPRS-detached or if the IMSI is not known in the SGSN (Cause value 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known'), then the SGSN, the GGSN, and the HLR may perform the Protection and Mobile User Activity procedures.

The Protection procedure is illustrated in Figure 64. Each step is explained in the following list.

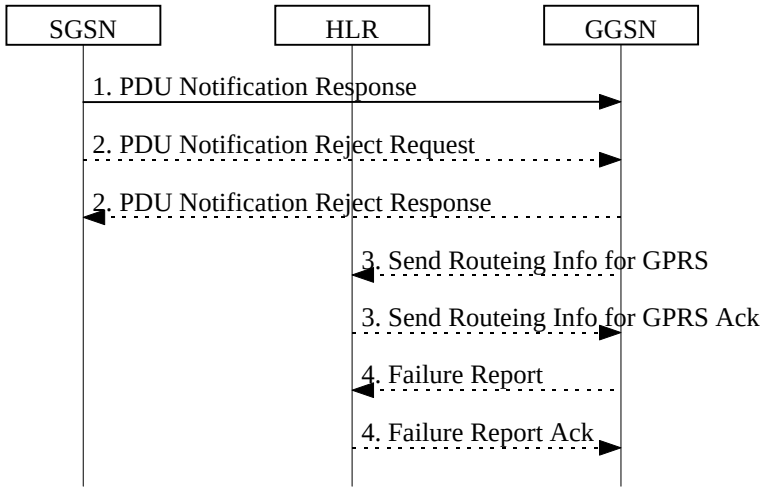


Figure 64: Protection Procedure

1) If the MM context of the mobile is IDLE or if the SGSN has no information about that user, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response (Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known', otherwise the Cause shall be 'Activation Proceeds'. If the Cause is 'MS GPRS Detached' or 'IMSI Not Known' and if the SGSN has an MM context for that user, the SGSN sets MNRG to indicate the need to report to the HLR when the next contact with that MS is performed.

2) If the MS does not respond or refuses the activation request, the SGSN sends a PDU Notification Reject Request (IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Cause) message to the GGSN with Cause equal to 'MS Not GPRS Responding' or 'MS Refuses'. The GGSN returns a PDU Notification Reject Response message to the SGSN.

3) If Cause equals 'IMSI Not Known' the GGSN may send a Send Routeing Information for GPRS (IMSI) message to the HLR. The HLR returns a Send Routeing Information for GPRS Ack (IMSI, SGSN Address, Cause) message to the GGSN indicating the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. If SGSN Address is different from the one previously stored by the GGSN, then steps 3, 4, and 5 in Figure 63 are followed.

4) If SGSN Address is the same as the one previously stored in the GGSN, or if the Cause value returned in step 1 equals 'MS GPRS Detached', then the GGSN sets MNRG for that PDP address and sends a Failure Report (IMSI, GGSN Number, GGSN Address) message to the HLR to request MNRG to be set in the HLR. The HLR sets (if not already set) MNRG for the IMSI and adds GGSN Number and GGSN Address to the list of GGSNs to report to when activity from that IMSI is detected. GGSN Number is either the number of the GGSN, or, if a protocol-converting GSN is used as an intermediate node, the number of the protocol-converting GSN. GGSN Address is an optional parameter that shall be included if a protocol-converting GSN is used.

The Mobile User Activity procedure is illustrated in Figure 65. Each step is explained in the following list.

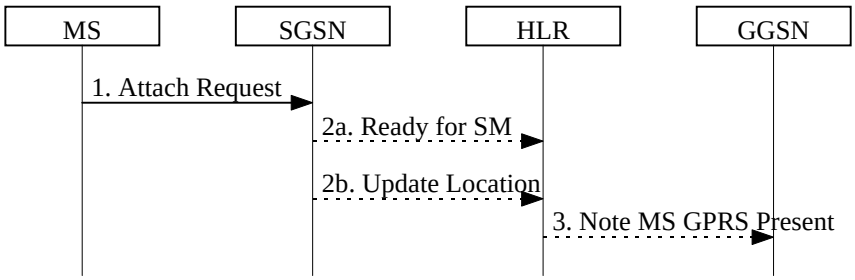


Figure 65: Mobile User Activity Procedure

1) The SGSN receives an indication that an MS is reachable, e.g., an Attach Request message from the MS.

2a) If the SGSN contains an MM context of the MS and MNRG for that MS is set, the SGSN shall send a Ready for SM (IMSI, MS Reachable) message to the HLR and clears MNRG for that MS.

2b) If the SGSN does not keep the MM context of the MS, the SGSN shall send an Update Location message (see subclause "Attach Function") to the HLR.

3) When the HLR receives the Ready for SM message or the Update Location message for an MS that has MNRG set, it clears MNRG for that MS and sends a Note MS GPRS Present (IMSI, SGSN Address) message to all the GGSNs in the list of the subscriber. (The Ready for SM message also triggers the SMS alert procedure as described in subclause "Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer".) SGSN Address contains the address of the SGSN that currently serves the MS. Upon reception of Note MS Present, each GGSN shall clear MNRG.

9.2.2.3 Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

The MS can anonymously initiate PDP Context Activation in IDLE, STANDBY, and READY states. An existing MM context in the SGSN is neither required nor used in this case. Only dynamic PDP addressing is applicable.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in Figure 66. Each step is explained in the following list.

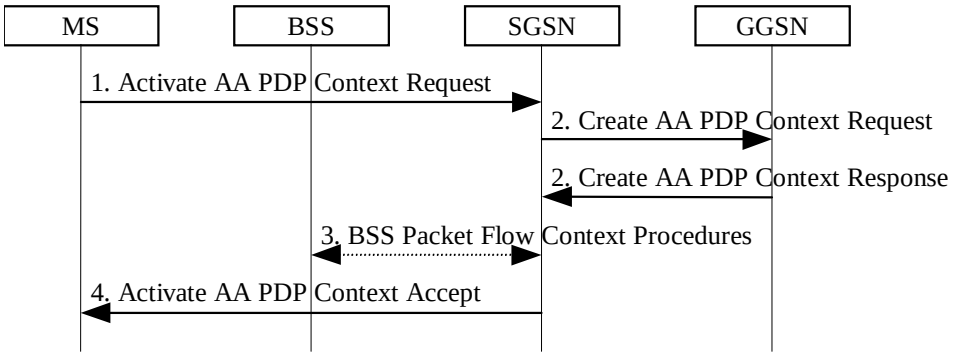


Figure 66: Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure

1) The MS sends an Activate AA PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use a Random TLLI at the RLC/MAC layer for identification purposes. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate that it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network that provides anonymous services. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS value given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN assigns an Auxiliary TLLI and creates an AA-TEID for the PDP-Context. The SGSN sends a Create AA PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, AA-TEID, Selection Mode, PDP Configuration Options) message to the GGSN indicated by Access Point Name in the Activate AA PDP Context Request message. Selection Mode indicates how the APN was selected. The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the server(s) that provide services for anonymous MSs, and to start charging. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network that provides anonymous services. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then allocates a dynamic PDP Address and returns a Create AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The GGSN shall check the source and destination address in all subsequent anonymous MO PDP PDUs received from the SGSN. If the GGSN detects a not allowed address in an MO PDP PDU, then the PDP PDU shall be discarded and the MM and PDP contexts shall be deleted in the GGSN, SGSN, and MS, as defined in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

   If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create AA PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

4) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the PDP address received from the GGSN in its PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated and returns an Activate AA PDP Context Accept (A-TLLI, PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route anonymous PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS and to start charging.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the MM and PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the AA PDP Context Activation procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate AA PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same GGSN up to a maximum number of attempts.

9.2.3 Modification Procedures

An MS or GGSN can request, or an SGSN can decide, possibly triggered by the HLR as explained in subclause "Insert Subscriber Data Procedure", to modify parameters that were negotiated during an activation procedure for one or several PDP contexts. The following parameters can be modified:

- QoS Negotiated;
- Radio Priority;
- Packet Flow Id;
- PDP Address (in case of the GGSN-initiated modification procedure); and
- TFT (in case of MS-initiated modification procedure).

The SGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

A GGSN can request the modification of parameters by sending an Update PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

An MS can request the modification of parameters by sending a Modify PDP Context Request message to the SGSN.

A trace may be activated while a PDP context is active. To enable trace activation in a GGSN, the SGSN shall send an Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN. If PDP context modification is performed only to activate a trace, then the SGSN shall not send a Modify PDP Context Request message to the MS.

9.2.3.1 SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 67. Each step is explained in the following list.

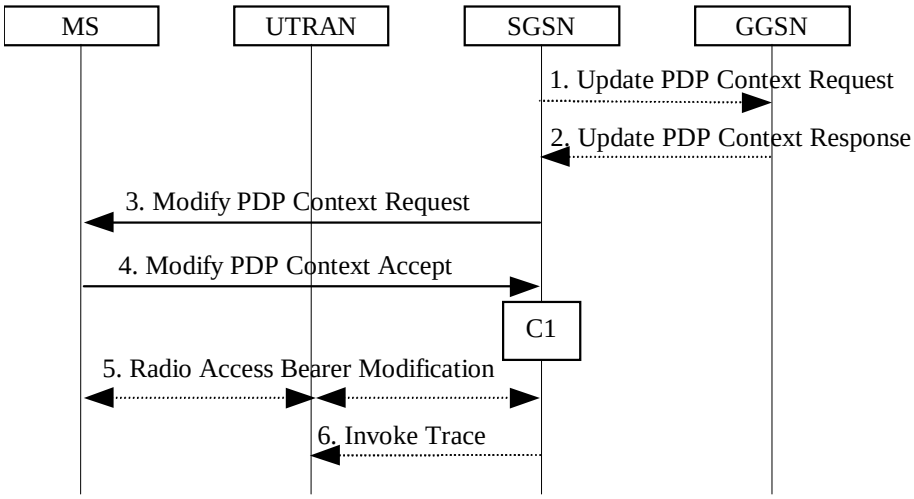


Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The SGSN may send an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity in the message if GGSN trace is activated while the PDP context is active. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

2) The GGSN may restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated, Cause) message.

3) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and may send a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

4) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

5) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

6) If BSS trace is activated while the PDP context is active, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.2 GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 68. Each step is explained in the following list.

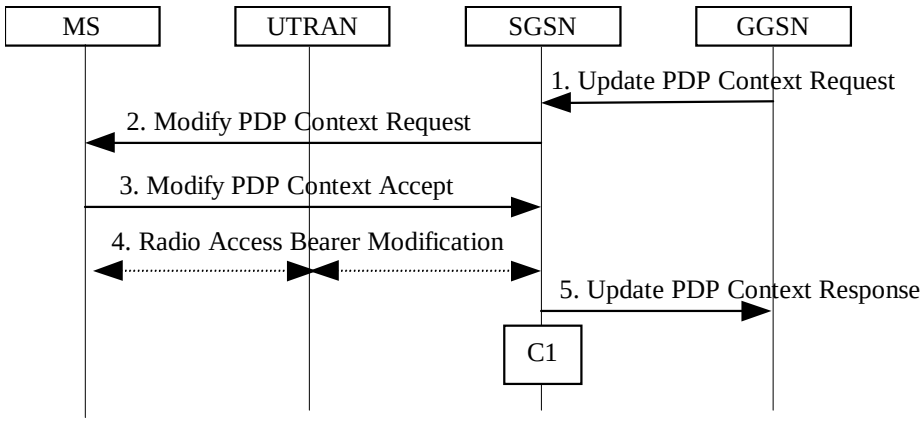


Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The GGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, PDP Address, QoS Requested) message to the SGSN. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Address is optional.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, the current QoS profile, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, PDP Address, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS. PDP Address is optional.

3) The MS acknowledges by returning a Modify PDP Context Accept message. If the MS does not accept the new QoS Negotiated it shall instead de-activate the PDP context with the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

4) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) Upon receipt of the Modify PDP Context Accept message, or upon completion of the RAB modification procedure, the SGSN returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to the GGSN. If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request message, it shall instead follow the PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.3.3 MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

The MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 69. Each step is explained in the following list.

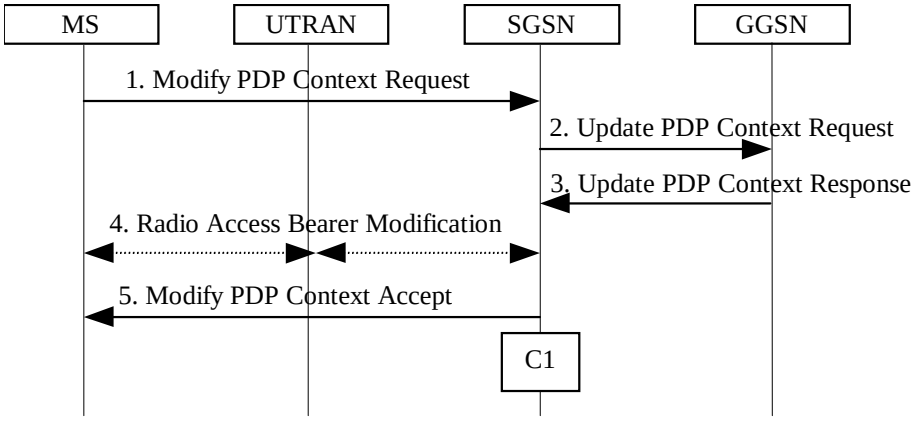


Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure

1) The MS sends a Modify PDP Context Request (TI, QoS Requested, TFT) message to the SGSN. Either QoS Requested or TFT or both may be included. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile, while TFT indicates the TFT that is to be added or modified or deleted from the PDP context.

2) The SGSN may restrict the desired QoS profile given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile. The SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (TEID, QoS Negotiated, TFT) message to the GGSN. If QoS Negotiated and/or TFT received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being modified (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type or TFT contains inconsistent packet filters), then the GGSN rejects the Update PDP Context Request. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

3) The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN stores QoS Negotiated, stores, modifies, or deletes TFT of that PDP context as indicated in TFT, and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID, QoS Negotiated) message.

4) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the radio access bearer modification procedure may be executed.

5) The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns a Modify PDP Context Accept (TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id) message to the MS.

NOTE: If the SGSN does not accept QoS Requested, then steps 2 and 3 of this procedure are skipped, and the existing QoS Negotiated is returned to the MS in step 4.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Modify-PDP-Context.

9.2.4 Deactivation Procedures

9.2.4.1 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 70. Each step is explained in the following list.

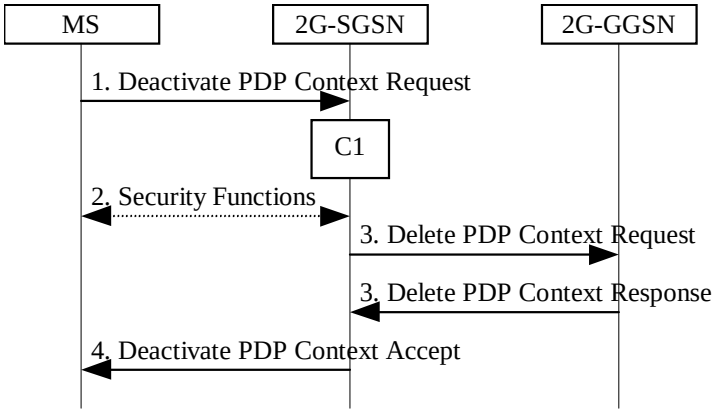


Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GSM~~GPRS~~

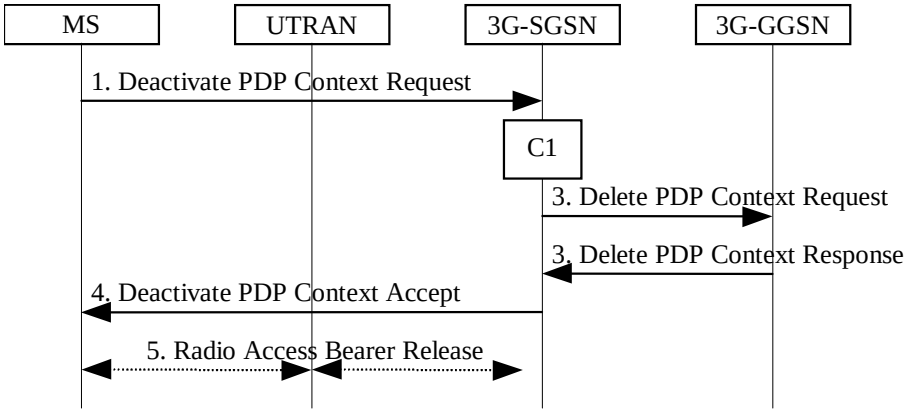


Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN.

2) ~~For GPRS~~In GSM, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind was included by the MS in the Deactivate PDP Context Request message, then the SGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address by including Teardown Ind in the Delete PDP Context Request message. The GGSN removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

4) The SGSN returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the MS.

5) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

At GPRS detach, all PDP contexts for the MS are implicitly deactivated.

If the SGSN receives a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI) message for a PDP context that is currently being activated, then the SGSN shall stop the PDP Context Activation procedure without responding to the MS, and continue with the PDP Context Deactivation initiated by MS procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.2 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 72. Each step is explained in the following list.

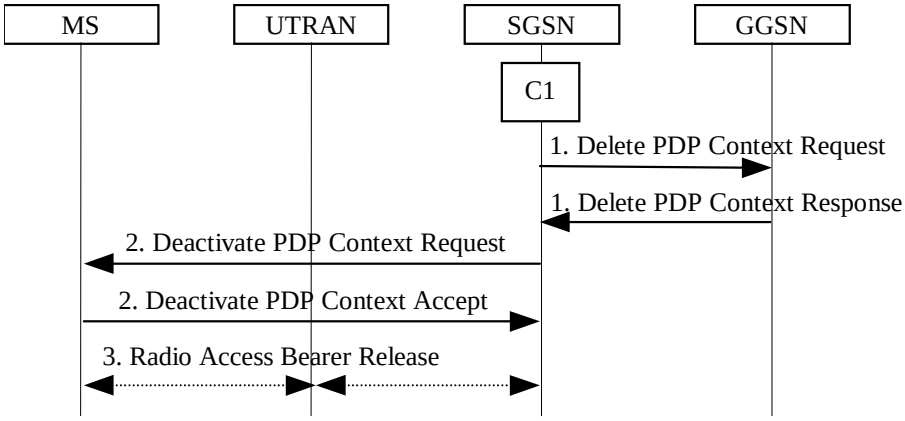


Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If Teardown Ind is included by the SGSN, then the GGSN deactivates all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID) message to the SGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the GGSN before sending the Deactivate PDP Context Request message.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind is included, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.3 PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

The PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 73. Each step is explained in the following list.

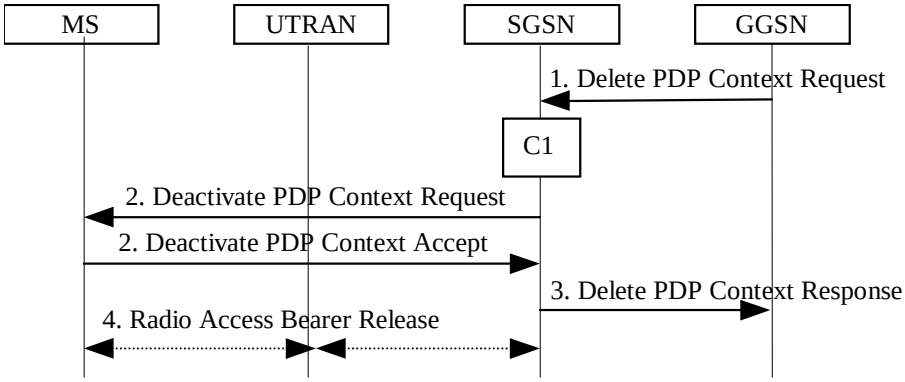


Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete PDP Context Request (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind indicates whether or not all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address shall be deactivated.

2) The SGSN sends a Deactivate PDP Context Request (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the MS. If Teardown Ind was included by the SGSN, then all PDP contexts associated with this PDP address are deactivated. The MS removes the PDP context(s) and returns a Deactivate PDP Context Accept (TI, Teardown Ind) message to the SGSN. Teardown Ind is included if received from the SGSN.

3) The SGSN returns a Delete PDP Context Response (TEID, Teardown Ind) message to the GGSN. If the MS was using a dynamic PDP address allocated by the GGSN, and if the context being deactivated is the last PDP context associated with this PDP address, then the GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the response from the MS before sending the Delete PDP Context Response message.

~~3~~4) ~~For~~ In UMTS, the radio access bearer release procedure is executed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Deactivate-PDP-Context.

9.2.4.4 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

The MS shall not issue explicit deactivation request messages to delete anonymous contexts in the network. Instead, the READY timer shall be used as an implicit deactivation timer to save signalling traffic on the radio interface.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS procedure is illustrated in Figure 74. Each step is explained in the following list.

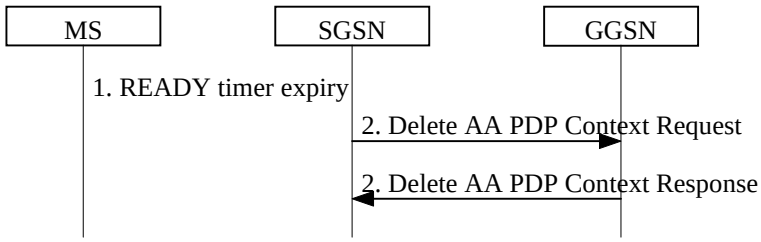


Figure 74: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure

1) The READY timer expires in the MS and SGSN.

2) The SGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TEID) message. The GGSN removes the PDP context and returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID) message to the SGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent anonymous activation by other MSs.

9.2.4.5 Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

If the GGSN detects a misuse or fraud of the anonymous context as described in subclause "Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure", step 2, it shall initiate the deactivation independently of the READY timer expiry.

If the anonymous server detects a misuse or fraud, it may request the GGSN to deactivate the AA context. The method that the anonymous server uses to inform the GGSN is outside the scope of the GSM specifications.

The Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN procedure is illustrated in Figure 75. Each step is explained in the following list.

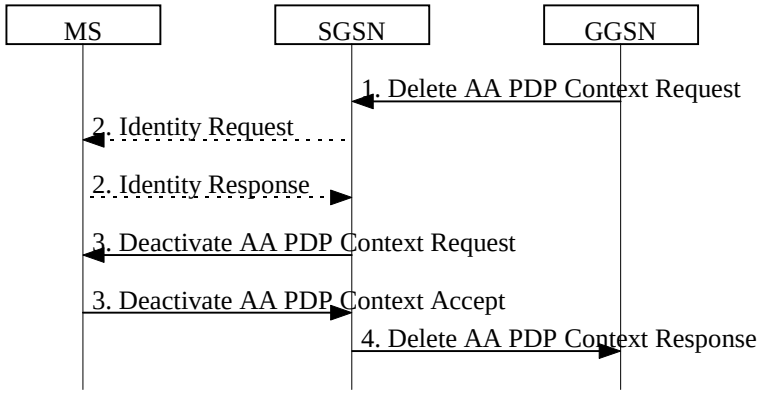


Figure 75: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure

1) The GGSN sends a Delete AA PDP Context Request (AA-TEID) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may send an Identity Request (Identity Type = IMSI or IMEI) message to the MS. The MS shall respond with an Identity Response (IMSI or IMEI) message.

3) The SGSN sends a Deactivate AA PDP Context Request (TI) message to the MS. The MS removes the PDP context and returns a Deactivate AA PDP Context Accept (TI) message to the SGSN.

4) The SGSN returns a Delete AA PDP Context Response (AA-TEID) message to the GGSN. The GGSN releases this PDP address and makes it available for subsequent activation by other MSs. The Delete AA PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network. The SGSN may not wait for the accept from the MS before sending the Delete AA PDP Context Response message.

9.3 Packet Routeing and Transfer Function

The packet routeing and transfer function:

- routes and transfers packets between a mobile TE and an external network, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi;
- routes and transfers packets between mobile TE and other GPRS PLMN, i.e., between reference point R and reference point Gi via interface Gp; and
- routes and transfers packets between TEs, i.e., between the R reference point in different MSs.

The PDP PDUs shall be routed and transferred between the MS and the GGSN as N-PDUs. The maximum size of each N-PDU shall be 1 500 octets [FFS]. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is not larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be routed and transferred as one N-PDU. When the MS or the GGSN receives a PDP PDU that is larger than the maximum N-PDU size, then the PDP PDU shall be segmented, discarded or rejected, depending on the PDP type and the implementation. The packet data protocol in the MS may limit the maximum size of the PDP PDUs that are routed and transferred, e.g., due to MS memory limitations.

Between the 2G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with SNDCP. Between the 3G-SGSN and the MS, PDP PDUs are transferred with GTP-U and PDCP.

Between the SGSN and the GGSN, PDP PDUs are routed and transferred with either the TCP/IP or the UDP/IP protocols. The GPRS Tunnelling Protocol transfers data through tunnels. A tunnel is identified by a tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and a GSN address.

When multiple PDP contexts exist for the same PDP address of an MS, then the GGSN routes downlink N-PDUs to the different GTP tunnels based on the TFTs assigned to the PDP contexts. Upon reception of a PDP PDU, the GGSN evaluates for a match, first the packet filter amongst all TFTs that has the smallest evaluation precedence index and, in case no match is found, proceeds with the evaluation of packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index. This procedure shall be executed until a match is found, in which case the N-PDU is tunnelled to the SGSN via the PDP context that is associated with the TFT of the matching packet filter. If no match is found, the N-PDU shall be sent via the PDP context that does not have a TFT assigned to it; if all PDP contexts have a TFT assigned, the GGSN shall silently discard the PDP PDU.

The MS is responsible for creating or modifying PDP contexts and their QoS. The MS should define TFTs in such a way that downlink PDP PDUs are routed to a PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the receiver of this PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS).

For each uplink PDP PDU, the MS should choose the PDP context that best matches the QoS requested by the sender of this PDP PDU (e.g., an application supporting QoS). Packet classification and routeing within the MS is an MS-local matter. The GGSN shall not match uplink N-PDUs against TFTs.

TFTs are used for PDP types IP and PPP only. For PDP type PPP a TFT is applicable only when IP traffic is carried over PPP. If PPP carries header-compressed IP packets, then a TFT cannot be used.

To support roaming subscribers, and for forward compatibility, the SGSN is not required to know the tunnelled PDP. Every SGSN shall have the capability to transfer PDUs belonging to PDPs not supported in the PLMN of the SGSN.

9.4 Relay Function

The relay function of a network node transfers the PDP PDUs received from the incoming link to the appropriate outgoing link. At the RNC, the SGSN, and the GGSN the relay function stores all valid PDP PDUs until they are forwarded to the next network node or until the maximum holding time of the PDP PDUs is reached. The PDP PDUs are discarded when buffering is longer than their maximum holding time. This maximum holding time is implementation dependent and can be influenced by the PDP type, the QoS of the PDP PDU, the resource load status, and by buffer conditions. The discarding protects resources from useless transfer attempts, especially the radio resource. Impacts on user protocol operation by too short holding time shall be avoided.

In GSM~~GPRS~~, the SGSN and GGSN relay functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from SNDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively. In UMTS, the RNC and GGSN relay

functions add sequence numbers to PDP PDUs received from PDCP and from the Gi reference point, respectively.

PDP PDUs may be re-sequenced in the RNC, the SGSN, and/or in the GGSN depending on the setting of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile. In GSM~~GPRS~~, the SGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to SNDCP. In UMTS, the SGSN relay function may optionally perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to Iu GTP-U and before passing the PDP PDUs to Gn GTP-U. The GGSN relay function may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to the Gi reference point. The RNC may perform re-sequencing of PDP PDUs before passing the PDP PDUs to PDCP.

9.5 Packet Terminal Adaptation Function

The Packet Terminal Adaptation function adapts packets received from and transmitted to the Terminal Equipment to a form suitable for transmission within the PLMN.

A range of MT versions providing different standard interfaces towards the TE can be used, e.g.:

- MT with asynchronous serial interface and PAD (Packet Assembly / Disassembly) support (e.g., AT command set PAD, X.28 [35] / X.29 [36] / X.3 [33] PAD). In the case when the PAD function does not exist in the MT, it exists in the TE.

- "Embedded MT" integrated with the TE, possibly via an industry-standard application program interface.

- MT with synchronous serial interface.

9.6 Encapsulation Function

The packet domain transparently transports PDP PDUs between external networks and MSs. All PDP PDUs are encapsulated and decapsulated for routeing purposes. Encapsulation functionality exists at the MS, at the RNC, at the SGSN, and at the GGSN. Encapsulation allows PDP PDUs to be delivered to and associated with the correct PDP context in the MS, the SGSN, or the GGSN. Two different encapsulation schemes are used; one for the backbone network between two GSNs and between an SGSN and an RNC, and one for the GSM ~~GPRS~~ connection between the SGSN and the MS or for the UMTS RRC connection between the RNC and the MS.

Encapsulation requires that the MS is attached to GPRS, and that the PDP Context Activation procedure has been executed. If the ~~PS~~GPRS Attach or PDP Context Activation procedures cannot be successfully executed, then uplink PDP PDUs are discarded in the MS. If these procedures have not been executed when a downlink PDP PDU arrives in the GGSN, then the downlink PDP PDU shall be discarded, rejected, or the Network-Requested PDP Context Activation procedure shall be initiated.

9.6.1 Encapsulation Between GSNs

The packet domain PLMN backbone network encapsulates a PDP PDU with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header, and inserts this GTP PDU in a TCP PDU or UDP PDU that again is inserted in an IP PDU. The IP and GTP PDU headers contain the GSN addresses and tunnel endpoint identifier necessary to uniquely address a GSN PDP context.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 3G-SGSN and RNC

On the Iu interface, a PDP PDUs is encapsulated with a GPRS Tunnelling Protocol header.

9.6.2 Encapsulation Between 2G-SGSN and MS

Between a 2G-SGSN and an MS, an SGSN or MS PDP context is uniquely addressed with a temporary logical link identity and a network layer service access point identifier pair. TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI. An NSAPI is assigned when the MS initiates the PDP Context Activation function. The relationship between TLLI / NSAPI and LLC / SNDCP is illustrated in Figure 76. TLLI and NSAPI are described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

9.6.3 Encapsulation Between RNC and MS

On the Uu interface, a PDP PDU is encapsulated with PDCP.

10 Message Screening Functionality

This screening mechanism may be performed by routers and firewalls, and performs the selection of which packets to allow and which to deny.

Only network-controlled message screening shall be supported. Network-controlled screening is used to protect the packet domain PLMN from known security problems, and the screening provided by a certain PLMN is applied independently of the MS user. Network-controlled screening is outside the scope of this specification.

11 Compatibility Issues

Non-GPRS MSs in GSM PLMNs that support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue operation.

GSM PLMNs that do not support GPRS shall, without changes, be able to continue interworking with GSM PLMNs that do support GPRS.

A GSM ~~GPRS~~ ME shall be able to access GPRS services with GPRS-aware SIMs, and with SIMs that are not GPRS-aware. A GPRS-aware SIM is able to store information in the elementary files EF_{KcGPRS} and $EF_{LOCIGPRS}$,as defined in GSM 11.11 [28].

The compatibility of SIMs and USIMs with GSM ~~GPRS~~ MEs or UMTS MEs is defined in 3G TS 22.102.

11.1 Interaction between Releases 97/98 and 99

NOTE: Unless specifically indicated, references to release 97 in this subclause refer to both release 97 and release 98.

11.1.1 Interactions between GTP v0 (R97) and GTP v1 (R99)

When a first GSN receives a GTP PDU from a second GSN using a version not supported, then the first GSN shall return a "version not supported" error message to the second GSN. The second GSN shall then fall back to the most-recent version supported by the first GSN. A GSN shall use its most-recent GTP version when initiating GTP PDU transmission to a new GSN.

When an SGSN that supports GTP v1 establishes a GTP tunnel to a GGSN that supports GTP v0, then the SGSN shall convert a release 99 QoS profile to a release 97 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the GGSN. If the MS supports the R99 QoS profile, then the SGSN shall convert the negotiated R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile before transmitting the QoS profile to the MS.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v1 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v0, then the first SGSN shall convert the R99 QoS profile to an R97 QoS profile before sending the SGSN Context Response message. If several PDP contexts have been activated for the same APN and PDP address in the first SGSN (secondary PDP context activation), then all PDP contexts except the PDP context with the highest-quality QoS profile are deleted in the MS and in the first SGSN, and the first SGSN shall initiate deletion of these PDP contexts in the GGSN. 3G TS 23.107 specifies how to determine the highest-quality QoS profile. The second SGSN shall be responsible for updating the remaining PDP context in the GGSN, and the GGSN shall remove the TFT if present when it receives the GTP v0 Update PDP Context Request message.

NOTE: The conversion between an R99 QoS profile and an R97 QoS profile is defined in 3G TS 23.107.

When an inter SGSN RA update procedure is performed from a first SGSN that supports GTP v0 to a second SGSN that supports GTP v1, then the second SGSN shall convert the R97 QoS profile to an R99 QoS profile, and use GTP v1 to send the Update PDP Context Request message to the GGSN.

11.1.2 Interactions between MS R97 and CN R99

When an R97 MS activates a PDP context and both the SGSN and the GGSN support R99, then the QoS profile shall not be converted to R99.

11.1.3 Interactions between SM R97 and SM R99

The SM protocol shall be backward compatible.

11.1.4 Interactions between MAP R97 and MAP R99

The MAP protocol shall be backward compatible to allow interworking between HLRs and SGSNs that support different releases.

12 Transmission

12.1 Transmission Modes

~~For GPRS~~In GSM, the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC protocols offer various transmission modes. The combinations of the GTP-U, LLC, and RLC transmission modes define the QoS reliability classes (see subclause "Reliability Class").

~~For~~ In UMTS, the GTP-U and RLC protocols provide various transmission modes to support user data transmission with different QoS.

The RLC protocol for GSM ~~GPRS~~ and the RLC protocol for UMTS are distinct protocols of different Radio Access Networks.

12.1.1 GTP-U Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the GTP-U layer are supported for information transfer between the GGSN and SGSN; unacknowledged (UDP/IP) and acknowledged (TCP/IP). The GTP-U layer shall support both modes simultaneously. In UMTS, GTP-U is also used on the Iu interface for user data transport. Only the unacknowledged mode (UDP/IP) is supported on the Iu interface.

[Check the Gn TCP support in UMTS.]

12.1.2 LLC Transmission Modes ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

Two modes of operation of the LLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The LLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

- In acknowledged mode, the receipt of LL-PDUs are confirmed. The LLC layer retransmits LL-PDUs if confirmation has not been received within a timeout period.

- In unacknowledged mode, there is no confirmation required for LL-PDUs.

Signalling and SMS shall be transferred in unacknowledged mode.

In unacknowledged mode, the LLC layer shall offer the following two options:

- transport of "protected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field result in the frame being discarded; and

- transport of "unprotected" information, such that errors within the LLC information field do not result in the frame being discarded.

The LLC layer shall support several different QoS delay classes with different transfer delay characteristics.

12.1.3 RLC Transmission Modes

Two modes of operation of the RLC layer are defined for information transfer; unacknowledged and acknowledged. The RLC layer shall support both modes simultaneously.

The RLC for GSM ~~GPRS~~ is described in GSM 04.60, and for UMTS in 3G TS 25.322.

12.2 Logical Link Control Functionality ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

The Logical Link Control (LLC) protocol provides a reliable logical link between the MS and its SGSN. As shown in subclause "User and Control Planes", the LLC layer is situated below the SNDC layer.

12.2.1 Addressing

TLLI is used for addressing at the LLC layer. TLLI is described in subclause "NSAPI and TLLI".

12.2.2 Services

LLC provides the services necessary to maintain a ciphered data link between an MS and an SGSN. The LLC layer does not support direct communication between two MSs.

The LLC connection is maintained as the MS moves between cells served by the same SGSN. When the MS moves to a cell being served by a different SGSN, the existing connection is released and a new logical connection is established with the new SGSN.

LLC shall be independent of the underlying radio interface protocols. In order to allow LLC to operate with a variety of different radio interface protocols, and to ensure optimum performance, it may be necessary to adjust e.g., the maximum LLC PDU length and the LLC protocol timer values. Such adjustments can be made through negotiation between the MS and the SGSN. The maximum length of an LLC PDU shall not be greater than 1 600 octets minus the BSSGP protocol control information.

12.2.3 Functions

The Logical Link Control layer supports:

- service primitives allowing the transfer of SNDCP Protocol Data Units (SN-PDUs) between the Subnetwork Dependent Convergence layer and the Logical Link Control layer;
- procedures for transferring LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN, including:
  - procedures for unacknowledged delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
  - procedures for acknowledged, reliable delivery of LL-PDUs between the MS and SGSN;
- procedures for detecting and recovering from lost or corrupted LL-PDUs;
- procedures for flow control of LL-PDUs between the MS and the SGSN; and
- procedures for ciphering of LL-PDUs. The procedures are applicable to both unacknowledged and acknowledged LL-PDU delivery.

The layer functions are organised in such a way that ciphering resides immediately above the RLC/MAC layer in the MS, and immediately above the BSSGP layer in the SGSN.

12.3 Subnetwork Dependent Convergence Functionality ~~for~~ ~~GPRS~~(GSM only)

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence (SNDC) protocol is situated below the network layer and above the Logical Link Control layer in the MS and the SGSN, as shown in subclause "User and Control Planes". A variety of network layers are supported, e.g., IP and X.25. The network-layer packet data protocols share the same SNDCP, that then performs multiplexing of data coming from the different sources to be sent across LLC. This is illustrated in Figure 76.

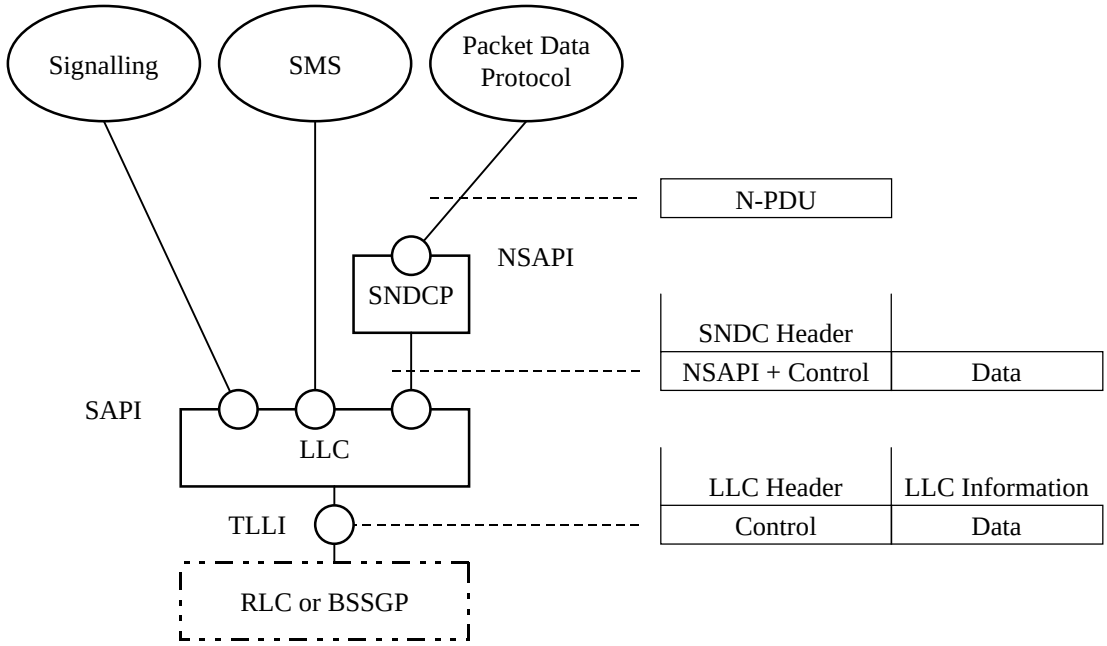


Figure 76: Multiplexing of Network Protocols

The following identities and control information is needed:

- NSAPI identifies the network layer. The SNDCP control part contains compression information.
- TLLI identifies the MS. The LLC control part contains the rest of the LLC protocol header including ciphering information.

The Subnetwork Dependent Convergence function is defined in terms of offered services and sub-functions.

12.3.1 Services

The SNDC function provides the following services to the network layer:

- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs in acknowledged and unacknowledged LLC mode. In acknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall be confirmed at the LLC layer, and the data shall be transmitted and received in order per NSAPI. In unacknowledged mode, the receipt of data shall not be confirmed at the SNDCP layer nor at the LLC layer.
- Transmission and reception between the MS and SGSN of variable-length N-PDUs.
- Transmission and reception of N-PDUs between the SGSN and MS according to the negotiated QoS profile.
- Transfer of the minimum amount of data possible between the SGSN and MS through compression techniques.

The SNDC function requires the following services from the LLC layer:

- Acknowledged and unacknowledged data transfer.

- Ciphered transmission of SN-PDUs.
- In-order delivery of SN-PDUs per LLC SAPI.
- Support for variable-length SN-PDUs.

12.3.2 Subfunctions

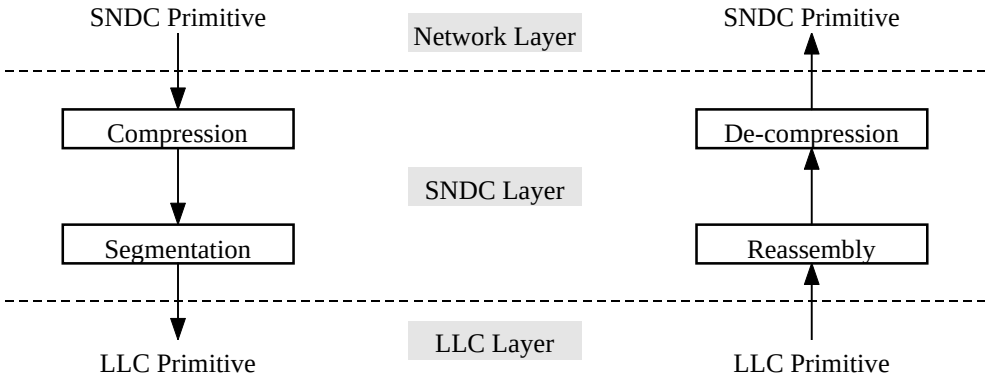


Figure 77: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality

SNDCP performs the following subfunctions:

- Mapping of SNDC primitives received from the network layer into corresponding LLC primitives to be passed to the LLC layer, and vice versa.
- Multiplexing of N-PDUs from one or several NSAPIs onto one LLC SAPI. NSAPIs that are multiplexed onto the same SAPI shall use the same radio priority level, QoS delay class, and precedence class.
- Compression of redundant protocol control information and user data. This may include e.g., TCP/IP header compression and V.42 bis [32] data compression. Compression may be performed independently for each QoS delay class and precedence class. If several network layers use the same QoS delay class and precedence class, then one common compressor may be used for these network layers. The relationship between NSAPIs, compressors, and SAPIs is defined in GSM 04.65. Compression parameters are negotiated between the MS and the SGSN. Compression is an optional SNDC function.
- Segmentation and reassembly. The output of the compression subfunctions are segmented to maximum-length LLC frames.

12.4 PDCP ~~for (~~UMTS only)

The Packet Data Compatibility Protocol (PDCP) transmission functionality maps network-level characteristics onto the characteristics of the underlying network. PDCP can support several network layer protocols by providing protocol transparency for the users of the service. PDCP provides protocol control information compression. PDCP is located in the MS and the UTRAN and described in 3G TS 25.323.

12.5 Octet Stream Protocol Functionality

The Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) is used to carry an unstructured octet (character) stream between the MS and GGSN. It is used to provide a character pipe to allow an MS to communicate (via the GGSN) with an arbitrary Internet host, or other character-based service. PDP type shall be selected as OSP for this purpose. Unlike PDP types IP and X.25, OSP has no existence outside the PLMN. In the MS there is a character stream at the R reference point together with some optional control signals. In the GGSN there is a relay function, carrying the same character stream and control signals between OSP and a fixed-network protocol stack.

OSP has two modes of operation. In octet mode, it uses a Packet Assembly function to assemble a number of user octets into a single packet for more efficient transport by the underlying protocols. A complementary Packet Disassembly function performs the reverse operation in the peer OSP. In block mode, the Packet Assembly / Disassembly (PAD) function is bypassed. In this case, data is transferred between the OSP user and OSP in blocks of octets. Each block of octets is delivered as a single OSP PDU to the underlying protocol. The selection of octet or block mode is made independently for each OSP connection as an implementation or configuration decision before the connection is established, and remains fixed for the duration of the connection. An example of the use of the block mode is when OSP is used for interworking with a fixed network where the octets are also carried in packets. This avoids the use of back-to-back PADs. It could also be used in an embedded MT where the application transfers data in blocks of octets.

The quality of service is determined mainly by that provided by the underlying layers. However, the end-to-end delay may be affected by the presence of the PAD function. A reliable (acknowledged) service shall be provided by the layers below SNDCP and GTP.

The main functions of OSP are:

- transport of an unstructured octet stream;
- packet assembly and disassembly to make efficient use of network resources; and
- end-to-end flow control.

OSP may additionally provide:

- transport of a "break" signal;
- transport of control information blocks between the OSP users;
- user control of packet assembly buffer forwarding; and
- direct OSP user access to the underlying packet service, bypassing the PAD.

Figure 78 illustrates the OSP user plane for GPRS, and Figure 79 for UMTS.

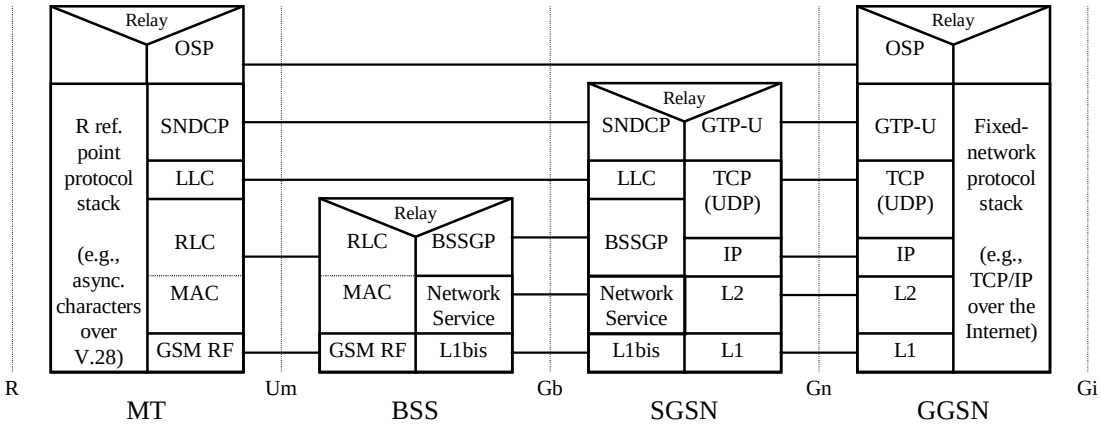


Figure 78: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

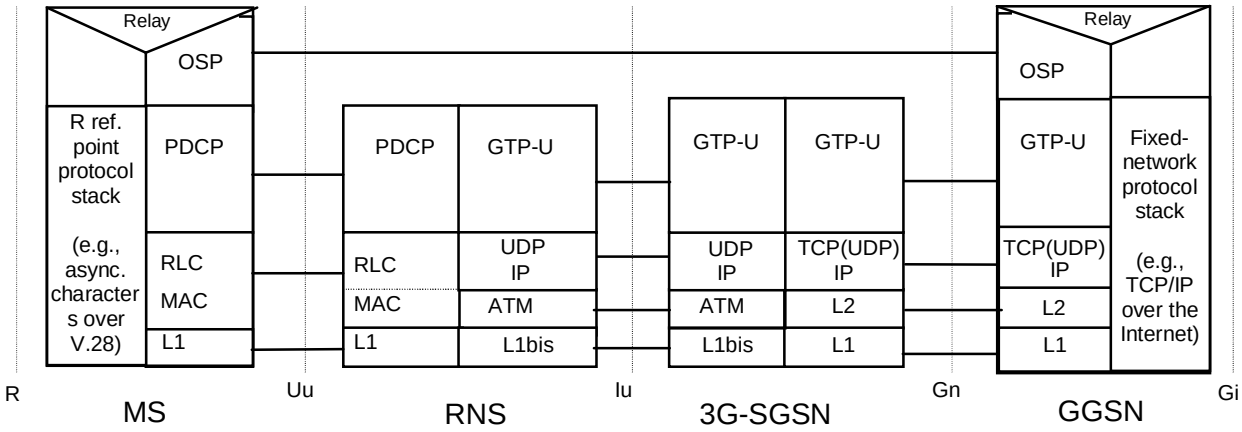


Figure 79: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP

12.5.1 PAD Function

In order to make efficient use of the network resources, particularly the radio resource, octets received from the OSP user are not forwarded immediately but are placed in a buffer. When some forwarding criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer are forwarded in the payload of an N-PDU to the underlying layer. At the receiving end, the payload of an N-PDU received from the underlying layer is placed in a buffer and the octets are delivered to the OSP user as an octet stream.

The PAD is used only when OSP operates in octet mode. It is not used when OSP operates in block mode.

12.5.1.1 Packet Assembler

The packet assembler shall be able to detect the following forwarding criteria. When any one criterion is satisfied, the contents of the buffer shall be forwarded in an N-PDU to the underlying layer, subject to any flow control condition.

12.5.1.1.1 Buffer Full

The buffer contents are forwarded when the number of octets in the buffer reaches the value of the maximum buffer size parameter.

12.5.1.1.2 Inactivity Timer Expiry

The inactivity timer shall be started whenever an octet is placed in the buffer. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. The inactivity timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.3 Maximum Buffer Delay Timer Expiry

A maximum buffer delay timer may be started when the first octet is placed in the (empty) buffer,. When the timer expires, the buffer contents shall be forwarded. This optional timer ensures that no octet is delayed in the buffer for longer than the specified time. The maximum buffer delay timer shall be stopped whenever a buffer is forwarded.

12.5.1.1.4 Special Character

Whenever an octet has been placed in the buffer, its least significant 7 bits shall be compared with a list of 7-bit special characters. If the bits match, the buffer shall be forwarded. The possible characters and combinations of characters shall be the same as specified for the X.3 PAD access to X.25.

12.5.1.1.5 Change in Flow Control State

The buffer may be forwarded when there is a need to signal a change in the ready to receive condition.

12.5.1.1.6 Immediate Forwarding Request

When the OSP receives an immediate forward request from its user, it shall immediately forward the buffer unless it is empty.

12.5.1.2 Packet Disassembler

The packet disassembler shall forward the contents of the N-PDU payload to the OSP user, subject to any local flow control condition.

12.5.2 Quality of Service

The QoS provided by the OSP layer is determined by that provided by the underlying protocol layers. However, the PAD functions introduce an additional variable delay into the transmission path. This delay can be limited at the risk of making less efficient use of network resources, in particular the radio resources.

12.6 Point-to-Point Protocol Functionality

The PPP protocol is specified in RFC 1661 [44].

12.6.1 User Plane for PDP Type PPP

The user plane for the PDP type PPP consists of a PPP protocol stack above SNDCP for GSM ~~GPRS~~ or above PDCP for UMTS in the MS, and above GTP in the GGSN. The GGSN may either terminate the PPP protocol and access the packet data network at the IP level, or further tunnel PPP PDUs via e.g., L2TP.

In case the application above PPP uses a different protocol than IP (e.g., IPX or AppleTalk), the interconnection to the packet data network is outside the scope of this specification.

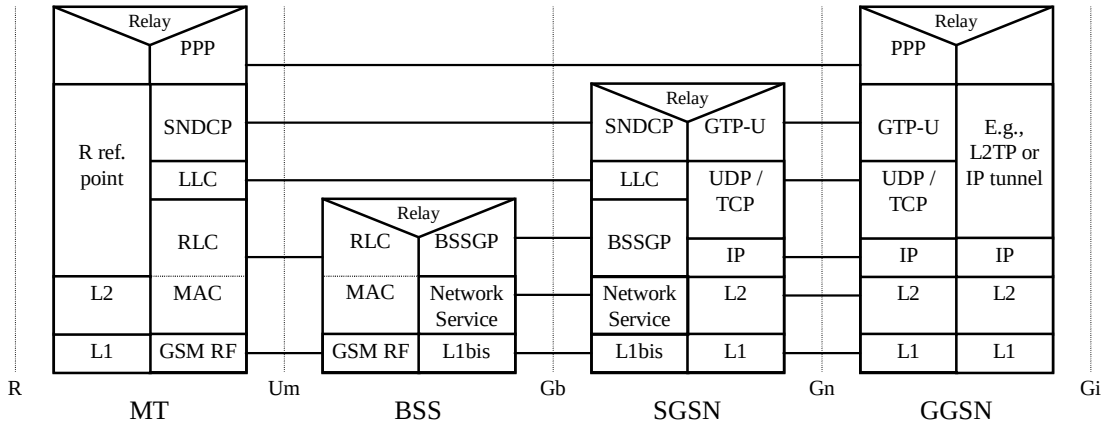


Figure 80: GSM ~~GPRS~~ User Plane for PDP Type PPP

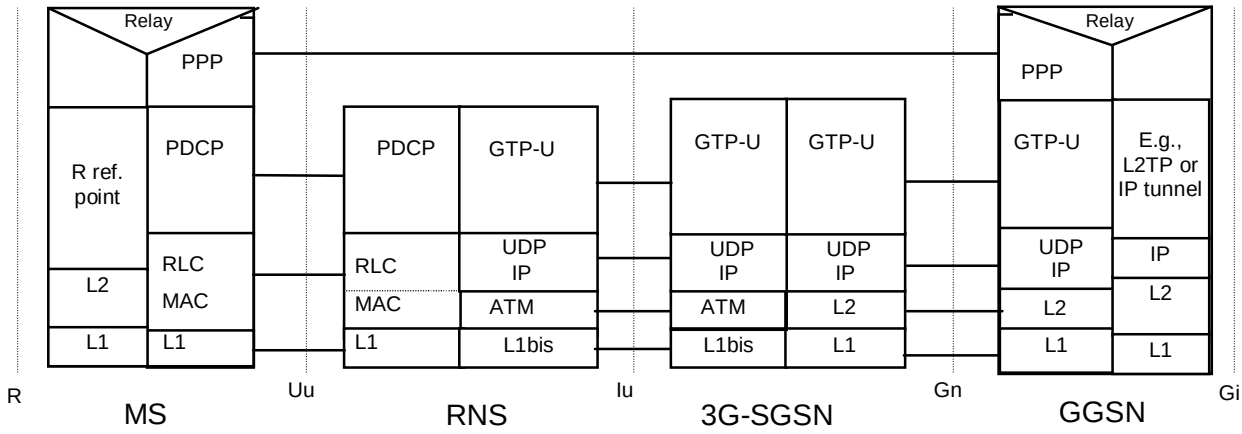


Figure 81: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP

12.6.2 Functions

The PPP peers at the MS and GGSN handle the PPP protocol as specified in RFC 1661. PPP requires in-sequence packet delivery by the underlying protocols. Concerning GTP, this shall be achieved by negotiation of the delivery order attribute in the QoS profile upon PDP context activation. ~~For GPRS~~In GSM, concerning SNDCP, out-of-sequence packets, that may be present if LLC operates in unacknowledged mode, shall be discarded. SNDCP for GSM~~GPRS~~, and PDCP for UMTS, shall not use TCP/IP header compression because PPP may not carry IP packets at all, or because PPP may carry IP packets with already compressed TCP/IP headers. These PPP options are negotiated during the RFC 1661 Network Control Protocol establishment phase.

12.7 Gb Interface ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

The Gb interface connects the BSS and the SGSN, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The Gb interface shall allow many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter. This is in contrast to the A interface where a single user has the sole use of a dedicated physical resource throughout the lifetime of a call irrespective of activity.

GSM ~~GPRS~~ signalling and user data are sent in the same user plane. No dedicated physical resources are required to be allocated for signalling purposes.

Access rates per user may vary without restriction from zero data to the maximum possible line rate (e.g., 1 984 kbit/s for the available bitrate of an E1 trunk).

12.7.1 Physical Layer Protocol

Several physical layer configurations and protocols are possible, as defined in GSM 08.14 [19].

The physical resources shall be allocated by O&M procedures.

12.7.2 Link Layer Protocols

The Gb interface link layer is based on Frame Relay, as defined in GSM 08.16. Frame Relay virtual circuits are established between SGSN and BSS. LLC PDUs from many users are multiplexed on these virtual circuits. The virtual circuits may be multi-hop and traverse a network of Frame Relay switching nodes. Frame Relay shall be used for signalling and data transmission.

The following characteristics apply for the Frame Relay connection:

- The maximum Frame Relay information field size shall be 1 600 octets.
- The Frame Relay address length shall be 2 octets.

- The BSS and the SGSN shall both implement Frame Relay DTE functionality. The SGSN may optionally also implement DCE functionality.
- Frame Relay PVCs shall be used.
- The Frame Relay layer offers detection of but no recovery from transmission errors.
- One or more Frame Relay PVCs shall be used between one SGSN and one BSS to transport BSSGP PDUs.

12.7.3 BSS GPRS Protocol

The primary function of BSSGP is to provide the radio-related, QoS, and routeing information that is required to transmit user data between a BSS and an SGSN. In the BSS, it acts as an interface between LLC frames and RLC/MAC blocks. In the SGSN, it forms an interface between RLC/MAC-derived information and LLC frames. A secondary function is to enable two physically distinct nodes, the SGSN and BSS, to operate node management control functions.

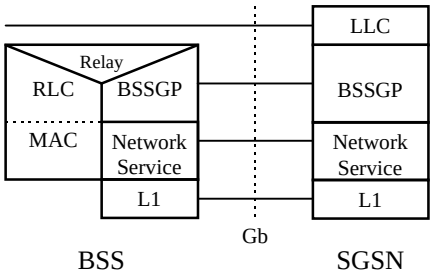


Figure 82: BSSGP Protocol Position

There is a one-to-one relationship between the BSSGP protocol in the SGSN and in the BSS. If one SGSN handles multiple BSSs, the SGSN has to have one BSSGP protocol machine for each BSS.

The main functions for the BSSGP protocol are to:

- provide a connection-less link between the SGSN and the BSS;
- transfer data unconfirmed between the SGSN and the BSS;
- provide tools for bi-directional control of the flow of data between the SGSN and the BSS;
- handle paging requests from the SGSN to the BSS;
- give support for flushing of old messages in the BSS e.g., when an MS changes BSS; and
- support multiple layer 2 links between the SGSN and one BSS.

BSSGP is defined in GSM 08.18.

12.7.3.1 Inter-dependency of the BSSGP and LLC Functions

The functions of the BSSGP shall be defined in the context of the LLC function in order to avoid duplication of functions and information flows. The following functional model indicates each layer's functional responsibilities.

Table 4: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture

Network Node and Function	MS	BSS	SGSN
LLC: GSM 04.64	Same as for the SGSN.		Provides transfer of frames between the SGSN and MS.
BSSGP: GSM 08.18		MS←PLMN: Using BSSGP information, RLC/MAC operations are invoked. MS→PLMN: Using RLC/MAC-derived information, a BSSGP PDU is constructed. An identifier of the cell including RAC and LAC in which an LLC frame was received is inserted into the BSSGP PDU. Same as for SGSN.	Individual MS radio-related information is used by the BSS to transfer LLC frames across the Gb and Um. Provides flow control and unconfirmed data delivery services across the Gb interface (not the Um – this is the function of the LLC and RLC/MAC function). Provides SGSN-BSS node management functions.
Network Service: GSM 08.16		Same as for SGSN	Provides a multiplexing, variable-bandwidth, frame-based, link layer transport mechanism across the Gb interface, and load balancing.

12.7.3.2 BSSGP Addressing

For information transfer between the SGSN and the BSS the BSSGP is using a BSSGP Virtual Connection Identifier (BVCI) for addressing. Additionally, QoS profile, and the MS identification, e.g., TLLI, may be used to create queues and contexts in both the SGSN and the BSS. The flow control mechanism is then based on these queues and contexts.

12.7.3.3 BVCI Contexts in BSS and in SGSN

A BVCI context in the BSS consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and of the available radio resource capacity.

The BVCI context in the BSS is allocated for each cell supporting GPRS. For each new GPRS cell introduced in the BSS area, a new BVCI context shall be allocated.

In the SGSN the BVCI context consists of at least one queue for LLC PDUs and the allowed throughput on BSSGP. The allowed throughput is updated by BSSGP flow control messages.

12.7.3.4 Flow Control Between SGSN and BSS over the Gb Interface

The flow control mechanism controls the loading of the BSS LLC PDU queues per BVCI and per MS between the SGSN and the BSS in the downlink direction. No flow control is performed in the uplink direction. Buffers and link capacity shall be dimensioned to avoid loss of uplink data.

The downlink flow control mechanism is based on the following principles:

- In the SGSN, queues for LLC PDUs are provided per BVCI. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. The SGSN shall pass LLC PDUs to LLC via BSSGP to the BSS as long as the allowed BSSGP throughput is not exceeded. The allowed BSSGP throughput is given per BVCI and for a single MS on that BVCI. The SGSN schedules the BSSGP downlink traffic of all MSs of a BVCI according to both throughput parameters and to the QoS profile related to each LLC PDU. The scheduling algorithm is implementation dependent.

- In the BSS, queues per BVCI are provided at the BSSGP level. These queues may be split further, e.g., per MS or per packet flow. Depending on the queuing conditions and the available radio resource capacity in the cell the BSS indicates the allowed BSSGP throughput per BVCI and the default allowed BSSGP throughput for each individual MS of that BVCI by BSSGP flow control messages to the SGSN. Additionally, the BSS may change the allowed BSSGP throughput for an individual MS by a BSSGP flow control message.

12.7.3.5 BSS Context

The SGSN can provide a BSS with information related to ongoing user data transmission. The information related to one MS is stored in a BSS context. The BSS may contain BSS contexts for several MSs. A BSS context contains a number of BSS packet flow contexts. Each BSS packet flow context is identified by a packet flow identifier assigned by the SGSN. A BSS packet flow context is shared by one or more activated PDP contexts with identical or similar negotiated QoS profiles. The data transmission related to PDP contexts that share the same BSS packet flow context constitute one packet flow.

Three packet flows are pre-defined, and identified by three reserved packet flow identifier values. The BSS shall not negotiate BSS packet flow contexts for these pre-defined packet flows with the SGSN. One pre-defined packet flow is used for best-effort service, one is used for SMS, and one is used for signalling. The SGSN can assign the best-effort or SMS packet flow identifier to any PDP context. In the SMS case, the BSS shall handle the packet flow for the PDP context with the same QoS that it handles SMS with.

The combined BSS QoS profile for the PDP contexts that share the same packet flow is called the aggregate BSS QoS profile. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes as defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". It defines the QoS that must be provided by the BSS for a given packet flow between the MS and the SGSN, i.e., for the Um and Gb interfaces combined. The aggregate BSS QoS profile is negotiated between the SGSN and the BSS.

A BSS packet flow timer indicates the maximum time that the BSS may store the BSS packet flow context. The BSS packet flow timer shall not exceed the value of the READY timer for this MS. The BSS packet flow timer is started when the BSS packet flow context is stored in the BSS and when an LLC frame is received from the MS. When the BSS packet flow timer expires the BSS shall delete the BSS packet flow context.

When a PDP context is activated, modified, or deactivated, the SGSN may create, modify, or delete BSS packet flow contexts.

12.7.3.5.1 BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

On receiving a request to transmit an uplink or downlink LLC PDU for which no BSS packet flow context exists in the BSS, the BSS may request the download of the BSS packet flow context from the SGSN.

The SGSN may at any time request the creation of a BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation of a PDP context.

The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure is illustrated in Figure 83. Each step is explained in the following list.

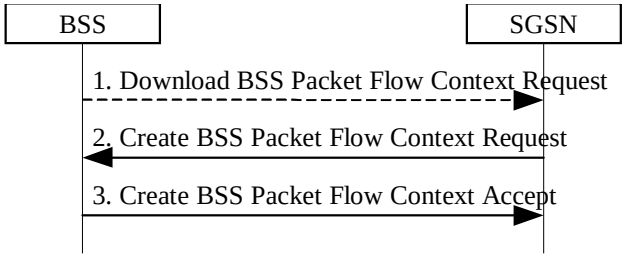


Figure 83: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure

1) The BSS receives a request to transfer an uplink or downlink user data LLC PDU for which it currently does not have a BSS packet flow context. In the uplink case, TLLI, Radio Priority, and Packet Flow Id are received from the MS as defined in GSM 04.60. In the downlink case, TLLI and Packet Flow Id are received from the SGSN as defined in GSM 08.18. If Packet Flow Id does not indicate best-effort service nor SMS, then the BSS sends a Download BSS Packet Flow Context Request (RAI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN. Until the BSS receives the BSS packet flow context, the BSS shall handle uplink and downlink transfers according to a default aggregate BSS QoS profile. For uplink transfers, the default profile is specific to the radio priority level.

2) The SGSN sends a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the associated BSS.

3) The BSS may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The BSS creates a BSS packet flow context and inserts the parameters in its BSS context. The BSS returns a Create BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated) message to the SGSN. The BSS uses the negotiated aggregate BSS QoS profile when allocating radio resources and other resources such as buffer capacity.

12.7.3.5.2 SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The SGSN may at any time request the modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to the activation, modification, or deactivation of a PDP context. The BSS Packet Flow Context Creation procedure shall be used in this case, and the BSS shall instead of creating a BSS packet flow context overwrite the existing parameters with the modified parameters.

12.7.3.5.3 BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

The BSS can at any time request modification of the contents of an existing BSS packet flow context, e.g., due to a change in the resource availability at the BSS.

The BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification procedure is illustrated in Figure 84. Each step is explained in the following list.

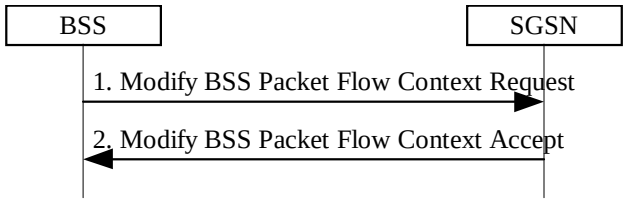


Figure 84: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure

1) The BSS sends a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Requested) message to the SGSN.

2) The SGSN may restrict the requested aggregate BSS QoS profile given its capabilities and the current load. The SGSN returns a Modify BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (IMSI, TLLI, Packet Flow Id, Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated, BSS Packet Flow Timer) message to the BSS. The BSS inserts the modified parameters in its BSS context.

12.7.3.5.4 BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedures

The BSS can, due to e.g., memory restrictions, at any time delete a BSS packet flow context without notifying the SGSN.

The SGSN may request the deletion of a BSS packet flow context with the SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion procedure, as illustrated in Figure 85. Each step is explained in the following list.

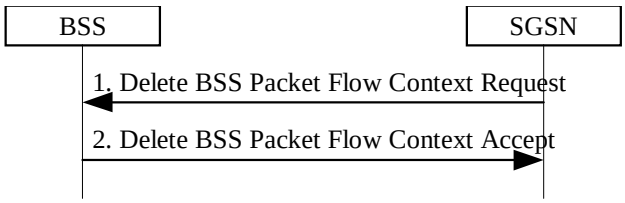


Figure 85: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure

1) The SGSN sends a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Request (IMSI, Packet Flow Id) message to the BSS. The BSS deletes the corresponding BSS packet flow context from its BSS context.

2) The BSS returns a Delete BSS Packet Flow Context Accept (TLLI, Packet Flow Id) message to the SGSN.

12.8 Iu Interface ~~for (~~UMTS only)

The Iu interface connects the UTRAN and the Core Network packet domain, allowing the exchange of signalling information and user data. The user plane of Iu interface shall allow user data from many users to be multiplexed over the same physical resource. Resources are given to a user upon activity (when data is sent or received) and are reallocated immediately thereafter.

In UMTS only user data is transmitted on this shared physical medium. Signalling data is transferred via an SCCP connection. A reference configuration for Iu interface user plane is given in Figure 86.

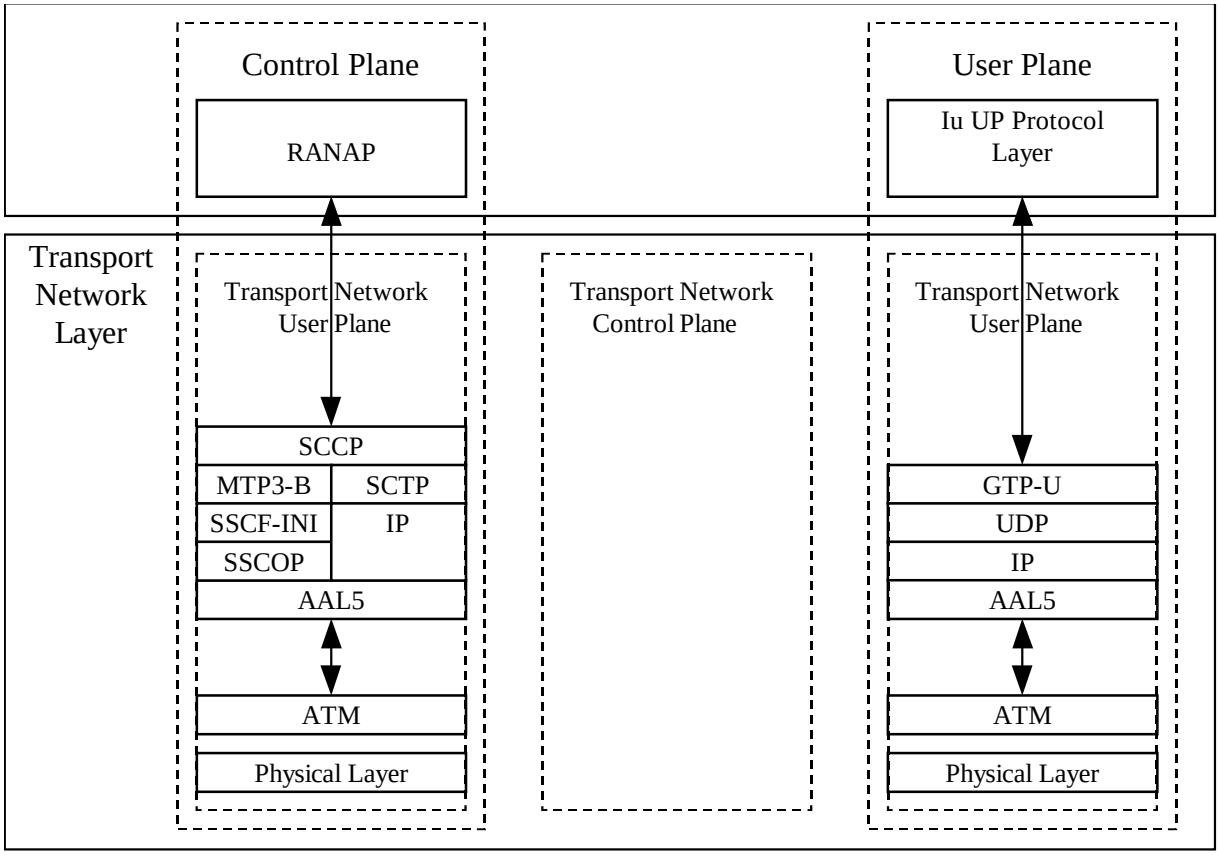


Figure 86: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic

12.8.1 Physical Layer Protocols

The physical layer shall comply with one of a wide range of standards, according to 3G TS 25.411. Services provided to the upper layer shall be independent from the used underlying technology.

12.8.2 Higher-Layer Protocols

12.8.2.1 Higher-Layer Protocols for User Data Transport

The GTP-U protocol shall be used over the Iu interface between the packet switched domain and the RNS.

The path protocol used shall be UDP, as specified in RFC 768. Both the IPv4 (RFC 791) and IPv6 (RFC 2460) IP protocols shall be supported, IPv6 support is FFS.

AAL5 shall be used according to I.363.5.

AAL5 permanent or switched virtual circuits are used to transport the IP packets across the Iu interface between RNS and the packet switched core network domain. Multiple VCs can be used over the Iu interface.

IP over ATM protocols are used to carry the IP packets over the ATM transport network. IP over ATM is specified in RFC 2225. Multiprotocol Encapsulation over AAL5 is specified in RFC 1483.

The Iu interface protocol stack is described in more detailed in 3G TS 25.414.

12.8.2.1.1 Consistent Sequence Numbering of PDUs on Iu and Gn Interfaces

The GTP-U PDU sequence numbers allocated by the GGSN (downlink) and SRNS (uplink) are kept unchanged irrespective of the number of GTP tunnels the PDU is transferred over. Therefore, SGSN

shall use on the Iu interface for downlink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the GGSN, and shall use on the Gn interface for uplink PDUs the GTP-U sequence number received from the SRNS. In case of SRNS relocation and intersystem change, the SRNS and SGSN shall tunnel PDUs without changing the GTP-U sequence numbers.

12.8.2.2 Higher-Layer Protocols for Signalling Transport

The protocol stack for signalling transport is based on ATM/AAL5. Two AAL5 signalling transport services options are available to provide services for the SCCP layer.

The first option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses SSCOP for reliability reasons. SSCF provides the adaptation to upper layers. MTP3-B is the network layer protocol.

The second option for the SCCP signalling protocol stack uses IP as the network layer. SCTP performs the adaptation of the IP layer and provides services to the SCCP layer.

12.8.3 Iu Release Procedure

This procedure is used to release the Iu interface. This procedure also triggers the release of all the Iu connections and changes the 3G-SGSN PMM state to PMM-IDLE. Both RNC-initiated and SGSN-initiated Iu release procedures are showed in the figure below.

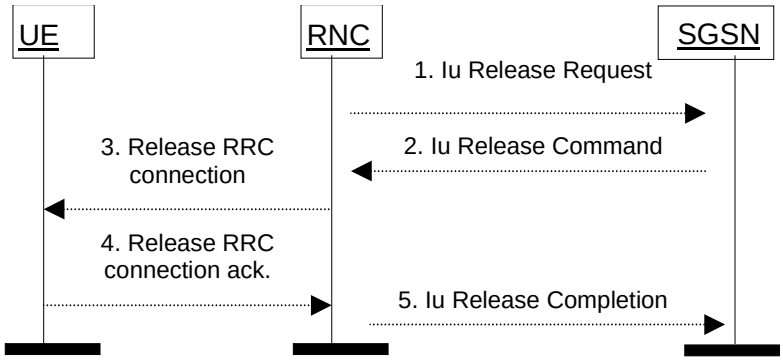


Figure 87: Iu Release Procedure

NOTE 1: Message 1 is only sent when the RNC-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

NOTE 2: Message 1 is not sent but message 2 is sent when the SGSN-initiated Iu release procedure is considered.

1) The RNC notices that the RRC connection has been released or detects a need to release the radio resources. It sends an Iu Release Request (Cause) message to the SGSN. Cause indicates the reason for the release (O&M Intervention, Equipment Failure, Implicit Release, or Resource Optimisation). Implicit Release means that the periodic URA update timer expired. Resource Optimisation means that RNC decided to release an MS with only a non real-time bearer established to optimise the radio usage after the RRC-Connection-Release timer expired.

2) The SGSN releases the Iu by sending the Iu Release Command (Cause) message to the RNC. This message may be triggered either by an Iu Release Request message, or by another SGSN event (e.g., authentication failure or detach). It is optional for the SGSN to send the Iu Release Command message after an Iu Release Request message with Cause set to Resource Optimisation is received from the RNC.

3) If the RRC connection is not already released (Cause = Resource Optimisation), then the RNC sends a Release RRC Connection message to the MS. [Cause "Detach" or "Authentication failure are FFS]

4) The MS returns a Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message to the RNC.

5) The RNC confirms the Iu release by returning an Iu Release Completion message to the SGSN.

If the RNC does not receive the Release RRC Connection Acknowledge message and if Cause is different from Authentication Failure or Detach, then it should send a failure message to the SGSN, and the SGSN should stay in the MM-CONNECTED state.

12.8.4 Location Reporting Procedure

This procedure is used by a 3G-SGSN to request the SRNC to report where the MS is currently located, or to report when the MS moves into or out of a given service area. This procedure relates to location services (LCS) and other services (e.g., CAMEL and emergency calls) in UMTS. The overall LCS procedure is to be described in the LCS stage-2 specification, see 3G TS 23.171.

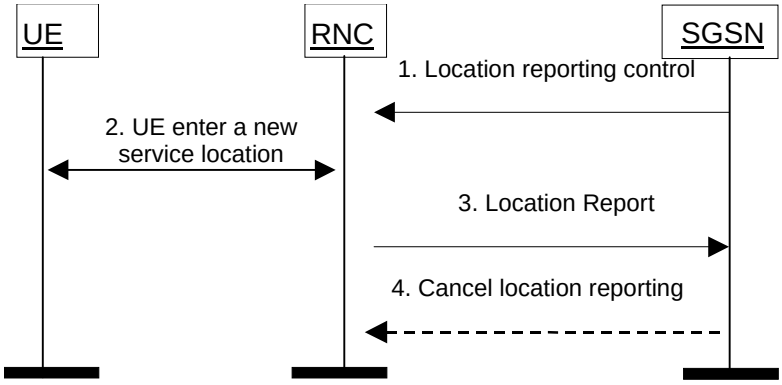


Figure 88: Location Reporting Procedure

1) The SGSN detects from the subscriber data the need to monitor in which service area an MS in the MM-CONNECTED state with an Iu interface connection is located. The SGSN sends a Location Reporting Control (Service Area Code(s), Reporting Type) message to the SRNC. The SRNC stores the Service Area Code(s) as reporting area(s) for this MS. For example, a service area may be a location area with restricted access. Reporting Type indicates whether the message is intended to start a reporting period or trigger a stand-alone report about the current location of the MS.

2) The SRNC detects that the MS moves into or out of a reporting area. Alternatively, the SRNC derives the current location of the MS if this was requested by the SGSN.

3) The SRNC sends a Location Report (Service Area Code) message informing the 3G-SGSN about where the MS is now located. If no Service Area Code is included, it indicates that the MS is outside the requested service area. When the SGSN has requested the current location of the MS, then SRNC shall include the requested location information in the Location Report message, e.g., in the format of a cell id. The SGSN may then perform specific actions (e.g., detach a MS entering a forbidden location area or route an emergency call to the nearest local emergency number).

4) The SGSN can send a Cancel Location Reporting message to inform the SRNC that it should terminate location reporting for a given MS. This message is needed only when the reporting was requested for a reporting period.

The procedure is implicitly cancelled at SRNC relocation. If the service is still required in the new SRNC or new SGSN then a new Location Reporting Control message shall be sent.

12.9 Abis Interface ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

When the GSM ~~GPRS~~ MAC and RLC layer functions are positioned remote to the BTS the information between the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) and the remote GSM ~~GPRS~~ Packet Control Unit (PCU) is transferred in frames with a fixed length of 320 bits (20 ms). In the present document these frames are denoted "PCU Frames" and are an extension to the "TRAU frames" defined in GSM 08.60 [22]. Within these frames both GPRS data and the GSM ~~GPRS~~ RLC/MAC associated control signals are transferred.

The Abis interface should be the same if the PCU is positioned at the BSC site (option B in Figure 89) or at the SGSN site (option C in Figure 89). In option B, the PCU could be implemented as an adjunct unit to the BSC. In option C, the BSC should be considered as transparent for 16 kbit/s channels. In configurations B and C the PCU is referred to as being a remote PCU.

The remote PCU is considered a part of the BSC, and the signalling between the BSC and the PCU may be performed by using BSC internal signals. The inband signalling between the CCU and the PCU functions, using PCU frames is required when the Abis interface is applied (options B and C in Figure 89).

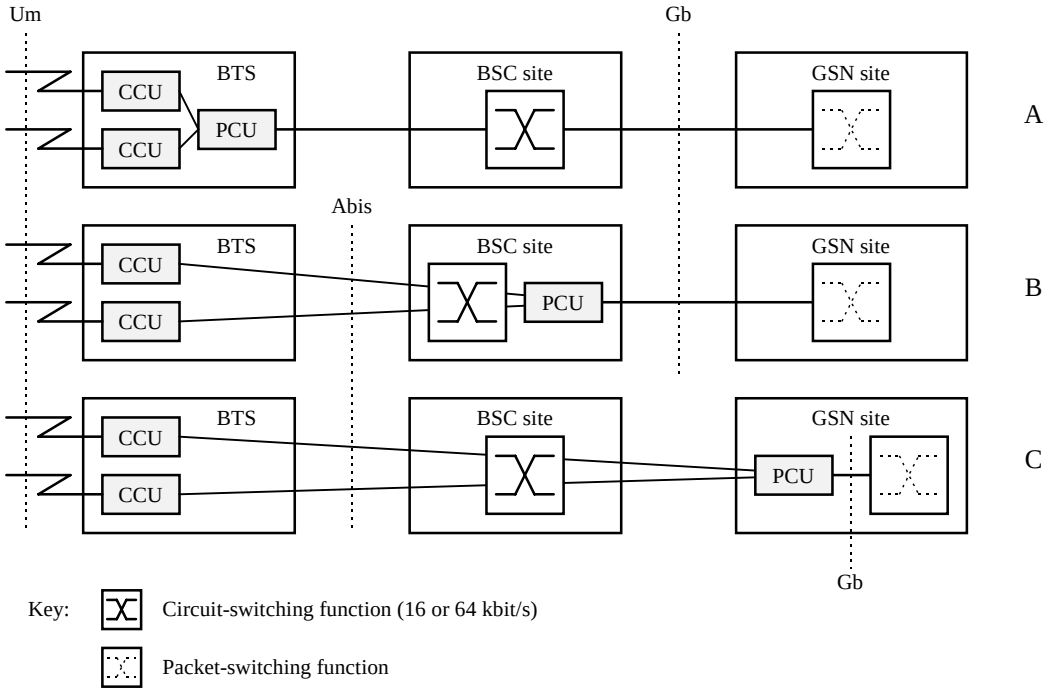


Figure 89: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions

The PCU is responsible for the following ~~GPRS~~ GSM MAC and RLC layer functions as defined in GSM 03.64:

- LLC layer PDU segmentation into RLC blocks for downlink transmission;
- LLC layer PDU reassembly from RLC blocks for uplink transmissions;
- PDCH scheduling functions for the uplink and downlink data transfers;
- PDCH uplink ARQ functions, including RLC block ack / nak;
- PDCH downlink ARQ function, including buffering and retransmission of RLC blocks;
- channel access control functions, e.g., access requests and grants; and
- radio channel management functions, e.g., power control, congestion control, broadcast control information, etc.

The functions inside the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) are:

- the channel coding functions, including FEC and interleaving;
- radio channel measurement functions, including received quality level, received signal level and information related to timing advance measurements; and
- for EGPRS, in case of incremental redundancy mode of operation, enhanced channel coding functions.

The BSS is responsible for allocation and de-allocation of radio resources. A PCU frame shall be transferred between the PCU and the CCU every 20 ms.

12.9.1 Remote Packet Control Unit

When the Packet Control Unit (PCU) is remote to the BTS, the Channel Codec Unit (CCU) in the BTS may control some of the functions in the remote PCU in the BSC. As well, the PCU may control some of the functions of the CCU. This remote control is performed by inband signalling carried by the control bits (C-bits) in each PCU frame.

13 Information Storage

This clause describes information storage structures required for the packet domain, and the recovery and restoration procedures needed to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information.

13.1 HLR

IMSI is the prime key to the packet domain subscription data stored in the HLR. There may be several sets of packet domain subscription data per IMSI. This is illustrated in Figure 90.

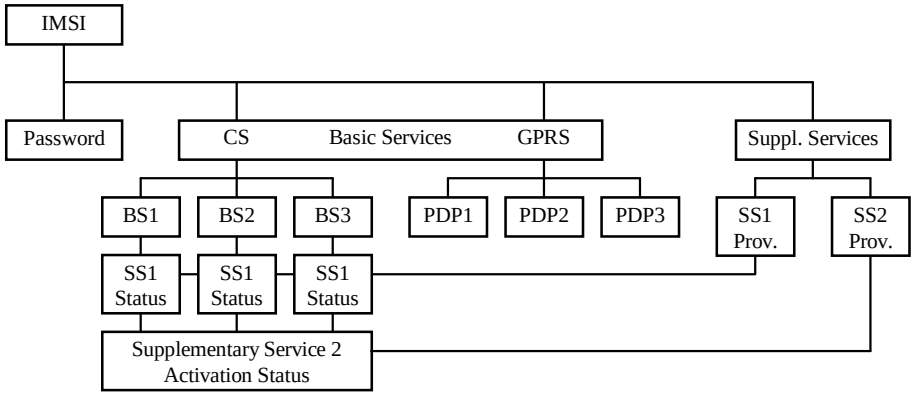


Figure 90: Packet Domain Subscription Data

As Figure 90 indicates, the packet domain subscription data is at the same level as basic services. Each PDP subscription is seen as a basic service. Supplementary services are provisioned as part of the overall subscription. Activation of SSs is either at the basic service level (SS1) or at the overall subscription level (SS2).

Table 5 shows the packet domain subscription data contained in the HLR.

Table 5: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data

Field	Description	GSM~~G PRS~~	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SS7 number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace, e.g., MSC/BSS trace, HLR trace, and/or SGSN/GGSN/BSS trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
MS PS Purged for GPRS	Indicates that the MM and PDP contexts of the MS are deleted from the SGSN.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates that the MS is not reachable through an SGSN, and that the MS is marked as not reachable at the SGSN and possibly at the GGSN.	X	X
GGSN-list	The GSN number and optional IP address pair related to the GGSN that shall be contacted when activity from the MS is detected and MNRG is set. The GSN number shall be either the number of the GGSN or the protocol-converting GSN as described in the subclauses "MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling" and "GTP and MAP-based GGSN - HLR Signalling".	X	X
Each IMSI contains zero or more of the following PDP context subscription records:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address. This field shall be empty if dynamic addressing is allowed.	X	X
Access Point Name	A label according to DNS naming conventions describing the access point to the external packet data network.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed. QoS Profile Subscribed is the default level if a particular QoS profile is not requested.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X

13.2 SGSN

SGSN maintains MM context and PDP context information for MSs in the STANDBY, READY, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. Table 6 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 6: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts

Field	Description	GSM~~G PRS~~	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
MM State	Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
IMEI	International Mobile Equipment Identity	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity	Current cell in READY state, last known cell in STANDBY or IDLE state.	X	
Cell Identity Age	Time elapsed since the last LLC PDU was received from the MS at the SGSN.	X	
Service Area Code	Last known SAC when initial UE message was received or Location Reporting procedure was executed.		X
Service Area Code Age	Time elapsed since the last SAC was received at the 3G-SGSN.		X
VLR Number	The VLR number of the MSC/VLR currently serving this MS.	X	X
New SGSN Address	The IP address of the new SGSN where buffered and not sent N-PDUs should be forwarded to.	X	X
Authentication Triplets	Authentication and ciphering parameters.	X	X
Authentication Vectors	Authentication and ciphering parameters for UMTS.		X
Kc	Currently used ciphering key.	X	
CKSN	Ciphering key sequence number of Kc.	X	
Ciphering algorithm	Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	
CK	Currently used ciphering key.		X
IK	Currently used integrity key.		X
KSI	Key Set Identifier.		X
Radio Access Classmark	MS radio access capabilities.	X	
SGSN Classmark	MS network capabilities.	X	X
DRX Parameters	Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	
MNRG	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the HLR.	X	X
NGAF	Indicates whether activity from the MS shall be reported to the MSC/VLR.	X	X
PPF	Indicates whether paging for PS and CS services can be initiated.	X	X
Subscribed Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for the MS, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing subscription.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X
SMS Parameters	SMS-related parameters, e.g., operator-determined barring.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if HLR or VLR is performing database recovery.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
GPRS-CSI	Optional GPRS CAMEL subscription information, see 3G TS 23.016	X	X
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:			
PDP Context Identifier	Index of the PDP context.	X	X
PDP State	Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
APN Subscribed	The APN received from the HLR.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN currently used.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X

TI	Transaction Identifier.	X	X
TEID for Gn/Gp	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Gn and Gp interfaces.	X	X
TEID for Iu	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier for the Iu interface.		X
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.	X	X
VPLMN Address Allowed	Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use the APN in the domain of the HPLMN only, or additionally the APN in the domain of the VPLMN.	X	X
QoS Profile Subscribed	The quality of service profile subscribed.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.	X	
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the MS.		X
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the MS.		X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
RNC Address in Use	The IP address of the RNC currently used.		X

In case of anonymous access (GSM ~~GPRS~~ only) the SGSN maintains the MM context and PDP context information for MSs in READY state. Table 7 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 7: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN currently used.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the GGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU expected from the MS.
GTP-SND	GTP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

13.3 GGSN

GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 8 shows the PDP context fields for one PDP Address.

Table 8: GGSN PDP Context

Field	Description	GSM~~G PRS~~	UMTS
IMSI	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
MSISDN	The basic MSISDN of the MS.	X	X
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
Dynamic Address	Indicates whether PDP Address is static or dynamic.	X	X
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.	X	X
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.	X	X
TFT	Traffic flow template.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X
MNRG	Indicates whether the MS is marked as not reachable for PS at the HLR.	X	X
Recovery	Indicates if the SGSN is performing database recovery.	X	X
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.	X	X
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.	X	X
Charging Characteristics	The charging characteristics for this PDP context, e.g., normal, prepaid, flat-rate, and/or hot billing.	X	X
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.	X	X
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.	X	X
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.	X	X
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.	X	X
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).	X	X

If a PDP context is enabled for network-requested PDP context activation, then IMSI, PDP Type, PDP Address, SGSN Address and MNRG contain valid information also when the PDP context is inactive and when the MS is GPRS-detached.

In case of anonymous access (GSM ~~GPRS~~ only) the GGSN maintains activated PDP contexts. Table 9 shows the PDP context fields for one MS.

Table 9: GGSN PDP Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
AA-TEID	Anonymous Access Tunnel Endpoint Identifier.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
APN in Use	The APN Network Identifier currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
SGSN Address	The IP address of the SGSN serving this MS.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be received from the SGSN.
Charging Id	Charging identifier, identifies charging records generated by SGSN and GGSN.

A GGSN that supports anonymous access shall have a list of server addresses that are allowed to be accessed by anonymous MSs. The method to maintain the list of the servers is outside the scope of the present document.

13.4 MS

Each packet domain MS maintains MM and PDP context information in IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, and PMM-CONNECTED states. The information may be contained in the MS and the TE. Table 10 shows the MS context fields.

Table 10: MS MM and PDP Contexts

Field	SIM	Description	GSM~~G PRS~~	UMTS
IMSI	G, U	International Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
MM State		Mobility management state, IDLE, STANDBY, READY, PMM-DETACHED, PMM-IDLE, or PMM-CONNECTED.	X	X
P-TMSI	G, U	Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity.	X	X
P-TMSI Signature	G, U	A signature used for identification checking purposes.	X	X
Routeing Area	G, U	Current routeing area.	X	X
Cell Identity		Current cell.	X	
Kc	G	Current GPRS ciphering key.	X	
CKSN / KSI	G, U	Key Set Identifier for IK Next, CK Next, and Kc.	X	X
Ciphering algorithm		Selected ciphering algorithm.	X	X
CK		Currently used ciphering key.		X
CK Next	U	UMTS ciphering key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
IK		Currently used integrity key.		X
IK Next	U	Integrity key to be used after the next security mode command.		X
Classmark		MS classmark.	X	X
DRX Parameters		Discontinuous reception parameters.	X	X
Radio Priority SMS		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink SMS transmission.	X	
Each MM context contains zero or more of the following PDP contexts:				
PDP Type		PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.	X	X
PDP Address		PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.	X	X
PDP State		Packet data protocol state, INACTIVE or ACTIVE.	X	X
Dynamic Address Allowed		Specifies whether the MS is allowed to use a dynamic address.	X	X
APN Requested		The APN requested.	X	X
NSAPI		Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.	X	X
TI		Transaction Identifier.	X	X
QoS Profile Requested		The quality of service profile requested.	X	X
QoS Profile Negotiated		The quality of service profile negotiated.	X	X
TFT		Traffic flow template.	X	X
Radio Priority		The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.	X	
Packet Flow Id		Packet flow identifier.	X	
Send N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.	X	X
Receive N-PDU Number		SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.	X	X
RLC-SND		The next in-sequence RLC sequence number expected from the RNC.		X
RLC-SNU		The next in-sequence RLC sequence number to be sent to the RNC.		X

The information marked with a "U" in Table 10 shall be stored in the USIM.

The information marked with a "G" in Table 10:

- shall be stored in the GSIM if the connected SIM is ~~PS~~GPRS-aware; and
- may be stored in the ME after ~~PS~~GPRS detach if the connected GSIM is not ~~PS~~GPRS-aware.

If the GSIM is packet domain service-aware, then the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the GSIM shall be used for packet domain services.

If the GSIM is not packet domain service-aware, then the P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN stored in the ME shall be used if and only if the IMSI stored in the GSIM is identical to

the IMSI image maintained in the ME. If the IMSI stored in the GSIM is different from the IMSI image in the ME, then the IMSI image in the ME shall not be used, and the MS shall identify itself with the IMSI stored in the SIM when performing a ~~PS~~GPRS attach. IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, and CKSN may be stored in the ME after the ~~PS~~GPRS attach has been successfully performed.

When using a USIM, the IMSI, P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Routeing Area, Kc, CK Next, IK Next, and CKSN / KSI stored in the USIM, and the CK and IK stored in the ME, shall be used for packet domain services.

For anonymous access (GSM ~~GPRS~~ only) each GSM ~~GPRS~~ MS maintains MM and PDP context information in READY state. The information may be contained in the ME and the TE. Table 11 shows the MS context fields.

Table 11: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Routeing Area	Current routeing area.
Cell Identity	Current cell.
PDP Type	PDP type, e.g., X.25, PPP, or IP.
PDP Address	PDP address, e.g., an X.121 address.
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TI	Transaction Identifier.
APN Requested	The APN requested.
QoS Profile Requested	The quality of service profile requested.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated.
Radio Priority	The RLC/MAC radio priority level for uplink user data transmission.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Send N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next uplink N-PDU to be sent to the SGSN.
Receive N-PDU Number	SNDCP sequence number of the next downlink N-PDU expected from the SGSN.

13.5 MSC/VLR

The MSC/VLR may store the SGSN number of ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MSs that are also ~~CS~~IMSI-attached. Table 12 shows the MSC/VLR association for one MS.

Table 12: MSC/VLR Association

Field	Description	GSM~~G PRS~~	UMTS
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.	X	X
SGSN Number	The SGSN number of the SGSN currently serving this MS.	X	X

13.6 BSS for GPRS

Table 13 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 13: BSS Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
TLLI	Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each BSS context contains one or more BSS Packet Flow contexts:	
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

The BSS may store BSS contexts also in the anonymous access case. Table 14 shows the BSS context fields for one MS.

Table 14: BSS Context for Anonymous Access

Field	Description
A-TLLI	Auxiliary Temporary Logical Link Identity.
Packet Flow Id	Packet flow identifier.
Aggregate BSS QoS Profile Negotiated	The aggregate BSS quality of service profile negotiated for this packet flow.
BSS Packet Flow Timer	BSS packet flow context inactivity timer.

13.7 RNC for UMTS

RNC maintains RNC Context for CN-related information in PMM-CONNECTED state. RNC also contains RNC RAB contexts for activated RABs. Table 15 shows the context fields for one MS.

Table 15: RNC Context

Field	Description
IMSI	IMSI is the main reference key.
Trace Reference	Identifies a record or a collection of records for a particular trace.
Trace Type	Indicates the type of trace.
Trigger Id	Identifies the entity that initiated the trace.
Initiating OMC Identity	Indicates the identity of the initiating OMC.
OMC Identity	Identifies the OMC that shall receive the trace record(s).
Each RNC context contains zero or more RNC RAB contexts:	
NSAPI	Network layer Service Access Point Identifier.
TEID	Tunnel Endpoint Identifier
GGSN Address in Use	The IP address of the SGSN currently used.
QoS Profile Negotiated	The quality of service profile negotiated for this RAB.
GTP-SND	GTP-U sequence number of the next downlink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS.
GTP-SNU	GTP-U sequence number of the next uplink in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the GGSN.
RLC-SND	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence number to be sent to the MS
RLC-SNU	The next in-sequence RLC Sequence Number expected from the MS

13.8 Recovery and Restoration Procedures

The recovery and restoration procedures are intended to maintain service if inconsistencies in databases occur and at lost or invalid database information. "Invalid" in this context means that the database entry cannot be regarded as reliable.

13.8.1 HLR Failure

When an HLR restarts, it sends to each SGSN where one or more of its MSs are registered a Reset message. This causes the SGSN to mark the relevant MM contexts as invalid, and to set NGAF if an SGSN – MSC/VLR association exists. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GSM~~GPRS~~) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from a marked MS, the SGSN performs an update location to the HLR as in the attach or inter SGSN RA update procedures, and, if NGAF is set, the procedure in subclause "Non-GPRS Alert" is followed. The update location procedure and the procedure towards the MSC/VLR may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator configuration-depending time period to avoid high signalling load. The periodic back-up of HLR data to non-volatile storage is mandatory as described in UMTS 33.007 [5].

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new ~~PS~~GPRS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain ~~PS~~GPRS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new ~~PS~~GPRS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid. If there is no MM context for the MS, the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new ~~PS~~GPRS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routeing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined ~~PS~~GPRS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

13.8.4 VLR Failure

When a VLR fails, all its associations with SGSNs affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. Based on configuration data, the MSC/VLR sends a BSSAP+ Reset message to each of its associated SGSNs. The SGSNs mark all associations containing the restarted VLR as invalid. After receipt of the first valid LLC frame (for GSM~~GPRS~~) or after receipt of the first valid GTP-U packet or uplink signalling message (for UMTS) from an MS that is both ~~PS~~GPRS-attached and ~~CS~~IMSI-attached, the SGSN shall return a Detach Request (Detach Type) message in order to request the MS to perform a combined RA / LA update. Detach Type shall be set to ~~CS~~IMSI Detach. The detach procedure may be delayed by the SGSN for a maximum operator-configuration depending time period to avoid high signalling load.

13.8.5 BSS Failure ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

When a BSS fails, all its BSS contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. BSS storage of data is volatile.

13.8.6 RNC Failure ~~for~~ (UMTS only)

When an RNC fails, all its RNC contexts affected by the failure become invalid and shall be deleted. RNC storage of data is volatile.

14 Identities

14.1 IMSI

A unique International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI) shall be allocated to each packet-domain subscriber. This is also the case for ~~PS~~GPRS-only subscribers, except for anonymous-only access subscribers. IMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003 [4].

14.2 Packet TMSI

A Packet Temporary Mobile Subscriber Identity shall be allocated to each ~~PS~~GPRS-attached MS. P-TMSI is defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.3 NSAPI and TLLI for GPRS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) and Temporary Logical Link Identity (TLLI) are used for network layer routeing. An NSAPI / TLLI pair is unambiguous within a routeing area.

In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context associated with a PDP address. Between the MS and SGSN, TLLI unambiguously identifies the logical link.

When the MS requests the activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs.

For example (shown figuratively below), an X.25 packet is received by the MS from a connected TE at the X.121 address SAP. The X.25 PDU is encapsulated and NSAPI is initialised to NSAPI-1. TLLI is set to the MS's TLLI before the encapsulated X.25 packet is passed to the SNDC function.

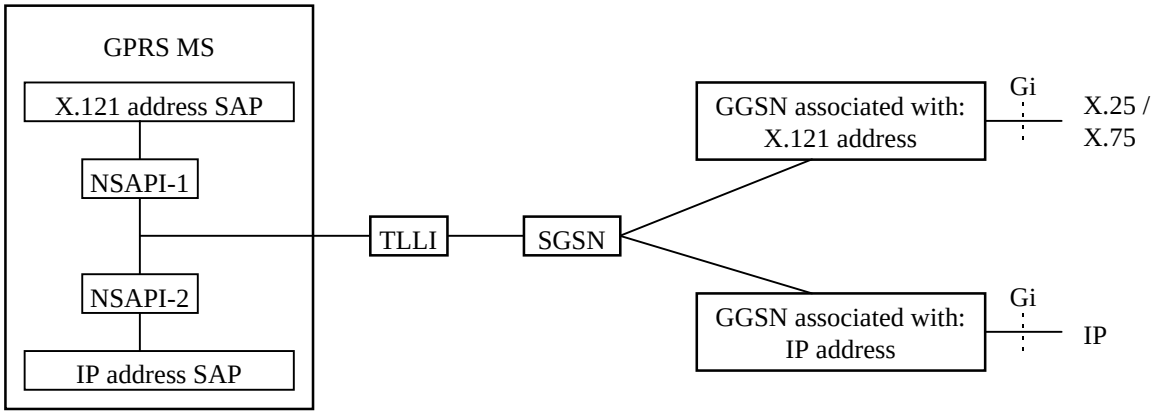


Figure 91: Use of NSAPI and TLLI

Within a routeing area, there is a one-to-one correspondence between TLLI and IMSI that is only known in the MS and SGSN. If it is not clear from the context which routeing area a TLLI belongs to, then TLLI is used together with RAI. TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI, and does then provide user identity confidentiality as described in subclause "User Identity Confidentiality".

The TLLI address range is divided into four ranges: Local, Foreign, Random, and Auxiliary. The TLLI structure allows the MS and SGSN to deduce the range that a TLLI belongs to. A Local TLLI is derived from the P-TMSI allocated by the SGSN, and is valid only in the RA associated with the P-TMSI. A Foreign TLLI is derived from a P-TMSI allocated in another RA. A Random TLLI is selected randomly by the MS, and is used when the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI available, or when the MS originates an anonymous access. An Auxiliary TLLI is selected by the SGSN and is used by the SGSN and MS to unambiguously identify an Anonymous Access MM and PDP Context.

If the MS has a valid P-TMSI associated with the RA where the MS is currently located, then the MS shall use a Local TLLI derived from its P-TMSI, unless the MS performs a GPRS attach.

If the MS does not have a valid P-TMSI associated with the current RA, or if the MS performs a GPRS attach, then it shall derive a Foreign TLLI from its P-TMSI, or allocate a Random TLLI if no valid P-TMSI is available.

When a TLLI is exchanged between the MS and an SGSN, then the TLLI is transmitted at the RLC/MAC layer within the Um protocol stack, and at the BSSGP layer within the Gb protocol stack. NSAPI is transmitted within the SNDCP layer in the user plane, and within the GMM/SM layer in the control plane. NSAPI is represented by a transaction identifier (TI) in some SM signalling messages. The TI is dynamically allocated by the MS for MS-requested (AA) PDP context activation, and by the network for network-requested PDP context activation. The TI is deallocated when a PDP context has been deactivated. TI usage is defined in 3G TS 24.007 and 3G TS 24.008.

By default, unless explicitly specified in the procedures, the TLLI transmitted at the RLC/MAC and BSSGP layers shall be used to identify the MS.

14.4 NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID for UMTS

The Network layer Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) is used for network layer routeing. In the MS, NSAPI identifies the PDP-SAP. In the SGSN and GGSN, NSAPI identifies the PDP context, and in the RNC, NSAPI identifies the RNC RAB context. Radio Bearer Identity (RB Identity) is used to identify the Uu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer. Radio Access Bearer Identifier (RAB ID) is used to identify the Iu interface logical channel associated with the radio access bearer.

In the packet domain, a network allocates one radio access bearer for one PDP context. In addition, one Uu interface logical radio bearer is allocated for one radio access bearer.

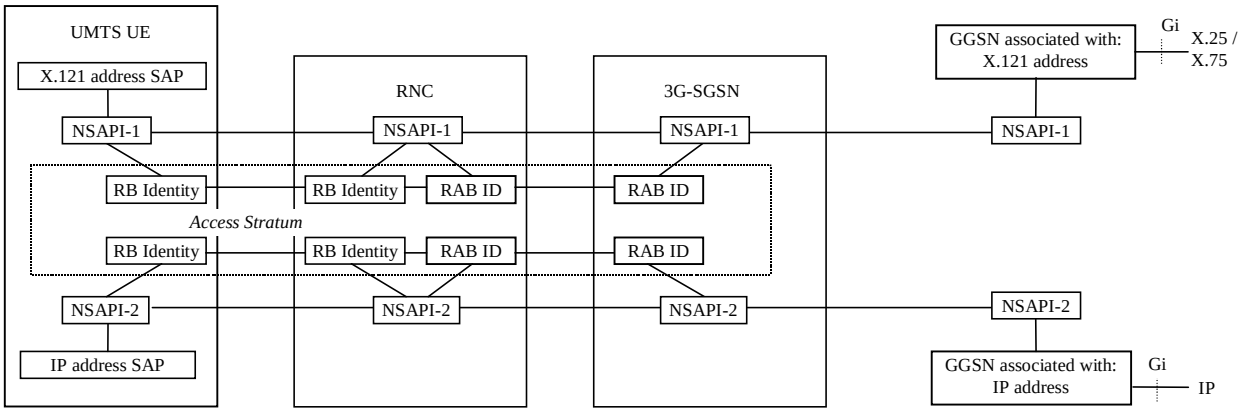


Figure 92: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID

When the MS initiates activation of a PDP context, the MS selects one of its unused NSAPIs. When the SGSN initiates a RAB assignment procedure, the SGSN shall allocate RAB ID(s) in which NSAPI(s) are used as those values in order to recognise them in the RNC.

14.5 PDP Address

A packet-domain subscriber identified by an IMSI, shall have one or more network layer addresses, i.e., PDP addresses, temporarily and/or permanently associated with it that conforms to the standard addressing scheme of the respective network layer service used, e.g.:

- an IP version 4 address;
- an IP version 6 address; or
- an X.121 address.

PDP addresses are activated and deactivated through MM procedures described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

14.6 TEID

A Tunnel Endpoint Identifier (TEID) is used by the GPRS tunnelling protocol between GSNs, and between RNCs and SGSNs, to identify a tunnel endpoint in the receiving GTP-C or GTP-U protocol entity and to identify a PDP context. The receiving end side of a GTP tunnel locally assigns the TEID value that the transmitting side has to use. The TEID values are exchanged between tunnel endpoints using GTP-C (or RANAP in the Iu case) messages.

The TEID is forwarded to the GGSN upon PDP Context Activation and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the GGSN and the SGSN to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and GGSN. The TEID is also used to forward N-PDUs from the old SGSN to the new SGSN at and after an inter SGSN routeing area update. In UMTS, the TEID is also forwarded to the RNC upon RAB assignment and it is used in subsequent tunnelling of user data between the 3G-SGSN and the RNC in order to identify the MS's PDP contexts in the SGSN and the MS's RNC RAB contexts in the RNC. It is also used to forward N-PDUs from the SRNC to the target RNC at SRNS relocation.

In the anonymous access case, AA-TEID is allocated locally by the SGSN. An AA-TEID consists of an A-TLLI and an NSAPI similar to TEID. Since the IMSI is longer than A-TLLI, the unused digits shall be used to create a unique identity within one PLMN. The allocated AA-TEID shall not collide with the TEID address space.

14.7 Routeing Area Identity

Routeing Area Identity (RAI), defined by an operator, identifies one or several cells.

In GSM~~GPRS~~, RAI is broadcast as system information.

In UMTS, RAI is broadcast to MSs in RRC Idle mode, and is notified to MSs in RRC Connected mode on established RRC connections as MM system information.

The location of an MS in STANDBY or PMM-IDLE state is known in the SGSN on an RA level. Cells that do not support packet-domain services within an LA are grouped into a null RA. The MS is paged for packet services in the RA where the MS is located when mobile-terminated traffic arrives in the SGSN. The MS is paged for circuit-switched services by the SGSN in the last known RA plus in the null RA.

NOTE: Cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC without a Gb interface should not be included in the same location area as cells not supporting GPRS and served by a BSC with a Gb interface.

A Routeing Area is a subset of one, and only one, Location Area (LA), meaning that an RA cannot span more than one LA. An RA is served by only one SGSN.

The following rules apply for the Routeing Area Identity:

- RAC is only unique when presented together with LAI.
- CI is only unique when presented together with LAI or RAI (~~GPRS~~ GSM only).
- LAI = MCC + MNC + LAC
- RAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + RAC
- CGI = LAI + CI (~~GPRS~~ GSM only)

14.8 UTRAN Registration Area Identity (UMTS only)

The UTRAN Registration Area Identity (URA Id) identifies a UTRAN Registration Area (URA) and is defined in 3G TS 25.331. URA Id can be used to indicate to the MS which URA it shall use in case of overlapping URAs.

14.9 Cell Identity

In GPRS, Cell Identity (CI) identifies one cell. In UMTS, Cell Identifer (C-Id) uniquely identifies a cell within an RNS. CI and C-Id are defined in 3G TS 23.003.

14.10 Service Area Identity (UMTS only)

The Service Area Identity (SAI) is used to uniquely identify an area consisting of one or more cells belonging to the same location area. Such an area is called a Service Area and can be used for indicating the location of an MS to the CN.

The Service Area Code (SAC) together with the PLMN identity and the LAC constitutes the Service Area Identity:

- SAI = MCC + MNC + LAC + SAC

14.11 GSN Addresses

14.11.1 GSN Address

Each SGSN and GGSN shall have an IP address, either of type IPv4 or IPv6, for inter-communication over the backbone network. The IP addresses of GSNs and other backbone nodes of all PLMNs build a private address space that is not accessible from the public Internet. For the GGSN and the SGSN, this IP address may also correspond to one or more DNS-type logical GSN names.

14.11.2 GSN Number

Each SGSN shall have an SGSN number for communication with e.g., HLR and EIR.

Each GGSN that supports the optional SS7-based Gc interface shall have a GGSN number for communication with HLRs.

14.12 RNC Addresses (UMTS only)

14.12.1 RNC Address

Each RNC shall have one or more IP addresses, either of type IPv4 or IPv6, for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.12.2 RNC Number

Each RNC shall have an RNC number for inter-communication over the Iu interface.

14.13 Access Point Name

In the backbone, Access Point Name is a reference to the GGSN to be used. In addition, Access Point Name may, in the GGSN, identify the external network and optionally a service to be offered. Access Point Name is composed of two parts as defined in 3G TS 23.003:

- The APN Network Identifier is mandatory and is a label (for example "corporation" or "service") or a set of labels separated by dots which is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions (for example "company.com" or "service.company.com"). In order to guarantee the uniqueness of the APN, the packet-domain PLMN should allocate, to an ISP or corporation, an APN Network Identifier identical to their domain name in the public Internet. The APN Network Identifier shall not end with ".gprs". An APN Network Identifier that consists of 3 or more labels and that starts with a Reserved Service Label, or an APN Network Identifier that consists of a Reserved Service Label alone, shall indicate that for this APN the GGSN supports additional services such as external PDN address allocation or Mobile IP support. Reserved Service Labels, e.g., "dhcp" or "MIPv4FA", and the corresponding services that they stand for, e.g., external PDN address allocation via DHCP, or Mobile IP Foreign Agent support, are to be agreed among operators.

- The APN Operator Identifier is optional. It is a fully qualified domain name according to the DNS naming conventions, and consists of three labels. The APN Operator Identifier shall end in ".gprs". For example, it may be "MNCyyyy.MCCzzzz.gprs". The exact format is defined in 3G TS 29.060.

The APN stored in the HLR shall not contain the APN Operator Identifier. A wild card may be stored in the HLR instead of the APN. This wild card indicates that the user may select an APN that is not stored in the HLR. The use of the wild card is described in annex A.

15 Operational Aspects

15.1 Charging

Charging information for the packet domain is collected for each MS by SGSNs and GGSNs that are serving the MS. The operator can control whether charging shall be collected in the SGSN and the GGSN on an individual MS basis by appropriately setting the Subscribed Charging Characteristics in the HLR.

The information that the operator uses to generate a bill to a subscriber is operator-specific. Billing aspects, e.g., a regular fee for a fixed period, are outside the scope of the present document.

Every packet domain operator collects and processes their own charging information.

The SGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the radio network usage while the GGSN collects charging information for each MS related with the external data network usage. Both GSNs also collect charging information on usage of the network resources.

15.1.1 Charging Information

Charging information is collected for the ~~PS~~GPRS subscriber.

As a minimum, the SGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs that are subject to charging:

- usage of the radio interface: the charging information shall describe the amount of data transmitted in MO and MT directions categorised with QoS and user protocols;
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the packet data protocol addresses;
- usage of the general packet domain resources: the charging information shall describe the usage of other packet domain-related resources and the MS's network activity (e.g., mobility management); and
- location of MS: HPLMN, VPLMN, plus optional higher-accuracy location information.

As a minimum, the GGSN shall collect the following charging information for MSs that are subject to charging:

- destination and source: the charging information shall describe the destination and source addresses with a level of accuracy as defined by the packet domain operator;
- usage of the external data networks: the charging information shall describe the amount of data sent and received to and from the external data network; and
- usage of the packet data protocol addresses: the charging information shall describe how long the MS has used the PDP addresses.

15.1.2 Reverse Charging

It shall be possible to provide reverse charging as a subscription option. However, reverse charging may not be applicable to certain external data network protocols.

15.1.3 Fair Charging ~~for (~~UMTS only)

FFS.

15.2 Quality of Service Profile

A QoS profile is associated with each PDP context. The QoS profile is considered to be a single parameter with multiple data transfer attributes. The definition of the QoS attributes for the packet domain can be found in 3G TS 23.107, which also defines the mapping between the packet-domain QoS attributes and the QoS attributes for GPRS releases 97 and 98.

There are many possible QoS profiles defined by the combinations of the attributes. A PLMN may support only a limited subset of the possible QoS profiles.

During the QoS profile negotiation defined in subclause "Activation Procedures", it shall be possible for the MS to request a value for each of the QoS attributes, including the HLR-stored subscribed default values. The network shall negotiate each attribute to a level that is in accordance with the available GPRS resources. The network shall always attempt to provide adequate resources to support the negotiated QoS profiles.

15.2.1 Radio Priority Levels ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

The RLC/MAC layer supports four radio priority levels and an additional level for signalling messages as defined in GSM 03.64 and GSM 04.60. Upon uplink access the MS can indicate one of the four priority levels, and whether the cause for the uplink access is user data or signalling message transmission. This information is used by the BSS to determine the radio access precedence (i.e., access priority) and the service precedence (i.e., transfer priority under congested situation), see GSM 04.60.

The radio priority levels to be used for transmission of MO SMS shall be determined by the SGSN and delivered to the MS in the Attach Accept message. The radio priority level to be used for user data transmission shall be determined by the SGSN based on the negotiated QoS profile and shall be delivered to the MS during the PDP Context Activation and PDP Context Modification procedures.

15.3 Traffic Flow Template

A TFT consists of from one and up to eight packet filters, each identified by a unique packet filter identifier. A packet filter also has an evaluation precedence index that is unique within all TFTs associated with the PDP contexts that share the same PDP address. This evaluation precedence index is in the range of 255 (lowest evaluation precedence) down to 0 (highest evaluation precedence). The MS manages packet filter identifiers and their evaluation precedence indexes, and creates the packet filter contents.

A TFT is always associated with a PDP context during the Secondary PDP Context Activation procedure. A TFT may be added to a PDP context that was created with the PDP Context Activation Procedure by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure. By means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure any TFT can be modified. A PDP context can never have more than one TFT associated with it.

15.3.1 Rules for Operations on TFTs

The MS shall use the TFT and packet filter identifiers in each operation for handling of the TFTs and packet filters.

When the MS creates a new TFT, or modifies an existing TFT, it has to include at least one valid packet filter. If no valid packet filter is included in the newly created or modified TFT, then the procedure used for the creation or modification of the TFT shall fail, and an error code shall be returned to the MS.

During the modification of a TFT, one or more existing packet filters can be modified or deleted, or a new packet filter can be created. In order to modify an existing packet filter, the new values for the packet filter attributes along with the packet filter identifier is sent from the MS to the GGSN. The MS may also modify the evaluation precedence index only of one or several packet filters by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure.

A TFT is deleted when the associated PDP context is deactivated. A TFT can also be deleted by means of the MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure. At any time there may exist only one PDP context with no associated TFT amongst all the PDP contexts associated with one PDP address. An attempt by the MS to delete a TFT, which would violate this rule, shall be rejected by the GGSN.

15.3.2 Packet Filter Attributes

Each valid packet filter contains a unique identifier within a given TFT, an evaluation precedence index that is unique within all TFTs for one PDP address, and at least one of the following attributes:

- Source Address and Subnet Mask.
- Protocol Number (IPv4) / Next Header (IPv6).
- Destination Port Range.
- Source Port Range.
- IPSec Security Parameter Index (SPI).
- Type of Service (TOS) (IPv4) / Traffic class (IPv6) and Mask.
- Flow Label (IPv6).

Some of the above-listed attributes may coexist in a packet filter while others mutually exclude each other. In Table 16 below, the possible combinations are shown. Only those attributes marked with an "X" may be specified for a single packet filter. All marked attributes may be specified, but at least one shall be specified.

If the parameters of the header of a received PDP PDU match all specified attribute values in a packet filter, then a match is considered to be found for this packet filter. In this case the evaluation procedure is aborted. Other packet filters in increasing order of their evaluation precedence index are evaluated until such a match is found.

There may be potential conflicts if attribute values are combined in such a way that the defined filter can never achieve a match to a valid IP packet header. However, the determination of such conflicts are outside the scope of GPRS standardisation.

Table 16: Valid Packet Filter Attribute Combinations

	Valid combination types		
Packet filter attribute	**I**	**II**	**III**
Source Address and Subnet Mask	X	X	X
Protocol Number (IPv4) / Next Header (IPv6)	X	X	
Destination Port Range	X		
Source Port Range	X		
IPSec SPI		X	
TOS (IPv4) / Traffic Class (IPv6) and Mask	X	X	X
Flow Label (IPv6)			X

15.3.2.1 Source Address and Subnet Mask

The Source Address and Subnet Mask attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain an IPv4 or IPv6 address along with a subnet mask.

As an example, the source address and subnet mask attribute to classify packets coming from all hosts within the IPv4 domain A.B.C.0/24 is {A.B.C.0 [255.255.255.0]}.

15.3.2.2 Protocol Number / Next Header

The Protocol Number / Next Header attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain either an IPv4 Protocol Number or an IPv6 Next Header value. The value range is from 0 to 255.

15.3.2.3 Port Numbers

The Destination Port Range and Source Port Range attributes of a valid packet filter shall each contain one port number, or a range of port numbers. Port numbers range between 0 and 65535.

15.3.2.4 IPSec Security Parameter Index

The IPSec SPI attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain one SPI which is a 32-bit field.

15.3.2.5 Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask

The Type of Service / Traffic Class and Mask attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain either an IPv4 TOS octet or an IPv6 Traffic Class octet along with a mask defining which of the 8 bits should be used for matching.

15.3.2.6 Flow Label

The Flow Label attribute of a valid packet filter shall contain an IPv6 flow label which is a 20-bit field.

15.3.3 Example Usage of Packet Filters

Based on the type of traffic or the external-network QoS capabilities, different types of packet filters can be used to classify a given PDP PDU in order to determine the right PDP context. Some examples are given below.

15.3.3.1 IPv4 Multi-field Classification

In the case of multi-field classification, the packet filter consists of a number of packet header fields. For example, to classify TCP/IPv4 packets originating from 172.168.8.0/24 destined to port 5003 at the TE, the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 1;
- IPv4 Source Address = {172.168.8.0 [255.255.255.0]};
- Protocol Number for TCP = 6; and
- Destination Port = 5003.

15.3.3.2 IPv4 TOS-based Classification

In the case of TOS-based classification, the packet filter consists of only the TOS octet coding. For example to classify IPv4 packets marked with TOS coding 001010xx, the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 3;
- Type of Service / Traffic Class = 00101000 and Mask = 11111100.

NOTE: The TOS-based classification can always be augmented with the source address attribute if it is known that different source domains use different TOS octet codings for the same traffic class.

15.3.3.3 IPv4 Multi-field Classification for IPSec Traffic

In the case of multi-field classification of IPSec traffic, the packet filter contains the SPI instead of the port numbers that are not available due to encryption. If IPSec (ESP) was used with an SPI of 0x0F80F000, then the following packet filter can be used:

- Packet Filter Identifier = 4;
- Protocol Number for ESP = 50; and
- SPI = 0x0F80F000.

16 Interactions with Other Services

This clause describes the interaction between packet-domain services and the following other services:

- point-to-point Short Message Service (SMS);
- circuit-switched services;
- supplementary services; and
- CAMEL services.

16.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service

16.1.1 Point-to-point Short Message Service ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

It shall be possible for a GPRS-attached MS to send and receive short messages over GPRS radio channels. An MS that is GPRS-attached and not IMSI-attached shall transfer SMs over GPRS channels. MSs that are both GPRS-attached and IMSI-attached shall transfer SMs over GPRS channels or over non-GPRS control channels (if non-GPRS control channels are used, then paging for MT SMS may go through the SGSN).

The following two subclauses define the operation of mobile-terminated and mobile-originated SMS routeing and transfer over GPRS radio channels. More detailed definitions are contained in GSM 03.40 [8].

16.1.1.1 Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer

Figure 93 and the description below show an example of a successful delivery of a SM to an MS over a GPRS radio channel.

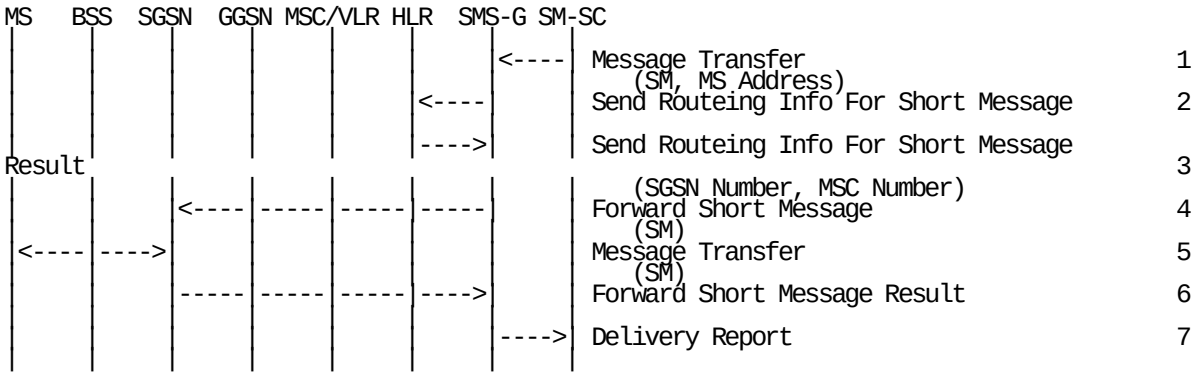


Figure 93: MT SMS Transfer, Successful

1) The short message service centre determines it shall send a SM to an MS. SM-SC forwards the SM to a SMS gateway MSC (SMS-GMSC).

2) SMS-GMSC examines the destination MS Address, and sends a Send Routeing Info For Short Message message to the relevant HLR.

3) HLR returns a Send Routeing Info For Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC. The result may contain the MS's current SGSN Number, the MSC Number, or both. If the result does not contain an SGSN Number (i.e., the HLR knows that the MS is not reachable via an SGSN), and if the result does contain an MSC Number, then non-GPRS SMS delivery procedures are followed. If the result contains an SGSN Number, the SMS transfer proceeds according to the following events.

NOTE: SMS delivery via the SGSN is normally more radio resource efficient than SMS delivery via the MSC/VLR. The preferred delivery path is selected by SMS-GMSC operator-specific action.

4) SMS-GMSC forwards the SM to the SGSN.

5) SGSN transfers the SM to the MS on the RP, CP, LLC layers, as defined in GSM 04.11 and GSM 04.64.

6) SGSN returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

7) SMS-GMSC returns a Delivery Report to the SM-SC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

16.1.1.1.1 Unsuccessful Mobile-terminated SMS Transfer

The SGSN may not be able to deliver the SM to the MS. This may for example happen when the MS is not attached to GPRS, or when the radio channel conditions are bad.

When the SGSN cannot deliver the SM to the MS, the SGSN sets the Mobile station Not Reachable for GPRS flag (MNRG), and returns a failure report to the SMS-GMSC. Based on the routeing information received from the HLR, the SMS-GMSC shall do one of the following:

- If an MSC/VLR is available for the MS, the SM is forwarded to the MS via the MSC/VLR. A successful delivery report shall be returned to the SM-SC.

- If an MSC/VLR is not available for the MS, the Message Waiting Indication information in the HLR shall be updated and an unsuccessful delivery report shall be returned to the SM-SC.

Figure 94 illustrates one possible traffic scenario when neither the SGSN nor the MSC is able to deliver the SM.

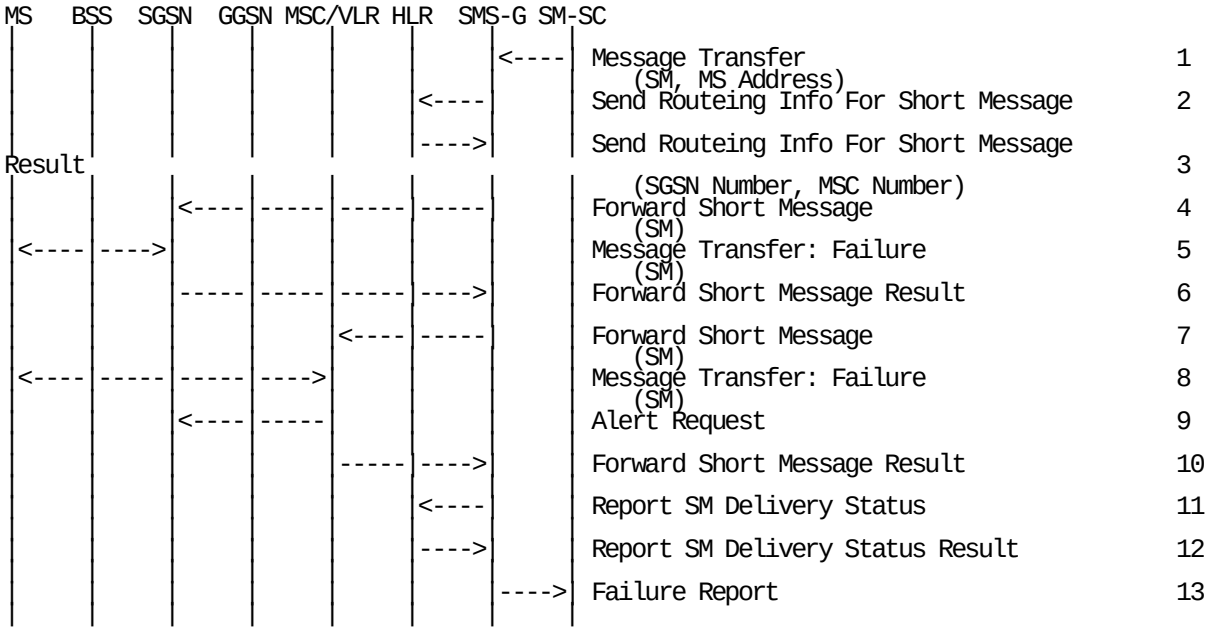


Figure 94: MT SMS Transfer, Unsuccessful

1) The short message service centre determines it shall send a SM to an MS. SM-SC forwards the SM to a SMS-GMSC.

2) SMS-GMSC examines the destination MS Address, and sends a Send Routeing Info For Short Message message to the relevant HLR.

3) HLR returns a Send Routeing Info For Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC. The Result contains an SGSN Number and an MSC Number.

4) SMS-GMSC forwards the SM to the SGSN.

5) SGSN attempts to transfer the SM to the MS, but fails.

6) SGSN sets MNRG and returns a Forward Short Message Result message to SMS-GMSC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

7) SMS-GMSC selects an alternative route for the SMS, and forwards the SM to the MSC/VLR.

8) MSC/VLR attempts to transfer the SM to the MS, but fails.

9) The MSC/VLR requests the setting of the NGAF at the SGSN.

10) VLR sets MNRF and returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SMS-GMSC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

11) SMS-GMSC sends a Report SM Delivery message to the HLR.

12) HLR updates its Message Waiting Indication fields and returns a Report SM Delivery Result message to the SMS-GMSC.

13) SMS-GMSC returns a Failure Report to the SM-SC indicating unsuccessful delivery of the SM.

Figure 65 shows that the SGSN sends a Ready for SM (MS Reachable) message to the HLR when the MS becomes reachable and MNRG is set in the SGSN. The SGSN indicates also to the MSC/VLR when the MS becomes reachable and NGAF is set in the SGSN. If the MNRF is set at the MSC/VLR,

the MSC/VLR sends a Ready for SM (MS Reachable) message to the HLR. Reception of a Ready for SM message or Update Location message when MNRG is set in the HLR shall trigger the SMS alert procedure as defined in GSM 03.40.

MNRG remains set in the SGSN independently of whether the MSC/VLR was successful in delivering the SM or not.
This means that the SGSN in certain cases sends a Ready for SM message to the HLR when an MS becomes reachable via the SGSN, even if no SM is waiting. This causes a small amount of duplicate signalling between SGSN and HLR only.

16.1.1.2 Mobile-originated SMS Transfer

Figure 95 and the description below explain the steps involved in sending a SM from an MS over a GPRS radio channel.

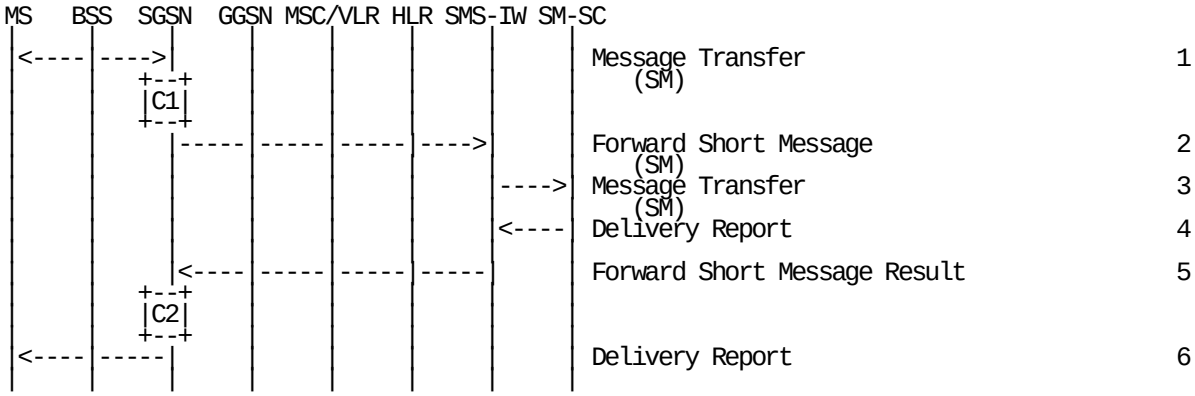


Figure 95: MO SMS Transfer, Successful

1) The MS has a SM to send, and transfers the SM to the SGSN via RP, CP, and LLC.

2) SGSN checks the MS subscription data, and determines that the MS is allowed to originate the SMS. SGSN forwards the SM to a SMS interworking MSC (SMS-IWMSC).

3) SMS-IWMSC passes the SM to the addressed SM-SC.

4) SM-SC returns a Delivery Report to the SMS-IWMSC indicating successful delivery of the SM.

5) SMS-IWMSC returns a Forward Short Message Result message to the SGSN indicating successful delivery of the SM.

6) SGSN returns a Delivery Report to the MS indicating successful delivery of the SM.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SMS-MO-Request

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SMS-MO-Result

16.1.2 Point-to-point Short Message Service ~~for (~~UMTS ~~only)~~

SMS shall be supported via the control plane in the UMTS packet domain. The UMTS SMS service is described in 3G TS 23.040.

16.2 Circuit-switched Services ~~for GPRS~~(GSM only)

The ability for a GPRS user to access circuit-switched services depends on the subscription held, the network capabilities, and the MS capabilities. Interaction between GPRS and circuit-switched services is described in subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR".

16.2.1 Suspension of GPRS Services

When a GPRS-attached MS enters dedicated mode, and when the MS limitations make it unable to communicate on GPRS channels, the MS shall request the network for suspension of GPRS services. The Suspend and Resume procedure is illustrated in Figure 96. Each step is explained in the following list.

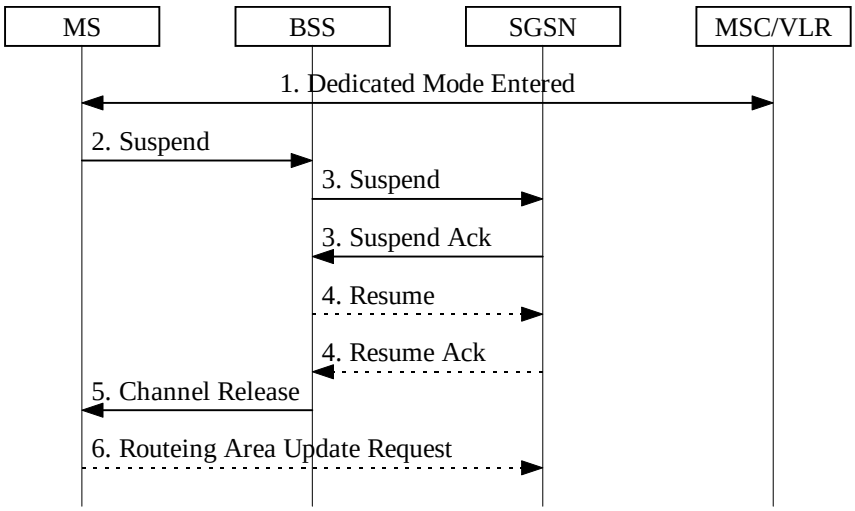


Figure 96: Suspend and Resume Procedure

1) The MS enters dedicated mode.

2) The MS sends an RR Suspend (TLLI, RAI) message to the BSS. The BSS may terminate any ongoing GPRS traffic for this TLLI.

3) The BSS sends a Suspend (TLLI, RAI) message to the SGSN, and the SGSN acknowledges by returning Suspend Ack. The BSS shall store TLLI and RAI in order to be able to request the SGSN to resume GPRS services when the MS leaves dedicated mode.

4) Eventually, the BSS determines that the circuit-switched radio channel shall be released. If the BSS is able to request the SGSN to resume GPRS services, the BSS shall send a Resume (TLLI, RAI) message to the SGSN. The SGSN acknowledges the successful outcome of the resume by returning Resume Ack.

5) The BSS sends an RR Channel Release (Resume) message to the MS. Resume indicates whether the BSS has successfully requested the SGSN to resume GPRS services for the MS, i.e., whether Resume Ack was received in the BSS before the RR Channel Release message was transmitted. The MS leaves dedicated mode.

6) If the BSS did not successfully request the SGSN to resume GPRS services, or if the RR Channel Release message was not received before the MS left dedicated mode, then the MS shall resume GPRS services by sending a Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN, as described in subclause "Routeing Area Update Procedure".

The full handling of suspended MSs in the BSS and the SGSN is implementation dependent. Typically, the SGSN should not page suspended MSs.

If the MS performs an inter-BSC handover while suspended, then TLLI and RAI should be transferred as BSC-to-BSC information in the Handover Required and Handover Request messages, see GSM 08.08. This allows the new BSC to initiate the Resume request procedure to the SGSN. In the case where the BSC-to-BSC information was not transferred or not understood, then the MS doesn't receive an indication that resumption has been successful, and the MS shall resume GPRS services by initiating a Routeing Area Update Request procedure as described in step 6.

16.2.2 GPRS and Dedicated Mode Priority Handling

An MS in class-B mode of operation that communicates on GPRS radio channels when a dedicated channel is needed, shall immediately abort the GPRS communication and trigger the Suspend and Resume procedure.

Response to circuit-switched paging, non-emergency MO circuit-switched calls, MO SMS, and MO supplementary services are exceptions to the above rule. In these cases, it is an implementation choice whether to immediately abort GPRS communication or to delay the dedicated mode establishment.

16.3 Supplementary Services

No supplementary services are defined for the packet domain. Supplementary services may be available in the interworked-with networks (e.g., the X.25 Call Redirection user facility), but this is outside the scope of this specification.

16.4 CAMEL Services

CAMEL may be used for session and cost control. It may also be used for other operator-specific services.

Annex A (normative): APN and GGSN Selection

This annex contains the rules applied upon PDP context activation to determine the APN and the corresponding GGSN.

A.1 Definitions

The SGSN knows from the subscription data the parameters (S for Subscribed): PDP type (S), PDP address (S), APN (S), and VPLMN address allowed.

The SGSN may know from configuration the default APN supporting a given PDP type. This APN is called APN (SGSN) and does not include an APN Operator Identifier.

The SGSN knows the parameters requested by the MS (R for Requested): PDP type (R), PDP address (R), and APN (R). APN (R) is the APN Network Identifier requested by the MS.

In case of "an APN chosen by the SGSN" the activated PDP context is always linked with a dynamic PDP address.

An MS may have multiple subscription records for the same PDP type and the same PDP address, but with different APNs.

An MS may have one or two subscription records with the same PDP type and the same APN: one with a static PDP address, one with a dynamic PDP address.

When the MS is in its HPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN. When the MS is in a VPLMN, if the MS requests an APN that does not correspond to any GGSN of its HPLMN nor of this VPLMN, the request shall be rejected by SGSN.

If APN (S) = wild card (see GSM 03.03), it means either:

- that a default APN (a default PDN) has to be chosen by the SGSN (APN (SGSN)) if no APN (R) has been provided; or

- that a PDP context with dynamic PDP address may be activated towards any APN requested by the MS.

In order to derive APN (R) from the APN sent by the MS, the SGSN shall check if the APN sent by the user ends with ".gprs". If not, then APN (R) is equal to APN sent by the MS. If yes, then APN (R) is the APN sent by the MS without the three last labels.

A.2 Selection Rules

The SGSN shall select the APN to be used to derive the GGSN address, and set the selection mode parameter according to the rules in the SDL diagrams in this subclause. The following definitons apply to the SDL diagrams:

AddrMode: Addressing Mode.

APN-OI: APN Operator Identifier.

HPLMN-OI: HPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

Number <condition>: determines the PDP context subscription records that satisfy the given condition.

PDPaddr: PDP address.

SelMode := ChosenBySGSN: Network-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := SentByMS: MS-provided APN, subscription not verified.

SelMode := Subscribed: MS or Network-provided APN, subscription verified.

SelMode: Selection Mode.

VPLMN-OI: VPLMN APN Operator Identifier.

+: concatenation operation.

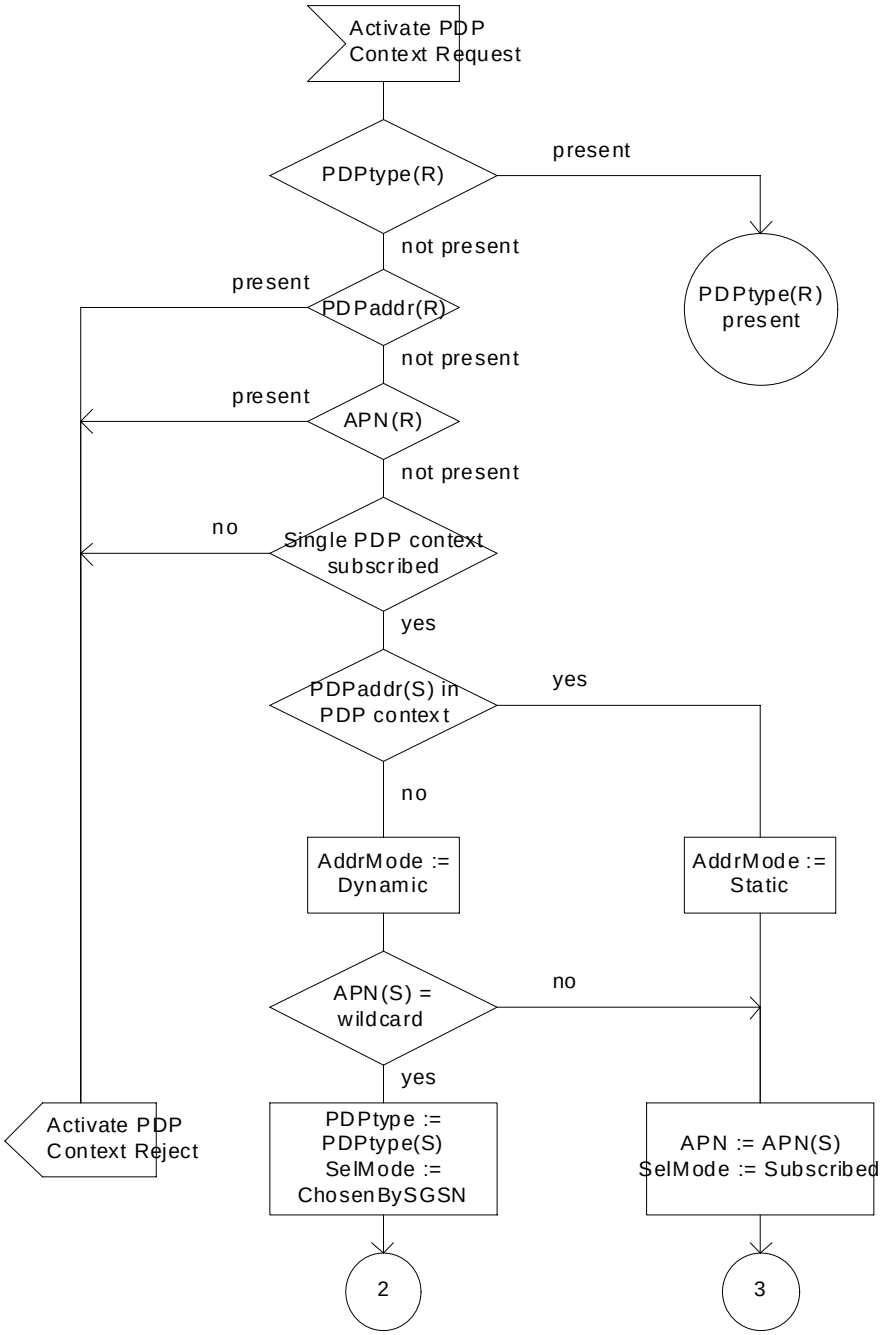


Figure A.1: SDL Diagram 1

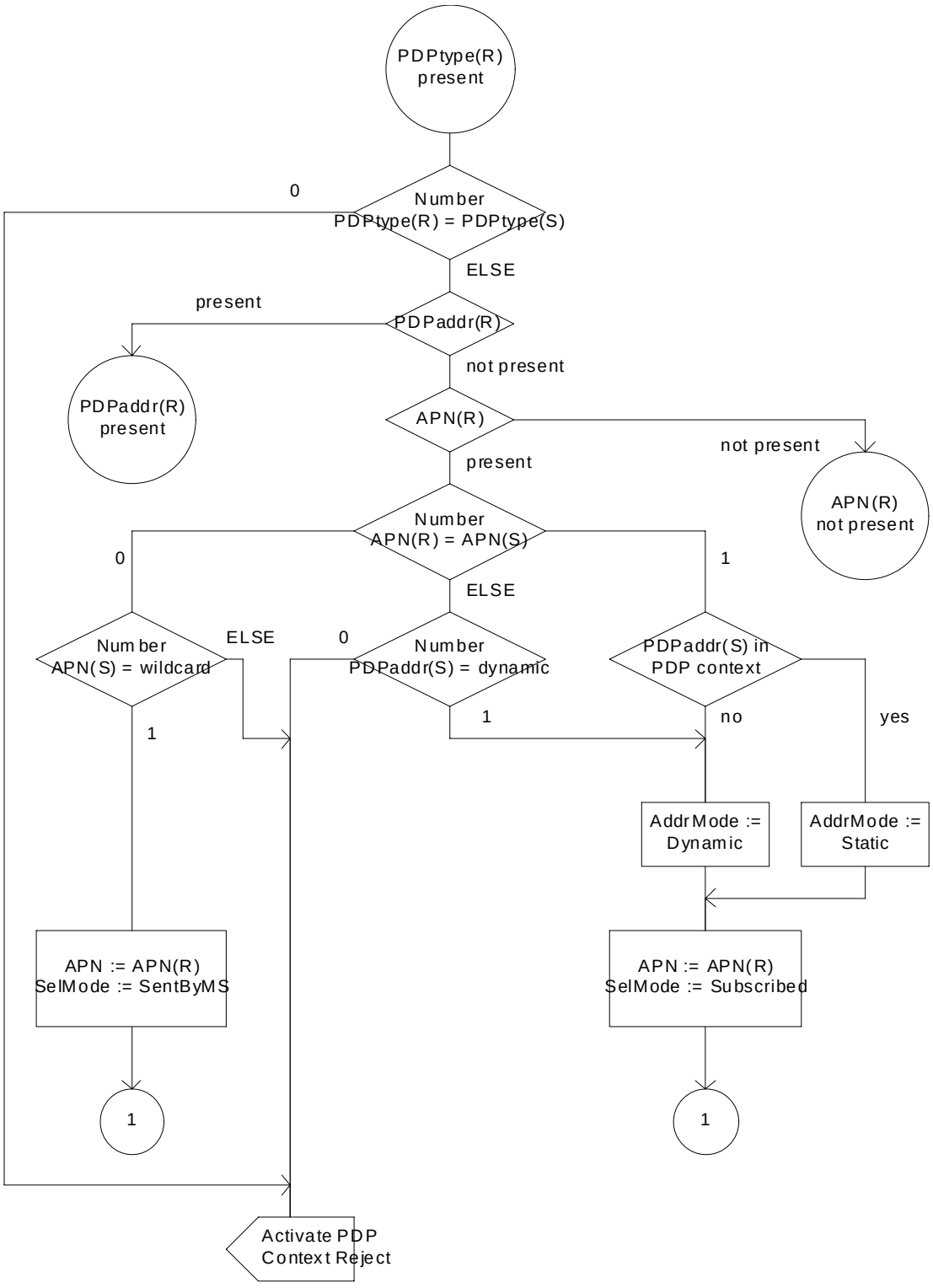


Figure A.2: SDL Diagram 2

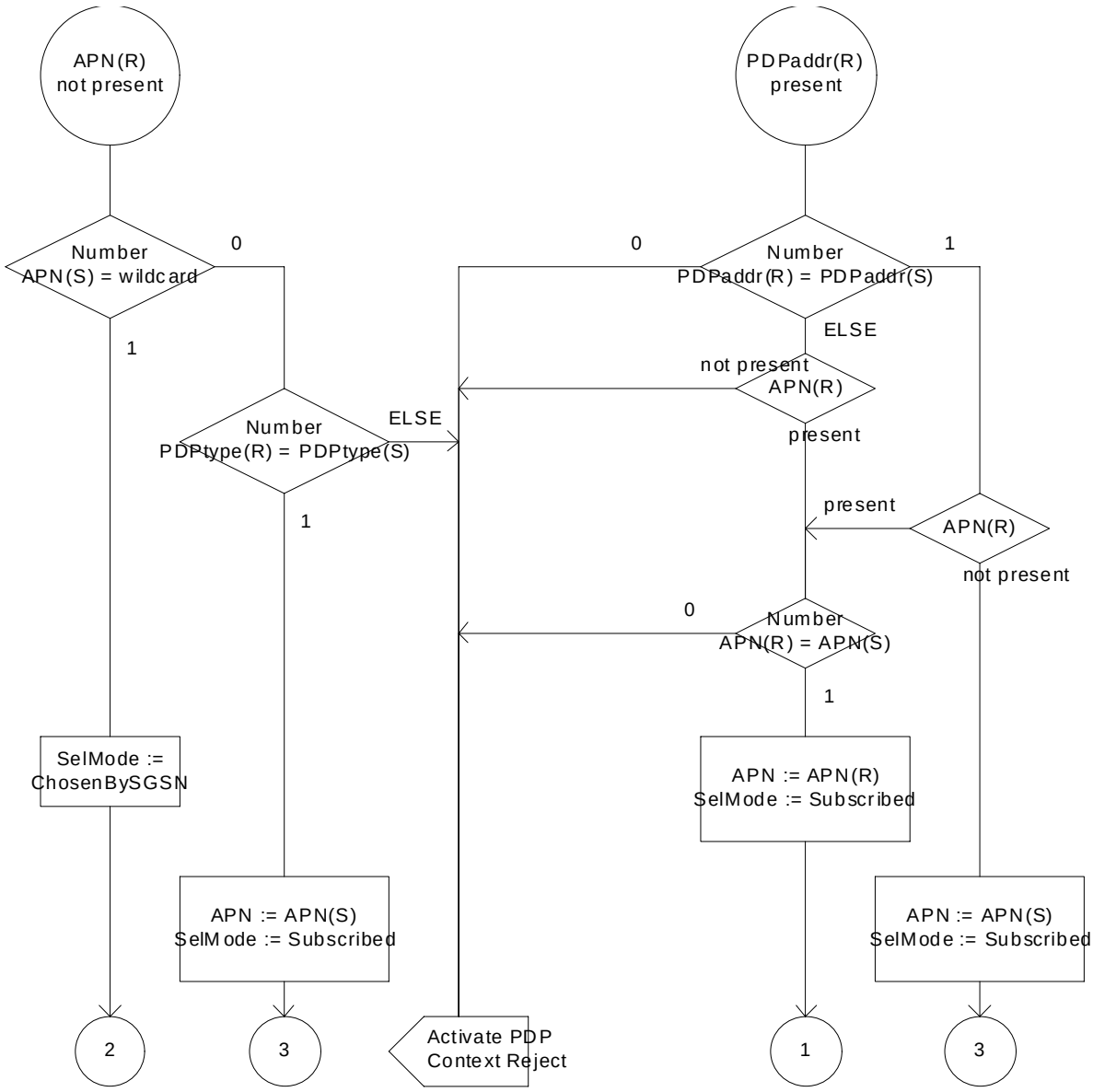


Figure A.3: SDL Diagram 3

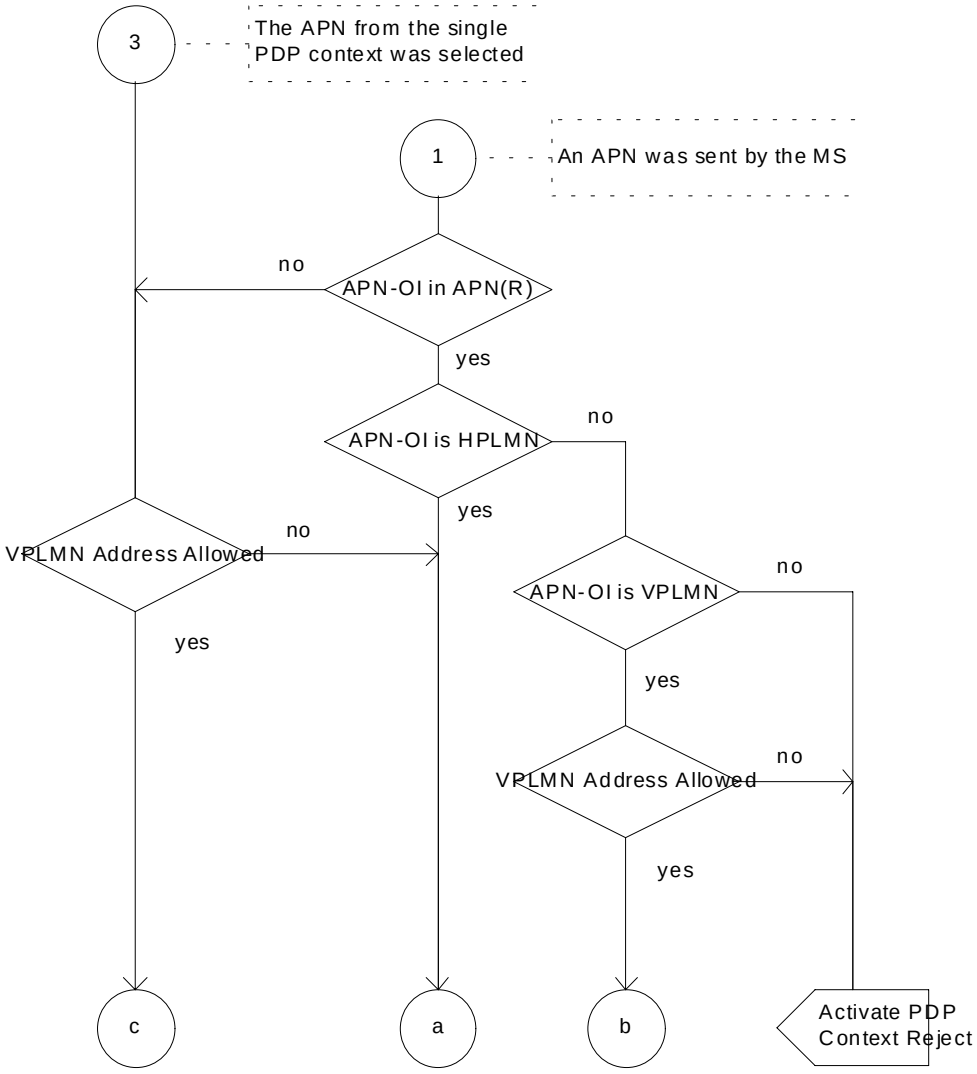


Figure A.4: SDL Diagram 4

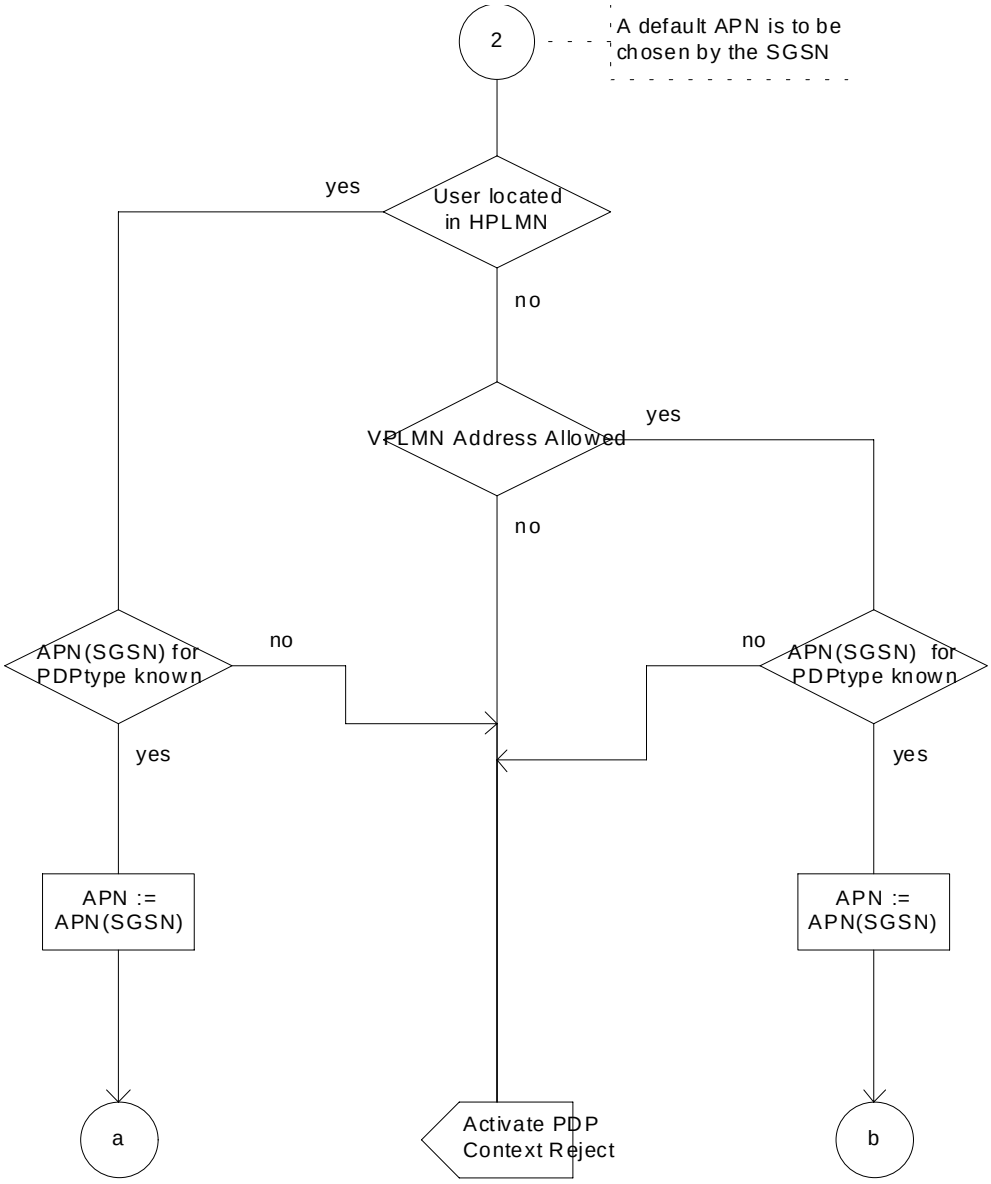


Figure A.5: SDL Diagram 5

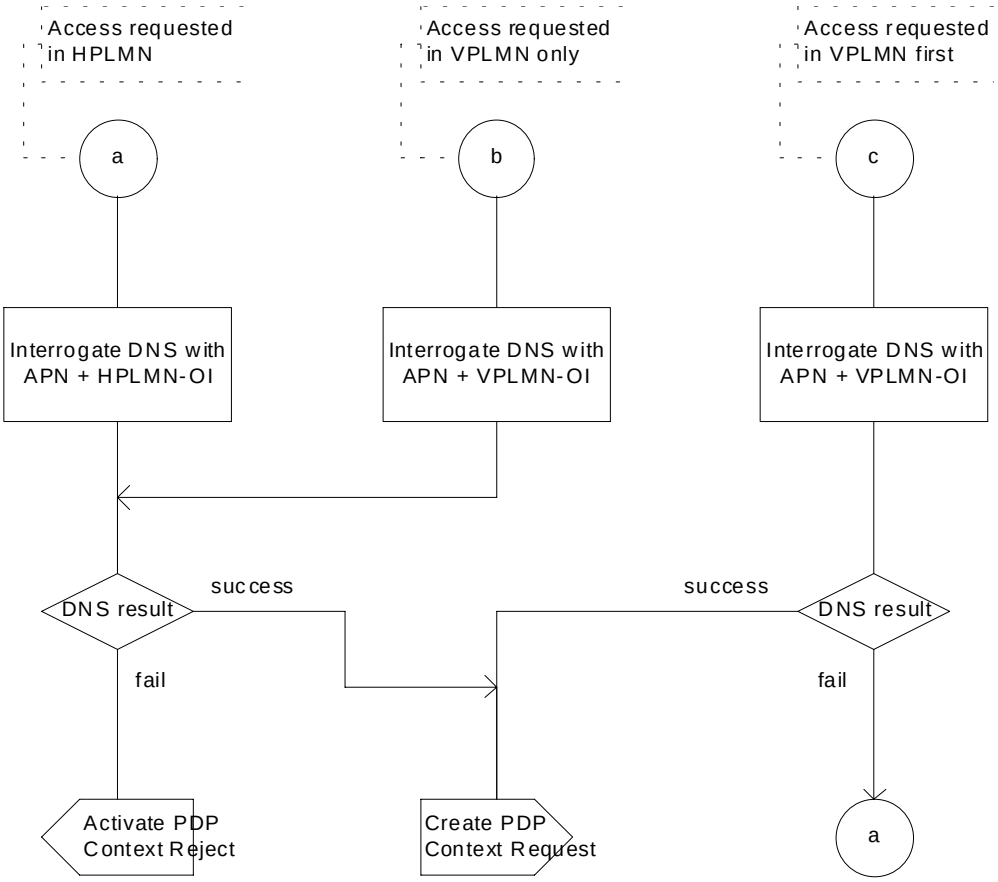


Figure A.6: SDL Diagram 6

Annex B (normative): Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service

[Not yet updated for UMTS.]

The GPRS Internet-Hosted Octet Stream Service (IHOSS) is a connection-oriented service that can transport an unstructured octet (character) stream between a GPRS MS and an Internet host. The service uses the Octet Stream Protocol (OSP) PDP type to provide a 'character pipe' between the MS and the GGSN. In the GGSN there is an interworking function which provides a relay function between the OSP and the Internet host.

Figure B.1 shows the scope of IHOSS and OSP.

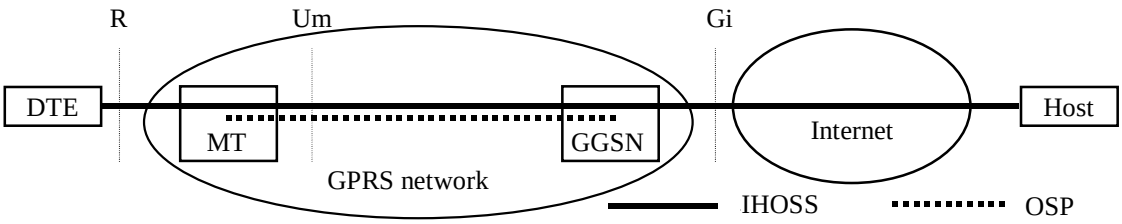


Figure B.1: Scope of IHOSS and OSP

IHOSS is analogous to a virtual serial cable between the MS and the Internet host.

This service is intended to provide a very simple connection for early implementation and for simple low-cost devices later on in the life cycle of GPRS.

B.1 Direction of Connection Setup

This service shall be mobile-originated only.

B.2 Bearer

The IHOSS shall use the unstructured Octet Stream Protocol as its bearer service.

The MT end of the IHOSS connection shall use the octet mode interface to the OSP as a Packet Assembler / Disassembler function is necessary.

The GGSN end of the IHOSS connection shall use the block mode interface to the OSP to remove the need for two back-to-back PAD functions.

B.3 Setup Data

The following data items are required before an octet stream can be initiated.

B.3.1 Protocol Type – TCP or UDP

This refers to the protocol used over IP on the GGSN to Internet host segment of the connection. The options available are TCP or UDP.

If no protocol is specified for a given context, TCP shall be used.

B.3.2 Host Name

This refers to the Internet host to which the connection is made. It shall be a fully formed domain name extended host name.

There shall be no default host name. If no host name is specified, the context activation shall fail.

B.3.3 Port Number

This refers to the TCP or UDP port on the host name, which forms the endpoint of the Internet side of the connection.

If no port number is specified for a given context, a default value of 23 decimal shall be used.

B.3.4 PAD Parameters

The Packet Assembler / Disassembler parameters determine how to fill the outgoing packets. If the user requires interactive terminal style behaviour then the PAD shall be able to act in this way. If the user requires a streaming data link then a different setup is necessary.

The default values for the PAD parameters are defined in GSM 07.60.

B.4 Flow Control

The service shall use the flow control features provided by the OSP to provide simple start / stop flow control.

B.5 Break Signal

The OSP break signals are mapped onto the appropriate break signals at the R and Gi interfaces.

B.6 Connection Establishment Procedure

Establishing an IHOSS connection involves setting up two segments, the PLMN segment (using the OSP) between the MS and the GGSN, and the fixed-network segment between the GGSN and the Internet host. Establishing the PLMN segment shall be as described in subclause "PDP Context Activation Procedure". Figure B.2 illustrates the overall procedure.

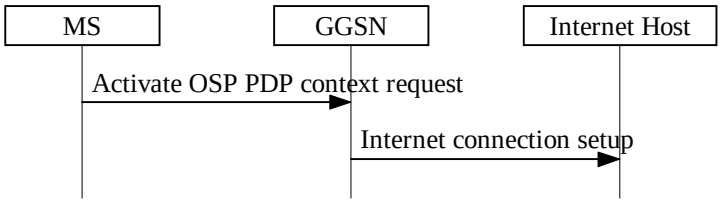


Figure B.2: IHOSS Connection Establishment

The MS requests that an OSP PDP context be activated by transmitting an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN with the following parameter values:

- NSAPI is selected by the MS.
- TI is selected by the MS.
- PDP Type shall have a two-part value. The first part shall identify the protocol as OSP, and the second part shall identify the service being used and thereby allow the SGSN to select a GGSN that can provide this service. For IHOSS PDP Type shall be set to OSP:IHOSS.
- PDP Address shall be empty.
- APN is selected by the MS, may be empty.
- QoS Requested is selected by the MS.

- PDP Configuration Options may contain an Internet host name, a port number, a protocol type, and possibly other parameters in order to enable the GGSN to set up a connection to the Internet host, or it may be empty.

The Activate PDP Context Accept message shall be returned to the MS only after the connection to the Internet host has been established.

The activation parameters shall be provided as either interactive commands or via a system-default value. The following subclauses describe how these parameters shall be derived for a number of different scenarios.

B.6.1 Fully User-Specified Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying the PAD parameters, the host name, the port, and the protocol (UDP or TCP) in PDP Configuration Options.

The SGSN shall select an appropriate GGSN for the outgoing connection.

The GGSN shall attempt to establish a connection with the specified host. Connection failure shall be signalled back to the MS and the session terminated. A successful connection establishment enables data transmission over the connection.

B.6.2 Default Internet Endpoint Parameters Establishment

The MS shall request an OSP:IHOSS connection, specifying only PAD parameters that deviate from the system defaults.

The SGSN shall connect to the GGSN indicated by the APN in the HLR subscription record.

The GGSN shall use the APN to further select the host name, the port number, and the protocol. The method used to select these parameters is manufacturer specific and outside of the scope of the specifications.

B.7 Connection Termination

Either the MS or the Internet host may request that a connection be cleared.

B.7.1 MS-initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

The MS clears the connection by sending a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN. This shall result in the TCP session closure procedures being executed by the GGSN. Once this is complete, the GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.2 MS-initiated UDP IHOSS Connection Termination

No further action is required by the GGSN towards the Internet endpoint, as the User Datagram Protocol is connectionless. The GGSN shall deallocate any resources allocated for this session.

B.7.3 Internet Host Initiated TCP IHOSS Connection Termination

When the GGSN receives a TCP clear request from the fixed network it shall follows the procedure described in subclause "PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure".

B.8 Quality of Service

The QoS profile shall be negotiated to the following QoS attribute values:

- Precedence: as required.
- Delay: as required, but consistent with PAD forwarding strategy.
- Reliability: Class 1 for TCP. Class 3 for UDP.

- Peak throughput: as required.
- Mean throughput: as required.

B.9 Security

B.9.1 Authentication of the GPRS User

Identification and authentication of the subscriber by the GPRS network is carried out as described elsewhere in this document. The GPRS network shall not provide any identification of the GPRS subscriber to the Internet host. End-to-end security is provided at the application layer and is outside of the scope of this document.

B.9.2 Malicious Reconfiguration of the GPRS Device

An MS that can not hold protocol, host name, and port information, would render it impossible to gain unauthorised access and subvert the system by providing alternative protocol, host name, or port information. This information would have to be provided by the GGSN, which is potentially more physically secure than the embedded MT, and it would make "man in the middle" type security breaches considerably more complex.

B.10 Maintenance

Configuring the Internet endpoint by accepting a mandatory default endpoint from the GGSN enables a GPRS user to effect system reconfiguration without the requirement for a site visit for each GPRS MS. The association between the APN and the host name, port number and protocol in the GGSN would be updated to give a new host name and/or port number and/or protocol.

Annex C (informative): Figures

Figure 1: Packet Domain Access Interfaces and Reference Points 21
Figure 2: Overview of the Packet Domain Logical Architecture 26
Figure 3: Intra- and Inter-PLMN Backbone Networks....27
Figure 4: User Plane for GPRS....30
Figure 5: User Plane GSN - GSN....31
Figure 6: User Plane for UMTS 31
Figure 7: Control Plane MS – 2G-SGSN 32
Figure 8: Control Plane MS - 3G-SGSN 33
Figure 9: Control Plane SGSN - HLR 33
Figure 10: Control Plane SGSN - MSC/VLR....34
Figure 11: Control Plane SGSN - EIR....34
Figure 12: Control Plane SGSN - SMS-GMSC and SGSN - SMS-IWMSC....34
Figure 13: Control Plane GSN - GSN 35
Figure 14: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using MAP 35
Figure 15: Control Plane GGSN - HLR Using GTP and MAP 36
Figure 16: Functional Mobility Management State Model....38
Figure 17: Functional Anonymous Access Mobility Management State Model....39
Figure 18: PMM State Model....41
Figure 19: CS Paging Procedure 46
Figure 20: MS Information Procedure....48
Figure 21: MM Information Procedure 49
Figure 22: Combined GPRS / IMSI Attach Procedure....51
Figure 23: Combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI Attach Procedure 54
Figure 24: MS-Initiated Combined ~~PS~~GPRS / ~~CS~~IMSI Detach Procedure....57
Figure 25: SGSN-Initiated ~~PS~~GPRS Detach Procedure 58
Figure 26: HLR-Initiated ~~PS~~GPRS Detach Procedure 59
Figure 27: Purge Procedure....60
Figure 28: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in GSM Procedure 60
Figure 29: Authentication of UMTS Subscriber in UMTS Procedure 61
Figure 30: Authentication of GSM Subscriber in UMTS Procedure....62
Figure 31: P-TMSI Reallocation Procedure 64

Figure 32: Scope of Ciphering....65
Figure 33: Identity Check Procedure....65
Figure 34: Intra SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure....67
Figure 35: Inter SGSN Routeing Area Update Procedure....68
Figure 36: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Intra SGSN RA Update Procedure....71
Figure 37: Combined RA / LA Update in the Case of Inter SGSN RA Update Procedure....73
Figure 38: UMTS RA Update Procedure....77
Figure 39: Before SRNS Relocation and Location Registration....80
Figure 40: After SRNS Relocation and RA Update....81
Figure 41: Phases 1 and 2 of Serving RNC Relocation....82
Figure 42: Control Plane MS - Non-GSM MSC/VLR....85
Figure 43: Uplink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure....85
Figure 44: Downlink Tunnelling of non-GSM Signalling Messages Procedure....86
Figure 45: Insert Subscriber Data Procedure....87
Figure 46: Delete Subscriber Data Procedure....87
Figure 47: Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure....88
Figure 48: Service Request Initiated by Network Procedure....89
Figure 49: UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change....91
Figure 50: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change....93
Figure 51: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change....95
Figure 52: GPRS to UMTS Inter SGSN Change....98
Figure 53: GPRS Paging Procedure....102
Figure 54: RRC Modes, Main RRC States and Main Mode and State Transition....103
Figure 55: PS Paging Without RRC Connection for CS....104
Figure 56: PS Paging With RRC Connection for CS....105
Figure 57: URA Paging Procedure....106
Figure 58: Functional PDP State Model....107
Figure 59: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS....108
Figure 60: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS....109
Figure 61: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS....111
Figure 62: Secondary PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS....112
Figure 63: Successful Network-Requested PDP Context Activation Procedure....113
Figure 64: Protection Procedure....115
Figure 65: Mobile User Activity Procedure....116

Figure 66: Anonymous Access PDP Context Activation Procedure 116
Figure 67: SGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure 118
Figure 68: GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure 119
Figure 69: MS-Initiated PDP Context Modification Procedure 120
Figure 70: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for GPRS 121
Figure 71: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure for UMTS 121
Figure 72: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by SGSN Procedure 122
Figure 73: PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure 123
Figure 74: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by MS Procedure 124
Figure 75: Anonymous Access PDP Context Deactivation Initiated by GGSN Procedure 124
Figure 76: Multiplexing of Network Protocols 130
Figure 77: Sequential Invocation of SNDC Functionality 131
Figure 78: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type OSP 132
Figure 79: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type OSP 133
Figure 80: GPRS User Plane for PDP Type PPP 134
Figure 81: UMTS User Plane for PDP Type PPP 135
Figure 82: BSSGP Protocol Position 136
Figure 83: BSS Packet Flow Context Creation Procedure 138
Figure 84: BSS-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Modification Procedure 139
Figure 85: SGSN-Initiated BSS Packet Flow Context Deletion Procedure 140
Figure 86: Iu User Plane Protocol Configuration for Packet-Switched Traffic 141
Figure 87: Iu Release Procedure 142
Figure 88: Location Reporting Procedure 143
Figure 89: Remote Packet Control Unit (PCU) Positions 144
Figure 90: Packet Domain Subscription Data 145
Figure 91: Use of NSAPI and TLLI 155
Figure 92: Use of NSAPI, RB Identity, and RAB ID 156
Figure 93: MT SMS Transfer, Successful 163
Figure 94: MT SMS Transfer, Unsuccessful 164
Figure 95: MO SMS Transfer, Successful 165
Figure 96: Suspend and Resume Procedure 166

Annex D (informative): Tables

Table 1: Mapping of Functions to Logical Architecture 29
Table 2: Network Operation Modes for GPRS....47
Table 3: Network Operation Modes for UMTS 47
Table 4: Mapping of High-level Functions Across the Gb Architecture....137
Table 5: HLR Packet Domain Subscription Data....146
Table 6: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts 147
Table 7: SGSN MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access 148
Table 8: GGSN PDP Context....149
Table 9: GGSN PDP Context for Anonymous Access....149
Table 10: MS MM and PDP Contexts....150
Table 11: MS MM and PDP Contexts for Anonymous Access....151
Table 12: MSC/VLR Association....151
Table 13: BSS Context....152
Table 14: BSS Context for Anonymous Access....152
Table 15: RNC Context....152
Table 16: Valid Packet Filter Attribute Combinations 161

Annex E:
Change History

TSG SA#	Spec	Version	CR	<Phase>	New Version	Subject/Comment
Aug 1999	GSM 03.60	8.0.0				Transferred to 3GPP CN1
CN#04	23.060				3.0.0	Approved at CN#04
SA#05	03.60	7.1.0	A085r8	R99	3.1.0	Involvement of BSS in QoS provisioning
SA#05	03.60	7.1.0	A164r1	R99	3.1.0	Parallel handling of multiple user application flows
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	001	R99	3.1.0	APN and GGSN selection SDL diagrams
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	002	R99	3.1.0	Ga interface to the GPRS Logical Architecture diagram etc.
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	003	R99	3.1.0	Modification information is not piggybacked
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	004r1	R99	3.1.0	MM states in UMTS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	005r2	R99	3.1.0	Introduction of Iu Release procedure
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	006r1	R99	3.1.0	Addition of APN parameter in Network-requested PDP context activation procedures
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	007r1	R99	3.1.0	Introduction of Service Request procedure
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	008r2	R99	3.1.0	Introduction of LOCATION REPORTING procedure
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	009	R99	3.1.0	MS and GSN-initiated PDP context modification
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	010	R99	3.1.0	Introduction of EGPRS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	014r2	R99	3.1.0	Mobile terminated packet transfer to UE in PMM-Idle state
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	015r2	R99	3.1.0	Clarification on multiplexing of several NSAPIS onto one LLC SAPI
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	016	R99	3.1.0	PDP Context Deactivation during an activation
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	018r2	R99	3.1.0	23.060 Section 1, 4
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	019r1	R99	3.1.0	Change in chapter 2, 3 of 23.060
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	020r1	R99	3.1.0	Changes in chapter 5 of 23.060
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	021r1	R99	3.1.0	Updating of Section 9
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	022r1	R99	3.1.0	Changes in chapter 7, 8 of 23.060
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	023r1	R99	3.1.0	Adaptation to UMTS in chapter 13
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	024r1	R99	3.1.0	Adaptation to UMTS in chapter 14
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	025	R99	3.1.0	Extension of PDP type IP to support e.g. End-to-End DHCP or Mobile IP
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	027r1	R99	3.1.0	Addition of Paging Co-ordination for UMTS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	028	R99	3.1.0	Modification of the definition and the usage of network operation mode
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	029r1	R99	3.1.0	3G TS 23.060 v3.1.0 DRAFT 2
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	030r1	R99	3.1.0	Authentication and security keys agreement for support of GSM-UMTS Interoperability
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	031r1	R99	3.1.0	Introduction of UMTS security
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	032	R99	3.1.0	Changes in chapter 11 of 23.060
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	033r1	R99	3.1.0	Changes in chapter 12 of 23.060
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	036r1	R99	3.1.0	CR to chapters 6.6
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	037r1	R99	3.1.0	Interactions between 3G-SGSN and MSC/VLR for UMTS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	038r3	R99	3.1.0	Location Management and attach procedure for UMTS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	040	R99	3.1.0	Handling of lost of coverage for UMTS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	041r2	R99	3.1.0	Mobility Management states and state transitions for UMTS
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	042r1	R99	3.1.0	Introduction of UMTS MS classes
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	044r2	R99	3.1.0	UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Handover
SA#05	23.060	3.0.0	045r1	R99	3.1.0	Consistent Sequence Numbering of GTP-PDUs on Iu and Gn interfaces

TSG SA#	Spec	Version	CR	<Phase>	New Version	Subject/Comment
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	013r2	R99	3.2.0	Traffic Flow Templates (TFT) for packet filtering
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	017r1	R99	3.2.0	Removal of BB Protocol
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	043r2	R99	3.2.0	GPRS QoS Parameters
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	046r3	R99	3.2.0	Addition of the sections of NSAPI, RB identity, RAB ID for UMTS and of TEID
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	047r1	R99	3.2.0	MS Initiated TFT modification, addition and deletion
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	048r1	R99	3.2.0	interaction points for GPRS/CAMEL interwork
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	049r1	R99	3.2.0	Description of Mobility Agents in Mobile IP
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	051	R99	3.2.0	No (P-)TMSI in Complete messages
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	053r3	R99	3.2.0	Releases 97, 98 and 99 interactions
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	055r1	R99	3.2.0	Clarification of MM procedures in PMM-IDLE for common UMTS/GSM RA
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	059r1	R99	3.2.0	UMTS <-> GPRS Intersystem change (handover)
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	060r2	R99	3.2.0	UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Handover
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	061r1	R99	3.2.0	N2 would like to ask S1 and S2 advice on how to handle the UMTS PS domain to GPRS handover from a service aspects point of view, in view of
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	066r1	R99	3.2.0	Improving charging efficiency - conditionally agreed
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	067r2	R99	3.2.0	Subscriber and equipment trace for PS domain
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	068r1	R99	3.2.0	BSS QoS involvement improvements
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	069	R99	3.2.0	GPRS Mobile Stations classes
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	070r1	R99	3.2.0	Usage of TI in the secondary PDP context activation procedure -CA
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	071	R99	3.2.0	Logical Link Management Functions for GPRS
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	072	R99	3.2.0	Packet Domain Core Network Nodes
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	073	R99	3.2.0	User Plane for UMTS
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	074	R99	3.2.0	UTRAN Registration Area Identity and Cell Identity
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	075r2	R99	3.2.0	Unnecessary of cell identity and cell identity age in 3G-SGSN MM context
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	076	R99	3.2.0	Deletion of TFT in 3G-SGSN PDP context
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	077	R99	3.2.0	The number of RNC RAB contexts in a RNC context
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	078r1	R99	3.2.0	The usage of reordering required parameter
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	079r1	R99	3.2.0	Information storage in USIM
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	081	R99	3.2.0	CS paging response
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	082	R99	3.2.0	SMS support in 3G-SGSN
SA#06	23.060	3.1.0	083r3	R99	3.2.0	Usage of secondary PDP context activation procedure
-	23060	3.2.0	-	R99	3.2.1	Editorial correction in the first page of 23.060 v.3.2.0

History

Document history		
V3.0.0	August 1999	Approved at TSG CN#4. Under TSG CN Change Control.
DRAFT-1 V3.1.0	September 1999	For use at the 5-7 October 1999 23.060 drafting session in Helsinki.
DRAFT-2 V3.1.0	October 1999	Developed during the 5-7 October 1999 23.060 drafting session in Helsinki.
V3.1.0	October 1999	Incorporation of all the CRs approved by TSG SA2 and TSG SA#5.
V3.2.0	December 1999	Incorporation of all the CRs approved by TSG SA2 and TSG SA#6.
v.3.2.1	January 2000	Editorial correction in the first page of 23.060 v.3.2.0

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000473**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	138	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	Strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: NTT COMMUNICATIONWARE **Date:** 2000-03-02

Subject: Deletion of GGSN TEID in the Update PDP context request message

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: Because GGSN TEID is unnecessary in the Update PDP context request message, S2-000228 (CR:114r1) was approved at the 11th meeting. However this parameter is only remained in section 6.9.2.1,
This CR proposes the deletion of GGSN TEID in the Update PDP context request message in RA update procedure.

Clauses affected: 6.9.2.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.9.2 Location Management Procedures for UMTS

Refer to 3G TS 25.301 for further information on the location management procedures for the UMTS radio.

The PLMN shall provide information for the MS to be able to:

- detect when it has entered a new cell or a new RA; and
- determine when to perform periodic RA updates.

In this specification, only the Location Management procedures related to the CN are described. These procedures are:

- a routeing area update procedure; and
- SERVING RNC relocation procedure.

An MS detects that a new cell has been entered by comparing the cell's identity with the cell identity stored in the MS. The MS detects that a RA Update shall be performed by comparing the RAI stored in its MM context with the RAI received from the network. In RRC-CONNECTED mode (PMM-CONNECTED state or CS MM CONNECTED state), the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the Serving RNC via an "MM information" message at the RRC layer. In RRC-IDLE state, the MS is informed of RAI and Cell Identity by the broadcasted system information at the RRC layer.

In network mode of operation II, whenever an MS determines that it shall perform both an LA update and an RA update, the MS shall start the LA update first. The MS should start RA Update procedure before the LA update is completed.

6.9.2.1 Routeing Area Update Procedure

A routeing area update takes place when an attached MS detects that it has entered a new RA or when the periodic RA update timer has expired. The SGSN detects that it is an intra SGSN routeing area update by noticing that it also handles the old RA. In this case, the SGSN has the necessary information about the MS and there is no need to inform the GGSNs or the HLR about the new MS location. A periodic RA update is always an intra SGSN routeing area update. If the network operates in mode I, then an MS that is both PS-attached and CS-attached shall perform the Combined RA / LA Update procedures.

In UMTS, an RA Update is either intra-SGSN or inter-SGSN RA Update, either combined RA/LA update or only RA update, either initiated by an MS in PMM-CONNECTED or in PMM-IDLE state. All the RA Update cases are contained in the procedure illustrated in Figure 1. Each step is explained in the following list.

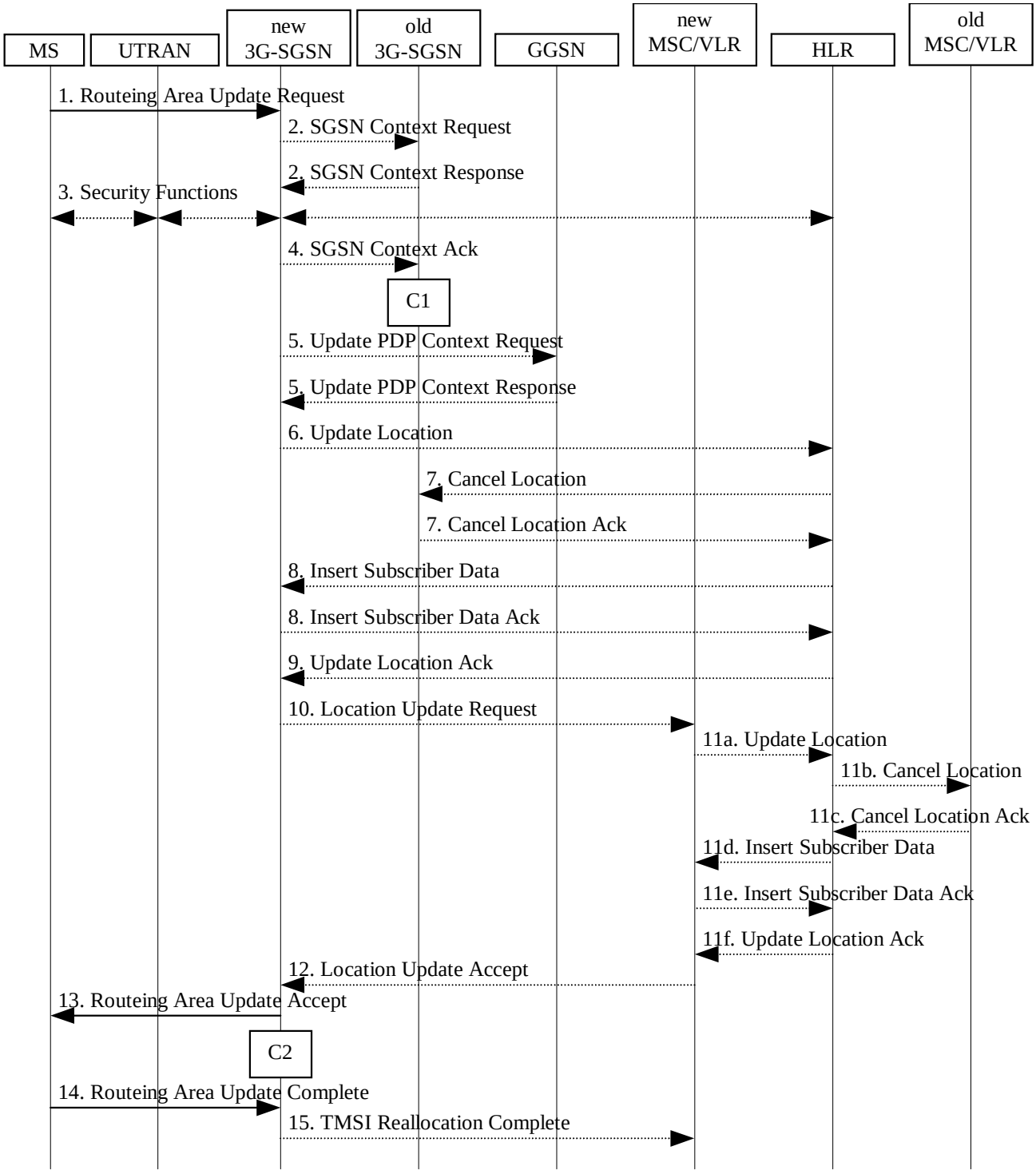


Figure 1: UMTS RA Update Procedure

1) The RRC connection is established, if not already done. The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request message (P-TMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, follow on request) to the new SGSN. Follow on request shall be set by MS if there is pending uplink traffic (signalling or user data). The SGSN may use, as an implementation option, the follow on request indication to release or keep the Iu connection after the completion of the RA update procedure. Update Type shall indicate:

   - RA Update if the RA Update is triggered by a change of RA;

   - Periodic RA Update if the RA update is triggered by the expiry of the Periodic RA Update timer;

- Combined RA / LA Update if the MS is also CS attached and the LA update shall be performed in network operation mode I (see subclause "Interactions Between SGSN and MSC/VLR"); or

- Combined RA / LA Update with CS attach requested if the MS wants to perform an CS attach in network operation mode I.

The UTRAN shall add the Routeing Area Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the SGSN [FFS].

NOTE: Sending the Routeing Area Update Request message to the SGSN triggers the establishment of a signalling connection between UTRAN and SGSN for the concerned MS.

2) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends SGSN Context Request message (old PTMSI, old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature) to the old SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old SGSN. This should initiate the security functions in the new SGSN. If the security functions authenticate the MS correctly, the new SGSN shall send an SGSN Context Request (IMSI, old RAI, MS Validated) message to the old SGSN. MS Validated indicates that the new SGSN has authenticated the MS. If the old P-TMSI Signature was valid or if the new SGSN indicates that it has authenticated the MS, the old SGSN responds with SGSN Context Response (Cause, IMSI, MM Context, PDP contexts). If the MS is not known in the old SGSN, the old SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause. The old SGSN starts a timer.

3) Security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function". If the security functions do not authenticate the MS correctly, then the routeing area update shall be rejected, and the new SGSN shall send a reject indication to the old SGSN. The old SGSN shall continue as if the SGSN Context Request was never received.

4) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update, the new SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old SGSN. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a routeing area update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing routeing area update procedure.

5) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update and if the MS was in PMM-IDLE state, the new SGSN sends Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, QoS Negotiated, ~~SGSN~~ Tunnel Endpoint Identifier~~, GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier~~) to the GGSNs concerned. ~~GGSN Tunnel Endpoint Identifier is used by GGSN to identify the PDP context.~~ The GGSNs update their PDP context fields and return an Update PDP Context Response (~~GGSN~~ Tunnel Endpoint Identifier). Note: If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN Routeing area update initiated by an MS is in PMM-CONNECTED state, the update PDP Context Request is sent as described in subclause "SRNC relocation".

6) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the new SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending Update Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) to the HLR.

7) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Cancel Location (IMSI, Cancellation Type) to the old SGSN with Cancellation Type set to Update Procedure. If the timer described in step 2 is not running, then the old SGSN removes the MM context. Otherwise, the contexts are removed only when the timer expires. It also ensures that the MM context is kept in the old SGSN in case the MS initiates another inter SGSN routeing area update before completing the ongoing routeing area update to the new SGSN. The old SGSN acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

8) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, subscription data) to the new SGSN. The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the (new) RA. If due to regional subscription restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the RA, the SGSN rejects the Routeing Area Update Request with an appropriate cause, and may return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI, SGSN Area Restricted) message to the HLR. If all checks are successful then the SGSN constructs an MM context for the MS and returns an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

9) If the RA Update is an Inter-SGSN RA Update, the HLR acknowledges the Update Location by sending Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new SGSN.

10) If Update Type indicates combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested, or if the LA changed with the routeing area update, then the association has to be established, and the new SGSN sends a Location Update Request (new LAI, IMSI, SGSN Number, Location Update Type) to the VLR. Location Update Type shall

indicate CS attach if Update Type in step 1 indicated combined RA / LA update with CS attach requested. Otherwise, Location Update Type shall indicate normal location update. The VLR number is translated from the RAI via a table in the SGSN. The SGSN starts the location update procedure towards the new MSC/VLR upon receipt of the first Insert Subscriber Data message from the HLR in step 8). The VLR creates or updates the association with the SGSN by storing SGSN Number.

11) If the subscriber data in the VLR is marked as not confirmed by the HLR, the new VLR informs the HLR. The HLR cancels the old VLR and inserts subscriber data in the new VLR (this signalling is not modified from existing GSM signalling and is included here for illustrative purposes):

   a) The new VLR sends an Update Location (new VLR) to the HLR.

   b) The HLR cancels the data in the old VLR by sending Cancel Location (IMSI) to the old VLR.

   c) The old VLR acknowledges with Cancel Location Ack (IMSI).

   d) The HLR sends Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GSM subscriber data) to the new VLR.

   e) The new VLR acknowledges with Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI).

   f) The HLR responds with Update Location Ack (IMSI) to the new VLR.

12) The new VLR allocates a new TMSI and responds with Location Update Accept (VLR TMSI) to the SGSN. VLR TMSI is optional if the VLR has not changed.

13) The new SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new SGSN establishes MM context for the MS. The new SGSN responds to the MS with Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, VLR TMSI, P-TMSI Signature).

14) The MS confirms the reallocation of the TMSIs by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

15) The new SGSN sends a TMSI Reallocation Complete message to the new VLR if the VLR TMSI is confirmed by the MS.

NOTE: Steps 11, 12, and 15, are performed only if step 9 is performed.

In the case of a rejected routeing area update operation, due to regional subscription or roaming restrictions, the new SGSN shall not construct an MM context. A reject shall be returned to the MS with an appropriate cause. The MS shall not re-attempt a routeing area update to that RA. The RAI value shall be deleted when the MS is powered up.

If the routeing area update procedure fails a maximum allowable number of times, or if the SGSN returns a Routeing Area Update Reject (Cause) message, the MS shall enter PMM-DETACHED state.

If the Location Update Accept message indicates a reject, then this should be indicated to the MS, and the MS shall not access non-PS services until a successful location update is performed.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000474**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	139	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	Strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: NTT COMMUNICATIONWARE **Date:** 2000-03-02

Subject: Action upon the reception of GTP-U PDU in the case of SGSN/GGSN failure

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

Because there is no IMSI in GTP-U PDU in GTP ver.1, IMSI paging can't be done when GTP-U PDU is received in the SGSN after the SGSN fails. Otherwise, there is an IMSI in the PDU notification message, IMSI paging can be done when this message is received after the SGSN fails.
When the SGSN fails under active PDP context(s) exists, the SGSN data restore may be done by the MS activity or by the new GGSN initiated PDP context activation.

This CR proposes the action upon the reception of GTP-U in the case of SGSN/GGSN failure.

Clauses affected: 13.8.2, 13.8.3

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

13.8.2 SGSN Failure

When an SGSN fails, it deletes all MM and PDP contexts affected by the failure. SGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile. Based on configuration data, the SGSN shall send a Reset message to each of its associated VLRs. The VLRs shall mark all associations containing the restarted SGSN as unreliable. See 3G TS 23.007. In the case of optional CAMEL interaction the failing SGSN shall invoke the CAMEL-GPRS-Exception procedure towards the GSM-SCFs.

If data or signalling, except GPRS attach and RA update, is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the SGSN, then the SGSN shall discard the data or signalling.

If an RA update request is received in an SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists neither in the SGSN, nor in the old SGSN for the inter-SGSN RA update case, then the SGSN shall reject the RA update with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

If a service request is received in a 3G-SGSN from an MS for which no MM context exists in the 3G-SGSN, then the 3G-SGSN shall reject the service request with an appropriate cause. In order to remain PS-attached, the MS shall then perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

NOTE: In some cases, user interaction may be required, and then the MS cannot (re-)activate the PDP contexts automatically.

When the SGSN receives a PDU notification request for which no MM context exists, the SGSN returns a PDU Notification Response message to the GGSN with an appropriate cause (see section 9.2.2.2.2), and the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.

When the SGSN receives a GTP-U PDU for which no PDP context exists it discards the GTP-U PDU and sends an error indication to the originating GGSN. The GGSN marks the related PDP context as invalid. ~~If there is no MM context for the MS, the SGSN may search the MS by paging with the IMSI in the SGSN area. An MS that is paged for PS services with IMSI as the identifier shall perform a new PS attach and should (re-)activate PDP contexts.~~

When the SGSN receives a mobile-terminated SM from the SMS-GMSC for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN, it rejects the request.

When the SGSN receives a paging request over the Gs interface for an IMSI unknown in the SGSN and the SGSN has not completed recovery, then the SGSN may page the MS for packet services with IMSI as identifier in the area specified by the location information provided by the MSC/VLR. If no such location information is provided, then the SGSN may page the MS in the routeing areas corresponding to that MSC/VLR. After the MS performs a combined PS attach, the SGSN may continue serving the Gs interface paging request.

13.8.3 GGSN Failure

When a GGSN fails, all its PDP contexts affected by the failure become invalid and may be deleted. GGSN storage of subscriber data is volatile.

When the GGSN receives a GTP-U PDU for which no PDP context exists, it shall discard the GTP-U PDU and return an error indication to the originating SGSN. The SGSN shall mark the related PDP context as invalid and send a Deactivate PDP Context Request message to the MS. The MS may then reactivate the PDP context.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000475**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	140	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Siemens **Date:** 2000-03-06

Subject: Clarification of intra SGSN intersystem change to GPRS

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The conditions described for GPRS to UMTS intersystem change are not precise. The condition triggering the radio system change needs correction in all three clauses. In 6.13.1.1.the selective RAU is better excluded before the RA update procedure is requested. A reference to the GPRS "Intra SGSN Routing Area Update" needs to be added for the intra SGSN intersystem change with RA change.
The procedure is not changed.

Clauses affected: 6.13, 6.13.1, 6.13.1.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:

Other comments:

6.13 UMTS-GPRS Intersystem Change

The UMTS-GPRS intersystem change procedures may be supported for network elements conforming to GSM releases 97, 98, and 99, and to UMTS release 99. At intersystem change release 99 network elements shall use GTP release 97 or 98 on the Gn interface when interworking with release 97 or 98 network elements, respectively.

An intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS or GPRS to UMTS takes place when an MS supporting both UMTS and GPRS changes the radio access technology. A prerequisite for an intersystem change is that the MS is PS-attached in the UMTS PS domain or PS-attached for GPRS. The transition of the mobility management states is as specified for the corresponding mobility management procedures.

There is no transition of the session management states at an intersystem change.

The UMTS RLC Sequence Number parameters, RLC-SND and RLC-SNU, are not relevant for the intersystem change of real-time PDP contexts (because these contexts use RLC transparent mode).

6.13.1 Intra SGSN Intersystem Change

An SGSN that supports both the Gb and Iu-PS interfaces may support an intra SGSN intersystem change if the radio access technology nodes serving the MS before and after the intersystem change are both served by this SGSN.

6.13.1.1 UMTS to GPRS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS changes from UTRAN to GSM radio access. Depending on the PMM state before the intersystem change and whether the RA is changed or not one of the following procedures is initiated by the MS:

- When an MS in PMM-IDLE state changes to the GSM radio access without changing the RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".
- When an MS in PMM-IDLE state changes to the GSM radio access and the RA changes, the MS shall initiate the GPRS RA update procedure, see subclause "Intra SGSN Routing Area Update".
- When an MS in PMM-CONNECTED state changes to the GSM radio access , the MS shall initiate the GPRS RA update procedure independent of whether the RA has changed or not. The procedure is illustrated in figure x.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000564**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	141r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Siemens **Date:** 2000-03-08

Subject: Clarification of intra SGSN intersystem change to UMTS

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

The conditions described for GPRS to UMTS intersystem change are not precise. The selective RAU is better excluded before the RA update procedure is requested in general. In case the RA changes and the MS was in Standby state there is no need to establish the RABs. ~~Also, there is no need for the RA update procedure if a Ready state MS changes to UTRAN with in the same RA~~. These ~~three~~ cases are clarified. Furthermore, it is clarified that only the Service Request procedure re-establishes the RABs and not sometimes the RA update procedure.
The procedure is changed accordingly.

Clauses affected: 6.13.1.1

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

6.13.1.1 GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

The intersystem change from GPRS to UMTS takes place when a PS-attached MS changes from GSM radio access to UTRAN~~enters a UMTS cell~~. Depending on the GPRS mobility management state before the intersystem change and whether the RA is changed or not one of the following procedures is initiated by the MS:

~~In this case the MS shall perform an RRC connection establishment and an intra SGSN routeing area update procedure independent of whether just the cell has changed or also the RA has changed.~~

- When an MS in STANDBY state ~~enters a new UMTS cell~~changes to UTRAN inside the current RA, the MS shall follow the selective RA update procedures, see subclause "Selective RA Update".
- When an MS in STANDBY state changes to UTRAN and the RA changes, the MS shall initiate the UMTS RA update procedure, see subclause “Routing Area Update Procedure”.
- When an MS in READY state changes to UTRAN independent of whether the RA has changed or not, the MS shall initiate the UMTS RA update procedure and afterwards initiate the RABs by the Service Request procedure, see subclause “Service Request Initiated by MS Procedure”. This is illustrated in figure x.

~~The SGSN records this MS's change of cell, and further traffic directed towards the MS is conveyed over the Iu-PS interface to the new cell.~~

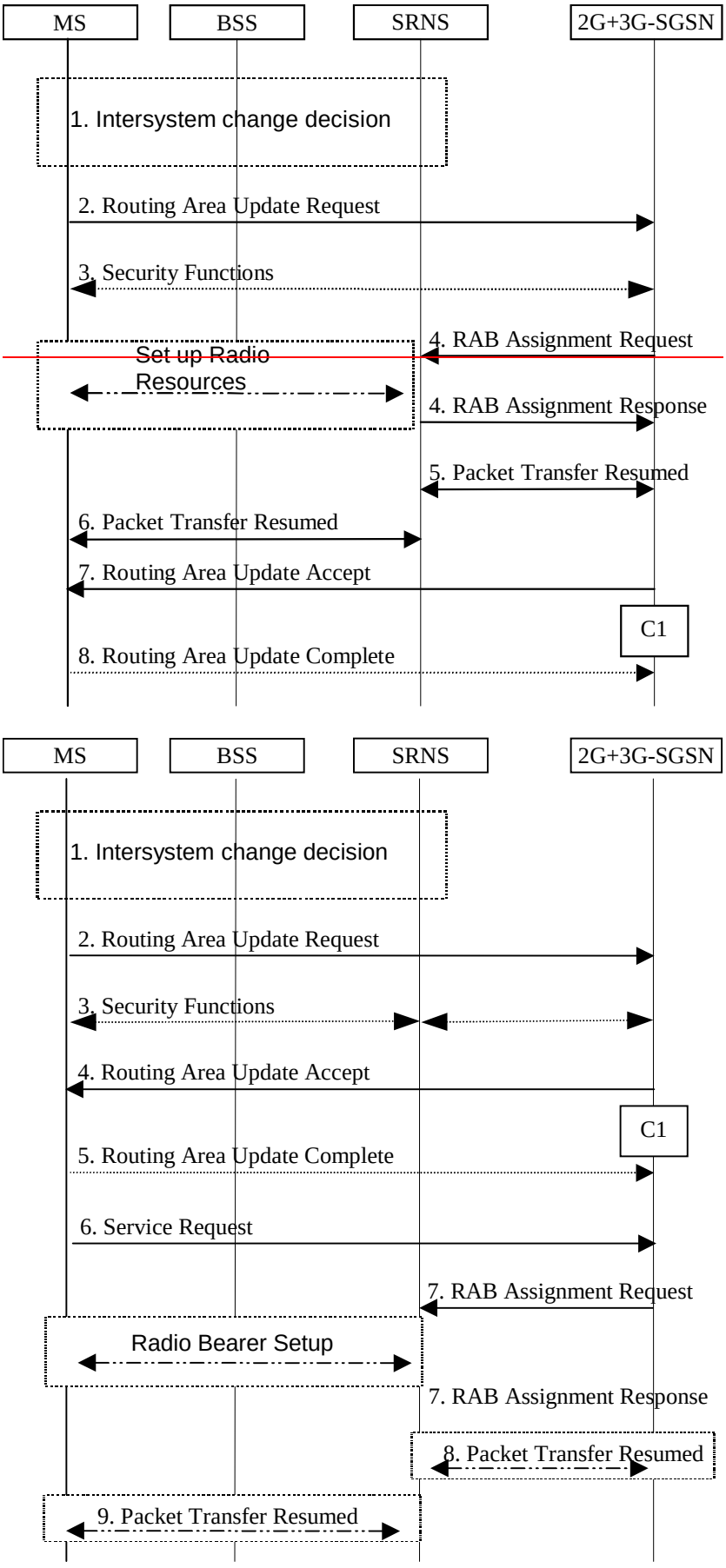


Figure 1: GPRS to UMTS Intra SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports UMTS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS initiates an RRC connection establishment and sends Routeing Area Update Request (P-TMSI, Old RA, Old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type, CM) message to the combined 2G+3G-SGSN. The SRNS shall add an identifier of the area where the message was received before passing the message to the 2G+3G-SGSN. The 2G+3G-SGSN stops transmission of N-PDUs to the MS.

3) Security functions may be executed.

4) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.

5) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.

6) ~~4)~~The MS sends a Service Request (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, RAI, CKSN, Service Type) message to the SGSN. Service Type specifies the requested service. Service Type shall indicate one of the following: Data or Signalling.

7) ~~-~~The 2G+3G-SGSN requests the SRNS to establish a radio access bearer by sending a RAB Assignment Request (GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message to the SRNS. The RLC sequence numbers shall be derived (shifted left 4 times) from the N-PDU sequence numbers stored in the PDP contexts. The SRNS sends a Radio Bearer Setup Request (RLC-SNUs) message to the MS. The MS responds with a Radio Bearer Setup Complete (RLC-SNDs) message. The SRNS responds with a RAB Assignment Response message.

8) ~~5)~~ Traffic flow is resumed between the 2G+3G-SGSN and the SRNS. The SRNS shall discard all N-PDUs ~~tunnelled from the 2G+3G-SGSN~~ with N-PDU sequence numbers older than the downlink N-PDU sequence number received from the MS. If this is not the case, then the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the MS. The MS shall discard all N-PDUs with sequence numbers older than the GTP-SNU received from the SRNS. If this is not the case the N-PDU shall be transmitted to the SRNS.

9) ~~6)~~ The traffic flow is resumed between the SRNS and the MS.

~~7) The 2G+3G-SGSN updates the MM context for the MS. A new P-TMSI may be allocated. A Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature) message is returned to the MS.~~

~~8) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete message to the SGSN.~~

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedure in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000477**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	142	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME	X	UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Siemens **Date:** 2000-03-06

Subject: Clarification of inter SGSN intersystem change to GPRS

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	X	**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification			Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The conditions described for GPRS to UMTS intersystem change are not precise. The SRNS signalling interactions are only relevant if the MS was in PMM-Connected state.
The procedure is adapted accordingly.

Clauses affected: 6.13.2.1

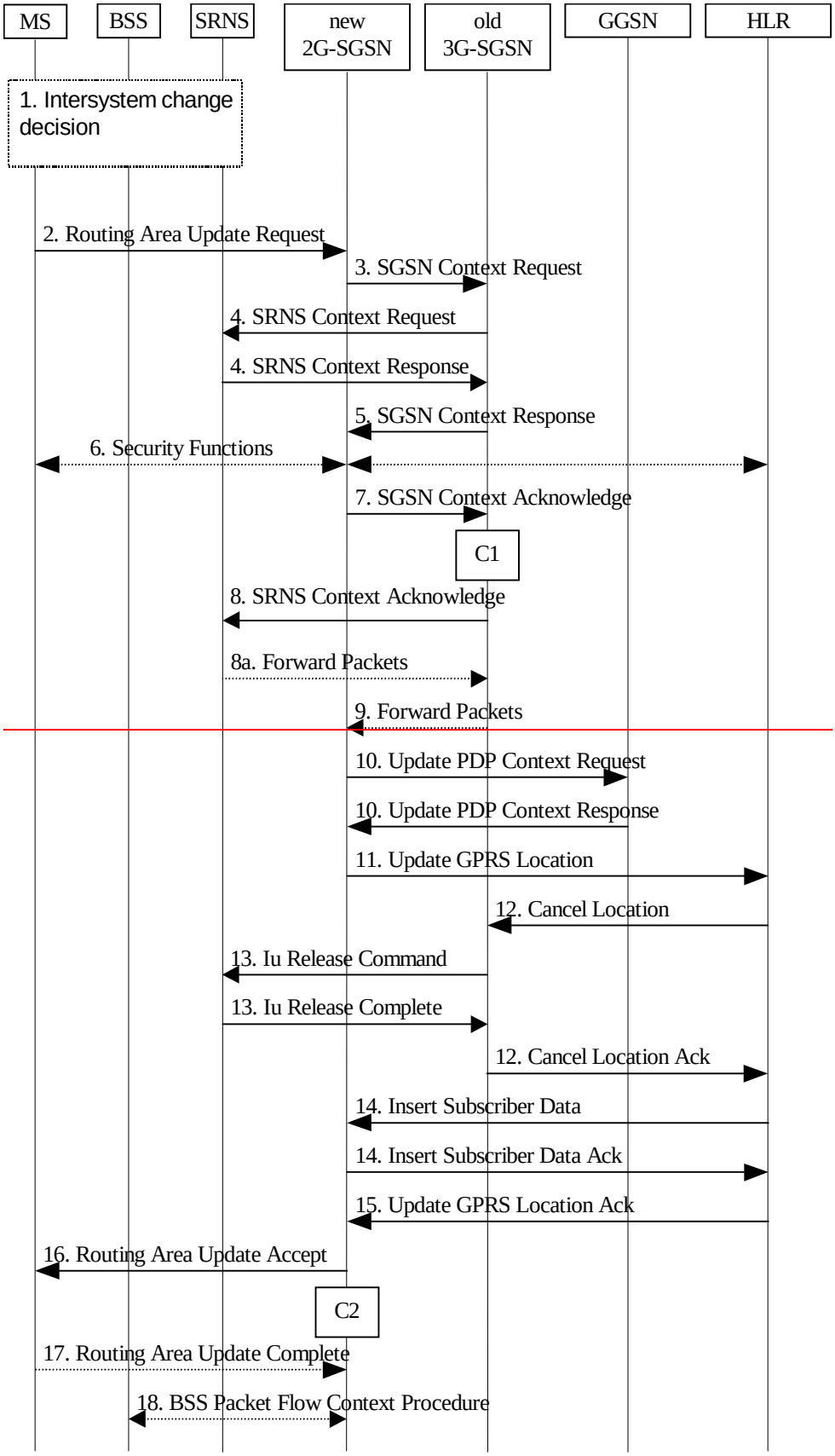
Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

6.13.2.1 UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

An inter SGSN intersystem change from UMTS to GPRS takes place when an MS in PMM-IDLE or PMM-CONNECTED state changes from UTRAN to GSM radio access and the GSM radio access node serving the MS ~~moves to a new GSM GPRS cell and this cell~~ is served by a different SGSN. In this case the RA changes. Therefore, the MS shall initiate a GPRS RA update procedure. The sequence applied for thise inter SGSN change case is shown in figure z.


MS
BSS
SRNS
new 2G-SGSN
old 3G-SGSN
GGSN
HLR
1. Intersystem change decision
2. Routing Area Update Request
3. SGSN Context Request
4. SRNS Context Request
4. SRNS Context Response
5. SGSN Context Response
6. Security Functions
7. SGSN Context Acknowledge
C1
8. SRNS Context Acknowledge
8a. Forward Packets
9. Forward Packets
10. Update PDP Context Request
10. Update PDP Context Response
11. Update GPRS Location
12. Cancel Location
13. Iu Release Command
13. Iu Release Complete
12. Cancel Location Ack
14. Insert Subscriber Data
14. Insert Subscriber Data Ack
15. Update GPRS Location Ack
16. Routing Area Update Accept
C2
17. Routing Area Update Complete
18. BSS Packet Flow Context Procedure

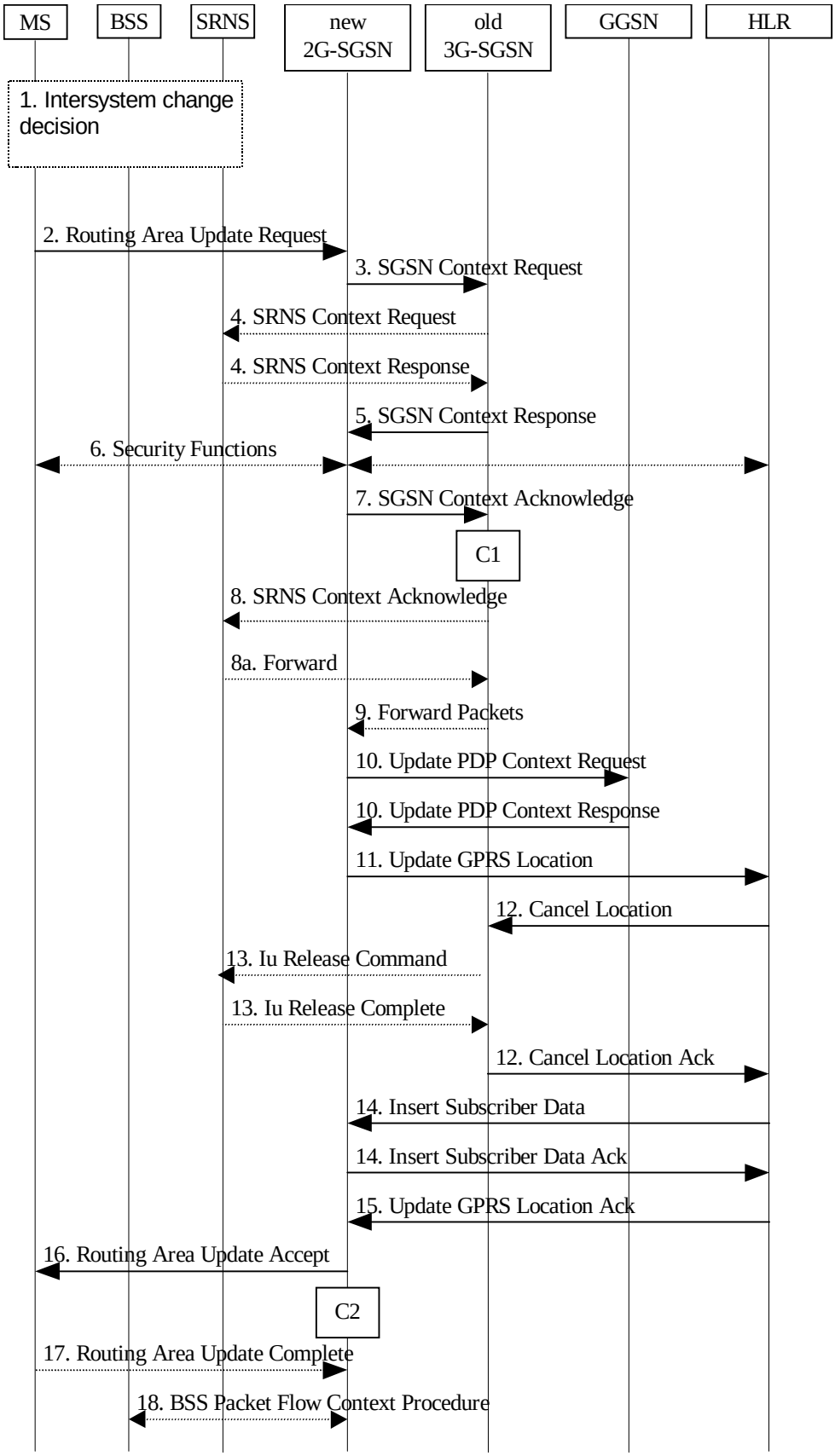


Figure 1: UMTS to GPRS Inter SGSN Change

1) The MS or BSS or UTRAN decides to perform an intersystem change, which makes the MS switch to a new cell that supports GPRS radio technology, and stops transmission to the network.

2) The MS sends a Routeing Area Update Request (old RAI, old P-TMSI Signature, Update Type) message to the new 2G-SGSN. Update Type shall indicate RA update or periodic RA update. The BSS shall add the Cell Global Identity including the RAC and LAC of the cell where the message was received before passing the message to the new 2G-SGSN.

3) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Request (old RAI, TLLI, old P-TMSI Signature, New SGSN Address) message to the old 3G-SGSN to get the MM and PDP contexts for the MS. The old SGSN validates the old P-TMSI Signature and responds with an appropriate error cause if it does not match the value stored in the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN starts a timer. If the MS is not known in the old 3G-SGSN, the old 3G-SGSN responds with an appropriate error cause.

4) If the MS is PMM-CONNECTED ~~T~~the old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Request (IMSI) message to the SRNS. Upon reception of this message the SRNS buffers and stops sending downlink PDUs to the MS and returns an SRNS Context Response (IMSI, GTP-SNDs, GTP-SNUs, RLC-SNDs, RLC-SNUs) message. The SRNS shall include for each PDP context the next in-sequence GTP sequence number to be sent to the MS and the GTP sequence number of the next uplink PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN. For each active PDP context using acknowledged mode, the SRNS also includes RLC-SNU and RLC-SND. The 3G-SGSN shall strip off the four most significant bits of the passed RLC sequence numbers, thus converting them to SNDCP N-PDU numbers.

5) The old 3G-SGSN responds with an SGSN Context Response (MM Context, PDP Contexts) message. For each PDP context the old 3G-SGSN shall include the GTP sequence number for the next uplink GTP PDU to be tunnelled to the GGSN and the next donwlink GTP sequence number for the next in-sequence N-PDU to be sent to the MS. Each PDP Context also includes the SNDCP Send N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence downlink N-PDU to be sent in acknowledged mode to the MS and the SNDCP Receive N-PDU Number for the next in-sequence uplink N-PDU to be received in acknowledged mode from the MS.

6) Security functions may be executed.

7) The new 2G-SGSN sends an SGSN Context Acknowledge message to the old 3G-SGSN. This informs the old 3G-SGSN that the new 2G-SGSN is ready to receive data packets belonging to the activated PDP contexts. The old SGSN marks in its context that the MSC/VLR association and the information in the GGSNs and the HLR are invalid. This triggers the MSC/VLR, the GGSNs, and the HLR to be updated if the MS initiates a RA update procedure back to the old SGSN before completing the ongoing RA update procedure.

8) If the MS is PMM-CONNECTED ~~T~~the old 3G-SGSN sends an SRNS Context Acknowledge (IMSI) message to the SRNS. The SRNS shall start tunnelling the partly transmitted and the transmitted but not acknowledged N-PDUs together with the RLC downlink sequence number (the four most significant bits shall be stripped off) of the last RLC segment of that N-PDU, and start duplicating and tunnelling the buffered GTP PDUs to the old 3G-SGSN.

9) The old 3G-SGSN tunnels the GTP PDUs to the new 2G-SGSN. The ~~SNDCP~~ sequence numbers shall not be modified in the GTP header of the tunnelled PDUs.

10) The new 2G-SGSN sends an Update PDP Context Request (new SGSN Address, TEID, QoS Negotiated) message to each GGSN concerned. Each GGSN updates its PDP context fields and returns an Update PDP Context Response (TEID) message.

11) The new 2G-SGSN informs the HLR of the change of SGSN by sending an Update GPRS Location (SGSN Number, SGSN Address, IMSI) message to the HLR.

12) The HLR sends a Cancel Location (IMSI) message to the old 3G-SGSN. The old 3G-SGSN acknowledges with a Cancel Location Ack (IMSI) message. The old 3G-SGSN removes the MM and PDP contexts if the timer described in step 3 is not running. If the timer is running then the MM and PDP contexts shall be removed when the timer expires.

13) When the timer described in step 3 expires and when the MS is PMM-CONNECTED the old 3G-SGSN sends an Iu Release Command message to the SRNS. The SRNS responds with an Iu Release Complete message.

14) The HLR sends an Insert Subscriber Data (IMSI, GPRS Subscription Data) message to the new 2G-SGSN. The 2G-SGSN construct an MM context and PDP contexts for the MS and return an Insert Subscriber Data Ack (IMSI) message to the HLR.

15) The HLR acknowledges the Update GPRS Location by returning an Update GPRS Location Ack (IMSI) message to the new 2G-SGSN.

16) The new 2G-SGSN validates the MS's presence in the new RA. If due to roaming restrictions the MS is not allowed to be attached in the 2G-SGSN, or if subscription checking fails, then the new 2G-SGSN rejects the routeing area update with an appropriate cause. If all checks are successful then the new 2G-SGSN constructs MM and PDP contexts for the MS. A logical link is established between the new 2G-SGSN and the MS. The new 2G-SGSN responds to the MS with a Routeing Area Update Accept (P-TMSI, P-TMSI Signature, Receive N-PDU Number) message. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-originated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure.

17) The MS acknowledges the new P-TMSI by returning a Routeing Area Update Complete (Receive N-PDU Number) message to the SGSN. Receive N-PDU Number contains the acknowledgements for each acknowledged-mode NSAPI used by the MS, thereby confirming all mobile-terminated N-PDUs successfully transferred before the start of the update procedure. The MS deducts Receive N-PDU number from the downlink RLC sequence number by stripping off the four most significant bits of the RLC sequence number of the next expected in-sequence RLC frame.

18) The 2G-SGSN and the BSS may execute the BSS Packet Flow Context procedure.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Context-Acknowledge.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-Routeing-Area-Update.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 March 2000

***Document* S2-000531**
Revision of S2-000479
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	144r1	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA #7	for approval	X	Strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: NTT COMMUNICATIONWARE **Date:** 2000-03-02

Subject: Clarification of MS Information Procedure in UMTS

Work item: Release 99

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction	[X]	**Release:**	Phase 2	[ ]
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release	[ ]		Release 96	[ ]
B	Addition of feature	[ ]		Release 97	[ ]
C	Functional modification of feature	[ ]		Release 98	[ ]
D	Editorial modification	[ ]		Release 99	[X]
				Release 00	[ ]

Reason for change: Since the Direct Transfer Message has no Service Area Identity IE in TS 25.413v3.0.0 in the case the CS attach by combined routing area update is performed at a coverage area under an D-RNC which differs from S-RNC (it may happen while the packet session is longing), in this case the SGSN sends old information. So in case of MS information procedure, the SGSN shall invoke RANAP location report control procedure.

Clauses affected: 6.3.6

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications	[X]	→ List of CRs:	29.018 CR007r3
Other GSM core specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications	[ ]	→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

help.doc

<--------- double-click here for help and instructions on how to create a CR.

6.3.6 MS Information Procedure

When the MS is marked at the VLR as both CS and PS attached, the VLR may perform the MS Information procedure via the SGSN. If the information requested by the VLR in the MS Information procedure is known by the SGSN, then the SGSN shall return this information to the VLR without interrogating the MS.

If the information requested is MS identity information (e.g., IMEI) that is not known by the SGSN but is known by the MS, then the SGSN shall interrogate the MS in a similar manner to that described in subclause "Identity Check Procedures".

In GSM the Mobile location information indicates a request for Cell Global Identity and Location information age. In UMTS the Mobile location information indicates a request for Service Area Identification and Location information age. In this case if an Iu connection for the MS exists, the SGSN shall use the Location Reporting procedure (see section 12.8.4) in order to retrieve the service area identification.

The MS Information procedure is illustrated in Figure 1~~Figure 20~~. Each step is explained in the following list.

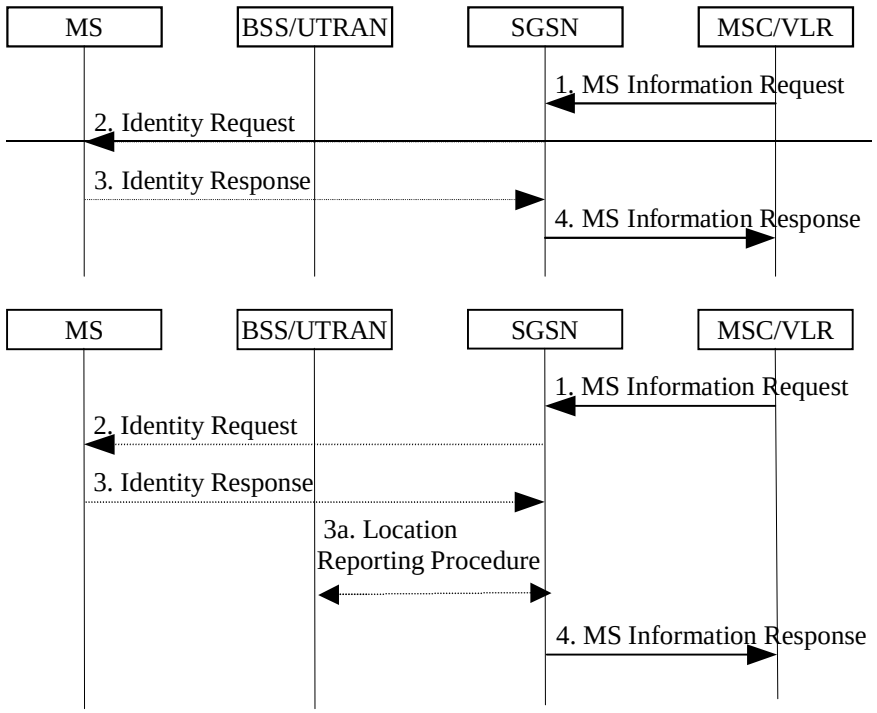


Figure 1~~20~~: MS Information Procedure

1) The MSC/VLR sends an MS Information Request (IMSI, Information Type) message to the SGSN. Information Type indicates the information that the MSC/VLR is requesting for that IMSI.

2) If the information requested is not known by the SGSN but should be known by the MS, then the SGSN interrogates the MS in a similar manner to that described in the subclause "Identity Check Procedures". The SGSN sends an Identity Request (Identity Type) message to the MS.

3) ~~3)~~ The MS responds with an Identity Response (Mobile Identity) message to the SGSN.

3a) In UMTS, if an Iu connection for the MS exists, the SGSN shall use the Location Reporting procedure (see section 12.8.4) in order to retrieve the service area identification.

4) The SGSN sends an MS Information Response (IMSI, Information) message to the MSC/VLR. Information contains the information requested by the MSC/VLR.

3GPP TSG SA WG2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, March 06 – 09 2000

***Document* S2-000484**
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	CR	145	Current Version:	3.2.1

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to:	SA#7	for approval	X	strategic		(for SMG use only)
list expected approval meeting # here ↑		for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: (U)SIM [ ] ME [ ] UTRAN / Radio [ ] Core Network [X]
(at least one should be marked with an X)

Source: Nokia **Date:** 19.1.2000

Subject: Editorial modification to the IPv6 address allocation.

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*

F	Correction		**Release:**	Phase 2	
A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release			Release 96	
B	Addition of feature			Release 97	
C	Functional modification of feature			Release 98	
D	Editorial modification	X		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change: The editor of 23.060 has requested some editorial changes to the IPv6 Address Allocation procedure CR approved in the S2#11 meeting.

Clauses affected:

Other specs affected:

Other 3G core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

********** Next Modification **********

9.2.1 Static and Dynamic PDP Addresses

PDP addresses can be allocated to an MS in four different ways:

- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address permanently to the MS (static PDP address);
- the HPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic HPLMN PDP address);
- the VPLMN operator assigns a PDP address to the MS when a PDP context is activated (dynamic VPLMN PDP address); or
- the PDN operator or administrator assigns an IP address to the MS after a PDP context has been activated (External PDN Address Allocation).

It is the HPLMN operator that defines in the subscription whether a dynamic HPLMN or VPLMN PDP address can be used.

For every IMSI, zero, one, or more dynamic PDP address per PDP type can be assigned. For every IMSI, zero, one, or more static PDP addresses per PDP type can be subscribed to.

When dynamic addressing from the HPLMN or the VPLMN is used, it is the responsibility of the GGSN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address. When External PDN Address Allocation is used, it is the responsibility of the MS and the PDN to allocate and release the dynamic PDP address by means of protocols such as DHCP or MIP. In case of DHCP, the GGSN provides the function of a DHCP Relay Agent as defined in RFC 2131 [47] and RFC 1542 [45]. In case of MIP, the GGSN provides the function of a Foreign Agent as defined in RFC 2002 [46].

~~In case of PDP Type IP version 6, the PDP Address is the mobile's link-local address.~~

Only static PDP addressing is applicable in the network-requested PDP context activation case.

9.2.2 Activation Procedures

9.2.2.1 PDP Context Activation Procedure

The PDP Context Activation procedure is illustrated in **Error! Reference source not found.**. Each step is explained in the following list.

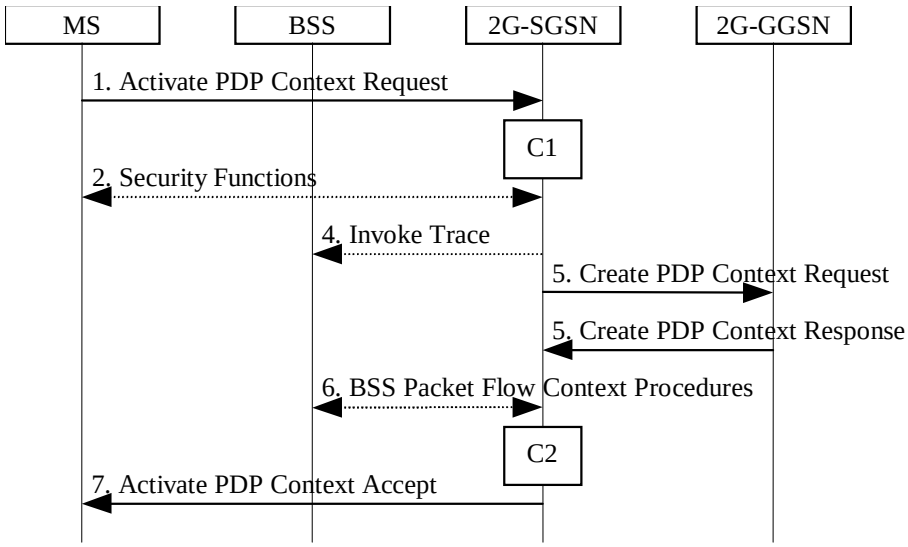


Figure 1: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

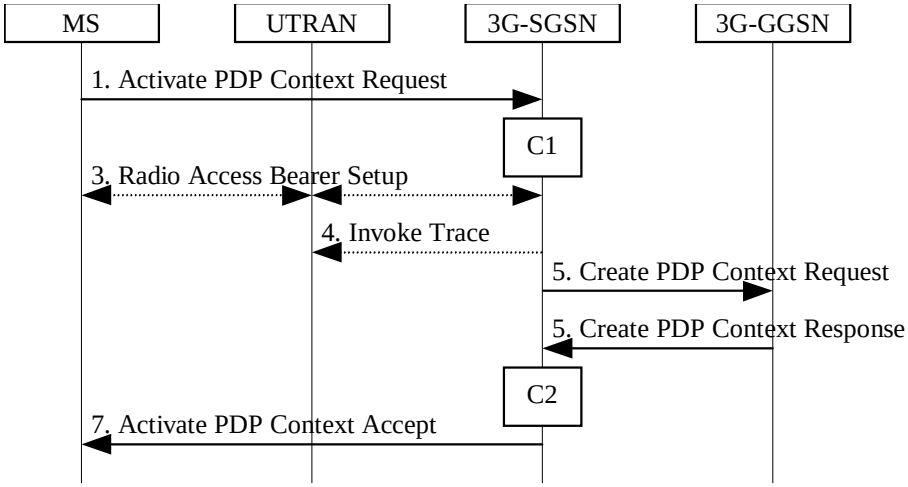


Figure 2: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request (NSAPI, TI, PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Requested, PDP Configuration Options) message to the SGSN. The MS shall use PDP Address to indicate whether it requires the use of a static PDP address or whether it requires the use of a dynamic PDP address. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty to request a dynamic PDP address. The MS may use Access Point Name to select a reference point to a certain external network and/or to select a service. Access Point Name is a logical name referring to the external packet data network and/or to a service that the subscriber wishes to connect to. QoS Requested indicates the desired QoS profile. PDP Configuration Options may be used to request optional PDP parameters from the GGSN (see GSM 09.60). PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN.

2) For GPRS, security functions may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "Security Function".

3) For UMTS, the RAB setup procedure is performed. The 3G-SGSN sends a Radio Access Bearer Setup Request message to UTRAN. The UTRAN then initiates the radio access bearer setup procedure.

4) If BSS trace is activated, then the SGSN shall send an Invoke Trace (Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity) message to the BSS or UTRAN. Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity are copied from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using PDP Type (optional), PDP Address (optional), and Access Point Name (optional) provided by the MS and the PDP context subscription records. The validation criteria, the APN selection criteria, and the mapping from APN to a GGSN are described in annex A.

   If no GGSN address can be derived or if the SGSN has determined that the Activate PDP Context Request is not valid according to the rules described in annex A, then the SGSN rejects the PDP context activation request.

If a GGSN address can be derived, the SGSN creates a TEID for the requested PDP context by combining the IMSI stored in the MM context with the NSAPI received from the MS. If the MS requests a dynamic address, then the SGSN lets a GGSN allocate the dynamic address. The SGSN may restrict the requested QoS attributes given its capabilities, the current load, and the subscribed QoS profile.

The SGSN sends a Create PDP Context Request (PDP Type, PDP Address, Access Point Name, QoS Negotiated, TEID, MSISDN, Selection Mode, Charging Characteristics, Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, OMC Identity, PDP Configuration Options) message to the affected GGSN. Access Point Name shall be the APN Network Identifier of the APN selected according to the procedure described in annex A. PDP Address shall be empty if a dynamic address is requested. The GGSN may use Access Point Name to find an external network and optionally to activate a service for this APN. Selection Mode indicates whether a subscribed APN was selected, or whether a non-subscribed APN sent by MS or a non-subscribed APN chosen by SGSN was selected. Selection Mode is set according to annex A. The GGSN may use Selection Mode when deciding whether to accept or reject the PDP context activation. For example, if an APN requires subscription, then the GGSN is configured to accept only the PDP context activation that requests a subscribed APN as indicated by the SGSN with Selection Mode. Charging Characteristics indicates which kind of charging the PDP context is liable for. The SGSN shall copy Charging Characteristics from Subscribed Charging Characteristics received from the HLR. The SGSN shall include Trace Reference, Trace Type, Trigger Id, Initiating OMC Identity, and OMC Identity if GGSN trace is activated. The SGSN shall copy Trace Reference, Trace Type, and Initiating OMC Identity from the trace information received from the HLR or OMC.

The GGSN creates a new entry in its PDP context table and generates a Charging Id. The new entry allows the GGSN to route PDP PDUs between the SGSN and the external PDP network, and to start charging. The GGSN may further restrict QoS Negotiated given its capabilities and the current load. The GGSN then returns a Create PDP Context Response (TEID, PDP Address, PDP Configuration Options, QoS Negotiated, Charging Id, Cause) message to the SGSN. PDP Address is included if the GGSN allocated a PDP address. ~~When the PDP Type is IP version 6, the GGSN shall create a link local address for the MS to be used as the PDP Address.~~ If the GGSN has been configured by the operator to use External PDN Address Allocation for the requested APN, then PDP Address shall be set to 0.0.0.0, indicating that the PDP address shall be negotiated by the MS with the external PDN after completion of the PDP Context Activation procedure. The GGSN shall relay, modify, and monitor these negotiations as long as the PDP context is in ACTIVE state and use the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context Modification procedure to transfer the currently-used PDP address to the SGSN and the MS. PDP Configuration Options contain optional PDP parameters that the GGSN may transfer to the MS. These optional PDP parameters may be requested by the MS in the Activate PDP Context Request message, or may be sent unsolicited by the GGSN. PDP Configuration Options is sent transparently through the SGSN. The Create PDP Context messages are sent over the backbone network.

If QoS Negotiated received from the SGSN is incompatible with the PDP context being activated (e.g., the reliability class is insufficient to support the PDP type), then the GGSN rejects the Create PDP Context Request message. The compatible QoS profiles are configured by the GGSN operator.

6) For GPRS, BSS packet flow context procedures may be executed. These procedures are defined in subclause "BSS Context".

7) The SGSN inserts the NSAPI along with the GGSN address in its PDP context. If the MS has requested a dynamic address, the PDP address received from the GGSN is inserted in the PDP context. The SGSN selects Radio Priority and Packet Flow Id based on QoS Negotiated, and returns an Activate PDP Context Accept (PDP Type, PDP Address, TI, QoS Negotiated, Radio Priority, Packet Flow Id, PDP Configuration Options) message to the MS. The SGSN is now able to route PDP PDUs between the GGSN and the MS, and to start charging.

For each PDP Address a different quality of service (QoS) profile may be requested. For example, some PDP addresses may be associated with E-mail that can tolerate lengthy response times. Other applications cannot tolerate delay and demand a very high level of throughput, interactive applications being one example. These different requirements are reflected in the QoS profile. The QoS profile is defined in subclause "Quality of Service Profile". If a QoS requirement is beyond the capabilities of a PLMN, the PLMN negotiates the QoS profile as close as possible to the requested QoS profile. The MS either accepts the negotiated QoS profile, or deactivates the PDP context.

After an SGSN has successfully updated the GGSN, the PDP contexts associated with an MS is distributed as shown in clause "Information Storage".

If the PDP Context Activation Procedure fails or if the SGSN returns an Activate PDP Context Reject (Cause, PDP Configuration Options) message, then the MS may attempt another activation to the same APN up to a maximum number of attempts.

For an MS with GPRS-CSI defined, CAMEL interaction may be performed, see referenced procedures in 3G TS 23.078:

C1) CAMEL-GPRS-Activate-PDP-Context.

C2) CAMEL-GPRS-SGSN-Create-PDP-Context.

3GPP TSG SA2 Meeting #12
Tokyo, Japan, 6-9 Mar 2000

Document S2-000610
e.g. for 3GPP use the format TP-99xxx
or for SMG, use the format P-99-xxx

CHANGE REQUEST

Please see embedded help file at the bottom of this page for instructions on how to fill in this form correctly.

23.060	**CR**	**146r1**	Current Version: 3.2.1 **PLUS CR107**

GSM (AA.BB) or 3G (AA.BBB) specification number ↑ *↑ CR number as allocated by MCC support team*

For submission to: SA#7 *list expected approval meeting # here ↑*	for approval	X	strategic		*(for SMG use only)*
	for information		non-strategic		

Form: CR cover sheet, version 2 for 3GPP and SMG *The latest version of this form is available from: ftp://ftp.3gpp.org/Information/CR-Form-v2.doc*

Proposed change affects: *(at least one should be marked with an X)*	(U)SIM		ME		UTRAN / Radio		Core Network	X

Source: Ericsson **Date:** 09.03.2000

Subject: Correction to stateless address autoconfiguration procedure for PDP Type IPv6.

Work item:

Category: *(only one category shall be marked with an X)*				**Release:**	
	F	Correction	X	Phase 2	
	A	Corresponds to a correction in an earlier release		Release 96	
	B	Addition of feature		Release 97	
	C	Functional modification of feature		Release 98	
	D	Editorial modification		Release 99	X
				Release 00	

Reason for change:

This CR is a correction to CR107, approved in SA2#11, which introduces support for IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration. In CR107 the SGSN is not updated with the full IPv6 address actually used by the MS. For legal interception purposes the PDP address stored in the SGSN has to be equal to the IP address actually used by the MS.

This CR also clarifies that both stateful and stateless address autoconfiguration are supported in release 99. Note that in release '99 the support of IPv6 is limited to only one IP address per PDP context.

Clauses affected: 14.5; Annex X

Other specs affected:				
	Other 3G core specifications	X	→ List of CRs:	
	Other GSM core specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	MS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	BSS test specifications		→ List of CRs:	
	O&M specifications		→ List of CRs:	

Other comments:

14.5 PDP Address

A packet-domain subscriber identified by an IMSI, shall have one or more network layer addresses, i.e., PDP addresses, temporarily and/or permanently associated with it that conforms to the standard addressing scheme of the respective network layer service used, e.g.:

- an IP version 4 address;
- an IP version 6 ~~link local~~ address; or
- an X.121 address.

PDP addresses are activated and deactivated through MM procedures described in subclause "PDP Context Activation, Modification, and Deactivation Functions".

********** Next Modification **********

Annex X (normative): IPv6 Stateless address autoconfiguration procedure

The IPv6 address allocation is somewhat different from the IPv4 address allocation procedure. There are two possibilities to allocate the address for an IPv6 node – stateless and stateful autoconfiguration. The stateful address allocation mechanism needs a DHCP server to allocate the address for the IPv6 node. In the stateless autoconfiguration, the IPv6 node is more involved in the allocation of the address. In addition, the stateless autoconfiguration procedure does not need any external entity involved in the address autoconfiguration.

IPv6 stateful address autoconfiguration uses the standard External PDN Address Allocation procedure. The MS requests stateful address autoconfiguration by using an Access Point Name (APN) referring to that service.

The following shows how the IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration is done in the GPRS and UMTS networks.

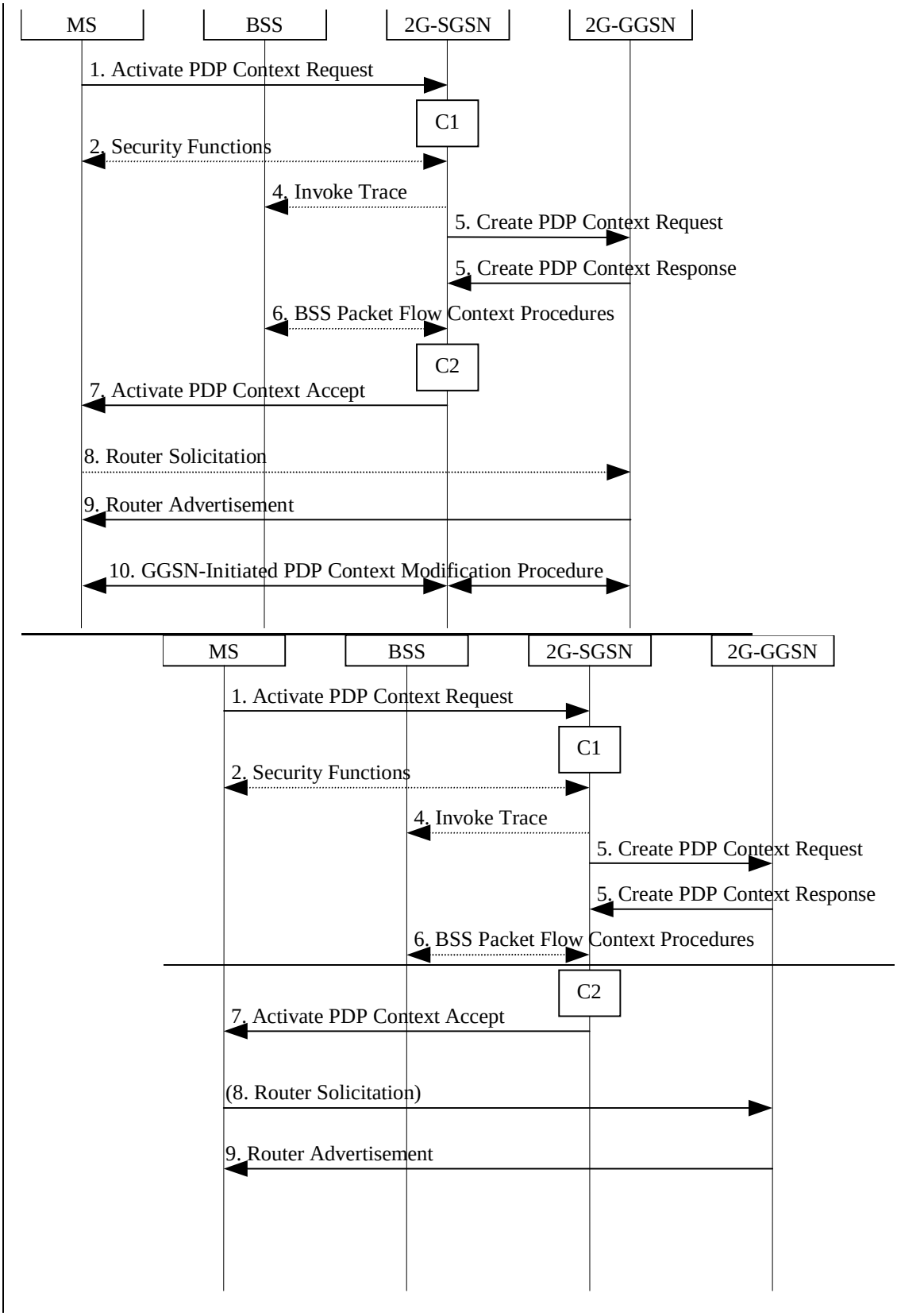


Figure X: PDP Context Activation Procedure for GPRS

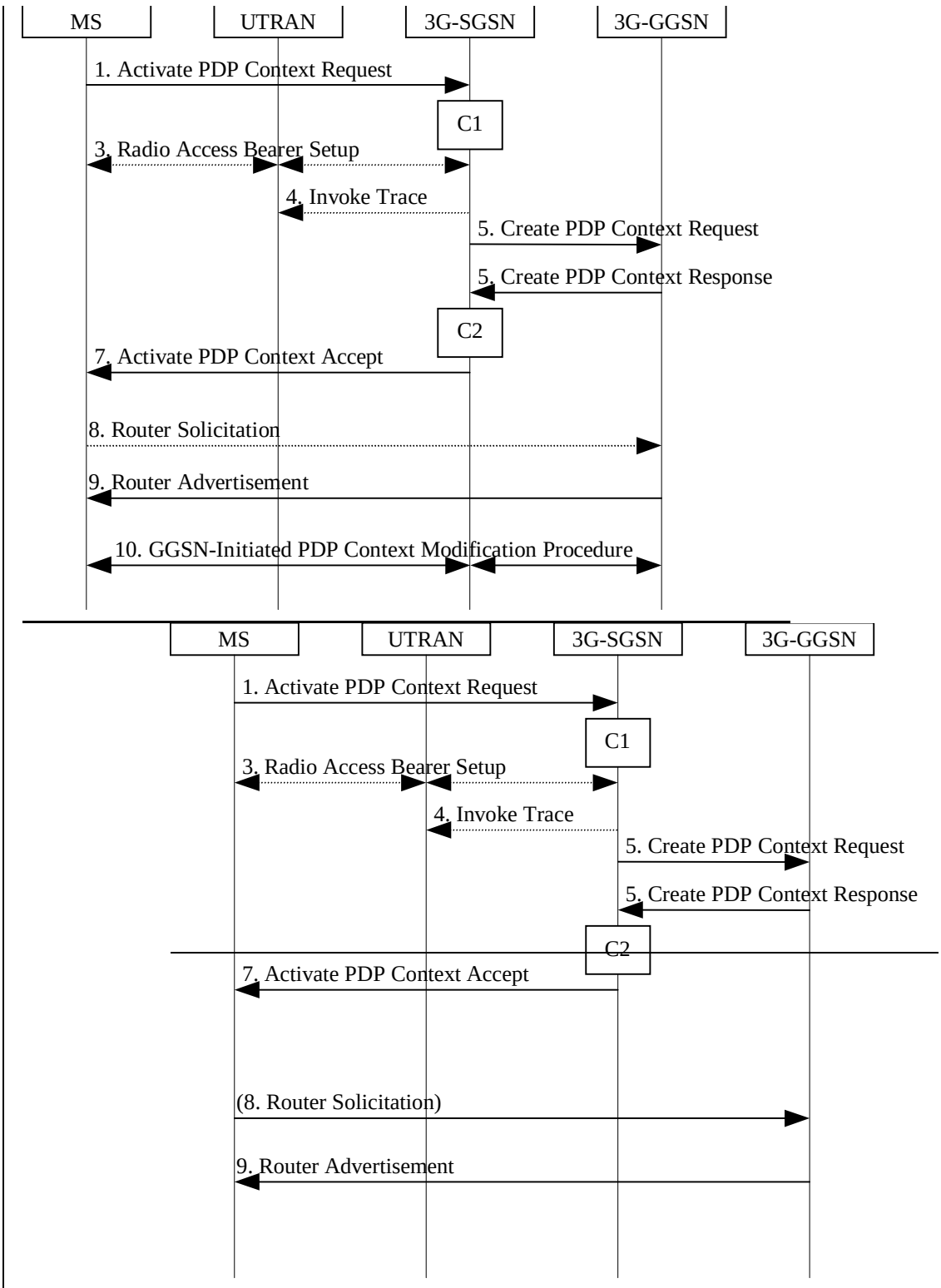


Figure X: PDP Context Activation Procedure for UMTS

1) The MS sends an Activate PDP Context Request message to the SGSN. The MS shall leave PDP Address empty. The MS shall set the PDP Type to IPv6. Otherwise, the PDP Context activation is as for PDP Type IPv4.

   The steps from two to four are as in PDP Type IPv4. The only difference is that PDP Type has to be set to PDP Type IPv6.

5) The SGSN validates the Activate PDP Context Request using the methods standardised. The Create PDP Context procedure from the SGSN's side is as defined for PDP Type IPv4 except that only ~~the~~ Dynamic address allocation shall be used.

The GGSN shall create the link-local address for the MS and send it in the PDP Address field of the Create PDP Context Response. ~~The link local address is a IPv6 address used for a single link. It~~ The link-local address consist of a fixed ~~10~~ 10-bit~~s~~ prefix (IPv6 well-known link-local prefix), zero or more 0 bits, and the Interface Identifier. Otherwise, the procedure is as defined for PDP Type IPv4.

The Steps 6 and 7 are as for the PDP Type IPv4.

8) ~~-~~The MS may send a router solicitation to the GGSN to activate the sending of the Router Advertisement.

9) ~~-~~The GGSN should send automatically the Router Advertisement after the PDP Context is activated.

In Release '99 the GGSN shall be configured to advertise only one network prefix.

After the MS has received the Router Advertisement it constructs its full IPv6 address and is ready to start communicating to the Internet.

The MS may send a Neighbour solicitation message to the network to make sure that the IPv6 address it has is unique. The GGSN shall intercept and discard any such ~~a~~ message.

10) The GGSN updates the PDP context of the SGSN with the full IPv6 address by means of the GGSN-Initiated PDP Context modification procedure.